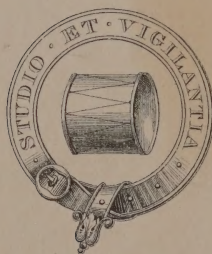




17207/8/11

A. xvii. 2

EX BIBLIOTHECA



CAR. I. TABORIS.









60322.

AUR. COR. CELSUS

ON

MEDICINE,

IN EIGHT BOOKS,

LATIN AND ENGLISH.

TRANSLATED FROM L. TARGA'S EDITION,

THE WORDS OF THE TEXT BEING ARRANGED IN THE ORDER OF  
CONSTRUCTION.

TO WHICH ARE PREFIXED,

A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR,

TABLES OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES,

WITH

EXPLANATORY NOTES, ETC. DESIGNED TO FACILITATE THE  
PROGRESS OF MEDICAL STUDENTS.

BY ALEX. LEE, A.M., SURG.

---

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

---

LONDON:

E. COX, ST. THOMAS'S STREET, SOUTHWARK.

---

MDCCCXXXI.

G. WOODFALL, ANGEL COURT, SKINNER STREET, LONDON.





VIRO INGENUO,  
ARTIBUS MEDICINÆ PERITISSIMO,  
NECNON IN OMNI GENERE DOCTRINÆ EXCULTO,  
JACOBO BLUNDELL, M.D.

S.

---

EXISTIMATIO bona est tamquam odor unguenti fragrantis et pretiosi ; neque dubito, quin apud posteros ea tibi sit futura : nam et ingenium et merita tua præcelluerunt, et mihi persuasum est, famam tuam posse durare quamdiu libri et literæ durent. In lucem nunc demum edere mihi visum est hoc opus, et tibi, Vir benevole, libens dedico, ingentis erga me patrociniî testimonium. Scio quantopere bonis artibus faveas, quantum gaudii capias, si studiosi Juvenes aliquid adepti sint, quo facilius medicinam colant. Mitto ergo, ad te Celsum nostrum, auctorem nobilem, et tuas delicias, meâ operâ, (ni fallor) studiosæ juventuti, cui plurimum faves, et gratiorem et accommodatiorem redditum. Tu autem, hoc, qualecumque sit, benigniter accipe. Vale.

A. L.

Dabam Londini,  
XIII<sup>mo</sup> Augusti, A.D. MDCCCXXI.





## PREFACE.

---

OUR public Medical Functionaries have very judiciously resolved, that Celsus be prescribed as one of the tests by which the Candidate is to be tried, and I am convinced that this arises from the purest motive, because it is supported by the most unquestionable authorities, both ancient and modern, and by the laudable wish to exact from young gentlemen destined for the medical profession a more respectable and liberal education. The necessity of this enactment may be very evident, since the daily improvement of all the collateral branches of medical science are every where making progress.

It is now several years since I commenced the *Ordo Verborum* of this Work, for the express purpose of facilitating the progress of gentlemen entering on the public service, and I have every reason to believe that it was of no small benefit to them, not only in lessening that tedium of study otherwise necessary, but also in enabling them to comprehend the meaning of the Author more fully. The Text copy which I have followed, is that edited by the learned and indefatigable Leonardus Targa, which is universally allowed to be the most correct.

The great responsibility accruing on undertaking a Work of so much labour rendered it a duty incumbent on me to be in possession of every edition that I could possibly procure, particularly those cum *Notis Variorum*. My principal object in this, was to present the reader with the most approved text of the various editors from Cæsarius in the year 1528, to that of Targa's in 1769; since which no one has attempt-

ed any alterations in the text of Celsus ; and I believe for the best of all reasons ; since the unwearied perseverance of Targa, united to the most profound learning and great critical acumen, left nothing to be done by future editors. For this reason I have strictly adhered to the text of Targa, making those necessary corrections in the punctuation and unavoidable errors of the press : and here let me add, that my efforts have been very much aided by the excellent management on the part of Mr. Woodfall, the printer of the Work.

With respect to the *Ordo Verborum*, I flatter myself that it will be of no inconsiderable assistance to the student whose classical attainments have been either limited or neglected ; at the same time let me caution him who may require the assistance of the *Ordo*, not to omit an assiduous application of his Latin grammar and dictionary ; then he will make the *Ordo* subservient to the end proposed ; let him use it only if necessary, to unravel the more intricate construction of the text ; that being attained, let him despise the *Ordo* for the more elegant and classical arrangement of the text itself, which he ought to read again and again, until he thoroughly comprehend the Author. There is one thing on which I wish to solicit the indulgent consideration of the student : that is, to consider for a moment, the time necessarily employed in arranging this *Ordo* according to the rules of grammar, the tedious, and often difficult task of comparing and correcting it with the text while going through the press : I have done my best to avoid all errors in this department of the Work ; but “*siquis asperius notare voluerit, reputet modò quantum et varietatis et difficultatis hujusmodi opus amplectitur, et paucis maculis non offensum iri spero.*”

I come now to the Translation ; which I have endeavoured to render as literal as the idioms of the two languages will admit ; and the student will please to observe that the necessary elliptical words are for the most part rendered in *Italics*.



There are three things of the utmost importance in translating from one language to another ; the first is to comprehend the original ; the second is to convey those sentiments intelligibly to others ; and the third is, to write them with precision, fidelity, and elegance, if possible. This is the order of Nature, whose minister and interpreter is man : “ Homo, naturæ minister et interpres, tantum facit et intelligit quantum de naturæ ordine re vel mente observaverit : nec amplius scit, aut potest.”—*Bac. Nov. Org.* Whether I have succeeded or not, is a point that will soon be decided by the judgment of a discerning public, to whose fiat I will implicitly submit. I have endeavoured to render a close interpretation of the Author, and have used my best efforts to infuse the genius and spirit of his style, with as much fidelity as the sententious brevity of this elegant classic would allow. Therefore, under such conditions, I did not even dare to use a freedom of language, far less elegance of style. Even where our Author is evidently wrong, for instance, in his anatomical descriptions, I have preferred to err with him, rather than be right against him : for this very reason, that the student may see Celsus as the faithful representative of medical science in his age, and contrast that with the present improvements : for we are very sagaciously cautioned by Rhodius, that “ plures Latinitatem ejus, quàm medicinam fieri oportere.”

Celsus has been received as a standard authority through every successive age ; yet we have no other data, except his Treatise on Medicine, by which even his profession can be determined. He is always quoted by the most eminent physicians, as “ a model of propriety, ease, and elegance.” Celsus also wrote a Treatise on Military Tactics, another on Agriculture ; but commentators are unanimous in their opinions that his medical writings are the most perfect.

It is very evident from his preface to the first book, wherein he gives an admirable summary of medicine, that he had thoroughly digested the various systems both of the

Greeks and Romans before his time. In the midst of this conflicting mass of facts adduced by the empirics on one side, opposed by the no less powerful arguments of the rationalists on the other, he was the first who united the theory of the one with the practice of the other. It is interesting to see the energies of such "a mind grappling with the difficulties which surrounded it." Cicero exclaims that "*Homines ad Deos in nulla re propius accedunt, quam salutem hominibus dando.*" Celsus may well be called the morning star of medical science "last in the train of night;" and it need not surprise us that a certain portion of the darkness of that age should still cling around him. But the investigations of subsequent ages have advanced with gradual but progressive steps to verify that sublime conception, that "TRUTH, though hewn, like the mangled body of Osiris, into a thousand pieces, and scattered to the four winds of heaven, shall be gathered limb to limb, and moulded, with every joint and member, into an immortal FORM of loveliness and perfection."

After he has given an abstract of the prevailing systems up to his time, he very modestly advances his own opinion, proposes the plan of his Work, the four first books of which are on Diet; the fifth and sixth on Pharmacy; and the last two appropriated to Surgery. Targa has followed the usual division of the Work into chapters, but rejected the marginal contents, which I have added to each chapter from Linden's edition. The Life of Celsus I have taken from Rhodius, published by Almeloveen. I am indebted for one of the Tables of Weights, and some of the Notes, to that splendid and very correct edition by Dr. Milligan, of Edinburgh: the other two I have taken from the translated copy of Dr. Grieve, who selected Almeloveen's text for his translation, which contains innumerable errors, afterwards corrected by Targa. Mr. Underwood, I believe, is the next translator, on the interlineal plan, and has executed his ungracious task in a very creditable manner, as far as I have seen of it, which

was the first volume only. About the same time appeared Dr. Collier with his *Celsus* in four volumes. There is also another edition from a Parisian press in 1824, which I consider as a duty to my countrymen to mark out in the language of Horace—

“ *Fœnum habet in cornu, longe fuge!* ”

The Notes explaining pharmaceutical preparations, &c. will be found at the end of the second volume, and for which I am indebted to Pliny, Dioscorides, Quintilian, Pantin, Casteli *Lexicon Medicum Græco-Latinum*, Targa, Morgagni, Greive, and Milligan.

THREE CROWN SQUARE, SOUTHWARK,  
August 13th, 1831.



# AURELII CORNELII CELSI

## VITA

A CLARISSIMO VIRO

JOANNE RHODIO CONSCRIPTA.

---

CORNELII CELSI laudabilem in re medica operam annis jam mille sexcentis, et quod superat, experientia, veritatis prima parens, feliciter probavit. Nec melioris animi quisquam ita ab omni humanitate remotus fuit, cui non venerandum tam illustre nomen. At ingenio magis, quam origine notum, quam, relictæ soli animo gloria, temporis diuturnitas posteritatis memoriæ exemit.

Quamvis enim Romæ vixisse Celsum, ipsius, sive ut aliis visum, Scribonii Largi ad J. Callistum epistola indicio sit: non desunt tamen causæ, cur addubitem, patria, an jure civitatis ipsum Romanis accenseam.

Maximeque, quum præter hunc, quidam Julius Celsus Hadriano Imperatori à consiliis, vel ex aliorum sententia, Alexandri Severi temporibus, juris scientia perhibeatur claruisse. Vid. Spartianum in Hadr. 30. et Pompon. JC. lib. 2. in fin. de Orig. Jur. et Politianum lib. 5. Epist. ad Jac. Modestum. Equidem Celsum patrem ac filium jureconsultis annumerat Hotomannus in descriptione Jurisconsultorum, et Juventium Celsum patrem ad Vespasiani Imperatoris tempora refert Jacob. Gothofred. Histor. Jur. Civil. cap. 7. de Jurisconsultorum Successione. Idem Celsum

# THE LIFE

OF

## AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS,

WRITTEN BY THE CELEBRATED J. RHODIUS.

TRANSLATED FROM ALMELOVEEN'S *LUGDUNI BATAVORUM*  
EDITION OF 1746.

---

THE writings of Aur. Cor. Celsus on Medicine have stood the test of experience, the first parent of truth, for upwards of sixteen hundred years. Nor can there be any one of a more exalted mind, or of a more cultivated understanding so far removed from all good learning, as not to venerate so great a name: more distinguished, indeed, by the greatness of his genius, than by an illustrious origin, of whom any certain knowledge has been lost to latter ages through the lapse of time, and his fame left to depend on the excellence of his mind alone.

Although it might appear from a letter of his own, or as some maintain, of Scribonius Largus to Callistus, that Celsus lived at Rome, reasons are not wanting why I should hesitate to acknowledge him a Roman either by birth or right of citizenship.

In the reign of Hadrian, or according to others, in the time of Alexander Severus, besides the subject of this memoir, there appears to have been a Julius Celsus who excelled as a juriconsult: see Spartianus on Hadrian, 30, and Pomponius the juriconsult, in the end of his second book concerning the Origin of Lawyers; also, Politianus, book fifth, in his letter to J. Modestus; and indeed Hottomannus mentions a Celsus both father and son of a lawyer, in his description of Juriconsults, and Gothfred, in his History of the Jur. Civ. cap. 7., on the succession of Juriconsults, refers Juventius Celsus to the reign of the Emperor

patrem et filium sub Trajano, Hadriano, Antonino Pio vixisse censet. Verùm et Apulejus Celsus Valentis ac Scriboni Largi in Medicis Magister occurrit apud Scribonium Largum de Compos. Med. cap. 94. et 171.

Cujus præter Agricola Woverius in Apuleji Vita mentionem inject; nisi fortè cum Cornario in Marc. Empirici Præfat. interposito inciso, Apulejo, Celso, distinctè legendum fuerit. Ita in præfat. Marcell. et Apulejus et Celsus occurrunt.

Volaterranus etiam meminit in Anthropologia, lib. 14. Celsi cujusdam, qui Philosophiæ Stoicæ sectator, Origenis erat adversarius, magiæ scientia notus, cui Lucianus Pseudo-Mantem inscripsit. Ejusdem quoque nominis ibidem, imperante Nerone, è Galliis puer novennis martyrio nobilitatus.

Numo etiam innotuit apud Augustin. Dialogo 5. de Num. Celsus quidam III. Vir. Noster autem Augusti ævo floruit, ex quorundam sententia, inter quos Jo. Britannic, in Juvenal. Sat. 6. et 7. Ovidii auctoritate, vel ut Jo. Cajo placuit, Cl. Tiberii, A.C. 29.; aut certe Caji Imp. conjectura Sambuci, viri antiquitatis notitia clarissimi. Major tamen eruditorum pars sub Tiberio vixisse, vel fortè ipso imperante natum usque ad Trajani tempora vitam produxisse censet; quamvis et sub Nerone vixisse putet Thom. Fienus. Ut uno seculo vetustior Galeno videatur.

Cæterùm, non levem hic de patria ejus dubitandi occasionem præbet Cæl. Rhodiginus, qui Antiq. Lect. lib. 14. cap. 5. Veronenses, ait, cum Macrobio, Vitruvio, et Plinio, Celsum quoque suum ortu civem agnoscere. Librorum inscriptionibus hujusmodi divinationes stabiliri assolent. Sed exigui momenti munimento. Notius enim est, quàm ut pluribus confirmetur, librorum titulos literatoribus et librariis arbitrarios fuisse, vixque veterum quempiam ulli suorum commentariorum quidquam prænotasse, referente de semet idipsum Galeno, lib. 7. Method. Med. cap. 1. qui id officii ab



Vespasian. The same author thinks that Celsus, the father and son, lived under Trajan, Hadrian, and Antoninus Pius. But Apuleius Celsus, a Valentian, and tutor to Scribonius Largus, is mentioned by him in his book, entitled, *Compositio Medicinæ*, cap. 94, et 171.

Besides, Agricola Woverius makes mention of him in his *Life of Apuleius*; unless, perhaps, with Cornarius, in his preface to *Mar. Empiricus*, we are to read separately Apuleius, Celsus with the interposition of a comma. Also in the preface to *Marcellus* both Apuleius and Celsus occur.

Volaterranus likewise takes notice of a Celsus in his *Anthropologia*, lib. xiv., who was a follower of the Stoic philosophy, and an adversary of Origen, a noted magician, to whom Lucianus gave the name of the Lying-prophet. In the reign of Nero, also, there was a boy, nine years of age, of the same name, a Gaul, renowned for his martyrdom.

There is another mentioned by Numus, in his *Augustine Dialogues*, of the name of Celsus, a triumvir. But our Celsus flourished in the Augustan age, as some imagine, as appears by J. Britannicus on Juvenal, Sat. 6, and 7. and on the authority of Ovid, or as J. Caius would have it in his *Annals of Clem. Tiberius*, Anno Christi 29, or at least under the Emperor Caius, as Sambucus conjectures, and these men are celebrated for their knowledge of antiquity. Yet the greater number of the learned think that he lived in the reign of Tiberius, or perhaps, being born in his reign, he might have prolonged his life to the time of Trajan: although Thomas Fienus imagines that he lived under Nero, and appears to be one age older than Galen.

Again, Cæl. Rhodiginus *Antiq. Lect.* lib. xiv. c. 5., advances no light arguments tending to remove all doubt of his country; he says that Verona claims Celsus as one of her citizens by birth, along with Macrobius, Vitruvius, and Pliny. By the inscriptions of books, conjectures of this kind used to be solved: but this is a confirmation of very little importance: for it is better known than to require the confirmation of many, that the titles of books greatly depended on the caprice of printers, and librarians, and that scarcely any of the ancients prefixed their names to their works, as related by Galen, speaking of himself in his *Methodus Medendi*, lib. vii. cap. 1., who left that duty to be performed by

amicis habuit : haud dubiè istius ævi modestia, quod ingenia admiratione superiora protulit.

Sed enim, ut mala exempla ex bonis initiis orta : ita ex æmula, in conquirendis magnorum ingeniorum monumentis, principum munificentia, accrescente paulatim librariorum avaritia, omnes propè optimorum etiam Auctorum præscriptiones impunè, ad lucrosam cujusque libidinem, immutatae, ne dicam adulteratae.

Atque ut ad Celsum redeam ; quot ejus hodie editiones, tot fermè inscriptiones diversæ. Cæsarii habet, “ Aurelii Cornelii Celsi de Re Medica VIII. Libri eruditissimi.” Vulgatae Lugdunenses omnes, et Leidensis modestiùs sine phalerato encomio A. C. C. D. M. L. VIII. Horum priorem Cajus sic mutavit : “ Aurelii Cornelii Celsi Romani de Re Medica Libb. VIII. pereruditi.” H. Stephanus in suo exemplari cæteris Medicinæ Principibus adjecto receptæ lectioni subdidit :

“ Operis ab eo scripti Pars Sexta.” Vett. Codicum MS. auctoritatem secutus, quibus communis hæc inscriptio : “ A. Cornelii Celsi Artium Liber VI.” Nihil tamen hic præter consilium et rem ab illo temerè factum. Patriam enim sive auctor ipse, sive alius quispiam addiderit, id certè non caret vetustatis exemplo, potissimùm apud Græcos, quos inter Celsus sibi “ Hippocratem Coum ” inprimis imitandum proposuit, cujus etiam pleraque non infeliciter Latino sermone reddidit, suam ipse testatus in Epist. ad Pullum Natalem, in hoc studiorum genere diligentiam, longè accuratiorem, quam Largii Designatiàni, qui Epistola ad filios se fuisse liberiores fatetur.

Quemadmodum notante Cornario in Dedicat. Marcelli, in plerisque Hippocratem expressit, ut integras sententiarum periodos ex ipso descriptas subinde in eo videas ; imò tota capita nihil aliud quam Hippocratis sententias ad verbum reddunt. Hinc non immeritò Hippocratis Simiam dixit Nic. Monardus, de V. S. in Pleurit. f. 8.

Etsi verò Latini scriptores patriam haud usque jacta-

his friends : this may be attributed, without doubt, to the modesty of that age, which encouraged superior talent by its admiration of genius.

But sometimes bad results arise from good examples, so, through the emulation excited in searching for the works of great geniuses, the cupidity of librarians, fed by the liberality of princes, gradually increased until almost all the best authors had undergone a change of title, nay, I may say, were adulterated without detection, by the cupidity of each party vying with another for the sake of gain.

But to return to Celsus : almost every edition of his work now has a different title. That by Cæsarius has "Aurelii Cornelii Celsi de Re Medica Libri VIII. eruditissimi." All those published at Lyons and Leyden have none of that encomiastic fanfaronade : they are more modest, such as A. C. C. D. M. L. VIII. The first of which Caius changed into Aurelii Cornelii Celsi Romani de Re Medica Lib. VIII., edited by the very learned H. Stephanus, who, in his other works on the Principles of Medicine, supplied to the received reading as follows : "A. Cornelii Celsi Artium Liber VI. Operis ab eo Scripti : " in which he followed the authority of an ancient manuscript with the usual inscription on it. Neither has he done this unadvisedly nor without foundation. As to the word "patria", whether the author himself added it, or some other person for him, it certainly does not want a precedent among the examples of antiquity, especially among the Greeks, whom Celsus made it a point to imitate, particularly Hippocrates of Cous, most of whose works he rendered very elegantly into Latin. He himself testifies his diligence in this kind of study, in a letter to Pullus Natalus, far more correctly than that of Largus Designantianus, who in a letter to his sons confesses himself to have been too free in this affair.

In the same manner Cornarius remarked in his dedication to Marcellus, that he imitated Hippocrates for the most part so close, that sometimes you may see whole periods of sentences described by the one, transcribed by the other, nay, whole chapters which relate nothing else than the opinions of Hippocrates verbatim. Therefore it was not without reason that Nic. Monardus called him the Ape of Hippocrates, in Venesection in Pleuritis. f. 8.

Although it may be true that the Latin authors of anti-



bant: neutiquam tamen diffitendum, antiquitùs Romanæ civitatis jus gloriosum fuisse. Quo fortè venditores Auctorem nostrum commendare satagebant; sive is meritis et gratia civium numero adscriptus esset; sive Roma oriundus. Posterius tamen ut credam, suadet præter apertum Auctoris textum, Epistola ejusdem ad Callistum, et persuadet ad Pullum Natalem altera; in quibus inprimis Viri boni genius conspicitur.

Imò Marcellus in Præf. Operis Cornelium Celsum inter viros illustres et cives enumerat, quicquid ei imposuerit Verderius Cens. Ejus Columella, Claudii tempore clarus, ut æqualis aut certè paulo superioris, sic meminit:

“Nostrorum temporum Cornelius Celsus, totum corpus disciplinæ quinque libris complexus est.” Quem Rusticam intellexisse, vero proximum est. Quintiliani sententia Inst. Orat. lib. x. cap. 1. is “Vir eruditus, inter eos philosophos Latinos, quos eloquentes literæ Romanæ tulerunt, qui scripsit non parum multa, scepticos sequutus, non sine cultu et nitore.” Ideoque ob nimiam novitatis cupiditatem, ejusdem censura notatur.

Scripta ejus sigillatim prodidit Volaterranus Anthropol. “Cornelius Celsus mediocri vir ingenio, non solum artem Rhetoricam, sed de Re Militari, et de Rusticana, deque Medicina libros composuit.” Quæ omnia J. Dousa, æternum gentis et generis sui decus, in Sylva Extemporal. hoc Epigrammate venustissimè complexus:

“Facta urbana tuo Res Rustica munere, scriptis  
Nec minus illustris est Medicina tuis.  
Hinc quoque Militiæ tractasti commoda rhetor,  
Hoc Martem musis jungere, Celse, fuit.”

Subjungit Polyhistor Italus: “Ad nos tantum ejus Medicina pervenit oratorio more conscripta.” Sed et quædam rhetorica ejus nostra ætate Sixti Popmæ studio feruntur emissa. Veterinariam quoque conscripsisse auctor est Mercurialis lib. iv. cap. 2. Herbarium verò ei adscriptum, Apuleji potiùs credit in vita Apuleji Elmenhorstius. Julium qui-

quity did not boast of their country, yet it cannot be denied, that the right of Roman citizenship was a great honour. Perhaps the booksellers might have interested themselves in commending our author, whether enrolled in the number of citizens, by merit and favour, or a Roman by birth. Yet I am inclined to believe the latter, as it is evident from the text of that author in a letter of his to Calistus, and in another to Pullus Natalis, in both of which the genius of a great man is chiefly to be seen.

Nay, Marcellus in the preface of his work mentions Celsus among other distinguished citizens, whatever had been imposed upon him by Verderius, the Censor. Columella, an illustrious man in the reign of Claudius, either cotemporary or at least a little before him, mentions him in the following manner :

“ Cornelius Celsus in our own time has comprehended the whole body of literature in five books.” But he is to be understood as alluding to his book on agriculture or rural affairs. Quintilian, *Inst. Orat. lib. x. c. 1.* speaks of him thus : “ That learned man amongst the Latin philosophers, whom Roman literature had brought forward, and who wrote many things after the manner of the sceptics, with ease and elegance.” For this reason he came under the censure of the same author, from too great a desire of novelty.

Volaterranus in his *Anthropologia*, who published his works separately, thus speaks of him : “ Cornelius Celsus, a man of tolerable genius, has written, not only a system of rhetoric, but also composed books on military and rural affairs, and on medicine.” All of which Dousa, who is an honour to his country and species, has most pleasantly comprised in the following epigram :

“ Facta urbana tuo Res Rustica munere, scriptis  
Nec minus illustris est Medicina tuis.  
Hinc quoque Militiæ tractâsti commoda rhetor,  
Hoc Martem musis jungere, Celse, fuit.”

A work entitled “ *Polyhistor Italus*” subjoins this notice of him : “ His work on medicine, written in an oratorical style, has only reached us.” But something ascribed to him on rhetoric has been brought forward in our own day by the industry of Sixtus Popma. Mercurialis says, *lib. iv. cap. 2.*, that he wrote a Treatise on Veterinary Medicine. But Elmenhorstius, in his life of Apuleius, thinks that the *Herbarium* ascribed to him, rather belongs to Apuleius.

dem Celsum inter rei militaris scriptores enumerat Rob. Valtur. quemadmodum huic à nonnullis adscripta sunt Julii Cæsaris Commentaria. De quibus tamen nihil verè constat.

Varia sanè ejus eruditio aliud prodere non potest, quàm Virum ingenuè natum, magna seculi felicitate, quod bonarum literarum erat feracissimum. Excepit nempe coluitque ea ætas Viros scientia, prudentia, ac eloquentia summos, Tullium, Sallustium, Catullum, Virgilium, Propertium, Horatium, Tibullum, Manilium, Vitruvium, Antonium Musam, Ovidium, Livium, Scribonium Largum, Valerium Maximum, Vellejum Paterculum : atque si se in Claudii imperium ipsius extenderit vita, Quintum Curtium, Persium, Senecam, Silium Italicum, Plinium, viros omnes consummatissimos, in quibus tamen postremum nonnulli Celso juniorem censent.

Opinionem meam firmat laudabilis veterum consuetudo, qua tria nomina nobiliorum, Celso etiam Plinii auctoritate rata; Libertis rarò, nec fermè sine gravi causa unquam concessa scimus, quibus tamen semper servile nomen remansit. Nec moror, quòd Celsi Epistolæ apud Marcellum in limine operis prænomen desit, quo soli Romani insigniebantur. Nomen enim apud bonos auctores sæpe prænomen et cognomen includit. Hinc Martialis :

“ Ut jugulem curas, nomen utrumque bibam.”

Salutaribus itaque disciplinis Græcisque literis, non levi nobilitatis indicio, rectè institutus, facilè potuit seculo tam augusto ac beato, nihil non (ut ipse in Epistola ad Natalem refert) dignum sublimi Romanorum majestate de bono Medicinæ artis splendidissimè scribere, idque perennitati et literis mandare, utilitatis magis quàm delectationis causa.

Scio equidem, non deesse multæ auctoritatis viros, qui ex modò adducta Celsi epistola opinantur, ipsum animo in diversa studia diviso, Græca duntaxat medicinalia in Latinum convertisse, aut Empedoclis et Democriti exemplo non ut



Robertus Walturius indeed ranks Julius Celsus among those who wrote on military affairs, and some even ascribe to him the Commentaries of Julius Cæsar ; concerning which there appears no reasonable argument.

That he was learned on many subjects there can be no doubt ; but that proves nothing, except that he was sprung from a respectable family, and born in an age most fruitful in the production of great and learned men, an age indeed which produced and reared the greatest men in literature, philosophy, and eloquence. Cicero, Sallust, Catullus, Virgil, Propertius, Horace, Tibullus, Manilius, Vitruvius, Antonius Musa, Ovid, Livy, Scribonius Largus, Valerius Maximus, Velleius Paterculus ; and if we extend his life to the reign of Claudius, there were Quintus Curtius, Persius, Seneca, Silius Italicus, Pliny, all of whom were men of the most consummate learning, the last of whom is considered by some to be younger than Celsus.

That laudable custom among the ancients strengthens my opinion, by which the three names of nobility, on the authority of Pliny, were conferred on Celsus ; for we know they were hardly ever allowed to freed men, except on some very particular occasion, to whom the servile name always remained. Nor do I doubt it, because in that letter which Celsus wrote to Marcellus, the prænomen, by which the Romans alone were distinguished, was not inserted at the commencement of the work. For the name among reputed authors often includes the name and surname. Hence that epigram of Martial :

“ Ut jugulem curas, nomen utrumque bibam.”

We have the most indubitable proof of his nobility, by being so well instructed, and that too in Grecian literature, (as he himself observes in his letter to Natales,) that he could write with facility on the theory and art of Medicine in a style not unworthy of the majestic sublimity of a Roman even in the Augustan age, not for the pleasure of an empty name, but for the sake of future ages and the cause of literature.

Indeed I am aware, that there are not wanting men of authority, who argue from that letter, that his mind being directed to various studies, he only translated those Greek Medical works into Latin after the example of Empedocles and Democritus, not as a professed physician for gain, but

merus atque ad quæstum medicus, sed ut sapientem, atque, ut Columellæ verbis utar, universæ naturæ prudentem, medicinam veluti philosophiæ partem cum sapientiæ studio conjunxisse. Ideoque nec factam ejus ab Aureliano mentionem, Barthio Adv. lib. xxxviii. cap. 3. censente. Nec denique unquam medicinæ operatum. Credat qui volet. Nec eam litem meam facio.

Medicum certè agnovit magnus Scaliger. Remedia quidem, Hippocratis et Galeni exemplo, aliunde congesta digessisse, ultrò largior, ipsam verò morborum τέκμαρσιν et θεραπείαν proprio ingenii ductu contextam pro me res ipsa loquitur. Quin ipsum pharmaca præbuisse, non mediocri gloria, ex ipsius ad Julium Callistum epistola satis liquet. Quorum artificiosam mistionem se accuratè intellexisse prodit ipse lib. vii. cap. 26. Unde Cornarius fortassis inter pharmaceuticos reposuit. Imò dedita opera ab aliis prætermissa proferre ac illustrare voluisse censuit Minadous, variæ eruditionis medicus.

Maximèque medicum ejus chirurgica probant, quæ Gesneri in Catalogo Chirurgorum sententia, veterum solus Latinè scripsit, ut verè ipsum inter Chirurgos reponat doctissimus Septalius. Tanta verò id fide peregit, ut Hieronymus ab Aquapendente, medicus et chirurgus usu vel annis nemini secundus, in Operat. Chirurg. cap. de Chir. Dent. his verbis sese in ipsius laudes diffuderit: “Mirabilis Celsus in omnibus: quem nocturna versare manu, versare diurna, consulo.”

Nec mirum: quum Celsus eruditissimo Manardo Epist. Medic. lib. ix. Epist. 1. bonus et fidelis Hippocratis interpres, licet in aliquo verbo quandoque lapsus videatur. Quod viro in omni literarum genere exercitato vel ipsa πολυγραφία libenter profectò condonari jubet, quamvis non diffiteatur ipse non pauca se ex aliena quandoque sententia posuisse.

Horatio pariter Augenio de Miss. Sanguin. lib. viii. Lomnio, Ronsseo, Schenckio, Jo. Heurnio, Bened. Matamoros, Rod. à Castro, innumerisque præclari judicii medicis, propter singularem et succinctam cum elegantia doctrinam, Latinus Hippocrates appellatur, in quo Pantini judicio Comment. ad Celsi lib. i. cap. 1. optimæ methodi ac viæ ra-

as a philosopher, and that I may use the language of Columella, "being skilled in natural philosophy, he joined that to medicine." Neither do I yield my assent to the opinion of Aurelian, Barth. Adver. lib. xxxviii. c. 3., and finally, "that he never practised medicine, let him believe it who will; I will not dispute about it with him."

The great Scaliger certainly acknowledges him to have been a physician; and that he dispensed medicine after the manner of Hippocrates and Galen is very evident to me, but that he prepared his doses by his own judgment and the symptoms of the disease. It is also very clear from his own letter to Julius Callistus, that he practised pharmacy with great success; and that he perfectly understood the art of compounding drugs, he himself gives a sufficient proof in lib. vii. c. 26. from whence Cornarius perhaps ranks him among druggists. Minadous, indeed, a physician of extensive learning, says that he lent his aid in bringing forward and illustrating neglected works which had been written by others.

His chirurgical works certainly prove him to have been a physician, which, in the opinion of Gesner in his Catalogue of Surgeons, he alone of the ancients wrote in Latin. The very learned Septalius also places him among surgeons: which art he practised with so much skill, that Hieronymus ab Aquapendente, a physician and surgeon, second to none either in theory or practice, speaks of him in this manner:—"Celsus! admirable in all things, whom I peruse day and night." Opera Chirurg. Cap. de Chir. Dent.

Neither is it surprising that the very learned Manardus should quote him in such high terms, Epist. Med. lib. ix. epist. 1, as a good and faithful interpreter of Hippocrates, although in some words he may be supposed to have erred, which he willingly admits may be excused in a man engaged in such a variety of literary pursuits, and even of writing; although it cannot be denied that he advanced many opinions of his own.

Horatius, together with Augenus, on blood-letting, lib. viii., Lomnius, Ronsseus, Schenckius, Heurnius, Bened. Matamoros, Rhodius of Cleves, and innumerable other physicians of eminent learning styled him the Latin Hippocrates, on account of his extraordinary learning joined to such purity of language, that in the judgment of Pantinus in his Commentaries on Celsus, lib. i. cap. 1, "the best method of



tionisque docendi discendique, et in summa brevitate mira artis et sapientiæ observatio plerunque animadvertatur.

Rectè igitur Agricola de Pond. Rom. lib. iv. "Celsi," inquit, "auctoritas medicis nota est, aut saltem esse debet." Quam elegantissimis verbis Cælius Rhodiginus Antiq. Lect. lib. xxvi. cap. 3. insinuavit: "A Cornelio Celso versuram faciunt multi. Verùm citra illius sententiam nihil fermè promunt; perinde ac verba sint veterum sacrorum, quæ demutasse piaculare flagitium planè censi debet, quodque hostiis majoribus procures."

Inde Fernelio, Franciæ Hippocrati, referente Plautio in Vita Fernelii, cùm ob orationis puritatem, tum ob sententiarum pondus, quàm charissimus fuit. Verùm, ne nimiis laudibus veriùs is oneretur, quàm ornetur, quem mortalium nemo rectè vituperavit: unicum Heurnii iudicium, inter cetera gravissimum, huic virtutum coronæ lemnisci loco satis erit.

Ita ille Meth. Stud. Med. cap. 5. "Latinos inter medicos primus est Cornelius Celsus: sed prudenter legendus. Nam in multis Asclepiadem Methodicum sectatur, ut fatetur ipse. HUIUS COTE STYLUM SUBIGEMUS, ET PLURIS LATINITATEM EJUS QUAM MEDICINAM FACIEMUS." Unicus itaque Celsus, ut scitè idem in Epist. ad Ronss. Celso, præfixa, medicis Latinis præferatur: qui pomœria Romanæ eloquentiæ eò protulit, ut medicina suavissimo ore eloquentiæ jam sese cultioribus ingeniis meritò commendet.

His quotquot naturæ associavit benignitas, æquos adferte animos, eleganti favete linguæ. Ita vobis, et verum animi sermonisque cultum, et firma valetudinis præsidia parabitis. Tantum est.

"Optandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano!"

teaching, the most rational plan of learning, with the most extreme brevity of art and science, pervade the greater part of his work."

Therefore Agricola, in his *Ponder. Romanorum*, lib. iv. very properly remarks, that the AUTHORITY OF CELSUS IS, OR OUGHT TO BE KNOWN TO ALL MEDICAL MEN. Cælius Rhodiginus has exclaimed in the most forcible language, that many depredations have been committed on the fame of Cornelius Celsus, but, with the exception of promulgating his opinions to the world, they have elicited nothing of their own; they have mangled or sophisticated those sacred records, which crime ought to be deemed a sacrilege, and should be expiated by retributive atonement proportioned to the deed.

Hence Plautius in his life of Fernelius, the French Hippocrates, mentions him in the most complimentary manner, not only for the purity of his language, but also for the solidity of his opinions. But lest we should overrate his excellencies in our zeal to display his genius, which no one has blamed with propriety; let us add the opinion of Heurnius, who assigns a crown of virtue to him rather than a garland of flowers.

The same author, in his *Study of Medicine*, says, chap. 5, that Celsus is the first of Latin physicians, but he must be read with caution, for in many things he followed the method of Asclepiades as he himself confesses. THEREFORE ON HIS MODEL LET US FORM OUR STYLE, AND ADMIRE HIS LATIN MORE THAN HIS MEDICINE. We have the same opinion prefixed in a letter to Ronsseus' edition of Celsus, wherein he says, "We should prefer his Latin to his medicine, for he has deservedly obtained the highest station in Roman literature by his work, so that the study of medicine may now recommend itself to the man of genius in the sweetest strains of eloquence."

Therefore let that felicitous association, in youth, be united to an unbiassed mind, and cultivate the elegance of his language. So that by these means they will ensure for themselves the most valuable improvement both of mind, language, and the safest remedies for the recovery of health. I must finish, "with the sincerest wish, that you may always possess a sound mind in a vigorous frame."





# CONTENTS

## OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

---

### BOOK I.

	PAGE
PREFACE .....	1
CHAP. I. Instructions for healthy Persons.....	25
II. Rules to be observed by those who have a Weakness of the Stomach .....	26
III. Some Observations applicable to new Incidents, and the different Constitutions, Sexes, and Ages, and Seasons of the Year .....	30
IV. Rules for those who are affected in some other part of the Body, and first, of those who have some infirmity of the Head .....	42
V. Of Lippitudo, Catarrh, and Disorders of the Tonsils.....	44
VI. Relaxation of the Bowels, and Treatment .....	45
VII. Diseases of the Colon .....	46
VIII. The Management of a Weak Stomach .....	46
IX. On those who labour under Affections of the Nerves.....	48
X. Pestilential Diseases.....	50

---

### BOOK II.

INTRODUCTION.....	52
CHAP. I. Of the different Seasons, Weather, Ages, Constitutions, and the Diseases peculiar to each .....	53
II. The Prognostics of Disease .....	60
III. What may be considered good Symptoms in Sick People .....	62
IV. Unfavourable Symptoms of the Sick .....	64
V. The Symptoms of protracted Illness .....	67
VI. The Harbingers of Death.....	68
VII. The particular Signs of each Disease .....	74
VIII. The favourable and unfavourable Symptoms in certain Diseases ....	85
IX. Of the Treatment of Diseases .....	98
X. On Blood-letting .....	99
XI. Of Cupping .....	106
XII. Of Purging .....	108
XIII. Of Vomiting .....	111
XIV. Of Friction .....	113
XV. Of Gestation .....	117
XVI. Of Abstinence .....	119
XVII. Of Perspiration .....	120

CHAP.	PAGE
XVIII. Of the various Kinds of Food and Drink .....	124
XIX. General Properties of different Foods .....	130
XX. Of those Things containing good Juices .....	131
XXI. Of those Things affording bad Juices .....	132
XXII. Of mild and acrid Things .....	133
XXIII. Of Expectorants and their Opposites .....	134
XXIV. Such Things as accord with the Stomach .....	134
XXV. Of Things improper for the Stomach .....	135
XXVI. Of those Things which produce Flatus .....	136
XXVII. Of the Calefacients and Refrigerants .....	137
XXVIII. Of those Things which are easily decomposed in the Stomach .....	138
XXIX. Of those Things which move the Bowels .....	139
XXX. Of those Things which bind the Bowels .....	140
XXXI. Of Diuretics .....	141
XXXII. Of those Things which induce Sleep .....	142
XXXIII. Of such Things as draw and soften the Body .....	142

### BOOK III.

I. Of the different Kinds of Diseases .....	145
II. General Diagnostics of acute and chronic, increasing and decreasing Diseases; Mode of Treatment; necessary Precautions on the Apprehension of Disease .....	147
III. Of the Species of Fevers .....	151
IV. The different Modes of Treatment.....	154
V. The Treatment of each Species of Fever, and the Times of giving Food .....	162
VI. The Time proper for giving Drink to the Sick.....	167
VII. The Treatment of Pestilential and Ardent Fevers.....	175
VIII. Treatment of a Semitertian .....	178
IX. Treatment of slow Fevers .....	179
X. Treatment of Fever with concomitant Symptoms .....	181
XI. Treatment of the cold Stage which precedes Fever .....	183
XII. Treatment of Shivering in Fevers .....	185
XIII. Treatment of Quotidian Fever .....	187
XIV. Treatment of Tertian Fever.....	188
XV. Treatment of Quartan Fever .....	190
XVI. Treatment of a Double Quartan .....	192
XVII. Treatment of a Quotidian Fever arising from a Quartan .....	194
XVIII. The several Species of Insanity, and its Treatment .....	195
XIX. The Cardiacus, and its Treatment .....	204
XX. On Lethargy, and its Treatment .....	208
XXI. On Dropsy .....	210
XXII. Of Consumption, and its Species .....	218
XXIII. Of Epilepsy .....	225
XXIV. Of the Jaundice .....	229
XXV. Of Elephantiasis .....	231
XXVI. Of thunder-struck Persons, or Apoplexy .....	232
XXVII. Of Paralysis .....	233

## BOOK IV.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. Of the internal Parts of the Human Body .....	239
II. Treatment of Diseases arising from the Head .....	245
III. Diseases of the Neck .....	253
IV. The Diseases of the Fauces, and first of Angina .....	257
V. The Diseases of the Stomach .....	269
VI. Of Pleuritis .....	274
VII. Of the Diseases of the Viscera, and in the first place, of the Lungs .....	277
VIII. Of Hepatitis .....	280
IX. Diseases of the Spleen .....	282
X. The Diseases of the Kidneys .....	284
XI. Diseases of the Intestines, and first of Cholera .....	286
XII. The Cœliac Disease of the Stomach .....	289
XIII. The Disease of the smaller Intestines .....	291
XIV. The Disease of the larger Intestine .....	294
XV. Of Dysentery .....	295
XVI. Of Lienteria .....	298
XVII. Of Worms occupying the alimentary Canal .....	300
XVIII. Of a Tenesmus .....	301
XIX. Of Diarrhœa .....	302
XX. On Diseases of the Womb .....	307
XXI. Treatment of seminal Discharges .....	310
XXII. Diseases of the Hip Joint .....	311
XXIII. Of a Pain in the Knees .....	313
XXIV. The Diseases in the Joints of the Hands and Feet .....	313
XXV. The Treatment of Convalescence .....	318





## No. 1.

### Roman Measures of Capacity for Liquids, reduced to English Wine Measure from the Medical Tables of DR. ARBUTHNOT.

										Eng. Gal.	Pints.	Inches.
Ligula .....										0	$\frac{1}{48}$	0.117
4	Cyathus .....									0	$\frac{1}{12}$	0.489
6	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Acetabulum .....								0	$\frac{1}{4}$	0.704
12	3	2	Quartarius .....							0	$\frac{1}{4}$	1.409
24	6	4	2	Hemina .....						0	$\frac{1}{2}$	2.818
48	12	8	4	2	Sextarius .....					0	1	5.636
288	72	48	24	12	6	Congius .....				0	7	4.942
1152	288	192	96	48	24	4	Urna .....			3	$4\frac{1}{2}$	5.33
2304	576	384	192	96	48	8	2	Amphora .....		7	1	10.66
46080	11520	7680	3840	1920	960	160	40	20	Culeus ..	143	3	11.095

## No. 2.

### Troy Weight corresponding in Measure and Gravity.

	Urna.	Libra.	Uncia.	Den.	Scrup.	Sextans.	Chalcus.	Grana.
Amphora .....	2	80	960	6720	20160	40320	403200	420480
Urna .....	1	40	480	3360	10080	26160	210600	210240
Congius .....	$\frac{1}{4}$	10	120	840	2540	5040	50400	52920
Sextarius .....		20	140	420	840	8400		8760
Libra .....		12	84	252	504	5040		5256
Hemina .....		$8\frac{1}{2}$	60	180	360	3600		3759
Acetabulum .....		$2\frac{1}{2}$	15	45	90	900		939
Sequi-Cyathus .....		$2\frac{1}{2}$	15	45	90	900		939
Cyathus .....		$1\frac{1}{2}$	10	30	60	600		626
Sescuncia .....		$1\frac{1}{2}$	$10\frac{1}{2}$	$31\frac{1}{2}$	63	630		657
Uncia .....		1	7	21	42	420		438
Cochleare .....			$2\frac{1}{2}$	$7\frac{1}{2}$	15	150		156
Drachma .....			1	3	6	60		$62\frac{1}{2}$
Denarius .....			1	3	6	60		$62\frac{1}{2}$
Scrupulus .....				1	2	20		$20\frac{1}{2}$
Scrup. dimid. ....					$\frac{1}{2}$	1		$10\frac{1}{2}$
Obolus .....					1	10		$10\frac{1}{2}$
Sextans .....					1	10		$10\frac{1}{2}$
Chalcus .....						1		$1\frac{1}{30}$

## No. 3.

## The Weights of CELSUS compared with Apothecaries' Weight.

Libra.	Sescuncia.	Uncia.	Semuncia.	Denarius.	Sextantes.	Gr. Troy wt.	Apoth. wt.			
							℥.	ʒ.	℥.	Gr.
1	= 8	= 12	= 24	= 84	= 504	= 5208	= 10	6	2	8
	1	= 1½	= 3	= 10½	= 63	= 651	= 1	2	2	11
		1	= 2	= 7	= 42	= 434	= 0	7	0	14
			1	= 3½	= 21	= 217	= 0	3	1	17
				1	= 6	= 62	= 0	1	0	2
					1	= 10½	= 0	0	0	1

Note 1. The Romans divided all integers, as they did their As, into twelve equal parts called *uncia*; thus—

SEXTANS = was equal to the sixth of an AS, or two *uncia*.

QUADRANS = was equal to one-fourth, or three *uncia*.

TRIENS = was equal to a third part, or four *uncia*.

SEMIS = was equal to one-half, or six *uncia*.

BES = was equal to two-thirds, or eight *uncia*.

DODRANS = was equal to three-fourths, or nine *uncia*.

P . . . = this joined to any other mark signifies by weight.

P . , per se = signifies a pound.

℥ . . . = to one denarius.

= non per se = nearly the sixth of a drachm.

= = . = to two sextans.

, . . . = to one sextans.

— . . . = to one-half of a sextans.

The weights of all these differ, as the INTEGER may be the LIBRA, the UNCIA, or DENARIUS, which the attentive reader can easily calculate if he be so disposed, observing that they are not to be taken for aliquot parts of the denarius, but of the preceding mark. The nature of the composition and the character prefixed will be the best explication.

Note 2. The mark for the Denarius was originally X or ✕ containing ten small asses. This was confounded by the transcribers with × being equivalent to ten Denarii: so that after all the labour of critics and commentators, the proportions are irrecoverably lost in several formulæ, and for this reason I have followed the example of later editors in affixing an arbitrary mark thus ✕.

Note 3. The characters for quantities are variously marked in different editions, and the same character has several values affixed on it. There is one of this uncertainty in Celsus, that is Z., which we are informed by Rhodius in his Treatise on the Weights and Measures of Celsus, expresses the *Libra*, the *Sescuncia*, the *Sextans* of a pound, the *Denarius* and the *Sextans* of a *Denarius*. Which of these different values it bears must be determined by the connection. When it follows the mark of a *Denarius*, it can mean no more than the *Sextans* of a *Denarius*.

Note 4. P. stands for PONDO, which is an indeclinable word, and when joined with NUMBERS signifies a pound: when with other WEIGHTS, it is equivalent to PONDUS or weight in general. The very accurate and learned antiquarian, Greaves, from repeated experiments, computed the Roman Denarius to contain 62 grains English Troy weight, from which the proportions of the other weights are determined. The Roman Foot is computed at 11.604 inches, which is the standard of capacity. The *Manipulus* was equal to 120 gr. The *Pugillus*, as much as may be taken up in three fingers was computed at 30 gr. The *Amygdala* with its shell 30 gr. The *Amygdala* decorticated 10 gr. Egyptian Bean 20 gr. The Common Italian Bean 10 gr. Granum Piperis 2 gr. The Nux Juglandis 120 gr.



# A. CORN. CELSI

## DE MEDICINA LIBER PRIMUS.

### PREFATIO.

UT alimenta sanis corporibus agricultura, sic sanitatem ægris medicina promittit. Hæc nusquam quidem non est. Siquidem etiam imperitissimæ gentes herbas, aliaque prompta in auxilium vulnerum, morborumque noverunt. Veruntamen apud Græcos aliquanto magis quam in cæteris nationibus excolta est, ac ne apud hos quidem à prima origine, sed paucis ante nos seculis; utpote cum vetustissimus auctor Æsculapius celebretur. Qui quoniam adhuc rudem et vulgarem, hanc scientiam paulo subtilius excoluit, in Deorum numerum receptus est. Hujus deinde duo filii, Podalirius et Machaon, bello Trojano ducem Agamemnonem secuti,

### ORDO.

## LIBER PRIMUS AUR. COR. CELSI DE MEDICINA.

### PREFATIO.

UT agricultura promittit alimenta sanis corporibus, sic medicina (promittit) sanitatem ægris. Quidem, nusquam, hæc non est. Siquidem etiam imperitissimæ gentes noverunt herbas, que alia prompta in auxilium vulnerum, que morborum. Veruntamen excolta est apud Græcos aliquanto magis, quam in cæteris nationibus, ac ne quidem, apud hos à prima origine, sed paucis seculis ante nos; utpote cum Æsculapius celebretur vetustissimus auctor. Qui, quoniam excoluit hanc scientiam adhuc rudem et vulgarem, paulo subtilius, receptus est in numerum Deorum. Deinde, hujus duo filii, Podalirius et Machaon, secuti ducem Agamemnonem bello Trojano,

### TRANSLATION.

## THE FIRST BOOK

### OF

## AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS

### ON MEDICINE.

### PREFACE (1) (a).

As agriculture provides aliment to the sound body, so medicine does health to the sick. Indeed, no part of the world is without this art. For the most uncultivated nations know the properties of herbs, and other prompt remedies for wounds and diseases. But it was cultivated by the Greeks, a little more than other nations, yet not even by them from the origin of that people, but a few ages before us; as it would appear Æsculapius is celebrated as their most ancient author, who, because he cultivated this art, hitherto rude and barbarous, a little more skilfully, was received into the number of their gods. Afterwards, his two sons, Podalirius (2) and Machaon, having followed their general, Agamemnon, to the Trojan war, did not

(a) The numbers (1), (2), (3), &c. refer to Notes at the end of the volume.

non mediocrem opem commilitonibus suis attulerunt. Quos tamen Homerus non in pestilentia, neque in variis generibus morborum aliquid attulisse, auxilii, sed vulneribus tantummodo ferro et medicamentis mederi solitos esse, proposuit. Ex quo apparet, has partes medicinæ solas ab his esse tentatas, easque esse vetustissimas. Eodemque auctore disci potest, morbos tum ad iram deorum immortalium relatos esse, et ab iisdem opem posci solitam. Verique simile est, inter nulla auxilia adversæ valetudinis, plerumque tamen eam bonam contigisse ob bonos mores, quos neque desidia, neque luxuria vitiant. Siquidem hæc duo corpora, prius in Græcia, deinde apud nos affixerunt. Ideoque multiplex ista medicina, neque olim, neque apud alias gentes necessaria, vix aliquos ex nobis ad senectutis principia perducit. Ergo etiam post eos, de quibus retuli, nulli clari viri medicinam exercuerunt; donec majore studio litterarum disciplina agitari cœpit, quæ ut animo præcipue omnium necessaria, sic corpori inimica est. Primoque medendi scientia, sapientiæ pars habebatur, ut et morborum curatio, et rerum naturæ contemplatio sub iisdem auctoribus nata sit: scilicet iis hanc

## ORDO.

attulerunt suis commilitonibus, non mediocrem opem: tamen quos Homerus proposuit, non attulisse aliquid auxilii in pestilentia, neque in variis generibus morborum, sed solitos esse mederi vulneribus tantummodo, ferro et medicamentis. Ex quo apparet, has partes medicinæ, solas esse tentatas, ab his; que eas esse vetustissimas: que potest disci eodem auctore, tum morbos esse relatos ad iram immortalium Deorum; et solitam posci opem ab iisdem. Que est simile veri, inter nonnulla auxilia valetudinis adversæ, tamen plerumque eam contigisse bonam, ob bonos mores, quos neque desidia, neque luxuria vitiant. Siquidem hæc duo (vitia) prius affixerunt corpora in Græcia, deinde apud nos. Ideoque ista multiplex medicina, neque necessaria olim, neque apud alias gentes, vix perducit aliquos ex nobis ad principia senectutis. Ergo etiam post eos de quibus retuli, nonnulli clari viri exercuerunt medicinam, donec disciplina litterarum cœpit agitari majore studio, quæ, ut est omnium præcipue necessaria animo, sic (est) inimica corpori. Que primò scientia medendi habebatur pars sapientiæ, ut, et curatio morborum, et contemplatio naturæ rerum, nata sit sub iisdem auctoribus; scilicet, his requi-

## TRANSLATION.

render little assistance to their fellow soldiers. But Homer has represented that they did not attempt to cure pestilence nor various other kinds of diseases, but were in the habit of dressing wounds by the knife and medicines only: by which it appears, they were accustomed to treat surgical cases only, and that this was the most ancient. It may be learned from the same author, that diseases were then ascribed to the anger of the immortal gods, and it was usual to implore their aid. It is also very likely, that as there were but few remedies known for sickness, yet for the most part it happened that men enjoyed good health from the simplicity of their morals, which neither idleness nor luxury had vitiated. Since, indeed, these two vices, first in Greece, then among us, have greatly exerted their baneful influence on the human frame. Hence, that multiplied variety of remedies, unnecessary in ancient times and even now among other nations, can hardly support any of us to the first stages of old age. Therefore, after those whom I have mentioned, few men of eminence practised medicine until learning began to be prosecuted with greater ardour, which, as it is of all things most necessary to the mind, so it is equally injurious to the body; and, at first, the science of healing was esteemed a branch of philosophy, as the cure of diseases and the study of the laws of nature had their origin under the same masters; which may be supposed from those chiefly

maxime requirentibus, qui corporum suorum robora quieta cogitatione, nocturnaue vigilia minuerant. Ideoque multos ex sapientiæ professoribus peritos ejus fuisse accepimus; clarissimos vero ex iis Pythagoram, et Empedoclem, et Democritum. Hujus autem, ut quidam crediderunt, discipulus Hippocrates Cous, primus quidem ex omnibus memoria dignis, ab studio sapientiæ disciplinam hanc separavit, vir et arte et facundia insignis. Post quem Diocles Carystius, deinde Praxagoras et Chrysippus, tum Herophilus et Erasistratus sic artem hanc exercuerunt, ut etiam in diversas curandi vias processerint. Iisdemque temporibus in tres partes medicina diducta est: ut una esset, quæ victu; altera, quæ medicamentis; tertia, quæ manu mederetur. Primam *διαιτητικὴν*, secundam *φαρμακευτικὴν*, tertiam *χειρουργικὴν* Græci nominarunt. Ejus autem quæ victu morbos curat, longe clarissimi auctores etiam altius quædam agitare conati, rerum quoque naturæ sibi cognitionem vindicarunt, tamquam sine ea, trunca et debilis medicina esset. Post quos Serapion, primus omnium, nihil hanc rationalem disciplinam pertinere ad medicinam, professus, in usu tantum et experimentis eam posuit. Quem Apollonius et

## ORDO.

rentibus maximè hanc, qui minuerant robora suorum corporum, inquieta cogitatione, que nocturna vigilia; ideoque accepimus multos ex professoribus sapientiæ, fuisse peritos ejus: vero Pythagoram, et Empedoclem, et Democritum clarissimos ex his. Autem Hippocrates Cous hujus discipulus, (ut quidam crediderunt;) vir insignis et arte et facundia, ex omnibus dignis memoria, primus, quidem, separavit hanc disciplinam ab studio sapientiæ. Post quem Diocles Carystius, deinde Praxagoras, et Chrysippus; tum Herophilus et Erasistratus sic exercuerunt hanc artem, ut etiam processerint in diversâs vias curandi. Iisdemque temporibus, medicina deducta est in tres partes, ut una esset, quæ mederetur victu, altera quæ medicamentis, tertia quæ manu. Græci nominaverunt Primam *Διαιτητικὴν*, id est Diætetice, secundam *Φαρμακευτικὴν*, id est Pharmaceutice, tertiam *Χειρουργικὴν*, id est Chirurgice. Autem, longè clarissimi auctores ejus quæ curat morbos victu, etiam conati agitare quædam altius, vindicaverunt sibi cognitionem rerum naturæ quoque, tanquam sine ea medicina esset trunca et debilis. Post quos, Serapion primus omnium, professus, hanc rationalem disciplinam nihil pertinere ad medicinam, posuit eam in usu et ex-

## TRANSLATION.

requiring its aid, who had impaired their constitutions by arduous study and midnight watching. Accordingly, we learn that many professors of philosophy were skilled in it. Amongst whom, Pythagoras, Empedocles, and Democritus, were the most distinguished. But Hippocrates, of Cos, a disciple of the last, as some believe, was the first worthy of memory who separated this science from philosophy; a man not less admired for his skill in this art than in that of eloquence. After whom, Diocles, the Carystian; after these, Praxagoras and Chrysippus; then Herophilus and Erasistratus also exercised this art, although they proceeded in different modes of treatment. And in those times medicine was so divided into three parts, that there should be one which would be cured by diet, another by medicine, and a third by manual operation. The first of these the Greeks called diætetice, the second pharmaceuticè, and the third chirurgicè. But by far the most illustrious professors of that branch which cures diseases by regimen have endeavoured also to embrace natural philosophy. They have also claimed to themselves a certain profound knowledge, without which medicine would be lame and imperfect. After whom came Serapion, who, first of all, maintained that this theoretical study did not relate to medicine: he confined it to practice and experiments.



Glaucias et aliquanto post Heraclides Tarentinus, et alia quoque non mediocres viri secuti, ex ipsa professione se ἐμπειρικὸς appellaverunt. Sic in duas partes ea quoque, quæ victu curat, medicina divisa est, aliis rationalem artem, aliis usum tantum sibi vindicantibus: nullo vero quidquam post eos, qui supra comprehensi sunt, agitante, nisi quod acceperat: donec Asclepiades medendi rationem ex magna parte mutavit. Ex cujus successoribus Themison nuper ipse quoque quædam in senectute deflexit. Et per hos quidem maxime viros salutaris ista nobis professio increvit.

Quoniam autem ex tribus medicinæ partibus, ut difficillima, sic etiam clarissima est ea, quæ morbis medetur, ante omnia de hac dicendum est. Et quia prima in eo dissensio est, quod alii sibi experimentorum tantummodo notitiam necessariam esse contendunt; alii, nisi corporum rerumque ratione comperta, non satis potentem usum esse proponunt: indicandum est, quæ maxime ex utraque parte dicantur, quo facilius nostra quoque opinio interponi possit. Igitur ii, qui rationalem medicinam profitentur, hæc necessaria esse proponunt: abditarum et morbos continentium cau-

## ORDO.

perimentis. Quem Apollonius, et Glaucias, et aliquanto post Heraclides Tarentinus, et alii quoque, non mediocres viri secuti, appellaverunt se ἐμπειρικὸς ex ipsa professione. Sic quoque ea medicina, quæ curat victu, divisa est in duas partes, aliis vindicantibus sibi artem rationalem, aliis usum tantum: vero nullo, agitante quidquam, post eos, qui comprehensi sunt supra, nisi quod acceperat: donec Asclepiades mutavit rationem medendi ex magna parte. Ex successoribus cujus Themison ipse nuper, deflexit quædam quoque in senectute. Et quidem per hos viros maxime ista salutaris professio increvit nobis.

Autem quoniam ex tribus partibus medicinæ, ut difficillima, ea quæ medetur morbus, sic est etiam clarissima, de hac dicendum est ante omnia. Et prima, quia, est dissensio in eo, quod alii tantummodo contendunt notitiam experimentorum esse necessariam sibi: alii proponunt, nisi ratione corporum quæ rerum comperta; usum non esse satis potentem: indicandum est quæ dicantur ex utraque parte maxime; quod nostra opinio possit interponi facilius quoque. Igitur hi qui profitentur rationalem medicinam, proponunt hæc esse necessaria. Notitiam abditarum

## TRANSLATION.

Apollonius and Glaucias, and a little after followed Heraclides, a Tarentine, and others of some celebrity, who, from the profession itself, called themselves empirics. So that branch of medicine which cures by diet was divided into two parts; some claiming to themselves the theoretical art, others only the practical. But after those who are mentioned above, none attempted anything, except what he had received from his predecessors, until Asclepiades changed the art of healing in a great measure. Themison, one of his successors, also has lately (3) differed from him in some things in his old age. And, indeed, this salutary profession has been greatly improved to us by these great men.

But since, of the three parts of medicine, that which relates to the general treatment of disease, as it is the most difficult, so it is also the most noble; to this we must direct our investigation before we can proceed any farther. Because on this point there is some dissension; some contend, that a knowledge of experiment, is only necessary, whilst others affirm, that practice alone is not sufficient without a knowledge of the constituents (4) of bodies: the principal arguments on each side will be pointed out, by which my own opinion may be the more easily introduced. Therefore those who profess theoretical medicine, contend that diseases, and a knowledge of their latent and contingent causes to be

sarum notitiam, deinde evidentium, post hæc etiam naturalium actionum, novissime partium interiorum. Abditas causas vocant, in quibus requiritur, ex quibus principiis nostra corpora sint, quid secundam, quid adversam valetudinem faciat. Neque enim credunt, posse eum scire, quomodo morbos curare conveniat, qui, unde hi sint, ignoret. Neque esse dubium, quin alia curatione opus sit, si ex quatuor principiis vel superans aliquod vel deficiens adversam valetudinem creat; ut quidam ex sapientię professoribus dixerunt: alia, si in humidis omne vitium est; ut Herophilo visum est: alia, si in spiritu; ut Hippocrati: alia, si sanguis in eas venas, quæ spiritui accommodatæ sunt, transfunditur, et inflammationem, quam Græci *φλεγμονήν* nominant, excitat, eaque inflammatio talem motum efficit, qualis in febre est; ut Erasistrato placuit: alia, si manantia corpuscula, per invisibilia foramina subsistendo, iter claudunt, ut Asclepiades contendit. Eum vero recte curaturum, quem prima origo causæ non fefellerit. Neque vero inficiantur, experimenta quoque esse necessaria; sed ne ad hæc quidem aditum fieri potuisse, nisi ab aliqua ratione, contendunt. Non enim quidlibet anti-

## ORDO.

causarum et morbos continendum, deinde evidentium, post hæc etiam actionum naturalium, novissime, partium interiorum. Vocant abditas causas, in quibus requiritur, ex quibus principiis nostra corpora sint, quid faciat secundam, quid adversam valetudinem. Enim neque credunt eum posse scire quomodo conveniat curare morbos, qui ignoret unde hi sint. Neque esse dubium, quin sit opus alia curatione, si aliquod ex quatuor principiis, vel superans, vel deficiens, creat valetudinem adversam; ut quidam ex professoribus dixerunt; alia si omne vitium est in humidis; ut est visum Herophilo; alia, si in spiritu; ut Hippocrati: alia, si sanguis transfunditur in eas venas, quæ sunt accommodatæ spiritui, et excitat inflammationem, quam Græci nominant *Φλεγμονήν* (Phlegmonen), que ea inflammatio efficit talem motum, qualis est in febre; ut placuit Erasistrato: alia, si corpuscula manentia per invisibilia foramina claudunt iter subsistendo; ut Asclepiades contendit. Vero eum curaturum recte, quem prima origo non fefellerit. Vero neque inficiantur experimenta esse necessaria quoque; sed quidem, contendunt ne aditum potuisse fieri ad hæc, nisi ab aliqua ratione. Enim antiquiores viros non inculcasce quidlibet ægris;

## TRANSLATION.

necessary, then of their evident ones; after which of their natural functions, and lastly of their internal structure. They call those hidden causes, by which it is required to be known the component principles of our bodies, what restores health, what constitutes disease. For they do not believe it possible for a man to be competent to cure a disease, who is ignorant of its source: nor can there be any doubt for another mode of treatment, if there be a redundancy or deficiency of any one of the four elementary principles existing in a disease, as some of the philosophers have maintained; another, if the whole of the malady be in the humours, as it appeared to Herophilus; another, if by inspiration, after Hippocrates; another, if the blood be extravasated into those vessels (5) which are destined for air, and excites inflammation which the Greeks designate phlegmonè, and, that inflammation produces such arterial action as may be seen in fever; according to Erasistratus; another again, led by Asclepiades, insisted on the atomic particles being obstructed in their passage by invisible foramina: but that he will assuredly succeed well, who may not have been deceived in the proximate cause. Neither do they deny the necessity of experiments, but contend, even these cannot be obtained without some theory; for the ancients did not administer, any thing which

quiores viros ægris inculcasse; sed cogitasse, quid maxime conveniret, et id usu explorasse, quo ante conjectura aliqua duxisset. Neque interesse, an nunc jam pleraque explorata sint, si a consilio tamen cœperunt. Et id quidem in multis ita se habere. Sæpe vero etiam nova incidere genera morborum, in quibus nihil adhuc usus ostenderit; et ideo necessarium sit animadvertere, unde ea cœperint; sine quo nemo mortalium reperire possit, cur hoc, quam illo, potius utatur. Et ob hæc quidem in obscuro positas causas persequuntur. Evidentes vero eas appellant, in quibus quærun-  
t, initium morbi calor attulerit, an frigus; fames, an satietas; et quæ similia sunt. Occursurum enim vitio dicunt eum, qui originem non ignorarit. Naturales vero corporis actiones appellant, per quas spiritum trahimus et emittimus; cibum potionemque et assumimus et concoquimus: itemque, per quas eadem hæc in omnes membrorum partes digeruntur. Tum requirunt etiam, quare venæ nostræ modo submit-  
tant se, modo attollant; quæ ratio somni, quæ vigilæ sit: sine quorum notitia, neminem putant vel occurrere, vel mederi morbis, inter hæc nascentibus, posse. Ex quibus quia maxime perti-

## ORDO.

sed cogitasse quid conveniret maxime; et id explorasse usu, quo ante duxisset aliquâ conjecturâ. Neque interesse, an pleraque explorata sint nunc jam, si tamen cœperint à consilio. Et quidem, id habere se ita in multis. Vero etiam, nova genera morborum sæpe incidere, in quibus usus ostenderit nihil adhuc; et ideo sit necessarium animadvertere, unde ea cœperint; sine quo, nemo mortalium possit reperire cur utatur hoc, potius quam illo. Et quidem ob hæc persequuntur causas positas in obscuro. Vero appellant eas evidentes in quibus quærun-  
t, an calor, an frigus attulerit initium morbi; (an) fames an satietas; et quæ sunt similia. Enim dicunt eum qui non ignorarit originem occursurum vitio. Verò appellant naturales actiones corporis per quas trahimus et emittimus spiritum; assumimus et concoquimus cibum que potionem; que item per quas hæc eadem digeruntur in omnes partes membrorum. Tum etiam requirunt, quare nostræ venæ modò submittant se, modò attollant; quæ sit ratio somni, quæ vigilæ. Sine notitia quorum putant neminem posse vel occurrere mederi morbis nascentibus inter hæc. Quia, ex quibus, conco-

## TRANSLATION.

might have pleased the patient; but carefully considered what might be most proper, and discovered that by practice, which had previously been pointed out by some conjecture. Neither does it interest us to discuss those remedies now discovered, provided they began on a rational theory: and they affirm the same argument to be applicable in many cases; but new species of diseases frequently appear in which practice, as yet, has disclosed nothing: and on this account it is necessary to investigate their origin; without which no mortal can discover, why he should use one remedy, rather than another. And for these reasons they examine the causes enveloped in obscurity. They designate those evident causes, in which they inquire, whether heat or cold, hunger or excess, and such like, may have given origin to the disease; for they maintain that a man can oppose a malady who is not ignorant of its origin.

They call those natural actions of the body by which we inspire and expire the breath, the reception and digestion of our food and drink, and also by what means they are conveyed to all parts of the body. Then they also inquire, from what cause our arteries rise and fall, what may be the theory of sleep and vigilance; without a knowledge of which they think no one can either mitigate or cure incipient diseases arising from these causes. By which, it appears they attach much



nere ad rem concoctio videtur, huic potissimum insistunt; et duce alii Erasistrato, teri cibum in ventre contendunt; alii Plistonico Praxagoræ discipulo, putrescere; alii credunt Hippocrati, per calorem cibos concoqui: acceduntque Asclepiadis æmuli, qui, omnia ista vana et supervacua esse, proponunt: nihil enim concoqui, sed crudam materiam, sicut assumpta est, in corpus omne deduci. Et hæc quidem inter eos parum constant; illud vero convenit, alium dandum cibum laborantibus, si hoc; alium, si illud verum est. Nam si teritur intus, eum quærendum esse, qui facillime teri possit; si putrescit, eum, in quo hoc expeditissimum est; si calor concoquit, eum, qui maxime calorem movet: at nihil ex his esse quærendum, si nihil concoquitur; ea vero sumenda, quæ maxime manent, qualia assumpta sunt. Eademque ratione, cum spiritus gravis est, cum somnus aut vigilia urget, eum mederi posse arbitrantur, qui prius illa ipsa qualiter eveniant, perceperit. Præter hæc, cum in interioribus partibus et dolores et morborum varia genera nascantur, neminem putant his adhibere posse remedia, qui ipsas ignoret.

## ORDO.

tio videtur pertinere ad rem maximè; insistunt potissimum huic; et duce Erasistrato, alii contendunt cibum teri in ventre; alii Plistonico discipulo Praxagoræ, putrescere; alii credunt Hippocrati, cibos concoqui per calorem. Quæ æmuli Asclepiadis accedunt, qui proponunt omnia ista esse vana et supervacua: enim nihil concoqui, sed crudam materiam, sicut assumpta, est deduci in omne corpus. Et hæc quidem parum constant inter eos: vero illud convenit, alium cibum dandum laborantibus, si hoc est verum, si illud, alium. Nam si teritur intus, eum esse quærendum, qui possit teri facillime. Si putrescit, eum, in quo hoc est expeditissimum. Si calor concoquit, eum qui movet calorem maxime. At nihil ex his esse quærendum, si nihil concoquitur; vero, ea sumenda, quæ manent maxime, quali assumpta sunt. Eademque ratione, cum spiritus est gravis, cum somnus aut vigilia urget, arbitrantur eum posse mederi, qui prius perceperit qualiter illa ipsa eveniant. Præter hæc, cum varia genera et dolores et morborum nascantur interioribus partibus, putant neminem posse adhibere remedia his, qui ipsas ignoret. Ergo esse neces-

## TRANSLATION.

importance to concoction (6), and insist upon it especially; others led by Erasistratus, contend that the food is triturated in the stomach; some after Plistonius, the follower of Praxagoras, by putrescence; others again believe Hippocrates, that our ingesta is concocted by caloric. But the emulators of Asclepiades who succeeded them, maintained that all those theories were vain and superfluous; that there is no digestion effected, but the crude matter is distributed into all parts of the body, in the same state that it was received. And in these things they are not consistent; but this they admit, that a certain regimen ought to be followed by the sick, if this theory be true, another, if that. For if it be triturated within, as they say, that kind ought to be selected, which will be most easily reduced; if it becomes putrid, that which most expeditiously undergoes this decomposition; if heat effects digestion, that which promotes heat most; but none of these things are admissible, if there be no concoction, therefore such things are to be taken, as are most likely to remain in the same state.

And for the same reason, when there is a dyspnœa; or when the patient is oppressed with sleep or watching, they suppose that he, who first ascertains from what cause these things proceed, will be able to cure them. Besides these, since pains and various kinds of diseases may arise in the internal parts, they consider no one capable of applying the proper remedies to those parts, of which he may

Necessarium ergo esse, incidere corpora mortuorum, eorumque viscera atque intestina scrutari; longeque optime fecisse Herophilum et Erasistratum, qui nocentes homines, a regibus ex carcere acceptos, vivos inciderint, considerantque, etiamnum spiritu remanente, ea, quæ natura ante clausisset, eorumque positum, colorem, figuram, magnitudinem, ordinem, duritiem, mollietatem, lævorem, contactum; processus deinde singulorum et recessus, et sive quid inseritur alteri, sive quid partem alterius in se recipit. Neque enim, cum dolor intus incidit, scire quid doleat, eum, qui qua parte quodque viscus intestinumve sit, non cognoverit: neque curari id quod ægrum est, posse ab eo, qui, quid sit, ignoret. Et cum per vulnus alicujus viscera patefacta sunt, eum, qui sanæ cujusque colorem partis ignoret, nescire quid integrum, quid corruptum sit; ita ne succurrere quidem posse corruptis. Aptiusque extrinsecus imponi remedia, compertis interiorum et sedibus et figuris, cognitaque eorum magnitudine: similesque omnia quæ, posita sunt, rationes habere. Neque esse crudele, sicut plerique proponunt, hominum nocentium, et horum quoque paucorum, suppliciiis remedia

## ORDO.

sarium incidere corpora mortuorum, que scrutari viscera atque intestina eorum; que (proponunt) Herophilum et Erasistratum fecisse longè optime qui inciderint homines nocentes vivos, acceptos à regibus, ex carcere, que considerant etiamnum spiritu remanente, ea, quæ natura clausisset ante, que positum eorum, colorem, figuram, magnitudinem, ordinem, duritiem, mollietatem, lævorem, contactum; deinde processus et recessus singulorum, et sive quid inseritur alteri, sive quid recipit partem alterius in se. Enim cum dolor incidit, neque enim scire quid doleat, qui non cognoverit, quâ parte quodque viscus ve intestinum sit. Neque id quod est ægrum, posse curari ab eo, qui ignoret quid sit. Et cum viscera alicujus sunt patefacta per vulnus, eum, qui ignoret colorem cujusque sanæ partis, nescire quid sit integrum, quid corruptum; ita nequidem posse succurrere corruptis: Que aptius remedia imponi extrinsecus, et sedibus et figuris interiorum compertis, et eorum magnitudine cognita: que omnia quæ sunt posita, habere similes rationes. Neque esse crudele, sicut plerique proponunt, quæri remedia, suppliciiis hominum nocentiam, et ho-

## TRANSLATION.

be ignorant: hence the necessity of dissecting the bodies of the dead, and examining very minutely their viscera and intestines.

The plan adopted by Herophilus and Erasistratus was much approved of, who obtained by royal edict criminals out of prison for dissection, alive, and contemplated even while they breathed, those parts which nature had before concealed, with their relative position, colour, figure, magnitude, arrangement, hardness, softness, smoothness, and connexion (?); also the processes and recesses of each, whether any one part is inserted into another, or whether it receives part of another into itself. For when there happens to be some internal pain, he cannot know what suffers, if he be ignorant of the situation of each viscus and intestine; nor can the part which is diseased be cured by him who is ignorant of what part it is; and should the viscera of any person be laid open by a wound, he who is ignorant of the colour of each healthy structure, cannot know what is sound, what is morbid; therefore, can render no assistance in the disease: and they maintain that external remedies are more properly applied, when the situation, structure, and magnitude, of the interior parts are ascertained; and the same argument is applicable in all those cases already mentioned. Neither should it be

populis innocentibus sæculorum omnium quæri.

Contra ii, qui se ἐμπειρικούς ab experientia nominant, evidentes quidem causas, ut necessarias, amplectuntur: obscurarum vero causarum et naturalium actionum quæstionem ideo super-vacuam esse contendunt, quoniam non comprehensibilis natura sit. Non posse vero comprehendere, patere ex eorum, qui de his disputarunt, discordia; cum de ista re, neque inter sapientiæ professores, neque inter ipsos medicos conveniat. Cur enim potius aliquis Hippocrati credat, quam Herophilo? cur huic potius, quam Asclepiadi? Si rationes sequi velit, omnium posse videri non improbables; si curationes, ab omnibus his ægros perductos esse ad sanitatem: ita neque disputationi, neque auctoritati cujusquam fidem derogari oportuisse. Etiam sapientiæ studiosos maximos medicos esse, si ratiocinatio hoc faceret: nunc illis verba superesse, deesse medendi scientiam. Differre quoque pro natura locorum, genera medicinæ; et aliud opus esse Romæ, aliud in Ægypto, aliud in Gallia. Quod si morbos eæ causæ facerent, quæ ubique eadem essent, remedia quoque ubique eadem esse de-

## ORDO.

rum quoque paucorum, populis innocentibus omnium sæculorum.

Contra ii, qui nominat se ἐμπειρικούς (i. e. empirikous) ab experientia, amplectuntur evidentes causas quidem, ut necessarias: vero contendunt quæstionem obscurarum causarum et naturalium actionum esse super-vacuam, ideo, quoniam, natura non sit comprehensibilis. Vero non posse comprehendere, patere ex discordia eorum qui disputarunt de his; cum neque conveniat de ista re inter professores sapientiæ, neque inter medicos ipsos. Enim cur aliquis credat Hippocrati potius quam Herophilo? cur huic, potius quam Asclepiadi? si velit sequi rationes, omnium posse videri non improbables; si curationes, ægros esse perductos ad sanitatem, ab omnibus his: ita neque disputatione, neque auctoritati oportuisse derogari fidem cujusquam. Etiam (aiunt), studiosos sapientiæ esse maximos medicos, si ratiocinatio faceret hoc: nunc verba superesse illis (vero), scientiam medendi deesse. Genera medicinæ quoque differre pro natura locorum; et aliud esse opus Romæ, aliud in Ægypto, aliud in Gallia. Quod si eæ causæ facerent morbos, quæ essent eadem ubique, remedia debuisse esse quoque eadem ubique. Eti-

## TRANSLATION.

deemed so cruel, as many exclaim, to search for remedies for an innocent people of succeeding ages, at the expense of only a few capital culprits.

On the other hand, those who title themselves empirics, by profession, embrace, it is true, the necessity of evident causes; but they contend that the question of obscure causes and natural actions to be futile; and for this reason, because nature is inscrutable. And that those things are incomprehensible is evident by the dissensions of those who have treated of them, since neither the philosophers, nor the physicians can accord among themselves on those things: for why should any one believe Hippocrates, rather than Herophilus? and why prefer him to Asclepiades? That if a man will follow a theory, each of them seems plausible; if by cures, the sick have been restored to health by them all: therefore it does not become us, either by argument or authority, to impugn the veracity of any of them: even the philosophers would be the greatest physicians, if argument could make them so; but they abound in words—in the healing art they are deficient. Besides, they say, the treatment ought to vary according to the nature of climate; that one mode is necessary at Rome, another in Egypt, and another in Gaul; for, if the same causes could produce disease every where alike, the remedies ought to be the same also.



buisse. Sæpe etiam causas apparere, ut puta lippitudinis, vulneris; neque ex his patere medicinam. Quod si scientiam hanc non subjiat evidens causa, multo minus eam posse subicere, quæ in dubio est. Cum igitur illa incerta, incomprehensibilis sit, a certis potius et exploratis petendum esse præsidium; id est, iis, quæ experientia in ipsis curationibus docuerit; sicut in ceteris omnibus artibus. Nam ne agricolam quidem aut gubernatorem disputatione, sed usu fieri. Ac nihil istas cogitationes ad medicinam pertinere, eo quoque disci, quod qui diversa de his senserint, ad eandem tamen sanitatem homines perduxerint. Id enim fecisse, quia non ab obscuris causis, neque a naturalibus actionibus, quæ apud eos diversæ erant, sed ab experimentis, prout cuique responderant, medendi vias traxerint. Ne inter initia quidem ab istis quæstionibus deductam esse medicinam, sed ab experimentis. Ægrorum enim qui sine medicis erant, alios propter aviditatem primis diebus protinus cibum assumpsisse, alios propter fastidium abstinuisse; levatumque magis eorum morbum esse, qui abstinuerant. Itemque alios in ipsa febre aliquid edisse, alios paulo ante eam,

## ORDO.

am causas sæpe apparere, ut puta lippitudinis, vulneris; neque ex his medicinam patere. Quod si evidens causa non subjiat hanc scientiam, multo minus eam posse subicere, quæ est in dubio. Igitur cum illa sit incerta(que) incomprehensibilis, potius præsidium esse petendum a certis et exploratis; id est iis, quæ experientia docuerit in curationibus ipsis; sicut in omnibus cæteris artibus. Nam quidem agricolam, aut gubernatorem non fieri disputatione, sed usu. Ac istas cogitationes pertinere nihil ad medicinam, quoque disci eo, quod qui senserint diversa de his, tamen perduxerint homines ad eandem sanitatem. Enim fecisse id, quia non traxerint vias medendi ab obscuris causis, neque a naturalibus actionibus, quæ erant diversæ apud eos, sed ab experimentis, prout responderant cuique. (Proponunt) nequidem inter initia medicinam esse deductam ab istis quæstionibus, sed ab experimentis. Enim ægrorum qui erant sine medicis, alios assumpsisse cibum protinus primis diebus propter aviditatem, alios abstinuisse propter fastidium; que, qui abstinnerant, levatum esse magis eorum morbum. Itemque alios edisse aliquid in febre ipsa, alios paulo ante eam, alios post

## TRANSLATION.

That frequently the causes are apparent, for instance lippitudo, or a wound, yet the mode of treatment is not evident: therefore if the evident cause does not indicate this knowledge, how much less, that which is in doubt! Therefore, since the latter is uncertain and inexplicable, rather trust to those things that are certain and approved; that is, those remedies which experience has taught us themselves, as in all other arts: for neither the agriculturist, nor the pilot, is made by disputation, but by practice: and that these argumentations have no relation to medicine, is evident from this, that those who have thought differently on those things, yet they recovered their patients with equal success—and they accomplished this, not because they drew their methods of cure from latent causes, or from natural actions, about which they differed, but from experience, according as they had succeeded to each. They maintain, that medicine even in its origin was not deduced from these researches, but from experiments: for of the sick who were without physicians, some having taken food with avidity in the beginning, others having refrained from it on account of nausea; consequently those who had abstained were more relieved of their disease.

Again, some having taken food in the fever itself, others a little before, and

alios post remissionem ejus; optime deinde iis cessisse, qui post finem febris id fecerant. Eademque ratione alios inter principia protinus usos esse cibo pleniore, alios exiguo; gravioresque eos factos, qui se implerant. Hæc similique cum quotidie inciderent, diligentes homines notasse, quæ plerumque melius responderent: deinde ægrotantibus ea præcipere cœpisse. Sic medicinam ortam, subinde aliorum salute, aliorum interitu, perniciosa discernentem a salutaribus. Repertis deinde jam remediis, homines de rationibus eorum disserere cœpisse: nec post rationem, medicinam esse inventam, sed post inventam medicinam, rationem esse quæsitam. Requiritur etiam, ratio idem doceat quod experientia, an aliud: si idem, supervacuam esse; si aliud, etiam contrariam. Primo tamen remedia exploranda summa cura fuisse, nunc vero jam explorata esse; neque aut nova genera morborum reperiri, aut novam desiderari medicinam. Quod si jam incidat mali genus aliquod ignotum, non ideo tamen fore medico de rebus cogitandum obscuris: sed eum protinus visurum, cui morbo id proximum sit; tentaturumque remedia similia illis, quæ vicino malo sæpe succurrerint; et per ejus similitudinem

## ORDO.

remissionem ejus; deinde cessasse optime iis, qui fecerant id post finem febris. Eademque ratione, alios inter principia protinus usos cibo pleniore cibo, alios exiguo; que eos qui implerant se factos graviores. Hæc que similia, cum inciderent quotidie, diligentes homines notasse quæ plerumque responderent melius: deinde cœpisse præcipere ea ægrotantibus. Sic medicinam ortam, subinde salute aliorum, interitu aliorum, discernentem perniciosa a salutaribus. Deinde remediis jam repertis, homines cœpisse disserere de rationibus eorum: nec medicinam esse inventam, post rationem, sed rationem esse quæsitam post medicinam inventam. Etiam requirere, doceat ratio idem, quod experientia, an aliud? si idem, esse supervacuam; si aliud etiam contrarium. Tamen primo remedia fuisse exploranda summa cura, vero nunc jam esse explorata; neque aut nova genera morborum reperiri, aut novam medicinam desiderari. Quod si aliquod ignotum genus mali jam incidat, tamen medico non fore ideo cogitandum de rebus obscuris; sed eum protinus esse visurum, cui morbo sit proximum; que tentaturum similia remedia illis, quæ sæpe succurrerunt vicino malo, et per ejus similitudinem reperturum opem.

## TRANSLATION.

others a little after its remission; and that it subsided best with those who had done it after the termination of the fever: in the same manner, some having used a fuller diet in the commencement of a disease, others a more abstemious one; and that those who had satiated themselves became worse. These and similar incidences daily happening, diligent men carefully noted such things as for the most part answered best; and afterwards they began to prescribe them for the sick. Thus medicine arose, and by the frequent recovery of some, the sacrifice of others, discerning the noxious from the salutary; then the remedies being discovered, men began to discuss of their *modus operandi*: that medicine was not invented after theory, but theory was sought for after the discovery of medicine. It is asked, whether theory prescribes the same as experience, or otherwise; if the same, it is superfluous, if different, pernicious. Yet at first it was necessary to investigate remedies with the greatest care; but now they are discovered; we neither meet with any new species of disease, nor do we require a new remedy. Should some unknown disease appear, the physician would not even in that case be compelled to think of the latent causes; but he would at once see, to what disease it bore the nearest resemblance, and prescribe remedies, similar to those which have often relieved analogous cases, and by their similitude would often find a cure. For they

opem reperturum. Neque enim se dicere, consilio medicum non egere, et irrationale animal hanc artem posse præstare; sed has latentium rerum conjecturas ad rem non pertinere; quia non intersit, quid morbum faciat, sed quid tollat; neque ad rem pertineat, quomodo, sed quid optime digeratur; sive hac de causa concoctio incidat, sive de illa; et sive concoctio sit illa, sive tantum digestio. Neque quærendum esse quomodo spiremus, sed quid gravem tardumque spiritum expediat: neque quid venas moveat, sed quid quæque motus genera significant. Hæc autem cognosci experimentis. Et in omnibus ejusmodi cogitationibus in utramque partem disseri posse: itaque ingenium et facundiam vincere; morbos autem, non eloquentia, sed remediis curari. Quæ si quis elinguis usu discreta bene norit, hunc aliquanto majorem medicum futurum, quam si sine usu linguam suam excoluerit. Atque ea quidem, de quibus est dictum, supervacua esse tantummodo; id vero, quod restat, etiam crudele: vivorum hominum alvum atque præcordia incidi, et salutis humanæ præsidem artem, non solum pestem alicui, sed hanc etiam atrocissimam inferre; cum præsertim

## ORDO.

Enim neque se dicere, medicum non egere consilio, et irrationale animal posse præstare hanc artem; sed has conjecturas latentium rerum non pertinere ad rem; quia, non intersit, quid faciat morbum, sed quid tollat; neque pertineat ad rem, quomodo, sed quid, digeratur optime; sive concoctio incidat de hac causa, sive de illa; et sive illa sit concoctio, sive tantum digestio. Neque esse quærendum quomodo spiremus, sed quid expediat gravem que tardem spiritum: neque quid moveat venas, sed quid quæque genera motus significant. Autem hæc cognosci experimentis. Et in omnibus cogitationibus ejusmodi posse disseri in utramque partem: itaque ingenium et facundiam vincere; autem morbos non curari eloquentia, sed remediis. Quæ si quis elinguis norit bene discreta, hunc futurum aliquanto majorem medicum, quam si excoluerit suam linguam sine usu. Atque quidem ea, de quibus est dictum, esse tantummodo supervacua; vero id quod restat etiam crudele: incidi alvum atque præcordia vivorum hominum, et inferre hanc præsidem artem humanæ salutis, non solum pestem alicui, sed etiam atrocissimam; cum præsertim ex iis, quæ quæ-

## TRANSLATION.

do not say, that a physician is not to use his judgment, and that an irrational animal can practise this art; but they maintain, that those theories of latent causes have no relation to this; because it does not interest us what causes, but what removes a disease; neither does it depend upon the manner how, but what, is digested best: whether concoction may arise from this, or that cause; or whether it may be concoction simply, or only distribution: nor is it to be asked how we breathe, but what relieves a difficult and heavy (8) breathing; nor what may produce action in the arteries, but what each kind of action may indicate.

But these things are known by experiments, and that in all disputations of this nature, much may be said on both sides, therefore ingenuity and eloquence prevail; but diseases are not to be cured by eloquence, but by remedies; consequently, suppose any person defective in this talent, be well acquainted with remedies discovered by practice, will he not be a much greater physician than the man who has cultivated his language without experience? But indeed those things of which we have spoken are only superfluous, but that which remains is even cruel; to lay open the abdomen and præcordia of living men, and that science which presides over the health of mankind, is not only made the instrument of death, but that of the most atrocious; especially when some of those things, which are sought after



ex iis, quæ tanta violentia quærantur, alia non possint omnino cognosci, alia possint etiam sine scelere. Nam colorem, lævorem, molliem, duritiem, similiaque omnia, non esse talia, inciso corpore, qualia integro fuerint: quia cum, corporibus inviolatis, hæc tamen metu, dolore, inedia, cruditate, lassitudine, mille aliis mediocribus affectibus sæpe mutantur; multo magis verisimile est, interiora, quibus major mollietates, lux ipsa nova sit, sub gravissimis vulneribus et ipsa trucidatione mutari. Neque quidquam esse stultius, quam quale quidque vivo homine est, tale existimare esse moriente, imo jam mortuo. Nam utrum quidem, qui minus ad rem pertineat, spirante homine posse diduci: simulatque vero ferrum ad præcordia accessit, et discissum transversum septum est, quod membrana quadam superiores partes ab inferioribus diducit (*διάφραγμα* Græci vocant) hominem protinus animam amittere: ita mortui demum præcordia et viscus omne in conspectum latrocinantis medici dari necesse est tale, quale mortui sit, non quale vivi fuit. Itaque consequi medicum ut hominem crudeliter jugulet; non ut sciat, qualia vivi viscera habeamus. Si quid tamen sit, quod adhuc

## ORDO.

rantur tanta violentia, alia non possint cognosci omnino, alia possint etiam sine scelere. Nam colorem, lævorem, molliem, duritiem, quæ omnia similia, non esse talia corpore inciso, qualia fuerint integro; quia hæc, cum inviolatis corporibus, tamen sæpe mutantur metu, dolore, inedia, cruditate, lassitudine, mille aliis mediocribus affectibus; est multo magis verisimile, interiora, quibus major mollietates, lux ipsa sit nova, mutari sub gravissimis vulneribus et trucidatione ipsa. Neque quidquam esse stultius, quam existimare quidque esse tale moriente, imo jam mortuo, quale est vivo homine. Nam quidem utrum, qui minus pertineat ad rem, posse diduci spirante homine: vero atque simul ferrum accessit ad præcordia, et transversum septum est discissum, quod quadam membrana diducit superiores partes ab inferioribus (*Græci vocant διάφραγμα*) hominem protinus amittere animam: ita præcordia et omne viscus mortui demum dari in conspectum latrocinantis medici est necesse tale, quale sit mortui, non quale fuit vivi. Itaque medicum consequi hominem ut jugulet crudeliter; non ut sciat, viscera qualia habeamus vivi. Tamen si quid sit, quod adhuc

## TRANSLATION.

with so much cruelty, cannot be known at all, whilst others may be examined even without any violence; for the colour, smoothness, softness, hardness, and such like, are not the same in a wounded body, as they were in a sound; because, even in bodies that have received no violence, yet these qualities are often changed by fear, grief, hunger, indigestion, lassitude, and a thousand other trifling affections; and it is much more probable, that the internal parts being very tender and never exposed, even the light itself might effect a change by severe wounding and laceration. Nor can any thing be more absurd, than to suppose the part to be the same in a dying man, nay, already dead, as it is in a living person: the abdomen (9) may be laid open, it is true, even while the man is breathing (which does not strictly bear on the case); but as soon as the knife has approached the præcordia (10), and the transverse septum is divided, which separates the superior from the inferior, (which the Greeks call diaphragm,) the man immediately expires; consequently, the præcordia, and all the viscera, present the same appearances to the slaughtering physician as those of a dead person, not such as they were while he lived; therefore the only object attained by the physician is that of murdering a man cruelly, not that he can ever ascertain their nature and functions as we have them in life: yet if there may be any interesting phenomena to be subjected to the



spirante homine conspectui subjiçiat, id sæpe casum offerre curantibus. Interdum enim gladiatorem in arena, vel militem in acie, vel viatorem a latronibus exceptum sic vulnerari, ut ejus interior aliqua pars aperiatur, et in alio alia: ita sedem, positum, ordinem, figuram, similiaque alia cognoscere prudentem medicum, non cædem, sed sanitatem molientem; idque per misericordiam discere, quod alii dira crudelitate cognoverint. Ob hæc, ne mortuorum quidem lacerationem necessariam esse; quæ etsi non crudelis, tamen fœda sit; cum aliter pleraque in mortuis se habeant: quantum vero in vivis cognosci potest, ipsa curatio ostendat.

Cum hæc per multa volumina, perque magnæ contentionis disputationes a medicis sæpe tractata sint atque tractentur: subjiçendum est, quæ proxima vero videri possint. Ea neque addicta alterutri opinioni sunt, neque ab utraque nimium abhorrentia; media quodammodo inter diversas sententias: quod in plurimis contentionibus deprehendere licet, sine ambitione verum scrutantibus, ut in hac ipsa re. Nam quæ demum causæ, vel secundam valetudinem præstent, vel morbos excitent; quomodo spiritus, aut cibus, vel traha-

## ORDO.

subjiçiat conspectui spirante homine, id casum sæpe offerre curantibus. Enim interdum gladiatorem in arena; militem in acie, vel viatorem exceptum a latronibus sic vulnerari, ut aliqua interior pars ejus aperiatur, et alia in alio, ita prudentem medicum cognoscere sedem, positum, ordinem, figuram, quæ similia, non cædem, sed molientem sanitatem, quæ discere id per misericordiam, quod alii cognoverint dira crudelitate. Ob hoc ne quidem lacerationem mortuorum esse necessarium; et quæ si non crudelis, tamen sit fœda, cum pleraque habebant se aliter in mortuis. Vero curatio ipsa ostendat, quantum potest cognosci in vivis.

Cum hæc sæpe tractata sint, atque tractentur, per multa volumina à medicis, quæ per disputationes magnæ contentionis, est subjiçendum quæ possint videri proxima vero. Ea neque sunt addicta alterutri opinioni, neque abhorrentia nimium ab utraque inter diversas sententias quodammodo media; quod scrutantibus verum sine ambitione in plurimis contentionibus licet deprehendere, ut in hac ipsa re. Nam quidem, ne professores sapientiæ comprehendunt scientiæ quæ causæ demum, vel præstent secundam valetudinem, vel excitent morbos, quomodo vel spiritus traha-

## TRANSLATION.

view, in the man as yet breathing, practitioners have frequent opportunities of meeting them by accidents; for sometimes the gladiator in the arena, a soldier in the field, or a traveller intercepted by banditti, is wounded in such a manner as to display some of the interior parts, and so, other parts in other persons: thus the prudent physician discovers their structure, relative position, arrangement, figure, and the like, not by perpetrating murder, but endeavouring to restore health; and learns that, by compassion, which others have discovered by unrelenting cruelty. And for these reasons (I consider it) unnecessary to lacerate even the dead, which, although not cruel, yet it may be disgusting; since most things are found very different in dead bodies; even the dressing of wounds themselves may show all that can be discovered in the living.

Since these topics have often been, and still continue to be treated by physicians with great warmth in voluminous works, I must here submit some reflections, which may appear to come nearer to the truth. These are neither blindly adherent to the dogmas of either party, nor diverging too much from each, but in some measure the medium betwixt these two extremes; which is allowable to those searching after truth, impartially, to seize in all controversies, as in this case itself. That science by which the cause of healthy and morbid actions are excited in the body; the

tur, vel digeratur, ne sapientiæ quidem professores scientia comprehendunt, sed conjectura persequuntur. Cujus autem rei non est certa notitia, ejus opinio certum reperire remedium non potest. Verumque est, ad ipsam curandi rationem nihil plus conferre, quam experientiam. Quamquam igitur multa sint, ad ipsas artes proprie non pertinentia, tamen eas adjuvant, excitando artificis ingenium. Itaque ista quoque naturæ rerum contemplatio, quamvis non faciat medicum, aptiorem tamen medicinæ reddit. Verique simile est, et Hippocratem et Erasistratum et quicumque alii, non contenti febres et ulcera agitare, rerum quoque naturam ex aliqua parte scrutati sunt, non ideo quidem medicos fuisse, verum ideo quoque majores medicos extitisse. Ratione vero opus est ipsi medicinæ, etsi non inter obscuras causas, neque inter naturales actiones, tamen sæpe. Est enim hæc ars conjecturalis, neque respondet ei plerumque non solum conjectura, sed etiam experientia. Et interdum non febris, non cibus, non somnus subsequitur, sicut assuevit. Rarius, sed aliquando morbus quoque ipse novus est: quem non incidere, manifeste falsum est; cum ætate nostra quædam, ex

## ORDO.

tur, vel cibus digeratur, sed persequuntur conjectura. Autem, cujus re notitia non est certa, opinio, ejus non potest reperire certum remedium. Que est verum nihil conferre plus ad rationem ipsam curandi, quam experientiam. Quamquam igitur multa sint, non pertinentia ad ipsas artes, tamen adjuvant eas excitando ingenium artificis. Itaque, quoque, ista contemplatio naturæ rerum quamvis non faciat medicum, tamen reddit aptiorem medicinæ. Que est simile veri, et Hippocratem et Erasistratum et quicumque alii non contenti agitare febres et ulcera, scrutati sunt quoque, ex aliqua parte naturam rerum, non ideo quidem, medicos fuisse, verum ideo quoque extitisse majores medicos. Vero tamen sæpe opus est ratione medicinæ ipsi, etsi non inter obscuras causas, neque inter naturales actiones. Enim hæc ars est conjecturalis neque plerumque, conjectura solum, sed etiam experientia, non respondet ei. Et interdum, non febris, non cibus, non somnus, subsequitur sicut assuevit. Rarius, sed aliquando morbus ipse quoque novus est; quem non incidere est manifeste falsum; cum quædam ætate nos-

## TRANSLATION.

physiology of respiration and digestion is inexplicable to the philosophers themselves, they only follow hypotheses. Now when there is no certain knowledge of a thing, a mere opinion of it cannot discover a certain remedy; and it must be confessed, that nothing conduces more to the rational method itself of healing, than experience. Therefore, although there are many auxiliary sciences embraced, not arbitrarily in the art itself, yet they may advance that art, by unfolding the genius of the artist; hence, although natural philosophy does not constitute a physician, yet it may render him more fit for the practice of medicine. And it is very probable, that both Hippocrates, Erasistratus, and some others, not being content to exercise themselves on fevers and ulcers alone, examined into physics also, in some measure, not that they could have been physicians on that account, yet by the collateral aid of that science they excelled as physicians. Now medicine itself frequently requires the assistance of theory, although not always applicable to latent causes, nor to natural actions; for it is a conjectural art; and not only conjecture in many cases, but even experience itself, is anomalous and inconsistent.

Sometimes neither fever, food, nor sleep, is followed by its usual precedents: sometimes (though more rarely) the disease itself is new; which, to suppose does not happen, is manifestly false; for in our own time a certain lady expired in a few

naturalibus partibus carne prolapsa et arente, intra paucas horas expiraverit; sic ut nobilissimi medici neque genus mali, neque remedium invenerint. Quos ego nihil tentasse judico, quia nemo in splendida persona periclitari conjectura sua voluerit; ne occidisse, nisi servasset, videretur: veri tamen simile est, potuisse aliquid cogitare, detracta tali verecundia, et fortasse responsurum fuisse id, quod aliquis esset expertus. Ad quod medicinæ genus, neque semper similitudo aliquid confert; et si quando confert, tamen id ipsum rationale est, inter multa similia genera et morborum, et remediorum, cogitare, quo potissimum medicamento sit utendum. Cum igitur talis res incidit, medicus aliquid oportet inveniatur, quod non ubique fortasse, sed sæpius tamen etiam respondeat. Petet autem novum quoque consilium, non ab rebus latentibus (istæ enim dubiæ et incertæ sunt) sed ab iis, quæ explorari possunt; id est evidentibus causis. Interest enim, fatigatio morbum, an sitis, an frigus, an color, an vigilia, an fames fecerit, an cibi vinique abundantia, an intemperantia libidinis. Neque ignorare hunc oportet, quæ sit ægri natura: humidum magis, an magis siccum corpus ejus sit;

## ORDO.

tra, expiraverit inter paucas horas, carne prolapsa ex naturalibus partibus et arente; sic ut nobilissimi medici neque invenerint genus mali, neque remedium. Quos ego judico nihil tentasse; quia nemo voluerit, periclitari sua conjectura in splendida persona, ne videretur occidisse nisi servasset. Tamen est veri simile detracta tali verecundia, aliquid potuisse cogitare, et fortasse, id responsurum fuisse, quod aliquis esset expertus. Ad quod genus medicinæ, similitudo neque confert semper aliquid; et quando confert, tamen id est rationale ipsum, inter multa similia genera, et morborum et remediorum, cogitare, quo medicamento potissimum sit utendum. Cum igitur talis res incidit, oportet medicus inveniatur aliquid, quod non respondeat ubique fortasse, sed etiam tamen sæpius. Petet autem quoque consilium novum, non ab rebus latentibus (istæ enim sunt dubiæ et incertæ) sed ab iis quæ possunt explorari, id est evidentibus causis. Interest enim, an fatigatio, an sitis, an frigus, an calor, an vigilia, an fames, an abundantia cibi vinique, an intemperantia libidinis fecerit morbum. Neque oportet hunc ignorare, quæ sit natura ægri, an corpus ejus sit magis humidum an magis siccum, validi nervi, an

## TRANSLATION.

hours of gangrene from prolapsus uteri (11); so that the most celebrated physicians could neither discover the nature of the malady, nor a remedy. And for this reason, I suppose, that no one was inclined to endanger his reputation by experimenting on such a noble personage, lest it might appear that he destroyed her, unless he had saved her; yet it is probable, that some one laying aside such timidity and false delicacy, might have tried something, and perhaps it would have succeeded. Neither does analogy always confer much aid in this kind of practice, and when it does, this of itself is theoretic, for among a multiform genera both of similar diseases and similar remedies, it is to be considered what treatment we can principally rely upon. Therefore, when such a case happens, it is the duty of the physician to find out something which, although perhaps it does not always succeed, yet frequently it may: and he may derive new information, not from latent causes, for they are ambiguous and uncertain, but from those resources which are capable of further research, that is, from the evident causes. For it is of considerable import to know, whether the disease was produced by fatigue, or thirst, or cold, or heat, or watching, or hunger; or whether it arose from immoderate eating and drinking, or intemperate lust. Neither ought he to be unacquainted with the constitution of the patient, whether his body be too moist or too dry; whether his nerves (12) be



validi nervi, an infirmi; frequens adversa valetudo, an rara; eaque, cum est, vehemens esse soleat, an levis; brevis, an longa: quod is vitæ genus sit secutus, laboriosum, an quietum; cum luxu, an cum frugalitate. Ex his enim, similibusque, sæpe curandi nova ratio ducenda est.

Quamvis ne hæc quidem sic præteriri debent, quasi nullam controversiam recipiant. Nam et Erasistratus non ex his fieri morbos dixit; quoniam et alii, et iidem alias post ista non febricitarent: et quidam medici sæculi nostri, sub auctore, ut ipsi videri volunt, Themisone, contendunt, nullius causæ notitiam quidquam ad curationes pertinere; satisque esse, quædam communia morborum intueri. Siquidem horum tria genera esse, unum adstrictum, alterum fluens, tertium mistum. Nam modo parum excernere ægros, modo nimium; modo alia parte parum, alia nimium. Hæc autem genera morborum, modo acuta esse, modo longa; et modo increscere, modo consistere, modo minui. Cognito igitur eo, quod ex his est, si corpus adstrictum est, digerendum esse; si profluvio laborat, continendum; si mistum vitium habet, oc-

## ORDO.

infirmi; frequens adversa valetudo an rara; eaque, cum est, an soleat esse vehemens, (an) levis, brevis, an longa: quod genus vitæ is secutus sit, laboriosum, an quietum; cum luxu, an cum frugalitate. Enim ex his similibusque, sæpe nova ratio curandi ducenda est.

Quamvis hæc quidem, ne debent sic præteriri, quasi recipiant nullam controversiam. Nam et Erasistratus dixit, non morbos fieri ex his; quoniam et alii et iidem alias non febricitarent post ista: et quidam medici sæculi nostri, contendunt, ut ipsi volunt videri, sub auctore Themisone, notitiam nullius causæ, quidquam pertinere ad curationes; satisque esse intueri quædam communia morborum. Siquidem esse tria genera horum, unum adstrictum, alterum fluens, tertium mistum. Nam modo, ægros parum excernere, modo nimium, modo alia parte parum alia nimium. Hæc autem genera morborum, modo esse acuta, modo longa, et modo increscere, modo consistere, modo minui. Cognito igitur eo, quod est ex his, si corpus adstrictum est, digerendum esse; si laborat profluvio, (est) continendum; si habet mistum vitium,

## TRANSLATION.

strong or weak; whether he be frequently or rarely ill; and whether his complaints are accustomed to be violent or light, short or long; what kind of life he has followed, whether laborious or tranquil, in luxury or frugality: from these and similar circumstances, a new mode of treatment is often to be deduced.

However, even these points ought not to be passed over, as if they admitted of no controversy; for Erasistratus maintained that diseases did not arise from these things; because others, nay the same persons at another time, would not have fever from them: and some physicians of our own age, under Themison's authority, (as they wish it to appear,) contend that a knowledge of the cause can have no influence over the treatment; and that it is sufficient to observe some of the most common affinities of diseases; and that there are three kinds of these, one constipated, the other relaxed, and the third a mixture of these two. For sometimes the secretions are too small, sometimes too much; and sometimes too little in one part, in another too much: that these diseases are sometimes acute, sometimes chronic, sometimes progressive, sometimes they reach their acme, and sometimes diminish. Therefore, when the complaint is known to arise from any of these, if the body be constipated, it ought to be relaxed, if it suffer from a flux, it ought to be restrained; if it take on a complicated character, then we must re-



currendum subinde vehementiori malo. Et aliter acutis morbis medendum, aliter vetustis; aliter increscentibus, aliter subsistentibus, aliter jam ad sanitatem inclinatis. Horum observationem medicinam esse; quam ita finiunt, ut quasi viam quamdam, quam μέθοδον Græci nominant, eorumque, quæ in morbis communia sunt, contemplatricem esse contendunt. Ac neque rationalibus se, neque experimenta tantum spectantibus annumerari volunt: cum ab illis eo nomine dissentiant, quod in conjectura rerum latentium nolunt esse medicinam; ab his eo, quod parum artis esse in observatione experimentorum credunt. Quod ad Erasistratum pertinet, primum ipsa evidentia ejus opinioni repugnat; quia raro, nisi post horum aliquid, morbus venit. Deinde non sequitur, ut quod alium non afficit, aut eundem alias, id ne alteri quidem, aut eidem tempore alio noceat. Possunt enim quædam subesse corpori, vel ex infirmitate ejus, vel ex aliquo affectu, quæ vel in alio non sunt, vel in hoc alias non fuerunt; eaque per se non tanta, ut concitent morbum, tamen obnoxium magis aliis injuriis corpus efficiant.

## ORDO.

subinde vehementiore malo, occurrendum. Et aliter medendum acutis morbis, aliter vetustis; aliter increscentibus, aliter subsistentibus, aliter jam ad sanitatem inclinatis. Observationem horum esse medicinam; quam ita finiunt, ut contendunt esse quasi viam quamdam; quam Græci nominant μέθοδον que contemplatricem eorum quæ sunt in morbis communia. Ac neque volunt se annumerari rationalibus, neque experimenta tantum spectantibus, cum ab illis dissentiant eo nomine quod nolunt medicinam esse in conjectura rerum latentium; ab his eo, credunt quod parum artis esse in observatione experimentorum. Quod pertinet ad Erasistratum primum ipsa evidentia repugnat ejus opinioni; quia raro, morbus venit, nisi post aliquid horum. Deinde non sequitur, ut quod non afficit alium, aut eundem alias, id ne noceat alteri quidem, aut eidem alio tempore. Enim quædam possunt subesse corpori, vel ex infirmitate ejus, vel ex aliquo affectu, que non sunt vel in alio, vel non fuerunt in hoc alias; eaque per se non tanta, ut concitent morbum, tamen efficiant corpus magis obnoxium aliis injuriis. Quod si satis compre-

## TRANSLATION.

lieve the more violent. And that we ought to treat an acute disease differently from a chronic one, an increasing one differently from one that is stationary, and another when convalescent. The observation of these things constitutes the *Theory* and *Practice* of *Medicine*, which they define so, and maintain it to be the observation of those things which are common in disease, as if it were a certain way of proceeding which the Greeks call method: but they will not admit themselves to be numbered either with theorists, or pure empirics; since they dissent from those, in this respect, that they will not admit of medicine to consist in hypotheses of latent causes; from these they differ in this, because they maintain that the observation of experiments to be a very small part of the art. As far as it relates to the dogmas of Erasistratus, in the first place, his opinion is repugnant to evidence itself, because a disease rarely comes on unless preceded by some of these occurrences; in the next place, it does not follow that what does not affect one person, may not injure another; nor what does not affect the same person at one time may not hurt him at another: for there may be some latent lurking poisons in the body either from weakness or disease, which either are not in another, nor were they in the same body at a different time; and these, perhaps, not so great of themselves as to excite the latent disease into action, yet they may predispose the body to be more susceptible of other injuries: but if he had been sufficiently skilled in the

Quod si contemplationem rerum naturæ, quam temere medici sibi vindicant, satis comprehendisset, etiam illud scisset, nihil omnino ob unam causam fieri, sed id pro causa apprehendi, quod contulisse plurimum videtur. Potest autem id, dum solum est, non movere, quod junctum aliis maxime movet. Accedit ad hæc, quod ne ipse quidem Erasistratus, qui transfuso in arterias sanguine febrem fieri dicit, idque nimis repleto corpore incidere, reperit, cur ex duobus æque repletis, alter in morbum incideret, alter omni periculo vacaret; quod quotidie fieri apparet. Ex quo disci potest, ut vera sit illa transfusio, tamen illam, non per se, cum plenum corpus est, fieri, sed cum horum aliquid accesserit. Themisonis vero æmuli, si perpetua, quæ promittunt, habent, magis etiam, quam ulli rationales sunt. Neque enim, si quis non omnia tenet, quæ rationalis alius probat, protinus alio novo nomine artis indiget; si modo, quod primum est, non memoriæ soli, sed rationi quoque insistit. Sin, quod vero propius est, vix ulla perpetua præcepta medicinalis ars recipit, idem sunt, quod ii, quos experimenta sola sustinent: eo magis, quoniam, compres-

## ORDO.

hendisset contemplationem rerum naturæ, quam medici temere vindicant sibi, etiam illud scisset nihil omnino ob unam causam fieri, sed id apprehendi pro causa, quod videtur plurimum contulisse. Autem id non potest, movere, dum est solum, quod junctum aliis movet maxime. Accedit ad hæc, quod ne quidem Erasistratus ipse, qui dicit febrem fieri, sanguine transfuso in arteria, que id incidere corpore nimis repleto, cur ex duobus, æque repletis, alter incideret in morbum, alter vacaret omni periculo; quod apparet fieri quotidie. Ex quo potest disci, ut illa transfusio sit vera, tamen illam non fieri per se, cum corpus est plenum, sed cum aliquid horum accesserit.

Vero æmuli Themisonis, si habent perpetua, quæ promittunt, etiam sunt magis rationales quam ulli. Enim neque, si quis non tenet omnia, quæ alius rationalis probat, protinus indiget alio novo nomine artis; si modo, quod est primum, non insistit memoriæ soli, sed quoque rationi. Sin, quod est propius vero, medicinalis ars recipet vix ulla perpetua præcepta, sunt idem, quod ii, quos experimenta sola sustinent: eo magis, quoniam, quili-

## TRANSLATION.

contemplation of the laws of nature, which physicians rashly claim to themselves, he must have known this also, that nothing can arise entirely from one cause, but that must be taken for the cause which seems to have contributed most to the effect. Now it may happen, that that which can produce no effect alone, being united with other things excite very much. In addition to these things, for which Erasistratus himself could assign no cause, he says that a fever arises from a transfusion of the blood into the arteries, and that this happens to plethoric persons: why then of two persons equally plethoric shall the one become diseased, whilst the other shall escape from all danger? which appears to happen daily. By this it may be learned, that although this transfusion may take place, yet that does not happen of itself, when there is plethora, but when it is accompanied by some of those conditions above-mentioned.

But if the disciples of Themison have asserted their principles to be perpetual, they are even greater rationalists than others; for although one man does not embrace every tenet which another approves, the art itself requires no new name; but upon this condition, that he does not insist upon memory alone, without theory, which is the principal thing. But if, which is nearer to the truth, the medical art scarcely admits of any perpetual axioms, they are the same with those sustained by practice

serit aliquem morbus, an fuderit, quilibet etiam imperitissimus videt: quid autem compressum corpus resolvat, quid solutum teneat, si a ratione tractum est, rationalis est medicus; si, ut ei qui se rationalem negat, confiteri necesse est, ab experientia, empiricus. Ita apud eum morbi cognitio extra artem, medicina intra usum est. Neque adjectum quidquam empiricorum professioni, sed demptum est; quoniam illi multa circumspiciunt, hi tantum facillima, et non plus, quam vulgaria. Nam et ii, qui pecoribus ac jumentis medentur, cum propria cujusque ex mutis animalibus nosse non possint, communibus tantummodo insistent: et exteræ gentes, cum subtilem medicinæ rationem non noverint, communia tantum vident: et qui ampla valetudinaria nutriunt, quia singulis summa cura consulere non sustinent, ad communia ista confugiunt. Neque, Hercules, istud antiqui medici nescierunt, sed his contenti non fuerunt. Ergo etiam vetustissimus auctor Hippocrates dixit, mederi oportere, et communia, et propria intuentem. Ac ne isti quidem ipsi intra suam professionem consistere ullo modo

## ORDO.

bet etiam imperitissimus videt, an morbus compresserit aliquem, (an) fuderit: autem si est tractum a ratione, quid resolvat compressum corpus, quid teneat solutum, est rationalis medicus; si ab experientia, ut est necesse ei confiteri qui negat se rationalem, (est) empiricus. Ita apud eum cognitio morbi est extra artem, medicina intra usum. Neque est quidquam adjectum professioni empiricorum, sed (est) demptum; quoniam illi circumspiciant multa, hi tantum facillima, et non plus, quam vulgaria. Nam et ii qui medentur pecoribus et jumentis, cum non possint nosse ex mutis animalibus propria cujusque, insistent communibus tantummodo: et exteræ gentes cum non noverint subtilem rationem medicinæ, vident communia tantum: et qui nutriunt ampla valetudinaria, confugiunt ad ista communia, quia non sustinet consulere singulis summa cura. Neque Hercules antiqui medici nescierunt istud, sed non fuerunt contenti his. Ergo etiam vetustissimus auctor Hippocrates dixit, oportere mederi, intuentem et communia, et propria. Ac ne quidem isti ipsi possunt consistere ullo modo intra suam professionem;

## TRANSLATION.

alone; and for this reason, because any person, even the most unskilful, can discover whether a disease has constipated or relaxed a man: but if the principles be deduced from reason, which relax a constipated body, or bind a loose one, he is a theoretical physician; if from experience, as he must of a necessity confess, who denies himself to be a dogmatist (13), then he is an empiric: therefore, according to the latter, the knowledge of a malady is beyond his art, the remedy is within the limits of experience. Neither is any thing added by the latter to the profession of the empirics: on the contrary, something is taken from them; since those examine many things with keen circumspection, these regard only the easiest, and no more than the common. For even those who practise on cattle and beasts of burden, since they cannot obtain of the dumb animals the peculiarities of each, rely solely on what is common to them all: and foreign nations, as they are unacquainted with any subtle theory of medicine, only regard the common diagnoses: and those who attend on large hospitals, betake themselves to those common symptoms, because they are not able to consult the peculiarities of each with much care. Nor, indeed, were the ancient physicians ignorant of this, but they were not content with it; therefore even the most ancient author, Hippocrates, has said, that it behoves the physician to observe both the common and peculiar symptoms in their mode of treatment. Nor is it possible even for these methodists (14)



possunt: siquidem et compressorum et fluentium morborum genera diversa sunt; faciliusque id in iis, quæ fluunt, inspicere potest. Aliud est enim sanguinem, aliud bilem, aliud cibum vomere; aliud dejectionibus, aliud torminibus laborare; aliud sudore digerere, aliud tabe consumi. Atque in partes quoque humor erumpit, ut oculos, auresque: quo periculo nullum humanum membrum vacat. Nihil autem horum sic ut aliud curatur. Ita protinus in his a communi fluentis morbi contemplatione ad propriam medicinam descendit. Atque in hac quoque rursus alia proprietatis notitia sæpe necessaria est; quia non eadem omnibus, etiam in similibus casibus, opitulantur. Siquidem certæ quædam res sunt, quæ in pluribus ventrem aut adstringunt, aut resolvunt: inveniuntur tamen, in quibus aliter, atque in ceteris, idem eveniat. In his ergo communium inspectio contraria est, priorum tantum salutaris. Et causæ quoque æstimatio sæpe morbum solvit. Ergo etiam ingeniosissimus sæculi nostri medicus, quem nuper vidimus, Cassius, febricitanti cuidam, et magna siti affecto, cum post ebrietatem

## ORDO.

siquidem sunt diversa genera et compressorum et fluentium morborum; que id potest inspicere facilius in iis quæ fluunt. Enim est aliud vomere sanguinem, aliud bilem, aliud cibum; aliud dejectionibus, aliud laborare torminibus; aliud digerere sudore, aliud consumi tabe.

Atque quoque humor erumpit in partes, ut oculos, que aures: quo periculo nullum humanum membrum vacat. Autem nihil horum curatur sic ut aliud. Ita protinus medicina descendit in his a communi contemplationi fluentis morbi ad propriam. Atque in hac quoque rursus alia notitia proprietatis est sæpe necessaria; qui eadem non opitulantur omnibus, etiam in similibus casibus. Siquidem sunt quædam certæ res, quæ aut resolvunt, aut astringunt ventrem in pluribus: tamen inveniuntur in quibus idem eveniat aliter, atque in cæteris. In his ergo inspectio communium est contraria, priorum tantum salutaris. Et quoque æstimatio causæ sæpe solvit morbum. Ergo etiam ingeniosissimus medicus nostri sæculi, quem nuper vidimus, Cassius, ingressit frigidam aquam cuidam febricitanti, et affecto magna siti, cum cognosset cœpisse premi post ebrie-

## TRANSLATION.

to confine themselves in any manner to their own principles; since there are different kinds both of the constipated and loose diseases, and it can be more easily distinguished in those who are suffering under flux, for it is one thing to vomit blood, another to vomit bile, and another the food; one shall labour under a diarrhœa; another under dysentery; one may be emaciated by colliquative sweats, another wasted by consumption.

A discharge takes place in certain parts, for instance, the eyes and ears, from which no part of the human frame is exempt: but not one of these complaints is to be treated exactly in the same manner as another; so therefore in such cases as these, the physician descends from the common classification of running diseases to the peculiar. And even in this again, a knowledge of idiosyncrasy is often necessary, because the same remedies will not avail all, even in similar cases: although there are some certain things which either excite or repress the alvine secretions in most people; yet there are some persons to be found, in whom the result might happen to be otherwise. Therefore in these cases an observation of the common diagnoses is injurious, the peculiar only salutary, and a correct pathological distinction of the cause often removes the disease. In this manner also Cassius, the most ingenious physician whom we have seen of our age, being applied to by a certain person in a state of high fever, accompanied with great thirst, when he had discovered the exciting cause to have proceeded from intoxication, ordered him

eum premi cœpisse cognosset, aquam frigidam ingessit. Qua ille epota, cum vini vim miscendo fregisset, protinus febrem somno et sudore discussit. Quod auxilium medicus opportune providit, non ex eo, quod aut adstrictum corpus erat, aut fluebat; sed ex causa, quæ ante præcesserat. Estque etiam proprium aliquid et loci et temporis, istis quoque autoribus: qui cum disputant, quemadmodum sanis hominibus agendum sit, præcipiunt ut gravibus aut locis aut temporibus magis vitetur frigus, æstus, satietas, labor, libido; magisque ut conquiescat iisdem locis aut temporibus, si quis gravitatem corporis sentit; ac neque vomitu stomachum, neque purgatione alvum sollicitet. Quæ vera quidem sunt; a communibus tamen ad quædam propria descendunt. Nisi persuadere nobis volunt, sanis quidem considerandum esse, quod cœlum, quod tempus anni sit; ægris vero non esse: quibus tanto magis omnis observatio necessaria est, quanto magis obnoxia offensis infirmitas est. Quin etiam morborum in iisdem hominibus aliæ atque aliæ proprietates sunt; et qui secundis aliquando frustra curatus est, contrariis sæpe restituitur. Plurimaque in dando

## ORDO.

tatem. Qua epota cum ille fregisset vim vini miscendo, protinus excusset febrem somno et sudore. Quod auxilium medicus providit opportune, non ex eo quod corpus erat aut adstrictum aut fluebat; sed ex causa quæ præcesserat ante. Que est etiam aliquid proprium et loci et temporis, quoque istis auctoribus: qui cum disputant quemadmodum sit agendum sanis hominibus, præcipiunt aut ut gravibus locis aut temporibus, frigus vitetur magis, æstus, satietas, labor, libido: que ut conquiescat magis (in) iisdem locis aut temporibus, si quis sentit gravitatem corporis; ac neque sollicitet stomachum vomitu, neque alvum purgatione. Quæ quidem sunt vera; tamen descendunt à communibus ad quædam propria. Nisi volunt persuadere nobis esse considerandum sanis quidem, quid sit cœlum, quod tempus anni, vero non esse ægris; quibus omnis observatio est tanto magis necessaria, quanto infirmitas est magis obnoxia offensis. Quin etiam sunt aliæ atque aliæ proprietates morborum in iisdem hominibus; et qui curatus est frustra aliquando secundis sæpe restituitur contrariis. Que plurima discrimina

## TRANSLATION.

cold water: which being drunk, it reduced the strength of the wine by dilution, and he was immediately relieved of fever by sleep and perspiration. Which remedy the physician very opportunely adopted in this case, not from his body being either constipated or relaxed, but from the preceding cause. And as there is also some peculiarity both of time and place in those authors; who, when treating of the manner in which healthy persons are to conduct themselves, strictly advise them to shun cold, heat, excess, labour, and lust in all unhealthy places and seasons: and they enjoin more rest in those places or times, if any person feel the sensation of a weight on the body; and in such cases the stomach is neither to be disturbed by vomiting, nor the bowels by purging. Which things indeed are very true; yet they descend from the common to the peculiar symptoms: unless they wish to persuade us, that even healthy persons ought to consider the nature of the atmosphere, and the season of the year, but these observations are unnecessary for invalids; to whom every precaution is proportionately more indispensable, as an infirm state of health is more susceptible of injury. But there are, not only a variety of diseases, but also a variety of peculiarities in the same persons, and one who has been treated unsuccessfully by apparently appropriate remedies, is frequently restored by their contraries. And there is also much discrimination to be observed

cibo discrimina reperiuntur; ex quibus contentus uno ero. Nam famem facilius adolescens, quam puer; facilius in denso cœlo, quam in tenui; facilius hieme, quam æstate; facilius uno cibo, quam prandio quoque assuetus; facilius inexercitatus, quam exercitatus homo sustinet. Sæpe autem in eo magis necessaria cibi festinatio est, qui minus inediam tolerat. Ob quæ conjicio, eum, qui propria non novit, communia tantum intueri debere; eumque, qui nosse propria potest, illa quidem non oportere negligere, sed his quoque insistere. Ideoque, cum par scientia sit, utiliorem tamen medicum esse amicum, quam extraneum. Igitur, ut ad propositum meum redeam, rationalem quidem puto medicinam esse debere: instrui vero ab evidentibus causis; obscuris omnibus, non a cogitatione artificis, sed ab ipsa arte rejectis. Incidere autem vivorum corpora, et crudele, et supervacuum est: mortuorum, discentibus necessarium. Nam positum et ordinem nosse debent; quæ, cadavera melius, quam vivus et vulneratus homo, repræsentant. Sed et cetera, quæ modo in vivis cognosci possunt, in ipsis curationibus vulnera-

## ORDO.

reperiuntur in cibo dando: ex quibus ero contentus uno. Nam adolescens sustinet famem facilius quam puer, facilius in denso cœlo, quam in tenui; facilius hieme, quam æstate; facilius assuetus uno cibo, quam prandio quoque; inexercitatus facilius quam exercitatus homo. Autem sæpe festinatio cibi est magis necessaria in eo, qui tolerat inediam minus. Ob quæ conjicio eum, qui novit non propria, debere intueri tantum communia; quæ oportere eum qui potest nosse propria, non quidem negligere illa, sed quoque insistere his.

Que ideo cum scientia sit par, tamen amicum esse utiliorem medicum, quam extraneum. Igitur, ut redeam ad meum propositum, puto medicinam debere quidem esse rationalem: vero instrui ab evidentibus causis; omnibus obscuris rejectis, non à cogitatione artificis, sed ab arte ipsa. Autem incidere corpora vivorum est et crudele et supervacuum: mortuorum necessarium discentibus. Nam debent nosse positum, et ordinem, quæ cadavera repræsentant melius, quam vivus et vulneratus homo. Sed ut usus ipse monstrabit cetera, quæ possunt modo cognosci in vivis, in curationibus

## TRANSLATION.

in giving food; of which I shall be content with one. For instance: a young man sustains hunger more easily than a boy; more easily in a dense atmosphere, than in a more pure air; more easily in winter than in summer; he who is accustomed to a single repast easier than he who takes a dinner (15) also; an inactive person more easily, than one who takes exercise. But the frequent repetition of food is the more necessary to him who can least support hunger. For these reasons, I think, that he, who has not acquired the idiosyncracies ought only to attend to the common symptoms; and it behoves him who can discover the peculiar, certainly not to neglect the former, but to rely chiefly on the latter.

And on that account, a friend will be the more successful physician, than the stranger, when there is a parity of knowledge possessed by each. Now, that I may return to my proposition, I think, certainly, medicine ought to be rational, but to be directed by evident causes, all the latent being rejected, not from the contemplation of the artist, but from the art itself. And to dissect the bodies of living animals is both cruel and superfluous: but the examination of dead subjects is imperatively necessary on students: for they ought to know the position and order of the parts, which are demonstrated with greater facility in dead bodies, than in a living and wounded man. As for the rest, practice itself will point out such things, which can only be



torum paulo tardius, sed aliquanto mitius usus ipse monstrabit. His propositis, primum dicam, quemadmodum sanos agere conveniat: tum ad ea transibo, quæ ad morbos curationesque eorum pertinebunt.

## ORDO.

ipsis vulneratorum paulo tardius, sed aliquanto mitius.

His propositis dicam primum, quemadmodum conveniat sanos agere: tum transibo ad ea, quæ pertinebunt ad morbos, quæ curationes eorum.

## TRANSLATION.

learned on the living, by the dressing of the wounded more slowly, but a little more tenderly.

Having proposed these things, I shall first treat of the mode by which the healthy may act: then I shall proceed to those things which will pertain to diseases and their treatment.

## CAP. I.

QUEMADMODUM SANOS AGERE CON-  
VENIAT.

SANUS homo, qui et bene valet, et suæ spontis est, nullis obligare se legibus debet; ac neque medico, neque iatralipta egere. Hunc oportet varium habere vitæ genus: modo ruri esse, modo in urbe, sæpiusque in agro; navigare, venari, quiescere interdum, sed frequentius se exercere: siquidem ignavia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; illa maturam senectutem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit. Prodest etiam interdum balneo, interdum aquis frigidis uti; modo ungi, modo idipsum negligere; nullum cibi genus fugere, quo populus utatur; interdum in convictu esse, interdum ab eo se retrahere; modo plus justo, modo non amplius assumere; bis die potius, quam semel cibum capere, et semper quam plurimum, dummodo hunc concoquat. Sed ut hujus generis exercitationes cibique necessarii sunt; sic athletici supervacui. Nam et intermissus propter civiles aliquas necessitates

## ORDO.

QUEMADMODUM SANOS CONVE-  
NIAT AGERE.

SANUS homo, qui et bene valet, et est suæ spontis, debet obligare se nullis legibus; ac neque egere medico, neque iatralipta.

Oportet hunc habere varium genus vitæ: modo esse ruri, modo in urbe, que sæpius in agro; navigare, venari, interdum quiescere, sed exercere se frequentius: siquidem ignavia hebetat corpus, labor firmat; illa reddit maturam senectutem, hic longam adolescentiam. Etiam prodest uti balneo interdum, (et) interdum frigidis aquis; modo ungi, modo negligere idipsum; fugere nullum genus cibi, quo populus utatur; interdum esse in convictu, interdum retrahere se ab eo; modo assumere plus quam justo, modo non amplius; capere cibum bis die potius, quam semel, et semper quam plurimum, dummodo concoquat hunc. Sed ut exercitationes que cibi hujus generis sunt necessarii; sic athletici supervacui. Et nam ordo exercitationis intermissus prop-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. I.

## INSTRUCTIONS FOR HEALTHY PERSONS.

A MAN of sound constitution, who is in the enjoyment of good health and a free agent, ought to be under no restriction of regimen; and neither to require the physician nor an iatralipta (16).

It is necessary for him to have a diversified kind of life; sometimes to be in the country, sometimes in town, and more frequently in the fields; to sail, to hunt, to rest at times, but to exercise himself more frequently; for indolence debilitates the frame, labour strengthens it; the one brings on premature age, the other a long adolescence. Sometimes the warm bath (17) may be used with advantage, sometimes the cold; to anoint at times, and at other times to neglect it; to avoid no kind of food that may be in common use; sometimes to banquet, at other times to withdraw himself from it; sometimes to eat more plentifully, at another time to take no more than just enough; to take food twice in the day rather than once, and always as much as he can digest. But as exercise and food of this kind are necessary, so those of wrestlers are improper; for on account of some domestic necessity, the

ordo exercitationis corpus affligit; et ea corpora, quæ more eorum repleta sunt, celerrime et senescunt, et ægrotant. Concubitus vero neque nimis concupiscendus, neque nimis pertimescendus est: rarus, corpus excitat, frequens, solvit. Cum autem frequens, non numero sit, sed natura, ratione ætatis et corporis, scire licet, eum non inutilem esse, quem corporis neque languor, neque dolor sequitur. Idem interdiu pejor est, noctu tutior: ita tamen, si neque illum cibus, neque hunc cum vigilia labor statim sequitur. Hæc firmis servanda sunt; cavendumque, ne in secunda valetudine adversæ præsidia consumantur.

## ORDO.

ter aliquas civiles necessitates affligit corpus; et ea corpora, quæ sunt repleta more eorum, celerrime et senescunt, et ægrotant. Vero concubitus est neque concupiscendus nimis, neque pertimescendus nimis; rarus, excitat corpus, frequens, solvit. Cum autem sit frequens, non numero, sed natura, licet scire ratione ætatis et corporis, eum non esse inutilem, quem neque languor, neque dolor corporis sequitur. Idem est pejor interdiu, tutior noctu: tamen ita si neque cibus statim sequitur illum, neque labor cum vigilia (statim sequitur) hunc.

Hæc sunt servanda firmis; que cavendum ne in secunda valetudine præsidia adversæ consumantur.

## TRANSLATION.

order of the exercise being interrupted, the body is injured; and those whose bodies are so highly fed, like theirs, very soon become feeble and diseased.

Now venery is neither to be indulged in too freely, nor entirely shunned; in moderation it animates the body, a frequency debilitates it. But as it may not be understood by the number of repetitions, we may know by the nature, the age, and constitution of a person, that it is not injurious, when it is followed neither by languor, nor pain of the body. It is more injurious in the day-time, but safer in the night; provided that neither the first be immediately followed by food, nor the last by vigilance and labour.

These precepts ought to be observed by the healthy and vigorous; and let them take care, lest the life-guards of health be defective in disease.

## CAP. II.

QUÆ STOMACHO IMBECILLIS SERVANDA  
SINT.

At imbecillis (quo in numero magna pars urbanorum, omnesque pene cupidi litterarum sunt) observatio major neces-

## ORDO.

## CAP. II.

QUÆ SINT SERVANDA IMBECILLIS  
STOMACHO.

At major observatio est necessaria (stomacho imbecillis in quo numero sunt magna pars urbanorum, que pene omnes cupidi

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

RULES TO BE OBSERVED BY THOSE WHO HAVE A WEAKNESS OF  
THE STOMACH.

BUT greater precaution is necessary for the ailing, in which number, a great part are those living in cities, and almost all those who are studious: that care may



saria est: ut quod vel corporis, vel loci, vel studii ratio detrahit, cura restituat. Ex his igitur, qui bene concoxit, mane tuto surget; qui parum, quiescere debet, et si mane surgendi necessitas fuerit, redormire: qui non concoxit, ex toto conquiescere, ac neque labori se, neque exercitationi, neque negotiis credere. Qui crudum sine præcordiorum dolore ructat, is ex intervallo aquam frigidam bibere, et se nihilominus continere. Habitare vero ædificio lucido, perflatum æstivum, hibernum solem habente; cavere meridianum solem, matutinum et vespertinum frigus; itemque auras fluminum atque stagnorum: minimeque, nubilo cælo, soli aperiendi se committere, ne modo frigus, modo calor moveat; quæ res maxime gravedines destillationesque concitat. Magis vero gravibus locis ista servanda sunt, in quibus etiam pestilentiam faciunt. Scire autem licet, integrum corpus esse, cum quotidie mane urina alba, dein rufa est: illud concoquere, hoc concoxisse significat. Ubi expectatus est aliquis, paulum intermittere: deinde, nisi hiems est, fovere os multa aqua frigida debet.

Longis diebus meridiari potius ante cibum; sin minus, post eum: per hie-

## ORDO.

literarum): ut cura restituat (morbis) quod vel ratio corporis, vel loci, vel studii detrahet. Igitur ex his, qui concoxit bene, surget tuto mane; qui parum, debet quiescere, et si fuerit necessitas surgendi mane, redormire: qui non concoxit, conquiescere ex toto, ac neque credere se labori, neque exercitationi, neque negotiis. Qui ructat crudum sine dolore præcordiorum, is bibere ex intervallo frigidam aquam, et nihilominus continere se. Vero habitare lucido ædificio, æstivum perflatum, habente hibernum solem; cavere meridianum solem, (cavere) matutinum et vespertinum frigus; que item (cavere) auras fluminum atque stagnorum: que committere se minime, soli aperiende nubilo cælo, ne moveat modo frigus, modo calor; quæ res maxime concitat gravedines quæ destillationes. Vero ista sunt servanda magis gravibus locis, in quibus etiam faciunt pestilentiam. Autem licet scire, corpus esse integrum, cum urina est alba quotidie mane, dein rufa: illud significat concoquere, hoc concoxisse. Ubi aliquis est expectatus, intermittere paulum; deinde, nisi est hiems, debet fovere os multa aqua frigida.

Longis diebus, meridiari potius ante cibum; sin, minus,

## TRANSLATION.

rectify those disorders arising either from their constitution, situation, or study. Therefore those who have digested well, may rise safely in the morning: he who has digested badly ought to rest; and if there be a necessity of rising, let him go to bed again. He who has not digested at all should remain perfectly quiet, and neither betake himself to labour, nor exercise, nor business. He who has eructations of the crude ingesta, without pain of the præcordia, ought to drink cold water at intervals, and to restrain himself otherwise. But he ought to live in a house well lighted, having the summer breeze and winter sun, to shun the meridian sun, morning and evening colds, and also the mal-aria of rivers and stagnant pools; and above all, not to expose himself to the sun bursting through a cloudy sky, lest he be sometimes affected with heat, at other times with cold, which very often produce catarrhematic (18) affections. But these observations are more applicable to unhealthy places, in which they even cause pestilence. A person may be said to be in good health, when the morning urine is first white, then of a light red colour: that implies digestion to be going on; this, its being finished. When a person awakes, he ought to remain a little, and, unless it be winter, he ought to wash his mouth with plenty of cold water.

In the long days he ought to repose at noon (19), rather before, than after a meal:

mem potissimum totis noctibus con-  
quiescere. Sin lucubrandum est, non  
post cibum id facere, sed post conco-  
ctionem. Quem interdiu vel domestica,  
vel civilia officia tenuerunt, huic tempus  
aliquod servandum curationi corporis  
sui est. Prima autem ejus curatio,  
exercitatio est, quæ semper antece-  
dere cibum debet: in eo, qui minus  
laboravit, et bene concoxit, amplior;  
in eo, qui fatigatus est, et minus con-  
coxit, remissior. Commode vero exer-  
cent, clara lectio, arma, pila, cursus,  
ambulatio; atque hæc non utique plana,  
commodior est; siquidem melius ascen-  
sus quoque et descensus, cum quadam  
varietate corpus moveat; nisi tamen id  
perquam imbecillum est. Melior au-  
tem est sub divo, quam in porticu;  
melior, si caput patitur, in sole, quam  
in umbra; melior in umbra, quam pa-  
rietes aut viridia efficiunt, quam quæ  
tecto subest; melior recta, quam flex-  
uosa. Exercitationis autem plerumque  
finis esse debet sudor, aut certe lassitudo  
quæ citra fatigationem sit: idque  
ipsum, modo minus, modo magis faci-  
endum est. Ac ne his quidem, athle-  
tarum exemplo, vel certa esse lex, vel  
immodicus labor debet. Exercitatio-  
nem recte sequitur, modo unctio, vel in  
sole, vel ad ignem; modo balneum, sed

## ORDO.

post eum: per hiemem potissi-  
mum, totis noctibus conquies-  
cere. Sin lucubrandum est non  
facere id post cibum, sed post  
concoctionem. Quem interdiu,  
vel domestica, vel civilia officia  
tenuerunt; huic aliquid tempus  
servandum est curationi sui cor-  
poris. Autem prima curatio ejus  
est exercitatio, quæ debet sem-  
per antecedere cibum: amplior  
in eo, qui laboravit minus, et con-  
coxit bene; remissior in eo, qui  
est fatigatus, et concoxit minus.  
Vero clara lectio, arma, pila,  
cursus, ambulatio exercent com-  
mode; atque hæc non utique  
plana, est commodior; siquidem  
ascensus quoque et descensus,  
melius, cum quadam varietate  
corpus moveat (melius); nisi ta-  
men id est perquam imbecillum.  
Autem est melior, sub divo quam  
in porticu; si caput patitur me-  
lior, in sole, quam in umbra;  
melior in umbra, quam efficiunt,  
parietes aut viridia, que subest  
tecto, melior recta, quam flex-  
uosa. Autem sudor plerumque  
debet esse finis exercitationis,  
aut certe lassitudo, quæ sit citra  
fatigationem: idque ipsum est  
faciendum modo minus, modo  
magis. Ac ne his quidem debet  
esse vel lex certa, exemplo ath-  
letarum, vel immodicus labor.  
Modo unctio vel in sole, vel ad ig-  
nem, recte sequitur exercitatio-  
nem; modo balneum, sed con-

## TRANSLATION.

in winter especially, to rest the whole night: but if he be compelled to study by night, he ought not to do that after food, but after digestion. He whom either domestic or civil duties have occupied during the day, ought to set apart some time for the refreshment of his body: and his first care is exercise, which ought always to precede food: he who has digested well and laboured little, his exercise ought to be more powerful; but more gentle in him who is fatigued, and digested less. Reading aloud, the use of arms, the ball, running, and walking, are very convenient exercises; and the latter of which would be more advantageous, if not on a plane, since the body may be exercised better by an ascending and descending variety, unless it be very weak. And it is better in the open air than in a portico; better in the sun (if the head can bear it) than in a shade; better in a shade formed by walls or shrubberies, than that which is under a roof; a straight walk is better than a winding. But incipient perspiration ought generally to terminate the exercise, or at least, lassitude short of fatigue, and even in this itself it ought to be sometimes more, sometimes less. And indeed there ought to be no fixed rule, nor immoderate labour in these exercises, in imitation of the athletes. Unction very properly follows these exercises, sometimes; either in the sun, or before a fire; at another time a bath, but in a chamber as high,

conclavi quam maxime, et alto, et lucido, et spatioso. Ex his vero neutrum semper fieri oportet; sed sæpius alterutrum, pro corporis natura. Post hæc paulum conquiescere opus est. Ubi ad cibum ventum est, nunquam utilis est nimia satietas; sæpe inutilis nimia abstinencia: si qua intemperantia subest, tutior est in potione, quam in esca. Cibus a salsamentis, oleribus, similibusque rebus melius incipit: tum caro assumenda est, quæ assa optima, aut elixa est. Condita omnia duabus de causis inutilia sunt; quoniam et plus propter dulcedinem assumitur, et quod modo par est, tamen ægris concoquitur. Secunda mensa bono stomacho nihil nocet, in imbecillo coacescit. Si quis itaque hoc parum valet, palmulas, pomaque, et similia melius primo cibo assumit. Post multas potiones, quæ aliquantum sitim excesserunt, nihil edendum est: post satietatem, nihil agendum. Ubi expletus est aliquis, facilius concoquit, si quidquid assumpsit, potione aquæ frigidæ includit, tum paulisper invigilat, deinde bene dormit. Si quis interdium se implevit, post cibum neque frigori, neque æstui, neque labori se debet com-

## ORDO.

clavi, quam maxime, et alto, et lucido, et spatioso. Ex his vero oportet neutrum ex his fieri sed sæpius, alterutrum, pro natura corporis. Post hæc est opus conquiescere paulum. Ubi est ventum ad cibum, nimia satietas est nunquam utilis, nimia abstinencia (est) sæpe inutilis: si qua intemperantia subest, est tutior in potione, quam in esca. Cibus incipit melius a salsamentis, oleribus, que similibus rebus: tum caro est assumenda, quæ assa, aut elixa est optima. Omnia condita sunt inutilia de duobus causis; quoniam et plus assumitur propter dulcedinem, et quod est modo par, tamen concoquitur ægrius. Secunda mensa nocet nihil bono stomacho, coacescit in imbecillo. Que ita si quis valet hoc parum, melius assumit primo cibo palmulas, que poma, et similia. Post multas potiones, quæ excesserunt aliquantum sitim, nihil est edendum: post satietatem nihil (est) agendum. Ubi aliquis est expletus, concoquit facilius, si includit quidquid assumpsit potione frigidæ aquæ, tum invigilat paulisper, deinde dormit bene. Si quis implevit se interdium, post cibum debet neque committere se frigori, neque æstui, neque labori: enim neque hæc nocent

## TRANSLATION.

light, and spacious as possible. It is not incumbent that either of these should be done always, but very frequently, one or other as may be most agreeable to the peculiarity of the constitution. After these things it is necessary to rest a little. When food is about to be taken, satiety is injurious, so is too great abstinence; if there be any excess to be tolerated, it is safer in drinking than in eating. It is best to begin a meal with salt meats (20), vegetables and such like. After these, meat which is roasted or boiled is best. All condiments are injurious, from two causes, one is, that too much is taken on account of their being very palatable, and the other, that although the quantity be moderate, yet they are digested with difficulty. A dessert is not injurious to a healthy stomach, but generates acidity in a weak. Therefore if this organ be weak, he would better commence with dates, apples, and such like. Nothing should be eaten, after the thirst has been fully satisfied by a sufficiency of drink; after which, nothing should be done. When one has completed a meal, digestion is more easily effected by concluding whatever he has taken with a draught of cold water; then continuing awake for a little while, he may sleep well afterwards. If a person have eaten rather freely in the day time, he ought not to expose himself after it either to cold, heat, or labour; for these things do not injure an



mittere: neque enim tam facile hæc inani corpore, quam repleto nocent. Si quibus de causis futura inedia est, labor omnis vitandus est.

ORDO.  
inani corpore, tam facile quam repleto. Si de quibus causis inedia est futura, omnis labor est vitandus.

## TRANSLATION.

empty stomach so easily as a full one. If from any cause, privation be imperative, all labour must be avoided.

## CAP. III.

OBSERVATIONES QUÆDAM PROUT RES NOVÆ ACCIDUNT, ET CORPORUM GENERA, ET SEXUS, ET ÆTATES, ET TEMPORA ANNI SUNT.

ATQUE hæc quidem pene perpetua sunt. Quasdam autem observationes desiderant et novæ res, et corporum genera, et sexus, et ætates, et tempora anni. Nam neque ex salubri loco in gravem, neque ex gravi in salubrem transitus satis tutus est. Ex salubri in gravem, prima hieme; ex gravi in eum, qui salubris est, prima æstate transire melius est. Neque vero ex multa fame nimia satietas; neque ex nimia satietate fames idonea est. Periclitaturque, et qui semel, et qui bis die cibum incontinenter, contra consuetudinem, assumit. Item, neque ex nimio labore subitum otium, neque ex nimio otio su-

## ORDO.

## CAP. III.

QUÆDAM OBSERVATIONES SUNT, PROUT NOVÆ RES ACCIDUNT, ET GENERA CORPORUM, ET SEXUS, ET ÆTATES, TEMPORA ANNI.

ATQUE hæc quidem sunt pene perpetua. Autem et novæ res, et genera corporum, et sexus et tempora anni desiderant quasdam observationes. Nam neque est transitus ex salubri loco in gravem, neque ex gravi in salubrem satis tutus. Est melius transire ex salubri (loco) in gravem prima hieme; ex gravi (loco) in eum, qui est salubris prima æstate. Vero neque est nimia satietas idonea ex multa fame; neque (est) fames (idonea) ex nimia satietate. Que et qui assumit cibum semel incontinenter periclitatur, et qui bis in die contra consuetudinem. Item neque est subitum otium ex nimio labore, neque subitus la-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

SOME OBSERVATIONS APPLICABLE TO NEW INCIDENTS AND THE DIFFERENT CONSTITUTIONS, SEXES, AND AGES, AND SEASONS OF THE YEAR.

THE precepts hitherto delivered are almost of universal application; but there are new cases, and varieties of constitution, the difference of sexes, ages, and seasons of the year require particular observation. The transition from a healthy place to an unhealthy, or from an unhealthy to a healthy, is not very safe. It is better to pass from a healthy place to an unhealthy in the beginning of winter; from a sickly to a salubrious in the commencement of summer. Neither is it proper to surcharge the stomach with food after long privation; nor should privation succeed to a full diet. And a person runs some risk of his health who eats once or twice immoderately contrary to custom. Therefore, a rapid transition from too much labour to

bitus labor, sine gravi noxa est. Ergo, cum quis mutare aliquid volet, paulatim debet assuescere. Omnem etiam laborem facilius vel puer vel senex, quam insuetus homo sustinet. Atque ideo quoque nimis otiosa vita utilis non est; quia potest incidere laboris necessitas. Si quando tamen insuetus aliquis laboravit, aut si multo plus, quam solet, etiam is qui assuevit, huic jejuno dormiendum est: multo magis, si etiam os amarum est, vel oculi caligant, aut venter perturbatur. Tum enim non dormiendum tantummodo jejuno est, sed etiam in posterum diem permanendum; nisi cito id quies sustulit. Quod si factum est, surgere oportet, et lente paulum ambulare. At si somni necessitas non fuit, quia modice magis aliquis laboravit, tamen ingredi aliquid eodem modo debet. Communia deinde omnibus sunt post fatigationem cibum sumpturis, ubi paulum ambulaverunt, si balneum non est, calido loco, vel in sole, vel ad ignem ungi, atque sudare; si est, ante omnia in tepida resedere; deinde, ubi paulum conquieverunt, intrare et descendere in solium; tum multo oleo ungi, leniterque perfricari; iterum in solium descendere: post hæc,

## ORDO.

bor ex nimio otio sine noxa. Ergo cum quis volet mutare aliquid, debet assuescere paulatim. Etiam vel puer vel senex sustinet omnem laborem facilius, quam insuetus homo. Atque ideo quoque vita nimis otiosa est non utilis; quia necessitas laboris potest incidere. Tamen si aliquis insuetus quando laboravit, aut si etiam is qui assuevit multo plus quam solet, est huic dormiendum jejuno: multo magis, si etiam os est amarum, vel oculi caligant, aut venter perturbatur. Enim tum non tantummodo est dormiendum jejuno, sed etiam permanendum in posterum diem; nisi quies sustulit id cito. Quod si est factum, oportet surgere, et ambulare paulum lente. At si non fuit necessitas somni, quia aliquis laboravit magis modice, tamen debet ingredi aliquid eodem modo.

Deinde sunt communia omnibus sumpturis cibum post fatigationem, ubi ambulaverunt paulum, si non est balneum, ungi, atque sudare calido loco, vel in sole, vel ad ignem; si est, ante omnia resedere in tepida; deinde ubi conquieverunt paulum intrare et descendere in solium; tum ungi multo oleo, que perfricari leniter; iterum descendere in solium: post hæc fovere os multa

## TRANSLATION.

ease, or the sudden accession of too much ease after hard labour, is not unattended with serious danger. Consequently, when any change is contemplated, the transition ought to be very gradual. Even a boy or an old man sustains labour more easily than a man unaccustomed to it: and for this reason an over-indolent life is not conducive to health; because the necessity of labour may happen. Yet, if a person, unaccustomed at any time, or even one who has been inured, should labour much more than usual, he ought to sleep with an empty stomach; particularly if he have a bitter taste in his mouth, or the eyes are dim, or the bowels disturbed. For then he must not only sleep with an empty stomach, but remain so the following day, unless rest has suddenly carried it off. If that has been done, he ought to get up and walk a little, slowly; but if a person has been at such moderate labour that there is no necessity for sleep, still he ought to walk in the same manner.

Here follow some general rules for those who are about to eat after fatigue: when they have walked a little, if there be not a bath, let them be anointed and perspire, either in a warm place or in the sun, or before the fire; if there be, first of all let them sit in the tepidarium, afterwards, when they have rested a little, to descend into the solium, then to be anointed with plenty of oil, to be rubbed gently, and again descend into the solium: after these being done, let the mouth be

os aqua calida fovere, deinde frigida. Balneum his fervens idoneum non est. Ergo si nimium alicui fatigato pene febris est, huic abunde est, loco tepido demittere se inguinibus tenus in aquam calidam, cui paulum olei sit adjectum: deinde totum quidem corpus, maxime tamen eas partes, quæ in aqua fuerunt, leniter perfricare ex oleo, cui vinum et paulum contriti salis sit adjectum. Post hæc, omnibus fatigatis aptum est cibum sumere, eoque humido uti; aqua, vel certe diluta potione esse contentos; maximeque ea, quæ moveat urinam. Illud quoque nosse oportet, quod ex labore sudanti frigida potio perniciosissima est; atque etiam, cum sudor se remisit, itinere fatigatis inutilis. A balneo quoque venientibus Asclepiades inutilem eam judicavit: quod in iis verum est, quibus alvus facile, nec tuto, resolvitur, quique facile inhorrescunt; perpetuum in omnibus non est, cum potius naturale sit, potione æstuantem stomachum refrigerari. Quod ita præcipio, ut tamen fatear, ne ex hac quidem causa sudanti adhuc frigidum bibendum esse. Solet etiam prodesse, post varium cibum, frequentesque dilutas potiones, vomitus, et postero die longa quies, deinde modica exercitatio.

## ORDO.

calida aqua, deinde frigida. Fervens balneum non est idoneum his. Ergo si est pene nimium febris alicui fatigato, est abunde huic, demittere se loco tepido tenus inguinibus in aquam calidam, cui paulum olei sit adjectum: deinde quidem perfricare totum corpus leniter, tamen maxime eas partes quæ fuerunt in aqua, ex oleo, cui vinum et paulum contriti salis sit adjectum.

Post hæc est aptum omnibus fatigatis sumere cibum, que uti eo humido; esse contentos aqua, vel certe diluta potione; que maxime ea que moveat urinam. Quoque oportet nosse illud, quod frigida potio est perniciosissima sudanti ex labori; atque etiam cum sudor remisit se, (est) inutilis fatigatis itinere. Asclepiades quoque judicavit eam inutilem venientibus a balneo: quod est verum in iis, quibus alvus resolvitur facile, nec tuto, que qui inhorrescunt facile; est non perpetuum in omnibus, cum sit potius naturale, æstuantem stomachum refrigerari potione. Quod ita præcipio, ut tamen fatear, ne quidem ex hac causa frigidum esse bibendum adhuc sudanti.

Etiam vomitus solet prodesse, post varium cibum, que frequentes dilutas potiones, et postero die longa quies, deinde modica exercitatio. Si assidua

## TRANSLATION.

washed with warm water, afterwards with cold. A hot bath is improper for these: therefore, if a person be so over fatigued as almost to be feverish, it will be sufficient for him to lower himself as far as the groin in a tepid room in warm water, to which a little oil has been added; afterwards let the whole body be rubbed gently, more particularly those parts which have been in the water, with oil, to which some wine and a little powdered salt have been added.

Afterwards, it is proper for all persons that are fatigued to take food, and moisture with it; to be content with water, or at most diluted drink, particularly that which may prove diuretic. It is also necessary to know, that cold water is most pernicious to a sweating person after labour, also to a person fatigued by a journey, even when the perspiration has abated. Asclepiades also has pronounced it injurious to those coming out of the bath: and he is correct with those who are easily relaxed, but not with safety to those who are liable to rigors: this is not a general rule, since it may be more natural for a heated stomach to be cooled by drink. Whilst I prescribe so, I confess at the same time that not even on this account should any thing be drunk by a person in a state of perspiration.

An emetic is usually advantageous after various food, and frequent diluted drinks, and on the following day a long rest and moderate exercise. If one be oppressed



Si assidua fatigatio urget, invicem modo aqua, modo vinum bibendum est, raroque balneo utendum. Levatque lassitudinem etiam laboris mutatio: eumque, quem novum genus ejusdem laboris pressit, id, quod in consuetudine est, reficit. Fatigato quotidianum cubile tutissimum est. Lassat enim quod contra consuetudinem, seu molle seu durum est. Proprie quædam ad eum pertinent, qui ambulando fatigatur. Hunc reficit in ipso quoque itinere frequens frictio; post iter, primum sedile, deinde unctio: tum calida aqua in balneo magis superiores partes, quam inferiores foveat. Si quis vero exustus in sole est, huic in balneum protinus eundum, perfundendumque oleo corpus et caput; deinde in solium bene calidum descendendum est; tum multa aqua per caput infundenda, prius calida, deinde frigida. At ei, qui perfrixit, opus est in balneo primum involuto sedere, donec insudet; tum ungi; deinde lavari: cibum modicum, portiones meracas assumere. Is vero qui navigavit, et nausea pressus est, si multam bilem evomuit, vel abstinere cibo debet, vel paulum aliquid assumere: si pituitam acidam effudit, utique sumere

## ORDO.

fatigatio urget, modo aqua, modo vinum, est bibendum invicem, que utendum balneo raro. Que etiam mutatio laboris levat lassitudinem: que eum quem novum genus ejusdem laboris pressit, id, quod est in consuetudine, reficit. Fatigato quotidianum cubile est tutissimum. Enim quod est contra consuetudinem lassat, seu est molle, seu (est) durum. Quædam pertinent proprie ad eum, qui fatigatur ambulando. Frequens frictio quoque reficit hunc in itinere ipso; post iter, primum sedile, deinde unctio: tum foveat superiores partes, magis quam inferiores calida aqua in balneo. Vero si quis exustus est in sole, (est) huic eundum protinus in balneum, que corpus et caput perfundendum oleo; deinde est descendendum in solium bene calidum; tum infundenda multa aqua per caput, prius calida, deinde frigida. At est opus ei qui perfrixerit involuto primum sedere in balneo, donec insudet; tum ungi; deinde lavari: assumere modicum cibum, (que) meracas portiones. Vero is qui navigavit, et est pressus nausea, si evomuit multam bilem, debet vel abstinere cibo, vel assumere aliquid paulum: si effudit acidam pituitam, utique sumere cibum,

## TRANSLATION.

with unremitting lassitude, a little wine, a little water must be taken alternately, and rarely use the bath. Also a change of labour relieves fatigue; and that labour, of which he is in constant practice, recruits him whom a new kind of the same labour debilitates. The daily couch is very convenient to a fatigued person: but even that, if contrary to habit, whether soft or hard, wearsies.

There are some things peculiarly applicable to a man fatigued by walking. Frequent friction, even on the journey itself, refreshes him; at the end of the journey, first a rest, and then unction; afterwards, he may foment the lower extremities rather than the upper with warm water. But if a person has been scorched in the sun, he must go immediately to the bath and have oil poured over his head and body; afterwards, he must go into the solium very warm: there plenty of warm water is to be poured on the head, afterwards cold. But it will be necessary for him who has been chilled to be well wrapped up, and to sit in the laconicum until he may perspire; then to be anointed; afterwards to bathe: to take food in moderation, and drink pure wine.

But he who has been to sea, and is troubled with nausea if he has vomited much bile, ought to abstain from food or to take very little; if he has ejected acid phlegm(21) he may indeed take a little, but lighter than ordinary; if he has had

cibum, sed assueto leviores : si sine vomitu nausea fuit, vel abstinere, vel post cibum vomere. Qui vero toto die, vel in vehiculo, vel in spectaculis sedit, huic nihil currendum, sed lente ambulandum est : lenta quoque in balneo mora, dein cœna exigua prodesse consueverunt. Si quis in balneo æstuat, reficit hunc ore exceptum, et in eo retentum, acetum : si id non est, eodem modo frigida aqua assumpta.

Ante omnia autem nôrit quisque naturam sui corporis : quoniam alii graciles, alii obesi sunt ; alii calidi, alii frigidiore ; alii humidi, alii sicci ; alios adstricta, alios resoluta alvus exercet : raro quisquam non aliquam partem corporis imbecillam habet. Tenuis vero homo implere se debet, plenus extenuare, calidus refrigerare, frigidus calefacere, madens siccare, siccus madefacere : itemque alvum firmare is, cui fusa ; solvere is, cui adstricta est : succurrendumque semper parti maxime laboranti est.

Implet autem corpus modica exercitatio, frequentior quies, unctio, et si post prandium est, balneum, contracta alvus, modicum frigus hieme, somnus et plenus et non nimis longus, molle cubile, animi securitas, assumpta per cibos et

## ORDO.

sed leviores (quam) assueto : si fuit nausea sine vomitu, (debet) vel abstinere, vel vomere post cibum. Vero qui sedit toto die, vel in vehiculo, vel in spectaculis, (est) huic currendum nihil, sed est ambulandum lente : quoque lenta mora in balneo, dein exigua cœna consueverunt prodesse. Si quis æstuat in balneo, acetum exceptum (in) ore, et retentum in eo reficit hunc : si est non id, frigida aqua assumpta eodem modo.

Autem ante omnia quisque noverit naturam sui corporis : quoniam alii sunt graciles, alii obesi ; alii calidi, alii frigidiore ; alii humidi, alii sicci ; adstricta alvus exercet alios, resoluta alios : raro quisquam non habet aliquam imbecillam partem corporis. Vero tenuis homo debet implere se, plenus extenuare, calidus refrigerare, frigidus calefacere, madens siccare, siccus madefacere : que item is (debet) firmare alvum, cui fusa ; is (debet) solvere cui est adstricta : que est semper succurrendum parti maxime laboranti.

Autem modica exercitatio implet corpus, frequentior quies, unctio, et si est post prandium, balneum, alvus contracta, modicum frigus hieme, somnus et plenus, et non nimis longus, molle cubile, securitas animi.

## TRANSLATION.

nausea without retching, he should refrain from food, or take an emetic after it. He who has sat the whole day, either in a chariot or at some exhibition, ought not to run at all, but to walk slowly ; also to make a considerable stay in the bath, and then to sup lightly. If one become very warm in the bath, a little vinegar taken into the mouth and held there will refresh him : if that is not to be obtained, cold water to be taken in the same manner.

But above all things every one should know the nature of his constitution : because some are slender, others fat ; some are hot, others more cold ; some are moist, others dry ; constipated bowels trouble some, relaxed, others : there are very few who have not some weak part of the body. The slender man ought to improve his habit, the plethoric man should extenuate himself ; one of warm temperament ought to cool himself, the cold man should make warm ; the moist should dry, the dry should moisten ; he who is of a relaxed habit ought to strengthen the bowels, and he who is costive should relax them ; and that part, in particular, must be supported which is the weakest.

The body improves by moderate exercise, more frequent rest, unction and a warm bath after dinner, costive bowels, moderate cold in winter, full sleep, but not too long, a soft bed, an easy mind, particularly all sweet and fat things taken

potiones maxime dulcia et pingua, cibus et frequentior et quantus plenissimus potest concoqui. Extenuat corpus aqua calida, si quis in eam descendit; magisque si salsa est; in jejuno balneum, inurens sol et omnis calor, cura, vigilia, somnus nimium vel brevis vel longus; lectus, per æstatem, terra; hieme, durum cubile: cursus, multa ambulatio omnisque vehemens exercitatio, vomitus, dejectio, acidæ res et austæræ, et semel die assumptæ, et vini non perfrigidi potio jejuno in consuetudinem adducta.

Cum vero inter extenuantia posuerim vomitum et dejectionem, de his quoque proprie quædam dicenda sunt. Ejectum esse ab Asclepiade vomitum in eo volumine, quod de tuenda sanitate composuit, video: neque reprehendo, si offensus eorum est consuetudine, qui quotidie ejiciendo, vorandi facultatem moliantur. Paulo etiam longius processit: idem purgationes quoque eodem volumine expulit. Et sunt eæ perniciosæ, si nimis valentibus medicamentis fiunt. Sed hæc tamen submovenda esse, non est perpetuum; quia corporum temporumque ratio potest ea facere necessaria, dum et modo, et non nisi cum opus est,

## ORDO.

maxime dulcia et pingua assumpta per cibos et potiones, cibus et frequentior et quantus plenissimus potest concoqui. Calida aqua, si quis in eam descendit extenuat corpus, que magis si est salsa; balneum in jejuno, inurens sol et omnis calor, cura, vigilia, somnus nimium vel brevis, vel longus; terra, lectus per æstatem, durum cubile hieme; cursus, multa ambulatio, que omnis vehemens exercitatio, vomitus, dejectio, austæræ et acidæ res, et assumpta semel die, et potio vini non perfrigidi adducta in consuetudinem jejuno.

Vero cum posuerim vomitum et dejectionem inter extenuantia, quædam propria dicenda sunt quoque de his. Video vomitum esse rejectum ab Asclepiade, in eo volumine quod composuit de tuenda sanitate; neque reprehendo, si est offensus consuetudine eorum, qui ejiciendo quotidie, moliantur facultatem vorandi. Etiam processit paulo longius: idem (Ascl.) expulit purgationes quoque eodem volumine. Et eæ perniciosæ sunt, si fiunt nimis valentibus medicamentis. Sed tamen non est perpetuum, hæc esse submovenda; quia ratio corporum que temporum potest facere ea necessaria, dum adhibeantur, et modo,

## TRANSLATION.

with the food and drink, very frequent meals, and as much in quantity as can be digested.

The body is extenuated by going into warm water, and the more so, if it be salt; (also by) the bath fasting, a scorching sun, all heat, care, watching, either short or long sleep; the earth for a bed during the summer, and a hard couch in winter: running, much walking, and all violent exercise, vomiting, purging, acid and austere things, taken once in the day only, and to be brought into the use of drinking uncooled wines on an empty stomach.

But since I have arranged emetics and aperients among the attenuants, there is something particular to be said concerning them. I perceive that vomiting is rejected by Asclepiades in that treatise which he composed on the preservation of health; nor do I blame him if he has been offended with the practice of those, who, by vomiting daily, acquire a voracious appetite. But he has gone still farther; for in the same volume he has forbidden purgatives: and indeed they are injurious if composed of very powerful medicines: it is a general maxim and not without exceptions, for these things cannot be entirely dispensed with, because, constitutional peculiarities and seasons may render them necessary, provided they be employed both in moderation, and when there is a necessity; therefore he him-



adhibeantur. Ergo ille quoque ipse, si quid jam corruptum esset, expelli debere confessus est: ita non ex toto res condemnanda est. Sed esse ejus etiam plures causæ possunt; estque in ea quædam paulo subtilior observatio adhibenda. Vomitus utilior est hieme, quam æstate: nam tum et pituitæ plus, et capitis gravitas major subest. Inutilis est gracilibus, et imbecillum stomachum habentibus: utilis plenis et biliosis omnibus, si vel nimium se replerunt, vel parum concoxerunt. Nam, sive plus est, quam quod concoqui possit, periclitari ne corrumpatur, non oportet: si vero corruptum est, nihil commodius est, quam id, qua via primum expelli potest, ejicere. Itaque, ubi amari ructus cum dolore et gravitate præcordiorum sunt, ad hunc protinus confugiendum est. Idem prodest ei, cui pectus æstuat, et frequens saliva, vel nausea est; aut sonant aures, aut madent oculi, aut os amarum est: similiterque ei, qui vel cælum, vel locum mutat; iisque, quibus, si per plures dies non vomuerunt, dolor præcordia infestat. Neque ignoro, inter hæc præcipi quietem: quæ non semper contingere potest agendi neces-

## ORDO.

et non nisi cum est opus. Ergo ille confessus est ipse quoque, si quid jam esset corruptum, debere expelli: ita res non est condemnanda ex toto. Sed etiam possunt esse plures causæ ejus; que quædam paulo subtilior observatio est adhibenda in ea.

Vomitus est utilior hieme, quam æstate: nam tum subest et plus pituitæ, et major gravitas capitis. Gracilibus, et habentibus imbecillum stomachum est inutilis; omnibus plenis et biliosis (est) utilis, si replerunt se vel nimium vel concoxerunt parum. Nam, sive est plus quam quod possit concoqui, non oportet periclitari ne corrumpatur: sive est corruptum, nihil est commodius quam id ejicere, qua primum via potest expelli, itaque ubi sunt amari ructus, cum dolore et gravitate præcordiorum, protinus confugiendum est ad hunc.

Idem prodest ei, cui pectus æstuat, et est frequens saliva vel nausea; aut (cui) aures sonant, aut oculi madent, aut os est amarum: que similiter ei qui mutat vel cælum vel locum; que iis quibus dolor infestat præcordia, si non vomuerunt per plures dies. Neque ignoro quietam præcipi inter hæc; quæ non potest contingere semper habentibus necessitatem agendi;

## TRANSLATION.

self has confessed, that if any thing be vitiated, it ought to be expelled; so that this is not to be condemned entirely, since there may be many occasions for it, and to which a more particular discrimination must be directed.

A vomit is more useful in winter than in summer, because in that season there is more phlegm, and a greater heaviness of the head. It is injurious to those who are delicate and have weak stomachs; but it is useful to those who are of a full and bilious habit, if they have either taken too much or have digested badly: for if they have charged themselves with more than can be digested, they ought not to run the risk of its being tainted; or if it be already putrescent, nothing is more proper, than to eject it in the most expeditious manner attainable. Therefore when there are bitter eructations, with pain and heaviness of the præcordia, they must immediately administer this remedy.

It is also salutary to him who has a burning heat in the stomach, abundant saliva or nausea; or to him who has a singing in his ears, or watry eyes, or a bitterness in the mouth: also to one who removes out of one climate to a different one, and to those who are troubled with a pain of the præcordia, if they have not vomited for many days. Nor am I ignorant, that rest is ordered in these cases, which cannot always be obtained by those who are under the necessity of acting; nor has

sitatem habentibus; nec in omnibus idem facit. Itaque istud luxuriæ causa fieri non oportere confiteor; interdum valetudinis causa recte fieri, experimentis credo: cum eo tamen, ne quis qui valere et senescere volet, hoc quotidianum habeat. Qui vomere post cibum volet, si ex facili facit, aquam tantum tepidam ante debet assumere; si difficilior, aquæ vel salis, vel mellis paulum adjicere. At qui mane vomiturus est, ante bibere mulsum, vel hyssopum, aut esse radiculam debet; deinde aquam tepidam, ut supra scriptum est, bibere. Cetera quæ antiqui medici præceperunt, stomachum omnia infestant. Post vomitum, si stomachus infirmus est, paulum cibi, sed hujus idonei, gustandum, et aquæ frigidæ cyathi tres bibendi sunt; nisi tamen vomitus fauces exasperavit. Qui vomuit, si mane id fecit, ambulare debet, tum ungi, deinde cœnare: si post cœnam, postero die lavari, et in balneo sudare. Huic proximus cibus mediocris utilior est; isque esse debet cum pane hesterno, vino austero meraco, et carne assa, cibusque omnibus quam siccissimis. Qui vomere bis in mense vult, melius consulet, si biduo continuerit, quam si post quin-

## ORDO.

nec facit idem in omnibus. Itaque confiteor oportere istud non fieri causa luxuriæ; credo experimentis, interdum fieri recte causa valetudinis; tamen cum eo, ne quis habeat hoc quotidianum, qui volet valere et senescere. Qui volet vomere post cibum, si facit ex facili, debet assumere tantum tepidam aquam ante; si (facit) difficilior (debet) adjicere paulum vel salis vel mellis aquæ. At qui est vomiturus mane, debet bibere mulsum ante, vel hyssopum aut esse radiculam; deinde bibere tepidam aquam, ut est scriptum supra. Omnia cætera, quæ antiqui medici præceperunt infestant stomachum. Post vomitum, si stomachus est infirmus, paulum cibi gustandum, sed hujus idonei, et tres cyathi aquæ frigidæ sunt bibendi, nisi tamen vomitus exasperavit fauces. Qui vomuit, si fecit id mane, debet ambulare, tum ungi, deinde cœnare; si (fecit) post cœnam, (debet) lavari, et sudare in balneo. Proximus huic mediocris cibus est utilior; quæ debet esse cum pane hesterno, meraco austero vino, et assa carne, quæ omnibus cibus quam siccissimis. Qui vult vomere bis in mense, consulet melius, si continuerit biduo, quam si vomuerit post quintum-

## TRANSLATION.

it the same effect on all. Therefore I admit, that vomits should not be taken for the sake of indulging luxury: but from experience I believe they are often and properly administered for the sake of health; but I advise that no one should have these daily, who wishes to be healthy, and live to an old age.

When a person wishes to vomit after food, that he may do it the more easily, he ought only to take warm water before; if with more difficulty, he ought to add either a little salt or honey to the water; but he who is about to vomit in the morning, should first drink hydromel (22), or hyssop, or to eat radish, afterwards to drink warm water as prescribed above. All the other things which the ancient physicians have advised, disorder the stomach. After an emetic, if the stomach be weak, some proper food ought to be taken; and three cupfuls of cold water are to be drunk, if the fauces have been irritated by vomiting. He who has vomited in the morning, ought to walk, then to be anointed, afterwards to sup; but if after supper, he ought to bathe, and perspire in the bath on the following day. His next meal after this ought to be rather moderate, and to eat yesterday's bread, austere pure wine, roasted meat, and all the driest kinds of food. He who wishes to vomit twice in the month, will consult his health better, if it be done on two successive

tumdecimum diem vomuerit; nisi hæc mora gravitatem pectori faciet. Dejectio autem medicamento quoque petenda est, ubi venter suppressus parum reddit, ex eoque inflationes, caligines, capitis dolores, aliaque superioris partis mala increscunt. Quid enim inter hæc adjuvare possunt quies et inedia, per quæ illa maxime eveniunt? Qui dejectio voluit, primum cibus vinisque utatur iis, quæ hoc præstant; dein, si parum illa proficiunt, aloë sumat. Sed purgationes quoque, ut interdum necessariae sunt, sic, ubi frequentes sunt, periculum afferunt. Assuescit enim non ali corpus; cum omnibus morbis obnoxia maxime infirmitas sit. Calefacit autem unctio, aqua salsa, magisque si calida est, omnia salsa, amara, carnosae, si post cibum est, balneum, vinum austereum. Refrigerant in jejuno, et balneum, et somnus, nisi nimis longus est, et omnia acida; aqua quam frigidissima; oleum, si aqua miscetur. Humidum autem corpus efficit labor major, quam ex consuetudine, frequens balneum, cibus plenior, multa potio; post hæc ambulatio, et vigilia: per se quoque ambulatio multa et vehemens, et matutinae exercitationi non protinus cibus

## ORDO.

decimum diem; gravitatem pectori faciat hæc mora. Autem dejectio est petenda quoque, medicamento, ubi, suppressus, venter reddit parum, quæ ex eo inflationes, caligines (oculorum), dolores capitis, quæ alia increbunt mala superioris partis. Enim quid possunt quies et inedia adjuvare inter hæc, per quæ illa (mala) maxime eveniunt? Qui voluit dejectio (se) utatur iis cibus quæ vinis, quæ præstant hoc primum; dein si illa proficiunt parum, sumat aloë. Sed ut purgationes sunt quoque necessariae interdum, sic ubi sunt frequentes, afferunt periculum. Enim corpus non assuescit ali; cum infirmitas sit maxime obnoxia omnibus morbis.

Autem unctio calefacit, (item) aqua salsa, quæ magis, si est calida, omnia salsa, amara, carnosae, balneum, si est post cibum, et austereum vinum. Et balneum refrigerat in jejuno, et somnus, nisi est nimis longus, et omnia acida; aqua quam frigidissima, oleum, si miscetur aqua. Autem major labor quam ex consuetudine efficit corpus humidum, frequens balneum, plenior cibus, multa potio; post hæc, ambulatio, et vigilia: quoque multa et vehemens ambulatio per se, et cibus non protinus adjectus exercita-

## TRANSLATION.

days, rather than repeat it on the fifteenth day, unless such an intermission should cause a pain at his chest.

When the bowels are constipated, so as to evacuate very sparingly, and from that cause, flatulencies, a dimness of sight, pains of the head, and other maladies of the superior parts increase, then an aperient will be advantageous: for what can rest or abstinence render in those disorders of which they are the exciting causes? He who wishes to relax his bowels, let him first use such food and wine as produce that effect: if these avail him but little, then let him take aloes. But purgatives, although sometimes necessary, yet when they are frequent, become dangerous: for by this the body will be deprived of its nourishment, consequently infirmity renders it the more susceptible of all diseases.

The body is warmed by unction, salt-water, and more so if it be warm, all salt meats, bitters, flesh, the bath if after food, and austere wine; on the other hand, it is refrigerated by a bath before meals, sleep, unless it be too long, and all acids, the coldest waters, oil, if it be mixed with water, and lotus (23).

But the body is rendered moist by less exercise than usual, frequent bathing, full diet, and plenty of drink, a walk after this and vigilance. Also, walking much and very quick, has of itself the same tendency; and morning exercise, if not im-



adjectus: ea genera escæ, quæ veniunt ex locis frigidis, et pluviis, et irriguis. Contra siccata modica exercitatio, fames, unctio sine aqua, calor, sol modicus, frigida aqua, cibus exercitationi statim subjectus, et is ipse ex siccis et æstuosis locis veniens.

Alvum adstringit labor, sedile, creta figularis corpori illita, cibus imminutus, et is ipse semel die assumptus ab eo, qui bis solet; exigua potio, neque adhibita, nisi cum cibi quis quantum assumpturus est, cepit; post cibum quies. Contra solvit aucta ambulatio atque esca, motus qui post cibum est, subinde potiones cibo immistæ. Illud quoque scire oportet, quod ventrem vomitus solum comprimit, compressum solvit: itemque comprimit is vomitus, qui statim post cibum est; solvit is, qui tarde supervenit.

Quod ad ætates vero pertinet, in diem facillime sustinent mediæ ætates, minus juvenes, minime pueri et senectute confecti. Quo minus fert facile quisque, eo sæpius debet cibum assumere; maximeque eo eget, qui increscit. Calida lavatio et pueris et senibus apta est. Vinum dilutius pueris, senibus meracius, neutri ætati, quæ inflationes movent. Juvenum minus,

## ORDO.

tioni matutinæ; ea genera escæ, quæ veniunt ex frigidis, et pluviis, et irriguis locis. Contra modica exercitatio siccata, fames, unctio sine aqua, calor, modicus sol, frigida aqua, cibus statim subjectus exercitationi, et is ipse veniens ex siccis et æstuosis locis.

Labor (et) sedile adstringit alvum; creta figularis illita corpori, imminutus cibus, et is ipse assumptus semel die ab eo qui solet bis; exigua potio, neque adhibita, nisi cum quis cepit quantum cibi (ut) est assumpturus; post cibum quies. Contra ambulatio aucta atque esca solvit; motus qui est post cibum, potiones immixtæ subinde cibo. Quoque oportet scire illud, quod vomitus comprimit solum alvum, solvit compressum: que item is vomitus comprimit qui est statim post cibum; is solvit qui supervenit tarde.

Vero quod pertinet ad ætates, mediæ ætates sustinent in diem facillime, juvenes minus, pueri et confecti senectute minime. Quo quisque fert minus facile, eo debet assumere cibum sæpius; que eget eo maxime qui increscit. Calida lavatio est apta et pueris et senibus. Dilutius vinum pueris, meracius senibus, quæ neutri ætati moveat inflationes. Interest minus ju-

## TRANSLATION.

mediately followed by food; and those kinds of food which come from cold, rainy, and marshy climates. On the other hand, immoderate exercise, hunger, unction, heat without moisture, immoderate use of salt, cold water, food immediately after exercise, particularly that which comes from dry and hot climates, all tend to dry the body.

Labour astringes the bowels, a still posture, rubbing potter's earth on the body, diminished food, and that itself being taken once a day by him who is accustomed to take it twice; little drink, nor is this to be taken, until the repast is finished; and rest after food. On the other hand, increased walking and food relaxes the bowels, also exercise after a meal, and the drink to be commixed with it occasionally. It is also necessary to know this, that an emetic binds a relaxed habit, and loosens a costive one: a vomit immediately after food binds it; the same protracted has the opposite effect.

But with respect to the different ages, people in middle life sustain privation most easily; young men less, boys and worn out age least of all. In proportion to the ability of each age to support the cravings of hunger, so much the oftener ought they to take food; and he requires it most who is growing. Warm bathing is proper both for boys and old men. More diluted wine should be given to boys than to old men; but to neither, that which would generate flatulencies. It is of

quæ assumant, et quomodo curentur, interest. Quibus juvenibus fluxit alvus, plerumque in senectute contrahitur: quibus in adolescentia fuit adstricta, sæpe in senectute solvitur. Melior est autem in juvene fusior, in sene adstrictior.

Tempus quoque anni considerare oportet. Hieme plus esse convenit; minus, sed meracius bibere; multo pane uti, carne potius elixa, modice oleribus; semel die cibum capere, nisi si nimis venter adstrictus est. Si prandet aliquis, utilius est exiguum aliquid, et ipsum siccum sine carne, sine potione sumere. Eo tempore anni calidis omnibus potius utendum est, vel calorem moventibus. Venus tum non æque perniciosa est. At vere paulum cibo demendum, adjiciendumque potioni, sed dilutius tamen bibendum est; magis carne utendum, magis oleribus; transeundum paulatim ad assa ab elixis. Venus eo tempore anni tutissima est. Æstate vero et potione et cibo sæpius corpus eget; ideo prandere quoque commodum est. Eo tempore aptissima sunt et caro et olus; potio quam dilutissima, ut et sitim tollat, nec corpus incendat; frigida lavatio, caro assa, frigidi cibi, vel qui refrigerent. Ut sæpius autem cibo utendum, sic exiguo est. Per

## ORDO.

venum quæ assumant, et quomodo curentur. Quibus juvenibus alvus fluxit, plerumque contrahitur in senectute: quibus fuit adstricta in adolescentia, sæpe solvitur in senectute. Autem fusior (alvus) est melior in juvene, adstrictior in sene.

Quoque oportet considerare tempus anni. Convenit esse plus hieme; bibere minus, sed meracius; uti multo pane, potius elixa carne, modice oleribus; capere cibum semel die, nisi, si venter est nimis adstrictus. Si aliquis prandet est utilius sumere aliquid exiguum, et ipsum siccum, sine carne, sine potione. Eo tempore anni est utendum omnibus calidis, vel moventibus calorem. Tum venus non est æque perniciosa.

At vere paulum demendum cibo, que adjiciendum potioni; sed tamen bibendum est dilutius; utendum magis carne, magis oleribus; transeundum paulatim ab elixis ad assa. Venus eo tempore anni est tutissima.

Vero æstate corpus eget sæpius et potione et cibo: ideo quoque est commodum prandere. Et caro, et olus sunt aptissima eo tempore; potio quam dilutissima, ut et tollat sitim, nec incendat corpus; frigida lavatio, assa caro frigidi cibi, vel qui refrigerunt. Autem ut est utendum cibo sæpius, sic exiguo.

## TRANSLATION.

less importance what food young men take, or how it is prepared. Those who are of a constipated habit while young, are generally relaxed in old age: and those who are relaxed in their youth, are for the most part costive in their old age. It is better for a youth to be more free in his bowels, and for an old man to be bound.

It is also necessary to consider the season of the year. It is proper to eat more in winter; to drink less, but more pure; to use plenty of bread, boiled meat in preference, vegetables moderately; to take food once in the day, unless the bowels are over costive. If one dines, it is better to take some little thing, and that dry, without flesh, and without drink. In that season of the year, all warm things, or calefacients ought to be used. Nor is venery so injurious then.

In spring a little is to be taken away from the food, the drink increased, but more diluted; more meat and vegetables are to be used, and to pass gradually from boiled to roast meat. Venery is most safe in that season of the year.

But in summer the body requires both meat and drink more frequently: on that account it is proper to dine. Both meat and vegetables are proper in that season, but the drink as much diluted as possible, that it may at once allay thirst and not inflame the body; cold bathing, roasted meat, cold food, or that which may cool. As it will be necessary to take more often, so it ought to be in small portions.

autumnū verō, propter cœli varietatem, periculum maximum est. Itaque neque sine veste, neque sine calceamentis prodire oportet, præcipueque diebus frigidioribus, neque sub divo nocte dormire, aut certe bene operiri. Cibo verō jam paulo pleniore uti licet; minus, sed meracius bibere. Poma nocere quidam putant, quæ immodice toto die plerumque sic assumuntur, ne quid ex densiore cibo remittatur: ita non hæc, sed consummatio omnium nocet. Ex quibus in nullo tamen minus, quam in his noxæ est. Sed his uti non sæpius, quam alio cibo convenit. Denique aliquid densiori cibo, cum hic accedit, necessarium est demi. Neque æstate verō, neque autumnō utilis venus est: tolerabilior tamen per autumnū; æstate in totum, si fieri potest, abstinendum est.

## ORDO.

Verō per autumnū propter varietatem cœli, periculum est maximum. Itaque oportet neque prodire sine veste, neque sine calceamentis, quæ præcipue frigidioribus diebus neque dormire sub divo nocte, aut certe operiri bene. Verō jam licet uti paulo pleniore cibo; bibere minus, sed meracius. Quidam putant poma nocere, quæ plerumque assumuntur sic immodice toto die, (ut) ne quid remittatur ex densiore cibo. Ita non consummatio hæc, sed omnium nocet: tamen ex quibus est minus noxæ in nullo, quam in his: sed non uti his sæpius quam convenit alio cibo.

Denique est necessarium aliquid demi densiori cibo, cum hic accedit. Verō neque est venus utilis æstate, neque autumnō; tamen (est) tolerabilior per autumnū; abstinendum in totum æstate, si potest fieri.

## TRANSLATION.

During the autumn there is the greatest danger on account of the variations of atmosphere. Therefore one should neither go out without a robe, nor without shoes, especially on the colder days, nor sleep under the open air by night, or at least to be well covered. Now, a fuller diet is allowable, the drink less, but more pure. Some persons imagine that apples (24) are injurious, which are taken immoderately for the most part the whole of the day, and no adequate abatement made from the more solid food: therefore the evil does not arise from these fruits, but from the aggregate of all that is taken: for none of them contribute less to it than these. Therefore it is not fit that they should be used oftener than other food.

Lastly, it is necessary for some part of the more solid food to be withheld when this is added. Indeed venery is neither salutary in summer nor in autumn; however, it is more supportable in autumn; but in summer there ought to be a total abstinence from it if possible.



## CAP. IV.

DE HIS QUI ALIQUA PARTE CORPORIS  
LABORANT, ET PRIMUM DE HIS QUI-  
BUS CAPUT INFIRMUM EST.

PROXIMUM est, ut de iis dicam, qui partes aliquas corporis imbecillas habent. Cui caput infirmum est, is si bene concoxit, leniter perfricare id mane manibus suis debet; numquam id, si fieri potest, veste velare; ad cutem tonderi; utileque lunam vitare, maximeque ante ipsum lunæ solisque concursus; sed nusquam post cibum. Si cui capilli sunt, eos quotidie pectere; multum ambulare, sed, si licet, neque sub tecto, neque in sole; utique autem vitare solis ardorem, maximeque post cibum et vinum; potius ungi, quam lavari; numquam ad flammam ungi, interdum ad prunam. Si in balneum venit, sub veste primum paulum in tepidario insudare, ibi ungi, tum transire in calidarium; ubi sudarit, in solium non descendere, sed multa calida aqua per caput se totum perfundere, tum tepida, deinde frigida; diutiusque ea

## ORDO.

## CAP. IV.

DE HIS QUI LABORANT IN ALIQUA PARTE CORPORIS, ET PRIMUM DE HIS QUIBUS CAPUT EST INFIRMUM.

EST proximum, ut dicam de iis, qui habent aliquas imbecillas partes corporis. Cui caput est infirmum, is si concoxerit bene, debet perfricare id leniter mane suis manibus; nunquam velare id veste, si potest fieri; tondere ad cutem: que (est) utile vitare lunam, que maxime ante concursus ipsum lunæ que solis; sed nusquam (progredi) post cibum. Si sunt capilli cui, (debet) pectere eos quotidie, ambulare multum; sed si licet, neque sub tecto, neque in sole: autem ubique vitare ardorem solis, que maxime post cibum et vinum: potius ungi quam lavari; nunquam ungi ad flammam; interdum ad prunam. Si venit in balneum, primum insudare paulum sub veste in tepidario; ibi ungi, tum transire in calidarium: ubi sudarit, non descendere in solium, sed perfundere se totum per caput multa calida aqua, tum tepida, deinde frigida que per-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

RULES FOR THOSE WHO ARE AFFECTED IN SOME OTHER PART OF THE BODY, AND FIRST, OF THOSE WHO HAVE SOME INFIRMITY OF THE HEAD.

I COME now to speak of those who have a weakness in some particular part of the body. He who has a weakness in the head, if he has digested well, ought to rub it gently with his hands in the morning, and never to cover it with a robe, if possible, or the hair to be cut close to the skin; it will benefit him to avoid moonlight, and particularly before her conjunction with the sun, but never to go out after food: if he have hair, let him comb it every day; to walk much, neither under a roof, nor in the sun if possible; but particularly to avoid the heat of the sun after food or wine: rather anoint than bathe, and the unction should never be performed before a flame, rather before a live coal. If he come into a bath, he ought to sweat first a little under a garment in the tepidarium, to be anointed there, and then to go into the calidarium; when he has perspired there, he is not to descend into the solium, but to pour plenty of hot water over the head and whole of the body, then tepid water in the same way, and lastly cold; the last is to

caput, quam ceteras partes perfundere; deinde id aliquandiu perfricare; novissime detergere et ungere. Capiti nihil æque prodest atque aqua frigida: itaque is, cui hoc infirmum est, per æstatem id bene largo canali quotidie debet aliquandiu subficere. Semper autem, etiamsi sine balneo unctus est, neque totum corpus refrigerare sustinet, caput tamen aqua frigida perfundere. Sed cum ceteras partes attingi nolit, demittere id, ne ad cervices aqua descendat; eamque, ne quid oculis, aliisve partibus noceat, defluentem subinde manibus ad hoc regerere. Huic modicus cibus necessarius est, quem facile concoquat; isque, si jejuno caput læditur, assumendus etiam medio die est; si non læditur, semel potius. Bibere huic assidue vinum dilutum, lene, quam aquam magis expedit; ut, cum caput gravius esse cœperit, sit quo confugiat: eique ex toto neque vinum, neque aqua semper utilia sunt; medicamentum utrumque est, cum invicem assumitur. Scribere, legere, voce contendere, huic opus non est, utique post cœnam; post quam ne cogitatio quidem ei satis tuta est: maxime tamen vomitus alienus est.

## ORDO.

fundere ea caput diutius quam cæteras partes; deinde perfricare id aliquandiu, novissime detergere et ungere.

Nihil prodest atque capiti atque frigida aqua: itaque is, cui hoc est infirmum, debet subficere id aliquandiu quotidie canali bene largo per æstatem. Autem semper etiamsi est unctus sine balneo, neque sustinet refrigerare totum corpus, tamen perfundere caput frigida aqua. Sed cum nolit cæteras partes attingi, demittere id, ne aqua descendat ad cervices, que regerere eam defluentem ad hoc subinde manibus, ne noceat quid oculis, vel aliis partibus. Modicus cibus est necessarius huic quem concoquat facile; que is est assumendus etiam medio die, si caput læditur jejuno, si non læditur, potius semel. Expedit magis huic bibere lene dilutum vinum assidue, quam aquam, ut cum caput cœpit esse gravius, sit quo confugiat que neque sunt vinum neque aqua ex tota semper utilia ei. Utrumque est medicamentum cum assumitur invicem, non est opus huic, scribere, legere, contendere voce utique post cœnam; post quam nequidem cogitatio est satis tuta ei: tamen vomitus (est) maxime alienus.

## TRANSLATION.

he continued longer on the head than on the other parts; afterwards to rub it for some time; lastly, to dry and anoint.

Nothing does the head so much good as cold water; therefore, he who has such an infirmity ought to submit it daily for some time to a full stream during the summer. And even if he has anointed without a bath, nor can sustain a shock over the whole body, yet he ought always to pour cold water upon his head. But when he is unwilling to have the other parts of his body touched, he ought to incline his head in such a manner that the water may not fall on his neck, and to dash back the flowing stream occasionally with his hands, lest it may offend his eyes or any other part. Moderate diet is necessary for him, which is more easily digested; and that must be taken in the middle of the day, if the head ache on an empty stomach; if not, once a day is more eligible. Mild diluted wine is more expedient for him to drink than water, that when his head grows worse he may have something to resort to: neither is it proper for him to drink wine always, nor water; each of them is a remedy when taken alternately. He must neither read nor write, nor declaim after supper; after which, not even thinking is sufficiently safe for him; a vomit to this man would prove highly deleterious.

## CAP. V.

DE HIS QUI LIPPITUDE, GRAVEDINE,  
DESTILLATIONE, TONSILLISQUE LA-  
BORANT.

NEQUE vero his solis, quos capitis imbecillitas torquet, usus aquæ frigidæ prodest; sed iis etiam, quos assiduæ lippitudines, gravedines, destillationes, tonsillæque male habent. His autem non caput tantum quotidie perfundendum, sed os quoque multa frigida aqua fovendum est; præcipueque omnibus, quibus hoc utile auxilium est, eo utendum est, ubi gravius cœlum Austri reddiderunt. Cumque omnibus inutilis sit post cibum aut contentio, aut agitatio animi; tum iis præcipue, qui, vel capitis, vel arteriæ dolores habere consuerunt, vel quoslibet alios oris affectus. Vitari etiam gravedines, destillationesque possunt, si quam minime, qui his opportunus est, loca aquasque mutat; si caput in sole protegit, ne incendatur, neve subitum ex repentino nubilo frigus id moveat; si post concoctionem jejunos caput radit; si post cibum neque legit, neque scribit.

## ORDO.

## CAP. V.

DE HIS QUI LABORANT LIPPITUDE, GRAVEDINE, DESTILLATIONE QUE TONSILLIS.

VERO neque usus frigidæ aquæ prodest his solis quos imbecillitas capitis torquet, sed etiam iis, quos assiduæ lippitudines, gravedines, destillationes, que tonsillæ habent male. Autem his non tantum caput est perfundendum quotidie, sed quoque os (est) fovendum multa frigida aqua, que est utendum eo præcipue omnibus quibus hoc auxilium est utile, ubi Austri reddiderunt cœlum gravius. Que cum (est) contentio, aut cogitatio animi sit inutilis omnibus post cibum, tum præcipue his qui consueverunt habere vel dolores capitis, vel arteriæ, vel quoslibet alios affectus oris. Etiam gravedines que destillationes possint vitari. Si is, qui est opportunus his, mutat aerem quam minime, loca, que aquas, si protegit caput in sole, ne incendatur, vel ne subitum frigus ex repentino nubilo moveat id; si jejunos radit post concoctionem; si neque legit, neque scribit post cibum.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

## OF LIPPITUDE, CATARRH, AND DISORDERS OF THE TONSILS.

BUT the application of cold water is not limited to those only who have pains in the head; but is advantageous to those who have lippitude, heaviness in the head, catarrhs, and diseased tonsils. They must not only pour cold water on the head every day, but wash their mouths also with plenty of it; and it ought to be used by those especially who find relief from it, when the south winds have rendered the air noxious. And as every effort or agitation of mind is injurious after meals to all, it is more especially to those who are liable to pains in their heads, or any other affection of the mouth or larynx (25). A person subject to these complaints may escape them by changing his air, situation, and water as little as possible; let him protect his head from the sun, lest it be scorched by heat or affected by cold by the sudden intervention of a cloud; also let him shave his head on an empty stomach after digestion, and neither read nor write after meals.



## CAP. VI.

## AD SOLUTUM ALVUM REMEDIA.

QUEM vero frequenter cita alvus exercet, huic opus est pila similibusque superiores partes exercere; dum jejunus est, ambulare; vitare solem, continua balnea; ungi citra sudorem; non uti cibis variis, minimeque jurulentis, aut leguminibus, oleribusve iis, quæ celeriter descendunt; omnia denique sumere, quæ tarde concoquuntur. Venatio, durique pisces, et ex domesticis animalibus assa caro maxime juvant. Numquam vinum salsum bibere expedit, ne tenue quidem, aut dulce; sed austerum, et plenius, neque idipsum pervetus. Si mulso uti volet, id ex decocto melle faciendum est. Si frigidæ potiones ventrem ejus non turbant, his utendum potissimum est. Si quid offensæ in cœna sensit, vomere debet; idque postero quoque die facere: tertio, modici ponderis panem ex vino esse, adjecta uva ex olla, vel ex defruto, similibusque aliis: deinde ad consuetudinem redire. Semper autem post cibum conquirere, ac neque intendere animum, neque ambulatione quamvis leni dimoveri.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

## RELAXATIONS OF THE BOWELS AND TREATMENT.

THE man who is troubled with a frequent relaxation of the bowels ought to exercise the upper parts with the ball and such like motions; to walk while his stomach is empty; to avoid the sun; constant bathing; to be anointed until perspiration begins; not to use a variety of food, particularly stews, pulse, and pot-herbs, all of which pass quickly through; in short, to take all such things as are slowly digested. Venison, firm fish, and the roasted meat of domestic animals aid much.

It is never expedient to drink salt wine (26), nor even diluted or sweet wine, but the austere, of a full body, and not very old. If he choose to take hydromel, it must be prepared with boiled honey. If the bowels be not disturbed by cold drinks he ought to use these principally. If any thing has disagreed with him at supper, he ought to take an emetic, and to repeat it on the day following; on the third day to eat a small portion of bread dipped in wine, or preserved grapes, or indefrutum (27) and things of a like nature: afterwards to return to his ordinary mode of living. After food always to rest, and neither to apply his mind, nor to be agitated by walking however gently.

## ORDO.

## CAP. VI.

## REMEDIA AD SOLUTUM ALVUM.

VERO quem alvus exercet cita, est opus huic exercere superiores partes pila, que similibus: dum est jejunus ambulare; vitare solem; continua balnea; ungi citra sudorem; non uti variis cibis, que minime jurulentis, aut leguminibus, vel his oleribus quæ descendunt celeriter; denique sumere omnia, quæ concoquuntur tarde. Venatio que duri pisces et assa caro ex domesticis animalibus juvant maxime.

Expedit numquam bibere salsum vinum, ne quidem tenue, aut dulce, sed plenius, et austerum, neque idipsum pervetus. Si volet uti mulso, id est faciendum ex decocto melle. Si frigidæ potiones non turbant ventrem ejus, est utendum his potissimum. Si sensit quid offensæ in cœna, debet vomere; que facere id quoque postero die: tertio, esse panem modici ponderis, ex vino uva ex olla adjecta, vel ex defruto, que aliis similibus: deinde redire ad consuetudinem. Autem semper conquirere post cibum, ac neque intendere animum, neque dimovere ambulatione quamvis leni.

## CAP. VII.

ORDO.

## REMEDIA AD COLI DOLOREM.

AT si laxius intestinum dolere consuevit, quod colum nominant, cum id nihil nisi genus inflationis sit, id agendum est, ut concoquat aliquis, ut lectione, aliisque generibus exerceatur, utatur balneo calido, cibis quoque et potionibus calidis; denique omni modo frigus vitet, item dulcia omnia, leguminaque, et quidquid inflare consuevit.

## CAP. VII.

## REMEDIA AD DOLOREM COLI.

AT si laxius intestinum quod nominant Κόλον (id est, colum) consuevit dolore; cum id sit nihil nisi genus inflationis, id est agendum, ut aliquis concoquat, ut exerceatur lectione, que aliis generibus, utatur calido balneo, quoque calidis cibis et potionibus; denique vitet frigus omni modo, item omnia dulci, que legumina, et quidquid consuevit inflare.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

## DISEASES OF THE COLON.

BUT if a more relaxed state of the intestine which is called the colon, be subject to pains, it may be nothing but a kind of flatulency, and the treatment to be pursued is, that digestion may be facilitated: the patient must practise reading and other exercises; he may use the hot bath, also take his food and drink warm: lastly, let him avoid cold by all means, also all sweet things, pulse, and whatever usually generates flatulencies.

## CAP. VIII.

ORDO.

## QUÆ AGENDA SINT STOMACHO LABORANTIBUS.

SI quis vero stomacho laborat, legere clare debet; post lectionem ambulare; tum pila, vel armis, aliove quo genere, quo superior pars movetur, exerceri; non aquam, sed vinum calidum bibere jejunos; cibum bis die assumere, sic tamen, ut facile concoquat; uti vino

## CAP. VIII.

## QUÆ AGENDUM LABORANTIBUS STOMACHO.

VERO si quis laborat stomacho, debet legere clare; post lectionem ambulare; tum exerceri pila, vel armis, ve quo alio genere, quo superior pars movetur; jejunos non bibere aquam, sed calidum vinum; assumere cibum bis die, tamen sic, ut concoquat facile; uti tenui et austero vino,

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

## THE MANAGEMENT OF A WEAK STOMACH.

IF a person be troubled with dyspepsia he ought to read aloud; after reading to walk, then to exercise himself with the ball or arms, or any other movement by which the superior parts are put in motion: not to drink water on an empty stomach, but hot wine; to take food twice a day, but only as much as he can easily digest; to use

tenui et austero, et post cibum frigidis potionibus potius. Stomachum autem infirmum indicant pallor, macies, præcordiorum dolor, nausea, et nolentium vomitus, in jejuno dolor capitis. Quæ in quo non sunt, is firmi stomachi est. Neque credendum utique nostris est, qui cum in adversa valetudine vinum aut frigidam aquam concupiverunt, deliciarum patrociniū in accusationem non merentis stomachi habent. At qui tarde concoquunt, et quorum ideo præcordia inflantur, quive propter ardorem aliquem noctu sitire consuerunt, ante quam conquiescant, duos tresve cyathos per tenuem fistulam bibant. Prodest etiam adversus tardam concoctionem clare legere, deinde ambulare, tum vel ungi vel lavari, assidue vinum frigidum bibere, et post cibum, magnam potionem, sed, ut supra dixi, per siphonem: deinde omnes potiones aqua frigida includere. Cui vero cibus acescit, is ante eum bibere aquam egelidam debet, et vomere: at si cui ex hoc frequens dejectio incidit, quoties alvus ei constiterit, frigida potione potissimum utatur.

## ORDO.

et potius frigidis potionibus post cibum. Autem pallor, macies, dolor præcordiorum, nausea et vomitus nolentium, dolor capitis in jejuno, indicant infirmum stomachum. In quo quæ non sunt, is est firmi stomachi. Neque est credendum utique nostris, qui cum concupiverunt vinum aut frigidam aquam in adversa valetudine, habent patrociniū deliciarum in accusationem stomachi non merentis.

At qui concoquunt tarde, et præcordia quorum ideo inflantur, ve qui propter aliquem ardorem consuerunt sitire noctu, bibant duos vel tres cyathos per tenuem fistulam, ante quam conquiescant. Etiam prodest adversus tardam concoctionem legere clare, deinde ambulare, tum vel ungi vel lavari, bibere frigidum vinum assidue, et post cibum, magnam potionem, sed, ut dixi supra, per siphonem: deinde includere omnes potiones aqua frigida. Vero cui cibus acescit, is debet bibere egelidam aquam ante eum, et vomere: at si frequens dejectio incidit cui ex hoc, quoties alvus constiterit ei, utatur potissimum frigida potione.

## TRANSLATION.

diluted and sharp wine; and rather cold drinks after food. But paleness, leanness, pains of the præcordia, nausea, and involuntary vomiting, pain of the head when the stomach is empty, are all indications of that organ being in a weak state. In those persons where these signs are absent, the stomach is strong. Neither must we credit our countrymen, who, when they are indisposed, eagerly call for wine or cold water, and defend their luxury under the pretext that the stomach is unmindful of its office.

But those who digest slowly, and for this reason the stomach becomes inflated, or who, on account of heat, are accustomed to be thirsty during the night, may drink two or three cupfuls through a small tube before going to rest. It assists a tardy digestion also, to read aloud, then to walk, afterwards either to be anointed or bathe; to drink constantly cold wine, and after meals to drink freely, in the manner I directed above, by a syphon; and to conclude all by cold water. But he whose food becomes acescent in the stomach, should drink warm water previously, to excite vomiting. Should a purging ensue from this, as soon as the bowels become settled, he ought to use cold drinks principally.



## CAP. IX.

QUOD OBSERVANDUM SIT DOLORE  
NERVORUM LABORANTIBUS.

SI cui vero dolere nervi solent, quod in podagra chiragra esse consuevit, huic, quantum fieri potest, exercendum id est, quod affectum est, objiciendumque labori et frigori; nisi cum dolor increvit; sub quo quies optima est. Venus semper inimica est; concoctio, sicut in omnibus corporis affectibus, necessaria. Cruditas enim id maxime lædit, et quoties offensum corpus est, vitiosa pars maxime sentit.

Ut concoctio autem omnibus vitiis occurrit, sic rursus aliis frigus, aliis calor: quæ sequi quisque pro habitu corporis sui debet. Frigus inimicum est seni, tenui, vulneri, præcordiis, intestinis, vesicæ, auribus, coxis, scapulis, naturalibus, ossibus, dentibus, nervis, vulvæ, cerebro: idem summam cutem facit pallidam, aridam, duram, nigram; ex hoc horrores tremoresque nascuntur. At prodest juvenibus, et omnibus ple-

ORDO.

## CAP. IX.

QUID SIT OBSERVANDUM LABO-  
RANTIBUS DOLORE NERVORUM.

VERO si nervi solent dolere cui, quod consuevit esse in podagra ve chiragra, est huic, exercendum id quod est affectum quantum potest fieri, quæ objiciendum (id) labori et frigori; nisi cum dolor increvit; sub quo quies est optima. Venus est semper inimica, concoctio, sicut in omnibus affectibus corporis, (est) necessaria. Enim cruditas lædit id maxime, et quoties corpus est offensum vitiosa pars sentit maxime.

Autem ut concoctio occurrit omnibus vitiis, sic rursus frigus (occurrit) aliis, calor aliis: quæ quisque debet sequi pro habitu sui corporis. Frigus est inimicum seni, tenui, vulneri, præcordiis, intestinis, vesicæ, auribus, coxis, scapulis, naturalibus, ossibus, dentibus, nervis, vulvæ, cerebro: idem facit summam cutem pallidam, aridam, duram, nigram; ex hoc horrores que tremores nascuntur. At prodest juvenibus, et omnibus plenis:

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

ON THOSE WHO LABOUR UNDER AFFECTIONS OF THE NERVES.

BUT if a person be subject to pains of the nerves, such as is common in gout of the feet or hands, he ought as much as possible to exercise that part which is affected, and to be exposed to labour and cold; unless the pain has become violent, and in that case rest is best. Venery is always inimical in these complaints. Digestion is necessary in this, as in all other affections of the body. For crudity injures it most; and as often as the body is deranged, (or rather the digestive organs are at fault,) the parts affected feel it most.

BUT as digestion opposes all diseases, so in the same way again, some are opposed by cold, others by heat: and which each person ought to follow, according to the nature of his body. Cold is inimical to an old or delicate person, to a wound, the præcordia, intestines, bladder, ears, hips, shoulders, private parts, teeth, bones, nerves, womb, and brain. It also renders the surface of the skin pale, hard, dry, and black; from this proceed shiverings and tremors. But it benefits young per-

nis: erectiorque mens est, et melius concoquitur, ubi frigus quidem est, sed cavetur. Aqua vero frigida infusa, præterquam capiti, etiam stomacho prodest: item articulis doloribusque, qui sunt sine ulceribus: item rubicundis nimis hominibus, si dolore vacant. Calor autem adjuvat omnia, quæ frigus infestat: item lippientes, si nec dolor, nec lacrimæ sunt; nervos quoque, qui contrahuntur; præcipueque ea ulcera, quæ ex frigore sunt: idem corporis colorem bonum facit; urinam movet. Si nimius est, corpus effœminat, nervos emollit, stomachum solvit. Minime vero aut frigus aut calor tuta sunt, ubi subita insuetis sunt. Nam frigus, lateris dolores, aliaque vitia; frigida aqua, strumas excitat: calor concoctionem prohibet, somnum aufert, sudore digerit, obnoxium morbis pestilentibus corpus efficit.

## ORDO.

que mens est erectior, et quidem concoquitur melius, ubi est frigus, sed cavetur. Vero præterquam frigida aqua infusa capiti, etiam prodest stomacho: que item doloribus articulis, qui sunt sine ulceribus: item nimis rubicundis hominibus, si vacant dolore. Autem calor adjuvat omnia, quæ frigus infestat: item lippientes, si sunt nec dolor, nec lacrimæ; quoque nervos, qui contrahuntur; que præcipue ea ulcera, quæ sunt ex frigore: idem facit bonum colorem corporis; movet urinam. Si est nimius, effœminat corpus, emollit nervos, solvit stomachum. Vero aut frigus, aut calor sunt minime tuta, ubi sunt subita insuetis. Nam frigus excitat dolores lateris, que alia vitia, frigida aqua (excitat) strumas: calor prohibet concoctionem, aufert somnum, digerit sudore, efficit corpus obnoxium pestilentibus morbis.

## TRANSLATION.

sons, and all those who are of a full habit. The mind is more firm, and indeed when it is cold, digestion goes on better, but due care should be taken to guard against it. Cold water poured on, not only profits the head but the stomach also: and also pains in the joints which are not ulcerated; and to persons who are too ruddy, if they be free from pain. Heat favours whatever cold hurts; those having blear eyes, if they have neither pain nor a suffusion of tears; also contracted nerves, and particularly those ulcers which are produced by cold; produces a good colour of the body, and promotes the excretion of urine. If it be too great it debilitates the body, softens the nerves, and relaxes the stomach. But neither cold nor heat is by any means safe coming suddenly upon persons unaccustomed to it. Now cold excites pain in the side, and other complaints; and cold water causes strumous diseases: heat prevents digestion, takes away sleep, it is the great agent in decomposing the body by perspiration, and renders it the more obnoxious to pestilential diseases.

## CAP. X.

## OBSERVATIO IN PESTILENTIA.

Est etiam observatio necessaria, qua quis in pestilentia utatur adhuc integer, cum tamen securus esse non possit. Tum igitur oportet peregrinari, navigare: ubi id non licet, gestari, ambulare sub divo, ante æstum, leniter; eodemque modo ungi: et, ut supra comprehensum est, vitare fatigationem, cruditatem, frigus, calorem, libidinem: multoque magis se continere, si qua gravitas in corpore est. Tum neque manē surgendum, neque pedibus nudis ambulandum est, minimeque post cibum, aut balneum: neque jejuno, neque cœnato vomendum est: neque movenda alvus; atque etiam, si per se mota est, comprimenda est: abstinendum potius, si plenius corpus est. Itemque vitandum balneum, sudor, meridianus somnus, utique si cibus quoque antecessit; qui tamen semel die tum commodius assumitur; insuper etiam modicus, ne cruditatem moveat. Alternis diebus invicem, modo aqua, modo vinum bibendum est. Quibus servatis,

## ORDO.

## CAP. X.

## OBSERVATIO IN PESTILENTIA.

OBSERVATIO est etiam necessaria, qua quis adhuc integer utatur in pestilentia, tamen cum non possit esse securus. Tum igitur oportet peregrinari, navigare: ubi id non licet, gestari, ambulare leniter sub divo, ante æstum: que eodem modo ungi: et ut est supra comprehensum, vitare fatigationem, cruditatem, frigus, calorem, libidinem: que continere se multo magis, si est qua gravitas in corpore. Tum neque surgendum manē, neque est ambulandum nudis pedibus, que minime post cibum, aut balneum: neque est vomendum jejuno, neque cœnato: neque (est) alvus movenda; atque etiam, si est mota per se, est comprimenda: potius est abstinendum, (quam implere se,) si corpus est plenius. Que item vitandum balneum, sudor, meridianus somnus, utique quoque si cibus antecessit; tamen qui assumitur semel die commodius, tum etiam insuper modicus, ne moveat cruditatem. Modo aqua, modo vinum est bibendum alternis diebus invicem. Quibus servatis, victus debet

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

## PESTILENTIAL DISEASES.

THERE are some things to be observed in a pestilential season, even by a man who is as yet in good health, but yet cannot be secure. At that time it is proper to travel, and to sail: when that is not attainable, to use gestation, gentle walking in the open air before the heat of the day, and unction with the same moderation, and as it has been directed above, to avoid fatigue, crudity, cold, heat, and venery, and confine himself to a strict regimen. If he feel any heaviness about the body, then he is neither to rise in the morning, nor walk barefooted at any time, particularly after meals or the bath: nor to vomit either with an empty stomach, or after supper: nor are the bowels to be relaxed, and if they become loose of themselves, they must be restrained. Abstinence must be observed, if the body be plethoric. Also the bath must be avoided, sweating, the meridian nap, particularly if food have preceded it, at which time food should be taken rather once in the day, and even that sparingly, lest it may cause indigestion: one day water, next day wine is to be drunk, and so on every alternate day. These regulations being observed, there ought to



ex reliqua victus consuetudine quam minimum mutari debet. Cum vero hæc in omni pestilentia facienda sint, tum in ea maxime, quam Austri excitarint. Atque etiam peregrinantibus eadem necessaria sunt, ubi gravi tempore anni discesserunt ex suis sedibus, vel ubi in graves regiones venerunt. Ac si cetera res aliqua prohibebit, utique abstinere debet: atque ita a vino ad aquam, ab hac ad vinum, eo, qui supra positus est, modo, transitus ei esse.

## ORDO.

mutari quam minimum ex reliqua consuetudine. Vero cum hæc sint facienda in omni pestilentia, tum maxime in ea, quam Austri excitarint. Atque etiam eadem sunt necessaria peregrinantibus, ubi discesserunt ex suis sedibus gravi tempore anni, vel ubi venerunt in graves regiones. Ac si aliqua res prohibebit cetera, utique debet abstinere: atque ita ei transitus esse a vino ad aquam, ab hac ad vinum, eo modo, qui est positus supra.

## TRANSLATION.

be little or no deviation from the usual diet. But as these rules are applicable in all pestilential times, they must be more strictly adhered to in those, caused by the south winds. The same precautions are necessary for travellers who are about to leave their residences in the sickly season of the year, or when they have arrived in some unhealthy region. But if any circumstance shall prohibit a compliance with all these things, it will be strictly necessary for a person to live abstemiously; and that the transition may be thus:—from wine to water—from this to wine, in that manner which has been directed above.

# A. CORN. CELSI

DE MEDICINA

LIBER SECUNDUS.

---

PROCEMIUM.

INSTANTIS autem adversæ valetudinis signa complura sunt. In quibus explicandis non dubitabo auctoritate antiquorum virorum uti, maximeque Hippocratis; cum recentioris medici quamvis quædam in curationibus mutarint, tamen hæc illum optime præ sagisse fateantur. Sed antequam dico, quibus præcedentibus morborum timor subsit; non alienum videtur exponere, quæ tempora anni, quæ tempestatum genera, quæ partes ætatis, qualia corpora maxime tuta vel periculis opportuna sint, quod genus adversæ valetudinis in quoque timeri maxime possit. Non quod non omni tempore, in omni tempestatum

ORDO.

SECUNDUS LIBER

AUR. COR. CELSI

DE MEDICINA.

---

PROCEMIUM.

AUTEM signa adversæ valetudinis instantis sunt complura. In explicandis quibus non dubitabo uti auctoritate antiquorum virorum, quæ maxime Hippocratis; cum recentiores medici quamvis mutarint quædam in curationibus, tamen fateantur illum præ sagisse hæc optime. Sed antequam dico, quibus præcedentibus timor morborum subsit, non videtur alienum exponere, quæ tempora anni, quæ genera tempestatum, quæ partes ætatis, qualia corpora sint maxime tuta vel maxime opportuna periculis, quod genus adversæ valetudinis possit maxime timeri in quoque. Non quod homines omnis habitus,

TRANSLATION.

THE SECOND BOOK

OF

AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS

ON MEDICINE.

---

INTRODUCTION.

THERE are many diagnostic signs of an incipient disease. In the explication of which, I shall not hesitate to use the authority of the ancients, and most particularly that of Hippocrates; since the more modern physicians, although they have deviated in the mode of treatment, yet confess that he has delivered the most accurate prognoses from these signs. But before I speak of those precursors, which excite an apprehension of lurking diseases, it may not be improper to explain what seasons of the year, what kinds of weather, what times of life, what constitutions are most safe from, or most susceptible of diseases, and what kinds are most to be feared in each of these. Not but men of all ages and all habits become sick

genere, omnis ætatis, omnis habitus homines, per omnia genera morborum et ægrotent et moriantur : sed quod frequentius tamen quædam eveniant ; ideoque utiles it scire unumquemque, quid, et quando maxime caveat.

## ORDO.

et omnis ætatis ægrotent et moriantur per omnia genera morborum, non omni tempore, in omni genere tempestatum. Sed tamen quædam quod eveniant frequentius ; que ideo sit utile unumquemque scire, quid maxime caveat, et quando.

## TRANSLATION.

in every season, and die in all kinds of diseases ; yet some of them happen more frequently than others : and on that account it is useful for every one to know when, and against what, he should be most upon his guard.

## CAP. I.

QUÆ ANNI TEMPORA, QUÆ TEMPESTATUM GENERA, QUÆ PARTES ÆTATIS, QUALIA CORPORA VEL TUTA VEL MORBIS OPPORTUNA SINT, ET QUOD VALETUDINIS GENUS IN QUOQUE TIMERI POSSIT.

IGITUR saluberrimum ver est : proxime deinde ab hoc, hiems : periculosior æstas : autumnus longe periculosissimus. Ex tempestatibus vero optimæ æquales sunt, sive frigidæ, sive calidæ : pessimæ, quæ maxime variant. Quo fit, ut autumnus plurimos opprimat. Nam fere meridianis temporibus calor ; nocturnis atque matutinis, simulque etiam vespertinis, frigus est. Corpus ergo, et æstate, et subinde meridianis caloribus relaxatum, subito frigore ex-

## ORDO.

## CAP. I.

QUÆ TEMPORA ANNI, QUÆ GENERA TEMPESTATUM, QUÆ PARTES ÆTATIS, QUALIA CORPORA SINT OPPORTUNA VEL TUTA VEL MORBIS, ET QUOD GENUS VALETUDINIS POSSIT TIMERI IN QUOQUE.

IGITUR ver est saluberrimum : deinde hiems (est) proxime ab hoc : æstas periculosior, autumnus longe periculosissimus. Vero ex tempestatibus æquales sunt optime, sive frigidæ, sive calidæ : quæ variant maxime (sunt) pessimæ. Quo fit, ut autumnus opprimat plurimos. Nam (est) calor fere meridianis temporibus ; atque est frigus (fere) nocturnis, matutinis, que etiam simul vespertinis. Ergo corpus relaxatum et æstate et subinde meridianis caloribus, subito ex-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. I.

OF THE DIFFERENT SEASONS, WEATHER, AGES, CONSTITUTIONS, AND THE DISEASES PECULIAR TO EACH.

Now the most salubrious season is the spring, next after this, the winter : the summer is more dangerous : but the autumn is by far the most dangerous. But of all seasons, those of equal temperatures are the best, whether cold or hot : the worst are those which vary most. By which it happens, that the autumn carries off the greatest number. For generally the meridian sun is hot ; the night and morning, and even the evening too, are cold. Therefore the body being relaxed by the preceding summer, and the frequent meridian heats



cipitur. Sed ut eo tempore id maxime fit, sic quodcumque evenit, noxium est. Ubi æqualitas autem est, tamen saluberrimi sunt sereni dies; meliores pluvii, quam tantum nebulosi, nubilive: optimique hieme, qui omni vento vacant; æstate, quibus Favonii perflant. Si genus aliud ventorum est, salubriores Septemtrionales, quam Subsolani, vel Austri sunt: sic tamen hæc, ut interdum regionum sorte mutantur. Nam fere ventus ubique a mediterraneis regionibus veniens, salubris; a mari, gravis est. Neque solum in bono tempestatum habitu certior valetudo est; sed priores morbi quoque, si qui inciderunt, leviores sunt, et promptius finiuntur. Pessimum ægro cælum est, quod ægrum fecit; adeo ut in id quoque genus, quod natura pejus est, in hoc statu salubris mutatio sit.

At ætas media tutissima est, quæ neque juventæ calore, neque senectutis frigore infestatur. Longis morbis senectus, acutis adolescentia magis patet. Corpus autem habilissimum quadratum est, neque gracile, neque obesum. Nam longa statura, ut in juventa decora est, sic matura senectute conficitur: gracile corpus infirmum, obesum hebes est. Vere tamen maxime, quæcumque hu-

## ORDO.

cipitur frigore. Sed ut id fit maxime eo tempore, sic quodcumque evenit, est noxium. Autem ubi est æqualitas, tamen sereni dies sunt saluberrimi; pluvii meliores, quam nebulosi tantum, ve nubili: que optimi hieme, qui vacant omni vento; æstate, quibus Favonii perflant. Si est aliud genus ventorum, Septemtrionales sunt salubriores, quam Subsolani, vel Austri: tamen sic, ut interdum hæc mutantur sorte regionum. Nam ubique ventus veniens a mediterraneis regionibus, est fere salubris, a mari, (est fere) gravis. Neque solum est valetudo certior in bono habitu tempestatum; sed quoque priores morbi, si qui inciderunt, sunt leviores, et finiuntur promptius. Cælum quod fecit ægrum est pessimum ægro, adeo ut quoque, in hoc statu mutatio in id genus, quod est pejus natura, sit salubris.

At media ætas est tutissima, quæ neque infestatur, calore juventæ, neque frigore senectutis. Senectus patet magis longis morbis, adolescentia (patet magis) acutis. Autem habilissimum corpus est quadratum, neque gracile, neque obesum. Nam longa statura, est decora ut in juventa, sic conficitur matura senectute: gracile corpus est infirmum, obesum (est) hebes. Tamen vere quæ-

## TRANSLATION.

of autumn, is seized on by sudden cold. But, as it mostly occurs at this season, so whenever it does happen, it is most noxious. When there is an equality of temperature, the serene days are the most salubrious: the rainy are better than those only misty, or cloudy: and in winter those days are best when there is no wind at all; in summer those on which the westerly breezes blow. If the wind be from any other point, the northerly are more salutary than the easterly or southerly: yet these things are so, that they may be changed by the position of countries. For generally a wind coming from an over-land region is salutary every where, one from the sea is pestiferous. Not only is health more certain, in a good state of the temperature, but even former diseases, if any have happened, are lighter, and sooner removed. That air is the most baneful to a patient which has produced his disease; so that in this state a change even to that, which by its nature is worse, may be salutary.

But the middle age is most safe, which is neither endangered by the heat of youth, nor by the frigidity of old age. Old age is more liable to chronic diseases, and youth to acute ones. A square figure, neither too slender nor too fat, is the most suitable form to endure the vicissitudes of life. For a tall stature, although it is graceful in youth, so it quickly wears out by premature age: a slender body is

moris motu novantur, in metu esse consuerunt. Ergo tum lippitudinis, pustulæ, profusio sanguinis, abscessus corporis, quæ ἀποστήματα Græci nominant, bilis atra, quam μελαγχολίαν appellant, insania, morbus comitialis, angina, gravedines, destillationes oriri solent. Ii quoque morbi, qui in articulis nervisque modo urgent, modo quiescunt, tum maxime et inchoantur et repetunt. At æstas non quidem vacat plerisque his morbis; sed adjicit febres, vel continuas, vel ardentes, vel tertianas, vomitus, alvi dejectiones, auricularum dolores, ulcera oris, caneros, et in ceteris quidem partibus, sed maxime obscœnis; et quidquid sudore hominem resolvit.

Vix quidquam ex his in autumnum non incidit: sed oriuntur quoque eo tempore febres incertæ, lienis dolor, aqua inter cutem, tabes, quam Græci φθίσιν nominant; urinæ difficultas, quam στραγγουρίαν appellant; tenuioris intestini morbus, quem εἰλεὼν nominant; lævitas intestinorum, quæ λειεντερία vocatur; coxæ dolores, morbi comitiales. Idemque tempus et diutinis malis fatigatos, et ab æstate tantum proxima pressos interimit; et alios novis morbis

## ORDO.

cumque novantur motu humoris, consuerunt esse maxime in metu, Tum ergo lippitudines, pustulæ, profusio sanguinis, abscessus corporis, quæ Græci nominant ἀποστήματα (apostemata), atrabilis, quam appellant μελαγχολίαν (melancholia), insania, comitialis morbus, angina, gravedines, destillationes solent oriri. Quoque ii morbi qui modo urgent in articulis que nervis, modo quiescunt, et tum maxime inchoantur et repetunt. At quidem æstas non vacat his plerisque morbis; sed adjicit febres, vel continuas, vel ardentes, vel tertianas, vomitus, dejectiones alvi, dolores auricularum, ulcera oris, caneros, et quidem in ceteris partibus, sed maxime obscœnis; et quidquid resolvit hominem sudore.

Vix quidquam ex his non incidit in autumnum: sed quoque eo tempore incertæ febres oriuntur, dolor lienis, aqua inter cutem, tabes, quam Græci nominant φθίσιν (phthisis); difficultas urinæ, quam appellant στραγγουρίαν (stranguria); morbus tenuioris intestini, quem nominant εἰλεὼν (ileum); lævitas intestinorum, quæ vocatur λειεντερία (lienteria); dolores coxæ, comitiales morbi. Que idem tempus et fatigatos diutinis malis, et pressos ab proxima æstate tantum interimit; et conficit alios novis morbis;

## TRANSLATION.

weak, a corpulent dull. Whatever complaints are renewed by the motion of the humours, are generally to be dreaded most in spring. Therefore at that time sore eyes, pustules, hæmorrhages, abscesses of the body, which the Greeks name apostemata, atrabilis, which they call melancholia, insanity, epilepsy, angina, catarrheuma, and colds usually occur. Also those diseases of the joints and nerves, sometimes acute, sometimes chronic; the first are generally begun at this season, and the last are brought into action. But the summer is not altogether free from the most of these diseases mentioned above, but brings an additional train of either ardent or tertian fevers, vomiting, diarrhœa, pains in the ears, ulcers in the mouth, cancers in various parts of the body, but mostly on the privates; and other colliquative complaints which exhaust the frame.

There are scarcely any of these that do not happen in autumn; but there arise also at that time, erratic fevers, pains of the spleen, anasarca, consumption, which the Greeks name phthisis, difficulty of urine, which they term stranguria; a disease of the smaller intestine, which they designate the ileum; dysentery, which they call lienteria; pains of the hips, and epileptic diseases. This season is also fatal to those worn out by protracted maladies, and those so much debilitated by the pre-

conficit; et quosdam longissimis implicat, maximeque quartanis, quæ per hiemem quoque exerceant. Neque aliud magis tempus pestilentiae patet, cujuscumque ea generis est; quamvis variis rationibus nocet. Hiems autem capitis dolores, tussim, et quidquid in faucibus, in lateribus, in visceribus mali contrahitur, irritat.

Ex tempestibus, Aquilo tussim movet, fauces exasperat, ventrem adstringit, urinam suppressit, horrores excitat, item dolores lateris et pectoris: sanum tamen corpus spissat, et mobilius atque expeditius reddit. Auster aures hebetat, sensus tardat, capitis dolorem movet, alvum solvit, totum corpus efficit hebes, humidum, languidum. Ceteri venti, quo huic vel illi propiores sunt, eo magis vicinos his illisve affectus faciunt. Denique omnis calor et jecur et lienem inflamat, mentem hebetat, ut anima deficiat, ut sanguis prorumpat, efficit. Frigus modo nervorum distentionem, modo rigorem infert; illud *σπασμὸς*, hoc *τέτανος* Græce nominatur: nigrityem in ulceribus, horrores in febribus excitat. In siccitatibus, acutæ febres, lippitudines, tormina, urinæ difficultas, articulorum dolores oriuntur. Per imbres, longæ febres, alvi

## ORDO.

et implicat quosdam longissimis, que maxime quartanis, quæ exerceant quoque per hiemem. Neque aliud tempus patet magis pestilentiae cujuscumque generis ea est; quamvis nocet variis rationibus. Autem hiems irritat dolores capitis, tussim, et quidquid mali contrahitur in faucibus, in lateribus, in visceribus.

Ex tempestatibus, Aquilo movet tussim, exasperat fauces, adstringit ventrem, suppressit urinam excitat horrores, item dolores lateris et pectoris: tamen spissat sanum corpus, et reddit mobilius atque expeditius. Auster hebetat aures, tardat sensus, movet dolorem capitis, solvit alvum, efficit totum corpus hebes, humidum, languidum. Ceteri venti, quo sunt propiores huic vel illi, eo faciunt affectus magis vicinos his vel illis. Denique omnis calor inflamat et jecur et lienem, hebetat mentem, efficit, ut anima deficiat, ut sanguis prorumpat. Frigus modo infert distentionem nervorum, modo rigorem; illud nominatur *σπασμὸς* (spasmus), Græce, hoc *τέτανος* (tetanus): excitat nigrityem in ulceribus, horrores in febribus. In siccitatibus, acutæ febres, lippitudines, tormina, difficultas urinæ, dolores articulorum oriuntur. Per imbres, longæ febres, dejectiones

## TRANSLATION.

ceding summer; it carries off some by new diseases, and involves others in maladies of long continuance, especially quartan fevers, which may maintain their baneful influence even through winter. Neither is there any season more obnoxious to pestilence, of whatever kind that may be, and however various in its mode of assault.

The winter excites pains of the head, cough, and whatever complaints are contracted in the fauces, in the sides, and viscera.

Of the various winds, the north causes a cough, exasperates the fauces, binds the bowels, suppresses the urine, excites shiverings, also pains of the side and chest: but it braces a sound body, and renders it more flexible and active. The south wind affects the hearing, impedes the senses, causes pain of the head, disorders the bowels, and renders the whole frame phlegmatic, moist, and languid. The other winds, in proportion as they may approximate either of these, produce effects the more similar to each of them. In short, all heat inflames both the liver and spleen, hebetates the mind, produces syncope, and hæmorrhages. Cold sometimes causes convulsions, at other times tetanus, the first is called in Greek *spasmos*, the last *tetanos*: it generates sphaceli (1) in ulcers, and shiverings in fevers. In dry weather acute fevers, lippitudines, tormina, dysuria, and pains of the joints arise. During rainy weather, continued fevers, diarrhæas, angina



dejectiones, angina, cancri, morbi comitiales, resolutio nervorum; παράλυσιν Græci nominant. Neque solum interest, quales dies sint, sed etiam quales ante præcesserint. Si hiems sicca Septentrionales ventos habuit, ver autem Austros et pluvias exhibet, fere subeunt lippitudines, tormina, febres, maximeque in mollioribus corporibus, ideoque præcipue in muliebribus. Si vero Austri pluviaeque hiemem occuparunt, ver autem frigidum et siccum est, gravidæ quidem feminae, quibus tum adest partus, abortu periclitantur; eæ vero quæ gignunt, imbecillos, vixque vitales edunt: ceteros lippitudo arida, et si seniores sunt, gravedines atque destillationes male habent. At si a prima hieme Austri ad ultimum ver continuarunt, laterum dolores, et insania febricitantium, quam φρένησιν appellant, quam celerrime rapiunt. Ubi vero calor a primo vere orsus æstatem quoque similem exhibet, necesse est multum sudorem in febris subsequi. At si sicca æstas Aquilones habuit, autumnus vero imbres Austrique sunt, tota hieme, quæ proxima est, tussis, destillatio, raucitas, in quibusdam etiam tabes oritur. Sin autem autumnus quoque æque siccus

## ORDO.

alvi, angina, cancri, comitiales morbi resolutio nervorum; Græci nominant παράλυσιν (paralysin). Neque interest solum, quales dies sint, sed etiam quales præcesserint ante. Si sicca hiems habuit Septentrionales ventos, autem ver exhibet Austros et pluvias, lippitudines, tormina, febres, fere subeunt, quæ maxime in mollioribus corporibus, quæ ideo præcipue in mulieribus. Vero si Austri quæ pluviae occuparunt hiemem, autem ver est frigidum et siccum, quidem gravidæ feminae, quibus partus tum adest, periclitantur abortu; vero eæ quæ gignunt, edunt imbecillos, quæ vix vitales: arida lippitudo ceteros, et si sunt seniores, habent male gravedines atque destillationes. At si Austri continuarunt a prima hieme ad ultimum ver, dolores laterum, et insania febricitantium, quam appellant φρένησιν (phrenesis), rapiunt quam celerrime. Vero ubi calor orsus a primo vere quoque exhibet similem æstatem, est necesse multum sudorem subsequi in febris. At si sicca æstas habuit Aquilones, vero sunt imbres quæ Austri autumnus, tota hieme, quæ est proxima, tussis, destillatio, raucitas, etiam in quibusdam tabes oritur. Autem sin autumnus quoque æque siccus perflatur

## TRANSLATION.

scirrhus, epilepsies, relaxation of the nerves, which the Greeks name paralysis. Neither is the present weather alone to be considered, but also what kind has preceded for some time. If a dry winter has been attended by northerly winds, and the spring with southerly winds and rain, then follow blear eyes, dysenteries, and fevers, particularly in delicate persons, and on that account females are more susceptible. But if southerly winds and rains have prevailed in the winter, and the spring be cold and dry, then indeed, pregnant women whose time is near, are in danger of abortion; and those who complete the time of gestation, bring forth such delicate infants as are not likely to live: others again are seized with arid ophthalmia, and if they be old, with malignant catarrhs. But if the south winds have continued from the beginning of winter to the end of spring, then pains in the side, and febrile diseases accompanied with delirium, called phrenitis (2), carry off with great rapidity. But when the heat begins with the spring, and continues through the summer, great perspiration in fever necessarily follows. But if a north wind have prevailed through a dry summer, and the autumn with rains, and southerly winds, all the following winter we shall find coughs, catarrhs, hoarseness, and in some even consumption. But if the autumn too, be equally dry, and the same northerly

iisdem Aquilonibus perflatur, omnibus quidem mollioribus corporibus, inter quæ muliebria esse proposui, secunda valetudo contingit: durioribus vero instare possunt, et aridæ lippitudines, et febres partim acutæ, partim longæ; et ii morbi, qui ex atra bile nascuntur. Quod ad ætates vero pertinet, pueri proximique his vere optime valent, et æstate prima tutissimi sunt: senes æstate et autumnii prima parte: juvenes hieme, quique inter juventam senectutemque sunt. Inimicior senibus hiems, æstas adolescentibus est.

Tum si qua imbecillitas oritur, proximum est ut infantes, tenerosque adhuc pueros serpentia ulcera oris, quæ ἀφθας Græci nominant, vomitus, nocturnæ vigiliæ, aurium humor, circa umbilicum inflammationes exerceant. Propriæ etiam dentientium, gingivarum, exulcerationes, distentiones nervorum, febriculæ, alvi dejectiones; maximeque caninis dentibus orientibus male habent. Quæ pericula plenissimi cujusque sunt, et cui maxime venter adstrictus est. At ubi ætas paulum processit, glandulæ, et vertebrarum, quæ in spina sunt, aliquæ inclinationes, strumæ, verrucarum quædam genera dolentia, ἀκροχορδόνας Græci appellant, et plura alia tubercula oriuntur. Inci-

## ORDO.

iisdem Aquilonibus, secunda valetudo contingit omnibus mollioribus corporibus quidem, inter quæ proposui mulieria esse: vero durioribus et aridæ lippitudines, et febres partim acutæ, partim longæ possunt instare; et ii morbi, qui nascuntur ex atra bile. Vero quod pertinet ad ætates, pueri qui proximis his valent optime vere, et sunt tutissimi prima æstate; senes (valent) optime æstate et prima parte autumnii: juvenes, qui sunt inter juventam que senectutem hieme. Hiems est inimicior senibus, æstas (est inimicior) adolescentibus.

Tum si qua imbecillitas oritur, est proximum, ut serpentia ulcera oris, quæ Græci nominant ἀφθας (aphthæ), vomitus, nocturnæ vigiliæ, humor aurium, inflammationes circa umbilicum exerceant infantes, que pueros adhuc teneros. Etiam exulcerationes gingivarum, propriæ dentientium, distentiones nervorum, febriculæ, dejectiones alvi; que habent male maxime caninis dentibus orientibus. Quæ pericula sunt cujusque plenissimi, et cui venter est adstrictus maxime. At ubi ætas processerit paulum, glandulæ, et aliquæ inclinationes vertebrarum, quæ sunt in spina, strumæ quædam dolentia genera verrucarum, Græci appellant ἀκροχορδόνας (acrochordonæ), et plura alia tubercula ori-

## TRANSLATION.

winds blow, all the more delicate subjects, amongst whom I have placed females, enjoy a good state of health: but for the more hardy, they may be troubled with arid ophthalmia, acute or chronic fevers, and atrabilious complaints.

As to the different ages, children and those a little more advanced, are most healthy in spring and in the beginning of summer; elderly persons in summer, and the first part of autumn; young and middle aged in winter. The winter is more inimical to old age, the summer to youth.

Then, if there should be any debility, infants and those of a tender age are liable to have spreading ulcers of the mouth, which the Greeks call aphthæ; vomiting, nightly vigilance, running of the ears, and inflammations about the umbilicus. The diseases peculiar to dentition, are ulcerations of the gums, convulsions, slight fevers, purgings; particularly while the canine teeth are coming through; and which are more dangerous to those of a very full habit and costive bowels.

But when they have advanced a little in age, glandular tumours, spinal curvatures, struma, some painful kinds of warts, which the Greeks call acrochordonas, and many other little swellings arise. But about the age of puberty, many of these

piente vero jam pube, ex iisdem multa, et longæ febres, et sanguinis ex naribus cursus. Maximeque omnis pueritia, primum circa quadragesimum diem, deinde septimo mense, tum septimo anno, postea circa pubertatem periclitatur. Siqua etiam genera morborum in infantem inciderunt, ac neque pubertate, neque primis coitibus, neque in fœmina primis menstruis finita sunt, fere longa sunt: sæpius tamen morbi pueriles, qui diutius manserunt, terminantur.

Adolescentia morbis acutis; item comitialibus, tabique maxime objecta est: fereque juvenes sunt, qui sanguinem exspuunt. Post hanc ætatem laterum et pulmonis dolores, lethargus, cholera, insania, sanguinis per quædam velut ora venarum, αἱμορροΐδας Græci appellant, profusio. In senectute, spiritus et urinæ difficultas, gravedo, articularum et renum dolores, nervorum resolutiones, malus corporis habitus, καχεξία Græci appellant, nocturnæ vigiliæ, vitia longiora aurium, oculorum, etiam narium, præcipueque soluta alvus, et, quæ sequuntur hanc, termina, vel lævitas intestinorum, ceteraque ventris fusi mala. Præter hæc graciles,

## ORDO.

untur. Vero pube jam incipiente, multa exiisdem, et longæ febres, et cursus sanguinis ex naribus. Que omnis pueritia periclitatur maxime, primum circa quadragesimum diem, deinde septimo mense, tum septimo anno, postea circa pubertatem. Etiam si qua genera morborum inciderunt in infantem, ac neque sunt finita pubertate, neque primis coitibus, neque primis menstruis in fœmina, sunt fere longa: tamen sæpius pueriles morbi, qui manserunt diutius, terminantur.

Adolescentia est objecta maxime acutis morbis; item comitialibus (morbis), que tabi: que qui exspuunt sanguinem, sunt fere juvenes. Post hanc ætatem (est objecta maxime) dolores laterum et pulmonis, lethargus, cholera, insania, profusio sanguinis per quædam velut ora venarum, Græci appellant αἱμορροΐδας (hæmorrhoidas). In senectute, (est objecta maxime) difficultas spiritus et urinæ, gravedo, dolores articularum et renum, resolutiones nervorum, malus habitus corporis Græci appellant καχεξίαν (cachexia), nocturnæ vigiliæ, longiora vitia aurium, oculorum, etiam narium, que præcipue soluta alvus, et quæ sequuntur hanc, termina, vel lævitas intestinorum, que cetera mala fusi ventris. Præter hæc tabes, de-

## TRANSLATION.

occur, with long fevers, and hemorrhage from the nose. All children are in most danger about the fortieth day, then the seventh month, then the seventh year, afterwards at the time of puberty. Therefore if any species of disease arise in infancy, and are neither terminated by puberty, nor by their first sexual intercourse, nor in women by their first menstruation, they generally continue long: yet very frequently diseases incident to youth, which have remained very long, have been removed at that period.

The period of youth is most exposed to acute diseases, epilepsy, and consumption; and they are for the most part young men who spit blood. After this age, they will be subject to pleuritic, pulmonic, and lethargic diseases, also cholera, madness, discharges of blood from certain orifices of veins, which the Greeks term Hæmorrhoidas. In old age dyspnœa, dysuria, gravedo, arthritic and nephralgic pains, paralysis, bad habit of body, called by the Greeks cachexia, nightly watchings, chronic diseases of the ears, eyes, nose, and especially alvine disorders with their usual concomitants, termina, lienteria, and the whole sequelæ incident to that malady.

Besides these, the slender built frame is worn down by consumption, diarrhœa, catarrhs, and also by visceral and pleuritic diseases. The corpulent are generally



tabes, dejectiones, destillationes; item viscerum et laterum dolores fatigant. \* Obesi plerumque acutis morbis, et difficultate spirandi strangulantur: subitoque sæpe moriuntur; quod in corpore tenuiore vix evenit.

## ORDO.

jectiones, destillationes, item dolores viscerum et laterum fatigant graciles. Obesi plerumque strangulantur acutis morbis, et difficultate spirandi: que sæpe moriuntur subito; quod vix evenit in tenuiore corpore.

## TRANSLATION.

oppressed with acute diseases and with difficulty of breathing; and often die suddenly, which rarely happens in a more slender body.

## CAP. II.

## DE SIGNIS ADVERSE VALETUDINIS

## FUTURE.

ANTE adversam autem valetudinem, ut supra dixi, quædam notæ oriuntur; quarum omnium commune est, aliter se corpus habere, atque consuevit; neque in pejus tantum, sed etiam in melius. Ergo si plenior aliquis, et speciosior, et coloratior factus est, suspecta habere bona sua debet; quæ, quia neque in eodem habitu subsistere, neque ultra progredi possunt, fere retro, quasi ruina quadam, revolvuntur. Pejus tamen signum est, ubi aliquis contra consuetudinem emacuit, et colorem decoremque amisit: quoniam in iis quæ superant,

## ORDO.

## CAP. II.

## DE SIGNIS FUTURÆ ADVERSÆ VALETUDINIS.

AUTEM, ut supra dixi, ante adversam valetudinem; quædam notæ oriuntur; atque consuevit, omnium quarum est commune, corpus habere se aliter; neque tantum in pejus, sed etiam in melius. Ergo si aliquis est factus plenior, et speciosior, et coloratior, debet habere sua bona suspecta; quæ, quia possunt neque subsistere in eodem habitu, neque progredi ultra, fere revolvuntur retro, quasi quadam ruina. Tamen signum est pejus, ubi aliquis emacuit contra consuetudinem, et amisit colorem que decorem: quoniam in iis quæ superant, est quod morbus

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

## THE PROGNOSTICS OF DISEASE.

BUT before an illness, (as I have said above,) certain precursors make their appearance; all of which have this in common, that some unusual aberrations, either organic or functional, have taken place in the body: not only for the worse, but sometimes for the better. Therefore, if a person have become more full, better-looking, and of a more florid complexion, he ought to look upon his improved appearance with distrust: for these things can neither remain stationary in the same habit, nor progress further, but are too often hurled back upon themselves with a retrograde revulsion of nature, carrying devastation and ruin in their train.

Yet, it is a worse sign when a person has become emaciated, contrary to his natural habit, and has lost his colour and comeliness; because, in those things which

est quod morbus demat ; in iis quæ desunt, non est quod ipsum morbum ferat. Præter hæc protinus timeri debet, si graviora membra sunt ; si crebra ulcera oriuntur ; si corpus supra consuetudinem incaluit ; si gravior somnus pressit ; si tumultuosa somnia fuerunt ; si sæpius expergiscitur aliquis, quam assuevit, deinde iterum soporatur ; si corpus dormientis circa partes aliquas contra consuetudinem insudat, maximeque si circa pectus, aut cervices, aut crura, vel genua, vel coxas. Item, si marcet animus ; si loqui et moveri piget ; si corpus torpet ; si dolor præcordiorum est, aut totius pectoris, aut, qui in plurimis evenit, capitis ; si salivæ plenum est os ; si oculi cum dolore vertuntur ; si tempora adstricta sunt ; si membra inhorrescunt ; si spiritus gravior est ; si circa frontem intentæ venæ moventur ; si frequentes oscitationes ; si genua quasi fatigata sunt, totumve corpus lassitudinem sentit. Ex quibus sæpe plura, numquam non aliqua febrem antecedunt. In primis tamen illud considerandum est, num cui sæpius horum aliquid eveniat, neque ideo corporis ulla difficultas subsequatur. Sunt enim quædam proprietates hominum, sine

## ORDO.

demat ; in iis quæ desunt, non est quod ferat morbum ipsum. Præter hæc debet timeri protinus, si membra sunt graviora ; si crebra ulcera oriuntur ; si corpus incaluit supra consuetudinem ; si gravior somnus pressit ; si somnia fuerunt tumultuosa ; si aliquis expergiscitur sæpius, quam assuevit, deinde soporatur iterum ; si corpus dormientis insudat circa aliquas partes contra consuetudinem, que maxime si circa pectus, aut cervices, aut crura, vel genua, vel coxas. Item, si marcet animus ; si piget loqui et moveri ; si corpus torpet ; si est dolor præcordiorum, aut totius pectoris, aut capitis, qui evenit in plurimis ; si os est plenum salivæ ; si oculi vertuntur cum dolore ; si tempora sunt adstricta ; si membra inhorrescunt ; si spiritus est gravior ; si intentæ venæ circa frontem moventur ; si (sunt) frequentes oscitationes ; si genua sunt quasi fatigata, vel totum corpus sentit lassitudinem. Plura ex quibus sæpe, aliqua nunquam non antecedunt febrem. Tamen illud est considerandum in primis, num aliquid horum sæpius eveniat cui, neque ideo ulla difficultas corporis subsequatur. Enim sunt quædam proprietates hominum, sine

## TRANSLATION.

are superabundant, there is that on which a disease may exhaust its virulence ; but in those which are deficient, there is not enough to resist the disease itself.

Besides these things, it ought to excite immediate fear if the limbs are very heavy ; if frequent ulcers break out ; if the body has become unusually warm ; if much oppressed by sleep ; if the dreams have been tumultuous ; if a person awakes oftener than usual, and afterwards goes to sleep again ; if a sleeping person perspires in some parts contrary to custom, especially about the chest, neck, legs, knees, or hips. Also, if the mind is dejected ; if there be a reluctance of speech and motion ; if the body be torpid ; if there be pain about the præcordia, or of the whole chest, or which happens in most, the head ; if the mouth be filled with saliva ; if the eyes be turned with pain ; if the temples feel as if they were bound ; if the limbs shiver ; if the breathing be oppressed ; if the temporal arteries are dilated and beat forcibly ; if there be frequent yawnings ; if the knees feel wearied, or the whole body be in a state of lassitude.

Fever is often preceded by many of these harbingers, but never without some of them. We must consider, in the first place, whether any of these signs may happen to a person without any subsequent inconvenience arising from them. For there are some peculiarities of habit in men, without a knowledge of which it

quarum notitia non facile quidquam in futurum præ sagiri potest. Facile itaque securus est in iis aliquis, quæ sæpe sine periculo evasit: ille sollicitari debet, cui hæc nova sunt; aut qui ista numquam sine custodia sui tuta habuit.

ORDO.  
notitia quarum, quidquam non potest facile præ sagiri in futurum. Que ita aliquis est facile securus in iis, quæ sæpe evasit sine periculo: ille debet sollicitari, cui hæc sunt nova; aut qui numquam habuit tuta custodia sui sine ista.

## TRANSLATION.

will be impossible to obtain any accurate diagnosis. Therefore, a person is easily tranquillized about these things who has often escaped without danger; he only ought to be solicitous to whom these signs are new, or who has never had them without those safeguards over himself.

## CAP. III.

QUÆ BONA IN ÆGROTANTIBUS SIGNA SINT.

UBI vero febris aliquem occupavit, scire licet, non periclitari, si in latus aut dextrum aut sinistrum, ut ipsi visum est, cubat, cruribus paulum reductis; qui fere sani quoque jacentis habitus est; si facile convertitur; si noctu dormit, interdiu vigilat; si ex facili spirat; si non conflictatur; si circa umbilicum et pubem cutis plena est; si præcordia ejus sine ullo sensu doloris æqualiter mollia in utraque parte sunt. Quod si paulo tumidiora sunt, sed tamen digitis cedunt et non dolent, hæc

## ORDO.

## CAP. III.

QUÆ SINT BONA SIGNA IN ÆGROTANTIBUS.

VERO ubi febris occupavit aliquem, licet scire, non periclitari, si cubat aut in dextrum aut sinistrum latus, ut est visum ipsi, cruribus paulum reductis, qui quoque est fere habitus sani jacentis; si convertitur facile; si dormit noctu, vigilat interdiu; si spirat ex facili; si non conflictatur; si entis est plena circa umbilicum et pubem; si præcordia ejus sunt sine ullo sensu doloris, æqualiter mollia in utraque parte. Quod si sunt paulo tumidiora, sed tamen cedunt digitis et non dolent, sic hæc ha-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

WHAT MAY BE CONSIDERED GOOD SYMPTOMS IN SICK PEOPLE.

BUT when a person is seized with fever, we may know that he is not in danger if he lies upon either the right or left side, as may seem best to himself, with his legs drawn up a little, which is generally the posture of a healthy person in bed: if he turns himself with ease; if he sleeps in the night time, and wakes in the day; if he breathes easily; if he does not struggle; if the skin be full (3) about the umbilicus and pubes; if the præcordia be equally soft on both sides without any sense of pain; or if they are a little swollen, yet yield to the impression of the fingers, and are not



valetudo, ut spatium aliquod habebit, sic tuta erit. Corpus quoque, quod æqualiter molle et calidum est, quodque æqualiter totum insudat, et cujus febricula eo sudore finitur, securitatem pollicetur. Sternutamentum etiam inter bona indicia est, et cupiditas cibi vel a primo servata, vel etiam post fastidium orta. Neque terrere debet ea febris, quæ eodem die finita est; ac ne ea quidem, quæ quamvis longiore tempore evanuit, tamen ante alteram accessionem ex toto quievit, sic ut corpus integrum, quod *εἰλικρινές* Græci vocant, fieret. Si quis autem incidit vomitus, mistus esse et bile et pituita debet: et in urina subsidere album, læve, æquale; sic ut etiam, si quæ quasi nebulæ innatarint, in imum deferantur. At venter ei, qui a periculo tutus est, reddit mollia, figurata, atque eodem fere tempore, quo secunda valetudine assuevit, modo convenientia iis, quæ assumuntur. Pejor cita alvus est; sed ne hæc quidem terrere protinus debet, si matutinis temporibus coacta magis est, aut si procedente tempore paulatim contrahitur, et rufa est, neque foeditate odoris similem alvum sani hominis excedit. Ac

## ORDO.

bebit, ut valetudo erit tuta aliquod spatium. Quoque corpus, quod est æqualiter molle et calidum, quæ quod insudat totum æqualiter, et febricula ejus finitur eo sudore, pollicetur securitatem. Sternutamentum est etiam inter bona indicia, et cupiditas cibi vel servata a primo, vel etiam orta post fastidium. Neque debet ea febris terrere, quæ est finita eodem die; ac ne quidem ea, quæ quamvis evanuit longiore tempore, tamen quievit ex toto ante alteram accessionem, sic ut corpus fieret integrum, quod Græci vocant *εἰλικρινές* (eilikrines). Autem si quis vomitus incidit, debet esse mistus et bile et pituita: et album subside in urina, læve, æquale; sic ut etiam si quæ quasi nebulæ innatarint, deferantur in imum. At ei, qui est tutus a periculo, venter reddit mollia, figurata, atque fere eodem tempore, quo assuevit secunda valetudine, modo convenientia iis, quæ assumuntur. Cita alvus est pejor; sed ne quidem hæc debet terrere protinus, si est magis coacta matutinis temporibus, aut si contrahitur paulatim procedente tempore, et est rufa, neque excedit similem alvum sani hominis foeditate odoris. Ac

## TRANSLATION.

in pain; as this malady will have some duration, yet not dangerous. A body which is equally soft and warm, and perspires all over, and the slight fever is carried off by that sweat, promises returning health. Also sneezing is a favourable symptom, either retained from the beginning, or having arisen after nausea.

Nor ought that fever to terrify which terminates in one day; nor even that which, although it has disappeared in a longer time, yet entirely remitted before another accession, so that the body in the mean time might become sound; which the Greeks call *eilikrines*.

But if any vomiting happens, it ought to be mixed with bile and phlegm; and a white, smooth, equal sediment, ought to subside in the urine; so that, if there should be any supernatant flocculi, it may deposit at the bottom. And his bowels, who is out of danger, voids soft, figured motions (4); and evacuated, for the most part, about the same time in which he has been accustomed to in health, and in quantity proportioned to the nourishment taken.

A frequency of stools is worse; but even this ought not to be considered immediately dangerous if it be of a better consistence in the morning, or, as time advances, becomes harder by degrees, and is inclined to be reddish, nor exceed in faecal a like motion of a healthy man. And there is nothing injurious in passing

lumbricos quoque aliquos sub fine morbi descendisse, nihil nocet. Si inflatio in superioribus partibus dolore tumoremque fecit, bonum signum est sonus ventris inde ad inferiores partes evolutus; magisque etiam, si sine difficultate, cum stercore excessit.

## ORDO.

aliquos lumbricos quoque descendisse sub fine morbi, nocet nihil. Si inflatio fecit doloremque tumorem in superioribus partibus, sonus evolutus ad inferiores partes ventris est bonum signum; que etiam magis, si excessit sine difficultate, cum stercore.

## TRANSLATION.

some worms at the termination of the disease. If flatus have produced a pain and swelling in the superior parts, and the borborygmus has evolved thence downwards to the inferior parts, it is a favourable sign; and the more so, if it has passed out with the fæces without difficulty.

## CAP. IV.

## MALA SIGNA ÆGROTANTIUM.

CONTRA gravis morbi periculum est, ubi supinus æger jacet, porrectis manibus et cruribus; ubi residere vult in ipso acuti morbi impetu, præcipueque pulmonibus laborantibus; ubi nocturna vigilia premitur, etiamsi interdiu somnus accedit; ex quo tamen pejor est, qui inter quartam horam et noctem est, quam qui matutino tempore ad quartam. Pessimum tamen est, si somnus neque noctu, neque interdiu accedit: id enim fere sine continuo dolore esse non potest. Æque vero signum malum est etiam somno ultra debitum urgeri; pejusque, quo magis se sopor interdiu, noctuque continuat.

## ORDO.

## CAP. IV.

## MALA SIGNA ÆGROTANTIUM.

CONTRA est periculum gravis morbi, ubi æger jacet supinus, manibus et cruribus porrectis; ubi vult residere in impetu ipso acuti morbi, que præcipue pulmonibus laborantibus; ubi premitur nocturna vigilia, etiamsi somnus accedit interdiu; ex quo tamen (is) est pejor, qui est inter quartam et noctem, quam qui (est) matutino tempore ad quartam. Tamen est pessimum, si somnus accedit neque noctu, neque interdiu: enim id non potest esse fere sine continuo dolore. Vero etiam urgeri somno ultra debitum est æque malum signum; que pejus, quo magis sopor continuat se interdiu, que

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

## UNFAVOURABLE SYMPTOMS OF THE SICK.

ON the other hand, there is a danger of severe illness when the sick person lies supine, with his arms and legs extended; when he wishes to sit erect in the acmé itself of an acute disease, and especially in peripneumonia; when he is distressed with nightly watching, even although he sleep in the day time; of which that sleep is worst betwixt the fourth hour (5) and night, than that which is from the morning to the same hour. Yet it is the worst of all, if he neither sleep by night nor by day; for that can scarcely be, without continual delirium. But it is also an equally bad sign to be oppressed by sleep beyond the due time; and the worse, in proportion as the sleep during the day extends itself to that of night. It is also a sign of

Mali etiam morbi testimonium est, vehementer et crebro spirare; a sexto die cœpisse inhorrescere; pus exspuere; vix exscreare; dolorem habere continuum; difficulter ferre morbum; jactare brachia et crura; sine voluntate lacrimare; habere humorem glutinosum dentibus inhærentem; cutem circa umbilicum et pubem macram; præcordia inflammata, dolentia, dura, tumida, intenta, magisque, si hæc dextra parte quam sinistra sunt; periculosissimum tamen est, si venæ quoque ibi vehementer agitantur.

Mali etiam morbi signum est, nimis celeriter emacrescere; caput et pedes manusque frigidas habere, ventre et lateribus calentibus; aut frigidas extremas partes acuto morbo urgente; aut post sudorem inhorrescere; aut post vomitum singultum esse, vel rubere oculos; aut post cupiditatem cibi, postve longas febres hunc fastidire; aut multum sudare, maximeque frigido sudore; aut habere sudores non per totum corpus æquales, quique febrem non finiant; et eas febres, quæ quotidie tempore eodem revertantur; quæve semper pares accessiones habeant, neque tertio quoque die leventur; quæve sic continent, ut per accessiones

## ORDO.

noctu. Etiam spirare vehementer et crebro, est testimonium mali morbi; cœpisse inhorrescere a sexto die; exspuere pus; exscreare vix; habere continuum dolorem; ferre morbum difficulter; jactare brachia et crura; lacrimare sine voluntate; habere glutinosum humorem inhærentem dentibus; cutem macram circa umbilicum et pubem; præcordia inflammata, dolentia, dura, tumida, intenta, que magis si hæc sunt dextra parte quam sinistra; tamen est periculosissimum, si quoque venæ agitantur vehementer ibi.

Etiam emacrescere nimis celeriter, est signum mali morbi; habere caput et pedes que manus frigidas, ventre et lateribus calentibus; aut acuto morbo urgente, extremas partes (esse) frigidas; aut inhorrescere post sudorem; aut esse singultum post vomitum, vel oculos ruber; aut hunc fastidire post cupiditatem cibi, vel post longas febres; aut sudare multum, que maxime frigido sudore; aut habere sudores non æquales per totum corpus, que qui non finiant febrem; et eas febres, quæ quotidie revertantur eodem tempore; vel quæ semper habeant pares accessiones; neque quoque leventur tertio die; vel quæ sic continent, ut increpant per accessiones, tan-

## TRANSLATION.

a bad disease to breathe rapidly and with vehemence; for shiverings to come on after the sixth day; to expectorate pus, and that with difficulty; to have constant pain; to be much distressed with the disease; to toss the arms and legs about; to weep involuntarily; to have a glutinous sordes adherent to the teeth; for the skin about the umbilicus and pubes to be emaciated; the præcordia inflamed, painful, hard, swollen, tense; and more so, if these symptoms be more on the right side than on the left; but the danger is still more increased, if the pulsation of the arteries there be violent.

Again, it is the indication of a bad disease to become suddenly emaciated; to have the head, hands, and feet cold, the abdomen and sides being hot; or to have the extremities cold, under the influence of an acute disease; or to shiver after a sweat; or to have the hiccough after a vomit; or the eyes to be red; or after having a desire for food, or after long fevers, to loath this; to perspire much, and especially cold sweats; or to have perspiration partially diffused over the body, which does not dissipate the fever; and those fevers which return daily at the same time; or those that have paroxysms equally violent, and which do not remit every third day; or those that continue, so as to increase in their paroxysms, and only remit in their



increscant, per decessiones tantum moliantur, nec umquam integrum corpus dimittant. Pessimum est, si ne levatur quidem febris, sed æque concitata continuat. Periculosum est etiam, post arquatam morbum febrem oriri; utique si præcordia dextra parte dura manserunt. Ac dolentibus iis, nulla acuta febris leviter terrere nos debet; neque umquam in acuta febre, aut a somno non est terribilis nervorum distentio.

Timere etiam ex somno, mali morbi est; itemque in prima febre protinus mentem esse turbatam, membrumve aliquod esse resolutum. Ex quo casu quamvis vita redditur, tamen id fere membrum debilitatur. Vomitus etiam periculosus est sinceræ pituitæ, vel bilis; pejorque, si viridis, aut niger est. At mala urina est, in qua subsidunt subrubra et lævia: deterior, in qua quasi folia quædam tenuia atque alba: pessima ex his, si tamquam ex furfuribus factas nubeculas repræsentat. Diluta quoque, atque alba, vitiosa est, sed in phreneticis maxime. Alvus autem mala est, ex toto suppressa. Periculosa etiam, quæ inter febres fluens conquiescere hominem in cubili non patitur; utique, si quod descendit, est perliquidum, aut albidum, aut pallidum, aut spumans.

## ORDO.

tum molliantur per decessiones, nec umquam dimittant integrum corpus. Est pessimum, si quidem febris ne levatur, sed continuat æque concitata. Est etiam periculosum, febrem oriri post arquatam morbum; utique si dextra præcordia manserunt dura parte. Ac iis dolentibus, nulla acuta febris debet terrere nos leviter; aut neque umquam in acuta febre, non est distentio nervorum a somno terribilis.

Etiam timere ex somno, est (signum) mali; que item mentem esse turbatam, vel membrum esse aliquod resolutum protinus in prima febre. Ex quo casu quamvis vita redditur, tamen id membrum fere debilitatur. Etiam vomitus sinceræ pituitæ, vel bilis est periculosus; que pejor, si est viridis, aut niger. At urina est mala, in qua subrubra et lævia subsidunt: deterior, in qua quasi quædam tenuia atque alba folia: ex his (est) pessima, si tamquam repræsentat nubeculas factas ex furfuribus. Quoque diluta, atque alba, est vitiosa, sed maxime in phreneticis. Autem alvus suppressa ex toto, est mala. (Est) etiam periculosa, quæ fluens inter febres, non patitur hominem conquiescere in cubili; utique, si quod descendit, est perliquidum, aut albidum, aut pallidum, aut spumans. Præter

## TRANSLATION.

intervals, but never leave the body free from the disease. It is the worst sign of all, if the fever be not alleviated, but continue equally violent. It is dangerous also for fever to come on after jaundice (6), particularly if the præcordia have remained hard on the right side. Also, if attended with pain there, every acute fever ought to terrify us a little; and always in such a fever, or after sleep, convulsions are terrible.

Also, to start with fear out of sleep is a bad omen; and also for the mind to be disturbed in the beginning of a fever, or a limb to become paralysed. In which case, although the life be saved, yet too often that limb remains debilitated. Also vomiting of pure phlegm, or bile, is dangerous; and it is worse, if it be green or black. That urine is bad, in which a reddish, smooth sediment subsides; and that is worse, in which there are, as it were, little white leaves; but the worst of all, which represents little clouds as if composed of bran. Thin and white urine is also diseased, but mostly in phrenetic patients. It is bad to have the bowels entirely constipated. So is that continual purging during fevers, which does not permit the patient to remain in bed; especially if the alvine excretions be very liquid, or whitish, or pale, or frothy.

Præter hæc periculum ostendit id, quod excernitur, si est exiguum, glutinosum, læve, album, idemque subpallidum: vel si est aut lividum, aut biliosum, aut cruentum, aut peioris odoris, quam ex consuetudine. Malum est etiam, quod post longas febres sincerum est.

## ORDO.

hæc id quod excernitur, ostendit periculum, si est exiguum, glutinosum, læve, album, que idem subpallidum: vel si est aut lividum, aut biliosum, aut cruentum, aut peioris odoris, quam ex consuetudine. Est etiam malum, quod est sincerum post longas febres.

## TRANSLATION.

Besides these, that which is excreted denotes danger, if it be small in quantity, glutinous, smooth, white, and the same rather pale; or if they be either livid, or bilious, or bloody, or of a more fœtid odour than common. That discharge is also bad, which is unmixed with fæcal matter after long fevers.

## CAP. V.

## DE SIGNIS LONGÆ VALETUDINIS.

Post hæc indicia, votum est longum morbum fieri: sic enim necesse est, nisi occidit. Neque vitæ alia spes in magnis malis est, quam ut impetum morbi trahendo aliquis effugiat, porrigaturque in id tempus, quod curationi locum præstet.

Protinus tamen signa quædam sunt, ex quibus colligere possumus, morbum, etsi non interemerit, longius tamen tempus habiturum: ubi frigidus sudor inter febres non acutas circa caput tantum, et cervices oritur; aut ubi, febre non quiescente, corpus insudat; aut ubi corpus modo frigidum, modo

## ORDO.

## CAP. V.

## DE SIGNIS LONGÆ VALETUDINIS.

Post hæc indicia, votum est morbum fieri longum: enim sic est necesse, nisi occidit. Neque est alia spes vitæ in magnis malis, quam ut aliquis effugiat impetum morbi trahendo, que porrigatur in id tempus, quod præstet locum curationi.

Tamen protinus sunt quædam signa, ex quibus possumus colligere morbum, etsi non interemerit, tamen habiturum longius tempus: ubi frigidus sudor oritur circa caput et cervices tantum inter febres non acutas; aut ubi corpus insudat febre non quiescente; aut ubi corpus est modo

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

## THE SYMPTOMS OF A PROTRACTED ILLNESS.

AFTER these indications, it is desirable (7) that the disease may be of some duration, for it is necessary, unless the patient die. Nor is there any other hope of life in formidable diseases, than to aid the escape of the sufferer by eluding the violence of the disease, and thus extending the time sufficiently, in order to afford an opportunity of treatment.

Yet there are some immediate signs by which we are able to prognosticate that a disease, although not mortal, will have a very long time. For instance, when a cold sweat arises in chronic fevers about the head and neck only; or when the body perspires without a remission of the fever; or when the body is now cold,

calidum est, et color alius ex alio fit; aut ubi, quod inter febres aliqua parte abscessit, ad sanitatem non pervenit; aut ubi æger pro spatio parum emacrescit: item, si urina modo liquida et pura est, modo habet quædam subsidentia; si lævia atque alba rubrave sunt, quæ in ea subsidunt; aut si quasdam quasi miculas repræsentat; aut si bullulas excitat.

## ORDO.

frigidum, modo calidum, et alius color fit ex alio; aut ubi, quod abscessit aliqua parte inter febres, non pervenit ad sanitatem; aut ubi æger emacrescit parum pro spatio: item, si urina est modo liquida et pura, modo habet quædam subsidentia; si sunt lævia atque alba vel rubra, quæ subsidunt in ea; aut si repræsentat quasdam quasi miculas; aut si excitat bullulas.

## TRANSLATION.

again hot; and the complexion now, is made to give place to another again; or when some unhealthy abscess has suppurated in fevers; or when the patient is but little emaciated in proportion to the time; also, if the urine be at one time liquid and clear, at another time to have deposits in it: if the precipitate be smooth and white, or red; or if it present a flocculent appearance; or if it excite air bubbles.

## CAP. VI.

## ORDO.

## DE INDICIIS MORTIS.

## CAP. VI.

## DE INDICIIS MORTIS.

SED inter hæc quidem, proposito metu, spes tamen superest. Ad ultima vero jam ventum esse testantur, nares acutæ, collapsa tempora, oculi concavi, frigidæ languidæque aures et imis partibus leniter versæ, cutis circa frontem dura et intenta, color aut niger aut perpallidus; multoque magis, si ita hæc sunt, ut neque vigilia præcesserit, neque ventris resolutio, neque inedia. Ex quibus causis interdum hæc species oritur, sed

SED quidem inter hæc, metu proposito, tam spes superest. Vero acutæ nares, collapsa tempora, concavi oculi, frigidæ que languidæ aures et leniter versæ imis partibus, cutis circa frontem intenta et dura, color aut niger aut perpallidus testantur jam esse ventum ad ultima; que multo magis, si hæc sunt ita, ut neque vigilia præcesserit, neque resolutio ventris, neque inedia. Ex quibus causis hæc species interdum oritur, sed finitur uno

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

## THE HARBINGERS OF DEATH.

Now danger being announced, indeed, by the preceding signs, yet still there is hope. But the following precursors proclaim aloud, that the *ultimatum* is now at hand; when the nostrils are acute, the temples collapsed, the eyes hollow, the ears cold and languid, and slightly inverted at their extremities, the skin about the forehead hard and tense, the complexion dark or ghastly pale, and much more so, if these symptoms have occurred independent of any preceding vigilance, diarrhœa, or want; from which causes, this appearance sometimes arises, but



uno die finitur : itaque diutius durans, mortis index est.

Si vero in morbo vetere jam triduo talis est, in propinquo mors est; magisque, si præter hæc oculi quoque lumen refugiunt, et illacrimant; quæque in iis alba esse debent, rubescunt; atque in iisdem venulæ pallent; pituitaque in iis innatans, novissime angulis inhærescit; alterque ex his minor est; iique aut vehementer subderunt, aut facti tumidiores sunt; perque somnum palpebræ non committuntur, sed inter has ex albo oculorum aliquid apparet, neque id fluens alvus expressit; eademque palpebræ pallent, et idem pallor labra et nares decolorat; eademque labra, et nares, oculique, et palpebræ, et supercilia, aliquavē ex his pervertuntur; isque propter imbecillitatem jam non audit, aut non videt.

Eadem mors denunciatur, ubi æger supinus cubat, eique genua contracta sunt; ubi deorsum ad pedes subinde delabitur; ubi brachia et crura nudat, et inæqualiter dispergit, neque iis calor subest; ubi hiat; ubi assidue dormit; ubi is, qui mentis suæ non est, neque id facere sanus solet, dentibus stridet; ubi ulcus, quod aut ante, aut in ipso morbo

#### ORDO.

die: itaque durans diutius, est index mortis.

Vero si est talis in morbo jam triduo vetere, mors est in propinquo, que magis, si præter hæc oculi quoque refugiunt lumen, et illacrimant; que quæ debent esse alba in iis, rubescunt; atque venulæ in iisdem pallent; que pituita innatans in iis, novissime inhærescit angulis; que alter ex his est minor; que ii aut subderunt vehementer, aut sunt facti tumidiores; que palpebræ non committuntur per somnum, sed inter has aliquid ex albo oculorum apparet, neque fluens alvus expressit id; que eadem palpebræ pallent, et idem pallor decolorat labra et nares; que eadem labra, et nares, que oculi, et palpebræ, et supercilia, vel aliqua ex his pervertuntur; que is jam propter imbecillitatem non audit, aut non videt.

Mors denunciatur eadem, ubi æger cubat supinus, que genua sunt contracta ei; ubi delabitur deorsum ad pedes subinde; ubi nudat brachia et crura, et dispergit inæqualiter, neque calor subest iis; ubi hiat; ubi dormit assidue; ubi is, qui non est suæ mentis, stridet dentibus, neque solet facere id sanus; ubi ulcus, quod est natum aut ante, aut in morbo ipso, ari-

#### TRANSLATION.

then it vanishes in a day: therefore, lasting longer, they indicate approaching dissolution.

So, if they continue in this state for three days in a chronic disease, death is at hand; particularly if, besides these, the eyes shun the light and weep, and that which ought to be white in them becomes red; their small veins are pallid, and the lubricating moisture, floating on the surface, at last adheres to the angles; one is less than the other, and they have either very much sunk or much swollen; when the palpebræ are not closed in sleep, but discover some part of the white between them; neither have these been produced by diarrhœa; and the same eye-lids be pale, and that pallor blanch the lips and nostrils; and these lips, nostrils, eyes, eye-lids, and supercilia, or some one of them, be distorted, his imbecility now forbids the eye to see or the ear to hear.

Death has marked him out for his victim when the sufferer lies supine, with his knees contracted; when he slips down frequently towards his feet; when he lays bare his arms and legs and tosses them about carelessly, and there is no warmth in them; when he yawns; when he sleeps constantly; when he gnashes his teeth in a state of insensibility, to which he was unaccustomed in health; when an ulcer has

natum est, aridum, et aut pallidum, aut lividum factum est.

Illa quoque mortis indicia sunt, ungues, digitique pallidi; frigidus spiritus; aut si manibus quis in febre, et acuto morbo, vel insania, pulmonisve dolore, vel capitis, in veste floccos legit, fimbriasve diducit, vel in adjuncto pariete, si qua minuta eminent, carpit. Dolores etiam circa coxas et inferiores partes orti, si ad viscera transierunt, subitoque desierunt, mortem subesse testantur; magisque, si alia quoque signa accesserunt.

Neque is servari potest, qui sine ullo tumore febricitans, subito strangulatur, aut devorare salivam suam non potest; cuive in eodem febris corporisque habitu cervix convertitur, sic ut devorare æque nihil possit; aut cui simul et continua febris et ultima corporis infirmitas est; aut cui, febre non quiescente, exterior pars friget, interior sic calet, ut etiam sitim faciat; aut qui, febre æque non quiescente, simul et delirio et spirandi difficultate vexatur; aut qui, epoto veratro, exceptus distentione nervorum est; aut qui ebrius obmutuit. Is enim fere nervorum distentione consumitur, nisi aut febris accessit, aut eo tempore,

## ORDO.

dum, et est factum aut pallidum, aut lividum.

Quoque illa sunt indicia mortis, ungues, que digiti pallidi; frigidus spiritus; aut si quis in febre, et acuto morbo, vel insania, vel dolore pulmonis, vel capitis, legit floccos in veste manibus, vel diducit fimbrias, vel si qua minuta eminent in adjuncta pariete, carpit. Etiam dolores orti circa coxas et inferiores partes, si transierunt ad viscera, que desierunt subito, testantur mortem subesse; que magis, si quoque alia accesserunt.

Neque potest is servari, qui febricitans, subito strangulatur sine ullo tumore, aut non potest devorare suam salivam; vel cui cervix convertitur in eodem habitu febris que corporis, sic ut possit devorare nihil æque; aut cui est et continua febris et ultima infirmitas corporis; aut cui, febre non quiescente, exterior pars friget, (et) sic interior calet, ut etiam faciat sitim; aut qui, febre non quiescente æque, vexatur simul et delirio et difficultate spirandi; aut qui est exceptus distentione nervorum, epoto veratro; aut qui obmutuit ebrius. Enim is fere consumitur distentione nervorum, nisi aut febris accessit, aut cœpit loqui

## TRANSLATION.

arisen, either before or during the progress of the disease itself, has become dry, or pale, or livid.

The following are also symptoms of death: pallid nails and fingers; cold breath; or if one in a fever, or acute disease, or in insanity, or in peripneumonia, or in phrenitis, begin picking the bed-clothes, or separate the fringes, or catch at any minute object that may be on the adjoining wall. Also, pains having arisen about the hips and lower parts, if they have passed over to the viscera and ceased suddenly, prove death to be at hand; especially if the other symptoms precede.

Nor can he be saved, who is labouring under fever without any tumour, and is suddenly seized with a sense of strangulation, or is unable to swallow his own saliva; nor he who is in the same state of fever and of body, the neck being so distorted that it is equally impossible for him to swallow any thing; nor he who has at the same time a continued fever, with extreme debility of body; or he who, without any alleviation of the fever, has the surface of his body cold, and the interior so hot as to produce thirst; or he on whom the fever has been equally violent, is tortured at the same time with delirium and dyspnoea; or one who, after having drunk hellebore, has been seized with convulsions; or one who has lost the power of speech from intoxication: for he is generally carried off by convulsions,

quo ebrietas solvi debet, loqui cœpit. Mulier quoque gravida acuto morbo facile consumitur; et is, cui somnus dolorem auget; et cui protinus, in recenti morbo, bilis atra vel infra vel supra se ostendit; cuive alterutro modo se prompsit, cum jam longo morbo corpus ejus esset extenuatum et affectum. Sputum etiam biliosum, et purulentum, sive separatim ista, sive mista proveniunt, interitus periculum ostendunt. Ac si circa septimum diem tale esse cœpit, proximum est, ut is circa quartumdecimum diem decedat, nisi alia signa meliora pejorave accesserint: quæ, quo leviora graviorave subsecuta sunt, eo vel seriores mortem, vel maturiorem denuntiant.

Sudor quoque frigidus in acuta febre pestifer est: atque in omni morbo vomitus, qui varius, et multorum colorum est; præcipueque, si malus in hoc odor est. Ac sanguinem quoque in febre vomuisse, pestiferum est. Urina vero rubra et tenuis in magna cruditate esse consuevit; et sæpe, antequam spatio maturescat, hominem rapit: itaque, si talis diutius permanet, periculum mor-

## ORDO.

eo tempore, quo ebrietas debet solvi. Quoque gravida mulier consumitur facile acuto morbo; et is, cui somnus auget dolorem; et cui atra bilis ostendit se protinus, vel supra vel infra in recenti morbo; vel cui prompsit se alterutro modo, cum jam corpus esset extenuatum et affectum longo morbo. Etiam biliosum, et purulentum sputum, sive ista proveniunt separatim, sive mista, ostendunt periculum interitus. Ac si cœpit esse tale circa septimum diem, est proximum, ut is decedat circa quartumdecimum diem, nisi alia meliora vel pejora signa accesserint: quæ, quo leviora ve graviora sunt subsecuta, eo denuntiant vel seriores vel maturiorem mortem.

Quoque frigidus sudor est pestifer; atque vomitus in omni morbo, qui est varius, et multorum colorum; que præcipue, si est malus odor in hoc. Ac vomuisse sanguinem quoque in febre, est pestiferum. Vero urina consuevit esse rubra et tenuis in magna cruditate; et sæpe spatio antequam maturescat, rapit hominem: que ita si talis permanet diutius, ostendit periculum mor-

## TRANSLATION.

unless a fever supervene or he begin to speak about that time when the effects of inebriation usually cease.

A pregnant woman also is easily destroyed by an acute disease; and also that person whose pain is augmented by sleep; and he who, in the commencement of a recent disease, ejects black bile either upwards or downwards; or in whom the evacuation has been in either mode, when the constitution has been previously emaciated and debilitated by a long disease. Also bilious and purulent spitting, whether these be ejected separately or mixed, prognosticate a dissolution. And if it began to be such about the seventh day, the probability is that he will die about the fourteenth, unless some other symptoms, either more auspicious or malignant, shall have acceded; and, according as those symptoms have followed, either milder or more virulent, so in proportion they denote either a more protracted or accelerated dissolution.

A cold perspiration also in an acute fever is a pestiferous omen; and in every disease a vomiting which is of a variegated mixture; and particularly if there be a fetid odour in this. To have vomited blood in fever is also a fatal symptom.

The urine is generally red, thin, and in great crudity, and often carries off the patient before concoction takes place; therefore, if it continue very long so, it por-



tis ostendit. Pessima tamen est, præcipueque mortifera, nigra, crassa, mali odoris. Atque in viris quidem et mulieribus talis deterrima est: in pueris vero, quæ tenuis et diluta est. Alvus quoque varia, pestifera est, quæ strigmentum, sanguinem, bilem, viride aliquid, modo diversis temporibus, modo simul, et in mistura quadam, discreta tamen repræsentat. Sed hæc quidem potest paulo diutius trahere: in præcipiti vero jam esse denuntiat, quæ liquida, eademque vel nigra, vel pallida, vel pinguis est; utique, si magna fœditas odoris accessit.

Illud interrogari me posse ab aliquo scio: si certa futuræ mortis indicia sunt, quomodo interdum deserti a medicis convalescant, quosdamque fama prodiderit in ipsis funeribus revixisse? Quin etiam vir jure magni nominis Democritus, ne finitæ quidem vitæ satis certas notas esse, proposuit, quibus medici credidissent: adeo illud non reliquit, ut certa aliqua signa futuræ mortis essent. Adversus quos ne dicam illud quidem, quod in vicino sæpe quædam notæ positæ, non bonos, sed imperitos medicos decipiunt; quod Asclepiades funeri ob-

## ORDO.

tis. Tamen nigra, crassa, mali odoris est pessima quæ præcipue mortifera. Atque quidem talis est deterrima in viris et mulieribus: vero quæ in pueris et tenuis est diluta. Quoque varia alvus est pestifera, quæ repræsentat strigmentum, sanguinem, bilem, aliquid viride, modo diversis temporibus, modo simul, tamen discreta, et in quadam mistura. Sed quidem potest trahere hæc paulo diutius: vero denuntiat esse jam in præcipiti, quæ est liquida, quæ eadem vel nigra, vel pallida, vel pinguis; utique, si magna fœditas odoris accessit.

Scio me posse interrogari illud ab aliquo: si sunt certa indicia mortis, quomodo interdum deserti a medicis convalescant, quæ fama prodiderit quosdam revixisse in funeribus ipsis? Quinetiam Democritus, vir magni nominis jure, proposuit, notas vitæ finitæ, quibus medici credidissent ne quidem satis certas: adeo illud non reliquit, ut essent aliqua certa signa futuræ mortis. Adversus quos ne quidem dicam illud, quod quædam notæ positæ sæpe in vicino, non decipiunt, bonos sed imperitos medicos; quod Asclepiades obvius intellexit eum vi-

## TRANSLATION.

tends imminent danger. Yet, that which is black, thick, and of an offensive smell, is worst, and particularly deadly. And such is the worst in men and women; but in children, that which is thin and watery is the most dangerous. When the alvine discharges represent strigments (8), blood, bile, and green matter, whether passed at different times or at once in the same mixture, yet sufficiently distinct, are held as pestiferous messengers. But he may protract his existence under these symptoms a little longer: but when they are fluid, and likewise either black, pale, or slimy, and especially if accompanied with intolerable fetor, they denounce a precipitate dissolution.

I am aware that I may be interrogated on this subject by some person concerning the certainty of these mortal prognostics, and how it happens that patients, deserted by their physicians, sometimes recover; and, indeed, report has transmitted some to have resuscitated during the funeral ceremony. Even Democritus, a man justly entitled to a great name, has declared, that there are no marks sufficiently characteristic of *animation* being extinct on which physicians could depend: therefore he would not admit that there could be any certain prognoses of death. In answer to whom, I will not even claim this, that a similitude of certain symptoms do not often deceive the skilful, but the unskilful, physicians; (that Asclepiades

vius intellexit, eum vivere, qui efferebatur: nec protinus crimen artis esse, si quod professoris sit. Illa tamen moderatius subijciam: conjecturalem artem esse medicinam, rationemque conjecturæ talem esse, ut cum sæpius aliquando responderit, interdum tamen fallat. Non itaque, si quid vix in millesimo corpore aliquando decipit, fidem non habet, cum per innumerabiles homines respondeat. Idque non in iis tantum, quæ pestifera sunt, dico; sed in iis quoque, quæ salutaria.

Siquidem etiam spes interdum frustratur, et moritur aliquis, de quo medicus securus primo fuit; quæque medendi causa reperta sunt, nonnumquam in pejus alicui convertunt. Neque id evitare humana imbecillitas in tanta varietate corporum potest. Sed est tamen medicinæ fides, quæ multo sæpius, perque multo plures ægros prodest. Neque tamen ignorare oportet, in acutis morbis fallaces magis notas esse et salutis, et mortis.

## ORDO.

vere qui efferebatur funeri: nec esse protinus crimen artis, si sit quod professoris. Tamen subijciam illa moderatius: medicinam esse conjecturalem artem que rationem conjecturæ esse talem ut cum responderit aliquando sæpius, tamen interdum fallat. Itaque, si quid non decipit vix aliquando in millesimo corpore, non habet fidem, cum respondeat per innumerabiles homines. Que dico, id, non tantum in iis quæ sunt pestifera, sed quoque in iis quæ (sunt) salutaria.

Siquidem etiam spes interdum frustratur, et aliquis moritur, de quo primo medicus fuit securus: que, quæ sunt reperta causa medendi, nonnumquam convertunt in alicui pejus. Neque potest humana imbecillitas evitare id in tanta varietate corporum. Sed tamen est fides medicinæ, quæ prodest multo sæpius, que multo plures ægros. Tamen, neque oportet ignorare, notas et salutis et mortis esse magis fallaces in acutis morbis.

## TRANSLATION.

having met a funeral, knew that he was alive whom they were about to bury;) that this insufficiency ought not to be ascribed to the art, if there may be any, of the professor. But I will submit with more moderation;—that medicine is a conjectural art, and the nature of conjecture is such, that although it has frequently succeeded hitherto, yet sometimes it may deceive. Therefore, if a symptom do not deceive us through a long series, scarcely once in a thousand, we are not to withhold our faith when it answers innumerable cases:—and I say, that this is not only referrible to the pestiferous symptoms, but also to the salutary.

For even hope itself is frustrated sometimes; and a patient dies, about whom the physician at first apprehended no danger: and those remedies which have been discovered for the alleviation of disease sometimes prove abortive, and to some even injurious. Neither is it possible for the consequent imperfection of human nature to avoid this in so great a variety of constitutions. Yet still there is faith to be placed in medicine, which proves beneficial to the sick very frequently, and by far the greater number. However, we ought not to be ignorant, that both the salutary and mortal symptoms are more fallacious in acute diseases.

## CAP. VII.

DE NOTIS, QUAS ALIQUIS IN SINGULIS  
MORBORUM GENERIBUS HABERE  
POSSIT.

SED cum proposuerim signa, quæ in omni adversa valetudine communia esse consueverunt; eo quoque transibo, ut, quas aliquis in singulis morborum generibus habere possit notas, indicem. Quædam autem sunt, quæ ante febres, quædam quæ inter eas, quid aut intus sit, aut venturum sit, ostendunt. Ante febres, si caput grave est, aut ex somno oculi caligant, aut frequentia sternutamenta sunt, circa caput aliquis pituitæ impetus timeri potest. Si sanguis, aut calor abundat, proximum est, ut aliqua parte profluvium sanguinis fiat.

Si sine causa quis emacrescit, ne in malum habitum corpus ejus recidat, metus est. Si præcordia dolent, aut inflatio gravis est, aut toto die non concocta fertur urina, cruditatem esse manifestum est. Quibus diu color sine morbo regio malus est, hi vel capitis doloribus con-

## ORDO.

## CAP. VII.

DE NOTIS, QUAS ALIQUIS POSSIT  
HABERE IN SINGULIS GENERIBUS MORBORUM.

SED cum proposuerim signa, quæ consueverunt esse communia in omni adversa valetudine; transibo quoque eo, ut indicem quas notas aliquis possit habere in singulis generibus morborum. Autem sunt quædam, quæ ostendunt eas ante febres, quædam (ostend. eas) inter, aut quid sit intus, aut sit venturum. Si caput grave ante febres, aut oculi caligant ex somno, aut sternutamenta sunt frequentia, aliquis impetus pituitæ potest timeri circa caput. Si sanguis, aut calor abundat, proximum est, ut profluvium sanguinis fiat ex aliqua parte.

Si quis emacrescit sine causa, est metus, ne corpus ejus recidat in malum habitum. Si præcordia dolent, aut est gravis inflatio, aut urina non fertur concocta toto die, est manifestum esse cruditatem. Quibus color est malus diu sine regio morbo, hi conflictantur vel dolo-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

## THE PARTICULAR SIGNS OF EACH DISEASE.

SINCE I have described those symptoms which generally accompany disease, I will now proceed to point out those diagnostic characters, which any patient may happen to have in each particular kind of illness. But there are some of these which manifest themselves before, others during the progress of the fevers, which evince either a morbid action from within, or what may be expected to come. If, before fevers the head be heavy, or the eyes dim after sleep, and frequent sneezings, a catarrhæcus from the head may be dreaded (9). If the blood be in excess, and very hot, a hæmorrhage is likely to ensue from some part.

If any one become emaciated without an evident cause, there is reason to dread lest he become cachectic.

If the præcordia be painful, or excessive flatulency be present, or the urine discharged in an unconcocted state during the whole day, there is manifest crudity existing. Those who have a bad colour for a long time without jaundice, are either afflicted with pains of the head or pica (10).

Those, who have pallid and turgid countenances for a long time, have either



flectantur, vel terram edunt. Qui diu habent faciem pallidam et tumidam, aut capite, aut visceribus, aut alvo laborant. Si in continua febre puero venter nihil reddit, mutaturque ei color, neque somnus accedit, ploratque is assidue, metuenda nervorum distentio est. Frequens autem destillatio in corpore tenui longoque, tabem timendam esse testatur.

Ubi pluribus diebus non descendit alvus, docet, aut subitam dejectionem, aut febriculam instare. Ubi pedes turgent, longæ dejectiones sunt, ubi dolor in imo ventre et coxis est, aqua inter cutem instat. Sed hoc morbi genus ab ilibus oriri solet. Idem propositum periculum est iis, quibus voluntas desidendi est, venter nihil reddit, nisi et ægre et durum, tumor in pedibus est, idemque modo dextra, modo sinistra parte ventris, invicem oritur atque finitur. Sed a jocinore id malum proficisci videtur. Ejusdem morbi nota est, ubi circa umbilicum intestina torquentur, *στροφους* Græci nominant, coxæque dolores manent; eaque neque tempore, neque remediis solvuntur. Dolor autem articularum, prout in pedibus, manibusve, aut alia qualibet parte sic

## ORDO.

ribus capitis, vel edunt terram. Qui habent faciem pallidam diu et tumidam, aut laborant capite, aut visceribus, aut alvo. Si venter reddit puero nihil in continua febre, que ei color mutatur, neque somnus accedit, que is plorat assidue, distentio nervorum est metuenda. Autem frequens destillatio in tenui que longo corpore testatur tabem esse timendam.

Ubi alvus non descendit pluribus diebus, docet aut subitam dejectionem, aut febriculam instare. Ubi pedes turgent, dejectiones sunt longæ; ubi dolor est in imo ventre et coxis, aqua inter cutem instat. Sed hoc genus morbi solet oriri ab ilibus. Idem periculum propositum iis quibus est voluntas desidendi, venter reddit nihil, nisi et ægre et durum, tumor est in pedibus, que idem modo dextra, modo sinistra parte ventris, invicem oritur atque finitur. Sed videtur id malum proficisci a jocinore. Est nota ejusdem morbi, ubi intestina circa umbilicum torquentur, (Græci nominant *στροφους*, strophus) que dolores coxæ manent; que ea neque solvuntur tempore, neque remediis. Autem dolor articularum, prout sic est in pedibus ve manibus, aut qua-

## TRANSLATION.

some affection of the head, viscera, or intestines. If the alvine secretions be suppressed in a child under continued fever, and his complexion be changed, and he sleep not, but moan constantly, convulsion is to be apprehended. A frequent catarrheuma in a delicate tall person, evinces a consumption to be dreaded.

When the bowels have not been evacuated for several days, it portends a sudden diarrhœa, or a slight fever to be at hand. When the feet become œdematous, and there are long continued purgings; when there are pains in the lower part of the abdomen and hips, dropsy (11) is not far distant. But this kind of disease is accustomed to arise from the ilia. The same danger is threatened to those who have a continual tenesmus, voiding little or nothing, with much difficulty, and hard. When there is a swelling in the feet, and the same takes place, sometimes in the right, sometimes in the left side of the abdomen alternately, the disease seems to proceed from the liver. It is a symptom of the same disease, when there are tormina, or twisting of the intestines about the umbilicus, (which the Greeks call strophos) and permanent pains of the hip, which are neither relieved by time nor remedies.

But pains of the joints, as for instance, in the feet or hands, or in any other part,

est, ut eo loco nervi contrahantur; aut si id membrum, ex levi causa fatigatum, æque frigido, calidoque offenditur, *ποδάγραν χειράγραν*ve, vel ejus articuli, in quo id sentitur, morbum futurum esse denuntiat.

Quibus in pueritia sanguis ex naribus fluxit, dein fluere desiit, hi vel capitis doloribus conflictentur necesse est, vel in articulis aliquas exulcerationes graves habeant, vel aliquo morbo etiam debilitentur. Quibus fœminis menstrua non proveniunt, necesse est capitis acerbissimi dolores sint, vel quælibet alia pars morbo infestetur. Eademque iis pericula sunt, quibus articulorum vitia, dolores tumoresque, sine podagra similibusque morbis, oriuntur, et desinunt: utique, si sæpe tempora iisdem dolent, noctuque corpora insudant. Si frons prurit, lippitudinis metus est. Si mulier a partu vehementes dolores habet, neque alia præterea signa mala sunt, circa vicesimum diem aut sanguis per nares erumpet, aut in inferioribus partibus aliquid abscedet. Quicumque etiam dolorem ingentem circa tempora et frontem habebit, is alterutra ratione eum finiet; magisque, si juvenis erit, per sanguinis profusionem, si senior, per

## ORDO.

libet alia parte, ut nervi eo loco contrahantur; aut si id membrum, fatigatum ex levi causa, offenditur æque frigido que calido, denuntiat morbum futurum esse *ποδάγραν* (podagran) *ve χειράγραν* (cheiragran), vel ejus articuli, in quo id sentitur.

Quibus sanguis fluxit ex naribus in pueritia, dein desiit fluere, est necesse hi conflictentur vel doloribus capitis, vel habeant aliquas graves exulcerationes in articulis, vel etiam debilitentur aliquo morbo. Quibus fœminis menstrua non proveniunt, est necesse sint acerbissimi dolores capitis, vel quælibet alia pars infestetur morbo. Que eadem pericula sunt iis quibus vitia, dolores que tumores articulorum oriuntur et desinunt sine podagra que similibus morbis; utique si tempora sæpe dolent iisdem, que corpora insudant noctu. Si frons prurit, metus est lippitudinis. Si mulier habet vehementes dolores a partu, neque sunt alia signa præterea mala signa, aut sanguis erumpet per nares circa vicesimum diem, aut aliquid abscedet in inferioribus partibus. Etiam quicumque habebit ingentem dolorem circa tempora et frontem, is finiet eum alterutra ratione; que magis, per profusionem sanguinis, si est juvenis; si senior, per suppura-

## TRANSLATION.

so that the nerves there be contracted: or that limb being fatigued by light exercise, suffer equally from heat and cold, we may expect that to be gout, either of the hand, foot, or of that joint in which it is felt.

Those who have epistaxis in their childhood, and then the hemorrhage cease afterwards, must necessarily be afflicted with head-ache, or have severe ulcerations in the joints, or the constitution may be debilitated by some chronic disease. Women who have obstructed catamenia, are necessarily subject to excruciating pains of the head, or some other part may be affected by disease. Similar perils are impending over those whose disorders, pains, and swelling of the joints come and go, without gout, and such like affections; especially if there be a frequent throbbing in the temples, and they have nocturnal perspirations. If the forehead itch, lippitudo is to be feared. If a woman have violent pains after parturition, and there be no other unfavourable symptoms, there will be an eruption of blood from the nostrils about the twentieth day, or an abscess will form in the inferior parts. Also, whoever shall have intense pain about the temples and forehead, will be relieved by one or other of these two ways; viz. if the person be young, more probably, by hæmorrhage; if older, by suppuration. But a

suppurationem. Febris autem, quæ subito sine ratione, sine bonis signis finita est, fere revertitur.

Cui fauces sanguine et interdiu et noctu replentur, sic ut neque capitis dolores, neque præcordiorum, neque tussis, neque vomitus, neque febricula præcesserit, hujus aut in naribus, aut in faucibus ulcus reperietur. Si mulieri inguen et febricula orta est, neque causa apparet, ulcus in vulva est. Urina autem crassa, ex qua quod desidit, album est, significat circa articulos, aut circa viscera dolorem, metumque morbi esse. Eadem viridis, aut viscerum dolorem, tumoremque cum aliquo periculo subesse, aut certe corpus integrum non esse, testatur. At si sanguis aut pus in urina est, vel vesica vel renes exulcerati sunt. Si hæc crassa, carunculas quasdam exiguas quasi capillos habet, aut si bullat, et male olet, et interdum quasi arenam, interdum quasi sanguinem trahit, dolent autem coxæ, quæque inter has superque pubem sunt, et accedunt frequentes ructus, interdum vomitus biliosus, extremæque partes frigescent, urinæ crebra cupiditas, sed magna difficultas est, et quod inde excretum est, aquæ simile, vel rufum, vel pallidum est, paulum

## ORDO.

tionem. Antem febris, quæ est finita subito sine ratione, sine bona signis, fere revertitur.

Cui fauces replentur sanguine et interdiu et noctu, sic ut neque dolores capitis, neque præcordiorum, neque tussis, neque vomitus, neque febricula præcesserit, ulcus reperietur aut in naribus, aut in hujus faucibus. Si inguen mulieri orta est et febricula, neque causa apparet, ulcus est in vulva. Autem crassa urina, ex aqua quod desidit, est album, significat dolorem circa articulos, aut circa viscera, que esse metum morbi. Eadem viridis, testatur aut dolorem viscerum que tumorem cum aliquo periculo subesse, aut certe corpus non esse integrum. At si sanguis aut pus est in urina, vel vesica vel renes sunt exulcerati. Si hæc crassa habet quasdam exiguas carunculas quasi capillos, aut si bullat, et olet male, et interdum trahit quasi arenam, interdum quasi sanguinem, autem coxæ dolent, que quæ sunt inter has que super pubem, et frequentes ructus accedunt, interdum biliosus vomitus, que extremæ partes frigescent, cupiditas urinæ crebra, sed est magna difficultas, et quod est excretum inde est simile aquæ, vel rufum vel pallidum, tamen

## TRANSLATION.

fever which has terminated suddenly, without some assignable cause, unattended by favourable symptoms, generally returns.

A person whose fauces are filled with blood, both during the day and night, shall find an ulcer either there, or in his nostrils, if neither pains of the head, nor of the præcordia, nor cough, nor vomiting, nor slight fever have preceded. If an inguinal tumour be followed by slight fever in a female, without apparent cause, an ulcer will be found in the womb. But thick urine, in which there is a white precipitate, indicates pain about the joints or about the viscera, and that is reason to fear impending disease. The same being green, implies, either pain of the viscera, or a tumefaction attended with some danger to be latent, or at least, the body not to be in a good condition. But if blood or matter be in the urine, either the bladder or the kidneys are ulcerated. If it be thick, and contain small caruncles, as if hairs, or if it give out bubbles and smell strong, and sometimes carry with it the appearance of sand, sometimes bloody; and if the hips be pained, and the parts which are between these and above the pubes; and if frequent eructations, sometimes a bilious retching; and the extremities become cold, and there is a frequent desire to micturate, but attended with great difficulty, and what is excreted thence is like water, or red, or pale, yet affords little relief from it, and if the fæces



tamen in eo levamenti est, alvus vero cum multo spiritu redditur, utique in renibus vitium est. At si paulatim destillat, vel si sanguis per hanc editur, et in eo quædam cruenta concreta sunt, idque ipsum cum difficultate redditur, et circa pubem interiores partes dolent, in eadem vesica vitium est.

Calculosi vero his indiciis cognoscuntur: difficulter urina redditur, paulatimque, interdum etiam sine voluntate, destillat; eadem arenosa est; nonnunquam aut sanguis, aut cruentum, aut purulentum aliquid cum ea excernitur; eamque quidam promptius recti, quidam resupinati, maximeque ii, qui grandes calculos habent, quidam etiam inclinati reddunt, colemque extendendo, dolorem levant. Gravitatis quoque cujusdam in ea parte sensus est: atque ea cursu, omnique motu augetur. Quidam etiam, cum torquentur, pedes inter se, subinde mutatis vicibus, implicant. Fœminæ vero oras naturalium suorum manibus admotis scabere crebro coguntur: nonnumquam, si digitum admoverunt, ubi vesicæ cervicem is urget, calculum sentiunt.

At qui spumantem sanguinem exscreant, his in pulmone vitium est.

## ORDO.

est paulum levamenti in eo, vero alvus redditur cum multo spiritu, utique vitium est in renibus. At si destillat paulatim, vel si sanguis editur per hanc, que id ipsum redditur cum difficultate, et interiores partes circa pubem dolent, vitium est in eadem vesica.

Vero calculosi cognoscuntur his indiciis: urina redditur difficulter, que destillat paulatim, interdum sine etiam voluntate; eadem est arenosa; aut nonnunquam sanguis, aut aliquid cruentum, purulentum excernitur cum ea; que quidam reddunt eam promptius recti, quidam resupinati, que maxime ii, qui habent grandes calculos, quidam etiam inclinati, que levant dolorem, extendendo colem. Est quoque sensus cujusdam gravitatis in ea parte: atque ea augetur cursu, que omni motu. Etiam quidam, cum torquentur, implicant pedes inter se, vicibus mutatis subinde. Vero fœminæ coguntur scabere oras suorum naturalium crebro, admotis manibus: nonnunquam si admoverunt digitum, ubi is urget cervicem vesicæ, sentiunt calculum.

At his qui exscreant spumantem sanguinem, vitium est in pul-

## TRANSLATION.

be expelled with much wind, then indeed the disease must be in the kidneys. But if the urine be voided in drops, or if blood be discharged together with some grumous clotted matter in it, and that with difficulty, and the interior parts about the pubes are in pain, the disease is in the bladder.

But those persons afflicted with *calculi*, are known by the following symptoms:—the urine escapes drop by drop and with difficulty, sometimes even involuntarily; also sandy: or sometimes blood, or bloody purulent matter is excreted with it; some render it more readily being erect, some lying supine, especially those who have large calculi; some also in an inclined posture, and they relieve the pain by extending the penis. There is also a sensation of weight in that part; which is increased by running, and every kind of motion. Some also, when they are writhing under the paroxysm cross their legs over one another alternately, occasionally changing the position. But females are often compelled to rub the external orifice of their labia pudendi by the application of their hands: sometimes they feel the calculus, if they apply the finger when it presses against the cervix of the bladder.

But they who expectorate frothy blood, have disease in the lungs. A pregnant

Mulieri gravidæ sine modo fusa alvus elidere partum potest. Eidem si lac ex mammis profluit, imbecillum est quod intus gerit: duræ mammæ, sanum illud esse, testantur. Frequens singultus, et præter consuetudinem continuus, jecur inflammatum esse, significat. Si tumores super ulcera subito esse desierunt, idque a tergo incidit, vel distentio nervorum, vel rigor timeri potest: at si a priore parte id evenit, vel lateris acutus dolor, vel insania exspectanda est; interdum etiam ejusmodi casum, quæ tutissima inter hæc est, profusio alvi sequitur.

Si ora venarum, sanguinem solita fundere, subito suppressa sunt, aut aqua inter cutem, aut tabes sequitur. Eadem tabes subit, si in lateris dolore orta suppuratio intra quadraginta dies purgari non potuit. At si longa tristitia cum longo timore et vigilia est, atræ bilis morbus subest. Quibus sæpe ex naribus fluit sanguis, his aut lienis tumet, aut capitis dolores sunt; quos sequitur, ut quædam ante oculos tamquam imagines obversentur. At quibus magni lienes sunt, his gingivæ malæ sunt, et os olet, aut sanguis aliqua parte prorumpit: quorum si nihil evenit, necesse

## ORDO.

mone. Fusa alvus sine modo potest elidere partum gravidæ mulieri. Si lac profluit eidem ex mammis, quod gerit intus est imbecillum: duræ mammæ testantur, illud esse sanum. Frequens singultus, et continuus præter consuetudinem, significat jecur esse inflammatum. Si tumores super ulcera desierunt esse subito, quæ id incidit a tergo vel distentio vel rigor nervorum potest timeri: at si id evenit a priore parte, vel acutus dolor lateris, vel insania, est exspectanda; interdum etiam profusio alvi sequitur casum ejusmodi, quæ est tutissima inter hæc.

Si ora venarum, solita fundere sanguinem, sunt subito suppressa, aut aqua inter cutem, aut tabes, sequitur. Tabes subit eadem, si in dolore lateris, suppuratio orta non potuit purgari intra quadraginta dies. At si est longa tristitia cum longo timore et vigilia, morbus atræ bilis subest. Quibus sanguis sæpe fluit ex naribus, his aut lienis tumet, aut sunt dolores capitis: quos sequitur, ut tanquam quædam imagines obversentur ante oculos. At quibus lienes sunt magni, his gingivæ sunt malæ, et os olet, aut sanguis prorumpit ex aliqua parte: si nihil quorum evenit, necesse est, mala ulcera

## TRANSLATION.

woman may have a miscarriage produced by severe purging. If the milk flow from her breasts, the fœtus is weak: hard breasts show the child to be healthy. A frequent hiccough of longer duration than usual denotes inflammation of the liver. If the tumours around ulcers have suddenly disappeared, and those have happened in the posterior part of the body, either convulsions, or tetanus may be dreaded: but if on the fore part, either pleurisy or insanity is to be expected; sometimes a diarrhœa comes on in the sequel of such an event, which is the safest of all.

If the accustomed discharge of blood from the orifices of the hæmorrhoidal veins be suddenly suppressed, either dropsy, or consumption follows. A consumption ensues also, if the suppurative matter generated in a pleurisy cannot be purged off within forty days. But if there have existed a long continued sadness, with timidity and vigilance, an atrabiliary disease is at hand. Those who are subject to a frequent epistaxis, have, either a tumefied spleen, or pains in the head: which are followed by visual illusions floating before the eyes. But those who have an enlargement of the spleen, have diseased gums, foul breath, or an hæmorrhage in

est in cruribus mala ulcera, et ex his nigræ cicatrices fiant.

Quibus causa doloris, neque sensus ejus est, his mens labat. Si in ventrem sanguis confluit, ibi in pus vertitur. Si a coxis, et ab inferioribus partibus dolor in pectus transit, neque ullum signum malum accessit, suppurationis eo loco periculum est. Quibus sine febre aliqua parte dolor, aut prurigo, cum rubore et calore est, ibi aliquid suppurat. Urina quoque, quæ in homine sano parum liquida est, circa aures futuram aliquam suppurationem esse denunciat.

Hæc vero, cum sine febre quoque vel latentium, vel futurarum rerum notas habeant, multo certiora sunt, ubi febris accessit; atque etiam aliorum morborum signa nascuntur. Ergo protinus insania timenda est, ubi expeditior alicujus, quam sani fuit, sermo est, subitaque loquacitas orta est, et hæc ipsa solito audacior: aut ubi raro quis et vehementer spirat, venasque concitatas habet, præcordiis duris et tumentibus.

Oculorum quoque frequens motus; et in capitis dolore offusæ oculis tenebræ; vel, nullo dolore substante, somnus ereptus, continuataque nocte et die vigilia; vel prostratum contra consuetudi-

#### ORDO.

fiant in cruribus, et ex his nigræ cicatrices.

Quibus est causa doloris, neque sensus ejus, mens labat. Si sanguis confluit in ventrem, ibi vertitur in pus. Si dolor transit a coxis, et ab inferioribus partibus in pectus, neque ullum malum signum accessit, est periculum eo loco suppurationis. Quibus est dolor aliqua parte sine febre, aut prurigo, cum dolore, et calore, ibi aliquid suppurat. Urina quoque, quæ est parum liquida in sano homine, denunciat aliquam suppurationem esse futuram circa aures.

Vero cum quoque hæc habeant notas sine febre vel latentium, vel rerum futurarum, sunt multo certiora, ubi febris accessit; atque tum etiam signa aliorum morborum nascantur. Ergo protinus insania timenda est, ubi sermo alicujus est expeditior quam fuit sani, que subita loquacitas est orta, et hæc ipsa audacior solito: aut ubi quis spirat raro et vehementer, que habet venas concitatas, præcordiis duris et tumentibus.

Quoque frequens motus oculorum, et tenebræ offusæ oculis in dolore capitis; vel somnus ereptus, nullo dolore substante, que vigilia continuata nocte et die; vel corpus prostratum in ventrem con-

#### TRANSLATION.

some part: if none of these appear, of a necessity, bad ulcers will arise in the legs, and dark cicatrices form after them.

In those who have a cause for pain, without a sense of it, the mind is disordered. If blood have flowed into the abdomen, there it is converted into pus. If a pain make a transit from the hips and the inferior parts to the chest, without the appearance of any bad symptom, there is a danger of a suppuration in that place. Those who have pain in any part without fever, or itching, with redness and heat, will have a suppuration there. Also the slightly turbid urine in a healthy man, is the herald of some suppurative process about to take place near the ears.

But since these diagnostic symptoms, even without a fever, maintain the characteristic marks of latent and future disorders, they are much more certain, when accompanied by fever; and also the symptoms of other diseases are developed.

Therefore when a person displays more alacrity than is natural to him, when he becomes more loquacious, and expresses himself with a daring rapidity of language, or when he breathes slowly but vehemently with much accelerated arterial action,



nem corpus in ventrem, sic ut ipsius alvi dolor id non coegerit; item, robusto adhuc corpore, insolitus dentium stridor, insanix signa sunt. Si quid etiam abscessit, et antequam suppuraret, manente adhuc febre, subsedit, periculum affert primum furoris, deinde interitus.

Auris quoque dolor acutus, cum febre continua vehementique, sæpe mentem turbat; et ex eo casu juniores interdum intra septimum diem moriuntur: seniores tardius; quoniam neque æque magnas febres experiuntur, neque æque insaniunt: ita sustinent, dum is affectus in pus vertatur. Suffusæ quoque sanguine mulieris mammæ, furorem venturum esse, testantur.

Quibus autem longæ febres sunt, his aut abscessus aliqui, aut articulorum dolores erunt. Quorum faucibus in febre illiditur spiritus, instat his nervorum distentio. Si angina subito finita est, in pulmonem id malum transit; idque sæpe intra septimum diem occidit: quod nisi incidat, sequitur ut aliqua parte suppuret. Deinde post alvi longam resolutionem, tormina;

## ORDO.

tra consuetudinem sic ut dolor alvi ipsius non coegerit id; item, corpore adhuc robusto, insolitus stridor dentium, sunt signa insanix. Etiam si quid abscessit, et antequam suppuraret, subsedit, febre adhuc manente, primum affert periculum furoris, deinde interitus.

Quoque acutus dolor auris, cum continua que vehementi febre sæpe turbat mentem; et interdum juniores moriuntur ex eo casu intra septimum diem; seniores tardius; quoniam experiuntur neque æque magnas febres, neque æque insaniunt: ita sustinent dum is affectus vertatur in pus. Quoque mammæ mulieris suffusæ sanguine, testantur furorem esse venturum.

Autem quibus sunt longæ febres, erunt his aut aliqui abscessus, aut dolores articulorum. Distentio nervorum instat his, quorum faucibus spiritus illiditur in febre. Si angina finita est subito, id malum transit in pulmonem; que id sæpe occidit intra septimum diem: nisi quod incidat, sequitur ut suppuret aliqua parte. Deinde post longam resolutionem alvi tormina; post

## TRANSLATION.

the præcordia being hard and swollen, *madness* is immediately to be dreaded. A frequent movement of the eyes also, and a darkness suffused over them with concomitant pain in the head; or an uninterrupted vigilance both night and day without any pain; or lying prostrate on the abdomen contrary to custom, provided a pain in the bowel itself have not compelled the patient to that position; also an unusual grinding of the teeth, the body being as yet robust and healthy, are all premonitory symptoms of mania.

Also, if an abscess have formed in any part and subside before suppuration take place, the fever as yet remaining, it first indicates an apprehension of furor, and then of death.

Also an acute pain of the ear, with continued and violent fever, often perturbs the mind, and sometimes carries off the younger, within the seventh day; older persons more slowly, because their fevers are neither equally violent, nor do they rave so much: thus they sustain the disease until resolution be effected. A congestion of blood in the breasts of a female also denotes approaching madness.

But those who have long fevers, will be liable to have abscesses or pains of the articulations. Convulsions are not far distant from those, whose expirations are forcibly propelled against the fauces in fever. If angina suddenly disappear, a metastasis of that malady to the lungs is the consequence; and that often destroys the patient within the seventh day: and unless this take place, it follows, that it must suppurate in some part. Then, after long continued diarrhœa, tormina ensue; and

post hæc, intestinorum lævitas oritur ; post nimias destillationes, tabes ; post lateris dolorem, vitia pulmonum ; post hæc, insania ; post magnos fervores corporis, nervorum rigor, aut distentio ; ubi caput vulneratum est, delirium ; ubi vigilia torsit, nervorum distentio ; ubi vehementer venæ super ulcera moventur, sanguinis profluvium.

Suppuratio vero pluribus morbis excitatur. Nam si longæ febres sine dolore, sine manifesta causa remanent, in aliquam partem id malum incumbit ; in junioribus tamen : nam in senioribus ex ejusmodi morbo quartana fere nascitur. Eadem suppuratio fit, si præcordia dura, dolentia ante vicesimum diem hominem non sustulerunt, neque sanguis ex naribus fluxit, maximeque in adolescentibus ; utique, si inter principia aut oculorum caligo, aut capitis dolores fuerunt : sed tum in inferioribus partibus aliquid abscedit. Aut si præcordia tumorem mollem habent, neque habere intra sexaginta dies desinunt, hæretque per omne id tempus febris : sed tum in superioribus partibus fit abscessus ; ac si inter ipsa viscera non fit, circa aures erumpit.

Cumque omnis longus tumor ad suppurationem fere spectet, magis eo tendit

#### ORDO.

hæc lævitas intestinorum oritur ; post nimias destillationes, tabes ; post dolorem lateris, vitia pulmonum ; post hæc insania ; post magnos fervores corporis, rigor nervorum, aut distentio ; ubi caput est vulneratum, delirium ; ubi vigilia torsit, distentio nervorum : ubi venæ super ulcera moventur vehementer profluvium sanguinis.

Vero suppuratio excitatur pluribus morbis. Nam si longæ febres sine dolore remanent, sine manifesta causa, id malum incumbit in aliquam partem, tamen in junioribus ; nam in senioribus quartana fere nascitur ex morbo ejusmodi. Suppuratio fit eadem, si præcordia dura, dolentia non sustulerunt hominem ante vicesimum diem, neque sanguis fluxit ex naribus, quem maxime in adolescentibus ; utique si inter principia aut caligo oculorum, aut dolores capitis fuerunt : sed tum aliquid abscedit in inferioribus partibus. Aut si præcordia habent mollem tumorem, neque desinunt habere intra sexaginta dies, que febris hæret per omne id tempus : sed tum abscessus fit in superioribus partibus ; ac si non fit inter viscera ipsa, erumpit circa aures.

Que cum omnis longus tumor fere spectet ad suppurationem, is tendit eo magis, qui est in

#### TRANSLATION.

after these, lenteria ; after violent catarrhs, consumption ; after pleurisy, pulmonary disease ; after which, madness : after excessive heats of the body, tetanus or convulsion : after a wound of the head, delirium ; after being tortured by vigilance, convulsion : when the blood-vessels over ulcers are violently excited, hæmorrhage will follow.

But suppuration is induced by various diseases ; for if chronic fevers, unattended with pain, remain without some manifest cause, the malady falls on some particular part ; especially in younger persons ; for in elderly people a disease of this kind generally assumes the form of quartan ague. Suppuration happens likewise, if the præcordia, being tense and painful, have neither carried off the patient before the twentieth day, nor epistaxis ensued (12) ; and particularly in young persons, if in the commencement of the disease they have had either dimness of the eyes, or pains of the head : but then, in this instance an abscess forms in the inferior extremities. But if there be a soft tumour in the præcordia, for sixty days, with concomitant fever during the whole of that time ; then an abscess will form in the superior parts : and if not in the viscera, it will break out about the ears.

Now as every indolent tumour generally tends to suppuration, so one arising in

is, qui in præcordiis, quam is, qui in ventre est; is, qui supra umbilicum, quam is, qui infra est. Si lassitudinis etiam sensus in febre est, vel in maxillis, vel in articulis aliquid abscedit. Interdum quoque urina tenuis et cruda sic diu fertur, ut alia salutaria signa sint; exque eo casu plerumque infra transversum septum (quod *διάφραγμα* Græci vocant) fit abscessus.

Dolor etiam pulmonis, si neque per sputa, neque per sanguinis detractio- nem, neque per victus rationem finitus est, vomicas aliquas interdum excitat, aut circa vicesimum diem, aut circa tricesimum, aut circa quadragesimum, nonnumquam etiam circa sexagesimum. Numerabimus autem ab eo die, quo primum febricitavit aliquis, aut inhorruit, aut gravitatem ejus partis sensit.

Sed hæ vomicæ modo a pulmone, modo a contraria parte nascuntur. Quod suppurat, ab ea parte, quam afficit, dolorem inflammationemque concitat; ipsum calidius est; et si in partem sanam aliquis decubuit, onerare eam ex pondere aliquo videtur. Omnis etiam suppuratio, quæ nondum oculis patet, sic deprehendi potest: si febris non dimittit, eaque interdum levior est,

## ORDO.

præcordiis, quam is, qui (est) in ventre; is, qui est supra umbilicum, quam is, qui (est) infra. Etiam si est sensus lassitudinis in febre, aliquid abscedit vel in maxillis, vel in articulis. Interdum urina quoque fertur tenuis, et diu cruda, sic ut sint alia salutaria signa; que ex eo casu plerumque abscessus fit infra transversum septum (quod Græci vocant *διάφραγμα* diaphragma).

Etiam dolor pulmonum, si finitus est neque per sputa, neque per detractio- nem sanguinis, neque per rationem victus, interdum excitat aliquas vomicas aut circa vicesimum diem, aut circa tricesimum, aut circa quadragesimum, etiam nonnumquam circa sexagesimum. Autem numerabimus ab eo die, quo aliquis febricitavit primum, aut inhorruit, aut sensit gravitatem ejus partis.

Sed hæ vomicæ nascuntur modo a pulmone, modo a contraria parte. Quod suppurat, concitat dolorem que inflammationem ab ea parte, quam afficit; ipsum est calidus; et si aliquis decubuit in sanam partem, videtur onerare eam ex aliquo pondere. Etiam omnis suppuratio, quæ nondum patet oculis potest deprehendi sic: si febris non dimittit, que ea est levior interdum,

## TRANSLATION.

the præcordia has a greater tendency to that issue, than that which is in the abdomen; one above the umbilicus, more than one below it. Also, if there be a sensation of lassitude in fever, an abscess may form either in the maxillaries, or joints. Sometimes the urine is discharged for a long time in a thin, crude state, yet the other symptoms may be salutary; and in such a case, an abscess is generally formed below the transverse septum, which the Greeks call diaphragm.

If peripneumonia be neither removed by expectoration, blood-letting, nor by strict regimen, it gives rise sometimes to imposthumes, either about the twentieth day, or thirtieth, or fortieth, and indeed sometimes about the sixtieth day. But we must reckon from that day, on which the patient became feverish, or shivered, or felt a sense of weight in the parts.

But these imposthumes are generated sometimes in the lung, sometimes in the parts opposite. Where the suppuration is going on, it excites pain and inflammation in the part which it affects; the heat is greater there; and if a person lie on the sound side, he will imagine that part oppressed with some weight. Also every suppuration, which is not evident, may be thus detected: if the fever do not remit, and it is



noctu increscit; multus sudor oritur; cupiditas tussendi est, et pene nihil in tussi exscreatur; oculi cavi sunt; malæ rubent; venæ sub lingua inallescunt; in manibus fiunt adunci ungues; digiti, maximeque summi, calent; in pedibus tumores sunt; spiritus difficiliter trahitur; cibi fastidium est; pustulæ toto corpore oriuntur.

Quod si protinus initio dolor et tussis fuit, et spiritus difficultas, vomica vel ante vel circa vicesimum diem erumpet: si serius ista cœperint, necesse est quidem increscant; sed quo minus cito affecerint, eo tardius solventur. Solent etiam in gravi morbo pedes cum digitis, unguibusque nigrescere; quod si non est mors consecuta, et reliquum corpus invaluit, pedes tamen decidunt.

## ORDO.

increscit noctu; multus sudor oritur; est cupiditas tussendi, et pene nihil exscreatur in tussi; oculi sunt cavi; malæ rubent; venæ sub lingua inallescunt; ungues in manibus fiunt adunci; digiti que maxime summi, calent; sunt tumores in pedibus; spiritus trahitur difficiliter; est fastidium cibi; pustulæ oriuntur toto corpore.

Quod si dolor et tussis fuit protinus initio, et difficultas spiritus, vomica erumpet vel ante, vel circa vicesimum diem: si ista cœperint serius, est necesse quidem increscant; sed quo minus cito affecerint, eo tardius solventur. Etiam pedes cum digitis que unguibus solent nigrescere in gravi morbo: quod si mors non consecuta est, et reliquum corpus invaluit, tamen pedes decidunt.

## TRANSLATION.

lighter by day, but increases at night; the perspiration is abundant; there is a provocative to cough, and scarcely any thing expectorated with it; the eyes are sunk, the cheeks flushed, the sublingual veins become pale; the finger nails grow curved; the fingers, especially their extremities, are hot; the feet are œdematous; respiration becomes difficult; there is a loathing of food; and pustules arise over the whole body.

But if there have been pain, cough, and dyspnœa from the commencement, the imposthume will burst either before or about the twentieth day: if these symptoms have begun later, they must of necessity increase; but by how much more slowly they develop themselves, they are proportionately tardy in their resolution. Indeed the feet, toes, and nails, are liable to become black (*mortify*) in a severe disease; and if death ensue not, and the rest of the body recover, yet the feet fall off.

## CAP. VIII.

QUE NOTÆ IN QUOQUE MORBI GENERE  
VEL SPEM VEL PERICULA OSTEN-  
DANT.

SEQUITUR, ut in quoque morbi genere proprias notas explicem, quæ vel spem, vel periculum ostendant. Ex vesica dolenti, si purulenta urina processit, inque ea læve et album subsedit, metum detrahit.

In pulmonis morbo, si sputo ipso levatur dolor, quamvis id purulentum est, tamen æger facile spirat, facile exscreat, morbum ipsum non difficulter fert, potest ei secunda valetudo contingere. Neque inter initia terrii convenit, si protinus sputum mistum est rufo quodam, et sanguine, dummodo statim edatur.

Laterum dolores, suppuratione facta, deinde intra quadragesimum diem purgata, finiuntur. Si in jocinore vomica est, et ex ea fertur pus purum et album, salus ei facilis: id enim malum in tunica est. Ex suppurationibus vero eæ tolerabiles sunt, quæ in exteriorem partem feruntur, et acuuntur: at ex iis quæ intus procedunt, eæ leviores, quæ

## ORDO.

## CAP. VIII.

QUÆ NOTÆ OSTENDANT VEL  
SPEM VEL PERICULA IN QUO-  
QUE GENERE MORBI.

SEQUITUR, ut explicem notas proprias, quæ ostendant vel spem, vel periculum in quoque genere morbi. Ex vesica dolenti, si urina purulenta processit, que læve et album subsedit in ea, detrahit metum.

In morbo pulmonis, si dolor ipso levatur sputo, quamvis id est purulentum, tamen æger spirat facile, exscreat facile, non fert morbum ipsum difficulter, secunda valetudo potest contingere ei. Neque convenit terrii inter initia, si sputum est mixtum quodam rufo et sanguine protinus, dummodo edatur statim.

Dolores laterum finiuntur, suppuratione facta, deinde purgata intra quadragesimum diem. Si vomica est in jocinore, et purum et album pus fertur ex ea, salus ei facilis: enim id malum est in tunica. Vero ex suppurationibus eæ sunt tolerabiles, quæ feruntur in exteriorem, et acuuntur: at ex iis, quæ procedunt intus, eæ leviores, quæ non affi-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

THE FAVOURABLE AND UNFAVOURABLE SYMPTOMS IN CERTAIN DISEASES.

THE next in order that I describe are the diagnostic symptoms which may denote either hope or fear in each genus of disease. If purulent urine be discharged after pain in the bladder, depositing a smooth white precipitate in it, it allays our fear.

If the pain in pulmonary disease be mitigated by expectoration, although that be purulent, yet if the patient breathe easily, and expectorate freely, and sustain the disease itself without difficulty, he may recover his health. Nor need we be alarmed, even in the beginning, if the sputum be mixed, as if it were muco-purulent blood, provided that it cease immediately.

Pleurisies are terminated by suppuration having taken place, and being purged within forty days. If there be an imposthume in the liver, and pure white pus be discharged out of it, the recovery is easy; for that malady is in the membrane. But those suppurations are supportable which point externally: of those which proceed inwardly, they are more mild which do not affect the super-adjacent skin,

contra se cutem non afficiunt, eamque et sine dolore et ejusdem coloris, cujus reliquæ partes sunt, sinunt esse.

Pus quoque, quacumque parte erumpit, si est læve, album, et unius coloris, sine ullo metu est; et quo effuso, febris protinus conquievit, desieruntque urgere cibi fastidium et potionis desiderium. Si quando etiam suppuratio descendit in crura, sputumque ejusdem factum pro rufo purulentum est, periculi minus est.

At in tabe ejus, qui salvus futurus est, sputum esse debet album, æquale totum, ejusdemque coloris, sine pituita; eique etiam simile esse oportet, si quid in nares a capite destillat. Longe optimum est, febrem omnino non esse; secundum est, tantulam esse, ut neque cibum impediatur, neque crebram sitim faciat. Alvus in hac valetudine ea tuta est, quæ quotidie coacta, eaque convenientia iis, quæ assumuntur, reddit; corpus id, quod minime tenue, maximeque lati pectoris atque setosi est, cujusque cartilago exigua, et carnosae est.

Super tabem si mulieri suppressa quoque menstrua fuerint, et circa pectus atque scapulas dolor mansit, subitoque sanguis erupit, levare morbus solet: nam

#### ORDO.

ciunt cutem contra se, quæ sinunt eam esse sine dolore, et ejusdem coloris, cujus reliquæ partes sunt.

Si quoque pus, quacumque parte erumpit, est læve, album, et unius coloris, est sine ullo metu; et, quo effuso, febris conquievit protinus, quæ fastidium cibi et desiderium potionis desierunt urgere. Etiam si quando suppuratio descendit in crura, quæ ejusdem sputum est factum purulentum pro rufo, est minus periculi.

At in tabe ejus, qui est futurus salvus, sputum debet esse album, totum æquale, quæ ejusdem coloris, sine pituita: quæ etiam si quid destillat a capite in nares, oportet esse simile ei. Est longe optimum, febrem non esse omnino; est secundum, esse tantulam, ut neque impediatur cibum, neque faciat crebram sitim. In hac valetudine ea alvus est tuta, quæ quotidie coacta reddit (parum), quæ ea convenientia iis, quæ assumuntur; id corpus (est tutum) quod est minime tenue, quæ maxime lati atque setosi pectoris, quæ cartilago cujus est exigua et carnosae.

Quoque si menstrua fuerint suppressa mulieri super tabem, et dolor mansit circa pectus et scapulas, quæ sanguis subito erupit, morbus solet levare; nam et

#### TRANSLATION.

and permit it to be free from pain, and of the same colour as that of the surrounding parts.

If pus, from whatever part discharged, be smooth, white, and of a uniform colour, no danger is to be apprehended; and which matter being effused, the fever ceases immediately, then the aversion from food and desire of drink cease to oppress. Also, if at any time a suppuration fall into the legs, and the expectoration of that person have become purulent instead of reddish, there is less danger.

But in the consumption of that person, who is likely to recover, the expectoration ought to be white, of an equal consistence and colour, without phlegm: and if any thing be dropt, (secreted,) from the head into the nostrils, it ought to resemble it. It is by far the best, where there is no fever at all, next to this, that there be so little, as neither to prevent food being taken, nor excite a frequent thirst. In this complaint, that state of the bowels is most proper, which is relieved daily, and that too in quantity and consistence proportioned to the food taken; that person who is not over slender, and who has a very broad hairy chest, and the cartilage (*sternum*) of which is small and fleshy.

If amenorrhœa supervene consumption, and the pain remain about the chest and shoulders, and the catamenia suddenly return, the disease is generally re-



et tussis minuitur, et sitis atque febricula desinunt. Sed iisdem fere, nisi redit sanguis, vomica erumpit; quæ quo cruentior, eo melior est.

Aqua autem inter cutem minime terribilis est, quæ nullo antecedente morbo cœpit; deinde, quæ longo morbo supervenit: utique, si firma viscera sunt; si spiritus facilis; si nullus dolor; si sine calore corpus est, æqualiterque in extremis partibus macrum est; si venter mollis; si nulla tussis; si nulla sitis; si lingua, ne per somnum quidem, inarescit; si cibi cupiditas est; si venter medicamentis movetur; si per se excernit mollia et figurata; si extenuatur; si urina, et vini mutatione, et epotis aliquibus medicamentis mutatur; si corpus sine lassitudine est, et morbum facile sustinet: siquidem in quo omnia hæc sunt, is ex toto tutus est; in quo plura ex his sunt, is in bona spe est.

Articulorum vero vitia, ut podagræ chiragræque, si juvenes tentarunt, neque callum induxerunt, solvi possunt: maximeque torminibus leniuntur, et quocumque modo venter fluit.

Item morbus comitialis ante puber-

#### ORDO.

tussis minuitur, et sitis atque febricula desinunt. Sed fere vomica erumpit iisdem, nisi sanguis redit; quæ quo cruentior (est), eo est melior.

Autem aqua inter cutem est minime terribilis, quæ cœpit nullo morbo antecedente; deinde quæ supervenit longo morbo: utique si viscera sunt firma; si spiritus (est) facilis; si (est) nullus dolor; si corpus est sine calore, quæ est æqualiter macrum in extremis partibus; si venter (est) mollis; si (est) nulla tussis; si nulla sitis; si lingua inarescit ne quidem per somnum; si est cupiditas cibi; si venter movetur medicamentis; si excernit per se mollia et figurata; si extenuatur; si urina mutatur et mutatione vini, et aliquibus medicamentis epotis; si corpus est sine lassitudine, et sustinet morbum facile; siquidem omnia in quo hæc sunt, is est tutus ex toto; in quo plura ex his sunt, is est in bona spe.

Vero si vitia articulorum, ut podagræ quæ chiragræ, tentarunt juvenes, neque induxerunt callum, possunt solvi: quæ leviantur maxime torminibus, et quocumque modo venter fluit.

Item morbus comitialis (*epilepsia*) ortus ante pubertatem, non

#### TRANSLATION.

lieved: for both the cough is diminished, and the thirst and slight fever cease. But for the most part, the vomica breaks in those persons, unless the catamenia return, and the more sanguineous, by that it is so much the better.

Now, that dropsy is least alarming, which has come on antecedently to any other disease; the next in degree is that which supervenes a chronic disease; especially, if the viscera be healthy; if respiration be easy; if there be no pain; if the body be cool, and equally lean in its extremities; if the abdomen be soft; if there be no cough; no thirst: if the tongue do not become parched during sleep; if there be a desire for food; if the bowels be moved by medicines; if the secretions be spontaneous, soft, and of a natural consistence; if the abdomen be extenuated (13); if the urine alter with a change of wine and some medicinal potions; if the body be free from lassitude, and sustain the disease (14) easily: therefore a patient in whom all these symptoms meet, is in no danger whatever; where many of them appear, he has good reason to hope.

But if diseases of the joints, such as gout in the feet or hands, attack young persons, without having induced an induration of parts, they may be removed: and indeed they are relieved principally by purgatives and every mode of keeping the bowels relaxed.

Also epilepsy, arising before puberty, is terminated without difficulty: so is that

tatem ortus, non ægre finitur: et in quo ab una parte corporis venientis accessionis sensus incipit, optimum est a manibus pedibusve initium fieri; deinde, a lateribus; pessimum inter hæc, a capite. Atque in his quoque ea maxime prosunt, quæ per dejectiones excernuntur. Ipsa autem dejectio sine ulla noxa est, quæ sine febre est; si celeriter desinit; si contrectato ventre nullus motus ejus sentitur; si extremam alvum spiritus sequitur.

Ac ne tormina quidem periculosa sunt, si sanguis et strigmenta descendunt, dum febris ceteræque accessiones hujus morbi absint: adeo ut etiam gravida mulier, non solum reservari possit, sed etiam partum reservare. Prodestque in hoc morbo, si jam ætate aliquis processit.

Contra, intestinorum lævitas facilius a teneris ætatibus depellitur; utique, si ferri urina, et ali cibo corpus incipit. Eadem ætas prodest et in coxæ dolore, et humerorum, et in omni resolutione nervorum. Ex quibus coxa, si sine torpore est, si leviter frigit, quamvis magnos dolores habet, tamen et facile et mature sanatur: resolutumque membrum, si nihilo minus alitur, fieri sanum potest. Oris resolutio etiam alvo cita

## ORDO.

finitur ægre: et in quo sensus accessionis venientis incipit ab una parte corporis, initium est optimum fieri a manibus ve pedibus; deinde a lateribus: pessimum inter hæc a capite. Atque in his quoque ea prosunt maxime, quæ excernuntur per dejectiones.

Autem dejectio ipsa, quæ est sine febre, est sine ulla noxa; si desinit celeriter; si ventre contrectato nullus motus ejus sentitur; si spiritus sequitur extremam (partem) alvum.

Ac ne quidem tormina sunt periculosa, si sanguis et strigmenta descendunt, dum febris que cæteræ accessiones hujus morbi absint: adeo ut gravida mulier etiam, non solum possit reservari, sed etiam reservare partum. Que prodest in hoc morbo, si aliquis processit jam ætate.

Lævitas intestinorum (lienteria) contra, facilius depellitur a teneris ætatibus; utique si urina incipit ferri, et corpus ali cibo. Et prodest eadem ætas in dolore coxæ, et humerorum, et in omni resolutione nervorum: ex quibus si coxa est sine torpore, si frigit leviter; quamvis habet magnos dolores, tamen sanatur et facile et mature: que resolutum membrum, si nihilominus alitur, potest fieri sanum. Etiam resolutio

## TRANSLATION.

in which there is a sensation (or, *aura epileptica*,) indicative of its approach, from some part of the body, and it is most favourable when this sensation originates in the hands or feet; then the next favourable symptom is that from the sides, but the worst of all is from the head. Therefore, in these cases also, those medicines do most good which excite the alvine secretions.

But a *diarrhæa* itself is innocuous when there is no fever; if it cease expeditiously; if the abdomen upon being handled produce no sensation of this on the feelings of the patient; if the alvine evacuations terminate with flatus. Neither is a *dysentery* dangerous, although blood and slimy mucus pass by stool, provided that fever and its usual concomitants be absent: so that even a pregnant woman may not only be saved, but her offspring also. A more favourable prognosis may be given in this disease, if the patient be a little advanced in life.

On the other hand, *lienteria* is more easily checked in a tender age; especially if the urine begin to flow, and the body be nourished by food. The same age is favourable for the recovery of pains in the hip and shoulders, and in every paralytic affection. Of these the hip, for instance, if it be without torpor, and if its coldness be slight, although it may have great pain, yet it is to be restored both easily and speedily: and a paralysed limb, if it continue to be nourished, may be made sound.

finitur. Omnisque dejectio lippienti prodest.

At varix ortus, vel per ora venarum subita profusio sanguinis, vel tormina, insaniam tollunt. Humerorum dolores, qui ad scapulas vel manus tendunt, vomitu atræ bilis solvuntur: et quisquis dolor deorsum tendit, sanabilior est. Singultus sternutamento finitur. Longas dejectiones supprimit vomitus.

Mulier sanguinem vomens, profusis menstruis, liberatur. Quæ menstruis non purgatur, si sanguinem ex naribus fudet, omni periculo vacat. Quæ locis laborat, aut difficulter partum edit, sternutamento levatur. Æstiva quartana fere brevis est. Cui calor et tremor est, saluti delirium est. Lienosis bono tormina sunt. Denique ipsa febris, quod maxime mirum videri potest, sæpe præsidio est.

Nam et præcordiorum dolores, si sine inflammatione sunt, finit; et jocinoris dolori succurrit; et nervorum distentionem rigoremque, si postea cœpit, ex toto tollit; et ex difficultate urinæ morbum tenuioris intestini ortum, si urinam per calorem movet, levat.

At dolores capitis, quibus oculorum caligo, et rubor cum quadam frontis

#### ORDO.

oris finitur cita alvo. Que omnis dejectio prodest lippienti.

At varix ortus, vel subita profusio sanguinis per ora venarum, vel tormina, tollunt insaniam. Dolores humerorum qui tendunt ad scapulas vel manus, solvuntur vomitu atræ bilis: et quisquis dolor tendit deorsum, est sanabilior. Singultus finitur sternutamento. Vomitus supprimit longas dejectiones.

Mulier vomens sanguinem liberatur, menstruis profusis. Quæ non purgatur menstruis, si fudit sanguinem ex naribus, vacat omni periculo. (Illa) quæ laborat locis (uteri), aut edit partum difficulter, levatur sternutamento. Æstiva quartana est fere brevis. Cui est calor et tremor, delirium est saluti. Tormina sunt bono lienosis. Denique, febris ipsa, quod potest videri maxime mirum, sæpe est præsidio.

Nam finit et dolores præcordiorum, si sunt sine inflammatione; et succurrit dolori jocinoris; et tollit distentionem que rigorem nervorum ex toto, si cœpit postea; et levat morbum tenuioris intestini ortum ex difficultate urinæ, si movet urinam per calorem.

At dolores capitis, quibus caligo oculorum, et rubor cum quadam prurigne frontis acce-

#### TRANSLATION.

*Paralysis* of the mouth also, is cured by a loose state of the bowels. All relaxations of the bowels are advantageous to those having ophthalmia.

But a varix arising, or a sudden hæmorrhage from the mouths of veins, or a dysentery, removes madness. Pains of the shoulders which tend to the scapulæ, or the hands, are dissipated by vomiting of black bile: and whatever pain tends downwards is more curable. Hiccough is removed by sneezing. Vomiting suppresses chronic diarrhœa.

A vomiting of blood in a female is terminated by a return of the catamenia. A chlorotic female is freed from all danger by epistaxis. One who is hysteric (15), or brings forth her offspring with difficulty, is relieved by sneezing. A summer quartan is usually of short duration: to one who has heat and trembling, a delirium is salutary. Dysenteries are advantageous to the splenetic. Lastly, even fever itself, which may appear very wonderful, is often a remedial agent.

For it carries off pains of the præcordia, if these be without inflammation; and relieves pains of the liver; entirely removes convulsions and tetanus, if it supervene upon these: it alleviates that disease of the smaller intestine arising from stranguria, if it promote urine by heat. But pains of the head, accompanied by dimness of the



prurigine accedunt, sanguinis profusione, vel fortuita, vel etiam petita, summoventur. Si capitis, ac frontis dolores ex vento, vel frigore, aut æstu sunt, gravedine et sternutamentis finiuntur. Febrem autem ardentem, quam Græci *καυσώδη* vocant, subitus horror exsolvit. Si in febre aures obtusæ sunt, si sanguis e naribus fluxit, aut venter resolutus est, illud malum desinit ex toto.

Nihil plus adversus surditatem, quam biliosa alvus potest. Quibus in fistula urinæ minuti abscessus, quos *φύματα* Græci vocant, esse cœperunt, iis, ubi pus ea parte profluxit, sanitas redditur. EX QUIBUS CUM PLERAQUE PER SE PROVENIANT, SCIRE LICET, INTER EA QUOQUE, QUÆ ARS ADHIBET, NATURAM PLURIMUM POSSE.

Contra, si caput febre continenti dolet, neque quidquam reddit, malum atque mortiferum est; maximeque id periculum est pueris, a septimo anno ad quartumdecimum. In pulmonis morbo, si sputum primis diebus non fuit, deinde a septimo die cœpit, et ultra septimum mansit, periculosum est; quantoque magis mistos, neque inter se diductos colores habet, tanto deterius.

## ORDO.

dunt, submoventur profusione sanguinis, vel fortuita, vel etiam petita. Si sunt dolores capitis ac frontis ex vento, vel frigore, aut æstu, finiuntur gravedine et sternutamentis. Autem subitus horror exsolvit ardentem febrem, quam Græci vocant *καυσώδη* (kausode). Si aures sunt obtusæ in febre, si sanguis fluxit e naribus, aut venter est resolutus, illud malum desinit ex toto.

Nihil potest plus adversus surditatem, quam biliosa alvus. Quibus minuti abscessus cœperunt esse in fistula urinæ (urethra) quos Græci vocant *φύματα* (phymata) sanitas redditur iis, ubi pus profluxit (ex) ea parte. EX QUIBUS CUM PLERAQUE PROVENIANT PER SE, LICET SCIRE, INTER EA (REMEDIA) QUÆ ARS ADHIBET, NATURAM QUOQUE POSSE PLURIMUM.

Contra, si caput dolet continenti febre, neque reddit quidquam, est malum atque mortiferum; que id periculum est maxime pueris a septimo anno ad quartumdecimum. In morbo pulmonis, si sputum non fuit primis diebus, deinde cœpit a septimo die, et mansit ultra septimum, est periculosum: que quanto magis habet colores mixtos, neque diductos inter se tanto deterius.

## TRANSLATION.

eyes and redness, with a certain itching of the forehead, are removed by a discharge of blood, either fortuitous or extracted.

If pains of the head and forehead arise from wind, or cold, or heat, they are carried off by a catarrheuma and sneezing. But a sudden shivering terminates that ardent fever which the Greeks call *kausode* (*καυσώδη*). If the auditory organs be obtuse in fever, an epistaxis or diarrhœa puts an end to the malady entirely.

Nothing can be more advantageous against deafness than bilious stools. Those who have minute abscesses forming in the urethra, which the Greeks call *phymata*, (*φύματα*), are cured when a puriform discharge takes place from that part (16). BY WHICH CHANGES, SINCE MANY OF THEM ARISE SPONTANEOUSLY, WE MAY FAIRLY CONCLUDE THAT NATURE CAN ALSO GIVE GREAT EFFECT TO THOSE REMEDIES ADMINISTERED BY ART.

On the contrary, if the head be painful in continued fever without any remission (17), it is a bad and mortal symptom: and children from their seventh to their fourteenth year are particularly liable to this danger. In *pneumonia*, if there have been no expectoration on the first days, but this arises on the seventh day, and continues beyond that time\*, it is dangerous: and the more intimately mixed the excretions seem to be, assuming a uniform colour and consistence, so much the worse.

\* i. e. 14th day.

Et tamen nihil pejus est, quam sincerum id edi, sive rufum est, sive cruentum, sive album, sive glutinosum, sive pallidum, sive spumans: nigrum tamen pessimum est. In eodem morbo periculosa sunt tussis, destillatio; etiam, quod alias salutare habetur, sternutamentum: periculosissimumque est, si hæc secuta subita dejectio est. Fere vero quæ in pulmonis, eadem in lateris doloribus, et mitiora signa, et asperiora esse consuerunt.

Ex jocinore si pus cruentum exit, mortiferum est. At ex suppurationibus eæ pessimæ sunt, quæ intus tendunt, sic ut exteriorem quoque cutem decolorent: ex iis deinde, quæ in exteriorem partem prorumpunt, quæ maximæ, quæque planissimæ sunt. Quod si, ne rupta quidem vomica, vel pure extrinsecus emissio, febris quievit, aut quamvis quieverit, tamen repetit; item si sitis est, si cibi fastidium, si venter liquidus, si pus est lividum et pallidum, si nihil æger exscreat nisi pituitam spumantem, periculum certum est. Atque ex iis quidem suppurationibus, quas pulmonum morbi concitarunt, fere senes moriuntur; ex ceteris juniores.

At in tabe sputum mistum purulen-

#### ORDO.

Et tamen nihil est pejus quam id edi sincerum; sive est rufum, sive cruentum, sive album, sive glutinosum; sive pallidum, sive spumans; tamen nigrum est pessimum. In eodem morbo, tussis et destillatio sunt periculosa; etiam sternutamentum, quod alias habetur salutare; que est periculosissimum, si dejectio subito est secuta hæc. Vero fere signa quæ consuerunt esse et mitiora, et asperiora in doloribus pulmonis (sunt) eadem in lateris.

Si cruentum pus exit ex jocinore, est mortiferum. At ex suppurationibus pessimæ sunt eæ, quæ tendunt intus, sic ut decolorent cutem exteriorem quoque: deinde ex iis quæ prorumpunt in exteriorem partem, sunt quæ maxime, quæ quæ (sunt) planissimæ. Quod si febris quievit, ne quidem vomica rupta, vel pure emissio extrinsecus, aut quamvis quieverit, tamen repetit; item si est sitis, si fastidium cibi, si venter (sedes sunt) liquidus, si pus est lividum et pallidum, si æger exscreat nihil nisi spumantem pituitam, est certum periculum. Atque ex his suppurationibus quidem, quas morbi pulmonum concitarunt, senes fere moriuntur: juniores ex cæteris.

At in tabe, mixtum purulen-

#### TRANSLATION.

And yet nothing can be worse than for it to be expectorated in one homogeneous mass; whether it be reddish, or bloody, or white, or glutinous, or pale, or frothy; yet black is the worst. When cough and catarrh meet in the same disease, they are dangerous; also sneezing, which in other cases is accounted salutary; and it is most dangerous if sudden purging have followed. But, generally, the symptoms which are accustomed to be held favourable or unfavourable in *Pneumonia* are applicable to *Pleurisies* also.

If bloody pus be discharged from the liver, it is mortal. But of these suppurations, the worst are those which tend inwards, and discolour the opposite external surface: then, those which break externally, the largest and flattest are the most dangerous. But if the fever have subsided, the vomica not being burst, or the matter discharged externally; or, although it shall have subsided, yet return; also, if there be thirst, loathing of food, or liquid stools, if the matter be livid and pale, if the patient expectorate nothing but frothy phlegm, the danger is inevitable. Consequently, old persons generally die of these suppurations, which arise from diseases of the lungs: younger persons from other kinds.

But, in consumption, a muco-purulent expectoration, constant fever which

tum, febris assidua, quæ et cibi tempora eripit, et siti affligit, in corpore tenui periculum subesse testantur. Si quis etiam in eo morbo diutius traxit, ubi capilli fluunt; ubi urina quædam araneis similia subsidentia ostendit, atque in his odor fœdus est; maximeque ubi post hæc orta dejectio est, protinus moritur: utique si tempus autumnus est, quo fere, qui cetera parte anni traxerunt, resolvuntur. Item pus exspuisse in hoc morbo, deinde ex toto spueredesiisse, mortiferum est. Solent etiam in adolescentibus ex eo morbo vomicæ fistulæque oriri; quæ non facile sanescunt, nisi si multa signa bonæ valetudinis subsecuta sunt. Ex reliquis vero minime facile sanantur virgines, aut eæ mulieres, quibus super tabem menstrua suppressa sunt.

Cui vero sano subitus dolor capitis ortus est, dein somnus oppressit, sic ut stertat, neque expergiscatur, intra septimum diem pereundum est; magis, cum alvus cita non antecesserit, si palpebræ dormientis non coeunt, sed album oculorum apparet. Quos tamen ita mors sequitur, si id malum non est febre discussum.

## ORDO.

tum sputum assidua febris, quæ eripit tempora cibi, et affligit siti, in tenui corpore testatur periculum subesse. Etiam si quis traxit diutius in eo morbo, ubi capilli fluunt; ubi urina ostendit quædam subsidentia similia araneis; atque fœdus odorem in his; que maxime ubi dejectio orta est post hæc moritur protinus; utique si est tempus autumnus, quo fere (iis) resolvuntur qui traxerunt cætera parte anni. Item exspuisse pus in hoc morbo, deinde desiisse spueredex toto, est mortiferum. Etiam vomicæve fistulæ solent oriri in adolescentibus ex eo morbo; quæ non sanescunt facile, si nisi multa signa bonæ valetudinis subsecuta sunt. Vero ex reliquis virgines sanantur minime facile, aut eæ mulieres super quibus tabem menstrua sunt suppressa.

Vero sano cui subitus dolor capitis ortus est, dein somnus oppressit, sic ut stertat, neque expergiscatur, pereundum est intra septimum; magis cum cita alvus non antecesserit, si palpebræ dormientis non coeunt, sed album oculorum apparet. Tamen quos mors sequitur ita, si id malum non est discussum febre.

## TRANSLATION.

leaves no intermission for food, and distressing thirst, are the prognoses of danger being not far off, if they occur in a delicate frame. Also, if a patient have lingered long in the same disease, and then the hair fall off; when the urine deposits something resembling cobwebs, and gives off a fœtid smell, and, particularly, when purgings supervene these symptoms, he soon dies: especially if in autumn, which season generally carries off those who have lingered through the rest of the year. Also, to have expectorated pus in this disease, afterwards to have entirely ceased to do so, is a fatal symptom. It is not uncommon for this disease to arise from tubercles or fistulæ in young people (18); which are very difficult of recovery, unless accompanied by many favourable symptoms. But young females, and others who have suppression of the catamenia accruing upon consumption, are least easily cured.

A healthy person having a sudden pain arise in his head, and falling into a deep sleep, with stertorous breathing, and cannot be awakened, must die within the seventh day; more especially if the bowels have not been previously relaxed; if the eyelids do not close in sleep, but leave the white of the eyes apparent: but he whom death pursues in this manner, may escape that catastrophe by fever.



At aqua inter cutem, si ex acuto morbo cœpit, ad sanitatem raro perducitur: utique si contraria iis, quæ supra posita sunt, subsequuntur. Æque in ea quoque tussis spem tollit: item, si sanguis sursum deorsumque erupit, et aqua medium corpus implevit. Quibusdam etiam in hoc morbo tumores oriuntur, deinde desinunt, deinde rursus assurgunt. Hi tutiores quidem sunt, quam qui supra comprehensi sunt, si attendunt; sed fere fiducia secundæ valetudinis opprimuntur.

Illud jure aliquis mirabitur, quomodo quædam simul et affligant nostra corpora, et parte aliqua tueantur. Nam, sive aqua inter cutem quem implevit, sive in magno abscessu multum puris coit, simul id omne effudisse, æque mortiferum est, ac si quis sani corporis vulnere factus exsanguis est.

Articuli vero cui sic dolent, ut super eos ex callo quædam tubercula innata sint, nunquam liberantur: quæque eorum vitia vel in senectute cœperunt, vel in senectutem ab adolescentia pervenerunt, ut aliquando leniri possunt, sic nunquam ex toto finiuntur.

Morbus quoque comitialis post annum quintum et vicesimum ortus ægre

## ORDO.

At aqua inter cutem, si cœpit ex acuto morbo, perducitur raro ad sanitatem: utique si (signa) contraria iis, quæ posita sunt supra subsequuntur. Quoque tussis in ea æque tollit spem: item si sanguis erupit sursum que deorsum, et aqua implevit medium corpus (id est venter). Quibusdam etiam in hoc morbo tumores oriuntur, deinde desinunt, deinde assurgunt rursus. Hi quidem sunt tutiores, si attendunt, quam (iis) qui sunt comprehensi supra; sed fere opprimuntur fiducia secundæ valetudinis.

Aliquis mirabitur illud jure, quomodo quædam et simul affligant nostra corpora, et tueantur aliqua parte. Nam, sive aqua inter cutem implevit quem, sive multum puris coit in magno abscessu, (que) effudisse omne id simul est æque mortiferum, ac si quis sani corporis est factus exsanguis vulnere.

Vero cui articuli dolent, sic ut quædam tubercula ex callo sint innata super eos, nunquam liberantur: que vitia eorum quæ vel cœperunt in senectute, vel pervenerunt ab adolescentia in senectutem, ut possunt leniri aliquando, sic nunquam finiuntur ex toto.

Quoque morbus comitialis ortus (*Epilepsia*) post quintum et

## TRANSLATION.

But a dropsy originating from an acute disease is rarely cured; especially if followed by the contrary symptoms to those which have been stated above.

A cough is equally hopeless in this also: if hemorrhage take place either upwards or downwards, and water accumulate in the abdomen (*Ascites*). Swellings also arise in this disease with some persons, which afterwards subside, and then appear again. These, indeed, are safer, if they take care, than those who have been comprehended above; but they are generally betrayed by a confidence of their recovery.

Some persons will wonder at this, and with reason too, how some maladies both afflict our bodies, and at the same time protect them in some part. For, whether one be distended with water, or a quantity of pus be collected in a large abscess, to discharge all this or that, at once, is equally as dangerous as if a healthy person were to lose all his blood by a wound.

But if the joints be affected to that degree, so as to exhibit the form of indurated tubercles upon them, they are never cured: and those vitiated parts, which have either commenced in old age, or have continued from their youth upwards, although they may be sometimes alleviated, yet they can never be entirely removed.

Epilepsy also arising after the twenty-fifth year, is cured with difficulty; and

curatur; multoque ægrius is, qui post quadragesimum annum cœpit; adeo ut in ea ætate aliquid in natura spei, vix quidquam in medicina sit. In eodem morbo, si simul totum corpus afficitur, neque ante in partibus aliquis venientis mali sensus est, sed homo ex improvise concidit, cujuscumque is ætatis est, vix sanescit: si vero aut mens læsa est, aut nervorum facta resolutio, medicinæ locus non est.

Dejectionibus quoque si febris accessit; si inflammatio jecinoris, aut præcordiorum, aut ventris; si immodica sitis; si longius tempus; si alvus varia; si cum dolore est, etiam mortis periculum subest: maximeque, si inter hæc tormina vetera esse cœperunt. Isque morbus maxime pueros absumit usque ad annum decimum: cæteræ ætates facilius sustinent. Mulier quoque gravida ejusmodi casu rapi potest; atque etiamsi ipsa convaluit, partum tamen perdit. Quin etiam tormina ab atra bile orsa mortifera sunt; aut si sub his, extenuato jam corpore, subito nigra alvus profluxit.

At intestinorum lævitas periculosior est, si frequens dejectio est; si venter omnibus horis et cum sono et sine hoc profluit; si similiter noctu et interdiu;

#### ORDO.

vicesimum annum ægre curatur; que is, qui cœpit post quadragesimum annum, multo ægrius; adeo, ut in ea ætate aliquid spei sit in natura, vix quidquam in medicina. In eodem morbo, si totum corpus afficitur simul, neque est sensus ante mali aliquis partibus venientis, sed homo, concidit ex improvise, cujuscumque ætatis is est, vix sanescit: vero, si aut mens est læsa, aut resolutio nervorum (paralysis) facta, non est locus medicinæ.

Quoque si febris accessit dejectionibus; si inflammatio jecinoris, aut præcordiorum, aut ventris; si sitis (est) immodica; si tempus (fuit) longius; si alvus (fæces sunt) varia; si est (sunt) cum dolore; etiam periculum mortis subest: que maxime si tormina inter hæc cœperunt esse vetera. Que is morbus absumit maxime pueros, usque ad decimum annum: cæteræ ætates facilius sustinent. Gravida mulier quoque potest rapi casu ejusmodi; atque etiamsi convaluit ipsa, tamen perdit partum. Quin etiam tormina orsa ab atra bile sunt mortifera; aut si sub his, corpore jam extenuato, nigra alvus (sedes) subito profluxit.

At lævitas intestinorum (lienteria) est periculosior, si dejectio est frequens; si venter profluit omnibus horis et cum sono, et sine hoc; si similiter noctu et inter-

#### TRANSLATION.

that which has begun after the fortieth year, is much more so; therefore, at this age, there may be some hope in (the efforts of) nature, but none in (the efficacy of) medicine. If the whole of the body be affected in the same disease simultaneously, without any premonitory sensation of the approaching fit coming from any part, but the man falls unawares, whatever his age may be, he scarcely can recover; but if either the mind be injured, or (the body) paralysed, no medicine can avail.

If fever accede on diarrhœa; if inflammation of the liver, or of the præcordia, or of the abdomen; if the thirst be immoderate; if the disease have become chronic; if the motions be variegated and expelled with pain, a fatal termination may be looked for; and particularly if tormina, with other symptoms, have become chronic. This disease mostly carries off children under ten years of age: the other ages sustain it more easily. A pregnant woman may be snatched off by an accident of this sort; and, although she should recover her health, yet she loses her offspring. So also is a dysentery fatal, arising from atrabilis; or a sudden black alvine discharge, the body being previously wasted by the disease.

But lienteria is more dangerous, if the purging be frequent; if the evacuations take place at all hours with or without flatus; if it continue equally night and day;

si quod excernitur, aut crudum est, aut nigrum, et præter id, etiam læve, et mali odoris; si sitis urget; si post potionem urina non redditur (quod evenit, quia tunc liquor omnis non in vesicam, sed in intestina descendit); si os exulceratur, rubet facies, et quasi maculis quibusdam colorum omnium distinguitur; si venter est quasi fermentatus, pinguis atque rugosus; si et cibi cupiditas non est. Inter quæ cum evidens mors sit, multo evidentior est, si jam longum quoque id vitium est; maxime etiam si in corpore senili est. Si vero in tenuiore intestino morbus est, vomitus, singultus, nervorum distentio, delirium, mala sunt.

At in morbo arquato, durum fieri jecur, perniciosissimum est. Quos lienis male habet, si tormina prehenderunt, deinde versa sunt vel in aquam inter cutem, vel in intestinorum lævitatem, vix ulla medicina periculo subtrahit.

Morbus intestini tenuioris nisi resolutus est, intra septimum diem occidit. Mulier ex partu, si cum febre vehementibus etiam et assiduus capitis doloribus premitur, in periculo mortis est.

## ORDO.

diu; si (id) quod excernitur, est aut crudum aut nigrum, et præter id, etiam læve, et mali odoris; si sitis urget; si urina non redditur post potionem, quod evenit quia tunc omnis liquor non descendit in vesicam, sed in intestina; si os exulceratur, facies rubet, et distinguitur quasi quibusdam maculis omnium colorum; si venter est quasi fermentatus, pinguis atque rugosus; et si est non cupiditas cibi. Inter quæ (signa) cum mors sit evidens, est multo evidentior, si id vitium est quoque jam longum; etiam maxime, si est in senili corpore. Vero si est morbus in tenuiore intestino, vomitus, singultus, distentio nervorum, delirium, sunt mala.

At in morbo arquato (icterus) est perniciosissimum, jecur fieri durum. Si tormina (dysenteria) prehenderunt quos lienis habet male, deinde sunt versa vel in aquam inter cutem, vel in lævitatem intestinorum, vix ulla medicina subtrahit periculo.

Nisi morbus tenuioris intestini est resolutus intra septimum diem occidit. Mulier ex (post) partu est in periculo mortis, si cum febre premitur, etiam vehementibus et assiduus doloribus ca-

## TRANSLATION.

if that which is excreted be either crude or black, and also smooth and foetid; if thirst oppress; if the urine be not promoted after drink, which happens, because then all the fluids pass not into the bladder, but into the intestines; if the mouth be ulcerated, the face red, and marked as if by some spots of all colours; if the abdomen appear puffed, as if tympanitic, fat and wrinkled (19); if there be no appetite for food. Since death may be very evident among these symptoms, it will be much more apparent if the disease have existed long; and particularly in an aged person. But if there be a disease of the smaller intestines, vomiting, hiccough, convulsions, and delirium are bad symptoms.

In icterus, the most unfavourable symptom is induration of the liver. Those who have splenitis, being seized with dysentery, which afterwards give origin to dropsy and lenteria, it is scarcely in the power of medicine to rescue them from danger.

The disease of the smaller intestine destroys the patient unless resolution takes place within the seventh day. A woman, after parturition, is in imminent danger if she be seized with fever, and with violent and constant pains of the head. If



Si dolor atque inflammatio est in iis partibus, quibus viscera continentur, frequenter spirare, signum malum est.

Si sine causa longus dolor capitis est, et in cervicem ac scapulas transit, rursusque in caput revertitur, aut a capite ad cervicem scapulasque pervenit, perniciosus est: nisi vomitum aliquam excitavit, sic ut pus extussiretur; aut nisi sanguis ex aliqua parte prorupit; aut nisi in capite multa porrigo, totove corpore pustulæ ortæ sunt.

Æque magnum malum est, ubi torpor atque prurigo pervagantur, modo per totum caput, modo in parte; aut sensus alicujus ibi quasi frigoris est; eaque ad summam quoque linguam perveniunt. Et cum in iisdem abscessibus auxilium sit, eo tamen difficilior sanitas est, quo minus sæpe sub his malis illi subsequuntur.

In coxæ vero doloribus, si vehemens torpor est, frigescitque crus et coxa; alvus nisi coacta non reddit, idque quod excernitur, mucosum est; jamque ætas ejus hominis quadragesimum annum excessit; is morbus erit longissimus, minimumque annuus; neque finiri poterit, nisi aut vere, aut autumno. Difficilis æque curatio est, in eadem ætate,

#### ORDO.

pitis. Si est dolor atque inflammatio in iis partibus, quibus viscera continentur, est malum signum spirare frequenter.

Si est longus dolor capitis sine causa, et transit in cervicem que scapulas, que rursus revertitur in caput, aut pervenit a capite ad cervicem que scapulas, est perniciosus: nisi excitavit aliquam vomitum, sic ut pus extussiretur; aut nisi sanguis prorupit ex aliqua parte, aut nisi multa porrigo (apparet) in capite, ve pustulæ ortæ sunt toto corpore.

Est æque magnum malum, ubi torpor atque prurigo pervagantur, modo per totum caput, modo in parte; aut est sensus quasi alicujus frigoris ibi; que ea perveniunt quoque ad summam linguam. Et cum sit auxilium in iisdem abscessibus, tamen sanitas est difficilior eo, quo minus sæpe illi subsequuntur sub his malis.

Vero in doloribus coxæ, si torpor est vehemens, que crus et coxa frigescit; nisi alvus non reddit, nisi coacta, que id quod excernitur, est mucosum; que ætas jam ejus hominis excessit quadragesimum annum; is morbus erit longissimus, que (ad) minimum annuus; neque poterit finiri, nisi aut vere, aut autumno. Curatio est æque difficilis, in ea-

#### TRANSLATION.

there be pain and inflammation in those parts, which contain the viscera, hurried respiration is a bad symptom.

If there have been a long continued pain in the head without any evident cause, and this migrate to the neck and shoulders, and again revert to the head, or passing from the head to the neck and shoulders, it is dangerous; unless it excite a vomitum, so that pus may be expectorated; or unless hæmorrhage take place from some part, or a copious porrigo appear on the head, or pustules arise over the whole body.

It is an equally formidable disease when torpor and itching wander about; sometimes over the whole head, sometimes in a part of it; or a sensation of cold is felt there, and that also reaches to the tip of the tongue. But although in these cases abscesses may prove beneficial, yet the recovery of health is the more difficult by these means, in proportion, as they seldom succeed those diseases.

But in pains of the hip, if the torpor be great, and the leg and thigh be cold, the bowels constipated, unless they be assisted, and that which is excreted is mucous, and the age of the patient have exceeded his fortieth year; the disease will be very long, and will last a year at least; neither will it be possible to remove it, unless it be either in the spring, or autumn. A cure will be equally difficult in the same age,

ubi humerorum dolor vel ad manus pervenit, vel ad scapulas tendit, torporemque et dolorem creat, neque bilis vomitu levatur.

Quacumque vero parte corporis membrum aliquod resolutum est, si neque movetur, et emacrescit, in pristinum habitum non revertitur; eoque minus, quo vetustius id vitium est, et quo magis in corpore senili est. Omnique resolutioni nervorum ad medicinam non idonea tempora sunt hiems et autumnus: aliquid sperari potest vere et æstate. Isque morbus mediocris vix sanatur, vehemens sanari non potest. Omnis etiam dolor minus medicinæ patet, qui sursum procedit.

Mulieri gravidæ si subito mammæ emacuerunt, abortus periculum est. Quæ neque peperit, neque gravida est, si lac habet, a menstruis defecta est. Quartana autumnalis fere longa est; maximeque, quæ cœpit hieme appropinquante. Si sanguis profluxit, deinde secuta est dementia cum distentione nervorum, periculum mortis est: itemque, si medicamentis purgatum, et adhuc inanem, nervorum distentio oppressit; aut si in magno dolore, extremæ partes frigent. Neque is ad vitam redit,

## ORDO.

dem ætate, ubi dolor humerorum pervenit vel ad manus, vel tendit ad scapulas, que creat torporem et dolorem, neque levatur vomitu bilis.

Vero quacumque parte corporis aliquod membrum est resolutum, si neque movetur, et emacrescit, non revertitur in pristinum habitum; que eo minus, quo vetustius id vitium est, et magis quo est in senili corpore. Que hiems et autumnus non sunt tempora idonea ad medicinam (curandi) omni resolutioni nervorum: aliquid potest sperari vere et æstate. Que is morbus mediocris, vix sanatur, vehemens, non potest sanari. Etiam omnis dolor, qui procedit sursum, minus patet medicinæ.

Si mammæ gravidæ mulieri emacuerunt subito, est periculum abortus. Si (mulier) quæ neque peperit, neque est gravida, habet lac, defecta est a menstruis. *Autumnalis quartana* est fere longa; que maxime, quæ cœpit hieme appropinquante. Si sanguis profluxit, deinde dementia est secuta cum distentione nervorum, est periculum mortis: que item, si distentio nervorum oppressit (alicui) purgatum medicamentis, et inanem adhuc; aut si in magno dolore, extremæ partes frigent. Neque is redit ad vitam, qui detractus

## TRANSLATION.

when there is some affection of the shoulders tending towards the hands or the shoulder blades; and produces a numbness and pain, neither is it relieved by a bilious vomiting.

Whatever limb becomes paralysed, if it have no motion, and waste away, it will not regain its former condition, and the probability of recovery will be proportioned to the term occupied by the disease and the age of the patient. The autumn and winter are improper seasons for the treatment of paralysis of every kind; there may be some hope in spring and summer: when this disease is moderate, it may be cured with difficulty, but when violent it cannot be cured at all. Also every pain which moves upwards is less under the control of treatment.

If the mammæ of a pregnant woman become suddenly shrunk, there is danger of abortion. If a woman, who have neither given birth to a child, nor being pregnant, have milk in her breasts, her monthly courses have been suppressed. An autumnal quartan is generally chronic, especially that which begins on the approach of winter. If dementia and convulsions follow upon hæmorrhage, there is danger of death: also if convulsion seize a person purged by medicine, and as yet empty or if the extremities be cold during great pain. Neither can he be re-

qui ex suspendio, spumante ore, detractus est. Alvus nigra, sanguini atro similis, repentina, sive cum febre, sive etiam sine hac est, perniciosa est.

ORDO.  
est ex suspendio, spumante ore. Nigra alvus (fex) similis atro sanguini, repentina, sive est cum febre, sive etiam sine hac, est perniciosa.

## TRANSLATION.

stored to life, who, after having been suspended, is taken down with a foaming mouth. Black stools, similar to grumous blood, coming on suddenly, whether attended by fever or not, are pernicious.

## CAP. IX.

## DE MORBORUM CURATIONIBUS.

COGNITIS indiciis, quæ nos vel spe consolentur, vel metu terreant, ad curationes morborum transeundum est. Ex his quædam communes sunt, quædam propriæ: communes, quæ pluribus morbis opitulantur; propriæ, quæ singulis. Ante de communibus dicam: ex quibus tamen quædam non ægros solum, sed sanos quoque sustinent; quædam in adversa tantum valetudine adhibentur.

Omne vero auxilium corporis, aut demit aliquam materiam, aut adjicit, aut evocat, aut reprimit, aut refrigerat, aut calefacit, simulque aut durat, aut mollit. Quædam non uno modo tantum, sed etiam duobus inter se non contrariis adjuvant. Demitur materia, san-

## ORDO.

## CAP. IX.

## DE CURATIONIBUS MORBORUM.

INDICIIS cognitis, quæ vel consolentur nos spe, vel terreant metu, transeundum est ad curationes morborum. Ex his quædam sunt communes, quædam propriæ: communes (sunt) quæ opitulantur pluribus morbis; propriæ quæ (opitulantur) singulis. Ante dicam de communibus; ex quibus tamen quædam non sustinent solum ægros, sed quoque sanos; quædam adhibentur tantum in adversa valetudine.

Vero omne auxilium corporis aut demit aut adjicit aliquam materiam, aut evocat, aut reprimit, aut refrigerat, aut calefacit; que simul aut durat, aut mollit. Quædam non adjuvat tantum uno modo, sed etiam duobus non contrariis inter se. Materia de-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

## OF THE TREATMENT OF DISEASES.

THE symptoms being made known, which may either console us with hope, or terrify us with fear, we must now proceed to the treatment of diseases. Of these some are common, some particular: the common are those which relieve several diseases; the particular are adapted to one only. In the first place I shall speak of the common; some of which relate to the preservation of health as well as the recovery of the sick.

Now every remedial agent applied to the body, either abstracts some material from it, or adds to it, or calls it forth, or represses it, or cools, or warms, and at the same time either hardens, or softens it. Some things assist not only in one mode, but also in two, not incompatible with each other. The abstraction of ma-



guinis detractiōe, cucurbitula, dejectione, vomitu, frictione, gestatione, omni-que exercitatione corporis, abstinētia, sudore. De quibus protinus dicam.

## ORDO.

mitur detractiōe sanguinis, cucurbitula, dejectione, vomitu, frictione, gestatione, que omni exercitatione corporis, abstinētia, sudore. De quibus dicam protinus.

## TRANSLATION.

terial is effected by blood-letting, cupping, purging, vomiting, friction, gestation, and every exercise of the body, by abstinence, and by sweating. Concerning which I will speak immediately.

## CAP. X.

DE DETRACTIONE SANGUINIS PER  
VENAS.

SANGUINEM, incisa vena, mitti novum non est: sed nullum pene morbum esse, in quo non mittatur, novum est. Item, mitti junioribus, et fœminis uterum non gerentibus, vetus est: in pueris vero idem experiri, et in senioribus, et in gravidis quoque mulieribus, vetus non est: siquidem antiqui, primam ultimamque ætatem sustinere non posse hoc auxilii genus judicabant; persuaserantque sibi, mulierem gravidam, quæ ita curata esset, abortum esse facturam. Postea vero usus ostendit, nihil in his esse perpetuum, aliasque potius observationes adhibendas esse, ad quas dirigi curantis consilium debeat. INTEREST

## ORDO.

## CAP. X.

DE DETRACTIONE SANGUINIS  
PER VENAS.

NON est novum, sanguinem mitti, vena incisa: sed est novum, esse nullum morbum pæne, in quo non mittatur. Item mitti junioribus, et fœminis non gerentibus uterum, est vetus: vero non est vetus, experiri idem in pueris et in senioribus, et quoque in gravidis mulieribus: siquidem antiqui judicabant primum que ultimam ætatem non posse sustinere hoc genus auxilii; que persuaserant sibi, gravidam mulierem, quæ esset curata ita, facturam esse abortum. Vero postea usus ostendit, nihil esse perpetuum in his; que potius alias observationes esse adhibendas, ad quas consilium (medici) curantis debeant dirigi. Enim interest,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

## OF BLOOD-LETTING.

It is not a new practice to let blood by the incision of a vein: but it is new, to embrace this remedy in almost every disease. Again, to extract blood from younger persons, and non-pregnant women, is of ancient date: for indeed the ancients adjudged the two extremes of life incapable of supporting this remedy; and they had persuaded themselves, that a pregnant woman, who might have been treated in this manner would miscarry. But subsequent practice has proved, that none of these precepts are infallible; and that some other circumstances were rather to be regarded, and to which the aim of the physician ought to be directed. *For we*

ENIM, NON QUÆ ÆTAS SIT, NEQUE QUID IN CORPORE INTUS GERATUR, SED QUÆ VIRES SINT. Ergo si juvenis imbecillus est, aut si mulier, quæ gravida non est, parum valet, male sanguis mittitur: emoritur enim vis, si qua supererat, hoc modo erepta.

At firmus puer, et robustus senex, et gravida mulier valens, tuto curatur. Maxime tamen in his medicus imperitus falli potest: quia fere minus roboris illis ætatibus subest; mulierique prægnanti post curationem quoque viribus opus est, non tantum ad se, sed etiam ad partum sustinendum. Non quidquid autem intentionem animi et prudentiam exigit, protinus ejiciendum est; cum præcipua in hoc ars sit, quæ non annos numeret, neque conceptionem solam videat, sed vires æstimet, et ex eo colligat, possit necne superesse, quod vel puerum, vel senem, vel in una muliere duo corpora simul sustineat.

Interest etiam inter valens corpus, et obesum; inter tenue, et infirmum: tenuioribus magis sanguis, plenioribus magis caro abundat. Facilius itaque illi detractorem ejusmodi sustinent; celeriusque ea, si nimium est pinguis, aliquis affligitur. Ideoque vis corporis

## ORDO.

non quæ sit ætas, neque quid geratur intus in corpore, sed quæ sint vires. Ergo si juvenis est imbecillus, aut si mulier, quæ non est gravida, valet parum, sanguis male mittitur: enim vis, si qua superaret, erepta hoc modo, emoritur.

At firmus puer, et robustus senex, et valens gravida mulier, curatur (in hoc modo) tuto. Tamen imperitus medicus potest falli maxime in his: quia fere minus roboris subest illis ætatibus; que est quoque opus prægnanti mulieri viribus post curationem, non tantum ad se, sed etiam ad sustinendum partum. Autem quidquid exigit intentionem animi et prudentiam, non est ejiciendum; cum præcipua ars in hoc sit quæ non numeret annos, neque videat conceptionem solam, sed æstimet vires, et colligat ex eo, necne possit superesse quod sustineat vel puerum, vel senem, vel duo corpora simul in una muliere.

Etiam interest inter valens et obesum corpus; inter tenue et infirmum; sanguis abundat magis tenuioribus, caro magis plenioribus. Itaque illi sustinent detractorem ejusmodi facilius; que aliquis, si est nimium pinguis, celerius affligitur ea. Que

## TRANSLATION.

*are not to regard what the age may be; nor whether there be pregnancy, but the strength of the patient. Therefore if a young person be weak, or if a non-pregnant woman be in a languid state, the extraction of blood is improper: for the vis vitæ, if any were remaining, being thus exhausted, dies entirely.*

While on the other hand a strong child, a robust old man, a vigorous pregnant female are treated in this manner with safety. Yet in these cases, an unskilful physician may be very much deceived, because, there is generally a proportionate defection of the vital powers at those periods of life; and a pregnant female requires strength after parturition, not only for herself, but for the sustenance of her offspring. Therefore we are not to reject whatever requires intense application of the mind and prudence hastily: since the excellency of the art here, is, not in the enumeration of the patient's years, nor to regard conception alone, but (to form a correct) estimate of his physical powers, and to collect from thence, whether there be sufficient stamina over and above to support either a child, or an old man; or two bodies at the same time in one female.

There is a difference also between a strong and a fat body; between a spare and a weak: the blood is more abundant in thinner persons, flesh more in fuller habits. Therefore the former sustain depletion of this kind more easily, while he, who is

melius ex venis, quam ex ipsa specie æstimatur.

Neque solum hæc considerata sunt, sed etiam morbi genus quod sit: utrum superans, an deficiens materia læserit; corruptum corpus sit, an integrum. Nam si materia vel deest, vel integra est, istud alienum est: at si vel copia sui male habet, vel corrupta est, nullo modo melius succurritur. Ergo vehemens febris, ubi rubet corpus, plenæque venæ tument, sanguinis detractionem requirit: item viscerum morbi, nervorumque resolutio, et rigor, et distentio: quidquid denique fauces difficultate spiritus strangulat; quidquid subito suppressit vocem; quisquis intolerabilis dolor est; et quacumque de causa ruptum aliquid intus atque collisum est: item malus corporis habitus, omnesque acuti morbi, qui modo, ut supra dixi, non infirmitate, sed onere nocent.

Fieri tamen potest, ut morbus quidem id desideret, corpus autem vix pati posse videatur: sed si nullum tamen appareat aliud auxilium, periturusque sit qui laborat, nisi temeraria quoque via fuerit adjutus; in hoc statu boni medici est ostendere, quam nulla spes sit sine san-

#### ORDO.

ideo vis corporis æstimatur melius ex venis, quam ex specie.

Neque sunt hæc solum considerata, sed etiam quid sit genus morbi; utrum superans materia læserit, an deficiens; (an) corpus sit corruptum, an integrum. Nam si materia vel deest, vel est integra, istud est alienum: at si vel copia sui male habet, vel est corrupta, succurritur nullo modo melius. Ergo vehemens febris, ubi corpus rubet, que venæ plenæ tument, requirit detractionem sanguinis: item morbi viscerum, resolutio (paralysis) et rigor (tetanus,) et distentio nervorum (convulsio) denique, quidquid strangulat fauces difficultate spiritus; quidquid suppressit vocem subito; quisquis dolor est intolerabilis; et de quacumque causa aliquid est ruptum atque collisum intus; item malus habitus corporis, que omnes acuti morbi, qui, ut dixi supra, non nocent infirmitate, sed onere.

Tamen potest fieri, ut morbus quidem desideret id, autem corpus videatur posse vix pati: sed tamen si nullum auxilium appareat, que qui laborat sit periturus, nisi fuerit adjutus quoque temeraria via; in hoc statu est (officium) boni medici ostendere quam sit nulla spes sine

#### TRANSLATION.

very fat, is sooner affected by it. For this reason the strength of the body is estimated better by the state of the blood vessels, than from its appearance.

Nor are these the only things to be considered, but also the nature of the disease. Whether a redundancy or a deficiency of matter have been the offending cause; whether the body be corrupted or sound. For if the material be either deficient or sound, in this case blood-letting would be injurious: but if its own redundancy be prejudicial (to health), or vitiated, no other remedy will be more eligible. Therefore in a state of high fever, the body being red, the veins full and turgid, the extraction of blood is indicated: also diseases of the viscera, paralysis, tetanus, and convulsion; in short all diseases which affect the fauces, by difficult respiration; whatever suddenly suppresses the voice; whatever pain may be intolerable, such as internal ruptures and bruises from whatever cause arising: also, a vitiated habit of body, and all acute diseases, which, as I have said above, are injurious, not by debility, but from excess.

Yet it may happen, that the disease itself may require this treatment, while the body seems scarcely able to support it: yet if no other remedy be apparent, and the patient be about to die, unless he shall have been relieved, even by a hazardous expedient: in this case it is the duty of a conscientious physician to intimate



guinis detractioe, faterique, quantus in hac ipsa metus sit: et tum demum, si exigetur, sanguinem mittere.

DE QUO DUBITARE IN EJUSMODI RE NOPOPORTET: SATIUS EST ENIM ANCEPS AUXILIUM EXPERIRI, QUAM NULLUM. Idque maxime fieri debet, ubi nervi resoluti sunt; ubi subito aliquis obmutuit; ubi angina strangulatur; ubi prioris febris accessio pene confecit, paremque subsequi verisimile est, neque eam videntur sustinere ægri vires posse.

Cum sit autem minime crudo sanguis mittendus, tamen ne id quidem perpetuum est: neque enim semper concoctionem res exspectat. Ergo si ex superiore parte aliquis decedit, si contusus est, si ex aliquo subito casu sanguinem vomit; quamvis paulo ante sumpsit cibum; tamen protinus ei demenda materia est, ne, si subsederit, corpus affligat. Idemque etiam in aliis casibus repentinis, qui strangulabunt, dictum erit. At si morbi ratio patiatur, tum demum nulla cruditatis suspitione remanente id fiet. Ideoque ei rei videtur aptissimus adversæ valetudinis dies secundus, aut tertius. Sed ut aliquando etiam primo die sanguinem mittere necesse est, sic

#### ORDO.

detractioe sanguinis, que fateri, quantus metus sit in hac ipsa: et tum demum, si exigetur mittere sanguinem.

*De quo oportet non dubitare in re ejusmodi; enim est satius experiri anceps auxilium, quam nullum.* Que id debet fieri maxime, ubi nervi sunt resoluti; ubi aliquis subito obmutuit; ubi strangulatur angina; ubi accessio prioris febris pene confecit, que est verisimile parem subsequi, neque vires ægri videntur posse sustinere eam.

Autem cum sanguis sit minime mittendus crudo, tamen ne quidem est id perpetuum: enim neque res exspectat concoctionem semper. Ergo si aliquis decedit ex superiore parte, si est contusus, si vomit sanguinem ex aliquo subito casu; quamvis sumpsit cibum paulo ante, tamen materia (sanguis) est demenda ei protinus, ne si subsederit, affligat corpus. Idemque erit dictum etiam in aliis repentinis casibus, qui strangulabunt. At si ratio morbi patiatur, tum demum, nulla suspitione cruditatis remanente, id fiet. Que ideo secundus, aut tertius dies adversæ valetudinis videtur aptissimus ei rei. Sed ut aliquando est necesse mittere sanguinem etiam primo die, sic

#### TRANSLATION.

that there is no hope without bleeding, and to admit how great the danger may be in this itself: and then to bleed if it shall be required.

*In a case of such vital importance, there will be no time for hesitation, for it is preferable to try a doubtful remedy, than none.* This ought to be practised particularly in paralysis; when the patient has become speechless; when he is (almost) strangulated with angina; when the paroxysm of a former fever had nearly carried him off, and another equally severe about to follow, although the strength of the patient seem incapable of sustaining it.

But although the extraction of blood ought not to be performed on a patient in a state of crudity, yet even that, is not without exception: for the case may not always admit of delay for concoction. Therefore if a person have been precipitated from some eminence, and bruised, if he vomit blood, caused by some sudden accident; although he may have taken food a little before, yet blood must be taken away immediately from him, lest, having subsided, it afflict the body. The same rule will apply also in all other sudden accidents, which (*are likely to*) produce strangulation. But if the nature of the disease admit of delay, then let it be done when a suspicion of crudity no longer remains: and for this reason, the second or third day of a malady seems the best adapted for that purpose. But as it is necessary sometimes to let blood on the first day, yet it is pernicious after the

numquam utile post diem quartum est, cum jam spatio ipso materia et exhausta est, et corpus corrumpit: ut detractio imbecillum id facere possit, non possit integrum. Quod si vehemens febris urget, in ipso impetu ejus sanguinem mittere, hominem jugulare est.

Expectanda ergo remissio est; si non decrescit, sed crescere desiit, neque speratur remissio, tum quoque, quamvis pejor, sola tamen occasio non omittenda est.

Fere etiam ista medicina, ubi necessaria est, in biduum dividenda est: satius est enim, primum levare ægrum, deinde perpurgare, quam simul omni vi effusa fortasse præcipitare. Quod si in pure quoque aquaque, quæ inter cutem est, ita respondet, quanto magis necesse est in sanguine respondeat? Mitti vero is debet, si totius corporis causa fit, ex brachio; si partis alicujus, ex ea ipsa parte, aut certe quam proxima: quia non ubique mitti potest, sed in temporibus, in brachiis, juxta talos.

Neque ignoro, quosdam dicere, quam longissime sanguinem inde, ubi lædit, esse mittendum: sic enim averti materiæ cursum; at illo modo in idipsum,

#### ORDO.

est numquam utile post quartum diem, cum et materia est exhausta jam spatio ipso, et corrumpit corpus, ut detractio possit facere id imbecillum, non possit integrum. Quod si vehemens febris urget, mittere sanguinem in impetu ipso ejus, est jugulare hominem.

Ergo remissio est expectanda; sed si non decrescit, desiit crescere, tum quoque, neque remissio speratur, tamen sola occasio non est omittenda, quamvis pejor.

Etiam ista medicina est fere necessaria, ubi est dividenda in biduum: enim est satius, primum levare ægrum, deinde perpurgare, quam fortasse simul præcipitare omni vi effusa. Quod si quoque ita respondet in pure que aqua, quæ est inter cutem, quanto magis est necesse respondeat in sanguine? Vero is debet mitti ex brachio, si causa fit totius corporis; si alicujus partis, ex ea parte ipsa, aut certe quam proxima: quia non potest mitti ubique, sed in temporibus, in brachiis, juxta in talos.

Neque ignoro, quosdam dicere, sanguinem esse mittendum quam longissime inde, ubi lædit: enim sic cursum materiæ averti; at idipsum evocari in illo modo,

#### TRANSLATION.

fourth, since the material has either been exhausted by the time itself, or it has vitiated the body, so that extraction may produce debility, but cannot make it sound. But during the violence of a fever, to let blood then, in the acmè of its paroxysm, is deliberate homicide. Therefore a remission is to be waited for; if it do not remit, but have ceased to increase, and no remission to be expected; then although the circumstances be less favourable, yet the only chance is not to be omitted.

When this medicinal agent becomes necessary, it would be preferable, were it to be divided, generally, into the space of two days; for it is better at first to relieve the patient, and afterwards to purge him thoroughly, than to dissipate all his strength at once, perhaps to destroy him. Therefore if it succeed in the evacuation of pus from an abscess, or in paracentesis; how much more necessary is it when applied to the extraction of blood?

But if it be intended to relieve the whole body, in that case it ought to be taken from the arm; if for some local affection, it should be drawn from that part itself, or at least as near to it as possible; because it cannot be taken every where, but only in the temples, in the arms, and near the ancles. Neither am I ignorant, that some say it ought to be drawn as far as possible from the injured part; for by *this plan* the course of the blood being averted; whilst by *that mode*, it is directed

quod gravat evocari. Sed id falsum est: proximum enim locum primo exhaurit; ex ulterioribus autem eatenus sanguis sequitur, quatenus emittitur; ubi is suppressus est, quia non trahitur, ne venit quidem.

Videtur tamen usus ipse docuisse, si caput fractum est, ex brachio potius sanguinem esse mittendum; si quod in humero vitium est, ex altero brachio: credo, quia si quid parum cesserit, opportuniore eæ partes injuriæ sunt, quæ jam male habent. Avertitur quoque interdum sanguis, ubi alia parte prorumpens, alia emittitur: desinit enim fluere qua nolumus, inde objectis quæ prohibeant, alio dato itinere.

Mittere autem sanguinem cum sit expeditissimum, usum habenti; tamen ignaro difficillimum est. Juncta enim est vena arteriis, his nervi: ita, si nervum scalpellus attingit, sequitur nervorum distentio, eaque hominem crudeliter consumit. At arteria incisa neque coit, neque sanescit; interdum etiam, ut sanguis vehementer erumpat, efficit. Ipsius quoque venæ, si forte præcisa est, capita comprimuntur, neque sanguinem emittunt. At si timide scalpellus demittitur, summam cutem la-

## ORDO.

quod gravat. Sed id est falsum: enim primo exhaurit proximum locum; autem sanguis sequitur ex ulterioribus eatenus, quatenus emittitur; ubi is est suppressus, quia non trahitur, quidem ne venit.

Videtur tamen usus ipse docuisse, si caput est fractum, sanguinem esse mittendum potius ex brachio; si est quod vitium in humero, ex altero brachio: quia credo si quid cesserit parum, eæ partes quæ jam habent male, sunt opportuniore injuriæ. Quoque sanguis interdum avertitur, ubi prorumpens alia parte, emittitur alia: enim desinit fluere (in ea parte) qua volumus, inde objectis quæ prohibeant, alio itinere dato.

Autem cum sit expeditissimum habenti usum mittere sanguinem; tamen est difficillimum ignaro. Enim vena est juncta arteriis, nervi his: ita, si scalpellus attingit nervum, distentio nervorum sequitur, que ea consumit hominem crudeliter. At incisa arteria neque coit, neque sanescit; interdum etiam efficit, ut sanguis erumpat vehementer. Quoque capita venæ ipsius, si forte est præcisa, comprimuntur, neque emittunt sanguinem. At si scalpellus demittitur timide, lacerat summam cutem, neque

## TRANSLATION.

to that part which is affected. But that is false; for it first empties the nearest part of its blood; but that is immediately supplied from the more distant parts, as long as the evacuation is continued; when that is suppressed, it ceases, being no longer attracted to that part.

Yet practice itself seems to have taught us, that if the skull be fractured, blood ought to be taken rather from the arm; if there be any disease in the humerus, a vein is to be opened in the other arm: and I suppose, because, if any thing unto-ward shall have happened, those parts are more susceptible of injury, which are already diseased. Sometimes also an hæmorrhage is averted, when bursting out in some part, by letting blood in another: for it ceases to flow in that part where we do not wish, means being opposed, (*styptics*); and another outlet being given.

But although venesection be very easy to a practised man, yet to the unskilful it is most difficult. For the vein being joined to the arteries, and the nerves to these; therefore if the lancet should touch the nerve, convulsions ensue, and that cruelly destroys the man. But a wounded artery neither unites, nor heals; sometimes it causes profuse hæmorrhage. Also, if the vein itself happen to be divided, the extremities perchance being compressed, emit no blood. But if the lancet be thrust timidly, it lacerates the skin without opening the vein. Also the vein some-



cerat, neque venam incidit. Nonnumquam etiam ea latet, neque facile reperitur. Ita multæ res id difficile inscio faciunt, quod perito facillimum est.

Incidenda autem ad medium vena est: ex qua cum sanguis erumpit, colorem ejus habitumque oportet attendere. Nam si is crassus et niger est, vitiosus est; ideoque utiliter effunditur: si rubet et pellucet, integer est; eaque missio sanguinis adeo non prodest, ut etiam noceat; protinusque is suppressendus est. Sed id evenire non potest sub eo medico, qui scit ex quali corpore sanguis mittendus sit. Illud magis fieri solet, ut æque niger assidue primo die profluat: quod quamvis ita est, tamen si jam satis fluxit, suppressendus est; semperque ante finis faciendus est, quam anima deficiat. Deligandumque brachium superimposito expresso ex aqua frigida penicillo: et postero die adverso medio digito vena ferienda, ut recens coitus ejus resolvatur, iterumque sanguinem fundat. Sive autem primo, sive secundo die sanguis, qui crassus et niger initio fluxerat, et rubere, et pellucere cœpit, satis materiæ detractum est, atque quod superest, sincerum est: ideoque protinus brachium deligandum, habendumque ita

## ORDO.

incidit venam. Nonnumquam etiam ea latet, neque reperitur facile. Ita multæ res faciunt id difficile inscio, quod est facillimum perito.

Autem vena est incidenda ad medium: ex qua cum sanguis erumpit; oportet attendere colorem que habitum ejus. Nam si is est crassus et niger, est vitiosus; que ideo effunditur utiliter: si rubet et pellucet, est integer; que ea missio sanguinis non prodest, adeo ut etiam noceat; que is est suppressendus protinus. Sed id non potest evenire sub eo medico, qui scit ex quali corpore sanguis sit mittendus. Illud solet fieri magis, ut assidue profluat æque niger primo die: quod quamvis ita est, tamen si jam fluxit satis, est suppressendus; que finis est semper faciendus, antequam anima deficiat. Quebrachium deligandum penicillo expresso ex aqua frigida superimposito: et postero die vena ferienda adverso medio digito, ut recens coitus ejus resolvatur, que iterum fundat sanguinem. Autem sive sanguis qui fluxerat niger et crassus initio, cœpit et rubere, et pellucere primo, sive secundo die, satis materiæ est adjectum, atque quod superest, est sincerum: que ideo brachium est deligandum protinus, que habendum ita,

## TRANSLATION.

times lies hidden, neither is it easily discovered. Thus many things concur to render this a difficult operation to the tyro, which is very easy to a scientific man.

The vein is to be opened at the middle: and as the blood flows from it, (*the surgeon*) ought to attend to its colour and consistence. For if it be thick and black, it is impure: and in that case profitably removed: if it be red and clear, it is sound; and that bleeding is so far from being salutary, that it may even be injurious; and it must be stopped immediately. But that cannot happen to the physician who knows, from what state of body blood is to be taken. It frequently happens, that the blood flows uniformly black on the first day: which although this be so, it must be stopped, when enough has been obtained; and the operation ought always to terminate before syncope. The arm then is to be bound up with a pledget expressed out of cold water laid over it: and on the following day the vein is to be struck with the middle finger, that the recent union may be resolved, and bleed afresh. But blood, whether drawn on the first or second day, which, at first, is thick and black, begins to look red and pellucid, (shows) that a sufficiency has been taken away, and what remains is pure: therefore the arm is to be bound

est, donec valens cicatricula sit; quæ celerrime in vena confirmatur.

ORDO.  
donec cicatricula sit valens; quæ confirmatur celerrime in vena.

## TRANSLATION.

up immediately, and kept in that position, until the cicatrix be formed, which is very soon accomplished in a vein.

## CAP. XI.

DE SANGUINIS DETRACTIONE PER  
CUCURBITULAS.

CUCURBITULARUM vero duo genera sunt; æneum, et corneum. Ænea, altera parte patet, altera, clausa est: cornea, altera parte æque patens, altera, foramen habet exiguum. In æneam linamentum ardens conjicitur, ac sic os ejus corpori aptatur, imprimiturque, donec inhæreat.

Cornea per se corpori imponitur; deinde, ubi ea parte, qua exiguum foramen est, ore spiritus adductus est, superque cera cavum id clausum est, æque inhærescit. Utraque non ex his tantum materiæ generibus, sed etiam ex quolibet alio recte fit. Ac si cetera defecerunt, caliculus quoque aut pultarius, oris compressioris, ei rei commode aptatur. Ubi inhæsit, si concisa ante scalpello cutis est, sangui-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XI.

DE DETRACTIONE SANGUINIS  
PER CUCURBITULAS.

VERO sunt duo genera cucurbitularum; æneum, et corneum. Ænea, patet altera parte, est clausa altera: cornea, patens æque altera parte, habet exiguum foramen altera. Ardens linimentum conjicitur in æneam, ac sic os ejus aptatur corpori, que imprimitur, donec inhæreat.

Cornea imponitur corpori per se; deinde, ubi spiritus est adductus ore ea parte, qua exiguum foramen est, quæ id cavum est super clausum cera, inhærescit æque. Utraque fit recte non tantum ex his generibus materiæ, sed etiam ex quolibet alio. Ac si cetera defecerunt, quoque caliculus aut pultarius, compressioris oris, aptatur commode ei rei. Ubi inhæsit, si cutis est concisa scalpello ante,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XI.

## OF CUPPING.

Now there are two kinds of CUPPING INSTRUMENTS; one made of brass, the other of horn. The brazen is open at one end, and close at the other; that of horn is likewise open at one end, and a small foramen in the other. Burning lint is thrown into the brass one, and then its mouth applied to the body, and there pressed until it adhere.

The horn one is applied to the body by itself; and afterwards the air being exhausted by the mouth at that part where the small opening is, and the small orifice immediately closed with wax, it adheres as well as the other. Each of these may be made very properly not only of these materials, but of any other. If nothing else can be had, a small cup, or a narrow-mouthed pipkin will answer the purpose. When it adheres, if the skin have been scarified previously with a lancet,

nem extrahit; si integra est, spiritum. Ergo ubi materia, quæ intus est, lædit, illo modo; ubi inflatio, hoc imponi solet.

Usus autem cucurbitulæ præcipuus est, ubi non in toto corpore, sed in parte aliqua vitium est, quam exhauriri ad confirmandam valetudinem satis est. Idque ipsum testimonium est, etiam scalpello sanguinem, ubi membro succurritur, ab ea potissimum parte, quæ jam læsa est, esse mittendum, quod nemo cucurbitulam diversæ parti imponit, nisi cum profusionem sanguinis eo avertit; sed ei ipsi, quæ dolet, quæque liberanda est.

Opus etiam esse cucurbitula potest in morbis longis, quamvis et iis jam spatium aliquod accessit; sive corrupta materia, sive spiritu male habente: in acutis quoque quibusdam, si et levare corpus debet, et ex vena sanguinem mitti vires non patiuntur. Idque auxilium ut minus vehemens, ita magis tutum; neque umquam periculosum est, etiamsi in medio febris impetu, etiamsi in cruditate adhibetur. Ideoque ubi sanguinem mitti opus est, si incisa vena præceps periculum est, aut si in parte corporis etiam vitium est, huc potius confugiendum

## ORDO.

extrahit sanguinem; si est integra, spiritum. Ergo ubi materia, quæ est intus, lædit, solet imponi illo modo; ubi (est) inflatio hoc (modo).

Autem præcipuus usus cucurbitulæ est, ubi vitium non est in toto corpore, sed in aliqua parte, quam exhauriri est satis ad confirmandam valetudinem. Que id ipsum est testimonium, sanguinem esse mittendum, etiam scalpello, ubi succurritur membro, potissimum ab ea parte quæ est jam læsa, quod nemo imponit cucurbitulam diversæ parti, nisi cum avertit profusionem sanguinis eo; sed ei ipsi, quæ dolet, que quæ est liberanda.

Etiam potest esse opus cucurbitula in longis, morbis et quamvis jam aliquod spatium accessit iis; sive habente corrupta materia, sive male spiritu: quoque in quibusdam acutis, si et corpus debet levare, et vires non patiuntur sanguinem mitti ex vena. Que ut id auxilium (est) minus vehemens, ita (est) magis tutum; neque est umquam periculosum, etiamsi adhibetur in medio impetu febris, etiamsi in cruditate. Que ideo ubi est opus sanguinem mitti, si est præceps periculum vena incisa, aut etiam si est vitium in parte corporis, est potius confugiendum huc: tamen

## TRANSLATION.

the blood exudes, if the skin be entire, only air. Therefore when the mass of blood is vitiated, it is usual to apply the cup by the former method, when only inflation, by the latter.

But the principal use of the cupping instrument is, when the malady is not general, but local, which being exhausted, is sufficient to restore that part to health: which is of itself a proof that blood ought to be drawn even with the lancet in order to relieve a limb, and especially from the part already injured: because no one applies it to a different part, unless to avert the flux of blood thither, but to the part itself which is affected, and which he ought to relieve.

The cupping apparatus may be usefully applied in chronic diseases, although they may have existed for some considerable time; whether the blood be vitiated or flatus: also in some acute diseases, if the body ought to be relieved, yet the strength seems insufficient to support venesection: and as this remedy is less violent, so it is more safe; nor is it ever dangerous, although it be applied in the height of a febrile paroxysm, or even in crudity. Therefore when there is a necessity for the abstraction of blood, if venesection be attended with much danger, or if the disease be confined to a part, then we must have recourse to this (*instru-*



est : cum eo tamen, ut sciamus, hic ut nullum periculum, ita levius præsidium esse ; nec posse vehementi malo, nisi æque vehemens auxilium succurrere.

## ORDO.

cum eo, ut sciamus, ut (est) nullum periculum hic, ita præsidium esse levius ; nec posse succurrere vehementi malo, nisi auxilium (est) æque vehemens.

## TRANSLATION.

ment) in preference : yet with this consideration, that, as we know it to be unattended with danger, so does it give but feeble aid ; neither is it possible to relieve a violent disease, except by an equally violent remedy.

## CAP. XII.

## DE DEJECTIONE.

1. DEJECTIONEM autem antiqui variis medicamentis, crebraque alvi ductione in omnibus pene morbis moliebantur : dabantque aut nigrum veratrum, aut filiculam, aut squamam æris, quam *λεπίδα χαλκοῦ* Græci vocant ; aut lactucæ marinæ lac, cujus gutta pani adjecta abunde purgat ; aut lac vel asinum, vel bubulum, vel caprinum, eique salis paulum adjiciebant, decoquebantque id, et sublatis iis, quæ coierant, quod quasi serum supererat, bibere cogebant.

Sed medicamenta stomachum fere lædunt : alvus si vehementius fluit, aut sæpius ducitur, hominem infirmat. Ergo numquam in adversa valetudine medicamentum ejus rei causa recte

## ORDO.

## CAP. XII.

## DE DEJECTIONE.

AUTEM antiqui moliebantur dejectionem variis medicamentis, que crebra ductione alvi pene in omnibus morbis : que dabant aut nigrum veratrum, aut filiculam, aut squamam æris, quam Græci vocant *λεπίδα χαλκοῦ* (lepida chalkou) ; aut lac marinæ lactucæ, gutta cujus adjecta pani purgat abunde ; aut lac vel asinum, vel bubulum, vel caprinum, que adjiciebant paulum salis ei, que decoquebant id, et iis quæ coierant, sublatis, cogebant bibere (id) quod supererat quasi serum.

Sed medicamenta fere lædunt stomachum : si alvus fluit vehementius, aut ducitur sæpius, infirmat hominem. Ergo medicamentum numquam datur recte in adversa valetudine causa ejus rei, nisi ubi

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XII.

## OF PURGING.

THE ancients administered various cathartic medicines, and repeated ENEMAS in almost all diseases : and they gave either black hellebore, or polypodium (*malefern*), or the dross (oxide) of copper, which the Greeks call *lepida kalkou* ; or the milk of the marine lettuce (spurge), one drop of which taken on bread, purges copiously ; or ass's milk, or that of the cow, or goats, to which they added a little salt, and boiled it down ; having abstracted the curds, they compelled their patients to drink the whey.

But medicine is generally offensive to the stomach ; and if the bowels be violently purged, or glystered too often, it debilitates the patient. Therefore, in sickness, medicine ought never to be administered with that view, unless the disease be

datur, nisi ubi is morbus sine febre est; ut cum veratrum nigrum aut atra bile vexatis, aut cum tristitia insanientibus, aut iis, quorum nervi parte aliqua resoluti sunt, datur. At ubi febres sunt, satius est ejus rei causa cibos potionesque assumere, qui simul et alant, et ventrem molliant. Suntque valetudinis genera, quibus ex lacte purgatio convenit.

2. Plerumque vero alvus potius ducenda est; quod ab Asclepiade quoque sic temperatum, ut tamen servatum sit, video plerumque sæculo nostro præteriri. Est autem ea moderatio, quam is secutus videtur, aptissima: ut neque sæpe ea medicina tentetur, et tamen semel, vel summum bis, non omittatur, si caput grave est; si oculi caligant; si morbus majoris intestini est, quod Græci κόλον nominant; si in imo ventre, aut in coxa dolores sunt; si in stomachum quædam biliosa concurrunt, vel etiam pituita eo se, humorve aliquis aquæ similis confert; si spiritus difficiliter redditur; si nihil per se venter excernit; utique, si juxta quoque stercus est, et intus remanet; aut si stercoreis odorem nihil dejiciens æger ex spiritu suo sentit; aut si corruptum est, quod

## ORDO.

is morbus est sine febre; ut cum nigrum veratrum datur aut vexatis atra bile, aut insanientibus cum tristitia, aut iis, nervi quorum sunt resoluti aliqua parte. At ubi sunt febres, causa ejus rei est satius assumere cibos, que potiones, qui simul et alant, et molliant ventrem. Que sunt genera valetudinis, quibus purgatio ex lacte convenit.

2. Vero plerumque alvus est potius ducenda; quod, video plerumque præteriri nostro sæculo, quoque temperatum ab Asclepiade sic, ut sit tamen servatum. Autem ea moderatio est aptissima, quam videtur is secutus: ut neque ea medicina tentatur sæpe, et tamen non omittatur semel, vel bis summum, si caput est grave; si oculi caligant; si morbus est majoris intestini, quod Græci κόλον nominant; si sunt dolores in imo ventre, aut in coxa; si quædam biliosa concurrunt in stomachum, vel etiam pituita, vel aliquis humor similis aquæ confert se eo; si spiritus redditur difficiliter; si venter excernit nihil per se; utique quoque, si stercus est juxta, et remanet intus; aut si æger deficiens nihil sentit odorem stercoreis ex suo spiritu; aut si quod excernitur, est corruptum; aut si

## TRANSLATION.

without fever: as when black hellebore is given to those affected with atrabilis, or melancholy madness, or to those who may have paralysis in some part. But where there are fevers, it is preferable to take such foods and drinks of that kind, which will at the same time nourish the patient and mollify the bowels. There are some maladies, to which the milk purgatives are adapted.

2. But generally, the bowels are preferably opened by INJECTIONS; a mode in some degree reprehended by Asclepiades, although admitted by him, yet I see it has fallen into disuse in our age. But that restriction which he seems to have followed, is very proper; that this remedy should neither be too often repeated, nor entirely omitted, but used once, or at most twice, if there be heaviness of the head, or dimness of the eyes; if there be disease of the greater intestine which the Greeks call colon; if there be pain in the pubic region, or in the hip; if there be any bilious accumulation in the stomach, or even phlegm, or some aqueous fluid collected there; if respiration be performed with difficulty; if the bowels do not act spontaneously; if there be scybala retained within the rectum; or if the patient feel a stercoreous fætor arising from his own breath, whilst his bowels are constipated; or if the excrements be foul; or if the first abstinence have not

excernitur; aut si prima inedia febrem non sustulit; aut si sanguinem mitti, cum opus sit, vires non patiuntur, tempusve ejus rei præteriit; aut si multum ante morbum aliquis potavit; aut si is, quæ sæpe vel sponte, vel casu purgatus est, subito habet alvum suppressam.

Servanda vero illa sunt: ne ante diem tertium ducatur; ne ulla cruditate substantive; ne in corpore infirmo, diuque in adversa valetudine exhausto; neve in eo, cui satis alvus quotidie reddit, quive eam liquidam habet; neve in ipso accessionis impetu, quia, quod tum infusum est, alvo continetur, regestumque in caput, multo gravius periculum efficit. Pridie vero abstinere debet æger, ut aptus tali curationi sit: eodem die ante aliquot horas aquam calidam bibere, ut superiores ejus partes madescant. Tum immittenda in alvum est, si levi medicina contenti sumus, pura aqua; si paulo valentiori, mulsa; si leni, ea in qua fœnum Græcum, vel ptisana, vel malva decocta sit; si reprimendi causa, ex verbenis. Acris autem est marina aqua, vel alia sale adjecto: atque utraque decocta commodior est.

## ORDO.

prima inedia non sustulit febrem; aut si vires non patiuntur sanguinem mitti, cum sit opus, ve tempus ejus præteriit rei; aut si aliquis potavit multum ante morbum; aut si is, qui est purgatus sæpe vel sponte, vel casu, subito habet suppressam alvum.

Vero illa sunt servanda; ne ducatur ante tertium diem; ne substantive ulla cruditate; ne in infirmo corpore que diu exhausto in adversa valetudine; ve ne in eo, cui alvus reddit satis quotidie, ve qui habet eam liquidam; ve ne in impetu ipso accessionis, quia, quod est tum infusum, continetur alvo, que regestum in caput, efficit multo gravius periculum. Vero æger debet abstinere pridie, ut sit aptus tali curationi: eodem die bibere calidam aquam aliquot horas ante, ut superiores partes ejus madescant. Tum pura aqua est immittenda in alvum, si sumus contenti levi medicina; mulsa, si paulo valentiori; si leni, ea in qua Græcum fœnum, vel ptisana, vel malva sit decocta; si causa reprimendi, ex verbenis. Autem est acris marina aqua, vel alia sale adjecta: atque utraque decocta est commodior. Fit

## TRANSLATION.

removed a fever; or if the strength be inadequate to sustain the loss of blood, when necessary, or the time for this operation having passed by; or if a patient have drank to excess antecedently to the disease; or if he, who has often been purged naturally, or accidentally, have his bowels suddenly suppressed.

But these precepts are to be observed: that an injection is not to be used before the third day; lest there be indigestion existing; not in a debilitated frame, and exhausted by protracted illness; nor to him whose bowels act daily, in sufficient quantity, nor whose motions are liquid; nor in the acmè of a febrile exacerbation, because that which is then injected, is retained in the bowels, and being thrown back upon the head, produces very serious danger. But the patient ought to abstain one day previously that he may be prepared for such a remedy: to drink warm water some hours before on the same day, that the superior parts may be moistened. Then pure water is to be injected into the bowels, if we be content with a gentle medicine; if a little more powerful, hydromel (20); if it be desirable to have a lenient effect, then a decoction of fœnugreek, or ptisan (21), or mallows; if an astringent, then with vervains. But sea-water, or any other with the addition of salt, is acrid; and both are better when boiled. It may be made more stimu-



Acrior fit, adjecto vel oleo, vel nitro, vel melle: quoque acrior est, eo plus extrahit, sed minus facile sustinetur. Idque quod infunditur, neque frigidum esse oportet, neque calidum; ne alterutro modo lædat.

Cum infusum est, quantum fieri potest, continere se in lectulo debet æger, nec primæ cupiditati dejectionis protinus cedere: ubi necessè est, tum demum desidere. Fereque eo modo dempta materia, superioribus partibus levatis, morbum ipsum mollit. Cum vero, quoties res coegit, desidendo aliquis se exhaust, paulisper debet conquiescere; et, ne vires deficiant, utique eo die cibum assumere: qui plenior, an exiguus sit dandus, ex ratione ejus accessionis, quæ expectabitur, aut in metu non erit, æstimari oportebit.

## ORDO.

acrior vel oleo, vel nitro, vel melle adjecto: que quo est acrior, eo plus extrahit, sed sustinetur minus facile. Que oportet id quod infunditur, esse neque frigidum, neque calidum; ne lædat alterutro modo.

Cum est infusum, æger debet continere se in lectulo, quantum potest fieri, nec cedere primæ cupiditati dejectionis: ubi est necesse, tum demum desidere. Que materia dempta eo modo, fere mollit morbum ipsum, superioribus partibus levatis. Vero, cum aliquis exhaust se, desidendo quoties res coegit, debet conquiescere paulisper; et ne vires deficiant, utique assumere cibum eo die: qui sit dandus plenior, an exiguus, ex ratione ejus accessionis, quæ expectabitur, aut oportebit æstimari, non erit in metu.

## TRANSLATION.

lant, by adding either oil, nitre, or honey: and the more acrid it is, the more it evacuates, but is less easily supported. Enemata ought neither to be cold nor hot, lest they may offend either way.

When injected, the patient ought to confine himself as much as possible in bed, neither ought he to yield immediately to the first inclination of a motion: when at length pressed by necessity, let him deject. The matter carried off by this mode often alleviates the disease itself, by relieving the superior parts. But when a patient has exhausted himself by going to stool as often as he has been compelled, he ought to rest a little while, and, lest his strength may fail, he should take some food, especially on that day: which may be given more, or less, according to the nature of the expected paroxysm, or if there shall be none impending.

## CAP. XIII.

## DE VOMITU.

AT vomitus, ut in secunda quoque valetudine sæpe necessarius biliosis est, sic etiam in iis morbis, quos bilis concitavit. Ergo omnibus, que ante febres

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIII.

## DE VOMITU.

AT ut vomitus est quoque necessarius biliosis in secunda valetudine, sic etiam (est) sæpe (necessarius) in iis morbis, quos bilis concitavit. Ergo omnibus,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIII.

## OF VOMITING.

As vomiting, even in health, is often salutary to bilious persons, so it is also necessary to those, whose complaints are aggravated by bile. Therefore it is necessary

horrore et tremore vexantur ; omnibus, qui cholera laborant ; omnibus etiam cum quadam hilaritate insanientibus ; et comitali quoque morbo oppressis necessarius est. Sed si acutus morbus est, sicut in cholera ; si febris est, ut inter horrores, asperioribus medicamentis opus non est ; sicut in dejectionibus quoque supra dictum est : satisque est, ea vomitus causa sumi, quæ sanis quoque sumenda esse proposui. At ubi longi valentesque morbi sine febre sunt, ut comitalis aut insania, veratro quoque albo utendum est. Id neque hieme, neque æstate recte datur ; optime vere ; tolerabiliter autumnō. Quisquis daturus erit, id agere ante debet, ut accepturi corpus humidius sit. Illud scire oportet, omne ejusmodi medicamentum, quod potui datur, non semper ægris prodesse, semper sanis nocere.

## ORDO.

qui vexantur horrore et tremore ante febres ; omnibus, qui laborant cholera ; etiam omnibus insanientibus cum quadam hilaritate ; et quoque est necessarius oppressis comitali morbo. Sed si morbus est acutus, sicut in cholera ; si est febris, ut inter horrores, non est opus asperioribus medicamentis ; quoque sicut est dictum supra in dejectionibus : que satis est ea causa, vomitus sumi, esse quæ proposui sumenda quoque sanis. At ubi longi que valentes morbi sunt sine febre, ut comitalis aut insania, est quoque utendum albo veratro. Neque id datur recte hieme, neque æstate ; optime vere ; tolerabiliter autumnō. Quisquis erat daturus, debet agere id ante, ut corpus sit accepturi humidius. Oportet scire illud, omne medicamentum ejusmodi ; quod datur potui, non semper prodesse ægris, semper nocere sanis.

## TRANSLATION.

to all those who are affected with shivering and trembling before fevers ; to all those who are subject to cholera ; and all those who are insane accompanied with high excitement : and also those who are affected with epilepsy. But if the disease be acute, as in cholera ; or if there be fever, while there are shiverings, the more violent medicines are unnecessary, as it has been observed above in purgings ; and it will be sufficient to take those things for a vomit, which I have proposed to be taken by persons in health.

But when diseases have become chronic, rebellious, and unattended with fever, such as epilepsy, or insanity, we must administer even white hellebore : but indeed this medicine would be improper either in winter or in summer ; it is given with most advantage in spring : tolerably in autumn. Whoever is about to administer it, ought first to prepare his patient, so that his body may be very moist. It is incumbent to know that every medicament of this kind, which is given by way of potion, is not always salutary to the sick, but to the healthy uniformly pernicious.

## CAP. XIV.

## DE FRICTIONE.

DE frictione vero adeo multa Asclepiades, tamquam inventor ejus, posuit in eo volumine, quod communium auxiliorum inscripsit, ut, cum trium tantum faceret mentionem, hujus et aquæ et gestationis, tamen maximam partem in hac consumpserit. Oportet autem neque recentiores viros in iis fraudare, quæ vel reppererunt, vel recte secuti sunt; et tamen ea, quæ apud antiquiores aliquos posita sunt, auctoribus suis reddere.

Neque dubitari potest, quin latius quidem, et dilucidius, ubi et quomodo frictione utendum esset, Asclepiades præceperit; nihil tamen repperit, quod non a vetustissimo auctore Hippocrate paucis verbis comprehensum sit: qui dixit, frictione, si vehemens sit, durari corpus; si lenis, molliri; si multa, minui; si modica, impleri.

Sequitur ergo, ut tum utendum sit, cum aut adstringendum corpus sit, quod hebes est; aut molliendum, quod

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIV.

## DE FRICTIONE.

VERO Asclepiades, tamquam inventor ejus, posuit adeo multa de frictione in eo volumine communium auxiliorum, quod inscripsit, ut, cum faceret mentionem trium tantum, hujus et aquæ et gestationis, tamen consumpserit maximam partem in hac. Autem neque oportet fraudare recentiores viros in iis, quæ vel reppererunt, vel sunt secuti recte; et tamen reddere ea, quæ sunt posita apud aliquos antiquiores, suis auctoribus.

Neque potest dubitare, quin Asclepiades præceperit quidem latius, quæ dilucidius; ubi, et quomodo esset utendum frictione, tamen repperit nihil quod non sit comprehensum paucis verbis a vetustissimo auctore Hippocrate: qui dixit, corpus durari frictione, si sit vehemens; molliri si lenis; minui si multa, impleri si modica.

Ergo sequitur ut sit utendum aut cum corpus quod est hebes sit adstringendum, aut quod induit molliendum, aut digerendum

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIV.

## OF FRICTION.

ASCLEPIADES has said so much concerning FRICTION in that volume, which he has entitled "GENERAL REMEDIES," as if the inventor of it, that although he only mentions three, namely this, water, and gestation, yet he has employed the greater part of his treatise upon the first. *Now as it is but a duty incumbent upon us, not to rob the moderns of those things which they have discovered, or judiciously followed, so it is but an act of justice to render up those inventions which have been described by some of the ancients to their proper authors.*

Nor can it be doubted, that Asclepiades has explained more fully, and more clearly, when, and in what manner we ought to use friction: but he has discovered nothing which has not been comprehended by the most ancient author, Hippocrates, in a few words: who has said, that the body may be hardened by violent friction; if gentle, it softens it; if it be much, it extenuates; if moderate, it increases; therefore it follows, that it may be used to brace up a sluggish



induruit; aut digerendum in eo, quod copia nocet; aut alendum id, quod tenue et infirmum est. Quas tamen species si quis curiosius æstimet (quod jam ad medicum non pertinet) facile intelliget, omnes ex una causa pendere, quæ demit. Nam et adstringitur aliquid, eo dempto, quod interpositum, ut id laxaretur, effecerat; et mollitur, eo detracto, quod duritiem creabat; et impletur, non ipsa frictione, sed eo cibo, qui postea usque ad cutem, digestionem quadam relaxatam, penetrat.

Diversarum vero rerum in modo causa est. Inter unctionem autem et frictionem multum interest. Ungi enim, leniterque pertractari corpus, etiam in acutis et recentibus morbis oportet; in remissione tamen, et ante cibum: longa vero frictione uti, neque in acutis morbis, neque increscentibus convenit; præterquam cum phreneticis somnus ea quaeritur. Amat autem hoc auxilium valetudo longa, et jam a primo impetu inclinata.

Neque ignoro, quosdam dicere, omne auxilium necessarium esse increscentibus morbis, non cum jam per se finiuntur. Quod non ita se habet. Potest

## ORDO.

in eo quod copia nocet. Aut id alendum quod est tenue et infirmum. Tamen quas species si quis æstimet curiosius, (quod jam non pertinet ad medicum,) intellegit facile, omnes pendere ex una causa, quæ demit. Nam et aliquid adstringitur, eo dempto, quod interpositum, effecerat ut id laxaretur; et mollitur, eo detractio quod creabat duritiem, et non impletur, frictione ipsa, sed eo cibo qui postea penetrat usque ad cutem, relaxatum quadam digestionem.

Vero causa diversarum rerum est in modo. Autem interest multum inter unctionem et frictionem. Enim oportet corpus ungi, quæ pertractari leniter, etiam in acutis et recentibus morbis, tamen in remissione, et ante cibum. Vero, neque convenit uti longa frictione, in acutis neque increscentibus morbis; præterquam cum somnus quaeritur phreneticis ea. Autem longa valetudo et jam inclinata a primo impetu, amat hoc auxilium.

Neque ignoro quosdam dicere, omne auxilium esse necessarium increscentibus morbis, non cum finiuntur jam per se. Quod non habet se ita. Enim morbus, qui

## TRANSLATION.

body; or to soften that which has become indurated; or to discuss superfluity in that body where it is noxious; or to improve that which is delicate and weak.

Now if a person examine more carefully those different species, which is not the province of a physician at present, he will easily comprehend, that all those effects depend on one cause, that is, depletion. For a body becomes braced, by the removal of that, whose interposition, had caused it to be relaxed; and that is softened, by removing the cause which produced the hardness; and that body is filled, not by friction itself, but by that nourishment, which afterwards pervades (*all parts*) as far as the surface, which become relaxed by some digestion. But the cause of these different (and opposite) effects, is in the *modus agendi*.

But there is much difference between UNCTION and FRICTION. For it is necessary to anoint and rub the body gently, even in acute and recent diseases; but this is to be done in the remission and before food: yet, to use long friction, in either acute or increasing diseases, would be improper: except when we employ it to procure sleep on a phrenetic patient. But a chronic disease, and one just inclining to convalescence after the first attack is benefited by this remedy. Nor am I ignorant, that some physicians say that every remedy becomes necessary in progressing diseases, not when they are retrograding spontaneously. But this is

enim morbus, etiam qui per se finem habiturus est, citius tamen adhibito auxilio tolli: quod duabus de causis necessarium est; et ut quam primum bona valetudo contingat; et ne morbus, qui remanet, iterum, quamvis levi de causa, exasperetur. Potest morbus minus gravis esse, quam fuerit, neque ideo tamen solvi, sed reliquiis quibusdam inhærere, quas admotum aliquod auxilium discutit.

Sed ut, levata quoque adversa valetudine, recte frictio adhibetur; sic numquam adhibenda est febre increscente: verum, si fieri poterit, cum ex toto corpus ea vacabit; sin minus, certe cum ea remiserit. Eadem autem modo in totis corporibus esse debet, ut cum infirmus aliquis implendus; modo in partibus, aut quia ipsius ejus membri imbecillitas id requirit, aut quia alterius. Nam et capitis longos dolores ipsius frictio levat; non in impetu tamen doloris: et membrum aliquod resolutum ipsius frictione confirmatur. Longe tamen sæpius aliud perfricandum est, cum aliud dolet; maximeque cum a summis, aut a mediis partibus corporis evocare materiam volumus; ideoque extremas partes per-

## ORDO.

est habiturus finem etiam per se, tamen potest tolli citius, auxilio adhibito, quod est necessarium de duabus causis; et ut bona valetudo contingat quam primum; et ne morbus qui remanet, exasperetur iterum quamvis de levi causa. Morbus potest esse minus gravis, quam fuerit, neque tamen ideo solvi, sed inhærere quibusdam reliquiis, quas aliquod auxilium admotum discutit.

Sed ut, frictio adhibetur recte, quoque levata adversa valetudine recte, sic est nunquam adhibenda febre increscente: verum, si poterit fieri cum corpus vacabit ea ex toto; sin minus certe cum ea remiserit. Autem eadem debet esse modo in totis corporibus, ut cum aliquis infirmus (est) implendus; modo in partibus, aut quia imbecillitas ejus membri ipsius aut quia alterius requirit id. Nam et frictio levat longos dolores capitis ipsius, tamen non in impetu doloris, et aliquod resolutum membrum confirmatur frictione ipsius. Tamen longe sæpius aliud est perfricandum, quum aliud dolet: que maxime quum volumus evocare materiam a summis aut a mediis partibus corporis; que ideo perfricamus extremas partes. Neque sunt

## TRANSLATION.

not so: for a disease which is about to terminate of itself, may still be accelerated by the application of a remedy, which is necessary for two reasons; both that health may be restored as soon as possible; and lest the disease, which still remains, may be exasperated again, although from a slight cause. For a disease may be less violent than it has been, yet not so far removed, but remains lurking in the system, which some applicable remedy might discuss.

But as friction is very properly exhibited for the relief of convalescent persons; it never ought to be employed in progressing fevers: but if it can be done, when the body enjoys entire freedom from it; if otherwise, certainly, when it has remitted. The same ought to be done over the whole body, as for instance, when we wish to improve the habit of some infirm person; sometimes partial, either because the weakness of that limb itself, or of some other may require it. For friction mitigates chronic pains of the head itself, but not to be applied in the paroxysms of pain; and sometimes the strength of a paralysed limb is restored by rubbing of it. Yet when one limb is to be rubbed for the relief of another, it must be done oftener: and most especially when we wish to effect a revulsion of the matter from the upper or middle parts of the body; and for this intention we rub the extremities.

fricamus. Neque audiendi sunt, qui numero finiunt, quoties aliquis perfricandus sit. Id enim ex viribus hominis colligendum est: et si is perinfirmus est, potest satis esse quinquagies; si robustior, potest ducenties esse faciendum; inter utrumque deinde, prout vires sunt. Quo fit, ut etiam minus sæpe in muliere, quam in viro; minus sæpe in puero, vel sene, quam in juvene, manus dimovendæ sint. Denique, si certa membra perfricantur, multa valentique frictione opus est. Nam neque totum corpus infirmari cito per partem potest, et opus est quam plurimum materiæ digerere, sive id ipsum membrum, sive per id aliud levamus. At ubi totius corporis imbecillitas hanc curationem per totum id exigit, brevior esse debet et lenior; ut tantummodo summam cutem emolliat, quo facilius capax ex recenti cibo novæ materiæ fiat. In malis jam ægrum esse, ubi exterior pars corporis friget, interior cum siti calet, supra posui. Sed tunc quoque unicum in frictione præsidium est; quæ si calorem in cutem evocavit, potest alicui medicinæ locum facere.

## ORDO.

audiendi qui finiunt numero, quoties aliquis sit perfricandus. Enim id est colligendum ex viribus hominis; ut quinquagies potest esse satis, si quis est perinfirmus; si est robustior potest esse faciendum ducenties: deinde inter utrumque prout vires sunt. Quo fit ut manus sint dimovendæ minus sæpe in muliere, quam in viro, minus sæpe in puero vel sene, quam in juvene. Denique si certa membra perfricantur, opus est multa, que valenti frictione. Nam neque potest totum corpus infirmari per partem cito, et est opus quamplurimum materiæ digerere, sive levamus id membrum ipsum, sive aliud per id. At ubi imbecillitas totius corporis exigit hanc curationem per totum, id debet esse brevior et lenior; ut emolliat summam cutem tantummodo, quo fiat facilius capax novæ materiæ ex recenti cibo. Posui supra, ægrum esse jam in malis ubi exterior pars corporis friget, interior calet cum siti. Sed tunc quoque unicum præsidium est in frictione, quæ si evocavit calorem in cutem, potest facere locum alicui medicinæ.

## TRANSLATION.

Nor are those persons to be regarded, who define the number of times a patient ought to be rubbed: for that is to be determined by the man's strength; so, that fifty times may be sufficient, if the person be very infirm; if more robust, it may be done two-hundred times: and so on, proportioned to the strength of each. Which must be done, so, that the motions of the hands be less rapid on a female, than on a man; less frequent on a child, or an old person, than on a young man. Finally, if certain limbs are to be rubbed, they require much and powerful friction: for the whole body cannot be debilitated rapidly by a part, and there is a necessity for dissipating as much as possible of the matter, whether we relieve that limb itself, or another by this. But when general debility of the system requires the employment of this treatment, it ought to be of shorter duration, and more gentle in application; so that it may only soften the surface of the skin, and render it more capacious for the reception of new material formed from fresh nourishment. I have stated above, that the patient is in a bad way when the surface of his body is cold, while internally he is hot and thirsty. But even then, the only safeguard is in friction, which, if it have promoted a warmth on the skin, it may facilitate the employment of other means.



## CAP. XV.

## DE GESTATIONE.

GESTATIO quoque longis et jam inclinatis morbis aptissima est: utilisque est et iis corporibus, quæ jam ex toto febre carent; sed adhuc exerceri per se non possunt; et iis, quibus lentæ morborum reliquæ remanent, neque aliter eliduntur. Asclepiades etiam in recenti vehementique, præcipueque ardente febre, ad discutiendam eam, gestatione dixit utendum: sed id periculose fit; meliusque quiete ejusmodi impetus sustinetur. Si quis tamen experiri volet, sic experiatur, si lingua non erit aspera, si nullus tumor, nulla durities, nullus dolor visceribus, aut capiti, aut præcordiis suberit. Et ex toto numquam gestari corpus dolens debet, sive id in toto, sive in parte est; nisi tamen solis nervis dolentibus; neque unquam increscente febre, sed in remissione ejus.

Genera autem gestationis plura sunt; quæ adhibenda sunt et pro viribus cujusque, et pro opibus; ne aut imbecillum hominem nimis digerant, aut hu-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XV.

## DE GESTATIONE.

GESTATIO quoque est aptissima longis morbis et jam inclinatis: que est utilis et in iis corporibus quæ jam carent febre ex toto sed adhuc non possunt exerceri per se; et iis quibus lentæ reliquæ morborum remanent, neque eliduntur aliter. Asclepiades dixit utendum gestatione, etiam in recenti que vehementi, que præcipue ardente febre, ad discutiendam eam; sed id fit periculose; que impetus ejusmodi sustinetur melius quiete. Tamen si quis volet experiri, experiatur sic, si lingua non erit aspera, si nullus tumor, nullo durities, nullus dolor suberit visceribus, aut capiti, aut præcordiis. Et ex toto corpus dolens, nunquam debet gestari, sive id est in toto, sive in parte. Nisi tamen nervis solis dolentibus; neque unquam, febre increscente, sed in remissione ejus.

Autem sunt plura genera gestationis; quæ sunt adhibenda, et pro viribus et opibus cujusque; ne digerant imbecillum hominem nimis, aut ne desint

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XV.

## OF GESTATION.

GESTATION also is well adapted to chronic and regressing diseases: and it is also useful to those who are entirely free from fever, but are unable to be exercised by their own efforts; and to those in whom the lingering sequelæ of diseases still remain, nor can they be excorporated otherwise. Asclepiades said that gestation is to be used even in a recent and violent fever; and especially in an ardent one, in order to shake it off: but that is attended with danger, and an impetus of that disease is better sustained by rest. Yet if any one wish to try it, let him do it when the tongue is not rough, when there is no swelling, no induration, no pain, either in the viscera, the head, or præcordia. Hence, a body in pain ought never to be carried, whether it be in the whole, or in a part, unless the nerves alone be in pain: nor in the increase of a fever, but in the remission of it.

There are many kinds of gestation: which are to be employed both according to the strength and the resources of each individual; lest they over-exhaust the weak

mili desint. Lenissima est navi, vel in portu, vel in flumine; vehementior vel in alto mari nave, vel lectica; etiamnum acrior vehiculo. Atque hæc ipsa et intendi et leniri possunt. Si nihil horum est, suspendi lectus debet, et moveri: si ne id quidem est, at certe uni pedi subjiendum fulmentum est, atque ita lectus huc et illuc manu impellendus.

Et levia quidem genera exercitationis infirmis conveniunt: valentiora vero iis, qui jam pluribus diebus febre liberati sunt; aut iis, qui gravium morborum initia sic sentiunt, ut adhuc febre vacent (quod et in tabe, et in stomachi vitiis, et cum aqua cutem subiit, et interdum in morbo regio fit) aut ubi quidam morbi, qualis comitialis, qualis insania est, sine febre, quamvis diu, manent. In quibus affectibus ea quoque genera exercitationum necessaria sunt, quæ comprehendimus eo loco, quo, quemadmodum sani, neque firmi homines se gererent, præcepimus.

## ORDO.

humili. Lenissima est navi, vel in portu vel in flumine; (est) vehementior nave vel in alto mari vel lectica: etiamnum (est) acrior vehiculo. Atque hæc ipsa possunt et intendi et leniri. Si est nihil horum, lectus debet suspendi et moveri, si nequidem id est, at certe fulmentum (est) subjiendum uni pedi, atque ita lectus est impellendus huc et illuc manu.

Et quidem levia genera exercitationis conveniunt infirmis: vero valentiora iis, qui liberati sunt febre jam pluribus diebus; aut iis qui sic sentiunt initia gravium morborum, ut vacent febre adhuc, (quod fit, et in tabe, et in vitiis stomachi, et cum aqua subiit cutem, et interdum in regio morbo,) aut ubi quidam morbi qualis comitialis est, qualis insania, manent sine febre quamvis diu. In quibus affectibus quoque ea genera exercitationum sunt necessaria quæ comprehendimus eo loco quo præcepimus quemadmodum sani, neque firmi homines gererent se.

## TRANSLATION.

man, nor be beyond the reach of the poor man. The most gentle gestation, is that of a ship, either in a harbour or in a river; the more violent is on the high sea, or in a suspension-couch; more violent still is that of a carriage. Indeed each of these may be rendered more or less gentle. If there be none of these things within a man's reach, a bed ought to be suspended, and agitated from side to side, if there be not even that, a prop is to be put under one foot (22), and by this *fulcrum*, the bed is to be propelled backwards and forwards by the hand.

Indeed the lighter kinds of exercise are adapted to the infirm: but more vehement to those who have already been freed from fever for several days; or to those who feel the first indications of severe diseases, although they may be as yet free from fever, (which happens both in consumption, in complaints of the stomach, in dropsies, and sometimes in jaundice;) or when some maladies, such as epilepsy (23) or insanity, although they remain for a long time without fever. In which affections, those kinds of exercises are also necessary, which we have comprehended in that place, where we have prescribed rules for the management and conduct of healthy, but delicate persons.

## CAP. XVI.

## DE ABSTINENTIA.

ABSTINENTIE vero duo genera sunt: alterum, ubi nihil assumit æger; alterum, ubi non nisi quod oportet. Initia morborum primum famem, sitimque desiderant: ipsi deinde morbi, moderationem, ut (neque aliud) quam expedit, neque ejus ipsius nimium sumatur. Neque enim convenit juxta inediam protinus satietatem esse. Quod si sanis quoque corporibus inutile est, ubi aliqua necessitas famem fecit; quanto inutilius est in corpore etiam ægro? Neque ulla res magis adjuvat laborantem, quam tempestiva abstinentia.

Intemperantes homines apud nos, ipsi cibi tempora curantibus dant. Rursus alii, tempora medicis pro dono remittunt, sibi ipsis modum vindicant. Liberaliter agere se credunt, qui cetera illorum arbitrio relinquunt, in genere

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVI.

## DE ABSTINENTIA.

VERO sunt duo genera abstinentiæ: alterum ubi æger assumit nihil: alterum ubi, non nisi quod oportet. Primum initio morborum desiderant famem que sitim: deinde moderationem morbi ipsi, ut neque aliud sumatur quam expedit, neque nimium ejus ipsius. Enim neque convenit satietatem esse protinus juxta inediam. Quod si est inutile quoque sanis corporibus, ubi aliqua necessitas fecit famem, quanto inutilius est in corpore etiam ægro? Neque ulla res adjuvat magis laborantem quam tempestiva abstinentia.

Intemperantes homines ipsi apud nos dant tempora cibi curantibus. Rursus alii remittunt tempora medicis pro dono, vindicant modum sibi ipsis. Credunt se agere liberaliter, qui relinquunt cætera arbitrio illorum, (sed) sunt liberi in genere cibi; quasi

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVI.

## OF ABSTINENCE.

Now there are two kinds of ABSTINENCE; one when the patient takes nothing; another when he only takes what is barely necessary for him. First, the commencement of diseases requires hunger and thirst as an indispensable prerequisite: afterwards the diseases themselves require *dietetic* regulation, so that nothing but what is proper may be taken, nor too much of that itself. For it is not fit that satiety, should be immediately followed by hunger. But if it prove hurtful even to healthy persons, when by some necessity hunger has become expedient; how much more hurtful is it in a body already diseased? Nor can any thing alleviate the sick more than seasonable abstinence.

Intemperate men among us, prescribe for themselves the times of eating, but leave the quantity (24) to their attendants. Others again surrender the times to the discretion of the physicians for a fee, but reserve to themselves the privilege of determining the quantity. There are some who imagine themselves to act liberally, who relinquish every thing else to the judgement of their physicians, but are at liberty to choose the kind of food, as if it were asked—*What is the extent of a physician's*



cibi liberi sunt; quasi quærat, quid medico liceat, non quid ægro salutare sit. Cui vehementer nocet, quoties in ejus, quod assumitur, vel tempore, vel modo, vel genere peccatur.

## ORDO.

quærat, quid liceat medico, non quid sit salutare ægro. Cui nocet vehementer, quoties peccatur, vel tempore, vel modo, vel genere ejus quod assumitur.

## TRANSLATION.

*authority, not what may be salutary to the patient; who is seriously injured, as often as he offends, either in the time, quantity, or quality, of his nourishment taken.*

## CAP. XVII.

## DE SUDORE.

SUDOR etiam duobus modis elicitur: aut sicco calore, aut balneo. Siccus calor est, et arenæ calidæ, et laconici, et clibani, et quarundam naturalium sudationum, ubi terra profusus calidus vapor ædificio includitur, sicut super Baias in myrtetis habemus. Præter hæc, sole quoque, et exercitatione movetur. Utiliaque hæc genera sunt, quoties humor intus nocet, isque digerendus est. Ac nervorum quoque quædam vitia sic optime curantur. Sed cetera infirmis possunt convenire: sol, et exercitatio tantum robustioribus; qui tamen sine febre, vel inter initia morborum, vel etiam gravibus morbis

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVII.

## DE SUDORE.

SUDOR etiam elicitur duobus modis; aut sicco calore, aut balneo. Siccus calor est et calidæ arenæ, et laconici et clibani, et quarundam naturalium sudationum, ubi calidus vapor profusus terra includitur ædificio, sicut habemus in myrtetis super Baias. Præter hæc movetur quoque sole, et exercitatione. Que hæc genera sunt utilia, quoties humor intus nocet, que is est digerendus. Ac quoque quædam vitia nervorum curantur optime sic. Sed cætera possunt convenire infirmis: sol et exercitatio tantum robustioribus; qui (sunt) sine febre tamen tenentur vel inter initia morborum, vel etiam gravibus morbis.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVII.

## OF PERSPIRATION.

Now sweating is elicited in two ways, either by a dry heat, or by a bath. Dry heat is produced by hot sand, the Laconicum, (25) and Clibanum, and some natural sweating places where the hot vapour exhaled from the earth is inclosed by a building, such as we have in the Myrtle-groves above Baiæ (26). Besides these, it is also excited by the sun and exercise: and these last kinds are useful when the vitiated humour within offends, and must be dispersed. Also some complaints of the nerves are treated best in this manner. But the other methods are best adapted for the weak: the sun and exercise alone for the more robust; who, being free from fever, yet they are held under the influence of incipient diseases, or

tenentur. Cavendum autem est, ne quid horum vel in febre, vel in cruditate tentetur.

At balnei duplex usus est. Nam modo, discussis febribus, initium cibi plenioris, vinique firmioris, valetudini facit; modo febrem ipsam tollit. Fereque adhibetur, ubi summam cutem relaxari, evocarique corruptum humorem, et habitum corporis mutari expedit. Antiqui timidius eo utebantur: Asclepiades audacius. Neque terrere autem ea res, si tempestiva est, debet: ante tempus, nocet. Quisquis febre liberatus est, simulatque ea uno die non accessit, eo qui proximus est, post tempus accessionis, tuto lavari potest. At si circuitum habere ea febris solita est, sic ut tertio, quartove die revertatur, quandocumque non accessit, balneum tutum est.

Manentibus vero adhuc febribus, si hæ sunt lentæ, lenesque jamdiu male habent, recte medicina ista tentatur: cum eo tamen, ne præcordia dura sint, neve ea tumeant, neve lingua aspera sit, neve aut in medio corpore, aut in capite dolor ullus sit, neve tum febris increscat. Et in iis quidem febribus, quæ

## ORDO.

Autem est cavendum ne quid horum tentetur, vel in febre vel in cruditate.

At usus balnei est duplex. Nam modo febribus discussis, facit initium plenioris cibi que firmioris vini valetudine; modo tollit febrem ipsam. Que adhibetur fere ubi expedit summam cutem relaxari, que corruptum humorem evocari et habitum corporis mutari. Antiqui utebantur eo timidius: Asclepiades audacius. Autem neque ea res debet terrere, si est tempestiva; ante tempus nocet. Quisquis est liberatus febre, simulatque ea non accessit uno die; eo qui est proximus post tempus accessionis potest lavari tuto. At si ea febris solita est habere circuitum sic ut revertatur tertio, vel quarto die, quandocumque non accessit, balneum est tutum.

Vero febribus adhuc manentibus, si hæ sunt lentæ que lenes, habent male jam diu, ista medicina tentatur recte: tamen ne præcordia sint dura cum eo, neve ea tumeant, neve lingua sit aspera, neve sit ullus dolor, aut in medio corpore aut in capite, neve tum febris increscat. Et quidem in iis febribus quæ habent certum

## TRANSLATION.

even in severe diseases (27). But we must be guarded against trying any of these, either in fever or in crudity.

But the use of the bath is twofold. For sometimes, the fever being removed, it prepares the patient for a fuller diet, and stronger wine for the convalescent: sometimes it even carries off a fever itself. It is employed generally when it is expedient to relax the surface of the skin, to excorporate the corrupt and peccant humour, and a *bad* habit of body to be changed. The ancients used it with much timidity: Asclepiades more fearlessly. But it ought not to alarm any one, if it be employed seasonably; it is injurious when prematurely applied. If a person have been relieved of a fever, and experience no accession for one entire day, on the succeeding day he may bathe with safety, after the usual time of the accession. But if that fever have been accustomed to run a circuitous course, making a periodical return on the third, or fourth day, if that be passed over without an accession; the bath is safe.

But during the continuance of fever, if these be slow, and there be chronic disease of the spleen, this remedy may be rightly employed, but upon this condition, that the præcordia be not hard, or swollen, or the tongue rough, and that there be no pain either in the trunk of the body, or the head, and that the fever be not then progressing. Indeed in those fevers which have a certain round, there are

certum circuitum habent, duo balnei tempora sunt; alterum, ante horrorem; alterum, febre finita: in iis vero, qui lentis febriculis diu detinentur, cum aut ex toto recessit accessio; aut, si id non solet, certe lenita est, jamque corpus tam integrum est, quam maxime esse in eo genere valetudinis solet.

Imbecillus homo, iturus in balneum, vitare debet, ne ante frigus aliquod experiatur: ubi in balneum venit, paulisper resistere, experiri, num tempora adstringantur, et an sudor aliquis oriat: illud si incidit, hoc non secutum est, inutile eo die balneum est; perungendusque is leniter, et auferendus est, vitandumque omni modo frigus, et abstinentia utendum.

At si temporibus integris, primum ibi, deinde alibi sudor incipit, fovendum os aqua calida; tum in solio desidendum est; atque ibi quoque videndum, num sub primo contactu aquæ calidæ summa cutis inhorrescat: quod vix tamen fieri potest, si priora recte cesserunt; certum id autem signum inutilis balnei est. Ante vero, quam in aquam calidam se demittat, an postea aliquis perungi debeat, ex ratione valetudinis suæ cognoscat. Fere tamen,

## ORDO.

circuitum, sunt duo tempora balnei: alterum ante horrorem, alterum, febre finita: vero in iis qui detinentur diu lentis febriculis, cum accessio aut recessit ex toto; aut si id non solet certe est lenita, que corpus est jam tam integrum, quam maxime solet esse in eo genere valetudinis.

Imbecillus homo, iturus in balneum, debet vitare frigus, ne aliquod experiatur ante: ubi venit in balneum resistere paulisper, que experiri, num tempora adstringantur, et an aliquis sudor oriat: si illud incidit hoc non secutum est, balneum est inutile eo die; que is est perungendus leniter et auferendus, que (est) vitandum frigus omni modo, et utendum abstinentia.

At si temporibus integris sudor incipit primum ibi, deinde alibi, os (est) fovendum calida aqua, tum desidendum in solio, atque quoque videndum ibi, num sub primo contactu calidæ aquæ, summa cutis inhorrescat: quod vix potest fieri, tamen si priora cesserunt recte: autem id est certum signum balnei inutilis. Vero aliquis cognoscat ex ratione suæ valetudinis, an debeat perungi ante (vel) postea quam demittat se in calidam aquam. Tamen

## TRANSLATION.

two periods of bathing; the one before shivering; the other when the paroxysm is over: but those who have had lingering fevers for a long time, ought to use it, either when the accession has entirely subsided; or, if that be not regular, at least when it has been alleviated, and the body has now become as sound as usual in that state of illness.

A weak man, about to enter the bath, should guard against previous cold; and when he has come into the bath he ought to wait a little, and ascertain whether his temples be constricted, and whether he begin to perspire: if the former have taken place, and the latter not followed, the bath on that day would be injurious; he is to be anointed gently and borne away; to avoid cold by all means, and to practise abstinence.

But if his temples be sound, and perspiration first appear there, afterwards in other parts, he should in that case foment his mouth with warm water, then descend into the solium, and even there to observe whether the first contact with the hot water on the skin produce shivering: which can scarcely happen, if the former circumstances have occurred favourably: hence it is a certain sign of a bath being injurious. Now a person may know from the nature of his constitution, whether he ought to anoint before or after going into the warm bath. Yet generally, (unless it shall be



nisi ubi nominatim, ut postea fiat, præcipietur, moto sudore leniter corpus perungendum; deinde in aquam calidam demittendum est. Atque hic quoque habenda virium ratio est, neque committendum, ut per æstum anima deficiat; sed maturius is auferendus, curioseque vestimentis involvendus est, ut neque ad eum frigus aspiret, et ibi quoque, antequam aliquid assumat, insudet.

Fomenta quoque calida sunt, milium, sal, arena; quodlibet eorum calefactum, et in linteum conjectum; si minore vi opus est, etiam solum linteum; at si majore, extincti titiones, involutique panniculis, et sic circumdati. Quin etiam calido oleo replentur utriculi; et in vasa fictilia, a similitudine quas lentículas vocant, aqua conjicitur; et sal excipitur linteo sacco, que demittitur in bene calidam aquam; tum collocatur super id membrum, quod fovendum est, collocatur. Juxtaque ignem, ferramenta duo sunt, capitibus paulo latioribus: alterumque ex his demittitur in eum salem, et aqua super leviter aspergitur; ubi frigere cœpit, ad ignem refertur, et idem in altero fit; deinde invicem in utroque: inter quæ descendit salsus et calidus succus, qui contractis aliquo morbo ner-

## ORDO.

fere nisi præcipietur nominatim ut fiat postea corpus perungendum leniter sudore moto: deinde est demittendum in calidam aquam. Atque hic quoque ratio virium est habenda, neque committendum ut anima deficiat per æstum; sed is est auferendus maturius que involvendus curiose vestimentis, ut neque frigus aspiret ad eum et insudet ibi quoque antequam assumat aliquid.

Quoque calida fomenta sunt milium, sal, arena, quodlibet eorum calefactum, et conjectum in linteum; si est opus minore vi, etiam linteum solum: at si majore, titiones extincti que involuti panniculis, et sic circumdati. Quin etiam utriculi replentur calido oleo; et aqua conjicitur in fictilia vasa, quas vocant lentículas a similitudine; et sal excipitur linteo sacco, que demittitur in bene calidam aquam; tum collocatur super id membrum quod est fovendum. Que duo ferramenta sunt juxta ignem, capitibus paulo latioribus; que alterum ex his demittitur in eum salem et aqua aspergitur leviter super; ubi cœpit frigere, refertur ad ignem, et idem fit in altero; deinde invicem in utroque: inter quæ salsus et calidus succus descendit, qui opitulatur nervis contractis aliquo morbo.

## TRANSLATION.

prescribed particularly,) it may be done afterwards, the perspiration having been excited, the body is to be anointed gently, then he is to descend into the hot bath. Here again regard must be had to the strength, nor ought he to be committed to himself, lest fainting take place from the heat: but he is to be borne away quickly, and enveloped carefully in a garment, that the cold may not affect him, and there too he ought to perspire before he takes any thing.

There are also warm fomentations of millet-seed, of salt, or of sand: any one of these being made hot, and put into a linen cloth; if less heat be required, even a linen towel alone; but if much heat be desired, then extinguished fire-brands wrapt up in cloths, and so applied around. Besides these, small leathern-bottles are filled with hot oil, and water poured into earthen vessels, which from the resemblance, they call "little lentils:" and salt is put into a linen bag, and dipped in very hot water; then laid on that limb which is to be fomented. Again two irons are to be put into the fire with broad heads; and one of these is to be inserted into that salt, and the water lightly sprinkled over it; when it has begun to cool, it is to be replaced in the fire again, and the same is to be done with the other; and so on alternately: during which a hot saline juice exudes, which relieves contractions of the nerves from some disease.

vis opitulatur. His omnibus commune est, digerere id, quod vel præcordia onerat, vel fauces strangulat, vel in aliquo membro nocet. Quando autem quoque utendum sit, in ipsis morborum generibus dicitur.

## ORDO.

Est commune omnibus his digerere id quod vel onerat præcordia, vel strangulat fauces, vel nocet in aliquo membro. Autem quando sit utendum quoque dicitur in generibus morborum ipsis.

## TRANSLATION.

All of them have one property in common, to disperse that which either oppresses the præcordia or suffocates the fauces, or injures any limb. But the time of using each of these will be pointed out in the species of diseases themselves.

## CAP. XVIII.

QUI CIBI POTIONESVE, AUT VALENTIS, AUT MEDICINÆ, AUT IMBECILLÆ MATERIE SINT.

CUM de iis dictum sit, quæ detrahendo juvant; ad ea veniendum est, quæ alunt, id est cibum, et potionem. Hæc autem non omnium tantum morborum, sed etiam secundæ valetudinis communia præsidia sunt: pertinetque ad rem, omnium proprietates nosse; primum, ut sani sciant, quomodo his utantur; deinde, ut exsequentibus nobis morborum curationes, liceat species rerum, quæ assumendæ erunt, subjicere, neque necesse sit subinde singulas eas nominare.

Scire igitur oportet, omnia legumina, quæque ex frumentis panificia sunt, generis valentissimi esse, (valentissimum voco, in quo plurimum alimenti est,)

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVIII.

CIBI, VE POTIONES QUI SINT AUT VALENTIS, AUT MEDICINÆ, AUT IMBECILLÆ MATERIÆ.

CUM sit dictum de iis quæ juvant detrahendo: est veniendum ad ea, quæ alunt, id est, cibum et potionem. Autem hæc sunt communia præsidia non tantum omnium morborum, sed etiam secundæ valetudinis: que pertinet ad rem; nosse proprietates omnium; primum, ut sani sciant, quomodo utantur his; deinde ut liceat nobis, exsequentibus curationes morborum, subjicere species rerum quæ erunt assumendæ, neque sit necesse subinde nominare eas singulas.

Igitur oportet scire omnia legumina quæ panificia quæ sunt (facti) ex frumentis, esse valentissimæ generis: (voco valentissimum in quo est plurimum alimenti). Item

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## OF THE VARIOUS KINDS OF FOOD AND DRINK.

As we have treated of those things which assist depletion, we must now proceed to those which nourish us, that is food and drink. Now these are not only the common supports in all diseases, but even of health too: and it is our duty to know the essential properties of all; first, that the healthy may know in what manner they are to use them; and again, that it may be allowed to us, while following up the treatment of diseases, to suggest the kinds of food which will be proper to take, that it may not be necessary to name them, one by one, upon every occasion.

Therefore it behoves us to know, that all pulse, and the bread which is made of corn, are of the *strongest class*: (I call that the strongest, in which there is the most

item omne animal quadrupes domi natum; omnem grandem feram, quales sunt caprea, cervus, aper, onager; omnem grandem avem, quales sunt anser, et pavo, et grus; omnes belluas marinas, ex quibus cetus est, quæque his pares sunt: item mel, et caseum.

Quo minus mirum est, opus pistorium valentissimum esse, quod ex frumento, adipe, melle, caseo constat. In media vero materia numerari ex oleribus debere ea, quorum radices, vel bulbos assumimus; ex quadrupedibus, leporem; aves omnes a minimis ad phœnicopterum; item pisces omnes, qui salem non patiuntur, solidive saliuntur. Imbecillissimam vero materiam esse, omnem caulem oleris, et quidquid in caule nascitur, qualis est cucurbita, et cucumis, et capparitis; omnia poma, oleas, cochleas, itemque conchyliæ. Sed quamvis hæc ita discreta sint, tamen etiam, quæ sub eadem specie sunt, magna discrimina recipiunt; aliaque res alia vel valentior est, vel infirmior.

Siquidem plus alimenti est in pane, quam in ullo alio: firmitus est triticum, quam milium; id ipsum, quam hordeum; et ex tritico firmissima siligo, deinde simila, deinde cui nihil ademptum

## ORDO.

omne quadrupes animal natum domi; omnem grandem feram, quales sunt caprea, cervus, aper, onager; omnem grandem avem quales sunt anser, et pavo, et grus, omnes marinas belluas ex quibus est cetus, quæ sunt pares his: item mel et caseum.

Quo est minus mirum, opus pistorium esse valentissimum, quod constat ex frumento, adipe, melle, caseo: vero ex oleribus ea debere numerari in media materia, radices, vel bulbos quorum assumimus; ex quadrupedibus leporem; omnes aves a minimis ad phœnicopterum; item omnes pisces, qui patiuntur non salem ve saliuntur solidi. Vero imbecillissimam materiam esse, omnem caulem oleris, et quicquid nascitur in caule, qualis est cucurbita, et cucumis, et capparitis: omnia poma, oleas, cochleas, que item conchyliæ. Sed quamvis hæc ita sint discreta, tamen etiam quæ sunt sub eadem specie, recipiunt magna discrimina: que alia res est vel valentior, vel infirmior (quam) alia.

Siquidem est plus alimenti in pane, quam in ullo alio: triticum est firmitus quam milium; id ipsum, quam hordeum, et ex tritico siligo (est) firmissima, deinde simila, deinde cui nihil ademptum

## TRANSLATION.

nutriment:) also every quadruped animal reared at home; all large wild animals, such as the roe, the stag, the boar, the wild-ass; all large fowl, such as the goose, the peacock and the crane; all the great sea fish, among which is the whale (28), and those of a similar kind; also honey and cheese. Therefore, it is the less wonderful, that that compound of the baker is so strong, which is composed of grain, lard, honey and cheese.

But pot-herbs ought to be enumerated in the second class or intermediate materials, whose roots, or bulbs, we use for food: of quadrupeds, the hare; all birds, from the least up to the phœnicopter (29); also all kinds of fish, that cannot bear salt, or are salted whole. But the weakest materials are the stems of all pot-herbs, and whatever grows on a stalk, such as the gourd, the cucumber, and the caper; all fruits, olives, periwinkles (30), and also conchyliæ (31). But although these are thus distinguished, yet there is a great difference in those even under the same species, one containing either more or less nutriment than another.

Therefore, there is more aliment in bread than in any thing else: wheat is stronger than millet; and that again is stronger than barley: of the wheats, the strongest is the siligo (32); the next is simila, afterwards that from which no



est, quod *αὐτόπυρον* Græci vocant; infirmior est, ex polline; infirmissimus, cibarius panis. Ex leguminibus vero valentior faba, vel lenticula, quam pisum. Ex oleribus valentior rapa, napique, et omnes bulbi (in quibus cepam quoque, et allium numero) quam pastinaca, vel quæ specialiter radícula appellatur: item firmior brassica, et beta, et porrum, quam lactuca, vel cucurbita, vel asparagus.

At ex fructibus surculorum valentiores uvæ, ficus, nuces, palmulæ, quam quæ poma proprie nominantur: atque ex his ipsis firmiora, quæ succosa, quam quæ fragilia sunt. Item ex iis avibus, quæ in media specie sunt, valentiores eæ, quæ pedibus, quam quæ volatu magis nituntur; et ex iis, quæ volatu fidunt, firmiores quæ grandiores aves, quam quæ minutæ sunt; ut ficedula et turdus. Atque eæ quoque, quæ in aqua degunt, leviores cibum præstant, quam quæ natandi scientiam non habent.

Inter domesticas vero quadrupedes, levissima suilla est; gravissima, bubula: itemque ex feris, quo majus quodque animal, eo robustior ex eo cibum est. Pisciumque eorum, qui ex media

## ORDO.

est, quod Græci vocant *αὐτόπυρον* (autopyron): ex polline est infirmior; cibarius panis infirmissimus. Vero ex leguminibus faba, vel lenticula est valentior quam pisum. Ex oleribus rapa, quæ napi, et omnes bulbi (in quibus numero quoque cepam et allium) valentior quam pastinaca, vel quæ appellatur specialiter radícula: item brassica, et beta, et porrum, firmior quam lactuca, vel cucurbita vel asparagus.

At ex fructibus surculorum, uvæ, ficus, nuces, palmulæ (sunt), valentiores quam quæ nominantur proprie poma: atque ex his ipsis quæ succosa sunt firmiora quam quæ sunt fragilia. Item ex iis avibus quæ sunt in media specie, eæ valentiores quæ nituntur pedibus, quam quæ magis volatu, et ex iis quæ fidunt volatu, quæ grandiores aves firmiores quam quæ sunt minutæ ficedula et turdus. Atque quoque eæ quæ degunt in aqua præstant leviores cibum quam quæ non habent scientiam natandi.

Vero inter domesticas quadrupedes, suilla est levissima: bubula gravissima, quæ item ex feris, quo majus quodque animal, eo robustior est cibum ex eo. Quæ eorum piscium qui sunt ex

## TRANSLATION.

(husks) have been removed, which the Greeks call autopyros (33): that of pollen is weaker: household-bread the weakest of all. But of the leguminous class (34) the bean or lentil is stronger than the pea. The culinary vegetable, such as the rape and turnips, and all bulbous roots, (among which I number the onion and garlick,) are more nutritive than the parsnip, or that which is called by way of distinction, the garden radish: also the cabbage, beet, and leek, are stronger than the lettuce, gourd, or asparagus.

But the surculous fruits, such as the grape, figs, nuts, and dates, are stronger than those fruits properly named apples: and even of these, the succulent are better than the fragile and mealy. The birds which are in the middle class, are more nutritious which are supported on their feet, than those which fly; and of those who trust to flight, the larger birds are stronger, than those which are small, such as the beccafico and the thrush. Those also which live on water afford a lighter food than those which cannot swim.

But among the domestic quadrupeds, pork is the lightest, beef is the strongest, and of the ferine class, the larger the animal, so much stronger is the food of it. Those fish also, of the middle class, which are most in use, the heaviest are those of

materia sunt, quibus maxime utimur, tamen gravissimi sunt ex quibus salsamenta quoque fieri possunt, qualis lacertus est; deinde qui, quamvis teneriores, tamen duri sunt, ut aurata, corvus, sparus, oculata; tum plani; post quos etiamnum leviores lupi, mullicæ; et post hos, omnes saxatiles.

Neque vero in generibus rerum tantummodo discrimen est, sed etiam in ipsis: quod et ætate fit, et membro, et solo, et cœlo, et habitu. Nam quadrupes omne animal, si lactens est, minus alimenti præstat: itemque quo tenerior pullus cohortalis est: in piscibus quoque media ætas, quæ nondum summam magnitudinem implevit. Deinde ex eodem sue, ungulæ, rostrum, aures, cerebellum; ex agno, hædove, cum petiolis totum caput aliquanto, quam cetera membra, leviora sunt: adeo ut in media materia poni possint. Ex avibus, pectora, colla, alæ recte infirmissimis annumerantur.

Quod ad solum vero pertinet, frumentum quoque valentius est collinum, quam campestre: levior piscis inter saxa editus, quam in arena; levior in arena, quam in limo: quo fit, ut ex stagno, vel lacu, vel flumine eadem genera graviora sint: leviorque, qui in

## ORDO.

media materia, quibus utimur maxime, tamen gravissimi sunt ex quibus salsamenta possunt quoque fieri, qualis lacertus est, deinde, qui quamvis teneriores, tamen sunt duri, ut aurata, corvus, sparus, oculata; tum plani, post quos etiamnum leviores, lupi quæ mullicæ; et post hos omnes saxatiles.

Vero neque est discrimen tantummodo in generibus rerum, sed etiam in ipsis, quod fit et ætate et membro, et solo, et cœlo, et habitu. Nam omne quadrupes animal si est lactens, præstat minus alimenti; que item pullus cohortalis quo tenerior est: in piscibus quoque media ætas quæ implevit nondum summam magnitudinem, deinde ex eodem sue ungulæ, rostrum, aures, cerebellum: ex agno, ve hædo, totum caput cum petiolis, sunt aliquanto leviora quam cætera membra; adeo ut possint poni in media materia. Ex avibus colla, pectora, ve alæ recte adnumerantur infirmissimis.

Vero quod pertinet ad solum frumentum collinum est quoque valentius quam campestre, piscis editus inter saxa levior quam in arena: levior in arena quam in limo: quo fit ut eadem genera sint graviora ex stagno, vel lacu vel flumine: que qui vixit in

## TRANSLATION.

which salsamenta (35) may be made, such as the lacertus (36); after those, although more tender, yet they are hard, such as the aurata, corvus, sparus, oculata; then come the flat fish, after which are lighter still, the lupi, and mullicæ, and after these all fish found among rocks.

But there is not only a difference in the classes, but in the individual species themselves, which arises from their age, the part, the soil, climate, and condition. For every quadruped animal, if suckling, affords less nutriment; and also a coop-fed chicken, the more tender it is: in fish also, the middle age, before they acquire their full growth. Of swine, the feet, snout, ears and brain: of the lamb or the kid, the whole head with the pettitoes are somewhat lighter than the other parts; so that they may be ranked in the middle class. Of birds, the breasts, necks and wings are correctly considered the weakest.

But what relates to soil, that corn which is reared on high grounds, is firmer than that which is produced upon a plane: fish caught among rocks are lighter than those found in sand; lighter in sand, than in mud; hence it happens that the same species are heavier reared in a pond, lake or river: and a fish living in deep water is lighter

alto, quam qui in vado vixit. Omne etiam ferum animal domestico levius; et quodcumque humido cœlo, quam quod sicco natum est.

Deinde eadem omnia pingua, quam macra; recentia, quam salsa; nova, quam vetusta, plus alimenti habent. Tum res eadem magis alit jurulenta, quam assa; magis assa, quam elixa. Ovum durum valentissimæ materiæ est; molle, vel sorbile, imbecillissimæ. Cumque panificia omnia firmissima sint, elota tamen quædam genera frumenti, ut alica, oryza, ptisana, vel ex iisdem facta sorbitio, vel pulticula, et aqua quoque madens panis, imbecillissimis annumerari potest.

Ex potionibus vero, quæcumque ex frumento facta est, itemque lac, mulsum, defrutum, passum, vinum aut dulce, aut vehemens, aut mustum, aut magnæ vetustatis, valentissimi generis est. At acetum, et id vinum quod paucorum annorum, vel austerum, vel pingue est, in media materia est; ideoque infirmis numquam generis alterius dari debet.

Aqua omnium imbecillissima est. Firmiorque ex frumento potio est, quo firmius fuit ipsum frumentum: firmior ex eo vino, quod bono solo, quam quod tenui; quodque temperato cœlo,

## ORDO.

alto, levior quam qui in vado. Etiam omne ferum animal levius quam domestico, et quodcumque est natum humido cœlo, quam quod sicco.

Deinde omnia eadem pingua, habent plus alimenti quam macra; recentia quam salsa, nova quam vetusta. Tum eadem res alit plus, jurulenta quam assa: magis assa quam elixa. Durum ovum est valentissimæ materiæ, molle, vel sorbile imbecillissimæ. Que cum omnia panificia sint firmissima, tamen quædam genera frumenti elota; ut alica, oryza, ptisana vel sorbitio vel pulticula facta ex iisdem et quoque panis madens aqua potest admunerari imbecillissimis.

Vero ex potionibus quæcumque est facta ex frumento que item lac, mulsum, defrutum, passum, vinum aut dulce, aut vehemens, aut mustum, aut magnæ vetustatis, est valentissimi generis. At acetum et id vinum quod est paucorum annorum, vel austerum vel pingue est in media materia, que ideo alterius generis debet nunquam dari infirmis.

Aqua est imbecillissima omnium. Que potio ex frumento est firmior, quo frumentum ipsum fuit firmius: firmior ex eo vino quod natum est bono solo, quam quod tenui: que quod temperato cœlo quam quod aut ni-

## TRANSLATION.

than one in a shallow. Also every ferine animal is lighter than one domesticated; and whatever is reared in a humid climate (*is lighter*) than those in a dry.

In the next place, all these being fat have more nourishment than the lean; fresh, more than salted; new, than stale. Then the same article nourishes more, when made into soup than roasted; more roasted, than boiled. Hard boiled eggs are of the strongest class; soft or poached eggs are of the weakest. Yet although all bread-grains are the strongest, there are some species of corn being washed, such as alica (37), rice, struck-barley (38), or gruel, or pottage (39) made of these, and also bread moistened with water, may be placed in the weakest class.

But of drinks, whatever is prepared from grain, also milk, mulse, defrutum (40), raisin-wine, wine, either sweet or strong, new wine or very old, are of the most nutritious kind. But vinegar, and wine a few years old, whether austere or rich, are in the middle class: and on that account the other kind ought never to be given to the weak.

Water is the weakest of drinks. All drinks prepared from grain, have a correspondent strength with that grain: and the wine produced on a good soil is stronger than that of a thin light soil; and that which has been cultivated in a



quam quod aut nimis humido, aut nimis sicco, nimiumque aut frigido, aut calido natum est. Mulsum, quo plus mellis habet; defrutum, quo magis incoctum; passum, quo ex sicciore uva est, eo valentius est.

Aqua levissima pluvialis est; deinde fontana; tum ex flumine; tum ex puteo; posthæc ex nive, aut glacie; gravior his, ex lacu; gravissima, ex palude. Facilis etiam, et necessaria cognitio est naturam ejus requirentibus. Nam levis, pondere apparet; et ex iis, quæ pondere pares sunt, eo melior quæque est, quo celerius et calefit et frigescit, quoque celerius ex ea legumina percoquantur.

Fere vero sequitur, ut, quo valentior quæque materia est, eo minus facile concoquatur; sed si concocta est, plus alat. Itaque utendum est materiæ genere pro viribus; modusque omnium pro genere sumendus. Ergo imbecillis hominibus, rebus infirmissimis opus est; mediocriter firmos, media materia optime sustinet; et robustis apta validissima est. Plus deinde aliquis assumere ex levioribus potest; magis in iis, quæ valentissima sunt, temperare sibi debet.

## ORDO.

mis humido aut nimis sicco, quæ aut nimium frigido, aut calido. Mulsum est eo valentius, quo habet plus mellis: defrutum quo magis incoctum; passum quo est sicciore uva.

Pluvialis aqua est levissima: deinde, fontana; tum ex flumine; tum ex puteo: post hæc ex nive, aut glacie; gravior his ex lacu; gravissima ex palude. Etiam cognitio est facilis, et necessaria requirentibus naturam ejus. Nam levis apparet pondere, et ex iis quæ sunt pares pondere, quæque est eo melior, quo celerius et calefit et frigescit, quæ quo celerius legumina percoquantur ex ea.

Vero fere sequitur, ut, quo valentior quæque materia est, eo minus facile concoquatur; sed si est concocta alat plus. Itaque est utendum genere materiæ pro viribus: quæ modus omnium sumendus pro genere. Ergo imbecillis hominibus est opus infirmissimis rebus: media materia sustinet optime mediocriter firmos; et validissima est apta robustis. Deinde a quis potest assumere plus ex levioribus; debet temperare sibi magis in iis quæ sunt valentissima.

## TRANSLATION.

temperate atmosphere, than the production of an air either too moist or too dry, too cold or too hot. Hydromel is the stronger, in proportion to the honey contained in it: defrutum, the longer it is boiled; raisin-wine, by how much dryer the grapes of which it is made.

Rain water is the lightest; next is spring water, then river water; and lastly that from a well; after these, that from snow or ice; lake-water is heavier than these. The heaviest is marsh-water. The knowledge also, is both easy and necessary to those desirous of searching into the nature of it. For light water is apparent by the weight; and of those which are of equal weights, by how much the sooner any of them become hot or cold, by so much are they the more preferable, and the sooner leguminous articles are boiled in it.

But for the most part, the more substantial each article may be, it is boiled less easily; but if concocted, it is the more nutritious. Therefore the nature of each article must be determined by the strength of the patient and the quantity to be taken proportioned to the kind. Thus a weak man must make use of the weakest things; the middle class support best the moderately strong; and the strongest is fit for the robust. Lastly, a person may take more of that which is lighter; but in those things which are more substantial he ought to moderate his desires.

## CAP. XIX.

QUÆ NATURA, AC PROPRIETAS CUJUS-  
QUE REI SIT, QUA VESCIMUR.

NEQUE hæc sola discrimina sunt; sed etiam aliæ res boni succi, aliæ mali sunt; quas *εὐχύλους* vel *κακοχύλους* Græci vocant; aliæ lenes, aliæ acres; aliæ crassiorem pituitam in nobis faciunt, aliæ tenuiorem; aliæ idoneæ stomacho, aliæ alienæ sunt: itemque aliæ infant, aliæ ab hoc absunt; aliæ calefaciunt, aliæ refrigerant; aliæ facile in stomacho acescunt, aliæ non facile intus corrumpuntur; aliæ movent alvum, aliæ supprimunt; aliæ citant urinam, aliæ tardant; quædam somnum movent, quædam sensus excitant. Quæ omnia ideo noscenda sunt, quoniam aliud alii, vel corpori, vel valetudini, convenit.

ORDO.

## CAP. XIX.

QUÆ SIT NATURA AC PROPRIETAS CUJUSQUE REI, QUA VESCIMUR.

NEQUE sunt hæc sola discrimina, sed etiam aliæ res sunt boni succi, aliæ mali; quas Græci vocant *εὐχύλους* (*euchulous*) vel *κακοχύλους* (*cacochulous*) aliæ lenes; aliæ acres; aliæ faciunt crassiorem pituitam in nobis; aliæ tenuiorem; aliæ acescunt facile in stomacho; alienæ: que item aliæ infant, aliæ absunt ab hoc; aliæ calefaciunt; aliæ refrigerant; aliæ acescunt facile in stomacho; aliæ non corrumpuntur facile intus; aliæ movent alvum: aliæ supprimunt, aliæ citant urinam; aliæ tardant, quædam movent somnum, quædam excitant sensus. Omnia quæ sunt noscenda, ideo quoniam aliud convenit alii vel corpori valetudini.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIX.

## GENERAL PROPERTIES OF DIFFERENT FOODS.

NOR are these the only differences; for some things afford good juices, others bad; these the Greeks call *euchulous* or *cacochulous*: some are mild, others acrid; some generate a thicker phlegm in us, others more fluid; some are proper for the stomach, others are improper; and also, some produce flatus, others do not. Some warm, others refrigerate; some readily generate acid in the stomach, others are not so easily decomposed; some move the bowels, others suppress them; some promote the urine, others retard it; some induce sleep, others rouse the senses. All these things ought to be known, on this account, that one thing may be proper, either for the constitution of a patient, or some peculiarity in another.

## CAP. XX.

## ORDO.

DE HIS, QUÆ BONI SUCCI SUNT.

CAP. XX.

DE HIS, QUÆ SINT BONI SUCCI.

BONI succi sunt, triticum, siligo, alica, oryza, amyllum, tragus, ptisana, lac, caseus mollis, omnis venatio, omnes aves, quæ ex media materia sunt; ex majoribus quoque eæ, quas supra nominavi: medii inter teneros duosque pisces, ut mullus, et lupus: verna lactuca, urtica, malva, cucumis, cucurbita, ovum sorbile, portulaca, cochleæ, palmulæ: ex pomis quodcumque neque acerbum, neque acidum est: vinum dulce, vel lene, passum, defrutum, oleæ, quæ ex his duobus in alterutro servatæ sunt: vulvæ, rostra, trunculique suum, omnis pinguis caro, omnis glutinosa, omne jecur.

TRITICUM, siligo, alica, oryza, amyllum, tragus, ptisana, lac, mollis caseus, omnis venatio, omnes aves quæ sunt ex media materia sunt boni succi; quoque eæ ex majoribus, quas nominavi supra: medii inter teneros que duos pisces, ut mullus, et lupus, verna lactuca, urtica, malva, cucumis, cucurbita, ovum sorbile portulaca, cochleæ, palmulæ: ex pomis quodcumque est neque acerbum neque acidum: vinum dulce, vel lene, passum, defrutum, oleæ quæ servatæ sunt in alterutro ex his duobus: vulvæ, rostræ, que trunculi suum, omnis pinguis caro, omnis glutinosa, omne jecur.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XX.

OF THOSE THINGS CONTAINING GOOD JUICES.

HEALTHY juices are produced by wheat, siligo, alica, rice, starch (41), tragus (42), struck-barley, milk, soft cheese, all venison, all birds of the middle class; and of the larger birds, those I have mentioned above: of fish, those between the tender and hard, such as the barbel, and the pike; the spring lettuce, the nettle, the mallow, the cucumber, the gourd, poached-eggs, purslane, periwinkles, dates; whatever fruits are neither bitter nor acid: sweet or mild wine, raisin wine, defrutum, olives which have been preserved in either of the two last mentioned liquors: the wombs, cheeks, and pettitoes of swine, all fat flesh, all glutinous substances, and all livers.



## CAP. XXI.

DE HIS, QUÆ MALI SUCCI SUNT.

MALI vero succi sunt, milium, panicum, hordeum, legumina, caro domestica permacra, omnisque caro salsa, omne salsamentum, garum, vetus caseus, siser, radícula, rapa, napi, bulbi, brassica, magisque etiam cyma ejus, asparagus, beta, cucumis, porrum, eruca, nasturtium, thymum, nepeta, satureia, hyssopum, ruta, anethum, fœniculum, cuminum, anisum, lapathum, sinapi, allium, cepa, lienes, renes, intestina, pomum quodcumque acidum vel acerbum est, acetum, omnia acria, acida, acerbæ, oleum, pisces quoque saxatiles, omnesque, qui ex tenerrimo genere sunt, aut qui rursus nimium duri virosique sunt, ut fere quos stagna, lacus, limosique rivi ferunt, quique in nimiam magnitudinem excesserunt.

ORDO.

## CAP. XXI.

DE HIS, QUÆ SUNT MALI SUCCI.

VERO mali succi sunt, milium, panicum, hordeum, legumina, permacra domestica caro, que omnis salsa caro, omne salsamentum, garum, vetus caseus, siser, radícula, rapa, napi, bulbi, brassica, que etiam magis cyma ejus, asparagus, beta, cucumis, porrum, eruca, nasturtium, thymum, nepeta, satureia, hyssopum, ruta, anethum, fœniculum, cuminum, anisum, lapathum, sinapi, allium, cepa, lienes, renes, intestina, quodcumque pomum est acidum vel acerbum, acetum, omnia acria acida, acerbæ, oleum quoque pisces saxatiles, que omnes qui sunt ex tenerrimo genere, aut qui rursus qui sunt nimium duri que virosi ut fere quos stagna, lacus, ve limosi rivi ferunt, sunt mali succi, que qui excesserunt in nimiam magnitudinem.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXI.

OF THOSE THINGS AFFORDING BAD JUICES.

BUT the aliments of bad juice, are millet, panicum(43), barley, leguminous seeds, very lean flesh of domestic animals, all salt meat, all salt provision, garum(44), old cheese, skirret, radishes, turnips, rapes, bulbs, cabbage, especially the scions of it, asparagus, beet, cucumber, leek, rocket, cresses, thyme, cat-mint, savoury, hyssop, rue, dill, fennel, cumin, anise, dock, mustard, garlick, onion; the spleens, kidneys, and intestines of animals, all acid and bitter fruit, vinegar, all acrid, acid, and bitter things, oil, also rock-fish, and all those which are very tender, or very hard and unsavoury, such as those produced from ponds, lakes, or muddy rivers, or those which have acquired a prodigious growth.

## CAP. XXII.

QUÆ RES LENES, QUÆVE ACRES  
SINT.

LENES autem sunt, sorbitio, pulticula, laganum, amyllum, ptisana, pinguis caro, et quæcumque glutinosa est: quod fere quidem in omni domestica fit, præcipue tamen in ungulis, trunculisque suum, in petiolis capitulisque hædorum et vitulorum et agnorum, omnibusque cerebellis; item qui proprie bulbi nominantur, lac, defrutum, passum, nuclei pinei.

Acria sunt, omnia nimis austera, omnia acida, omnia salsa, et mel quidem, quo melius est, eo magis: item allium, cepa, eruca, ruta, nasturtium, cucumis, beta, brassica, asparagus, sinapi, radicula, intubus, ocimum, lactuca, maximaque olerum pars.

ORDO.

## CAP. XXII.

QUÆ RES SINT LENES, VE QUÆ  
(SINT) ACRES.

AUTEM lenes sunt sorbitio, pulticula, laganum, amyllum, ptisana, pinguis caro, et quæcumque est glutinosa: quod fere fit in omni domestica, tamen præcipue in ungulis, que trunculis suum in petiolis, que capitulis hædorum et vitulorum et agnorum, que omnibus cerebellis: item qui proprie nominantur bulbi, lac, defrutum, passum, pinei nuclei.

Acria sunt, omnia nimis austera, omnia acida, omnia salsa, et quidem mel, eo magis, quo est melius: item allium, cepa, eruca, ruta, nasturtium, cucumis, beta, brassica, asparagus, sinapi, radicula, intubus, ocimum, lactuca, que maxima pars olerum.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXII.

OF MILD AND ACRID THINGS.

BUT the mild aliments are gruel, pottage, fritter, starch, ptisan, fat flesh and whatever is glutinous: which is almost the case in all domestic animals, but especially in the legs and feet of the hog; the pettitoes, and heads of kids, calves, and lambs, and in the brains of them all: also those vegetables which are properly named bulbs, milk, defrutum, raisin wine, pine nuts.

The acrid things are, all those which are very austere, all acids, all salted food, and also honey, especially if good: also garlick, onion, rocket, rue, cresses, cucumber, beet, cabbage, asparagus, mustard, radish, endive, basil, lettuce, and most of the pot-herbs.

## CAP. XXIII.

DE HIS, QUÆ CRASSIOREM, QUÆVE TENUIOREM PITUITAM FACIUNT.

CRASSIOREM autem pituitam faciunt, ova sorbilia, alica, oryza, amyllum, ptisana, lac, bulbi, omniaque fere glutinosa. Extenuant eandem, omnia salsa, atque acria, atque acida.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIII.

DE HIS, QUÆ FACIUNT CRASSIOREM PITUITAM, VE QUÆ TENUIOREM.

AUTEM sorbilia ova, alica, oryza, amyllum, ptisana, lac, bulbi, que fere omnia glutinosa faciunt crassioREM pituitam. Omnia salsa, atque acria, atque acida extenuant eandem.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## OF EXPECTORANTS, AND THEIR OPPOSITES.

THESE generate a thicker phlegm, poached eggs, alica, rice, starch, ptisan, milk, bulbs, and for the most part all glutinous things. All salt, and acid, and acrid things extenuate the phlegm.

## CAP. XXIV.

DE HIS, QUÆ STOMACHO IDONEA SUNT.

STOMACHO autem aptissima sunt, quæcumque austera sunt, etiam quæ acida sunt, quæque contacta sale modice sunt: item panis sine fermento, et elota alica, vel oryza, vel ptisana; omnis avis, omnis venatio; atque utraque vel assa, vel elixa: ex domesticis animalibus bubula: si quid ex ceteris sumitur, macrum potius, quam pingue: ex sue, ungulæ, rostra, aures, vulvæque ste-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIV.

DE HIS, QUÆ SUNT IDONEÆ STOMACHO.

AUTEM quæcumque sunt austera, etiam quæ sunt acida, que quæ sunt modice contacta sale, sunt aptissima stomacho: item panis sine fermento, et elota alica, vel oryza, vel ptisana; omnis avis, omnis venatio; atque utraque vel assa, vel elixa: ex domesticis animalibus bubula: si quid ex ceteris sumitur, potius macrum, quam pingue: ex sue, ungulæ, rostra, aures, que steriles vulvæ:

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIV.

## SUCH THINGS AS ACCORD WITH THE STOMACH.

BUT the most proper things for the stomach are all austere, and such things as are acid, and those which are moderately touched with salt; also unleavened bread, washed alica, or rice, or ptisan; all birds and venison, either roasted or boiled; of domestic animals the ox: if any thing be taken from the other animals, the lean is the more preferable than the fat: of the hog, the feet, the cheeks, the ears and



riles : ex oleribus, intubus, lactuca, pastinaca, cucurbita elixa, siser : ex pomis, cerasum, morum, sorbum, pirum fragile, quale Crustumium vel Nævianum est : item pira, quæ reponuntur, Tarentina atque Signina ; malum orbiculatum, aut Scandianum, vel Amerinum, vel cotoneum, vel Punicum, uvæ ex olla, molle ovum, palmulæ, nuclei pinei, oleæ albæ ex dura muria, eadem aceto intinctæ, vel nigræ, quæ in arbore bene permaturuerunt, vel quæ in passo, defrutove servatæ sunt : vinum austerrum, licet etiam asperum sit, item resinatum : duri ex media materia pisces, ostrea, pectines, murices, purpuræ, cochleæ : cibi, potionesque frigidæ, vel ferventes : absinthium.

## ORDO.

ex oleribus, intubus, lactuca, pastinaca, elixa cucurbita, siser : ex pomis, cerasum, morum, sorbum, fragile pirum, quale est Crustumium vel Nævianum : item Tarentina atque Signina pira quæ reponuntur ; orbiculatum malum, aut Scandianum, vel Amerinum, vel cotoneum, vel Punicum, uvæ ex olla, molle ovum, palmulæ, pinei nuclei, albæ oleæ ex dura muria, eadem intinctæ aceto, vel nigræ, quæ permaturuerunt bene in arbore, vel quæ sunt servatæ in passo, ve defruto : austerum vinum, etiam licet sit asperum, item resinatum : duri pisces ex media materia, ostrea, pectines, murices, purpuræ, cochleæ : frigidæ, vel ferventes cibi, que potiones : absinthium.

## TRANSLATION.

sterile wombs : of culinary herbs, endive, lettuce, parsnip, boiled gourd, skirret ; of fruits, the cherry, the mulberry, service-fruit, the mellow pear, such as the Crustumian (45) or Nævianian ; and those pears which are to be laid up, as the Tarentine, and Signine : the orbicular apple, or the Scandianian, or Amerinian, or quince, or the pomegranate, potted grapes, soft eggs, dates, pine-nuts, white olives out of strong pickle, or the same dipped in vinegar, or the black grapes which have thoroughly matured on the tree, or those which have been kept in passum or defrutum ; austere wine although it may be harsh, also resinated (46) : hard fish of the middle class ; oysters, pectines (47), murices, purpuræ (48), periwinkles ; food and drink either hot or cold ; wormwood.

## CAP. XXV.

QUÆ RES ALIENÆ STOMACHO SINT.

ALIENA vero stomacho sunt, omnia tepida, omnia salsa, omnia jurulenta, omnia prædulcia, omnia pingua, sorbitio, panis fermentatus, idemque vel

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXV.

QUÆ RES SINT ALIENÆ STOMACHO.

VERO omnia tepida, omnia salsa, omnia jurulenta, omnia prædulcia, omnia pingua, sorbitio, fermentatus panis, que idem vel ex

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXV.

OF THINGS IMPROPER FOR THE STOMACH.

Now the stomach is offended by all tepid things, all salt meats, all broths, all sweet things, all fat things, gruels, fermented bread, and that made of either millet or

ex milio, vel ex hordeo, oleum, radices olerum, et quodcumque olus ex oleo garove estur, mel, mulsum, defrutum, passum, lac, omnis caseus, uva recens, ficus et viridis et arida, legumina omnia, quæque inflare consueverunt: item thymum, nepeta, satureia, hyssopum, nasturtium, lapathum, lapsana, juglandes. Ex his autem intelligi potest, non, quidquid boni succi est, protinus stomacho convenire; neque quidquid stomacho convenit, protinus boni succi esse.

## ORDO.

milio, vel ex hordeo, oleum, radices olerum, et quodcumque olus estur ex oleo ve garo, mel, mulsum, defrutum, passum, lac, omnis casens, recens uva, et viridis, et arida ficus, omnia legumina, que quæ consueverunt inflare, sunt aliena stomacho: item thymum, nepeta, satureia, hyssopum, nasturtium, lapathum, lapsana, juglandes. Autem non potest intelligi, quidquid ex his est boni succi, protinus convenire stomacho; neque quidquid convenit stomacho, protinus esse boni succi.

## TRANSLATION.

barley, oil, roots of pot-herbs, and whatever herbs be eaten with oil, or with pickle, honey, hydromel, defrutum, raisin wine, milk, all kinds of cheese, fresh grapes, figs both green and dry, all kinds of pulse, and those vegetables which usually produce flatulency; also thyme, catmint, savoury, hyssop, cresses, dock, nipplewort, walnuts. Hence it may be understood, that those things which afford good juice, do not invariably agree with the stomach, nor does that which accords with the stomach, for the same reason yield a good juice.

## CAP. XXVI.

## DE HIS, QUÆ INFLANT.

INFLANT autem, omnia fere legumina, omnia pingua, omnia dulcia, omnia jurulenta, mustum, atque etiam id vinum, cui nihil adhuc ætatis accessit: ex oleribus, allium, cepa, brassica, omnesque radices, excepto sisere et pastinaca, bulbi, ficus etiam aridæ, sed magis virides, uvæ recentes, nuces omnes, exceptis nucleis pineis, lac, omnisque caseus, quidquid deinde subcrudum ali-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVI.

## DE HIS, QUÆ INFLANT.

AUTEM fere omnia legumina, omnia pingua, omnia dulcia, omnia jurulenta, mustum, atque etiam id vinum, cui adhuc nihil ætatis accessit, inflant: ex oleribus, allium, cepa, brassica, que omnes radices, sisere et pastinaca excepto, bulbi, etiam aridæ ficus, sed virides magis, recentes uvæ, omnes nuces, pineis nucleis exceptis, lac, que omnis caseus, deinde quidquid subcrudum ali-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVI.

## OF THOSE THINGS WHICH PRODUCE FLATUS.

FLATULENCIES are generated by almost all the leguminous class, every thing fat, all sweets, all soups, new wine, or even any wine which has not acquired some age; of pot-herbs, garlick, onion, cabbage, and all roots, (except skirret and parsnips), bulbs, also dry figs, but the green more so, fresh grapes, all kinds of nuts, except

quis assumpsit. Minima inflatio fit ex venatione, aucupio, piscibus, pomis, oleis, conchiliis, ovis vel mollibus vel sorbilibus, vino vetere. Fœniculum vero, et anethum, inflationes etiam levant.

## ORDO.

quis assumpsit. Minima inflatio fit ex venatione, aucupio, piscibus, pomis, oleis, conchiliis, vel mollibus vel sorbilibus ovis, vetere vino. Vero fœniculum, et anethum, etiam levant inflationes.

## TRANSLATION.

pine-nuts, milk, and all kinds of cheese, lastly, whatever may be taken in an under-cooked state. Venison is least flatulent, wild fowl, fish, fruits, olives, shell-fish, eggs, either soft or poached, old wine. But fennel and dill even relieve flatulencies.

## CAP. XXVII.

DE HIS, QUÆ CALEFACIUNT, AUT REFRIGERANT.

AT calefaciunt, piper, sal, caro omnis jurulenta, allium, cepa, ficus arida, salsamentum, vinum, et quo meracius est, eo magis. Refrigerant olera, quorum crudi caules assumuntur, ut intubus, et lactuca: item coriandrum, cucumis, elixa cucurbita, beta, mora, cerasa, mala austera, pira fragilia, caro elixa, præcipueque acetum, sive cibus ex eo, sive potio assumitur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVII.

DE HIS, QUÆ AUT CALEFACIANT, AUT REFRIGERANT.

AT piper, sal, omnis jurulenta caro, allium, cepa, arida ficus, salsamentum, vinum, et eo magis, quo est meracius calefaciunt. Olera refrigerant, crudi caules quorum assumuntur, ut intubus, et lactuca: item coriandrum, cucumis, elixa cucurbita, beta, mora, cerasa, austera mala, fragilia pira, elixa caro, que præcipue acetum, sive cibus, sive potio assumitur ex eo.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## OF THE CALEFACIENTS AND REFRIGERANTS.

Now the following excite warmth, pepper, salt, all stewed meat, garlick, onion, dry figs, salt provision, wine, and the more so, in proportion to its purity. Refrigerants are such culinary plants whose stalks are eaten raw, as endive, and lettuce, also coriander, cucumber, boiled gourd, beet, mulberries, cherries, austere apples, mealy pears, boiled flesh, and especially vinegar taken either with the food or drink.



## CAP. XXVIII.

DE HIS, QUÆ FACILE INTUS CORRUMPUNTUR.

FACILE autem intus corrumpuntur, panis fermentatus, et quisquis alius quam ex tritico est, lac, mel; ideoque etiam lactentia atque omne pistorium opus; teneri pisces, ostrea, olera, caseus et recens et vetus, crassa vel tenera caro, vinum dulce, mulsum, defrutum, passum; quidquid deinde vel jurulentum est, vel nimis dulce, vel nimis tenue.

At minime intus vitiantur, panis sine fermento, aves, et eæ potius duriores, duri pisces; neque solum aurata puta, aut scarus, sed etiam loligo, locusta, polypus: item bubula, omnisque dura caro; eademque aptior est, si macra, si salsa est; omniaque salsamenta; cochleæ, murices, purpuræ; vinum austerrum, vel resinatum.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVIII.

DE HIS, QUÆ CORRUMPUNTUR FACILE INTUS.

AUTEM fermentatus panis, et quisquis alius quam est ex tritico, lac, mel, corrumpuntur facile intus; que ideo etiam lactentia atque omne pistorium opus; teneri pisces, ostrea, olera, et recens et vetus caseus, crassa vel tenera caro, dulce vinum, mulsum, defrutum, passum; deinde quidquid est vel jurulentum, vel nimis dulce, vel nimis tenue.

At panis sine fermento, aves, et potius eæ duriores, duri pisces, vitiantur minime intus; neque aurata puta, aut scarus solum, sed etiam loligo, locusta, polypus: item bubula, que omnis dura caro; que eadem est aptior, si est macra, si (est) salsa; que omnia salsamenta; cochleæ, murices, purpuræ; austerrum, vel resinatum vinum.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

OF THOSE THINGS WHICH ARE EASILY DECOMPOSED IN THE STOMACH.

FERMENTED bread is easily corrupted in the stomach, and any other, except that which is made of wheat, milk, honey; therefore all milky substances, and the productions of the pastry cook: tender fish, oysters, pot-herbs, both new and old cheese, coarse or tender flesh, sweet wine, hydromel, defrutum, raisin wine; finally, whatever is either succulent, or too sweet, or too thin.

But unfermented bread is least easily corrupted in the stomach, also birds, and especially the harder kind, hard fish; not only, for instance the aurata, or the scarus (49), but even the calamary, lobster, polypus; also beef and all hard flesh; and the same is more preferable if lean and salted, and all salsamenta; periwinkles, murices, purpuræ; austere or resined wine.

## CAP. XXIX.

DE HIS, QUÆ ALVUM MOVENT.

AT alvum movent, panis fermentatus, magisque si cibarius vel hordeaceus est ; brassica, si subcruda est, lactuca, anethum, nasturtium, ocimum, urtica, portulaca, radícula, capparis, allium, cepa, malva, lapathum, beta, asparagus, cucurbita, cerasa, mora, poma omnia mitia, ficus etiam arida, sed magis viridis, uvæ recentes, pingues minutæ aves, cochleæ, garum, salsamentum, ostrea, pelorides, echini, musculi, et omnes fere conchulæ, maximeque jus earum ; saxatiles, et omnes teneri pisces, sepiarum atramentum ; si qua caro assumitur pinguis, eadem vel jurulenta, vel elixa ; aves, quæ natant ; mel crudum, lac, lactentia omnia, mulsum, vinum dulce vel salsum, aqua, tenera omnia, tepida, dulcia, pingua, elixa, jurulenta, salsa, diluta.

ORDO.

## CAP. XXIX.

DE HIS, QUÆ MOVENT ALVUM.

AT fermentatus panis, quæ magis si est cibarius vel hordeaceus movent alvum ; brassica, si est subcruda, lactuca, anethum, nasturtium, ocimum, urtica, portulaca, radícula, capparis, allium, cepa, malva, lapathum, beta, asparagus, cucurbita, cerasa, mora, omnia mitia poma, etiam arida ficus, sed viridis magis, recentes uvæ, minutæ pingues aves, cochleæ, garum, salsamentum, ostrea, pelorides, echini, musculi, et fere omnes conchulæ, quæ maxime jus earum ; saxatiles, et omnes teneri pisces, atramentum sepiarum ; si qua pinguis caro assumitur, eadem (esse) vel jurulenta, vel elixa ; aves, quæ natant ; crudum mel, lac, omnia lactentia, mulsum, dulce vel salsum vinum, aqua, omnia tenera, tepida, dulcia, pingua, elixa, jurulenta, salsa, diluta.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIX.

OF THOSE THINGS WHICH MOVE THE BOWELS.

THE bowels are moved by fermented bread, and the more so, if it be household, or made of barley ; cabbage, if under-cooked, lettuce, dill, cresses, basil, nettle, purslane, radish, capers, garlick, onion, mallow, dock, beet, asparagus, gourd, cherries, mulberries, all mild fruits, also dry figs, but more so if green, fresh grapes, small fat birds, periwinkles, lobster-pickle, salsamentum, oysters, pelorides (50), sea-urchins, muscles, and almost all small shell-fish, and especially the liquor of them, rock, and all tender fish, the liquor of the cuttle-fish : if any fat meat be taken, the same if stewed or boiled ; birds which swim, raw honey, milk, and all milky things, hydromel, sweet or salt wine, water, every thing tender and tepid, sweet, fat, boiled, stewed, salt, diluted.

## CAP. XXX.

DE HIS, QUÆ ALVUM ADSTRINGUNT.

CONTRA adstringunt, panis ex siligine, vel ex simila; magis, si sine fermento est; magis etiam si ustus est; intenditurque vis ejus etiam, si bis coquitur: pulticula vel ex alica, vel ex panico, vel ex milio; itemque ex iisdem sorbitio; et magis, si hæc ante fricta sunt: lenticula, cui vel beta, vel intubus, vel ambubeia, vel plantago adjecta est; magisque etiam, si illa ante fricta est: per se etiam intubus, vel ex plantagine, vel ambubeia fricta: minuta olera, brassica bis decocta: dura ova, magisque si assa sunt: minutæ aves, merula, palumbus, magisque si in posca decoctus est; grus, omnes aves, quæ magis currunt, quam volant; lepus, caprea; jecur ex iis, quæ sevim habent, maximeque bubulum, ac sevim ipsum: caseus, qui vehementior vetustate fit, vel ea mutatione, quam in eo transmarino videmus, aut si recens est, ex melle, mulsove decoctus: item mel coctum, pira immatura, sorba, magisque ea, quæ torminalia vocantur,

ORDO.

## CAP. XXX.

DE HIS, QUÆ ADSTRINGUNT ALVUM.

CONTRA panis ex siligine, vel ex simila; magis si est sine fermento; etiam magis, si est ustus; que etiam vis ejus intenditur, si coquitur bis: pulticula vel ex alica, vel ex panico, vel ex milio; que item sorbitio ex iisdem; et magis, si hæc sunt fricta ante: lenticula, cui vel beta, vel intubus, vel ambubeia, vel plantago est adjecta; que magis etiam, si illa est fricta ante: etiam intubus per se, vel fricta ex plantagine, vel ambubeia: minuta olera, brassica decocta bis: dura ova, que magis si sunt assa: minutæ aves, merula, palumbus, que magis si est decoctus in posca; grus, omnes aves, quæ currunt magis, quam volant; lepus, caprea; jecur ex iis, quæ habent sevim, que maxime bubulum, ac sevim ipsum: caseus, qui fit vehementior vetustate, vel ea mutatione, quam videmus in eo transmarino, aut si est recens, decoctus ex melle, ve mulso: item coctum mel, immatura pira, sorba, quæ vocantur torminalia, cotonea mala, et

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXX.

OF THOSE THINGS WHICH BIND THE BOWELS.

ON the other hand the bowels are constricted by bread prepared of siligo, or of simila; especially if it be unfermented; also if it be burnt; and this virtue is augmented if it be twice baked: pottage made either of alica, or panicum, or millet; and also gruel of the same; and the more so, if these articles have been previously fried: small lentils to which either beet, endive, siccory, or plantain have been added; especially if these have been previously fried: even endive by itself, or toasted with plantain, or siccory: the small pot-herbs, cabbage twice boiled: hard eggs, particularly if roasted: small birds; the blackbird, the cushat-dove, and more especially if it have been boiled in vinegar and water (51), the crane, all birds which run, more than they fly; the hare, the doe, the livers of those animals which have suet, and particularly the liver and suet of beef itself: cheese, which has become stronger by age, or by that change which we see effected on that which is imported; or if it be new, boiled with honey, or hydromel; also boiled honey, unripe pears, service fruit, particularly that genus called torminalia (52),



mala cotonea, et Punica, oleæ vel albæ vel permaturæ, myrta, palmulæ, purpuræ, murices, vinum resinatum vel asperum, item meracum, acetum, mulsum quod inferbuit, item defrutum, passum, aqua vel tepida vel præfrigida, dura, id est ea, quæ tarde putrescit; ideoque pluvia potissimum: omnia dura, macra, austera, aspera, tosta, et in eadem carne, assa potius, quam elixa.

## ORDO.

Punica, vel albæ vel permaturæ oleæ, myrta, palmulæ, purpuræ, murices, resinatum vel asperum vinum, item meracum, acetum, mulsum quod inferbuit, item defrutum, passum, vel tepida vel præfrigida aqua, dura, id est ea, quæ putrescit tarde; que ideo pluvia potissimum: omnia dura, macra, austera, aspera, tosta, et in eadem carne, assa potius, quam elixa.

## TRANSLATION.

quinces and pomegranates, either white or very ripe olives, myrtle berries, dates, purpuræ, murices, resined or sharp wine, also pure wine, vinegar, hydromel which has been boiled, also defrutum, raisin wine, water either tepid or very cold, and hard, that is, such as slowly becomes putrid, and on that account rain-water is best: every thing hard, lean, austere, sharp, toasted, and of the same meat roasted, rather than boiled.

## CAP. XXXI.

## DE HIS, QUÆ URINAM MOVENT.

URINAM autem movent, quæcumque in horto nascentia boni odoris sunt, ut apium, ruta, anethum, ocimum, mentha, hyssopum, anisum, coriandrum, nasturtium, eruca, fœniculum: præter hæc, asparagus, capparis, nepeta, thymum, satureia, lapsana, pastinaca, magisque agrestis, radícula, siser, cepa; ex venatione, maxime lepus; vinum tenue, piper et rotundum et longum, sinapi, absinthium, nuclei pinei.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXXI.

## DE HIS, QUÆ MOVENT URINAM.

AUTEM, quæcumque nascentia in horto sunt boni odoris, ut apium, ruta, anethum, ocimum, mentha, hyssopum, anisum, coriandrum, nasturtium, eruca, fœniculum movent urinam: præter hæc, asparagus, capparis, nepeta, thymum, satureia, lapsana, pastinaca, que magis agrestis, radícula, siser, cepa; ex venatione, maxime lepus; tenue vinum, et rotundum et longum piper, sinapi, absinthium, pinei nuclei.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXXI.

## OF DIURETICS.

Now these odoriferous garden plants all promote the urine, such as parsley, rue, dill, basil, mint, hyssop, anise, coriander, cresses, rocket, fennel: besides these, asparagus, capers, cat-mint, thyme, savory, nipplewort, parsnip, especially the wild, radish, skirret, onion; of game, principally the hare; thin wine, both round and long pepper, mustard, wormwood, pine-nuts.

## CAP. XXXII.

DE HIS, QUÆ AD SOMNUM APTA SUNT.

Somno vero aptum est papaver, lactuca, maximeque æstiva, cujus cauliculus jam lacte repletus est, morum, porrum. Sensus excitant, nepeta, thymum, satureia, hyssopum, præcipueque pulegium, ruta, et cepa.

ORDO.

## CAP. XXXII.

DE HIS, QUÆ SUNT APTA AD SOMNUM.

VERO papaver, lactuca, que maxime æstiva, cauliculus, cujus est jam repletus lacte, morum, porrum, est aptum somno. Nepeta, thymum, satureia, hyssopum, que præcipue pulegium, ruta et cepa excitant sensus.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXXII.

OF THOSE THINGS WHICH INDUCE SLEEP.

THE poppy procures sleep, also the lettuce, and especially the summer kind, when the stalk is full of a milky juice, the mulberry, the leek. These excite the senses, cat-mint, thyme, savory, hyssop, and especially pennyroyal, rue, and onion.

## CAP. XXXIII.

DE HIS, QUÆ MATERIAM EVOCANT.

EVOCARE vero materiam multa admodum possunt: sed ea, cum ex peregrinis medicamentis maxime constent, aliisque magis, quam quibus ratione victus succurritur, opitulentur, in præsentia differam: ponam vero ea, quæ prompta, et iis morbis, de quibus protinus dicturus sum, apta, corpus erodunt, et sic

ORDO.

## CAP. XXXIII.

DE HIS, QUÆ EVOCANT MATERIAM.

VERO admodum multa possunt evocare materiam: sed cum ea constent, maxime ex peregrinis medicamentis, que opitulentur aliis magis, quam quibus succurritur ratione victus, differam in præsentia: vero ponam ea, quæ prompta, et apta iis morbis, de quibus sum dicturus protinus, erodunt corpus, et sic extrahunt

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

OF SUCH THINGS AS DRAW AND SOFTEN THE BODY.

Now there are many things capable of forwarding matter; but as these principally consist of exotic medicines, and may assist other cases, more than those which are intended to be relieved principally by diet, I shall defer them for the present: but I will describe those which are ready at hand, and applicable to those diseases; having a digestive power, and thus extracting offending matter from the body,

eo, quod mali est, extrahunt. Habent autem hanc facultatem, semina erucæ, nasturtii, radiculae; præcipue tamen omnium, sinapi. Salis quoque et fici eadem vis est.

Leniter vero simul et reprimunt et molliunt, lana succida ex aceto vel vino, cui oleum adjectum est; contritæ palmulæ, furfures in salsa aqua vel aceto decocti.

At simul reprimunt et refrigerant, herba muralis, *παρθένιον* vel *περδίκιον* appellant, serpyllum, pulegium, ocimum, herba sanguinalis, quam Græci *πολύγονον* vocant, portulaca, papaveris folia, capreolique vitium, coriandri folia, hyoscyamum, muscus, siser, apium, solanum, quam *στρύχνον* Græci vocant, brassicæ folia, intubus, plantago, fœniculi semen, contrita pira vel mala, præcipueque cotonea, lenticula, aqua frigida, maximeque pluvialis, vinum, acetum, et horum aliquo madens vel panis, vel farina, vel spongia, vel cinis, vel lana succida, vel etiam lintelolum, creta Cimolia, gypsum, melinum, myrteum, rosa, acerbum oleum, verbenarum contusa cum teneris caulibus folia; cujus generis sunt olea, cupressus, myrtus, lentiscus, tamarix, ligustrum, rosa, rubus, laurus, hederæ, Punicum

## ORDO.

eo quod est mali. Autem habent hanc facultatem, semina erucæ, nasturtii, radiculae; tamen præcipue omnium, sinapi. Quoque vis salis et fici est eadem.

Vero simul et reprimunt leniter et molliunt, succida lana ex aceto vel vino, cui oleum est adjectum; contritæ palmulæ, furfures decocti in salsa aqua vel aceto.

At simul reprimunt et refrigerant, muralis herba, appellant *παρθένιον* (parthenium) vel *περδίκιον* (perdicium), serpyllum, pulegium, ocimum, sanguinalis herba, quam Græci vocant *πολύγονον* (polygonum), portulaca, folia papaveris, que capreoli vitium, folia coriandri, hyoscyamum, muscus, siser, apium, solanum, quam Græci vocant *στρύχνον* (struchnon), folia brassicæ, intubus, plantago, semen fœniculi, contrita pira vel mala, que præcipue cotonea, lenticula, frigida aqua, que maxime pluvialis, vinum, acetum, et vel panis, vel farina, vel spongia, vel cinis, vel succida lana, vel etiam lintelolum, madens aliquo horum, Cimolia creta, gypsum, melinum, myrteum, rosa, acerbum oleum, folia verbenarum contusa cum teneris caulibus; cujus generis sunt olea, cupressus, myrtus, lentiscus, tamarix, ligustrum, rosa, rubus, laurus, hederæ, Pu-

## TRANSLATION.

concerning which I am about to speak presently. Now these things have this power, the seeds of rocket, of cresses, radish, but the principal is mustard. The same properties reside in salt and figs.

Sordid-wool (53) dipped either in vinegar, or wine to which oil has been added, is both gently discutient and at the same time emollient, also bruised dates, bran boiled in salt water or vinegar.

But these things at the same time repress and cool, viz. Wall-pellitory, (they call it parthenion or perdikion,) wild thyme, pennyroyal, basil, blood-herb, (which the Greeks call polygonon,) purslane, poppy leaves, and the tendrils of vines, coriander leaves, henbane, moss, skirret, parsley, nightshade, (which the Greeks call struchnon,) cabbage leaves, endive, plantain, fennel seed, bruised pears or apples, and especially quinces, small lentils, cold water, and especially rain water, wine, vinegar, and bread, or flour, or sponge, or pieces of cloth, or sordid wool, or even linen moistened in any of these liquors: Cimolian chalk, gypsum, quince oil, myrtle oil, oil of roses, bitter oil, the leaves and tender stalks of vervains bruised together; such as the olive, the cypress, myrtle, mastich-tree, tamarisk, privet, rose, bramble, laurel, ivy, pomegranate.



malum. Sine frigore autem reprimunt, cocta mala cotonea, malicorium, aqua calida, in qua verbenæ coctæ sunt, quas supra posui, pulvis vel ex fæce vini, vel ex myrti foliis, amaræ nuces.

Calefacit vero, ex qualibet farina cataplasma, sive ex tritici, sive ex farris, sive hordei, sive ervi, vel lolii, vel milii, vel panici, vel lenticulæ, vel fabæ, vel lupini, vel lini, vel fœni græci, ubi ea deferbuit, calidaque imposita est. Valentior tamen ad id omnis farina est ex mulso, quam ex aqua cocta. Præterea cyprinum, irinum, medulla, adeps ex fœle, oleum, magisque si vetus est, junctaque oleo sal, nitrum, gith, piper, quinquefolium.

Fereque, quæ vehementer et reprimunt et refrigerant, durant; quæ calefaciunt, digerunt et emolliunt: præcipueque ad emolliendum potest cataplasma ex lini vel fœni græci semine.

His autem omnibus, et simplicibus, et permistis, varie medici utuntur; ut magis, quid quisque persuaserit sibi, appareat, quam quid evidenter compererit.

## ORDO.

nicum malum. Autem reprimunt sine frigore, cocta cotonea mala, malicorium, calida aqua, in qua verbenæ sunt coctæ, quas posui supra, pulvis vel ex fæce vini, vel ex foliis myrti, amaræ nuces.

Vero cataplasma ex qualibet farina calefacit, sive ex tritici, sive ex farris, sive hordei, sive ervi, vel lolii, vel milii, vel panici, vel lenticulæ, vel fabæ, vel lupini, vel lini, vel fœni græci, ubi ea deferbuit, que imposita est calida. Tamen omnis farina est valentior ad id, cocta ex mulso, quam ex aqua. Præterea cyprinum, irinum, medulla, adeps ex fœle, oleum, que magis, si est vetus, que sal juncta oleo, nitrum, gith, piper, quinquefolium.

Que fere quæ et reprimunt et refrigerant vehementer, durant; quæ calefaciunt, digerunt et emolliunt: que cataplasma ex semine lini vel fœni græci potest præcipue ad emolliendum.

Autem medici utuntur omnibus his et simplicibus et permistis varie; ut appareat quid quisque persuaserit sibi, magis quam quid compererit evidenter.

## TRANSLATION.

But these repress without cooling, viz. boiled quinces, pomegranate rind, hot water, in which vervains have been boiled, which I have mentioned above, wine lees or myrtle leaves reduced to powder, bitter almonds.

Calefacients are cataplasms made of any flour, whether that of wheat, or of far (54), or of barley, of vetches, or of darnel, or of millet, or of panicum, or of small lentils, or of beans, or of lupines, or of lint-seed, or of fœnugreek, being boiled and then laid on hot. Indeed all kinds of meal are rendered more efficient for this purpose, by being boiled in hydromel, rather than water. Besides these, privet oil, oil of iris, marrow, fat of a cat, oil, especially if it be old, and salt mixed with oil, nitre, git, pepper, cinquefoil.

For the most part those things, which both repress and cool violently, *at the same time* harden; those things which excite warmth, digest and soften; but a cataplasm of lint seed, or fœnugreek is the most powerful emollient.

But physicians use them all, both simple and compound, variously; so that we see what each persuaded himself of, rather than what he might have discovered to be evidently useful.

# A. CORN. CELSI

DE MEDICINA  
LIBER TERTIUS.

## CAP. I.

DE MORBORUM GENERIBUS.

PROVISIS omnibus, quæ pertinent ad universa genera morborum, ad singulorum curationes veniam. Hos autem in duas species Græci diviserunt; aliosque ex his acutos, alios longos esse dixerunt: ideoque, quoniam non semper eodem modo respondebant, eosdem alii inter acutos, alii inter longos retulerunt. Ex quo, plura eorum genera esse, manifestum est.

Quidam enim breves acutique sunt, qui cito vel tollunt hominem, vel ipsi cito finiuntur: quidam longi, sub quibus neque sanitas in propinquo, neque

ORDO.

TERTIUS LIBER  
AUR. COR. CELSI  
DE MEDICINA.

## CAP. I.

DE GENERIBUS MORBORUM.

OMNIBUS provisis, quæ pertinent ad universa genera morborum, veniam ad curationes singulorum. Antem Græci diviserunt hos in duas species; quæ dixerunt alios ex his esse acutos, alios longos: que ideo, quoniam non respondebant semper eodem modo, alii retulerunt eosdem inter acutos, alii inter longos. Ex quo est manifestum, esse plura genera eorum.

Enim quidam sunt breves, que acuti, qui vel cito tollunt hominem, vel ipsi cito finiuntur: quidam longi, sub quibus neque sanitas, neque exitium est in propinquo: que

TRANSLATION.

## THE THIRD BOOK OF AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS ON MEDICINE.

## CHAP. I.

OF THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF DISEASES.

HAVING premised all these things, which pertain to diseases in general, I shall proceed to the treatment of each. Now the Greeks have divided these into two species: one they termed acute, the other chronic: and on this account, because they did not always assume the same form, some referred the same diseases to the acute, which others classed among the chronic. By which it is manifest, that there are many species of them.

For some are short and acute, which either carry off the patient in a short time, or are themselves soon terminated: some are chronic, under which, there is

exitium est; tertiumque genus eorum est, qui modo acuti, modo longi sunt; idque non in febribus tantummodo, in quibus frequentissimum est, sed in aliis quoque fit. Atque etiam, præter hos, quartum est, quod neque acutum dici potest, quia non perimit; neque utique longum, quia, si occurritur, facile sanatur. Ego, cum de singulis dicam, cujus quisque generis sit, indicabo. Dividam autem omnes in eos, qui in totis corporibus consistere videntur, et eos, qui oriuntur in partibus. Incipiam a prioribus, pauca de omnibus præfatus.

In nullo quidem morbo minus fortuna sibi vindicare, quam ars potest; utpote cum, repugnante natura, nihil medicina proficiat. Magis tamen ignoscendum medico est parum proficiente in acutis morbis, quam in longis. Hic enim breve spatium est, intra quod, si auxilium non profuit, æger exstinguitur: ibi et deliberationi, et mutationi remedium tempus patet; adeo ut raro, si inter initia medicus accessit, obsequens æger sine illius vitio pereat. Longus tamen morbus cum penitus insedit, quod ad difficultatem pertinet, acuto par est. Et acutus quidem, quo vetustior est, longus autem, quo recentior, eo facilius curatur. Alterum illud ig-

## ORDO.

tertium genus est eorum, qui sunt modo acuti, modo longi; que id fit non tantummodo in febribus, in quibus est frequentissimum, sed quoque in aliis. Atque etiam, præter hos, est quartum, quod neque potest dici acutum, quia non perimit; neque utique longum, quia, si occurritur, sanatur facile. Ego indicabo cujus generis quisque sit, cum dicam de singulis. Autem dividam omnes in eos, qui videntur consistere in totis corporibus, et eos qui oriuntur in partibus. Incipiam a prioribus, præfatus pauca de omnibus.

In nullo morbo quidem fortuna potest vindicare minus sibi, quam ars; utpote cum medicina proficiat nihil, natura repugnante. Tamen est ignoscendum magis medico proficiente parum in acutis morbis, quam in longis. Enim hic spatium est breve, intra quod, si auxilium non profuit, æger exstinguitur: ibi tempus patet et deliberationi, et mutationi remedium, adeo ut, si medicus accessit inter initia obsequens æger raro pereat sine vitio illius. Tamen cum longus morbus insedit penitus, quod pertinet ad difficultatem, est par acuto. Et acutus quidem curatur eo facilius, quo vetustior est, autem longus, quo recentior. Oportet illud alterum non ig-

## TRANSLATION.

neither a speedy recovery, nor a speedy death; and there is a third kind of them, which are sometimes acute, sometimes chronic; and this not only happens in fevers, in which it is most frequent, but also in other diseases. Besides these there is a fourth, which can neither be called acute, because they do not prove fatal; neither are they truly chronic, because, if the means be employed, they are easily cured. I shall point out to what genus each may belong, when I come to treat of them severally. Now I shall divide them into those which seem to occupy the whole body, and those which arise in parts only. Having prefaced these by a few observations on all, I shall commence with the first.

Indeed there is no disease in which chance can claim less for itself, than art; inasmuch as medicine can avail nothing in opposition to nature. Yet it is more pardonable in a physician to fail in acute diseases, than in chronic. For in the first, the space is short, in which, if the remedies fail, the patient is lost: in the latter case, there is time both for deliberation, and for a change of remedies; so that if the physician have been applied to in the beginning, a tractable patient is rarely lost, unless it be the fault of his attendant. Yet when a chronic disease has become thoroughly incorporated, it is, comparatively, as difficult as an acute one. Therefore when an acute disease becomes chronic, and a chronic, recent, they are both more easily cured.



norari non oportet, quod non omnibus ægris eadem auxilia conveniunt. Ex quo incidit, ut alia atque alia summi auctores, quasi sola, vindicaverint, prout cuique cesserant.

Oportet itaque, ubi aliquid non respondet, non tanti putare auctorem, quanti ægrum, experiri que aliud atque aliud: sic tamen, ut in acutis morbis cito mutetur, quod nihil prodest; in longis, quos tempus, ut facit, sic etiam solvit, non statim condemnatur, si quid non statim profuit; minus vero removeatur, si quid paulum saltem juvat; quia profectus tempore expletur.

## ORDO.

norari, quod eadem auxilia non conveniunt omnibus ægris. Ex quo incidit ut summi auctores vindicaverunt alia atque alia, quasi sola, prout cesserant cuique.

Itaque oportet, ubi aliquid non respondet, non putare auctorem tanti, quanti ægrum, que experiri aliud atque aliud: tamen sic ut in acutis morbis quod prodest nihil mutetur cito: in longis, quos ut tempus facit, sic etiam solvit, si quid non profuit statim non condemnatur statim, vero siquid juvat paulum saltem minus removeatur: quia profectus expletur tempore.

## TRANSLATION.

There is another thing which one ought not to be ignorant of, that is, the same remedies do not benefit all patients. Hence it has happened that the highest authors have defended the efficacy, some of one thing, some of another, as if the only remedies, according as they had succeeded to each.

Therefore it is necessary, when any one of these (*highly recommended*) remedies fails, not to think the author of so much repute as the patient's life, but to try another and another remedy: yet so, that in acute diseases, that which appears to do no good, may be changed very soon: in chronic diseases, as they progress with time, so are they resolved by time, consequently if any thing have not benefited immediately, it should not be condemned immediately: much less must that be removed which has at least given some relief; because the desired effects are completed by time.

## CAP. II.

QUOMODO MORBI COGNOScantur, ET AN INCRESCANT, AN MINUANTUR, ET QUA RATIONE AB INITIO, QUI LANGUERE INCIPIT, CURARE DEBEAT.

PROtinus autem inter initia scire facile est, quis acutus morbus, quis longus

## ORDO.

## CAP. II.

QUOMODO MORBI COGNOScantur, ET AN INCRESCANT, AN MINUANTUR, ET QUA RATIONE DEBEAT CURARI, QUI INCIPIT LANGUERE AB INITIO.

AUTEM est facile scire protinus inter initia quis morbus sit acu-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

GENERAL DIAGNOSTICS OF ACUTE AND CHRONIC, INCREASING AND DECREASING DISEASES; MODE OF TREATMENT; NECESSARY PRECAUTIONS ON THE APPREHENSION OF DISEASE.

It is easy to know even in the commencement, whether a disease be acute or

sit: non in iis solum, in quibus semper ita se habet; sed in his etiam, in quibus variat. Nam ubi sine intermissionibus accessiones et dolores graves urgent, acutus morbus est: ubi lenti dolores, lentæve febres sunt, et spatia inter accessiones porriguntur, acceduntque ea signa, quæ in priore volumine exposita sunt, longum hunc futurum esse, manifestum est.

Videndum etiam est, morbus an increseat, an consistat, an minuat: quia quædam remedia incrementibus morbis, plura inclinatis conveniunt; eaque, quæ crescentibus apta sunt, ubi acutus incrementum urget, in remissionibus potius experienda sunt. Incrementum autem morbus, dum graviores dolores, accessionesque veniunt; hæque et ante, quam proximæ, revertuntur, et postea desinunt. Atque in longis quoque morbis, etiam tales notas non habentibus, scire licet, incrementum, si somnus incertus est, si deterior concoctio, si fœdiores dejectiones, si tardior sensus, si pigrior mens, si percurrit corpus frigus aut calor, si id magis pallet. Ea vero, quæ contraria his sunt, decedentis ejus notæ sunt.

Præter hæc, in acutis morbis serius æger alendus est, nec nisi jam in-

## ORDO.

tus, quis longus: non solum in iis in quibus habet se semper ita, sed etiam in his in quibus variat. Nam ubi graves accessiones et dolores urgent sine intermissionibus, morbus est acutus: ubi dolores sunt lenti, ve febres lentæ, et spatia inter accessiones porriguntur, quæ ea signa accedunt, quæ exposita sunt in priore volumine, est manifestum hunc futurum esse longum.

Etiam est videndum, an morbus increseat, an consistat, an minuat: quia quædam remedia conveniunt incrementibus morbis, plura inclinatis; quæ ea, quæ sunt apta crescentibus, ubi acutus incrementum urget, sunt experienda potius in remissionibus. Autem morbus incrementum, dum graviores dolores quæ accessiones veniunt; quæ hæc et revertuntur ante, et desinunt postea, quam proximæ. Atque quoque in longis morbis, etiam non habentibus tales notas, licet scire incrementum, si somnus est incertus, si concoctio deterior; si dejectiones fœdiores, si sensus tardior, si mens pigrior, si frigus aut calor percurrit corpus, si id magis pallet. Vero ea quæ sunt contraria his, sunt notæ ejus decedentis.

Præter hæc in acutis morbis æger est alendus serius, nec nisi

## TRANSLATION.

chronic: not only in those cases which are always so; but also in those which vary. For when violent accessions and pains oppress the patient without intermission, the disease is acute: when the pains are moderate, or the fever slight, and the interval between the paroxysms prolonged, and those symptoms accede which have been explained in the preceding book, it is manifest that the disease is about to become chronic.

It is necessary to observe also, whether the disease be progressing, stationary, or receding: because some remedies are proper for increasing diseases, much more for those which are declining; and those remedies which are applicable to increasing diseases, when an acute disorder is progressing, ought rather to be tried in the remissions. Now a disease increases as long as severe pains and paroxysms come on; when these return sooner, and cease later than the last accession. Even in chronic diseases not having those signs, it is held to increase, if the sleep be interrupted, if digestion be impaired, if the motions be more fetid, if the senses be more dull, if the mind be less active, if a sense of cold or heat thrill through the body, and, if that be more pallid than usual. But the symptoms which are the reverse of these, are the prognoses of its retrogression.

Besides these things, in acute diseases the patient is to have food at a more

clinatis; ut primo dempta materia impetum frangat: in longis maturius, ut sustinere spatium affecturi mali possit. Ac si quando is non in toto corpore, sed in parte est; magis tamen ad rem pertinet, vim totius corporis moliri, quam proprie partes ægræ sanentur. Multum etiam interest, ab initio quis recte curatus sit, an perperam: quia curatio minus iis prodest, in quibus assidue frustra fuit. Si quis temere habitus, adhuc integris viribus vivit, admota curatione momento restituitur.

Sed cum ab iis cœperim, quæ notas quasdam futuræ adversæ valetudinis exhibent, curationum quoque principium ab animadversione ejusdem temporis faciam. Igitur, si quid ex iis, quæ proposita sunt, incidit, omnium optima sunt, quies et abstinencia; si quid bibendum, aqua; idque interdum uno die fieri satis est; interdum, si terrentia manent, biduo: proximeque abstinenciam sumendus est cibus exiguus, bibenda aqua; postero die etiam vinum; deinde invicem alternis diebus, modo aqua, modo vinum, donec omnis causæ metus finiatur. Per hæc enim sæpe

## ORDO.

jam inclinatis; ut materia dempta primo frangat impetum: in longis maturius, ut possit sustinere spatium mali affecturi. Ac si quando is non est in toto corpore, sed in parte, tamen pertinet magis ad rem, moliri vim totius corporis, quam partes ægræ proprie sanentur. Etiam interest multum, quis curatus sit recte ab initio, an perperam: quia curatio prodest minus iis in quibus fuit assidue frustra. Si quis habitus temere, vivit adhuc viribus integris, curatione admota, restituitur momento.

Sed cum cœperim ab iis quæ exhibent quasdam notas adversæ valetudinis futuræ, faciam principium quoque curationum ab animadversione ejusdem temporis. Igitur, si quid ex iis, quæ proposita sunt, incidit, optima omnium sunt, quies et abstinencia; siquid (est) bibendum, aqua; que interdum est satis id fieri uno die; interdum, si terrentia manent, biduo, que proxime abstinenciam, exiguus cibus est sumendus, aqua bibenda; postero die, etiam vinum; deinde invicem alternis diebus, modo aqua, modo vinum, donec omnis causa metus finiatur. Enim sæpe gravis morbus

## TRANSLATION.

distant period, except in those already receding; so that the first privation may break its violence: in chronic maladies earlier, that the patient may be able to sustain the duration of the disease that is about to affect him.

But if at any time, that disease be not in the whole body, but in a part; then it is more pertinent to the case, to support the strength of the whole body, than that the diseased parts in particular should become the object of our care. It is also of great importance, whether a patient have been correctly treated, or maltreated from the beginning: because the subsequent treatment will be less successful with those on whom previous attempts have been assiduously frustrated. If any one, having been improperly treated, survive with his physical strength as yet unbroken, he may be restored in a short time, by the application of proper treatment.

But since I have begun with those symptoms which exhibit certain marks of future disease, I shall also commence the treatments by animadverting to the same time. Therefore if any of those things happen, which have been previously mentioned, the best of all remedies are rest and abstinence: if any thing be drunk it should be water; and sometimes it is sufficient to do that for one day: sometimes for two, when the alarming symptoms continue: and the next day after abstinence little food is to be taken, and water for the drink: on the following day even wine may be drunk, then every other day, alternately wine and water, until every cause



instans gravis morbus discutitur. Plurimique falluntur, dum se primo die protinus sublaturus languorem, aut exercitatione, aut balneo, aut coacta dejectione, aut vomitu, aut sudationibus, aut vino sperant. Non quod non interdum id incidat, aut non decipiat; sed quod sæpius fallat, solaque abstinence sine ullo periculo medeatur: cum præsertim etiam pro modo terroris moderari liceat; et si leviora indicia fuerint, satis sit a vino tantum abstinere, quod subtractum plus, quam si cibo quid dematur, adjuvat: si paulo graviora, facile sit non aquam tantum bibere, sed etiam cibo carnem subtrahere; interdum panis quoque minus, quam pro consuetudine assumere, humidoque cibo esse contentum, et olere potissimum: satisque sit, tum ex toto a cibo, a vino, ab omni motu corporis abstinere, cum vehementes notæ terruerunt.

Neque dubium est, quin vix quisquam, qui non dissimulavit, sed per hæc mature morbo occurrit, ægrotet.

## ORDO.

instans discutitur per hæc. Que plurimi falluntur, dum sperant se sublaturus languorem protinus primo die, aut exercitatione, aut balneo, aut coacta dejectione, aut vomitu, aut sudationibus, aut vino. Non quod id non incidat interdum, aut non decipiat; sed quod, fallat sæpius, que abstinence sola medeatur sine ullo periculo: præsertim cum etiam liceat moderari pro modo terroris; et si indicia fuerint leviora, sit satis tantum abstinere a vino, quod subtractum adjuvat plus, quam siquid dematur cibo; si paulo graviora, sit facile non tantum bibere aquam, sed etiam subtrahere carnem cibo; interdum quoque assumere minus panis, quam pro consuetudine, que esse contentum humido cibo, et potissimum olere: que sit satis, tum ex toto abstinere a cibo, a vino, ab omni motu corporis, cum vehementes notæ terruerunt.

Neque est dubium, quin vix quisquam ægrotet, qui non dissimulavit, sed occurrit morbo mature per hæc.

## TRANSLATION.

of fear be removed. For by these means, a severe, impending disease is averted. Many persons are deceived, while they flatter themselves that the languor has been dissipated either by exercise on the first day, or by a bath, by purging, by vomiting, or by perspiration, or by wine. Not because that does not sometimes happen, or may not deceive, but very often it is fallacious, while abstinence alone may effect a cure without any danger: especially as this may be proportioned to the alarm; and if the symptoms be slight, it may be sufficient to abstain from wine only, which being withdrawn, assists more, than if some portion had been taken from the food; if the accessions be a little more severe, it will be easy, not only to drink water, but to withhold flesh also from the food: sometimes it will be necessary for him to take less bread than usual, and to be content with moist food, and more particularly with vegetables: and when violent symptoms have given the alarm, it may be sufficient then, to abstain entirely from food, wine, and every corporeal exercise.

Neither can it be doubted, that scarcely any one falls ill, who has not disregarded these means, or those who have in due time opposed the disease by them.

## CAP. III.

## DE FEBRIUM GENERIBUS.

ATQUE hæc quidem sanis facienda sunt, tantum causam metuentibus. Sequitur vero curatio febrium, quod et in toto corpore, et vulgare maxime morbi genus est.

Ex his una quotidiana, altera tertiana, altera quartana est: interdum etiam longiore circuitu quædam redeunt; sed id raro fit. In prioribus, et morbi sunt, et medicina.

Et quartanæ quidem simpliciores sunt. Incipiunt fere ab horrore; deinde calor erumpit; finitaque febre biduum integrum est: ita quarto die revertitur. Tertianarum vero duo genera sunt. Alterum eodem modo, quo quartana, et incipiens, et desinens; illo tantum interposito discrimine, quod unum diem præstat integrum, tertio redit. Alterum longe perniciosius, quod tertio quidem die revertitur, ex octo autem et quadraginta horis fere sex et triginta per accessionem occupat, interdum etiam

## ORDO.

## CAP. III.

## DE GENERIBUS FEBRIUM.

ATQUE hæc quidem sunt facienda sanis, tantum metuentibus causam. Vero curatio febrium sequitur, quod genus morbi est et in toto corpore, et maxime vulgare.

Ex his una est quotidiana, altera tertiana, altera quartana: interdum etiam quædam redeunt longiore circuitu; sed id fit raro. Et morbi et medicina sunt in prioribus.

Et quartanæ sunt quidem simpliciores. Incipiunt fere ab horrore, deinde calor erumpit: que febre finita, biduum est integrum; ita revertitur quarto die. Vero sunt duo genera tertianarum. Alterum et incipiens et desinens eodem modo quo quartana; tantum illo discrimine interposito, quod præstat unam diem integrum, redit tertio. Alterum longe perniciosius, quod revertitur quidem tertio die, autem ex octo et quadraginta horis occupat fere sex et triginta per accessionem, interdum etiam vel

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

## OF THE SPECIES OF FEVERS

Now these cautions are to be attended to by persons in health, only apprehensive of illness. But now we come to the treatment of fevers, a genus of diseases not only occupying the whole body, but very common.

Of these, one is QUOTIDIAN, another, TERTIAN, and a third QUARTAN: sometimes indeed they run a longer circuit, but that happens rarely. Under the former are comprehended, both the diseases and their treatment.

Now the quartan fevers indeed are the more simple. They begin generally with shivering, then a heat breaks out; and the paroxysm being over the patient is free for two days: and thus it returns on the fourth day. But there are two kinds of the tertians. The one hath beginning and terminating like the quartan; with this distinction only, that there is one clear day, interposing, and returns on the third. The other is by far more dangerous, because it returns indeed on the third day, but out of forty-eight hours, it occupies thirty-six of these in the paroxysm, some-

vel minus, vel plus; neque ex toto in remissione desistit, sed tantum levius est. Id genus plerique medici ἡμιτριταῖον appellant.

Quotidianæ vero variæ sunt, et multiplices. Aliæ enim protinus a calore incipiunt, aliæ a frigore, aliæ ab horrore. Frigus voco, ubi extremæ partes membrorum inalgescunt: horrorem, ubi totum corpus intremit. Rursus aliæ sic desinunt, ut ex toto sequatur integritas: aliæ sic, ut aliquantum quidem minuatur ex febre, nihilominus tamen quædam reliquiæ remaneant, donec altera accessio accedat: ac sæpe aliæ vix quidquam aut nihil remittant, sed ita ut continuent.

Deinde, aliæ fervorem ingentem habent, aliæ tolerabilem: aliæ quotidie pares sunt, aliæ impares; atque invicem altero die leniores, altero vehementiores: aliæ tempore eodem postridie revertuntur, aliæ vel serius vel celerius: aliæ diem noctemque accessione et decessione implent, aliæ minus, aliæ plus: aliæ, cum decedunt, sudorem movent, aliæ non movent; atque alias per sudorem ad integritatem venit, alias corpus tantum imbecillius redditur.

Accessiones etiam, modo singulæ singulis diebus fiunt, modo binæ plu-

#### ORDO.

minus vel plus; neque desistit ex toto in remissione, sed tantum est levius. Plerique medici appellant id genus ἡμιτριταῖον (semitertiana).

Vero quotidianæ sunt variæ, et multiplices. Enim aliæ incipiunt protinus a calore, aliæ a frigore, aliæ ab horrore. Voco frigus, ubi extremæ partes membrorum inalgescunt: horrorem, ubi totum corpus intremit. Rursus aliæ desinunt sic, ut integritas sequatur ex toto: aliæ sic, ut aliquantum quidem minuatur ex febre, tamen nihilominus quædam reliquiæ remaneant, donec altera accessio accedat: ac sæpe aliæ remittant vix quidquam aut nihil, sed ita ut continuent.

Deinde aliæ habent ingentem fervorem, aliæ tolerabilem: aliæ sunt pares quotidie, aliæ impares, atque invicem leniores altero die, vehementiores alteri: aliæ revertuntur eodem tempore postridie, aliæ vel serius vel celerius: aliæ implent diem que noctem accessione et decessione, aliæ minus, aliæ plus: aliæ, cum decedunt, movent sudorem, aliæ non movent; atque alias venit ad integritatem per sudorem, alias corpus redditur imbecillius tantum.

Etiam accessiones modo fiunt singulæ singulis diebus, modo binæ ve plures concurrunt: ex

#### TRANSLATION.

times less or more; nor does it cease entirely in the remission, but is only mitigated. Most physicians call that genus the semitertian.

But the quotidians are various and multiplex. For some begin at once with heat, others with cold, others with shivering. I call that cold, when the extreme parts of the limbs become cold: a shivering when the whole body trembles. Again some cease so, that a healthy intermission follows: others so, that although there be some diminution of the fever, yet nevertheless some relics remain, until another accession comes on: and very often, others remit scarcely any thing, or none at all, but continue so.

Others again, have excessive heat, some more tolerable: some have similar, others dissimilar paroxysms daily; and alternately gentler on one day, more violent on another: some return at the same time on the following day, others either sooner or later: some complete a day and night in the accession and decession, some less, others more: some terminate by perspiration, others do not: and at one time a free intermission ensues perspiration, at another time it leaves the body weaker. Sometimes the paroxysms take place singly, at other times two,



resve concurrunt : ex quo sæpe evenit, ut quotidie plures accessiones remissionesque sint ; sic tamen, ut unaquæque alicui priori respondeat. Interdum vero accessiones quoque confunduntur, sic, ut notari neque tempora earum, neque spatia possint.

Neque verum est, quod dicitur a quibusdam, nullam febrem inordinatam esse, nisi aut ex vomica, aut ex inflammatione, aut ex ulcere : facilius enim semper curatio foret, si hoc verum esset. Sed quod evidentes causæ faciunt, facere etiam abditæ possunt.

Neque de re, sed de verbo controversiam movent, qui, cum aliter aliterque in eodem morbo febres accedunt, non easdem inordinate redire, sed alias aliasque subinde oriri dicunt. Quod tamen ad curandi rationem nihil pertineret, etiamsi vere diceretur. Tempora quoque remissionum modo liberalia, modo vix ulla sunt.

## ORDO.

quo evenit sæpe, ut sint plures accessiones que remissiones quotidie : sic tamen, ut unaquæque respondeat alicui priori. Vero interdum quoque accessiones confunduntur, sic ut neque tempora, neque spatia earum possint notari.

Neque est verum, quod dicitur a quibusdam, nullam febrem esse inordinatam nisi aut ex vomica, aut ex inflammatione, aut ex ulcere : enim curatio foret semper facilius, si hoc esset verum. Sed quod faciunt evidentes causæ, possunt facere abditæ etiam.

Neque movent controversiam de re, sed de verbo, qui cum febres accedant aliter que aliter in eodem morbo, non dicunt easdem redire inordinate, sed oriri subinde alias que alias.

Quod tamen nihil pertineret ad rationem curandi, etiamsi diceretur vere. Quoque tempora remissionum sunt modo liberalia, modo vix ulla.

## TRANSLATION.

or even more occur : whence it happens, that there may be several accessions and remissions daily : yet in such a manner that each accession corresponds with the preceding one. But sometimes the paroxysms are so confounded, that neither their time nor duration can be observed.

Neither is that true which is related by some persons, that no fever is irregular, unless there be vomica, or inflammation, or an ulcer : for the treatment would be always more easy, if this were true. But that which is produced by evident causes, may also be the result of latent.

Nor do they provoke a controversy concerning the matter itself, but about words only, who, maintain that when fevers return sometimes one way, sometimes another, in the same disease, that they are not the erratic returns of the same fever, but various others successively arising ; which however would avail nothing to the mode of treatment, even if true. Also the remissions are sometimes considerable, sometimes scarcely any.

## CAP. IV.

## DE CURATIONUM DIVERSIS GENERIBUS.

ET februm quidem ratio maxime talis est. Curationum vero diversa genera sunt, prout auctores aliquos habent. Asclepiades officium esse medici dicit, ut tuto, ut celeriter, ut jucunde curet. Id votum est: sed fere periculosa esse nimia et festinatio et voluptas solet. Qua vero moderatione utendum sit, ut quantum fieri potest, omnia ista contingant, prima semper habita salute, in ipsis partibus curationum considerandum erit.

Et ante omnia quæritur, primis diebus æger qua ratione continendus sit. Antiqui, medicamentis quibusdam datis, concoctionem moliebantur; eo quod cruditatem maxime horrebant: deinde eam materiam, quæ lædere videbatur, ducendo sæpius alvum subtrahebant. Asclepiades medicamenta sustulit; alvum non toties, sed fere tamen in omni morbo, subduxit: febre vero ipsa præ-

## ORDO.

## CAP. IV.

## DE DIVERSIS GENERIBUS CURATIONUM.

ET ratio februm quidem est maxime talis. Vero sunt diversa genera curationum, prout habent aliquos auctores. Asclepiades dicit officium medici esse ut curet tuto, ut celeriter, ut jucunde. Id est votum: sed fere et nimia festinatio et voluptas solet esse periculosa. Vero qua moderatione sit utendum, ut omnia ista contingant, quantum potest fieri, salute semper habita prima, erit considerandum in partibus ipsis curationum.

Et ante omnia quæritur qua ratione æger sit continendus primis diebus. Antiqui moliebantur concoctionem quibusdam medicamentis datis; eo quod horrebant maxime cruditatem; deinde ducendo alvum sæpius subtrahebant eam materiam, quæ videbatur lædere. Asclepiades sustulit medicamenta: non subduxit alvum toties, sed tamen fere in omni morbo: vero professus est se uti præcipue febre ipsa ad remedium.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

## THE DIFFERENT MODES OF TREATMENT.

SUCH then is the general character of fevers. But there are various modes of treatment, according to the doctrine promulgated by various authors. Asclepiades says that it is the duty of a physician to cure his patient safely, speedily, and pleasantly. That is to be wished: but generally too much haste, and too great indulgence, are usually dangerous. But the treatment to be adopted, in order to obtain all those blessings, as far as it can be done, the safety of the patient being always held the principal essential, will be considered when we speak of the cures themselves.

First of all, let us inquire how the patient is to be restrained on the first days of the disease. The ancients essayed to effect concoction by administering certain medicines; for this reason, that they were much alarmed at crudity; afterwards they abstracted the matter which appeared to be the offending cause, by frequent enemata. Asclepiades withheld medicine; but he prescribed clysters in every disease although not so often; but he professed to use the fever itself as its own

cipue se ad remedium uti professus est. Convellendas enim vires ægri putavit, luce, vigilia, siti ingenti, sic, ut ne os quidem primis diebus elui sineret. Quo magis falluntur, qui per omnia jucundam ejus disciplinam esse concipiunt. Is enim ulterioribus quidem diebus cubantis etiam luxuriæ subscripsit; primis vero tortoris vicem exhibuit.

Ego autem, medicamentorum dari potiones, et alvum duci non nisi raro debere, concedo: et id non ideo tamen agendum, ut ægri vires convellantur, existimo; quoniam ex imbecillitate summum periculum est. Minui ergo tantum materiam superantem oportet, quæ naturaliter digeritur, ubi nihil novi accedit. Itaque abstinendus a cibo primis diebus est, in luce habendus æger, nisi infirmus, interdiu est, quoniam corpus ista quoque digerit; isque cubare quam maximo conclavi debet. Quod ad sitim vero somnumque pertinet, moderandum est, ut interdiu vigilet, noctu, si fieri potest, conquiescat: ac neque potest, neque nimium siti crucietur. Os etiam ejus elui potest, ubi et siccum est, et ipsi fœtet; quamvis id tempus aptum potioni non est. Commodeque Erasistratus

## ORDO.

Enim putavit vires ægri convellendas luce, vigilia, ingenti siti, sic, ut sineret nequidem os elui primis diebus. Quo falluntur magis, qui concipiunt disciplinam ejus esse jucundam per omnia. Enim is quidem ulterioribus diebus subscripsit etiam luxuriæ cubantis; vero primis exhibuit vicem tortoris.

Autem ego concedo potiones medicamentorum debere dari, et alvum duci non nisi raro: et tamen existimo id non agendum id eo, ut vires ægri convellantur; quoniam est summum periculum ex imbecillitate. Ergo oportet tantum superantem materiam minui, quæ digeritur naturaliter, ubi nihil novi accedit. Itaque æger est abstinendus a cibo primis diebus, est habendus in luce interdiu, nisi infirmus, quoniam ista quoque digerit corpus: que is debet cubare conclavi quam maximo. Vero quod pertinet ad sitim, que somnum, est moderandum, ut vigilet interdiu; conquiescat noctu, si potest fieri: ac neque potest, neque crucietur nimium siti. Etiam ejus os potest elui, et ubi est siccum, et fœtet ipsi; quamvis id tempus non est aptum potioni. Que Erasistratus

## TRANSLATION.

principal remedy. He imagined, that the strength of the patient ought to be reduced by light, watching, and intense thirst, so, that he would not even suffer the mouth to be washed on the first days. Therefore they are the more deceived, who believe his practice to have been pleasant in every respect. In the more advanced stage he even permitted the patient to indulge in luxuries, but at the commencement he acted the part of a torturer.

Now I concede, that medicinal potions, and injections ought to be given but sparingly: and yet I think, that this ought not to be done, in order to reduce the patient's strength; because in this there is the greatest danger. Therefore it is only necessary to diminish the superabundant material, which is naturally dispersed, when there is no new accession to it. For this reason the patient must abstain from food on the first days, to be kept in the light during the day, unless he be infirm, because that also wastes the body; and he ought to be in a very spacious chamber. But what pertains to thirst and sleep, it must be so regulated, that he may be awake in the day time, and sleep by night if possible: and neither to drink too much, nor to be tormented by too much thirst. His mouth may be rinsed out, both when it is dry and when there is a fetid taste in it; although it be not a seasonable time for drinking. Erasistratus has very appropriately said, that



tratus dixit, sæpe, interiore parte humorem non requirente, os et fauces requirere; neque ad rem, male haberi ægrum, pertinere.

Ac primo quidem sic tenendus est. Optimum vero medicamentum est, opportune cibus datus: qui quando primum dari debeat, quæritur. Plerique ex antiquis tarde dabant, sæpe quinto die, sæpe sexto: et id fortasse vel in Asia, vel in Ægypto, cœli ratio patitur. Asclepiades, ubi ægrum triduo per omnia fatigaverat, quarto die cibo destinabat. At Themison nuper, non quando cœpisset febris, sed quando desisset, aut certe levata esset, considerabat; et ab illo tempore exspectato die tertio, si non accesserat febris, statim: si accesserat, ubi ea vel desierat, vel, si assidue inhærebat, certe si se inclinaverat, cibum dabat. Nihil autem horum utique perpetuum est. Nam potest primo die primus cibus dandus esse, potest secundo, potest tertio, potest non nisi quarto, aut quinto; potest post unam accessionem, potest post duas, potest post plures. Refert enim, qualis morbus sit, quale corpus, quale cœlum, quæ ætas, quod tempus anni: minimeque, in rebus multum inter se differentibus, perpetuum esse præceptum, temporis potest.

## ORDO.

dixit commode, os et fauces sæpe requirere humorem, interiore parte non requirente; neque pertinere ad rem, ægrum haberi male.

Ac primo quidem est tenendus sic. Vero optimum medicamentum est, cibus opportune datus; qui quando debeat primum dari, quæritur. Plerique ex antiquis dabant cibum tarde, sæpe quinto die, sæpe sexto; et fortasse ratio cœli vel in Asia, vel in Ægypto, patitur id. Ubi Asclepiades fatigaverat ægrum per omnia triduo, destinabat quarto die cibo. At nuper Themison considerabat, non quando febris cœpisset, sed quando desisset, aut certe esset levata; et tertio die ab illo tempore exspectato, dabat cibum, statim, si febris non accesserat; si accesserat ubi ea vel desierat, vel si inhærebat assidue, certe si inclinaverat se. Autem nihil horum est utique perpetuum. Nam primus cibus potest esse dandus primo die, potest secundo, non potest nisi quarto aut quinto; potest post unam accessionem, potest post duas, potest post plures. Enim refert, qualis morbus sit, quale corpus, quale cœlum, quæ ætas, quod tempus anni, que in rebus differentibus multum inter se, præceptum temporis potest minime esse perpetuum. In

## TRANSLATION.

the mouth and fauces often require moisture, when the interior parts (*of the body*) do not want it; neither can it be advantageous to the patient to be maltreated.

Such then ought to be the management at first. BUT THE BEST MEDICINE IS, FOOD SEASONABLY GIVEN: the question is, when must that be given. Most of the ancients gave it late, often on the fifth or sixth day; and perhaps the nature of the climate in Asia or in Egypt admits of that practice. When Asclepiades had exhausted the patient in every way, he allowed him food on the fourth day. But Themison lately, did not regard when the fever had begun, but when it ceased, or at least was relieved; and having waited for the third day from that time, he gave food immediately, if the fever had not acceded; if it had, then when it either had ceased, or if it did continue constantly, at least when it was mitigated. But neither of these rules is infallible. For it may be necessary to give food on the first day, or on the second, or on the third, or not until the fourth or fifth: it may be given after one paroxysm, or after two, or after several. For the nature of the disease, constitution, climate, age, and season of the year will make some difference: for in things differing so much from each other, no fixed time, much less can an invariable principle be laid down. In that disease which consumes the

In morbo, qui plus virium aufert, celerius cibus dandus est: itemque eo cœlo, quod magis digerit. Ob quam causam in Africa nullo die æger abstinere recte videtur. Maturius etiam puero, quam juveni; æstate, quam hieme, dari debet.

Unum illud est, quod semper, quod ubique servandum est, ut ægri vires subinde assidens medicus inspiciat, et quamdiu supererunt, abstinentia pugnet; si imbecillitatem vereri cœperit, cibo subveniat. Id enim ejus officium est, ut ægrum, neque supervacua materia oneret, neque imbecillitatem fame prodat. Idque apud Erasistratum quoque invenio: qui, quamvis parum docuit, quando venter, quando corpus ipsum exinaniretur, dicendo tamen, hæc esse videnda, et tum cibum dandum, cum corpori deberetur, satis ostendit, dum vires superessent, dari non oportere; ne deficerent, consulendum esse.

Ex his autem intelligi potest, ab uno medico multos non posse curari: eumque, si artifex est, idoneum esse, qui non multum ab ægro recedit. Sed qui quæstui serviunt, quoniam is major ex populo est, libenter amplectuntur ea præcepta, quæ sedulitatem non exigunt;

## ORDO.

morbo, qui aufert plus virium, cibus est dandus celerius: que item eo cœlo quod digerit magis. Ob quam causam in Africa æger videtur abstinere recte nullo die. Etiam debet dari maturius puero, quam juveni; æstate, quam hieme.

Illud est unum, quod est semper, quod (est) ubique servandum, ut medicus assidens inspiciat subinde vires ægri, et quamdiu supererunt, pugnet abstinentia; si cœperit vereri imbecillitatem, subveniat cibo. Enim id est ejus officium, ut, neque oneret ægrum supervacue materia, neque prodat imbecillitatem fame. Que invenio id quoque apud Erasistratum: qui quamvis docuit parvum, quando venter, (vel) quando corpus ipsum exinaniretur, tamen dicendo hæc esse videnda, et tum cibum dandum, cum deberetur corpori, ostendit satis, non oportere dari, dum vires superessent; esse consulendum ne deficerent.

Autem ex his potest intelligi, multos non posse curari ab uno medico: que eum esse idoneum, si est artifex, qui non recedit multum ab ægro. Sed qui serviunt quæstui quoniam is est major ex populo, amplectuntur libenter ea præcepta, quæ non exigunt sedulitatem; ut in hac

## TRANSLATION.

strength so much, food must be given earlier: and in that climate also which has a more decomposing tendency: and for this reason, in Africa, the patient seems very properly withheld from food on no day. It ought to be given to a boy earlier than to a young man; in summer, sooner than in winter.

There is one thing which ought to be observed at all times, and in all places; the assiduous physician should frequently inspect the vital powers of the patient, and as long as they abound, he may combat the disease by abstinence; but if he begin to apprehend weakness, then he may allow nourishment. For it is his duty to exonerate his patient, if there be superfluous material, or to support him, if there be weakness from hunger. I find also in Erasistratus, who, although he has taught us but little, when the bowels and the body itself should be depleted, yet by saying that these things ought to be attended to, and that food ought to be given then, when the body stood in need of it, has evidently shewn, that it ought not to be given, while the strength abounds, still, he advises to guard against a deficiency.

From these considerations it may be inferred, that many patients cannot be attended by one physician: and that he is the most fit, if he be skilful in his art, who does not depart much from his patient. But those who are subservient for (base) gain, because that is greater in proportion to the number of people whom they attend, willingly embrace those precepts, which do not exact sedulous attend-

ut in hac ipsa re. Facile est enim dies vel accessiones numerare iis quoque, qui ægrum raro vident: ille assideat necesse est, qui, quod solum opus est, visurus est, quando nimis imbecillus futurus fit, nisi cibum acceperit. In pluribus tamen ad initium cibi dies quartus aptissimus esse consuevit.

Est autem alia etiam de diebus ipsis dubitatio; quoniam antiqui potissimum impares sequebantur, eosque, tamquam tunc de ægris judicaretur, *κρίσιμους* nominabant. His erat dies tertius, quintus, septimus, nonus, undecimus, quartusdecimus, unus et vicesimus; ita ut summa potentia septimo, deinde quarto-decimo, deinde uni et vicesimo daretur. Igitur sic ægros nutriebant, ut dierum imparium accessiones exspectarent; deinde postea cibum, quasi levioribus accessionibus instantibus, darent: adeo ut Hippocrates, si alio die febris desisset, recidivam timere sit solitus.

Id Asclepiades jure ut vanum repudiavit; neque in ullo die, quia par imparve esset, iis vel majus vel minus periculum esse dixit. Interdum enim peiores dies pares fiunt; et opportunius

## ORDO.

re ipsa. Enim est facile quoque iis qui raro vident ægrum numerare dies vel accessiones: est necesse ille assideat, qui est visurus, quod est solum opus, quando sit futurus nimis imbecillus, nisi acceperit cibum. Tamen in plurimis, quartus dies consuevit esse aptissimus ad initium cibi.

Autem est alia dubitatio etiam de diebus ipsis: quoniam antiqui sequebantur potissimum impares: que nominabant eos *κρίσιμους* (chrisimous), tanquam judicaretur tunc de ægris. His erat, tertius dies, quintus, septimus, nonus, undecimus, quartusdecimus, unus et vicesimus; ita, ut summa potentia daretur septimo, deinde quarto decimo, deinde uni et vicesimo. Igitur nutriebant ægros sic, ut exspectarent accessiones imparium dierum: deinde postea darent cibum, quasi levioribus accessionibus instantibus: adeo ut Hippocrates, si febris desisset alio die, solitus sit timere recidivam.

Asclepiades repudiavit jure id ut vanum; que dixit ne esse vel majus vel minus periculum iis in ullo die, quia, esset par vel imparve. Enim interdum pares dies fiunt peiores, et cibis datur op-

## TRANSLATION.

ance; as in this case itself. For it is easy even to those, who seldom see the sick to enumerate the days and the accessions: but he who would form a correct judgement, would do well to attend diligently, which is the most essential part, that he may see when it shall be necessary to administer food, lest his patient become too weak. Yet in most cases the fourth day is usually the fittest for the commencement of food.

But there is yet another doubt concerning the days themselves; for the ancients principally observed the odd days, and termed them *critical*, as if on these, a prognosis could be formed concerning the recovery of the sick. These days were, the third, the fifth, the seventh, the ninth, the eleventh, the fourteenth, and twenty-first; so that the greatest influence might be attributed to the seventh, the fourteenth, and then to the twenty-first. Therefore they nourished the sick in such a manner, that they waited for the accessions of the unequal days: then they gave food, as if at this period they anticipated milder accessions. So that even Hippocrates, was accustomed to fear a relapse, if the fever disappeared on any other day.

Asclepiades justly repudiated this as vain, and maintained that no day was more or less dangerous to the patient, by its being even or odd. For sometimes the even days happen to be the worst; and food is given more seasonably after



post eorum accessiones cibus datur. Nonnumquam etiam in ipso morbo dierum ratio mutatur; fitque gravior, qui remissior esse consueverat. Atque ipse quartusdecimus par est, in quo esse magnam vim antiqui fatebantur. Qui cum octavum primi naturam habere contenderent, ut ab eo secundus septenarius inciperet, ipsi sibi repugnabant, non octavum, neque decimum, neque duodecimum diem sumendo, quasi potentiores: plus enim tribuebant nono, et undecimo. Quod cum fecissent sine ulla probabili ratione, ab undecimo, non ad tertiumdecimum, sed ad quartumdecimum transibant. Est etiam apud Hippocratem, ei, quem septimus dies liberaturus sit, quartum esse gravissimum. Ita, illo quoque auctore, in die pari et gravior febris esse potest, et certa futuri nota.

Atque idem alio loco quartum quemque diem, ut in utrumque efficacissimum apprehendit; id est quartum, septimum, undecimum, quartumdecimum, decimumseptimum. In quo et ab imparis ad paris rationem transit, et ne hoc quidem propositum conservavit; cum (a septimo die)<sup>1</sup> undecimus, non quartus, sed quintus sit.<sup>2</sup> Adeo apparet,

## ORDO.

portunius post accessiones eorum. Etiam nonnumquam in morbo ipso ratio dierum mutatur; que fit gravior, qui consueverat esse remissior. Atque quartusdecimus ipse, in quo antiqui fatebantur magnam vim esse, est par. Qui cum contenderent octavum habere naturam primi, ut secundus septenarius inciperet ab eo, ipsi repugnabant sibi non sumendo octavum, neque decimum, neque duodecimum diem, quasi potentiores: enim tribuebant plus nono et undecimo. Quod cum fecissent sine ulla probabili ratione ab undecima transibant, non ad tertiumdecimum, sed ad quartumdecimum. Etiam est apud Hippocratem, quartum esse gravissimum ei quem septimus dies sit liberaturus. Ita quoque illo auctore, et febris potest esse gravior in pari die et certa nota futuri.

Atque idem alio loco apprehendit, quemque quartum diem, ut efficacissimum in utrumque: id est, quartum, septimum, undecimum, quartumdecimum, decimumseptimum. In quo transit ab imparis ad rationem paris, et ne quidem, conservavit hoc propositum: cum undecimus non sit quartus, sed quintus a septimo die. Adeo apparet, quacum-

## TRANSLATION.

their accessions. Sometimes also the order of the days is changed in the same disease; and that day becomes more severe, which had been accustomed to be more mild. But the fourteenth itself, which the ancients confessed to be highly *critical*, is an even day. Who, when they contended that the eighth day partook of the nature of the first, because, the second septenary begins from that, they contradict themselves, by not taking the eighth, nor the tenth, nor the twelfth day as the more influential: for they attributed importance to the ninth and eleventh. Which, when they had done this without any plausible reason, they passed on from the eleventh, not to the thirteenth, but to the fourteenth. Hippocrates observed the fourth day to be more severe on that sufferer, who was about to be relieved on the seventh. So that even on his authority, the fever may be more severe on an even day, and a certain prognostic of the future may be furnished.

The same author in another place considered every fourth day as highly important with regard to each event; that is, the fourth, the seventh, the eleventh, the fourteenth, and the seventeenth: in which he passes from the odd to the even, neither in this has he maintained his proposition; since the eleventh does not happen to be the fourth, but the fifth day from the seventh. Therefore in whatever

quacumque ratione ad numerum respexerimus, nihil rationis, sub illo quidem auctore, reperiri. Verum in his quidem antiquos tunc celebres admodum Pythagorici numeri fefellerunt: cum hic quoque medicus non numerare dies debeat, sed ipsas accessiones intueri; et ex his conjectare, quando dandus cibus sit.

Illud autem magis ad rem pertinet, scire, tum oporteat dari, cum jam bene venæ conquieverunt, an etiamnum manentibus reliquiis febris. Antiqui enim quam integerrimis corporibus alimentum offerebant: Asclepiades, inclinata quidem febre, sed adhuc tamen inhærente. In quo vanam rationem secutus est: non quod non sit interdum maturius cibus dandus, si mature timetur altera accessio; sed quod scilicet quam sanissimo dari debeat: minus enim corrumpitur, quod integro corpori infertur. Neque tamen verum est, quod Themisoni videbatur, si duabus horis integer futurus esset æger, satius esse tum dare; ut ab integro corpore potissimum diduceretur. Nam si diduci tam celeriter posset, id esset optimum: sed cum hoc breve tempus non præstet, satius est, principia cibi a decedente febre, quam

## ORDO.

que ratione respexerimus ad numerum, nihil rationis reperire quidem sub illo auctore. Verum in his quidem Pythagorici numeri, tunc admodum celebres, fefellerunt antiquos, cum hic quoque medicus non debeat numerare dies, sed intueri accessiones ipsas: et ex his conjectare quando cibus sit dandus.

Autem illud pertinere magis ad rem, scire oporteat dari tum cum venæ jam conquieverunt bene, an reliquiis febris etiamnum manentibus. Enim antiqui offerebant alimentum corporibus quam integerrimis: Asclepiades febre inclinata quidem, sed tamen adhuc remanente. In quo secutus est vanam rationem: non quod cibus non sit interdum dandus maturius, si altera accessio timetur mature; sed quod scilicet debeat dari, quam sanissimo: enim corrumpitur minus quod infertur corpori integro. Neque tamen est verum quod videbatur Themisoni, si æger esset futurus integer duabus horis, esse satius dare tum: ut deduceretur ab corpore, potissimum integro. Nam si posset diduci tam celeriter, id esset optimum: sed cum hoc breve tempus non præstet, est satius, principia cibi excipi a febre decedente quam reliquias

## TRANSLATION.

manner we regard his calculations, no sound reasoning is to be found in his theory. But indeed at that time the Pythagorean numbers being very celebrated, deceived the ancients, whereas in this, the physician ought not to number the days, but to watch the paroxysms themselves; and from these alone, form his judgement when food may be given.

But this is of more importance to know, whether it ought to be given when the veins (*arteries*) have become completely tranquillized, or while some relics of fever yet remain. The ancients indeed administered aliment to patients in the soundest state possible: Asclepiades (*gave food*) when the fever began to decline, but was still remaining. In which he followed a vain theory: not that food may not be given sometimes more early, if another accession be apprehended soon; but because it ought to be given to the patient in the most healthy state possible: for that is less liable to be vitiated which is introduced into a sound body. Nor is it true which Themison proposed, that if the patient were about to have an intermission of two hours, it would be preferable to give food then; that it might be digested by the body during the absence of fever. For if it could be assimilated with so much celerity, it were best; but since this brevity of space cannot effect that, it is better that food should be commenced, when the fever abates, in order

reliquias ab incipiente excipi. Ita, si longius tempus secundum est, quam integerrimo dandus est; si breve, etiam antequam ex toto integer fiat.

Quo loco vero integritas est, eodem est remissio, quæ maxima in febre continua potest esse. Atque hoc quoque quæritur, utrum tot horæ exspectandæ sint, quot febrem habuerunt; an satis sit, primam partem earum præteriri, ut ægris jucundius insadat, quibus interdum non vacat. Tutissimum est autem, ante totius accessionis tempus præterire: quamvis, ubi longa febris fuit, potest indulgeri ægro maturius, dum tamen ante minimum pars dimidia prætereatur. Idque non in ea sola febre, de qua proxime dictum est, sed in omnibus ita servandum est.

## ORDO.

ab incipiente. Ita si secundum tempus est longius, est dandus quam integerrimo; si breve, etiam antequam fiat ex toto integer.

Vero quo loco integritas est, eodem remissio est, quæ potest esse maxima in continua febre. Atque hoc quoque quæritur, utrum tot horæ sint exspectandæ, quot habuerunt febrem: an sit satis primam partem earum præteriri, ut insadat jucundius ægris, quibus interdum non vacat. Autem est tutissimum tempus totius accessionis præterire ante: quamvis, ubi febris fuit longa, potest indulgeri ægro maturius, dum tamen minimum dimidia pars prætereatur ante. Que id est servandum, ita non in ea febre sola, de qua dictum est proxime, sed in omnibus.

## TRANSLATION.

that digestion may be accomplished, before the next accession comes on. Thus, if the intermission be very long, food is to be given to the patient when he is most free from fever; if short, even before the cessation of the paroxysm.

But at what time the sound interval takes place, that is the remission, which may be of considerable duration in a continued fever. But there is another question; whether we should wait so many hours as have been occupied by the fever; or, whether it may be sufficient for the first few hours to be passed over, that it may settle more pleasantly with those patients whose intermissions are sometimes short. But it is the safest, for the whole of the paroxysm to pass over first, although, when the accession has been long, the patient may be indulged a little earlier, on condition that at least one half of the time be passed. These things are to be observed so, not only in such fevers as we have been just treating of, but in all others.



## CAP. V.

DE FEBRIUM SPECIEBUS, ET SINGULARUM CURATIONIBUS: ET PRIMO, QUANDO CIBUS FÉBRICITANTIBUS DANDUS SIT.

HÆC magis per omnia genera febrium perpetua sunt: nunc ad singulas earum species descendam. Igitur si semel tantum accessit, deinde desiit, eaque vel ex inguine, vel ex lassitudine, vel ex æstu, aliave simili re fuit, sic, ut interior nulla causa metum fecerit, postero die, cum tempus accessionis ita transiit, ut nihil moverit, cibus dari potest. At si ex alto calor venit, et gravitas vel capitis vel præcordiorum secuta est, neque apparet, quid corpus confuderit; quamvis unam accessionem secuta integritas est; tamen, quia tertiana timeri potest, exspectandus est dies tertius: et ubi accessionis tempus præteriit, cibus dandus est, sed exiguus; quia quartana quoque timeri potest: et die quarto demum, si corpus integrum

## ORDO.

## CAP. V.

DE SPECIEBUS FEBRIUM, ET CURATIONIBUS SINGULARUM, ET PRIMO QUANDO CIBUS SIT DANDUS FEBRICITANTIBUS.

HÆC sunt magis perpetua per omnia genera febrium: nunc descendam ad singulas species earum. Igitur si accessit tantum semel, deinde desiit, que ea fuit, vel ex inguine, vel ex lassitudine vel ex æstu, ve alia simili re, sic ut nulla interior causa fecerit metum, postero die cum tempus accessionis transiit ita ut moverit nihil, cibus potest dari. At si calor venit ex alto, et gravitas vel capitis vel præcordiorum secuta est, neque apparet quid confuderit corpus: quamvis integritas secuta est unam accessionem; tamen, quia tertiana potest timeri, tertius dies est, exspectandus: et ubi tempus accessionis præteriit, cibus est dandus, sed exiguus; quia quartana potest quoque timeri: et demum quarto die si corpus est integrum,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

THE TREATMENT OF EACH SPECIE OF FEVER, AND THE TIMES OF GIVING FOOD.

THESE observations are more applicable to all kinds of fevers: I shall now proceed to their several species. Therefore, if there have been but one accession only, which has afterwards ceased, and this has been excited either by a disease (1) of the groin, or from lassitude, or from heat, or any similar cause, so that the apprehension does not proceed from some internal cause, on the following day, when the time of the accession has passed over without any sensible disturbance, food may be given. But if the heat originate from some deep hidden cause, and a heaviness either of the head or præcordia follow, and there be no apparent cause for the disturbance of the body; although apyrexia have succeeded one accession; yet because a tertian may be feared, we must wait for the third day: and when the time of the accession has passed, food may be given, but sparingly; because a quartan also may be dreaded: but if the body at last be free from fever on

est, eo cum fiducia utendum. Si vero postero, tertiove, aut quarto die secuta febris est; scire licet, morbum esse.

Sed tertianarum, quartanarumque, quarum et certus circuitus est, et finis integer, et liberaliter quieta tempora sunt, expeditior ratio est: de quibus suo loco dicam. Nunc vero eas explicabo, quæ quotidie urgent. Igitur tertio quoque die cibus ægro commodissime datur: ut alter febrem minuat, alter viribus subveniat. Sed is dari debet, si quotidiana febris est, quæ ex toto desinat, simul atque corpus integrum factum est: si quamvis non accessiones, febres tamen junguntur, et quotidie quidem increscunt, sed sine integritate tamen remittunt, cum corpus ita se habet, ut major remissio non expectetur: si altero die gravior, altero levior accessio est, post graviolem. Fere vero graviolem accessionem levior nox sequitur: quo fit, ut graviolem accessionem nox quoque tristior antecedit.

At si continuatur febris, neque levior unquam fit, et dari cibum necesse est, quando dari debeat, magna dissensio est. Quidam, quia fere remissius ma-

## ORDO.

utendum eo cum fiducia. Vero si febris secuta est postero, ve tertio, aut quarto die, licet scire esse morbum.

Sed ratio tertianarum, que quartanarum est expeditior, quarum est et certus circuitus, et integer finis et tempora, sunt liberaliter quieta: de quibus dicam suo loco. Vero nunc explicabo eas quæ urgent quotidie. Igitur quoque cibus datur ægro commodissime tertio die: ut alter minuat febrem, alter subveniat viribus. Sed si est quotidiana febris, quæ desinat ex toto, is debet dari, simul atque corpus factum est integrum: si quamvis non accessiones, tamen febres junguntur, et quidem increscunt quotidie, sed tamen remittunt sine integritate, cum corpus habet se ita, ut major remissio non expectetur: si accessio est gravior altero die, levior altero, post graviolem. Vero fere levior nox sequitur graviolem accessionem: quo fit, ut quoque tristior nox antecedit graviolem accessionem.

At si febris continuatur, neque unquam fit levior, et est necesse cibum dari, est magna dissensio quando debeat dari. Quia matutina tempus est fere remissius

## TRANSLATION.

the fourth day, food may be given with confidence. But if fever have followed on the next, or on the third, or fourth day, we may conclude it to be a disease.

Now the treatment of those tertians, and quartans is more easy, whose circuit is certain, the terminations healthy, and there are ample and quiet intermissions; of which I shall speak in their proper place. But at present I shall explain those fevers which return with daily exacerbation. Therefore in these, it is better to give food every third day: that the intervening day may abate the fever, the other support the strength. But if it be a quotidian, and cease entirely, food ought to be given as soon as the body becomes sound: for although there be not accessions immediately succeeding each other, yet they are connected, and increase daily; still they remit without a free interval, then food must be given, when the body is in that state, when it has got over the greater exacerbation: if the accession be more severe on one day, and milder on another, then let him have food after the more severe accession: whence it happens also, that a more restless night precedes a severe fit.

But if the fever be continued, and there be no mitigation, and there be a necessity for giving food, as to when this should be given, there is much difference of opinion.

tutinum tempus ægris est, tum putant dandum. Quod si respondet, non quia mane est, sed quia remissio est ægris, dari debet. Si vero ne tunc quidem ulla requies ægris est, hoc ipso pejus id tempus est, quod cum sua natura melius esse debeat, morbi vitio non est: simulque insequitur tempus meridianum, a quo cum omnis æger fere pejor fiat, timeri potest, ne ille magis etiam, quam ex consuetudine, urgeatur. Igitur alii vespere tali ægro cibum dant. Sed cum eo tempore fere pessimi sint, qui ægrotant, verendum est, ne, si quid tunc moverimus, fiat aliquid asperius. Ob hæc ad mediam noctem decurro; id est finito jam gravissimo tempore, eodemque longissime distante: secuturis vero antelucanis horis, quibus omnes fere maxime dormiunt; deinde matutino tempore, quod natura sua levissimum est.

Si vero febres vagæ sunt, quia verendum est, ne cibum statim subsequantur, quandocumque quis ex accessione levatus est, tunc debet assumere. At si plures accessiones eodem die veniunt, considerare oportet, pares ne per omnia sint, quod vix fieri potest, an impares.

## ORDO.

ægris, quidam putant dandum tunc. Quod si respondet, debet dari, non quia est mane, sed quia est remissio ægris. Vero si nequidem est ulla requies ægris tunc, id tempus est hoc ipso pejus, quod cum sua natura debeat esse melius, non est vitio morbi: que simul meridianum tempus insequitur, a quo cum omnis æger fere fiat pejor, potest timeri, ne ille urgeatur etiam magis, quam ex consuetudine. Igitur alii dant cibum tali ægro, vespere. Sed cum, qui ægrotant, sint fere pessimi eo tempore, est verendum ne, si moverimus quid tunc, aliquid fiat asperius. Ob hæc decurro ad mediam noctem; id est, gravissimo tempore jam finito, que longissime distante: vero horis ante lucanis secuturis, quibus fere omnes dormiunt maxime; deinde matutino tempore, quod sua natura est levissimum.

Vero si febres sunt vagæ, quia est verendum ne subsequantur statim cibum, quandocumque quis levatus est ex accessione, tunc debet assumere. At si plures accessiones veniunt eodem die, oportet considerare ne sint pares per omnia, quod vix potest fieri, an impares. Si sunt pares

## TRANSLATION.

Because the morning is for the most part easier to the patient, some think food ought to be given then. But if it succeed, it ought to be given, not because it is morning, but because there is a remission then. But if there be no mitigation then, that time is so much the worse, because, by its own nature, it ought to be better, yet owing to the malignancy of the disease it is not so: after this follows the meridian, after which, every patient becomes worse, it may be apprehended, that the patient may become worse than usual. Therefore some give food to such a patient in the evening: but since sick people are generally worse at that time, it is to be dreaded, lest by exciting any commotion, an aggravation of the disease may be the consequence. For these reasons, I defer it till midnight; that is, the evening exacerbation being over, and the next being at the greatest distance possible: and now the hours before dawn being about to follow, during which most people sleep sound; afterwards the morning, which is naturally the most favourable.

But if the accessions be erratic, for in such a case there is reason to apprehend, lest they follow immediately on food, then the patient ought to take food whenever he has been released from a paroxysm. But if several accessions come on the same day, it is necessary to consider whether they be similar during the whole



Si per omnia pares sunt, post eam potius accessionem cibus dari debet, quæ non inter meridiem et vesperem desinit: si impares sunt, considerandum est, quo distent. Nam si altera gravior, altera levior est, post graviorem dari debet: si altera longior, altera brevior, post longiorem: si altera gravior, altera longior est, considerandum est, utra magis affligat, illa vi, an hæc tempore, et post eam dandus est. Sed plane plurimum interest, quantæ qualesque inter eas remissiones sint. Nam si post alteram febrem motio manet, post alteram integrum corpus est, integro corpore, cibo tempus aptius est.

Si semper febricula manet, sed alterum tamen longius tempus remissionis est, id potius eligendum est; adeo ut, ubi accessiones continuantur, protinus, inclinata priore, dandus cibus sit. Et enim perpetuum est, ad quod omne consilium dirigi potest; cibum quam maxime semper ab accessione futura reducere; et, hoc salvo, dare quam integerrimo corpore. Quod non inter duas tantum, sed etiam inter plures accessiones servabitur. Sed cum sit aptissimum, tertio quoque die cibum dare;

## ORDO.

per omnia, cibus debet dari potius post eam accessionem, quæ non desinit inter meridiem et vesperem: si sunt impares, est considerandum quo distent. Nam si altera est gravior, altera levior, debet dari post graviorem: si altera longior, altera brevior, post longiorem, si altera est gravior, altera longior, est considerandum utra affligat magis, illa vi, an hæc tempore, et est dandus post eam. Sed plane interest plurimum, quantæ que quales remissiones sint inter eas. Nam si motio manet post alteram febrem, corpus est integrum post alteram: aptius est, tempus cibi corpore integro.

Si febricula semper manet, sed tamen alterum tempus remissionis est longius, id est potius eligendum: adeo ut ubi accessiones continuantur, cibus dandus protinus priore inclinata. Enim est perpetuum, ad quod omne consilium potest dirigi, reducere cibum semper quam maxime ab accessione futura; et hoc salvo dare, corpore quam integerrimo. Quod servabitur, non tantum inter duas, sed etiam inter plures accessiones. Sed cum sit aptissimum dare cibum quoque tertio

## TRANSLATION.

series, (which is scarcely possible) or dissimilar. If they be alike through all, food should be given rather after that accession which does not terminate between mid-day and evening: if they be unlike, then we ought to consider in what the difference consists. For if one be more vehement, the other milder, it ought to be given after the first; if the one should be longer, the other shorter, then after the longer: if the one be more severe, the other longer, then we should consider which of the two affect the patient most, the former by its violence, or the latter by its duration, and to give accordingly. But indeed it is of most importance, how great the remissions may be, and the nature of each, which may take place between the attacks. For if there happen to be any diseased action remaining after one paroxysm, and the body be entirely free after another, then the fittest time to give food is, when the patient is most free.

If a slight fever always remain, yet one remission may be longer than another, that is the most eligible; so that if the accessions be continued, food may be given immediately upon the decline of the first. For it is a perpetual rule, with which every other must coincide, to withhold food at the greatest possible distance from the impending paroxysm; and with this precaution being taken, to give it, when the patient is most free from pyrexia: which must be observed not only after two accessions, but after several. But although it may be very proper to give food

tamen, si corpus infirmum est, quotidie dandus est; multoque magis, si continentes febres sine remissione sunt, quanto magis corpus affligunt; aut si duæ pluresve accessiones eodem die veniunt. Quæ res efficit, ut et a primo die protinus cibus dari quotidie debeat, si protinus venæ conciderunt; et sæpius eodem die, si inter plures accessiones subinde vis corpori deest. Illud tamen in his servandum est, ut post eas febres minus cibi detur, post quas, si per corpus liceret, omnino non daretur.

Cum vero febris instet, incipiat, aug-eatur, consistat, decedat, deinde in de-cessione consistat, aut finiatur; scire licet, optimum cibo tempus esse febre finita; deinde, cum decessio ejus consistit; tertium, si necesse est, quando-cumque decedit; cetera omnia pericu-losa esse. Si tamen propter infirmi-tatem necessitas urget; satius esse, con-sistente jam incremento febris, aliquid offerre, quam increscente; satius esse, instante, quam incipiente: cum eo ta-men, ut nullo tempore is, qui deficit, non sit sustinendus.

Neque hercule satis est, ipsas tantum febres medicum intueri, sed etiam totius

## ORDO.

die; tamen si corpus est infirmum, est dandus quotidie; que multo magis si febres sunt continentes sine remissione, quanto magis affligunt corpus; aut si duæ ve plures accessiones veniunt eodem die. Quæ res efficit, ut et cibus debeat dari quotidie, protinus a primo die, si venæ conciderunt protinus; et sæpius eodem die, si vis deest corpori subinde inter plures accessiones. Tamen illud est servandum in his ut minus cibi detur post eas febres, post quas, si liceret per corpus, non daretur omnino.

Vero cum febris instet, incipiat, angeatur, consistat, decedat, deinde consistat in decessione, aut finiatur: licet scire optimum tempus esse cibo febre finita; deinde, cum decessio ejus consistit; tertium, si est necesse, quandocumque decedit; omnia cætera esse periculosa. Tamen si propter infirmitatem necessitas urget, esse satius offerre aliquid, incremento febris jam consistente, quam increscente; esse satius, instante, quam incipiente: tamen cum eo, ut nullo tempore is, qui deficit, non sit sustinendus.

Neque hercule est satis medicum intueri tantum febres ipsas, sed etiam habitum totius

## TRANSLATION.

every third day; yet if the body be weak, it ought to be given daily; and the more necessary if the fevers be continuous without any remission, by which, the patient is so much the more affected; or, if two or more accessions come on the same day: which circumstance renders it necessary, that food should be given daily from the first day, if the arterial action have subsided in a short time; and repeatedly, on the same day, if the *vis vitæ* be deficient during a succession of many paroxysms. Yet this must be observed in these instructions, that less nourishment is to be given after those paroxysms; whereas, if the physical powers would permit, none at all should be given.

Now as every fever has its approach, onset, progress, acmè, or decline, and again becomes stationary, although subdued, or entirely terminated; we may conclude that the best time to give food is when the paroxysm is over; next, when the decline terminates; thirdly, if necessary, whenever it begins to subside; all other times are dangerous. But if weakness urge the necessity, it is preferable to offer something, when the increment of the fever becomes stationary, than when it is increasing; it is better when approaching, than when beginning: yet with this understanding, that there is no time improper for him who is exhausted, in which he may not be sustained.

Nor indeed is it sufficient for the physician to attend only to the fevers them-

corporis habitum, et ad eum dirigere curationem; seu supersunt vires, seu desunt, seu quidam alii affectus interveniunt. Cum vero semper ægros securos agere conveniat, ut corpore tantum, non etiam animo laborent: tum præcipue, ubi cibum sumpserunt. Itaque, si qua sunt, quæ exasperatura eorum animos sunt, optimum est, ea, dum ægrotant, eorum notitiæ subtrahere: si id fieri non potest, sustinere tamen post cibum usque somni tempus, et cum expectrecti sunt, tum exponere.

## ORDO.

corporis, et dirigere curationem ad eum, seu vires supersunt, seu desunt, seu quidam alii affectus interveniunt. Vero cum conveniat semper ægros agere securos, ut laborent tantum corpore, non etiam animo, præcipue tum, ubi sumpserunt cibum. Itaque si sunt quæ sunt exasperatura animos eorum, est optimum subtrahere ea notitiæ eorum dum ægrotant: si id non potest fieri, tamen sustinere post cibum usque tempus somni, et cum expectrecti sunt, tum exponere.

## TRANSLATION.

selves, but to the condition of the whole body, and to direct his treatment to it, to see whether there be a surplus or deficiency of vital power, or whether any other passions affect *the mind*. But since it is more advantageous to keep the patients always tranquil, that their afflictions may not be moral, as well as physical, especially when they have taken food; therefore if there be any incident calculated to excite their minds, it is best to withhold it from their knowledge while they are sick: if that cannot be done, at least after food and time of sleep, and when they have awoke to relate it.

## CAP. VI.

QUANDO POTIONES FEBRICITANTIBUS  
DARI EXPEDIAT.

SED de cibo quidem facilius cum ægris ratio est; quorum sæpe stomachus hunc respuit, etiamsi mens concupiscit: de potione vero ingens pugna est; eoque magis, quo major febris est. Hæc enim sitim accendit, et tum maxime aquam exigit, cum illa periculosissima

## ORDO.

## CAP. VI.

QUANDO EXPEDIAT FEBRICITANTIBUS POTIONES DARI.

SED ratio de cibo cum ægris est facilius, stomachus quorum sæpe respuit hunc, etiam si mens concupiscit: vero de potione pugna est ingens, que eo magis, quo febris est major. Enim hæc accendit sitim, et exigit aquam maxime tum, cum illa est pericu-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

THE TIMES PROPER FOR GIVING DRINK TO THE SICK.

BUT indeed the regulation of food is more easy with patients, for their stomachs generally eject this, even when the mind covets it: but the great struggle is for drink, and the more so, proportioned to the violence of the fever. For this excites thirst, and they require water most, at the very time that it is most dangerous to



est. Sed docendus æger est, ubi febris quieverit, protinus sitim quoque quieturam; longioremque accessionem fore, si quod ei datum fuerit alimentum: ita celerius eum desinere sitire, qui non bibit. Necesse est tamen, quanto facilius etiam sani famem, quam sitim sustinent, tanto magis ægris in potione, quam in cibo indulgere. Sed primo quidem die nullus humor dari debet; nisi subito sic venæ conciderunt, ut cibus quoque dari debeat: secundo vero, ceterisque etiam, quibus cibus non dabitur, tamen, si magna sitis urget, potio dari potest.

Ac ne illud quidem, ab Heraclide Tarentino dictum, ratione caret: ubi aut bilis ægrum, aut cruditas male habet, expedire quoque per modicas potiones misceri novam materiam corruptæ. Illud videndum est, ut qualia tempora cibo leguntur, talia potioni quoque, ubi sine illo datur, deligantur aut cum ægrum dormire cupiemus; quod fere sitis prohibet; satis autem convenit, cum omnibus febricitantibus nimius humor alienus sit, tum præcipue esse fœminis, quæ ex partu in febres inciderunt.

## ORDO.

losissima. Sed æger est docendus, ubi febris conquieverit, protinus sitim quoque quieturam; que accessionem fore longiorem, si quod alimentum datum fuerit ei: ita eum desinere celerius sitire, qui non bibit. Tamen est necesse, quanto facilius etiam sani sustinent famem quam sitim, tanto magis indulgere ægris in potione quam in cibo. Sed primo die, quidem, nullus humor debet dari, nisi venæ conciderunt subito, sic ut cibus quoque debeat dari: vero secundo que etiam ceteris quibus cibus non dabitur, tamen si magna sitis urget, potio potest dari.

Ac ne quidem illud dictum ab Heraclide Tarentino caret ratione. Ubi aut bilis, aut cruditas habet male ægrum, expedire novam materiam misceri corruptæ per modicas potiones. Illud est videndum, ut qualia tempora leguntur cibo, talia quoque deligantur, potioni, ubi datur sine illo: aut cum cupiemus ægrum dormire: quod fere sitis prohibet. Etiam convenit satis, cum omnis humor sit alienus omnibus febricitantibus, tum præcipue esse fœminis, quæ inciderunt in febres ex partu.

## TRANSLATION.

them. But the patient must be informed, that when the fever shall have subsided, the thirst also will immediately abate: and that the accession will be protracted if any aliment be given to him: and he will the sooner cease to thirst, who does not drink. But as it is absolutely necessary, and in proportion as persons in health sustain hunger much more easily than thirst, so much the more ought the sick to be indulged with drink rather than food. But on the first day indeed, no fluid ought to be given, unless the arterial action have subsided so suddenly, that food also may be indicated; but on the second, and also on the following day on which no food shall be given, yet if the thirst be very oppressive, some drink may be given.

The observation of Heraclides of Tarentum is not without reason. *He says*, that when either bile, or indigestion disorders the patient, that it is expedient for fresh material to be admixed with the vitiated, by drinking moderately of fluids. This must be observed, that the times chosen for food, are also eligible for drink, when it is given without food; or when we wish the patient to sleep, which for the most part thirst prohibits. It is satisfactorily agreed upon, that all fluids are injurious to every person in a state of pyrexia, but especially to females who have puerperal fever.

Sed cum tempora cibo potionique febris et remissionis ratio det, non est expeditissimum scire, quando æger febricitet, quando melior sit, quando deficiat; sine quibus dispensari illa non possunt. Venis enim maxime credimus, fallacissimæ rei; quia sæpe istæ leniores celerioresve sunt, et ætate, et sexu, et corporum natura: et plerumque satis sano corpore, si stomachus infirmus est, nonnumquam etiam incipiente febre, subeunt et quiescunt; ut imbecillus is videri possit, cui facile laturo gravis instat accessio.

Contra sæpe eas concitat et resolvit sol, et balneum, et exercitatio, et metus, et ira, et quilibet alius animi affectus: adeo ut, cum primum medicus venit, sollicitudo ægri dubitantis, quomodo illi se habere videatur, eas moveat. OB QUAM CAUSAM, PERITI MEDICI EST, NON PROTINUS UT VENIT, APPREHENDERE MANU BRACHIUM: SED PRIMUM RESIDERE HILARI VULTU, PERCUNCTARIQUE, QUEMADMODUM SE HABEAT; ET SI QUIS EJUS METUS EST, EUM PROBILI SERMONE LENIRE; TUM DEINDE EJUS CORPORI MANUM ADMOVERE. Quas venas autem conspectus

## ORDO.

Sed cum ratio febris et remissionis det tempora cibo que potioni, non est expeditissimum scire quando æger febricitet, quando sit melior, quando deficiat: sine quibus, illa possunt non dispensari. Enim credimus, fallacissimæ rei; quia istæ sunt sæpe leniores, vel celeriores, et ætate, et sexu, et natura corporum: et plerumque corpore sano satis, si stomachus est infirmus, nonnumquam etiam febre incipiente, subeunt et quiescunt; ut is possit videri imbecillus, cui laturo facile gravis accessio instat.

Contra, sæpe sol, et balneum, et exercitatio, et metus, et ira, et quilibet alius affectus animi concitat et resolvat eas; adeo ut, cum primum medicus venit, sollicitudo ægri dubitantis, quomodo videatur illi habere se, moveat eas. OB QUAM CAUSAM, EST PERITI MEDICI, NON PROTINUS UT VENIT, APPREHENDERE BRACHIUM MANU: SED PRIMUM RESIDERE HILARI VULTU, QUE PERCONTARI QUEM ADMODUM HABEAT SE; ET SI EST QUIS METUS EJUS, LENIRE EUM CUM PROBILI SERMONE: TUM DEINDE ADMOVERE MANUM CORPORI EJUS. Antem quam facile mille res

## TRANSLATION.

But although the nature of the fever and its remission indicate the times for food and drink, yet it is not very easy to know when the sick person is in fever, when he is better, and when he is exhausted: without a knowledge of which, those things cannot be advantageously administered. For we depend much on arterial action, and a most fallacious diagnosis it is; because these (*pulsations*) are often more gentle or more rapid, according to the age, sex, and nature of constitutions; and generally, when a person is in good health, if the stomach be weak, or sometimes even under incipient fever, the pulsations are diminished in number and volume; so that he may appear weak, who is sufficiently able to sustain a severe paroxysm.

On the other hand, very often the sun, a bath, exercise, fear, anger, or any other emotion of the mind accelerate the pulsations; so that when a physician first comes in, the solicitude of the patient, doubtful and apprehensive respecting what opinion the physician may have of his case, is of itself sufficient cause to excite the pulse. FOR THIS REASON, IT IS THE PART OF A SKILFUL PHYSICIAN, NOT TO SEIZE THE PATIENT'S ARM IMMEDIATELY, AS HE ENTERS THE CHAMBER, BUT LET HIM SIT DOWN FIRST, WITH A CHEERFUL COUNTENANCE, AND TO ENQUIRE HOW HE FINDS HIMSELF, AND IF HE SEEM ALARMED, TO SOOTHE HIM WITH SOME PLAUSIBLE OBSERVATIONS; THEN HE MAY APPLY HIS HAND TO THE BODY (2). But

medici movet, quam facile mille res turbant! Altera res est, cui credimus, calor, æque fallax: nam hic quoque excitatur æstu, labore, somno, metu, sollicitudine.

Igitur intueri quidem etiam ista oportet; sed his non omnia credere. Ac protinus quidem scire, non febricitare eum, cujus venæ naturaliter ordinatæ sunt, teporque talis est, qualis esse sanis solet: non protinus autem sub calore motuque febrem esse concipere; sed ita, si summa quoque arida inæqualiter cutis est; si calor et in fronte est, et ex imis præcordiis oritur; si spiritus ex naribus cum fervore prorumpit; si color, aut rubore, aut pallore novo mutatus est; si oculi graves, et aut persicci, aut subhumidi sunt; si sudor cum fit, inæqualis est; si venæ non æquis intervallis moventur. Ob quam causam medicus neque in tenebris, neque a capite ægri debet residere; sed illustri loco adversus eum, ut omnes notas, ex vultu quoque cubantis perspiciat. Ubi vero febris fuit, atque decrevit, exspectare oportet, num tempora, partesve corporis aliæ paulum madescant, quæ sudorem venturum esse tes-

## ORDO.

turbant venas quas conspectus medici movet! Altera res, cui credimus, calor, est æque fallax: nam hic quoque excitatur æstu, labore, somno, metu, sollicitudine.

Igitur oportet quidem etiam intueri ista: sed non credere omnia his. Ac quidem protinus scire eum non febricitare, venæ cujus sunt naturaliter ordinatæ, que tepor est talis qualis solet esse sanis: autem non protinus concipere febrem esse sub calore, que motu; sed ita, si quoque summa cutis est inæqualiter arida; si, et calor est in fronte, et oritur ex imis præcordiis; si spiritus prorumpit ex naribus cum fervore; si color mutatus est, aut novo rubore aut pallore; si oculi sunt graves, et aut persicci, aut subhumidi; si sudor est inæqualis, cum fit, si venæ moventur non æquis intervallis. Ob quam causam medicus debet residere, neque in tenebris, neque a capite ægri; sed illustri loco adversus eum, ut perspiciat omnes notas, ex vultu quoque cubantis. Vero ubi febris fuit, atque decrevit, oportet exspectare, num tempora ve aliæ partes corporis madescant paulum, quæ testentur sudorem esse ven-

## TRANSLATION.

how easily might a thousand other incidents excite the veins (*heart's action*) as well as the sight of a physician! Another thing on which we depend, the temperature of the body, is equally fallacious: for this also is excited by the heat of the sun, labour, sleep, fear, solicitude.

Therefore it is necessary to weigh all those circumstances, but not to place implicit confidence on them alone. We may know immediately that a person is not in a fever, whose pulse beats naturally, and the temperature is such as is usual in healthy persons: but not to imagine hastily that fever exists under heat and vascular action; but it is much more confirmatory, if the surface of the skin be unequally arid; if there be a heat in the forehead, and at the same time arising from the bottom of the præcordia; if the breath rush out of the nostrils with fervor; if the colour be changed, either for an unusual redness or pallor; if the eyes be heavy, or either very dry, or rather moist; if partial diaphoresis take place; if the pulsations be not at equal intervals. For this reason the physician ought not to sit down in the dark, nor at the patient's head, but in a well lighted place opposite to him, that he may observe all the symptoms from the countenance of the patient as he lies. But when a paroxysm has taken place, and is just on the decline, it is proper to examine, whether the temples or any other parts of the body have become a little moist, which is the indication of a perspiration about to follow: and if



tentur : ac si qua nota est, tunc demum dare potui calidam aquam ; cujus salubris effectus est, si sudorem per omnia membra diffundit. Hujus autem rei causa, continere æger sub veste satis multa manus debet ; eademque crura, pedesque contegere : qua mole plerique ægros in ipso febris impetu, potissime-que ubi ardens ea est, male habent.

Si sudare corpus cœpit, linteum tepefacere oportet, paulatimque singula membra detergere. At ubi sudor omnis finitus est, aut si is non venit, ubi quam maxime potuit, idoneus esse cibo æger videtur, sub veste leniter unguendus est, tum detergendus, deinde ei cibus dandus.

Is autem febricitantibus humidus est aptissimus, aut humori certe quam proximus : utique ex materia quam levissima, maximeque sorbitio ; eaque, si magnæ febres fuerint, quam tenuissima esse debet. Mel quoque despumatum huic recte adjicitur, quo corpus magis nutriatur : sed id, si stomachum offendit, supervacuum est ; sicut ipsa quoque sorbitio. Dari vero in vicem ejus potest, vel intrita ex aqua calida, vel alica elota ; si firmus est stomachus,

## ORDO.

turum : ac si est qua nota, tunc demum dare calidam aquam potui : effectus cujus est salubris, si diffundit sudorem per omnia membra. Autem causa hujus rei, æger debet continere manus sub satis multa veste ; que contegere crura que pedes eadem : qua mole plerique habent ægros in impetu ipso febris, que potissime ubi ea est ardens.

Si corpus cœpit sudare, oportet tepefacere linteum, que paulatim detergere singula membra. At ubi omnis sudor finitus est, aut si is non venit, ubi æger videtur esse idoneus cibo, quam maxime potuit, est unguendus leniter sub veste, tum detergendus, deinde cibus dandus ei.

Autem is humidus est aptissimus febricitantibus, aut certe, quam proximus humori : utique ex materia quam levissima, que maxime sorbitio : que, si febres fuerint magnæ, ea debet esse quam tenuissima. Quoquedespumatum mel adjicitur recte huic, quo corpus nutriatur magis : sed id est supervacuum, si offendit stomachum ; sicut quoque sorbitio ipsa. Vero vel intrita ex calida aqua, vel elota alica potest dari invicem ejus : si stomachus

## TRANSLATION.

there be a prognosis of this kind, then we should give warm water to drink : the effect of which is salutary, if it diffuse a perspiration over all the limbs. But to accomplish this, the patient ought to keep his hands under a sufficient quantity of clothes, and to cover his legs and feet in the same manner : by which mass of clothing, many people maltreat their patients in the very height of the fever, and particularly if it be of the ardent kind.

When the body begins to perspire, it is necessary to warm a linen cloth and wipe every limb gradually. But when the diaphoresis is over, or if that have not come on, when the patient seems to be in a fit state to receive food, he is to be anointed gently under the clothes, then to be wiped, afterwards food is to be given to him.

Now liquid food is most proper for persons in fever, or at least as near as possible to liquids, especially that of the very lightest kind, particularly gruel ; and if the fevers have been violent, even that ought to be as thin as possible. Also clarified honey may well be added to this, to render it more nutritive to the body ; but that will be superfluous, if it offend the stomach : as also the gruel itself. But either panada(3) made with hot water, or washed alica may be given instead of

et compressa alvus, ex aqua mulsa; si vel ille languet, vel hæc profluit, ex posca.

Et primo quidem cibo id satis est. Secundo vero aliquid adjici potest, ex eodem tamen genere materiæ, vel olus, vel conchylium, vel pomum. Et dum febres quidem increscunt, hic solus idoneus cibus est. Ubi vero aut desinunt, aut levantur, semper quidem incipiendum est ab aliquo ex materia levissima, adjiciendum vero aliquid ex media, ratione habita subinde et virium hominis, et morbi.

Ponendi vero ægro varii cibi, sicut Asclepiades præcepit, tum demum sunt, ubi fastidio urgetur, neque satis vires sufficiunt; ut paulum ex singulis degustando, famem vitet. At si neque vis, neque cupiditas deest, nulla varietate sollicitandus æger est; ne plus assumat, quam concoquat. Neque verum est, quod ab eo dicitur, facilius concoqui cibos varios. Eduntur enim facilius: ad concoctionem autem materiæ genus et modus pertinent. Neque inter magnos dolores, neque increscente morbo, tutum est, ægrum cibo impleri; sed ubi inclinata jam in melius valetudo est.

#### ORDO.

est firmus, et alvus compressa ex mulsa aqua; si vel ille languet, vel hæc profluit ex posca.

Et id quidem est satis primo cibo. Verosecundo aliquid potest adjici, tamen ex eodem genere materiæ, vel olus, vel conchylium, vel pomum. Et quidem dum febres increscunt, hic cibus solus est idoneus. Vero ubi aut desinunt, aut levantur, est quidem semper incipiendum ab aliquo ex levissima materia, vero aliquid ex media adjiciendum ratione habita subinde et virium hominis et morbi.

Vero varii cibi sunt tum demum ponendi ægro, sicut Asclepiades præcepit, ubi urgetur fastidium, neque vires sufficiunt satis; ut degustando paulum ex singulis vitet famem. At si neque vis, neque cupiditas deest, æger est sollicitandus nulla varietate, ne assumat plus quam concoquat. Neque est verum quod dicitur ab eo, varios cibos concoqui facilius. Enim eduntur facilius: autem genus et modus materiæ pertinent ad concoctionem. Neque est tutum ægrum impleri cibo inter magnos dolores, neque morbo increscente: sed ubi jam valetudo est inclinata in melius.

#### TRANSLATION.

it; if the stomach be strong, and the bowels costive, with hydromel; if *that* be weak or *this* relaxed, with posca.

This kind of aliment will be sufficient for the first meal: but at the second there may be something added, yet of the same nature, such as vegetables, or small shell-fish, or fruit. Indeed while the fevers increase, this is the only proper food: but when they either cease, or abate, we should always commence with the lightest kind, but something from the middle class may be added, a due caution being observed from time to time both of the strength of the patient and state of the disease.

Asclepiades prescribes various kinds of food to be placed before the patient, when he is oppressed with nausea and debility: so that by tasting a little of each, he may escape starvation. But if neither strength nor appetite be wanting, the patient is to be solicited by no variety, lest he may take more than he can digest. Neither is that true, which is said by him, "*that a variety of food is more easily digested.*" Indeed it is eaten more readily; but the kind and quantity of the ingesta determine the facility of digestion. Neither is it safe for the patient to be indulged with food during severe pains, nor in the increment of a disease: but when the health inclines to amend.

Sunt aliæ quoque observationes in febribus necessariae. Atque id quoque videndum est, quod quidam solum præcipiunt, adstrictum corpus sit, an profluat; quorum alterum strangulat, alterum digerit. Nam si adstrictum est, ducenda alvus est, movenda urina, eliciendus omni modo sudor. In hoc genere morborum sanguinem etiam misisse, concussisse vehementibus gestationibus corpus, in lumine habuisse, imperasse famem, sitim, vigiliam prodest. Utile est etiam ducere in balneum, prius demittere in solium, tum ungere, iterum ad solium redire, multaque aqua fovere inguina; interdum etiam oleum in solio cum aqua calida miscere; uti cibo serius et rarius, tenui, simplici, molli, calido, exiguo; maximeque oleribus, qualia sunt, lapathum, urtica, malva; vel jure etiam concharum, musculorumve, aut locustarum: neque danda caro, nisi elixa, est. At potio esse debet magis liberalis, et ante cibum, et post hunc, et cum hoc, ultra quam sitis coget: poteritque a balneo etiam pinguius, aut dulcius dari vinum; poterit semel, aut bis interponi Græcum salsum.

## ORDO.

Quoque aliæ observationes sunt necessariae in febribus. Atque id quoque est videndum, quod quidam præcipiunt solum, an corpus sit adstrictum, (an) profluat; alterum quorum strangulat, alterum digerit. Nam si est adstrictum, alvus est ducenda, urina movenda, sudor eliciendus omni modo. In hoc genere morborum prodest etiam misisse sanguinem, concussisse corpus vehementibus gestationibus, habuisse in lumine, imperasse famem, sitim, vigiliam. Est etiam utile ducere in balneum, prius demittere in solium, tum ungere, iterum redire ad solium, que fovere inguina multa aqua; interdum etiam miscere oleum in solio cum calida aqua; uti cibo serius et rarius, tenui, simplici, molli, calido, exiguo: que maxime oleribus, qualia sunt, lapathum, urtica, malva; vel etiam jure concharum, musculorum, aut locustarum: neque est caro danda, nisi (est) elixa. At potio debet esse magis liberalis, et ante cibum, et post hunc et cum hoc ultra quam sitis coget; que etiam pinguius, aut dulcius vinum poterit dari a balneo; Græcum salsum poterit interponi semel, aut bis.

## TRANSLATION.

There are also other observations necessary in the treatment of fevers. And that also must be considered, (which some prescribe as the only remedy,) whether the body be bound, or relaxed; the one of which suffocates, the other exhausts. For if constricted, the bowels must be opened by injections, the urine to be promoted, and a diaphoresis is to be elicited by every possible means. In diseases of this kind, it is advantageous to let blood, to agitate the body by vehement gestations, to keep the patient in the light, and to enjoin hunger, thirst, and watching. It is also useful to lead the patient into a bath, but first of all to lower him into the solium, then to anoint him, again to return to the solium, and to foment the groins with plenty of water; sometimes to mix oil also with the hot water in the solium; to take food later, and more seldom, and that thin, simple, soft, hot and in small portions; and especially pot-herbs, such as the lapathum, nettle, mallow, or with liquor of shell-fish, either of muscles, or of lobsters; nor is flesh to be given, unless boiled. But the drink ought to be more abundant, both before and after food, especially while eating, even beyond what thirst requires; and also very rich or very sweet wine may be given after the bath; Greek salt wine may be interposed once or twice.



Contra vero, si corpus profluet, sudor coercendus, quies adhibenda erit; te-nebris, somnoque, quandocumque volet, utendum; non nisi leni gestatione corpus agitandum, et pro genere mali subveniendum. Nam si venter fluit, aut si stomachus non continet, ubi febris decrevit, liberaliter oportet aquam tepidam potui dare, et vomere cogere; nisi aut fauces, aut præcordia, aut latus dolet, aut vetus morbus est. Si vero sudor exercet, duranda cutis est nitro, vel sale, quæ cum oleo miscentur: ac si levius id vitium est, oleo corpus ungen-dum; si vehementius, rosa, vel melino, vel myrteo, cui vinum austerum sit ad-jectum. Quisquis autem fluore æger est, cum venit in balneum, prius un-gendus, deinde in solium demittendus est.

Si in cute vitium est, frigida quoque, quam calida aqua melius utetur. Ubi ad cibum ventum est, dari debet is va-lens, frigidus, siccus, simplex, qui quam minime corrumpi possit, panis tostus, caro assa, vinum austerum, vel certe subausterum; si venter profluit, cali-dum; si sudores nocent, vomitusve sunt, frigidum.

## ORDO.

Vero contra, si corpus pro-fluet, sudor erit coercendus, quies adhibenda: utendum te-nebris, que somno, quandocun-que volet: corpus non agitandum, nisi leni gestatione, et subveniendum pro genere mali. Nam si venter fluit, aut si stomachus non continet, oportet dari libe-raliter tepidam aquam potui, ubi febris decrevit, et cogere vomere; nisi aut fauces, aut præcordia, aut latus dolet, aut morbus est vetus. Vero si sudor exercet, cutis est duranda nitro, vel sale, quæ miscentur cum oleo: ac si id vitium est levius, corpus un-gendum oleo; si vehementis, rosa, vel melino, vel myrteo, cui austerum vinum sit adjectum. Autem quisquis æger est fluore, cum venit in balneum, est prius un-gendus, deinde demittendus in solium.

Si vitium est in cute, utetur quoque frigida aqua, melius quam calida. Ubi ventum est ad cibum, is debet dari valens, frigidus, siccus, simplex, qui possit cor-rumpi quam minime, tostus, assa carô, austerum vinum, vel certe subausterum; si venter profluit calidum; si sudores nocent, ve sunt vomitus, frigidum.

## TRANSLATION.

But on the other hand, if the body be relaxed, the perspiration must be checked, and rest enjoined; the chamber should be darkened, and the patient may sleep as often as he may wish it; the body must not be agitated, except by the most gentle movement, and to be supported according to the nature of the malady. For if the bowels be loose, or the stomach not retentive, warm water must be given copiously to drink, to induce vomiting, when the fever has subsided; unless either the fauces, or the præcordia, or pain in the side, or the disease have become chronic. But if there be colliquative diaphoresis, the skin must be indurated with nitre, or salt mixed up with oil: and if the malady be very slight, the body may be anointed with oil; if very vehement, with oil of roses, quince-oil, myrtle-oil, to which austere wine is to be added. But whatever patient be under flux, when he comes into the bath, should first be anointed, then to be immersed in the solium.

If the disease be cutaneous, it will be more advantageous for him to use cold water, than warm. When he is about to take food, that ought to be given highly nutritious, cold, dry, simple, highly antiseptic, toasted bread, roasted meat, sharp wine, or at least somewhat rough; if the bowels be relaxed, let it be given warm; if sweating or vomiting be the disorder, cold.

## CAP. VII.

## ORDO.

QUOMODO PESTILENTES FEBRES  
CURARI DEBEANT.

DESIDERAT etiam propriam animadversionem in febribus pestilentiae casus. In hac minime utile est, aut fame, aut medicamentis uti, aut ducere alvum. Si vires sinunt, sanguinem mittere optimum est; præcipueque, si cum dolore febris est: si id parum tutum est, ubi febris levata est, vomitu pectus purgare. Sed in hoc maturius, quam in aliis morbis, ducere in balneum opus est; vinum calidum, et meracius dare, et omnia glutinosa; inter quæ carnem quoque generis ejusdem. Nam quo celerius ejusmodi tempestates corripunt, eo maturius auxilia, etiam cum quadam temeritate, rapienda sunt.

Quod si puer est, qui laborat, neque tantum robur ejus est, ut sanguis mitti possit, cucurbitulis ei utendum est; ducenda alvus vel aqua vel ptisanæ cremore; tum demum levibus cibis nutriendus. Et ex toto non sic pueri, ut

## CAP. VII.

QUOMODO PESTILENTES FEBRES  
DEBEANT CURARI.

ETIAM casus pestilentiae in febribus desiderat propriam animadversionem. In hac est minime utile, uti aut fame, aut medicamentis, aut ducere alvum. Si vires sinunt, est optimum mittere sanguinem; que præcipue si febris cum dolore: si id est parum tutum, purgare pectus vomitu, ubi febris levata est. Sed opus est ducere in balneum maturius in hoc, quam in aliis morbis; dare calidum et meracius vinum, et omnia glutinosa, inter quæ quoque carnem ejusdem generis. Nam quo celerius tempestates ejusmodi corripunt, eo maturius auxilia sunt rapienda, etiam cum quadam temeritate.

Quod si est puer qui laborat, neque robur ejus est tantum, ut sanguis possit mitti, est utendum cucurbitulis ei; alvus ducenda vel aqua, vel cremore ptisanæ: tum demum nutriendus levibus cibis. Et ex toto pueri non de-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

## TREATMENT OF PESTILENTIAL AND ARDENT FEVERS.

THE treatment of pestilential fevers requires peculiar consideration. In this it is by no means proper to enjoin privation, medicine, or injections. IF THE STRENGTH PERMIT, THE BEST REMEDY IS TO LET BLOOD; and especially if the fever be accompanied with pain: if that be not safe, to evacuate the stomach by an emetic, when the fever subsides. But it is necessary to conduct the patient to a bath earlier in this, than in other diseases; to give him hot and very pure wine, and every thing glutinous; and among other things flesh of the same nature. For in proportion to the destructive tendency during a pestilential season of this kind, so much sooner should we administer remedies, even with some risk.

But if the sufferer be a child, and have not sufficient strength for bleeding, we must use the cupping instruments, and administer an enema either of water or decoction of struck barley, and afterwards to be nourished with light food. In

virī, curari debent. Ergo, ut in alio quoque genere morborum, parcius in his agendum est: non facile sanguinem mittere, non facile ducere alvum, non cruciare vigilia, fameve, aut nimia siti, non vino curare. Vomitus post febrem eliciendus est; deinde dandus cibus ex levissimis; tum is dormiat; posteroque die, si febris manet, abstinence; tertio, ad similem cibum redeat. Dandaque opera est, quantum fieri potest, ut inter opportunam abstinentiam cibosque opportunos, omissis ceteris, nutriatur.

Si vero ardens febris extorret, nulla medicamenti danda potio est; sed in ipsis accessionibus oleo et aqua refrigerandus est, quæ miscenda manu sunt, donec albescant; eo conclavi tenendus, quo multum et purum aerem trahere possit; neque multis vestimentis strangulandus, sed admodum levibus tantum velandus est. Possunt etiam super stomachum imponi folia vitis in aqua frigida tincta. Ac ne siti quidem nimia vexandus est. Alendus maturius est, id est a die tertio; et ante cibum iisdem perungendus. Si pituita in stomacho coit, inclinata jam accessione, vomere cogendus est; tum dandum frigidum

## ORDO.

bent curari sic, ut viri. Ergo, est agendum parcius in his, ut in quoque alio genere morborum; non facile mittere sanguinem, non facile ducere alvum, non cruciare vigilia, ve fame, aut nimia siti, non curare vino. Vomitus est eliciendus post febrem; deinde cibus ex levissimis dandus; tum is dormiat; que postero die, si febris manet, abstinence; tertio, redeat ad similem cibum. Que opera est danda quantum potest fieri, ut nutriatur inter opportunam abstinentiam que opportunos cibos, cæteris omissis.

Vero si ardens febris extorret, nulla potio medicamenti est danda; sed est refrigerandus in accessionibus ipsis oleo et aqua, quæ sunt miscenda manu, donec albescant; tenendus eo conclavi, quo possit trahere multum et purum aerem; neque est strangulandus vestimentis, sed velandus tantum admodum levibus. Etiam folia vitis tincta in frigida aqua possunt imponi super stomachum. Ac nequidem est vexandus nimia siti. Est alendus maturius, id est a tertio die, et perungendus iisdem ante cibum. Si pituita coit in stomacho, accessione jam inclinata, est cogendus vomere; tum frigidum

## TRANSLATION.

short, children ought not to be treated as adults. Therefore we must act very cautiously in this, as well as in every other kind of disease; we must not be too ready to let blood, or exhibit an enema, or to torment by vigilance, or hunger, or too much thirst, neither to indulge them with wine. Vomiting is to be promoted after the fever; and then food of the lightest kind to be given; afterwards the patient may go to sleep; on the following day, if the fever remain, he must abstain from food; on the third, he may return to the same diet. Taking all possible care, that he may be seasonably alimented; and interposing a well-timed abstinence; other things being omitted.

But if an ardent fever torture the patient, no medicinal potion must be given; but during the accessions, he is to be refrigerated with oil and water, which are to be agitated with the hand, until they become white; he must be kept in a chamber where he can inhale plenty of pure air; nor should he be suffocated with clothing, but to be covered only very lightly. Vine leaves dipped in cold water may be laid on the stomach; nor must he be harassed with too much thirst. He must be nourished earlier, that is, after the third day; and to be well anointed with the above mentioned liquids before food. If phlegm have collected in the stomach, he must be compelled to vomit, when the paroxysm is retrogressing; then cold vege-



olus, aut pomum, ex iis, quæ stomacho conveniunt. Si siccus manet stomachus, protinus vel ptisanæ, vel alicæ, vel oryzæ cremor dandus est, cum quo recens adeps cocta sit. Cum vero in summo incremento morbus est, utique non ante quartum diem, magna siti antecedente, frigida aqua copiose præstanda est, ut bibat etiam ultra satietatem; et cum jam venter et præcordia ultra modum repleta, satisque refrigerata sunt, vomere debet.

Quidam, ne vomitum quidem exigunt; sed ipsa aqua frigida tantum, ad satietatem data, pro medicamento utuntur. Ubi utrumlibet factum est, multa veste operiendus est, et collocandus, ut dormiat. Fereque post longam sitim et vigiliam, post multam satietatem, post infractum calorem, plenus somnus venit, per quem ingens sudor effunditur; idque præstantissimum auxilium est: sed in iis tamen, in quibus præter ardorem, nulli dolores, nullus præcordiorum tumor; nihil prohibens, vel in thorace, vel in pulmone, vel in faucibus; non ulcus, non dejectio, non profluvium alvi fuit. Si quis autem in ejusmodi febre leviter tussit, is neque vehementi siti conflictatur, neque bi-

## ORDO.

olus dandum, aut pomum, ex iis quæ conveniunt stomacho. Si stomachus manet siccus, cremor vel ptisanæ, vel alicæ, vel oryzæ est protinus dandus, cum quo recens adeps cocta sit. Vero cum morbus est in summo incremento, magna siti antecedente, frigida aqua est præstanda copiose, utique non ante quartum diem, ut bibat etiam ultra satietatem; et cum venter et præcordia sunt jam repleta ultra modum, que satis refrigerata, debet vomere.

Quidam, nequidem exigunt vomitum; sed utuntur tantum frigida aqua ipsa, data ad satietatem, pro medicamento. Ubi utrumlibet factum est, operiendus est multa veste, et collocandus, ut dormiat. Que fere post longam sitim et vigiliam, post multam satietatem, post calorem infractum, plenus somnus venit, per quem ingens sudor effunditur, qui id est præstantissimum auxilium; sed tamen in iis in quibus præter ardorem, nulli dolores, nullus tumor præcordiorum, nihil prohibens, vel in thorace, vel in pulmone, vel in faucibus; non fuit ulcus, non dejectio, non profluvium alvi. Autem si quis in febre hujusmodi tussit leviter, is neque conflictatur vehementi siti, neque debet

## TRANSLATION.

tables are to be given, or those fruits which agree with the stomach. If the stomach remain dry, either barley water, or that of alica, or of rice boiled with fresh fat, must be given immediately. But when the fever has reached its highest increment, preceded by great thirst, cold water must be given copiously, that he may drink even beyond satiety, but not before the fourth day; and when his stomach is replete beyond measure and sufficiently cooled, he ought to vomit.

Some physicians do not insist upon vomiting; but prescribe cold water only, and that given to satiety by way of medicine. When either one or the other of these have been done, he must be covered with plenty of clothing, and laid in a favourable position for sleep. After long thirst and vigilance, after much satiety, after subdued heat, generally a sound sleep ensues: by means of which a general diaphoresis is effused, and that is accompanied with immediate relief; but only in those, who have an ardent heat, but no pain, no tumour of the præcordia; nothing to prevent it either in the lungs, thorax, or fauces; or who have had no ulcer, no diarrhœa, nor flux. But if any person in a fever of this sort cough slightly, he

bere aquam frigidam debet; sed eo modo curandus est, quo in ceteris febribus præcipitur.

ORDO.  
bibere frigidam aquam, sed est curandus eo modo, quo præcipitur in cæteris febribus.

## TRANSLATION.

ought not to contend with violent thirst, nor to drink cold water, but he is to be treated in the same manner as prescribed in other fevers.

## CAP. VIII.

CURATIO SEMITERTIANÆ FEBRIS,  
QUÆ ἡμιτερταίων DICITUR.

AT ubi id genus tertianæ est, quod ἡμιτερταίων medici appellant, magna cura opus est, ne id fallat. Habet enim plerumque frequentiores accessiones decessionesque, ut aliud morbi genus videri possit: porrigiturque febris inter horas viginti quatuor, et triginta sex; ut, quod idem est, non idem esse videatur. Et magnopere necessarium est, neque dari cibum, nisi in ea remissione, quæ vera est; et ubi ea venit, protinus dari: plurimique sub alterutro curantis errore subito moriuntur. Ac, nisi magnopere aliqua res prohibet, inter initia sanguis mitti debet; tum dari cibus, qui neque incitet febrem, et tamen longum ejus spatium sustineat.

## ORDO.

## CAP. VIII.

CURATIO SEMITERTIANÆ FEBRIS, QUÆ DICITUR HEMI-  
TRITAION.

AT ubi est id genus tertianæ, quod medici appellant ἡμιτερταίων semitertiana, est opus magna cura, ne id fallat. Enim plerumque habet frequentiores accessiones que decessiones, ut possit videri aliud genus morbi: que febris porrigitur inter viginti quatuor, et triginta sex horas; ut, quod est idem, non videatur esse idem. Et est magnopere necessarium, neque cibum dari, nisi in ea remissione quæ est vera: et ubi ea venit, dari protinus: que plurimi moriuntur subito sub alterutro errore curantis. Ac nisi aliqua res magnopere prohibet, sanguis debet mitti inter initia; tum cibus dari, qui neque incitet febrem, et tamen sustineat longum spatium ejus.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

## TREATMENT OF A SEMITERTIAN.

BUT when it is that genus of tertian, which physicians term semitertian, it requires particular care, lest it may deceive. For generally it has more frequent accessions and remissions, so that it may assume the form of another disease: and the paroxysm is prolonged to from twenty-four to thirty-six hours, so that, what is really the same, may not appear to be so. Therefore, it is highly necessary, that food should not be given, except in that remission which is certain; and when it comes, to give it immediately; and very many patients die suddenly from the ignorance of the medical attendant from either of these errors. Therefore, unless there be some very important impediment, blood ought to be taken at the beginning; then food to be given, which may not excite the fever, and yet support the patient under its long duration.

## CAP. IX.

## ORDO.

## CURATIO LENTARUM FEBRIUM.

## CAP. IX.

## CURATIO LENTARUM FEBRIUM.

NONNUMQUAM etiam lentæ febres sine ulla remissione corpus tenent; ac neque cibo, neque ulli remedio locus est. In hoc casu medici cura esse debet, ut morbum mutet: fortasse enim curationi opportunior fiet. Sæpe igitur ex aqua frigida, cui oleum sit adjectum, corpus ejus pertractandum est, quoniam interdum sic evenit, ut horror oriatur, et fiat initium quoddam novi motus; exque eo, cum magis corpus incaluit, sequatur etiam remissio. In his frictio quoque ex oleo et sale salubris videtur.

At si diu frigus est, et torpor, et jactatio corporis, non alienum est, in ipsa febre dare mulsi tres aut quatuor cyathos, vel cum cibo vinum bene dilutum. Intenditur enim sæpe ex eo febris; et major ortus calor simul et tollit priora mala tollit, et spem remissionis, inque ea curationis ostendit.

ETIAM nonnumquam lentæ febres tenent corpus sine ulla remissione; ac est locus neque cibo neque ulli remedio. In hoc casu cura medici debet esse ut mutet morbum; enim fortasse fiet opportunior curationi. Igitur corpus ejus est pertractandum ex frigida aqua, cui oleum adjectum sit, quoniam interdum evenit sic, ut horror oriatur, et quoddam initium novi motus fiat: que ex eo, cum corpus incaluit magis, etiam remissio sequatur. In his quoque frictio ex oleo et sale videtur salubris.

At si est diu frigus, et torpor, et jactatio corporis, non est alienum in febre ipsa dare tres aut quatuor cyathos mulsi, vel vinum bene dilutum cum cibo. Enim sæpe febris intenditur ex eo; et major calor ortus simul et tollit priora mala, et ostendit spem remissionis, que in ea curationis,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

## TREATMENT OF SLOW FEVERS.

SOMETIMES also slow fevers maintain their hold in the body without any remission; so that there is neither time for food, nor any other remedy. In this case, it should be the physician's care to effect a change in the disease; then, perhaps, it would yield more favourably to treatment. Therefore his body is to be lightly handled (*sprinkled*) with cold water, to which some oil has been added, and thus it happens sometimes, that shivering is induced, which may be the commencement of a new action; and after that, when the body has become hotter, a remission may follow. In these cases also, friction with oil and salt seems salutary.

But if there be cold, torpor, and agitation of the body for some time, it is not improper to give three or four glasses of hydromel or well diluted wine with the food. For the fever is often augmented by that; and a greater heat having arisen, at the same time carries off the former malady, and holds out a prospect of a remission, and from that a recovery.



Neque, hercules, ista curatio nova est, qua nunc quidam traditos sibi ægros, qui sub cautioribus medicis trahebantur, interdum contrariis remediis sanant. Siquidem apud antiquos quoque ante Herophilum et Erasistratum, maximeque post Hippocratem fuit Petro quidam, qui febricitantem hominem ubi acceperat, multis vestimentis operiebat, ut simul calorem ingentem, sitimque excitaret: deinde, ubi paulum remitti cœperat febris, aquam frigidam potui dabat; ac, si moverat sudorem, explicuisse se ægrum judicabat; si non moverat, plus etiam aquæ frigidæ ingerebat; et tum vomere cogebat. Si alterutro modo febre liberaverat, protinus suillam assam, et vinum homini dabat: si non liberaverat, decoquebat aquam sale adjecto, eamque bibere cogebat, ut movendo ventrem purgaret.

Et intra hæc omnis ejus medicina erat: eaque non minus grata fuit iis, quos Hippocratis successores non refecerant; quam nunc est iis, quos Herophili vel Erasistrati æmuli diu tractos non expedierunt. Neque ideo tamen non est temeraria ista medicina; quia plures, si protinus a principiis exceptit,

## ORDO.

Neque hercule, est ista nova curatio, qua nunc quidam sanant interdum contrariis remediis ægros traditos sibi, qui trahebantur sub cautioribus medicis. Siquidem apud antiquos quoque ante Herophilum et Erasistratum, que maxime post Hippocratem, fuit quidam Petro, qui operiebat multis vestimentis hominem ubi acceperat febricitantem, ut simul excitaret ingentem calorem que sitim; deinde ubi febris cœperat remitti paulum, dabat frigidam aquam potui; ac si moverat sudorem, judicabat se explicuisse ægrum; si non moverat, ingerebat etiam plus frigidæ aquæ, et tum cogebat vomere. Si liberaverat febre alterutro modo, protinus dabat homini assam suillam et vinum; si non liberaverat, decoquebat aquam, sale adjecto, que cogebat bibere eam, ut movendo ventrem purgaret.

Et omnis medicina ejus erat inter hæc: que ea fuit non minus grata iis quos successores Hippocratis non refecerant, quam est nunc iis, quos æmuli Herophili et Erasistrati non expedierunt, tractos diu. Neque tamen est ista medicina non temeraria ideo; quia interimit plures, si exceptit protinus a principiis.

## TRANSLATION.

Nor is this indeed a new mode of treatment, for even now, there are some QUACKS who succeed sometimes with patients who trust themselves under them, by contrary remedies, who were long under the care of more cautious physicians. Even among the ancients also before the time of Herophilus and Erasistratus, and especially after Hippocrates, there was a certain Petro, who, upon being called to a person in fever, covered him with a vast quantity of clothes, that he might at the same time excite a great heat and thirst: afterwards, when the fever had subsided a little, he gave him cold water to drink; and if it promoted diaphoresis, he pronounced the patient to be cured; but if he did not succeed in this, he even repeated the cold water, and then forced him to vomit. If he had liberated his patient from fever by either mode, he immediately gave him roasted pork and wine: if he did not relieve him by these means, he boiled salt in water, and compelled him to drink it, so that by purging the bowels, he might cleanse the stomach.

The whole of his practice was comprised in these particulars: and this was not less gratifying to those whom the disciples of Hippocrates had not restored, than it is now to those, whom the disciples of Herophilus and Erasistratus have not cured, after a protracted treatment. But this practice is not the less imprudent, on that account; for, if acted upon in the commencement of a fever, it would destroy more

interimit. SED CUM EADEM OMNIBUS CONVENIRE NON POSSINT, FERE, QUOS RATIO NON RESTITUIT, TEMERITAS ADJUVAT. IDEOQUE EJUSMODI MEDICI MELIUS ALIENOS ÆGROS, QUAM SUOS NUTRIUNT. Sed est circumspecti quoque hominis, et novare interdum, et augere morbum, et febres accendere; quia curationem, ubi id, quod est, non recipit, potest recipere id, quod futurum est.

## ORDO.

SED CUM EADEM NON POSSINT CONVENIRE OMNIBUS, FERE TEMERITAS ADJUVAT QUOS RATIO NON RESTITUIT. QUE IDEO MEDICI EJUSMODI NUTRIUNT ÆGROS ALIENOS, MELIUS QUAM SUOS. Sed est quoque circumspecti hominis, et novare interdum, et augere morbum, et accendere febres; quia, ubi id quod est, non recipit curationem, id quod est futurum potest recipere id.

## TRANSLATION.

than cure. BUT SINCE THE SAME TREATMENT CANNOT BE APPLICABLE TO ALL, SOMETIMES WE SEE TEMERITY SUCCEED WHERE SCIENCE HAS FAILED. HENCE, PHYSICIANS OF THIS CAST, (QUACKS,) SUCCEED BETTER WITH OTHER MEN'S PATIENTS THAN WITH THEIR OWN. But it is the duty of a circumspect man also, at times not only to renew, but to aggravate the disease, and to inflame a fever, because the present situation of the patient does not admit of a cure, therefore, that which is about to be produced, may yield to treatment.

## CAP. X.

REMEDIA IN FEBRIBUS AD CAPITIS DOLOREM, ET PRÆCORDIORUM INFLAMMATIONEM, ET ARIDITATEM, ET SCABRITIEM LINGUÆ.

CONSIDERANDUM est etiam, febres ne solæ sint, an alia quoque his mala accedant; id est num caput doleat, num lingua aspera, num præcordia intenta sint. Si capitis dolores sunt; rosam cum aceto miscere oportet, et in id ingerere: deinde habere duo pitacia, quæ frontis latitudinem, longitudinemque æquent; ex his invicem alterum in aceto

## ORDO.

## CAP. X.

REMEDIA AD DOLOREM CAPITIS IN FEBRIBUS, ET INFLAMMATIONEM PRÆCORDIORUM, ET ARIDITATEM, ET SCABRITIEM LINGUÆ.

Est etiam considerandum, ne febres sint solæ, an quoque alia mala accedant his; id est, num caput doleat, num lingua aspera, num præcordia sint intenta. Si sunt dolores capitis, oportet miscere rosam cum aceto, et ingerere in id: deinde habere duo pitacia, quæ æquent latitudinem que longitudinem frontis; habere invicem alterum ex his in aceto

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

## TREATMENT OF FEVER WITH CONCOMITANT SYMPTOMS.

It must be considered also, whether the fever be alone, or whether accompanied by some other maladies; that is, whether the head be painful, the tongue rough, or the præcordia tense. If there be pains of the head, it will be beneficial to mingle rose oil with vinegar, and to apply it: afterwards to have two rolls of equal

et rosa habere, alterum in fronte; aut intinctam iisdem lanam succidam imponere.

Si acetum offendit, pura rosa utendum est; si rosa ipsa lædit, oleo acerbo.

Si ista parum juvant, teri potest vel iris arida, vel nuces amaræ, vel quælibet herba ex refrigerantibus: quorum quilibet ex aceto impositum, dolorem minuit; sed magis aliud in alio. Juvat etiam panis cum papavere injectus; vel cum rosa cerussa, spumave argenti. Olfacere quoque vel serpyllum, vel anethum, non alienum est.

At si in præcordiis inflammatio et dolor est, primo superimponenda sunt cataplasmata reprimentia; ne, si calidiora fuerint, plus eo materiæ concurrat: deinde, ubi prima inflammatio se remisit, tunc demum ad calida et humida veniendum est; ut ea, quæ remanserunt, discutiant. Notæ vero inflammationis sunt quatuor, rubor, et tumor, cum calore, et dolore.

Quo magis erravit Erasistratus, qui febrem nullam sine hac esse dixit. Ergo si sine inflammatione dolor est, nihil imponendum est: hunc enim statim ipsa febris solvet. At si neque inflammatio,

#### ORDO.

et rosa, alterum in fronte; aut imponere succidam lanam intinctam iisdem.

Si acetum offendit, est utendum pura rosa; si rosa ipsa lædit, acerbo oleo.

Si ista juvant parum, vel arida iris potest teri, vel amaræ nuces, vel quælibet herba ex refrigerantibus: quilibet quorum ex aceto impositum, minuit dolorem; sed aliud magis in alio. Etiam panis cum papavere injectus; vel cum rosa, cerussa, vel spuma argenti. Quocque non est alienum olfacere vel serpyllum vel anethum.

At si est inflammatio et dolor in præcordiis, primo reprimentia cataplasmata sunt superimponenda, ne si fuerint calidiora, plus materiæ concurrat eo; deinde, ubi prima inflammatio remisit se, tunc demum est veniendum ad calida et humida; ut discutiant ea quæ remanserunt. Vero sunt quatuor notæ inflammationis rubor et tumor, cum calore et dolore.

Quo Erasistratus erravit magis, qui dixit nullam febrem esse sine hac. Ergo si est dolor sine inflammatione, nihil est imponendum: enim febris ipsa statim solvit hunc. At si est neque inflam-

#### TRANSLATION.

length and breadth of the forehead; to have one of these alternately in the rose oil, and the other on the forehead; or to lay on sordid wool moistened with it.

If vinegar offend, we may use the pure oil; if rose oil itself be unpleasant, with oil of bitter (*almonds*).

If those things be of little avail, either dry iris, or bitter almonds, or any one of the refrigerant herbs may be powdered: any of which being applied with vinegar will diminish the pain; but more in one case, than in another. Bread also laid on with poppies, or with rose oil, ceruss, or litharge: neither is it improper to smell wild thyme or dill.

But, if there be pain and inflammation in the præcordia, repressing cataplasms are to be laid on first; lest, if there be too much heat, more matter might be attracted thither; afterwards, when the first inflammation has remitted, then we come to use the warm and moist; that they may discuss the relics. Now there are four diagnostic marks of inflammation, REDNESS, and SWELLING, with HEAT, and PAIN.

In which Erasistratus was much mistaken, who said no fever could be without this inflammation. Therefore if there be pain without inflammation, nothing should be laid on; for the fever itself will dispel this. But if there be neither in-



neque febris, sed tantum præcordiorum dolor est, protinus calidis et siccis fomentis uti licet. Si vero lingua sicca et scabra est, detergenda primum penicillo est ex aqua calida: deinde ungenda mistis inter se rosa et melle. Mel purgat, rosa reprimat, simulque siccescere non sinit. At si scabra non est, sed arida, ubi penicillo deterosa est, ungi rosa debet, cui ceræ paulum sit adjectum.

## ORDO.

matio neque febris, sed tantum dolor præcordiorum, licet uti protinus calidis et siccis fomentis. Vero si lingua est arida et scabra, primum est detergenda ex penicillo calida aqua: deinde ungenda rosa et melle mixtis inter se. Mel purgat, rosa reprimat, que simul non sinit siccescere. At si non est scabra, sed arida, ubi deterosa est penicillo, debet ungi rosa, cui paulum ceræ adjectum sit.

## TRANSLATION.

inflammation nor fever, but only a pain of the præcordia, warm and dry fomentations may be used immediately. If the tongue be dry and rough, it must be cleansed first with a dossil of lint dipped in hot water: afterwards to be anointed with rose oil and honey mixed together. The honey cleanses, the rose oil astringes, and at the same time does not suffer it to become dry. But if it be not rough, but dry, when wiped, it ought to be anointed with rose oil, to which a little wax may be added.

## CAP. XI.

## REMEDIA CONTRA FRIGUS, QUOD FEBREM PRÆCEDIT.

SOLET etiam ante febres esse frigus; idque vel molestissimum morbi genus est. Ubi id exspectatur, omni potione prohibendus æger est: hæc enim paulo ante data, multum malo adjicit. Item maturius veste multa tegendus est: admovenda partibus iis, pro quibus metuimus, sicca et calida fomenta, sic, ne statim vehementissimi calores incipiant, sed paulatim increscant: perfricandæ

## ORDO.

## CAP. XI.

## REMEDIA CONTRA FRIGUS, QUOD PRÆCEDIT FEBREM.

ETIAM frigus solet esse ante febres; que id est vel molestissimum genus morbi. Ubi id exspectatur, æger est prohibendus omni potione; enim hæc data paulo ante adjicit multum malo. Item est tegendus maturius multa veste: sicca et calida fomenta admovenda his partibus pro quibus metuimus, sic ne vehementissimi calores incipiant statim, sed increscant paulatim. Quoque

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XI.

## TREATMENT OF THE COLD STAGE WHICH PRECEDES FEVER.

It is usual to have the sensation of cold preceding fever; and even that is a most troublesome kind of disease. When that is anticipated the patient ought to be withheld from all drink; for even this given a little before, aggravates the disease very much: he rather ought to be covered without delay with plenty of clothing: dry and hot fomentations to be applied to those parts for which we are apprehensive, so that the most violent heat may not begin immediately, but increase gra-

quoque ex partes manibus unctis ex vetere oleo sunt, eique adjiciendum aliquid ex calefacientibus.

Contentique medici quidam una frictione, etiam ex quolibet oleo, sunt. In harum febrium remissionibus nonnulli tres, aut quatuor sorbitionis cyathos, etiamnum manente febre, dant: deinde, ea bene finita, reficiunt stomachum cibo frigido et levi.

Ego tum hoc puto tentandum, cum parum cibus, semel et post febrem datus, prodest. Sed curiose prospiciendum est, ne tempus remissionis decipiat: sæpe enim in hoc quoque genere valetudinis jam minui febris videtur, et rursus intenditur. Itaque ei remissioni credendum est, quæ etiam immoratur, et jactationem, fœtoremque quemdam oris, quem ὄζην Græci vocant, minuit. Illud satis convenit, si quotidie pares accessiones sunt, quotidie parvum cibum dandum: si impares, post graviolem, cibum; post leviolem, aquam mulsam.

#### ORDO.

ex partes sunt perfricandæ manibus unctis ex vetere oleo, que aliquid ex calefacientibus adjiciendum ei.

Que quidam medici sunt contenti una frictione, etiam ex quolibet oleo. In remissionibus harum febrium nonnulli dant tres aut quatuor cyathos sorbitionis, febre etiamnum manente: deinde, ea bene finita, reficiunt stomachum frigido et levi cibo.

Ego puto hoc tentandum tum, quum cibus datus semel et post febrem prodest parum. Sed est prospiciendum curiose, ne tempus remissionis decipiat: enim in hoc genere valetudinis quoque sæpe febris videtur jam minui, et rursus intenditur. Itaque est credendum ei remissioni quæ etiam immoratur, et minuit jactationem, que quendam fœtorem oris, quem Græci vocant ὄζην (ozen). Illud convenit satis, si accessiones sunt pares quotidie, parvum cibum dandum quotidie: si impares, cibum post graviolem: mulsam aquam post leviolem.

#### TRANSLATION.

dually. Also those parts are to be rubbed over by the hands anointed with old oil, and some of the calefacients may be added to it.

Some physicians are contented with one rubbing, even with any oil. In the remissions of those fevers some give three or four cups of gruel, even while the fever remains: afterwards that being entirely over, they replenish the stomach with cold, light food.

I think this ought to be tried, when food has been given once after fever without any advantage. But we must guard carefully, lest the time of the remission deceive us: for in this kind of disease the fever often disappears, and is again suddenly exasperated. Therefore that remission is to be relied on which is permanent, diminishing the agitation, and a certain fœtor of the mouth, which the Greeks call ὄζē. That is agreed upon, if the accessions be every day equal, for a little food to be given daily: if they be unequal, the food to be given after the more severe paroxysm; after the milder, hydromel.

## CAP. XII.

## CURATIO HORRORIS IN FEBRIBUS.

HORROR autem eas fere febres antecedit, quæ certum habent circuitum, et ex toto remittuntur; ideoque tutissimæ sunt, maximeque curationes admittunt. Nam ubi incerta tempora sunt, neque alvi ductio, neque balneum, neque vinum, neque medicamentum aliud recte datur. Incertum est enim, quando febris ventura sit: ita fieri potest, ut, si subito venerit, summa in eo perniciēs sit, quod auxilii causa sit inventum. Nihilque aliud fieri potest, quam ut primis diebus bene abstinence æger; deinde, sub decessu febris ejus, quæ gravissima est, cibum sumat.

At ubi certus circuitus est, facilius omnia illa tentantur; quia magis proponere nobis et accessionum et decessionum vices possumus.

In his autem, cum inveteraverunt, utilis fames non est: primis tantummodo diebus ea pugnandum est; deinde dividenda curatio est, et ante horror, tum febris discutienda. Igitur cum

## ORDO.

## CAP. XII.

## CURATIO HORRORIS IN FEBRIBUS.

AUTEM horror fere antecedit eas febres quæ habent certum circuitum, et remittuntur ex toto; quæ ideo sunt tutissimæ, quæ maxime admittunt curationes. Nam ubi tempora sunt incerta, neque ductio alvi, neque balneum, neque vinum, neque aliud medicamentum, datur recte. Enim est incertum, quando febris sit ventura: ita potest fieri, ut, si venerit subito, summa perniciēs sit in eo quod inventum sit causa auxilii. Quæ nihil aliud potest fieri, quam ut æger abstinence bene primis diebus: deinde sumat cibum, sub decessu ejus febris quæ est gravissima.

At ubi circuitus est certus, omnia illa tentantur facilius; quia possumus proponere magis nobis vices et accessionum et decessionum.

Autem in his, cum inveteraverunt, fames non est utilis: est pugnandum ea tantummodo primis diebus, deinde curatio est dividenda, et horror ante, tum febris discutienda. Igitur cum primum

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XII.

## TREATMENT OF SHIVERING IN FEVERS.

Now shivering is a common precursor in those fevers which have a certain circuit, and remit entirely; and on this account they are most safe, and mostly admit of cure. For when the returns are uncertain, neither alvi-duction, nor the bath, nor wine, nor any other kind of medicine can be given with safety. Since it is uncertain when the fever may come on: it is possible, that, if it attack suddenly, the greatest injury may ensue from that which was intended to afford relief. Hence nothing else can be done, but to let the patient observe strict abstinence at first; then he may take food after that accession which is most severe.

But when the circuit is regular, all those remedies are tried more easily; because we are better able to calculate the changes both of the accessions and regressions.

But when these fevers have become chronic, privation is of no avail: food must be resisted only on the first days; afterwards the treatment is to be divided in its object, first the shivering, then the fever is to be dissipated. Therefore when a



primum aliquis inhorruit, et ex horrore incaluit, dare ei oportet potui tepidam aquam subsalsam, et vomere eum cogere: nam fere talis horror ab iis oritur, quæ biliosa in stomacho resederunt. Idem faciendum est, si proximo quoque circuitu æque accessit: sæpe enim sic discutitur: jamque, quod genus febris sit, scire licet.

Itaque sub expectatione proximæ accessionis, quæ instare tertia potest, deducendus in balneum est; dandaque opera, ut per tempus horroris in solio sit. Si ibi quoque senserit, nihilominus idem sub expectatione quartæ accessionis faciat: siquidem eo quoque modo sæpe is discutitur. Si ne balneum quidem profuit, ante accessionem allium edat, aut bibat calidam aquam cum pipere: siquidem ea quoque assumpta calorem movent, qui horrorem non admittit. Deinde eodem modo, quo in frigore præceptum est, antequam inhorrescere possit, operiatur: fomentisque, sed protinus validioribus, totum corpus circumdare convenit, maximeque involutis extinctis testis et titionibus.

Si nihilominus horror perruperit, multo oleo calefacto inter ipsa vestimenta perfundatur, cui æque ex calefa-

## ORDO.

aliquis inhorruit, et ex horrore incaluit, oportet dare ei potui tepidam aquam subsalsam, et cogere eum vomere: nam fere talis horror oritur ab iis, quæ biliosa resederunt in stomacho. Idem est faciendum, si quoque accessit æque proximo circuitu: enim sic sæpe discutitur: quæ jam, licet scire quod genus febris sit.

Itaque sub expectatione proximæ accessionis, quæ tertia, potest instare, est deducendus in balneum; quæ opera danda, ut sit in solio per tempus horroris. Si senserit ibi quoque, nihilominus faciat idem sub expectatione quartæ accessionis: siquidem eo modo quoque sæpe is discutitur. Si nequidem balneum profuit, edat allium ante accessionem, aut bibat calidam aquam cum pipere; siquidem ea quoque assumpta movent calorem, qui non admittit horrorem. Deinde operiatur eodem modo quo præceptum est in frigore, antequam possit inhorrescere; quæ convenit circumdare protinus totum corpus validioribus fomentis, quæ maxime extinctis testis et titionibus involutis.

Si nihilominus horror perruperit, perfundatur inter vestimenta ipsa multo calefacto oleo, cui aliquid ex calefacientibus æque ad-

## TRANSLATION.

person has shivered, and then becomes hot, it will be necessary to give him tepid water slightly salted, and compel him to vomit: for generally such shivering arises from something bilious having accumulated in the stomach. The same method is to be pursued, if it return with the subsequent paroxysm: for thus it is often removed: and by this time we may discover its genus.

Therefore under the expectation of the next accession, that being the third, which possibly may come on, the patient must be conducted to the bath, and care must be taken that he be in the solium during the time of shivering. If even there, he have felt cold, he must repeat it nevertheless, about the time of the fourth accession: for by these means also it is often removed. If the bath have not proved useful, he may eat garlick before the accession, or he may drink warm water with pepper: for those things being taken, excite warmth, and repel the shivering. Afterwards he may be covered in the same manner directed in the cold stage, before the shivering come on: and if practicable, the whole body should be involved immediately with powerful fomentations, and particularly with hot tiles, and extinguished brands wrapped up in cloths.

If notwithstanding, he be seized with shivering, he must be anointed under the clothes with plenty of heated oil, to which may be added some of the calefacients

cientibus aliquid sit adjectum; adhibeturque frictio, quantam is sustinere poterit, maximeque in manibus et pedibus; et spiritum ipse contineat. Neque desistendum est, etiamsi horror est: sæpe enim pertinacia juvantis malum corporis vincit.

Si quid evomuit, danda aqua tepida, iterumque vomere cogendus est; utendumque eisdem est, donec horror finiatur. Sed præter hæc ducenda alvus est, si tardius horror quiescet: siquidem id quoque exonerato corpore prodest. Ultimaque post hæc auxilia sunt gestatio et frictio. Cibus autem in ejusmodi morbis maxime dandus est, qui mollem alvum præstet; caro glutinosa; vinum, cum dabitur, austerum.

## ORDO.

jectum sit; que frictio adhibeatur, quantum is poterit sustinere, que maxime in manibus et pedibus; et ipse contineat spiritum. Neque est desistendum, etiamsi est horror; enim sæpe pertinacia juvantis vincit malum corporis.

Si evomuit quid, tepida aqua danda, que est cogendus iterum vomere; que est utendum eisdem donec horror finiatur. Sed præter hæc alvus est ducenda, si horror quiescet tardius, siquidem id quoque prodest, corpore exonerato. Que ultima auxilia post hæc sunt gestatio et frictio. Autem cibus, qui præstet alvum mollem, est maxime dandus in morbis ejusmodi: glutinosa caro; austerum vinum, cum dabitur.

## TRANSLATION.

also: and friction may be used to as great an extent as he can bear it; especially on his hands and feet, and let him retain his breath. This must be persisted in, even although the shivering return, for the perseverance of the attendant, often subdues the disease.

If he have vomited any thing, tepid water should be given him; and he is to be excited to vomit again; these means to be used until the shivering cease. But besides these, injections must be administered, if the shivering yield slowly, since by unloading the bowels, the body is relieved. The next remedies after these, are gestation and friction: food which may render the motions free, is especially to be given in diseases of this kind; glutinous flesh; austere wine, if any be given.

## CAP. XIII.

## CURATIO QUOTIDIANÆ FEBRIS.

HÆC ad omnes circuitus februm pertinent: discernendæ tamen singulæ sunt, sicut rationem habent dissimilem.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIII.

## CURATIO QUOTIDIANÆ FEBRIS.

HÆC pertinent ad omnes circuitus februm: tamen singulæ sunt discernendæ, sicut habent dissi-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIII.

## TREATMENT OF QUOTIDIAN FEVER.

THESE observations apply to all intermittent fevers: but they are to be distinguished severally, according as they require a dissimilar mode of treatment. If it

Si quotidiana est, triduo primo magno-  
pere abstinere oportet; tum cibis altero  
quoque die uti. Si res inveteraverit,  
post febrem experiri balneum et vinum;  
magisque si, horrore sublato, hæc su-  
perest.

## ORDO.

mitem rationem. Si est quotidi-  
ana, oportet abstinere magno-  
pere primo triduo; tum uti ci-  
bis quoque altero die. Si res in-  
veteraverit post febrem expe-  
riri balneum et vinum; que ma-  
gis si hæc super est, horrore sub-  
lato.

## TRANSLATION.

be a quotidian, it is incumbent on the patient to abstain rigidly from food the first three days; then to take food every alternate day. If it be inveterate, he ought to try a bath and wine after the fever, and particularly if there be any fever after the shivering.

## CAP. XIV.

## CURATIO TERTIANÆ FEBRIS.

Si vero tertiana, quæ ex toto intermit-  
tit, aut quartana est, mediis diebus, et  
ambulationibus uti oportet, aliisque  
exercitationibus, et unctionibus. Qui-  
dam ex antiquioribus medicis Cleo-  
phantus, in hoc genere morborum,  
multo ante accessionem, per caput  
ægrum multa calida aqua perfundebat,  
deinde vinum dabat. Quod, quamvis  
pleraque ejus viri præcepta secutus est  
Asclepiades, recte tamen præteriit: est  
enim anceps.

Ipsæ, si tertiana febris est, tertio die  
post accessionem dicit alvum duci opor-  
tere; quinto, post horrorem vomitum

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIV.

## CURATIO TERTIANÆ FEBRIS.

VERO si est tertiana, quæ inter-  
mittit ex toto, aut est quartana,  
oportet uti et ambulationibus,  
que aliis exercitationibus, et unc-  
tionibus, mediis diebus. Quibus  
ex antiquioribus medicis, Cleo-  
phantus in hoc genere morbo-  
rum, multo ante accessionem,  
perfundebat ægrum per caput  
multa calida aqua, deinde dabat  
vinum. Quod Asclepiades præ-  
teriit recte, quamvis secutus est  
pleraque præcepta ejus viri:  
enim est anceps.

Ipsæ dicit, oportere alvum  
duci tertio die post accessionem,  
si febris est tertiana; quinto  
elicerè vomitum post horrorem;

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIV.

## TREATMENT OF A TERTIAN FEVER.

But if it be a tertian or quartan with free intermissions, on the intermediate days it will be proper to walk, to use other exercises, and to anoint. Cleophrantus, one of the more ancient physicians, used to pour plenty of warm water upon the patient's head, in this disease, long before the paroxysm came on, then he gave him wine. But Asclepiades very properly disregarded this mode, although he has followed the most of this man's precepts: for it is doubtful.

The last writer himself says that we must clear out the bowels by injections on the third day after the accession, if the fever be tertian; on the fifth to elicit vo-



elicere; deinde post febrem, sicut illi mos erat, adhuc calidis dare cibum et vinum; sexto die, in lectulo detineri: sic enim fore, ne septimo die febris accedat. Id sæpe fieri posse, verisimile est. Tutius tamen est, ut hoc ipso ordine utamur; tria remedia, vomitus, alvi ductionis, vini, per triduum, id est die tertio, et quinto, et septimo tentare: nec vinum, nisi post accessionem, die septimo bibat.

Si vero primis diebus discussus morbus non est, inciditque in vetustatem, quo die febris expectabitur, in lectulo se contineat; post febrem perfricetur; tum, cibo assumpto, bibat aquam; postero die, qui vacat, ab exercitatione unctioneque, aqua tantum contentus, conquiescat. Et id quidem optimum est. Si vero imbecillitas urgebit, et post febrem vinum, et medio die paulum cibi debebit assumere.

## ORDO.

deinde post febrem, sicut mos erat illi dare cibum et vinum adhuc calidis; sexto die detineri in lectulo; enim sic fore, febris ne accedat septimo die. Est verisimile, id sæpe posse fieri. Tamen est tutius, ut utamur hoc ordine ipso, tentare tria remedia, vomitus, ductionis alvi, vini, per triduum, id est, tertio, et quinto, et septimo die; nec bibat vinum septimo die, nisi post accessionem.

Vero si morbus non est discussus primis diebus, que incidit in vetustatem, contineat se lectulo die quo febris expectabitur: bibat aquam; postero die, qui vacat, conquiescat ab exercitatione que unctione, contentus aqua tantum. Et id quidem est optimum. Vero si imbecillitas urgebit, debebit et assumere vinum post febrem, et paulum cibi medio die.

## TRANSLATION.

miting after the shivering; then after the fever, as it was usual to him; (Cleophrastus,) to give food and wine, while they remain hot: on the sixth day to keep them in bed: for in this way he thought there would be no accession on the seventh day. That this may happen frequently, is probable. But it is safer to follow this order, and to administer the three remedies, of vomiting, clystering, and wine, for three days, that is, on the third, fifth, and seventh; and not to have wine on the seventh day, until after the accession.

But if the disease be not removed on the first days, and then become inveterate, let him retain his bed on that day, that he anticipates the paroxysm: after the accession he may be rubbed, then he may take food, and drink water; on the following day, being free from fever, he may intermit his exercise and unction, and content himself with water only: and this indeed is the best. But if debility urge, it will be necessary for him to take wine after the paroxysm, and some food on the intermediate day.

## CAP. XV.

## CURATIO QUARTANÆ FEBRIS.

EADEM in quartana facienda sunt. Sed cum hæc tarde admodum finiatur, nisi primis diebus discussa est, diligentius ab initio præcipiendum est, quid in ea fieri debeat. Igitur si cui cum horrore febris accessit, eaque desiit, eodem die et postero tertioque continere se debet, et aquam tantummodo calidam primo die post febrem sumere; biduo proximo, quantum fieri potest, ne hanc quidem. Si quarto die cum horrore febris revertitur, vomere, sicut ante præceptum est; deinde post febrem, modicum cibum sumere, vini quadrantem; postero tertioque die abstinere, aqua tantummodo calida, si sitis est, assumpta. Septimo die balneo frigus prævenire; si febris redierit, ducere alvum; ubi ex eo corpus conquieverit, in unctione vehementer perfricari; eodem modo sumere cibum et vinum; biduo proximo se abstinere, frictione servata. Decimotertio die rursus balneum experiri; et, si

## ORDO.

## CAP. XV.

## CURATIO QUARTANÆ FEBRIS.

EADEM sunt facienda in quartana. Sed cum hæc finiatur admodum tarde, nisi est discussa primis diebus, est præcipiendum diligentius ab initio, quid debeat fieri in ea. Igitur si febris accessit cui cum horrore, que ea desiit, eodem die et postero, que tertio, debet continere se, et sumere tantummodo calidam aquam primo die post febrem; proximo biduo, nequidem hanc, quantum potest fieri. Si quarto die febris revertitur cum horrore, vomere, sicut præceptum est ante; deinde post febrem, sumere modicum cibum, quadrantem vini; postero que tertio die abstinere, tantummodo calida aqua assumpta, si est sitis. Septimo die prævenire frigus balneo; si febris redierit, ducere alvum; ubi ex eo corpus conquieverit perfricare vehementer in unctione; sumere cibum et vinum eodem modo; proximo biduo abstinere se, frictione servata. Decimotertio die rursus experiri balneum; et si postea

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XV.

## TREATMENT OF A QUARTAN FEVER.

THE same observations are applicable in a quartan (fever). But as this is very tardy in its departure, unless it be dispelled on the first days, more diligence must be observed in our mode of treatment from the commencement. Therefore if fever accede with shivering, and then cease on the same day, and the next, and third day, he ought to restrain himself, and to drink hot water only on the first day after the fever; and for the next two days he must even debar himself of this as much as possible. If the fever return on the fourth day with shivering, let him vomit, as has been directed before; then after the fever to take moderate food, and a quarter of a pint of wine: on the following and third day, to abstain from every thing, except hot water if there be thirst. On the seventh day to anticipate the rigor by the bath; if the fever return, let an enema be administered; after which rest must be enjoined; and to be rubbed vehemently during the process of anointing, and to take food and wine in the same manner as before; for the next two days to observe friction and fasting. On the thirteenth day, again to try a

postea febris accessit, æque perfricari, vinum copiosius bibere. Ac sic proximum est, ut quies tot dierum, et abstinencia cum ceteris, quæ præcipiuntur, febrem tollant. Si vero nihilominus remanet, aliud ex toto sequendum est curationis genus; idque agendum, ut, quod diu sustinendum est, corpus facile sustineat. Quo minus etiam curatio probari Heraclidis Tarentini debet, qui primis diebus ducendam alvum, deinde abstinendum in septimum diem dixit. Quod, ut sustinere aliquis possit, tamen, etiam febre liberatus, vix refectioni valebit: adeo, si febris sæpius accesserit, concidet. Igitur si tertio decimo die morbus manebit, balneum neque ante febrem, neque post eam tentandum erit; nisi interdum jam horrore discusso: horror ipse per ea, quæ supra scripta sunt, expugnandus. Deinde post febrem oportebit ungi, et vehementer perfricari; cibum et validum, et fortiter assumere; vino uti quantum libebit: postero die, cum satis quieverit, ambulare, exerceri, ungi, perfricari fortiter, cibum capere sine vino: tertio die abstinere.

Quo die vero febrem expectabit, ante surgere, et exerceri, dareque ope-

## ORDO.

febris accessit æque perfricari, bibere vinum copiosius. Ac sic est proximum, ut quies tot dierum, et abstinencia cum cæteris, quæ præcipiuntur, tollant febrem. Vero si nihilominus remanet, aliud genus curationis ex toto est sequendum; quid id agendum, ut corpus sustineat facile quod est sustinendum diu. Quo minus etiam curatio Heraclidis Tarentini, debet probari, qui dixit alvum ducendam, primis diebus, deinde abstinendum in septimum diem. Quod ut aliquis possit sustinere, tamen, etiam liberatus febre, valebit vix refectioni; adeo, si febris accesserit sæpius, concidet. Igitur si morbus manebit decimotertio die, balneum erit tentandum neque ante febrem, neque post eam; nisi interdum horrore jam discusso: horror ipse expugnandus, per ea, quæ scripta sunt supra. Deinde post febrem oportebit ungi, et perfricari vehementer; et assumere validum cibum, et fortiter; uti vino quantum libebit: postero die, cum quieverit satis, ambulare, exerceri, ungi, perfricari fortiter, capere cibum sine vino: tertio die abstinere.

Vero die quo expectabit febrem, surgere ante, et exerceri,

## TRANSLATION.

bath, and if the fever come on afterwards to be rubbed as before, and to drink wine more copiously. Thus it usually happens, that rest of so many days, and abstinence, together with those injunctions above-mentioned, remove the fever. But if it still remain, another mode of treatment must be pursued; and all our energies must tend to this, that the body may support easily, that which is to be supported long. For this reason the practice of Heraclides of Tarentum is the less worthy of approbation, who prescribed injections in the beginning, afterwards abstinence till the seventh day. Which although some may be able to sustain, yet, even being freed from fever, he will scarcely be able to recover; so that if fever return, he will fall a victim of exhaustion. Therefore if the disease shall remain on the thirteenth day, the bath must be used neither before nor after it; unless sometimes the rigors being dissipated, which we must combat against by the means already described. Then, after the fever, it will be necessary to be anointed and rubbed violently; and to take abundance of substantial food; wine without restraint; on the following day, when he has rested sufficiently, to walk, to be exercised, to be anointed, to be rubbed forcibly, to take food without wine: on the third day abstinence.

But the day on which he shall expect the fever, he ought to rise before the ac-



ram, ut in ipsam exercitationem febris tempus incurrat: sic enim sæpe illa discutitur. At si in opere occupavit, tum demum se recipere. In ejusmodi valetudine, medicamenta sunt, oleum, frictio, exercitatio, cibus, vinum. Si venter adstrictus est, solvendus est.

Sed hæc facile validiores faciunt: si imbecillitas occupavit, pro exercitatione gestatio est: si ne hanc quidem sustinet, adhibenda tamen frictio est: si hæc quoque vehemens onerat, intra quietem et unctionem et cibum sistendum est: dandaque opera est, ne qua cruditas in quotidianam id malum vertat. Nam quartana neminem jugulat: sed si ex ea facta quotidiana est, in malis æger est: quod tamen, nisi culpa vel ægri vel curantis, numquam fit.

## ORDO.

que dare operam, ut tempus febris incurrat in exercitationem ipsam: enim sic sæpe illa discutitur. At si occupavit in opere, tum demum recipere se. In valetudine ejusmodi medicamenta sunt oleum, frictio, exercitatio, cibus, vinum. Si venter est adstrictus, est solvendus.

Sed validiores faciunt hæc facile: si imbecillitas occupavit, gestatio est pro exercitatione: si nequidem sustinet hanc, tamen frictio est adhibenda: si hæc quoque vehemens onerat, est sistendum intra quietem et unctionem et cibum: que opera est danda, ne qua cruditas vertat id malum in quotidianam. Nam quartana jugulat neminem: sed si quotidiana facta est ex ea, æger est in malis: quod tamen nunquam fit, nisi culpa vel ægri vel curantis.

## TRANSLATION.

cession, to take exercise, and to endeavour that the time of the fever be occupied in the exercise itself: for in this manner it is often dissipated. But if he be overtaken in his exercise, he ought then to withdraw. The remedies, in diseases of this kind, are, oil, friction, exercise, food, and wine. If the bowels be constipated, they must be relieved.

Now very strong persons can sustain these things easily; yet where debility prevails, gestation must take the place of exercise; if he cannot even sustain this, let him be rubbed: if this also be too violent, it must be limited to rest, unction and nourishment; and care must be taken, lest any indigestion convert the malady into a quotidian. For a quartan never destroys any one; but if it prove to be the basis of a quotidian, the patient is then in a bad way: which very rarely happens, except from the negligence of either the patient or his physician.

## CAP. XVI.

## CURATIO DUARUM QUARTANARUM.

At si duæ quartanæ sunt, neque eæ, quas proposui, exercitationes adhiberi

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVI.

## CURATIO DUARUM QUARTANARUM.

At si sunt duæ quartanæ, neque eæ exercitationes quas proposui

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVI.

## TREATMENT OF A DOUBLE QUARTAN.

BUT if there be a double quartan, those exercises which I have proposed cannot be

possunt; aut ex toto quiescere opus est, aut, si id difficile est, leniter ambulare; considerare diligenter involutis pedibus et capite; quoties febris accessit et desiit, cibum modicum sumere, et vinum; reliquo tempore, nisi imbecillitas urget, abstinere. At si duæ febres pene junguntur, post utramque cibum sumere: deinde vacuo tempore, et moveri aliquid, et post unctionem cibo uti. Cum vero vetus quartana raro, nisi vere, solvatur; utique eo tempore attendendum est, ne quid fiat, quod valetudinem impediatur. Prodestque in vetere quartana, mutare subinde victus genus; a vino ad aquam, ab aqua ad vinum, a lenibus cibis ad acres, ab acris ad lenes transire; esse radicem, deinde vomere; jure pulli gallinacei ventrem resolvere; oleo ad frictiones adjicere calefacientia; ante accessionem sorbere, vel aceti cyathos duos, vel unum sinapis cum tribus Græci vini salsi, vel mista paribus portionibus, et in aqua diluta, piper, castoreum, laser, myrrham.

Per hæc enim similiaque corpus agitandum est, ut moveatur ex eo statu, quo detinetur. Si febris quievit, diu meminisse ejus diei convenit; eoque

## ORDO.

possunt adhiberi; est opus aut quiescere ex toto, aut si id est difficile, ambulare leniter; considerare pedibus et capite diligenter involutis; quoties febris accessit et desiit, sumere modicum cibum et vinum; reliquo tempore abstinere, nisi imbecillitas urget. At si duæ febres pene junguntur, sumere cibum post utramque: deinde, vacuo tempore, et moveri aliquid, et post unctionem uti cibo. Vero cum vetus quartana solvatur raro, nisi vere est attendendum utique eo tempore, ne quid fiat quod impediatur valetudinem. Que in vetere quartana prodest mutare subinde victus: transire a vino ad aquam, ab aqua ad vinum, a lenibus cibis ad acres, ab acris ad lenes; esse radicem, deinde vomere; ve resolvere ventrem jure pulli gallinacei; adjicere calefacientia oleo ad frictiones; ante accessionem sorbere vel duos cyathos aceti vel unum sinapis cum tribus Græci vini salsi, vel piper, castoreum, laser, myrrham, mixta paribus portionibus, et diluta in aqua.

Enim per hæc que similia corpus est agitandum, ut moveatur ex eo statu quo detinetur. Si febris quievit, convenit meminisse ejus diei diu; que eo

## TRANSLATION.

applied; therefore he must either rest entirely, or, if that be impracticable, to walk gently; to sit down with the feet and head carefully wrapped up; as often as the fever comes and goes, to take food and wine in moderation; to abstain in the interim, unless there be much debility. But if the two paroxysms almost unite, let him take food after each: then, in the mean time, to move a little, and after unction to take food. But since a rebellious quartan rarely terminates except in spring, it ought to be more particularly attended to at that time, lest any thing be done to impede recovery. An inveterate quartan is benefited by an occasional change of food; passing from wine to water, from water to wine, from mild food to acrid, from acrid to mild: to eat radish and then vomit; to relax the bowels with chicken broth; to add some of the calefacients to the oil used in friction; before an accession to take, either two glasses of vinegar, or one of mustard with three of Greek salt wine; or pepper, castor, assafœtida, and myrrh, mixed in equal proportions, and diluted with water.

For by these and the like remedies the body must be stimulated, that a change may be effected from that state in which it is detained. If the fever have yielded, it will be necessary to remember its paroxysmal period for a long time; and on

vitare frigus, calorem, cruditatem, lassitudinem. Facile enim revertitur, nisi a sano quoque aliquamdiu timetur.

## ORDO.

vitare frigus, calorem, cruditatem, lassitudinem. Enim revertitur facile, nisi timetur aliquamdiu quoque a sano.

## TRANSLATION.

that day to avoid cold, heat, indigestion, and lassitude; for it returns by a very slight cause, unless guarded against for some time, even by a healthy person.

## CAP. XVII.

## ORDO.

CURATIO QUOTIDIANÆ FEBRIS, QUÆ EX  
QUARTANA FACTA SIT.

## CAP. XVII.

CURATIO QUOTIDIANÆ FEBRIS,  
QUÆ SIT FACTA EX QUARTANA.

AT si ex quartana, quotidiana facta est, cum id vitio inciderit, per biduum abstinere oportet, et frictione uti; aquam tantummodo vespere potui dare. Tertio die sæpe fit, ne febris accedat: sed sive fuit, sive non fuit, cibus post accessionis tempus est dandus; et si manet, per biduum abstinencia, quanta maxima imperari corpori potest, et frictione quotidie utendum est.

AT si quotidiana est facta ex quartana, cum id inciderit vitio, oportet abstinere per biduum, et uti frictione; dare aquam tantummodo potui vespere. Fit sæpe tertio die, febris ne accedat: sed sive fuit, sive non fuit, cibus est dandus post tempus accessionis; et si manet, abstinencia, potest imperari corpori, quanta maxime per biduum, utendum est frictione quotidie.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVII.

TREATMENT OF QUOTIDIAN FEVER ARISING FROM A  
QUARTAN.

Now if a quartan fever have been aggravated into a quotidian, since this might have happened by maltreatment, it is proper that he abstain for the space of two days and to use friction; to give only water to drink in the evening. It often happens that the fever does not accede on the third day: but whether it has or has not been, food must be given after the time of the accession; and if it remain, the strictest abstinence possible must be enjoined for the space of two days, and daily friction.



## CAP. XVIII.

DE TRIBUS INSANIE GENERIBUS: ET  
PRIMO DE EJUS CURATIONE, QUÆ A  
GRÆCIS Φρενίτις DICITUR.

Et februm quidem curatio exposita est. Supersunt vero alii corporis affectus, qui huic superveniunt; ex quibus eos, qui certis partibus assignari non possunt, protinus jungam.

Incipiam ab insania, primamque hujus ipsius partem aggrediar, quæ et acuta, et in febre est: Φρένσις Græci appellant. Illud ante omnia scire oportet, interdum in accessione ægros desipere, et loqui aliena. Quod non quidem leve est; neque incidere potest, nisi in febre vehementi: non tamen æque pestiferum est: nam plerumque breve esse consuevit, levatoque accessionis impetu, protinus mens redit. Neque id genus morbi remedium aliud desiderat, quam quod in curanda febre præceptum est.

Phrenesis verò tum demum est, cum continua dementia esse incipit; aut cum æger, quamvis adhuc sapiat, tamen quasdam vanas imagines accipit: per-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVIII.

DE TRIBUS GENERIBUS INSANIE,  
ET PRIMO DE CURATIONE  
EJUS, QUÆ DICITUR A GRÆCIS  
Φρενίτις (PHRENITIS).

Et curatio februm quidem exposita est. Vero supersunt alii affectus corporis, qui superveniunt huic: ex quibus jungam protinus eos qui possunt non assignari certis partibus.

Incipiam ab insania, quæ aggrediar partem hujus ipsius primam, quæ est, et acuta, et in febre: Græci appellant Φρένσις. Oportet scire illud ante omnia, ægros interdum desipere et loqui aliena in accessione. Quod quidem non est leve; neque potest incidere, nisi in vehemente febre: tamen non est æque pestiferum; nam plerumque consuevit esse breve, quæ impetu accessionis levato, protinus mens redit. Neque id genus morbi desiderat aliud remedium, quam quod præceptum est in curanda febre.

Vero tum demum est phrenesis, cum dementia incipit esse continua; aut cum æger quamvis adhuc sapiat, tamen accipit quasdam vanas imagines: est per-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## THE SEVERAL SPECIES OF INSANITY, AND ITS TREATMENT.

THE treatment of fevers being now explained; there remain other affections of the body which supervene upon these; to which I shall immediately subjoin those which cannot be assigned to any particular part.

I will begin with INSANITY and proceed to that species of it which is both acute, and occurring in fever: the Greeks call it PHRENZY. It is of the utmost importance to know, that sick persons sometimes become delirious and talk incoherently in the paroxysm. Which indeed is not a trifling symptom, nor can it happen except in violent fever: yet it is not always equally fatal; for it is generally accustomed to be short, and the violence of the paroxysm being relieved, reason resumes its wonted functions. Nor does this disease require any other remedy than that which I have already prescribed in the treatment of fever.

Now phrenzy is established when the incoherence begins to be permanent; or, when the patient still has his reason, yet he admits some extravagant chimeras:

fecta est, ubi mens illis imaginibus addicta est. Ejus autem plura genera sunt: siquidem ex phreneticis alii hilares, alii tristes sunt; alii facilius continentur, et intra verba desipiunt, alii consurgunt, et violenter quædam manu faciunt; atque ex his ipsis, alii nihil nisi impetu peccant, alii etiam artes adhibent, summamque speciem sanitatis in captandis malorum operum occasionibus præbent; sed exitu deprehenduntur.

Ex his autem eos, qui intra verba desipiunt, aut leviter etiam manu peccant, onerare asperioribus coercitionibus supervacuum est: eos vero, qui violentius se gerunt, vincire convenit; ne vel sibi vel alteri noceant. Neque credendum est, si vinctus aliquis, dum levavi vinculis cupit, quamvis prudenter et miserabiliter loquitur; quoniam is dolus insanientis est.

Fere vero antiqui tales ægros in tenebris habebant; eo quod illis contrarium esset, exterreri, et ad quietem animi tenebras ipsas conferre aliquid judicabant. At Asclepiades, tamquam tenebris ipsis terrentibus, in lumine habendos eos dixit. Neutrum autem perpetuum est: alium enim lux, alium te-

## ORDO.

fecta ubi mens est addicta illis imaginibus. Autem sunt plura genera ejus: siquidem ex phreneticis alii sunt hilares, alii tristes: alii continentur facilius, et desipiunt intra verba, alii consurgunt, et faciunt quædam violenter manu: atque ex his ipsis, alii nihil peccant nisi impetu, alii etiam adhibent artes que præbent summam speciem sanitatis in captandis occasionibus operum malorum; sed deprehenduntur exitu.

Autem ex his est supervacuum onerare asperioribus coercitionibus eos qui desipiunt intra verba, aut etiam peccant leviter manu: vero convenit vincire eos qui gerunt se violentius, ne noceant, vel sibi vel alteri. Neque est credendum, si aliquis vinctus, quamvis loquitur prudenter et miserabiliter, dum cupit levare vinculis: quoniam is est dolus insanientis.

Vero antiqui fere habebant tales ægros in tenebris; eo quod esset contrarium illis exterreri, et judicabant tenebras ipsas conferre aliquid ad quietem animi. At Asclepiades, tamquam tenebris ipsis terrentibus, dixit eos habendos in lumine. Autem neutrum est perpetuum: enim lux alium, tenebræ turbant ma-

## TRANSLATION.

and when the mind becomes addicted to those images, phrenzy is complete. But there are many species of it; for of phrenetics, some are merry, others sad; some are easily restrained, and rave only in words, others get up and commit acts of violence; and of these last, some attack openly, others even make use of cunning, and exhibit the most consummate appearance of sanity in seizing opportunities of doing mischief; but they are detected by the issue.

Now it is unnecessary to oppress those with very harsh coercive measures, whose malady only extends to words, or even trifling assaults with their hands: but it is proper to confine those who conduct themselves violently, lest they may injure, either themselves or any other person. Neither should any one of them be trusted, who, in order to be freed from his bonds, will speak prudently, and even in a pitiful strain: for this is the cunning of madness.

Such patients were generally kept in dark chambers by the ancients; on this account, because it might be injurious to them to be terrified; and they judged, that darkness of itself contributed in some degree to tranquillize the mind. Asclepiades said they ought to be kept in the light, as if the darkness itself excited terror. Neither the one, nor the other is without exception; for the light disturbs

nebræ magis turbant; reperiunturque, in quibus nullum discrimen deprehendi, vel hoc, vel illo modo possit. Optimum itaque est, utrumque experiri; et habere eum, qui tenebras horret, in luce; eum, qui lucem, in tenebris. At ubi nullum tale discrimen est, æger, si vires habet, loco lucido; si non habet, obscuro continendus est.

Remedia vero adhibere, ubi maxime furor urget, supervacuum est: simul enim febris quoque increscit. Itaque tum nihil nisi continendus æger est: ubi vero res patitur, festinanter subveniendum est. Asclepiades perinde esse dixit, his sanguinem mitti, ac si trucidentur; rationem hanc secutus, quod neque insania esset, nisi febre intenta; neque sanguis, nisi in remissione ejus, recte mitteretur. Sed ipse in his somnum multa frictione quæsit; cum et intentio febris somnum impediat, et frictio non nisi in remissione ejus utilis sit. Itaque hoc quoque auxilium debuit præterire. Quid igitur est? Multa in præcipiti periculo recte fiunt, alias omittenda. Et continua quoque febris habet tempora, quibus, etsi non remittit, non tamen crescit: estque hoc, ut non optimum, sic tamen secundum

## ORDO.

gis alium; que reperiuntur in quibus nullum discrimen possit deprehendi vel hoc vel illo modo. Itaque est optimum experiri utrumque; et habere eum, qui horret tenebras, in luce; eum qui lucem, in tenebris. At ubi est nullum tale discrimen, æger est continendus, si habet vires, lucido loco: si non habet, obscuro.

Vero est supervacuum adhibere remedia ubi furor urget maxime: enim simul febris quoque increscit. Itaque tum nihil nisi æger continendus: vero ubi res patitur, est subveniendum festinanter. Asclepiades dixit, sanguinem mitti his, esse perinde ac si trucidentur: secutus hanc rationem, quod neque insania esset, nisi febre intenta; neque sanguis mitteretur recte, nisi in remissione ejus. Sed ipse quæsit somnum in his multa frictione; cum et intentio febris impediat somnum, et frictio non sit utilis nisi in remissione ejus. Itaque debuit quoque præterire hoc auxilium. Quid igitur est? Multa fiunt recte in præcipiti periculo, alias omittenda. Et quoque continua febris habet tempora, quibus, etsi non remittit, tamen non crescit; que hoc, ut non optimum, sic tamen se-

## TRANSLATION.

some, others are perturbed more by darkness; and some are to be met with, in whom no difference can be observed in either mode. Therefore it is best to try each; and to keep him in the light, who dreads darkness; and to keep him in darkness, who dreads the light. But where there is no such distinction, if the patient have strength, he must be kept in a lucid chamber, if he have not, in a dark one.

Now it is superfluous to apply remedies when the furor oppresses most: for the fever also increases at the same time. Therefore, nothing is to be done then, but to keep the patient under restraint: but when the case admits of relief, no time should be lost. Asclepiades has characterized blood-letting in such cases to be tantamount to murder; upon this principle, that there is no insanity except in the height of the paroxysm, nor can blood be taken with propriety except in the remission of it. But Asclepiades himself endeavoured to procure sleep in those cases by much friction: although both the violence of the fever prevents sleep, and friction cannot be used except in its remission. Therefore he ought to have omitted this remedy. What then is to be done? Many things are justifiable in being done in imminent danger, which at other times ought to be omitted. Even continued fever has certain times, in which, although it does not remit, yet it does not increase; and this, although not the best, yet it is a favourable time for remedies.



remediis tempus. Quod si vires ægri patiuntur, sanguis quoque mitti debet. Minus deliberari potest, an alvus du-cenda sit. Tum, interposito die, con-venit caput ad cutem tondere; deinde aqua fovere, in qua verbenæ aliquæ de-coctæ sint ex reprimentibus; aut prius fovere, deinde tondere, et iterum fovere; ac novissime rosa caput naresque im-pleri: offerre etiam naribus rutam, ex aceto contritam; movere sternutamenta medicamentis in id efficacibus. Quæ tamen facienda sunt in iis, quibus vires non desunt. Si vero imbecillitas est, rosa tantum caput, adjecto serpyllo, si-milive aliquo, madefaciendum est. Utiles etiam in quibuscumque viribus herbæ duæ sunt, solanum et muralis, si simul ex utraque succo expresso caput impletur. Cum se febris remiserit, frictione utendum est; parcius tamen in iis, qui nimis hilares, quam in iis, qui nimis tristes sunt.

Adversus omnium autem sic insanien-tium animos gerere se pro cujusque na-tura necessarium est. Quorundam enim vani metus levandi sunt; sicut in homine prædivite famem timente inci-dit, cui subinde falsæ hæreditates nun-tiabantur: quorundam audacia coer-

## ORDO.

cundum tempus remediis. Quod si vires ægri patiuntur, sanguis debet quoque mitti. Potest minus deliberari, an alvus sit du-cenda. Tum die interposito, con-venit tondere caput ad cutem; deinde fovere aqua in qua ali-quæ verbenæ decoctæ sint ex reprimentibus; aut prius fovere, deinde tondere, et iterum fovere; ac novissime implere caput que nares rosa; etiam offerre rutam contritam ex aceto naribus; mo-vere sternutamenta medicamen-tis efficacibus in id. Quæ ta-men sunt faciunt in iis, quibus vires non desunt. Vero si est imbecillitas, caput est tantum madefaciendum rosa, serpyllo, ve aliquo simili adjecto. Etiam sunt duæ herbæ utiles in quibus-cumque viribus, solanum et mu-ralis, si caput impletur succo ex-presso ex utraque simul. Cum febris remiserit se, est utendum frictione; tamen parcius in iis qui sunt nimis hilares, quam in iis qui sunt nimis tristes.

Autem est necessarium gerere se sic adversus animos omnium insanientium pro natura cujus-que. Enim vani metus quorun-dam sunt levandi; sicut incidit in prædivite homine timente fa-mem, cui subinde falsæ heredi-tates nuntiabantur: audacia quo-rundam est coercenda; sicut fit in

## TRANSLATION.

But if the patient's strength permit, he ought to be bled. It requires less deli-beration on the administration of injections. Then after the interposition of a day, it will be proper to shave the head; afterwards to foment it with water in which vervains have been boiled with some astringent remedies; or to foment it first, then to remove the hair, and again foment, and lastly to embrocate the head and nostrils with rose oil; to hold rue also to the nostrils, bruised in vinegar, and to excite sneezing by medicines possessing that property. Such is the treatment to be adopted towards those who are not debilitated. But if there be weakness, the head is only to be moistened with rose oil, to which some wild thyme or something similar has been added. There are also two herbs useful in any degree of strength, the nightshade and the wall-pellitory, the expressed juice of each to be applied on the head. When the fever has remitted, we must use friction; but more sparingly in those who are merry, than in those who are very sad.

But it is necessary to conduct ourselves in such a manner towards all those insane persons, compatible to the nature, disposition, and habits of each. For the groundless apprehensions of some must be alleviated: as it happened in the case of a very rich man who dreaded starvation, and to whom hypothetical possessions were announced from time to time: the audacity of others requires coercion; as it

cenda est; sicut in iis fit, in quibus continendis plagæ quoque adhibentur: quorundam etiam intempestivus risus objurgatione et minis finiendus: quorundam discutiendæ tristes cogitationes; ad quod symphoniam, et cymbala, strepitusque proficiunt. Sæpius tamen assentiendum, quam repugnandum est; paulatimque, et non evidenter, ab iis, quæ stulte dicentur, ad meliora mens adducenda. Interdum etiam elicienda ipsius intentio; ut fit in hominibus studiosis litterarum, quibus liber legitur, aut recte, si delectantur, aut perperam, si id ipsum eos offendit: emendando enim convertere animum incipiunt. Quin etiam recitare, si qua meminerunt, cogendi sunt. Ad cibum quoque quosdam non desiderantes reduxerunt ii, qui inter epulantes eos collocarunt. Omnibus vero sic affectis somnus et difficilis, et præcipue necessarius est: sub hoc enim plerique sanescunt. Prodest ad id, atque etiam ad mentem ipsam componendam, crocinum unguentum cum irino in caput datum. Si nihilominus vigilant, quidam somnum moliuntur potui dando aquam, in qua papaver, aut hyoscyamus decocta sit: alii mandragoræ mala pulvino subjiciunt: alii

## ORDO.

iis, in quibus continendis quoque plagæ adhibentur: etiam intempestivus risus quorundam est finiendus objurgatione et minis: tristes cogitationes quorundam discutiendæ, ad quod symphoniam, et cymbala, que strepitus proficiunt. Tamen est assentiendum sæpius, quam est repugnandum; que mens est adducenda paulatim, et non evidenter, ab iis quæ dicantur stulte, ad meliora. Interdum etiam intentio ipsius elicienda; ut fit in hominibus studiosis litterarum, quibus liber legitur, aut recte si delectantur, aut perperam, si id ipsum offendit eos: enim incipiunt convertere animum emendando. Quin etiam sunt cogendi recitare, si meminerunt qua. Quoque ii reduxerant quosdam non desiderantes ad cibum, qui collocarunt eos inter epulantes. Vero somnus est et difficilis, et præcipue necessarius omnibus sic affectis; enim sub hoc plerique sanescunt. Crocinum unguentum cum irino datum in caput prodest ad id, atque etiam ad mentem ipsam componendam. Si nihilominus vigilant, quidam moliuntur somnum dando potui aquam in qua papaver aut hyoscyamus decocta sit; alii subjiciunt pulvino mala mandragoræ: alii inducent

## TRANSLATION.

is done in those persons, restraining whom, even stripes are applied. The irrational laughter of some is to be restrained by reproof and threats: the melancholy of others is to be relieved by symphonies, cymbals, and noise. Yet we should assent to them, more frequently, than oppose them; and the mind is thus, gradually, and insensibly brought from an irrational to a more rational method of discourse. Sometimes the mental energies of the patient are to be elicited; as is done with literary men, to whom a book is read, either with a propriety of accentuation, if they be pleased with it, or in a perverted manner if that itself offend them: for by their emendations they begin to reason. If they remember any thing, they should be induced to recite it. Some have been brought to eat, who had previously refused, by being placed among persons banqueting. To all persons so affected, sleep is not only difficult to be obtained, but particularly necessary; for after this most of them begin to recover. Saffron ointment with iris-oil applied on the head, aids in procuring sleep, and also in tranquillizing the mind itself. If however they continue vigilant, some procure sleep by giving them a decoction of poppies or henbane to drink; others place mandrake apples under the pillow: others apply to

vel amomum, vel sycamini lacrymam fronti inducunt. Hoc nomen apud medicos reperio: sed cum Græci morum *συκάμινον* appellant, mori nulla lacrima est. Sic vero significatur lacryma arboris in Ægypto nascentis, quam ibi *μοροσύκον* appellant. Plurimi decoctis papaveris corticibus, ex ea aqua spongia os et caput subinde foveant. Asclepiades ea supervacua esse dixit; quoniam in lethargum sæpe converterent. Præcepit autem, ut primo die, a cibo, potione, somno abstinere; vespere ei daretur potui aqua; tum frictio admoveretur lenis, ut ne manum quidem, qui perfricaret, vehementer imprimeret; postero deinde die, iisdem omnibus factis, vespere ei daretur sorbitio et aqua, rursusque frictio adhiberetur: per hanc enim nos consecuturos, ut somnus accedat.

Id interdum fit, et quidem adeo, ut, illo confitente, nimia frictio etiam lethargi periculum afferat. Sed si sic somnus non accessit, tum demum illis medicamentis arcessendus est: habita scilicet eadem moderatione, quæ hic quoque necessaria est, ne, quem obdormire volumus, excitare postea non pos-

## ORDO.

fronti vel amomum, vel lachrymam sycamini. Reperio hoc nomen apud medicos: sed cum Græci appellant morum *συκάμινον*, (sycaminus,) est nulla lacryma mori. Vero si lacryma arboris nascentis in Ægypto, quam appellant ibi *μοροσύκον*, (sycocomorum,) significatur. Plurimi, corticibus papaveris decoctis, foveant subinde os et caput spongia ex ea aqua. Asclepiades dixit ea esse supervacua; quoniam sæpe converterent in lethargum. Autem præcepit ut primo die, abstinere a cibo, potione, somno; vespere aqua daretur ei potui; tum lenis frictio admoveretur, ut nequidem qui perfricaret imprimeret manum vehementer: deinde postero die, omnibus iisdem factis, vespere sorbitio et aqua daretur ei, que rursus frictio adhiberetur: enim per hanc nos consecuturos ut somnus accedat.

Id fit interdum, et quidem adeo ut, illo confitente, nimia frictio etiam afferat periculum lethargi. Sed si somnus non accessit, tum demum arcessendus illis medicamentis; scilicet eadem moderatione habita quæ est necessaria quoque hic, ne non possimus excitare postea quem volumus obdormire. Etiam si-

## TRANSLATION.

the forehead either amomums or the sycamine tear. I find this name in the writings of physicians: but although the Greeks call the mulberry, sycaminus, yet there is no tear of this tree: but this term they apply to a tree growing in Egypt, which they call there morosykon. Many persons boil the rind of poppies in water, and foment the mouth and head occasionally with a sponge dipped in this decoction. Asclepiades has pronounced these to be injurious, since they often convert the disease into a lethargy. But on the first day he enacts abstinence from food, drink, and sleep; in the evening to give him water to drink; then gentle friction to be applied, but in so light a manner, that even the hand which rubs must not be pressed violently: then on the following day the same to be repeated, and in the evening water and gruel should be given to him, and again friction applied: for by these means we may procure sleep.

This effect indeed may happen sometimes, according to his own admission, that too much friction may produce lethargy. But if sleep have not been procured by these means, then we must have recourse to those above named: especially observing the same moderation which is so necessary here, lest we may not be able to



simus. Confert etiam aliquid ad somnum silanus juxta cadens; vel gestatio post cibum, et noctu; maximeque suspensi lecti motus.

Neque alienum est, si neque sanguis ante missus est, neque mens constat, neque somnus accedit, occipitio inciso cucurbitulam admoveere; quæ quia levat morbum, potest etiam somnum facere. Moderatio autem in cibo quoque adhibenda est: nam neque implendus æger est, ne insaniat; neque jejunió utique vexandus, ne imbecillitate in cardiacum incidat. Opus est cibo infirmo, maximeque sorbitione, potione aquæ mulsæ, cujus ternos cyathos bis hieme, quater æstate dedisse satis est.

Alterum insanix genus est, quod spatium longius recipit; quia fere sine febre incipit, leves deinde febriculas excitat. Consistit in tristitia, quam videtur bilis atra contrahere. In hac utilis detractio sanguinis est: si quid hanc prohibet, prima est abstinencia; secunda, per album veratrum vomitumque purgatio. Post utrumlibet, adhibenda bis die frictio est; si magis valet, frequens etiam exercitatio; in jejuno vomitus: cibus, sine vino, dandus ex

## ORDO.

lanus cadens juxta confert aliquid ad somnum, vel gestatio post cibum et noctu, quæ maxime motus suspensi lecti.

Neque est alienum, si neque sanguis missus est ante, neque mens constat, neque somnus accedit, admoveere cucurbitulam occipitio inciso; quæ, quia levat morbum, potest etiam facere somnum. Autem moderatio in cibo est quoque adhibenda; nam æger est neque implendus, ne insaniat; neque utique vexandus jejunió, ne imbecillitate incidat in cardiacum. Est opus infirmo cibo, quæ maxime sorbitione, potione mulsæ aquæ, cujus est satis dedisse ternos cyathos bis hieme, quater æstate.

Est alterum genus insanix quod recipit longius spatium, quia fere incipit sine febre, deinde excitat leves febriculas: consistit in tristitia, quam atrabilis videtur contrahere. In hac, detractio sanguinis est utilis: si quid prohibet hanc, abstinencia est prima, purgatio per album veratrum quæ vomitum secunda. Post utrumlibet frictio est adhibenda bis die: si valet magis, etiam frequens exercitatio: vomitus in jejuno. Cibus ex media materia est dandus sine vino;

## TRANSLATION.

rouse the patient whom we wish to sleep. A cascade falling near the patient conduces to lull the senses asleep, or gestation at night after food, and especially the motion of a suspended bed.

Nor is it improper, if blood have not been previously let, to apply the cupping glasses to the incised occiput when there is continued vigilance and delirium, which will relieve the disease and may procure sleep. But moderation in food must be attended to: for the patient ought neither to be replenished, lest he become insane, nor, indeed is he to be tortured with hunger by abstinence, lest he fall a victim to the cardiac disease (4) from debility. He must take weak food, especially gruel, and drink hydromel, of which it will be sufficient to give three glasses, twice in winter, and four times in summer.

There is another species of insanity which admits of a longer duration, because for the most part it begins without fever, afterwards it excites slight fevers: it consists of sadness, which seems to proceed from atrabilis. Blood-letting in this is beneficial: if any circumstance impede this, the first remedy is abstinence, the second is to purge with white hellebore and a vomit. After either of these remedies, friction must be administered twice a day; if he be vigorous, frequent exercise also: and a vomit on an empty stomach. Food of the middle class is to be given

media materia est. Quam quoties posuero, scire licet, etiam ex infirmissima dari posse; dum ne ea sola quis utatur: valentissima tantummodo esse removenda. Præter hæc, servanda alvus est quam tenerrima; removendi terrores, et potius bona spes afferenda; quærenda delectatio ex fabulis, ludisque, quibus maxime capi sanus assueverat; laudanda, si qua sunt, ipsius opera, et ante oculos ejus ponenda; leviter objurganda vana tristitia; subinde admonendus, in iis ipsis rebus, quæ sollicitant, cur non potius lætitiæ, quam sollicitudinis causa sit. Si febris quoque accessit, sicut aliæ febres curanda est.

Tertium genus insanix est ex his longissimum; adeo ut vitam ipsam non impediat: quod robusti corporis esse consuevit. Hujus autem ipsius species duæ sunt. Nam quidam imaginibus, non mente falluntur; quales insanientem Ajacem vel Orestem percepisse poetæ ferunt: quidam animo desipiunt. Si imagines fallunt, ante omnia videndum est, tristes, an hilares sint. In tristitia, nigrum veratrum dejectionis causa; in hilaritate, album, ad vom-

## ORDO.

quam quoties posuero, licet scire etiam ex infirmissima posse dari, dum quis ne utatur ea sola: tantummodo valentissima esse removenda. Præter hæc, alvus est servanda quam tenerrima; terrores removendi, et potius bona spes afferenda; delectatio quærenda ex fabulis que ludis, quibus sanus assueverat capi maxime; si sunt qua opera ipsius, laudanda, et ponenda ante oculos ejus; vana tristitia objurganda leviter; subinde admonendus, in his rebus ipsis, quæ sollicitant, cursit non protinus causa lætitiæ, quam sollicitudinis. Si febris quoque accessit, est curanda sicut aliæ febres.

Tertium genus insanix est longissimum ex his, adeo ut non impediat vitam ipsam; quod consuevit esse robusti corporis. Autem sunt duæ species hujus ipsius; nam quidam falluntur imaginibus, non mente; quales poetæ ferunt Ajacem vel Orestem insanientem percepisse: quidam desipiunt animo. Si imagines fallunt, ante omnia est videndum sint tristes an hilares. In tristitia, nigrum veratrum debet dari causa dejectionis in hilaritate, album ad vomitum excitandum:

## TRANSLATION.

without wine: which as often as I have mentioned this last term I wish it to be understood that it is the weakest may be given, provided the patient be not confined to that alone: that the most nutritious are withheld only. In addition to these, the bowels must be kept as open as possible; all terrors must be removed, and rather good prospects held out: cheerful entertainment must be sought for out of fabulous tales and sports, with which he used to be most delighted, when in health: if there be any of his own works, they must be extolled, and placed before him: his unfounded apprehensions are to be reproved in a mild manner: he must be occasionally admonished about those very things themselves which render him anxious, why there may not be cause of gladness rather than of anxiety. If fever also have acceded, it is to be treated as other fevers.

The third species of INSANITY is the longest of these, yet it does not seem to impede the vital functions; and which is incident to a robust constitution. But there are two species of this itself; for some are deceived by the conjurations of a heated imagination, not from a disordered mind; such were the ravings of Ajax and Orestes (5) as related by the poets; others are disordered in their reason. If phantoms mislead the mind, first of all must be observed whether they be sad or merry. In sadness black hellebore ought to be given as a purgative; but in the

tum excitandum, dari debet : idque, si in potione non accipit, pani adjiciendum est, quo facilius fallat. Nam si bene se purgaverit, ex magna parte morbum levabit. Ergo etiam si semel datum veratrum parum profecerit, interposito tempore iterum dari debet. Neque ignorare oportet, leviolem esse morbum cum risu, quam serio insanientium. Illud quoque perpetuum est in omnibus morbis ; ubi ab inferiore parte purgandus aliquis est, ventrem ejus ante solvendum esse ; ubi a superiore, comprimendum.

Si vero consilium insanientem fallit, tormentis quibusdam optime curatur. Ubi perperam aliquid dixit, aut fecit, fame, vinculis, plagis coercendus est. Cogendus est et attendere, et ediscere aliquid, et meminisse : sic enim fiet, ut paulatim metu cogatur considerare, quid faciat. Subito etiam terreri, et expavescere, in hoc morbo prodest ; et fere quidquid animum vehementer perturbat. Potest enim quædam fieri mutatio, cum ab eo statu mens, in quo fuerat, abducta est. Interest etiam, is ipse sine causa subinde rideat, an mœstus demissusque sit : nam demens hila-

## ORDO.

que id est adjiciendum pani, si non accipit in potione, quo fallat facilius : nam si purgaverit se bene, levabit morbum ex magna parte. Ergo etiam si veratrum datum semel profecerit parum, tempore interposito, debet dari iterum. Neque oportet ignorare, morbum cum risu esse leviolem quam insanientium serio. Illud quoque est perpetuum in omnibus morbis, ubi aliquis est purgandus ab inferiore parte, ventrem ejus esse solvendum ante, ubi a superiore, comprimendum.

Vero si consilium fallit insanientem, curatur optime quibusdam tormentis. Ubi dixit aut fecit aliquid perperam, est coercendus fame, vinculis, plagis. Est cogendus et attendere, et ediscere aliquid, et meminisse : enim sic fiet, ut paulatim cogatur metu considerare quid faciat. Etiam prodest in hoc morbo terreri subito et expavescere ; et fere quidquid perturbat animum vehementer. Enim quædam mutatio potest fieri quum mens abducta est ab eo statu in quo fuerat. Etiam interest is ipse rideat subinde sine causa, an sit mœstus que demissus : nam demens hila-

## TRANSLATION.

merry species white hellebore to excite vomiting : and that must be added to bread, if the patient will not take it in a potion ; by which he may be the more easily deceived : for if he be well purged, it will in a great measure relieve the disease. Therefore if the first administration of the white hellebore have benefited little, after some interval it ought to be repeated. Neither should we be ignorant, that this disease is more mild when attended with laughter, than with melancholy. It is an established principle in the treatment of all diseases, when a patient is to be purged in the inferior parts, that his bowels must be opened first, if upwards they must be confined.

But if it be mental alienation, some are best cured by correction. When he has said or done any thing wrong, he must be chastised by hunger, chains, and stripes. He must be made to attend, and to learn off something that he may remember : for by this it will happen, that by degrees he will be led to consider what he may be doing. It is also beneficial in this malady to be put into sudden dread, and in general whatever disturbs the mind by a violent shock. For a change may be effected when the mind is withdrawn from that state in which it had been. It is also of some importance, whether the patient himself may laugh occasionally without any cause, or whether he be sad and dejected : for the hilarity of insanity is



ritas terroribus iis, de quibus supra dixi, melius curatur: si nimia tristitia est, prodest lenis, sed multa bis die frictio; item per caput aqua frigida infusa, demissumque corpus in aquam et oleum.

Illa communia sunt: insanientes vehementer exerceri debere; multa frictione uti; neque pinguem carnem, neque vinum assumere; cibis uti post purgationem, ex media materia, quam levissimis; non oportere esse vel solos, vel inter ignotos, vel inter eos, quos aut contemnant, aut negligant; mutare debere regiones, et si mens redit, annua peregrinatione esse jactandos. Raro, sed aliquando tamen, ex metu delirium nascitur. Quod genus insanientium, specie simile, similique victus genere curandum est: præterquam quod in hoc insanientiæ genere solo recte vinum datur.

## ORDO.

ritas curatur melius his terroribus de quibus dixi supra. Si est nimia tristitia, lenis, sed multa frictio, bis die, prodest: item frigida aqua infusa per caput, que corpus demissum in aquam et oleum.

Illa sunt communia, insanientes debere exerceri vehementer; uti multa frictione; neque assumere pinguem carnem, neque vinum; post purgationem uti cibis quam levissimis ex media materia; non oportere esse vel solos, vel inter ignotos, vel inter eos quos aut contemnant, aut negligant; debere mutare regiones, et si mens redit, esse jactandos annua peregrinatione. Raro, sed tamen aliquando, delirium nascitur ex metu. Quod genus insanientium, simile specie, est curandum simili genere victus: præterquam quod in hoc genere insanientiæ solo vinum recte datur.

## TRANSLATION.

treated better by those terrors which I have mentioned above. If it be an extreme case of sadness, gentle, but long continued friction twice a day does good: also cold water poured over the head, and the body lowered into water and oil.

It is a general rule for insane persons to be exercised violently; to apply long continued friction; neither to eat fat meat nor wine; after purging to take the lightest possible food from the middle class: that they ought neither to be alone, nor among strangers, nor those whom they either despise, or regard with indifference: that they ought to change their climates, and if reason return, to be exercised by an annual peregrination. It does happen, though rarely, that insanity is the result of terror, which genus of insanity is of a similar species (*to that last mentioned*), and to be treated by similar diet: except that in this kind of insanity alone, wine may be administered with advantage.

## CAP. XIX.

## DE CARDIACIS.

HIS morbis præcipue contrarium est id genus, quod καρδιακὸν a Græcis nominatur; quamvis sæpe ad eum phrene-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIX.

## DE CARDIACIS.

Io genus quod nominatur a Græcis καρδιακὸν (cardiacus) est præcipue contrarium his mor-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIX.

## THE CARDIACUS AND ITS TREATMENT.

THAT disease called by the Greeks cardiacus, is very different to these latter diseases, although phrenetic cases very often degenerate to it: for the mind in *that* is

tici transeunt: siquidem mens in illis labat, in hoc constat. Id autem nihil aliud est, quam nimia imbecillitas corporis, quod, stomacho languente, immodico sudore digeritur. Licetque protinus scire id esse, ubi venarum exigui imbecillique pulsus sunt; sudor autem supra consuetudinem, et modo, et tempore, ex toto thorace, et cervicibus, atque etiam capite prorumpit, pedibus tantummodo, et cruribus siccioribus, atque frigentibus. Acutique morbi genus est.

Curatio prima est, supra præcordia imponere, quæ reprimant, cataplasmata: secunda, sudorem prohibere. Id præstat acerbum oleum, vel rosa, vel melinum, aut myrteum: quorum aliquo corpus leniter perungendum, ceratumque ex aliquo horum tum imponendum est.

Si sudor vincit, delinendus homo est vel gypso, vel argenti spuma, vel Cimolia creta, vel etiam subinde horum pulvere respergendus. Idem præstat pulvis ex contritis aridi myrti vel rubi foliis, aut ex austeri et boni vini arida fæce: pluraque similia sunt, quæ si desunt, satis utilis est quilibet ex via pulvis injectus. Super hæc vèro, quo minus corpus insudet, levi veste debet esse

## ORDO.

bis; quamvis phrenetici sæpe transeunt ad eum: siquidem mens labat in illis, in hoc constat. Autem id est nihil aliud quam nimia imbecillitas corporis, quod, stomacho languente, digeritur immodico sudore: que licet protinus scire id esse, ubi pulsus venarum sunt exigui que imbecilli; autem sudor prorumpit supra consuetudinem, et modo, et tempore, ex toto thorace, et cervicibus, atque etiam capite, tantummodo pedibus et cruribus siccioribus atque frigentibus: que est genus acuti morbi.

Prima curatio est, imponere cataplasmata, quæ reprimant supra præcordia: secunda, prohibere sudorem. Acerbum oleum, vel rosa, vel melinum, aut myrteum præstat id: aliquo quorum corpus perungendum leniter; que ceratum ex aliquo horum est tum imponendum.

Si sudor vincit, homo est delinendus vel gypso, vel spuma argenti, vel Cymolia creta; vel etiam respergendus subinde pulvere horum. Pulvis ex contritis foliis aridi myrti vel rubi præstat idem, aut ex arida fæce austeri et boni vini: que sunt plura similia quæ, si desunt, quilibet pulvis ex via injectus est satis utilis. Vero super hæc, quo corpus insudet minus, debet esse contextus levi

## TRANSLATION.

disordered, in *this* it is sound. But that is nothing else than excessive debility of body, which is exhausted by colliquative perspiration, the stomach being languid: and we may know that immediately to be the case, when the pulsation of the arteries are small and weak; when the sweat bursts forth excessively, both in quantity and duration, over the whole chest and neck, and even the head, the feet and legs only remain dry and cold:—this is the acute form of the disease.

The first treatment is to apply astringent cataplasms over the præcordia; the second is to moderate the perspiration. This is accomplished by bitter oil, either of the rose, the quince, or myrtle oil, with either of which the body must be anointed gently; and then a cerate composed of any of these is to be laid on.

If the perspiration still hold out, the patient must be smeared over with gypsum or with litharge, or Cimolian chalk; or even to be sprinkled occasionally with the powder of these. The dried powder of myrtle or bramble leaves have the same property, or the dried lees of good, rough wine: and there are many other similar things, if those be wanting, any powder from the road-way being thrown on the part will be found sufficiently useful. But in addition to these things, in order that the body may sweat less, the patient ought to be covered with light clothing, not

contectus, loco non calido, fenestris patentibus, sic, ut perflatus quoque aliquis accedat.

Tertium auxilium est, imbecillitati jacentis cibo vinoque succurrere. Cibus non multus quidem, sed sæpe tamen nocte ac die dandus est; ut nutriat, neque oneret. Is esse debet ex infirmissima materia, et stomacho aptus. Nisi si necesse est, ad vinum festinare non oportet: si verendum est, ne deficiat, tum et intrita ex hoc, et hoc ipsum austerum quidem, sed tamen tenue, meraculum, egelidum subinde et liberaliter dandum est; adjecta polenta, si modo is æger parum cibi assumit: idque vinum esse debet, neque nullarum virium, neque ingentium; recteque tota die ac nocte, vel tres heminas æger bibet; si vastius corpus est, plus etiam. Si cibum non accipit, perunctum ante perfundere aqua frigida convenit, et tum dare.

Quod si stomachus resolutus parum continet, et ante cibum, et post eum sponte vomere oportet; rursusque post vomitum cibum sumere. Si ne id quidem manserit, sorbere vini cyathum, interpositaque hora, sumere alterum. Si id quoque stomachus reddiderit, to-

## ORDO.

veste, non calido loco, patentibus fenestris, sic ut quoque aliquis perflatus accedat.

Tertium auxilium est succurrere imbecillitati jacentis ciboque vino. Non multus cibus quidem est dandus; sed tamen sæpe nocte ac die; ut nutriat, neque oneret. Is debet esse ex infirmissima materia, et aptus stomacho. Non oportet festinare ad vinum, nisi si est necesse. Si est verendum, ne deficiat, tum et intrita ex hoc, et hoc ipsum austerum quidem, sed tamen tenue, meraculum, egelidum, est dandum subinde et liberaliter; polenta adjecta, si modo is æger assumit parum cibi: que id vinum debet esse neque nullarum, neque ingentium virium; que æger bibet recte vel tres heminas tota die ac nocte; vel etiam plus, si corpus est vastius: si non accipit cibum, convenit perfundere perunctum frigida aqua ante, et tum dare.

Quod si stomachus resolutus continet parum, oportet vomere sponte et ante cibum et post eum; que rursus sumere cibum post vomitum. Siquidem id ne manserit, sorbere cyathum vini, que hora interposita, sumere alterum. Si stomachus reddiderit id quo-

## TRANSLATION.

in a warm place, but where he may have a gentle breeze blow over him with open windows.

The third remedy is to stimulate the patient with food and wine. Not much food must be given, but that should be frequent, both by day and night; so that it may nourish and not load. That ought to be of the weakest class, and adapted for the stomach. Wine must not be given too soon, unless there be necessity. If there be any fear of his fainting, then wine-panada, or even this itself, but austere, light, and a little diluted, may be given occasionally and freely, warmed a little, polenta (6) being added if the patient take but little food: and that wine ought neither to be very weak nor very strong; and the patient may very well drink three heminæ (7) during the twenty-four hours; or even more, if he be a very big personage; if he will not receive food, it is proper that he be first anointed, and then the cold effusion, by submitting him to a stream of cold water, and then to give food.

But if the stomach be so debilitated, that scarcely any thing is retained, it behoves him to induce spontaneous vomiting both before and after food; and take food again after the vomit. If even this shall not remain, let him sip a glass of wine, and an hour having elapsed, to take another. If the stomach have rejected



tum corpus bulbis contritis superillendum est; qui, ubi inaruerunt, efficiunt, ut vinum in stomacho contineatur, exque eo toti corpori calor, venisque vis redeat.

Ultimum auxilium est, in alvum ptisanæ vel alicæ cremorem ex inferioribus partibus indere: siquidem id quoque vires tuetur. Neque alienum est, naribus quoque æstuantis admove, quod reficiat; id est rosam et vinum: et si qua in extremis partibus frigent, unctis et calidis manibus fovere. Per quæ si consequi potuimus, ut et sudoris impetus minuatur, et vita prorogetur, incipit jam tempus ipsum esse præsidio. Ubi in tuto esse videtur, verendum tamen est, ne in eandem imbecillitatem cito recidat: itaque, vino tantum remoto, quotidie validiorem cibum debet assumere, donec satis virium corpori redeat.

## ORDO.

que, totum corpus est superillendum bulbis contritis; qui, ubi inaruerunt, efficiunt ut vinum contineatur in stomacho, que ex eo calor redeat toti corpori, que vis venis.

Ultimum auxilium est, indere in alvum ex inferioribus partibus cremorem ptisanæ vel alicæ, siquidem id quoque tuetur vires. Neque est alienum quoque admove naribus æstuantis quod reficiat, id est rosam et vinum: et, si qua in extremis partibus frigent, fovere unctis et calidis manibus: per quæ si potuerimus consequi, ut et impetus sudoris minuatur, et vita prorogetur, jam tempus ipsum incipit esse præsidio. Ubi videtur esse in tuto, tamen est verendum ne recidat cito in eandem imbecillitatem: itaque, vino tantum remoto, debet assumere quotidie validiorem cibum, donec satis virium redeat corpori.

## TRANSLATION.

that also, the whole body is to be smeared over with bruised bulbs; which, when they have become dry, enable the stomach to retain the wine, and by that, heat will be distributed to all parts of the body, and energy to the circulation.

The last remedy is, to introduce by the rectum the cream of ptisan or alica, for that also supports the strength. Neither is it improper also to apply something to the nostrils of a person oppressed with heat which may refresh him, that is the wine and rose: and, if the extremities be cold, let them be rubbed with warm anointed hands. By which means, if we have been able to obtain an ascendancy, both the violence of the perspiration may be diminished, and life prolonged, time itself and the efforts of nature at last effect a cure. Even when he seems to be out of danger, still there is ground for apprehension, lest he relapse into the same state of debility. Therefore with the exception of wine only, he ought to take stronger food daily, until the body acquire sufficient strength.

## CAP. XX.

## DE LETHARGICIS.

ALTER quoque morbus est, aliter phrenetico contrarius. In eo difficilior somnus, prompta ad omnem audaciam mens est: in hoc marcor, et inexpugnabilis pene dormiendi necessitas. *Λήθαργον* Græci nominant. Atque id quoque genus acutum est, et nisi succurritur, celeriter jugulat. Hos ægros quidam subinde excitare nituntur, admotis iis, per quæ sternutamenta evocantur, et iis, quæ odore fædo movent; qualis est pix cruda, lana succida, piper, veratrum, castoreum, acetum, allium, cepa. Juxta etiam galbanum incendunt, aut pilos, aut cornu cervinum; si id non est, quodlibet aliud. Hæc enim cum comburuntur, odorem fædum movent.

Tharrias vero quidam, accessionis id malum esse dixit, levarique, cum ea decessit: itaque eos, qui subinde excitant, sine usu male habere. Interest autem, in decessione expergiscatur æger, an, cum febris non levetur, aut levata quoque ea somnus urgeat. Nam si exper-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XX.

## DE LETHARGICIS.

EST quoque alter morbus aliter contrarius phrenetico. In eo somnus est difficilior, mens prompta ad omnem audaciam: in hoc marcor et pæne inexpugnabilis necessitas dormiendi; Græci nominant *λήθαργον* (lethargus). Atque id genus est quoque acutum, et, nisi succurritur, celeriter jugulat. Quidam nituntur excitare hos ægros subinde, admotis iis, per quæ sternutamenta evocantur, et iis quæ movent fædo odore, qualis est cruda pix, succida lana, piper, veratrum, castoreum, acetum, allium, cepa. Etiam incendunt juxta, galbanum, aut pilos, aut cornu cervinum; si id non est, quodlibet aliud: enim quum hæc comburuntur, movent fædum odorem.

Vero quidam Tharrias dixit id esse malum accessionis, quæ levari quum ea decessit: itaque eos qui excitantur subinde, habere male sine usu. Autem interest, an æger expergiscatur in decessione, an somnus urgeat quum febris non levatur, aut quoque ea levata. Nam si expergiscitur,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XX.

## ON LETHARGY AND ITS TREATMENT.

THERE is also another disease, different in other respects to the phrenetic. In phrenzy, sleep is obtained with difficulty, and the mind is ready for any act of violence; but in *this*, there is a drowsiness and almost an irresistible necessity to sleep. The Greeks term it lethargus. This is also an acute disease, and unless speedily relieved, destroys life. Some endeavour to rouse such patients occasionally with those things which excite sneezing, and stimulate by their pungent odour, such as crude pitch, sordid wool, pepper, hellebore, castor, vinegar, garlic, onion. They also burn galbanum near them, hair, or hartshorn: or if there be none of these, any other horn; for when these things are burnt they give out a fætid odour.

But Tharrias has said that lethargy is the effect of a paroxysm, and that it is relieved when it has gone off: therefore those who are roused frequently, are maltreated to no purpose. But it is very important, whether the patient awake in the departure of the paroxysm, or whether this lethargic sleep continue to oppress him, the fever not being alleviated, or otherwise. For if he awake, it is useless to

giscitur, adhibere ei, ut sopito, supervacuū est: neque enim vigilando melior fit; sed per se, si melior est, vigilat. Si vero continens ei somnus est, utique excitandus est; sed iis temporibus, quibus febris levissima est, ut et excernat aliquid, et sumat.

Excitat autem validissime repente aqua frigida infusa. Post remissionem itaque, perunctum oleo multo corpus, tribus aut quatuor amphoris totum per caput perfundendum est. Sed hoc utemur, si æqualis ægro spiritus erit, si mollia præcordia: sin aliter hæc erunt, ea potiora, quæ supra comprehensa sunt. Et, quod ad somnum quidem pertinet, commodissima hæc ratio est. Medendi autem causa, caput radendum; deinde posca fovendum est, in qua laurus, aut ruta decocta sit: altero die imponendum castoreum, aut ruta ex aceto contrita, aut lauri baccae, aut hederæ cum rosa et aceto. Præcipueque proficit, et ad excitandum hominem, naribus admotum, et ad morbum ipsum depellendum, capiti frontive impositum sinapi. Gestatio etiam in hoc morbo prodest; maximeque opportune cibus datus, id est in remissione, quanta maxima inveniri poterit. Aptissima autem sorbitio est, donec morbus decrescere incipiat: sic,

## ORDO.

est supervacuū adhibere ei ut sopito; enim neque fit melior vigilando; sed si est melior, vigilat per se. Vero si est continens somnus ei, utique est excitandus: sed iis temporibus quibus febris est levissima, ut et excernat et sumat aliquid.

Autem frigida aqua infusa repente excitat validissime. Itaque post remissionem, corpus perunctum multo oleo, est perfundendum per totum caput, tribus aut quatuor amphoris. Sed utemur hoc, si spiritus erit æqualis ægro, si præcordia mollia: sin hæc erunt aliter, ea potiora quæ sunt comprehensa supra. Et quod pertinet ad somnum quidem, hæc ratio est commodissima. Autem causa medendi, caput radendum, deinde est fovendum posca, in qua laurus aut ruta decocta sit: altero die castoreum imponendum, aut ruta contrita ex aceto, aut baccae lauri, aut hederæ cum rosa et aceto. Que sinapi præcipue proficit, et admotum naribus ad excitandum hominem, et impositum capiti ve fronti, ad depellendum morbum ipsum. Etiam gestatio prodest in hoc morbo; que maxime cibus datus opportune, id est in remissione quanta maxima poterit inveniri. Autem sorbitio est aptissima, donec morbus incipiat decrescere; sic, ut

## TRANSLATION.

administer to him as one asleep; for he gets no better by being awake; but if he be better, he will keep awake of his own accord. But if he remain in a continued sleep, then indeed he must be aroused, but at those times when the fever is lightest, so that he may excrete, and take some food.

Now cold water poured on suddenly, rouses most powerfully. Therefore after the remission, the body being anointed with much oil, three or four amphoræ of water should be poured over the whole head. But we can only use this when the respiration is equal, and the præcordia soft: but if these shall be otherwise, those things are preferable which are comprehended above. As to sleep, then, this is the most practicable mode of treatment. But for the cure of the disease, the head must be shaved; afterwards to be fomented with posca in which laurel or rue has been boiled: on the day following castor is to be laid on, or rue bruised up with vinegar. Mustard will be particularly beneficial, by being applied to the nostrils in rousing the man, and by being laid on the head or forehead to dispel the disease itself. Also gestation profits in this disease; and particularly food being given seasonably, that is, in the greatest remission that can be found. Now gruel is most proper until the disease begin to decline; so, that if there be a severe pa-

X or laurel berries, or rue with rose-oil and vinegar.<sup>P</sup>



ut si quotidie gravis accessio est, hæc quotidie detur; si alternis, post graviorem, sorbitio, post leviozem, mulsa aqua. Vinum quoque cum tempestivo cibo datum non mediocriter adjuvat. Quod si post longas febres ejusmodi torpor accessit, cetera eadem servanda sunt: ante accessionem autem, tribus quatuorve horis, castoreum, si venter adstrictus est, mistum cum scammonia; si non est, per se ipsum cum aqua dandum est. Si præcordia mollia sunt, cibis utendum est plenioribus; si dura, in iisdem sorbitionibus subsistendum; imponendumque præcordiis, quod simul et reprimat et emolliat.

## ORDO.

si est gravis accessio quotidie, hæc datur quotidie, si alternis, sorbitio, post graviorem, mulsa aqua post leviozem. Quoque vinum datum cum tempestivo cibo non adjuvat mediocriter. Quod si torpor ejusmodi accessit post longas febres, cætera eadem sunt servanda: autem tribus vel quatuor horis ante accessionem; castoreum est dandum mistum cum scammonia, si venter est adstrictus; si non est, cum aqua per se ipsum. Si præcordia sunt mollia, est utendum plenioribus cibis: si dura, subsistendum in iisdem sorbitionibus; que imponendum præcordiis, quod simul et reprimat et emolliat.

## TRANSLATION.

roxysm every day, this may be given daily; if on alternate days, gruel may be given after the more severe accession, honeyed water after the lighter. Also the proper administration of wine with seasonable food assists very much. But if a torpor of this kind have acceded after long fevers, the other remedies are to be preferred: but three or four hours before the accession, castor is to be given mixed with scammony, if the bowels be bound, if not, with water by itself. If the præcordia be soft, stronger food must be taken; if hard, then the patient must be limited to the above-named gruels; and there must be something laid on the præcordia, which may repress and soften at the same time.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE HYDROPICIS.

SED hic quidem acutus est morbus. Longus vero fieri potest eorum, quos aqua inter cutem male habet; nisi primis diebus discussus est: ὕδρωπα Græci vocant. Atque ejus tres species sunt. Nam modo, ventre vehementer intento,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE HYDROPICIS.

SED hic quidem est acutus morbus. Verò eorum quos aqua inter cutem habet male, potest fieri longus; nisi discussus est primis diebus: Græci vocant ὕδρωπα (hydropem). Atque sunt tres species ejus. Nam modo, ventre intento vehem-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXI.

## OF DROPSY.

Now the latter is an acute disease; but those who have water under the skin may possess a chronic disease, unless removed soon; the Greeks term it DROPSY. There are three species of it. For at times the abdomen is very tense, and there is a

creber intus ex motu spiritus sonus est: modo corpus inæquale est, tumoribus aliter aliterque per totum id orientibus: modo intus in uterum aqua contrahitur, et moto corpore ita movetur, ut impetus ejus conspici possit. Primum, *τυμπανίτην*; secundum, *λευκοφλεγματίαν*, vel *ὑπόσάρκα*; tertium, *ἀσκίτην* Græci nominarunt. Communis tamen omnium est humoris nimia abundantia; ob quam ne ulcera quidem in his ægris facile sanescunt.

Sæpe vero hoc malum per se incipit; sæpe alteri vetusto morbo, maximeque quartanæ, supervenit. Facilius in servis, quam in liberis tollitur: quia, cum desideret famem, sitim, mille alia tædia, longamque patientiam, promptius iis succurritur, qui facile coguntur, quam quibus inutilis libertas est. Sed ne ii quidem, qui sub alio sunt, si ex toto sibi temperare non possunt, ad salutem perducuntur. Ideoque non ignobilis medicus, Chrysippi discipulus, apud Antigonum regem, amicum quemdam ejus, notæ intemperantiæ, mediocriter eo morbo implicitum, negavit posse sanari. Cumque alter medicus Epirotes Philippus se sanaturum polliceretur; respondit, illum

## ORDO.

menter, est creber sonus intus ex motu spiritus: modo corpus est inæquale, tumoribus orientibus aliter atque aliter per totum id: modo aqua contrahitur intus in uterum, et corpore moto, movetur ita, ut impetus ejus possit conspici. Græci nominarunt primum *τυμπανίτην* (tympantes); secundum *λευκοφλεγματίαν* (leucophlegmatia), vel *ὑπόσάρκα* (hyposarca); tertium *ἀσκίτην* (ascites). Tamen nimia abundantia humoris est communis omnium, ob quam nequidem ulcera sanescunt facile in his ægris.

Vero sæpe hoc malum incipit per se: sæpe supervenit alteri vetusto morbo, que maxime quartanæ. Tollitur facilius in servis, quam in liberis: quia, cum desideret famem, sitim, mille alia tædia, que longam patientiam, succurritur promptius iis qui facile coguntur, quam quibus est inutilis libertas. Sed nequidem ii qui sunt sub alio, si non possunt temperare sibi ex toto, perducuntur ad sanitatem. Que ideo, non ignobilis medicus, discipulus Chrysippi, apud regem Antigonum, negavit quemdam amicum ejus, notæ intemperantiæ, mediocriter implicitum eo morbo, posse sanari. Que cum alter medicus, Philippus Epirotes, polliceretur se sanaturum; respondit, illum respicere ad morbum

## TRANSLATION.

frequent sound heard within, from the motion of air; sometimes the body is unequal, tumours arising variously over the whole: sometimes water is accumulated within the abdomen, and by percussion of the body, it is moved in such a manner, that its fluctuation may be detected. The Greeks have named the first Tympanites; the second, Leucophlegmatia, or Hyposarca; the third, Ascites. Now an excess of moisture is common to them all, and on this account ulcers do not heal easily on such persons.

This disease often begins spontaneously; very often succeeds to another chronic disease, and especially quartan fever. Slaves are more easily liberated from it than free men: because it requires abstinence, thirst, long patience, and a thousand other inconveniencies, consequently they are more readily relieved than those to whom liberty proves an impediment. But even those who are under the control of others, unless they can moderate their desires entirely, are not cured. For this very reason, a physician of some celebrity, a disciple of Chrysippus, residing with King Antigonus, maintained that a certain friend of that prince, noted for his intemperance, and but moderately affected with this disease, could not be cured. When another physician, Philip of Epirus, undertook to cure him, the other answered,

ad morbum ægri respicere ; se, ad animum. Neque eum res fefellit. Ille enim cum summa diligentia non medici tantummodo, sed etiam regis custodiretur, tamen malagmata sua devorando, bibendoque suam urinam, in exitium sese præcipitavit.

Inter initia tamen, non difficillima curatio est, si imperata sunt corpori quies, sitis, inedia : at si malum inveteravit, non nisi magna mole discutitur. Metrodorum tamen, Epicuri discipulum, ferunt, cum hoc morbo tentaretur, neque æquo animo necessariam sitim sustineret, ubi diu abstinuerat, bibere solitum, deinde evomere. Quod si redditur, quidquid receptum est, multum tædio demit ; si a stomacho retentum est, morbum auget : ideoque in quolibet tentandum non est.

Sed si febris quoque est, hæc in primis submovenda est per eas rationes, per quas huic succurri posse propositum est : si sine febre æger est, tum demum ad ea veniendum est, quæ ipsi morbo mederi solent. Atque hic quoque quæcumque species est, si nondum nimis occupavit, iisdem auxiliis opus est : multum ambulandum, currendum, aliquid est ; superiores maxime

## ORDO.

ægri ; se, ad animum. Neque res fefellit eum. Enim cum ille custodiretur summa diligentia non tantummodo medici, sed etiam regis, tamen devorando sua malagmata, que bibendo suam urinam, præcipitavit sese in exitium.

Tamen inter initia, curatio non est difficillima, si quies, sitis, inedia sunt imperata corpori : at si malum inveteravit, non nisi discutitur magna mole. Tamen ferunt Metrodorum, discipulum Epicuri, cum tentaretur hoc morbo, neque sustineret necessariam sitim æquo animo, ubi abstinnerat diu, (esse) solitum bibere, deinde evomere. Quod si quidquid est receptum, redditur, demit multum tædio ; si est retentum a stomacho, auget morbum : que ideo non est tentandum in quolibet.

Sed si est quoque febris, hæc est submovenda in primis per eas rationes, per quas est propositum posse succurri huic : si æger est sine febre, tum demum est veniendum ad ea, quæ solent mederi morbo ipsi. Atque hic quoque quæcumque species est, si nondum occupavit nimis, est opus iisdem auxiliis : est ambulandum multum, currendum aliquid ; superiores partes sic per-

## TRANSLATION.

*"You seem to regard his disease only ; I know his mind."* Nor was he deceived. For although he was guarded with the greatest diligence not only of the physician, but also by the king himself, yet by devouring his own poultices and drinking his urine, he precipitated his own destruction.

Yet in the beginning, the cure is not very difficult, if rest, thirst, and abstinence be strictly enjoined on the patient ; but when the disease becomes chronic, it is discussed with much difficulty. Yet they relate, that Metrodorus, a disciple of Epicurus, when he was afflicted with this disease, and could not sustain the necessary thirst with equanimity, when he had abstained a long time, used to drink, and afterwards reject it again. Now if whatever has been taken, be discharged again, it mitigates the malady much ; if retained by the stomach, it augments the disease : and on that account ought not to be tried in every case.

But if there be fever also, this must be removed first of all by those means previously prescribed for its relief ; if the patient have not fever, then we must appropriate those things that are calculated to cure the disease itself : and here too, whatever be the species, the same remedies will avail, if the disease have not made much progress in the system : he must walk much, run a little ; and the superior



partes sic perfricandæ, ut spiritum ipse contineat; evocandus est sudor, non per exercitationem tantum, sed etiam in arena calida, vel laconico, vel clibano, similibusque aliis; maximeque utiles naturales, et siccæ sudationes sunt, quales super Baias in myrtetis habemus. Balneum, atque omnis humor alienus est. Jejuno recte catapotia dantur, facto ex absinthii duabus, myrrhæ tertia parte.

Cibus esse debet ex media quidem materia, sed tamen generis durioris: potio non ultra danda est, quam ut vitam sustineat; optimaque est, quæ urinam movet. Sed id ipsum tamen moliri cibo, quam medicamento melius est. Si tamen res coget, ex iis aliquid, quæ id præstant, erit decoquendum, eaque aqua potui danda. Videntur autem hanc facultatem habere iris, nardum, crocum, cinnamum, amomum, casia, myrrha, balsamum, galbanum, ladanum, cœnanthe, panaces, cardamomum, hebenus, cupressi semen, uva taminia *σταφίδα ἀγρία* Græci nominant, abrotonum, rosæ folia, acorum, amaræ nuces, tragoriganum, styrax, costus, junci quadrati et rotundi semen; illum *κύπειρον*, hunc *σχόινον* Græci vocant:

## ORDO.

fricandæ, maxime ut ipse contineat spiritum; sudor est evocandus, non tantum per exercitationem, sed etiam in calida arena, vel laconico, vel clibano, que aliis similibus; que naturales et siccæ sudationes, quales habemus super Baias in myrtetis sunt maxime utiles. Balneum, atque omnis humor est alienus. Catapotia dantur recte jejuno, facta ex duabus (partibus) absinthii, tertia parte myrrhæ.

Cibus quidem debet esse ex media materia, sed tamen durioris generis: potio non est danda ultra, quam ut sustineat vitam; que (ea) est optima, quæ movet urinam. Sed tamen est melius moliri id ipsum cibo, quam medicamento. Si tamen res coget, aliquid ex iis, quæ præstant id, erit decoquendum, quæ ea danda potui aqua. Autem iris, nardum, crocum, cinnamum, amomum, casia, myrrha, balsamum, galbanum, ladanum, cœnanthe, panaces, cardamomum, hebenus, semen cupressi, taminia uva, Græci nominant *σταφίδα ἀγρία* (staphida agrian), abrotonum, folia rosæ, acorum, amaræ nuces, tragoriganum, styrax, costus, semen rotundi et quadrati junci, Græci vocant illum *σχόινον* (schoinon), hunc *κύπειρον* (kupeiron) videntur habere hanc facul-

## TRANSLATION.

parts particularly to be rubbed: that the patient himself in the mean time should retain his breath: perspiration is not only to be elicited by exercise, but in hot sand, or in the laconicum, or clibanum, and by other similar means; the natural and dry sweating places, such as we have in the myrtle groves above Baiæ, are particularly useful. The bath and all fluids are improper. Catapotia (8) composed of two parts of wormwood and one third of myrrh, may be given with propriety to the patient on an empty stomach.

Indeed the food ought to be of the middle class, but yet of the harder kind; no more drink should be given than what may support life; and that is the best which promotes urine. But yet it is better to effect that, by food rather than by medicine. However, if the case require it, some of those things which possess that property should be boiled, and given for drink. This diuretic principle seems to exist in iris, spikenard, saffron, cinnamon, amomum, casia, myrrh, balsam, galbanum, ladanum, wild grape, panaces, cardamum, ebony, cypress seed, Taminian grape, which the Greeks term staphis agria, southernwood, rose leaves, acorum, bitter almonds, wild marjoram, styrax, costum, the seed of the square and round rush, the Greeks call that cupeiron (*cyperus*), this schœnus (9); which as often as I have

quæ quoties posuero, non quæ hic nascuntur, sed, quæ inter aromata afferuntur, significabo. Primo tamen, quæ levissima ex his sunt, id est rosæ folia, vel nardi spica, tentanda sunt. Vinum quoque utile est austerum, sed quam tenuissimum. Commodum est etiam, lino quotidie ventrem metiri, et, qua comprehendit alvum, notam imponere; posteroque die videre, plenius corpus sit, an extenuetur: id enim, quod extenuatur, medicinam sentit. Neque alienum est, metiri et potionem ejus, et urinam: nam si plus humoris excernitur, quam assumitur, ita demum secundæ valetudinis spes est. Asclepiades in eo, qui ex quartana in hydropa deciderat, se abstinencia bidui, et frictione usum; tertio die, jam et febre et aqua liberato, cibum et vinum dedisse, memoriæ prodidit.

Hactenus communiter de omni specie præcipi potest: si vehementius malum est, diducenda ratio curandi est. Ergo si inflatio, et ex ea dolor creber est, utilis quotidianus, aut altero quoque die post cibum, vomitus est: fomentis siccis calidisque utendum est. Si per hæc dolor non finitur, necessariæ sunt sine ferro cucurbitulæ: si ne per has

## ORDO.

tatem: quæ quoties posuero, non significabo hic quæ nascuntur, sed quæ afferuntur inter aromata. Tamen primo, quæ sunt levissima ex his, id est folia rosæ, vel spica nardi, sunt tentanda. Quoque austerum vinum est utile, sed quam tenuissimum. Quoque est commodum, metiri ventrem lino quotidie, et imponere notam, qua comprehendit alvum; que postero die videre, an corpus sit plenius, (an) extenuetur: enim id, quod extenuatur, sentit medicinam. Neque est alienum, metiri et potionem, et urinam ejus; nam si plus humoris excernitur, quam assumitur, ita demum est spes secundæ valetudinis. Asclepiades prodidit memoriæ se usum esse abstinencia bidui, et frictione in eo qui deciderat ex quartana in hydropa; tertio die, et febre et aqua jam liberato, dedisse cibum et vinum.

Hactenus potest præcipi communiter de omni specie: si malum est vehementius, ratio curandi est diducenda. Ergo si est inflatio, et creber dolor ex ea, quotidianus vomitus est utilis, aut quoque altero die, post cibum: est utendum siccis que calidis fomentis. Si dolor non finitur per hæc, cucurbitulæ sine ferro sunt necessariæ: si nequi-

## TRANSLATION.

mentioned, I do not designate such as grow here, but those which are imported among the aromatics. But the mildest of these must be tried first, that is, the rose leaves or spikenard. Also austere wine is useful; but much diluted. It is also interesting to measure the abdomen daily with a thread, and to mark the extent of its circumference; and on the following day to observe whether the body be fuller, or extenuated: for that which is diminished yields to the treatment. Neither is it a bad practice to measure both his drink and urine: for if more fluid be excreted than is taken, then there is a favourable prospect of his recovery. Asclepiades himself has recorded that he prescribed abstinence for two days, and friction, to a patient who had become dropsical subsequent to a quartan ague: on the third day finding him liberated from both the fever and the water, he allowed him food and wine.

Thus far it may be applicable generally to every species of the disease: but if it be far advanced, thence we must deduce our mode of treatment. Therefore if there be inflation accompanied with frequent pain, a vomit daily, or at least every alternate day after food, will be found useful: dry, and hot fomentations must be applied at the same time. If the pain be not removed by these means, the cupping-

quidem tormentum tollitur, incidenda cutis est, et tum his utendum. Ultimum auxilium est, si cucurbitulæ nihil profuerunt, per alvum infundere copiosam aquam calidam, eamque recipere. Quin etiam quotidie ter quaterve opus est uti frictione vehementi, cum oleo et quibusdam calefacientibus: sed in hac frictione a ventre abstinendum est. Imponendum vero in eum crebrius sinapi, donec cutem erodat: ferramentisque candentibus pluribus locis venter exulcerandus est, et servanda ulcera diutius. Utiliter etiam scilla cocta delingitur. Sed diu post has inflationes abstinendum est ab omnibus inflantibus.

At si id vitium est, cui λευκοφλεγματία nomen est, eas partes, quæ tument, subicere soli oportet; sed non nimium, ne febriculam incendat: si is vehementior est, caput velandum est: utendumque frictione, madefactis tantum manibus aqua, cui sal et nitrum et olei paulum sit adjectum; sic, ut aut pueriles aut muliebres manus adhibeantur, quo mollior earum tactus sit: idque si vires patiuntur, ante meridiem, tota hora, post meridiem, semihora fieri oportet.

## ORDO.

dem tormentum tollitur per has, cutis est incidenda, et tum utendum his. Ultimum auxilium est, si cucurbitulæ profuerunt nihil, infundere copiosam calidam aquam per alvum, que recipere eam. Quin etiam est opus uti vehementi frictione ter ve quater quotidie, cum oleo et quibusdam calefacientibus: sed in hac frictione est abstinendum a ventre. Vero sinapi (est) imponendum in eum crebrius, donec erodat cutem: que venter est exulcerandus pluribus locis candentibus ferramentis, et ulcera servanda diutius. Etiam cocta scilla delingitur utiliter. Sed diu post has inflationes, est abstinendum ab omnibus inflantibus.

At si est id vitium, cui est nomen λευκοφλεγματία (leucophlegmatia) oportet subicere eas partes, quæ tument, soli; sed non nimium, ne incendat febriculam: si is est vehementior, caput est velandum: que utendum frictione, manibus madefactis tantum aqua, cui sal et nitrum, et paulum olei sit adjectum; sic ut aut pueriles aut muliebres manus adhibeantur, quo tactus earum sit mollior: que oportet fieri id, si vires patiuntur, tota hora ante meridiem, semihora

## TRANSLATION.

glasses, without the scarificator are necessary: if the torment cease not even then by these means, the cutis must be incised, and then the cups applied again. If the cupping instruments have availed nothing, our ultimate remedy is to inject plenty of warm water into the bowels, and to permit it to pass off again. But it is also necessary to apply forcible friction three or four times a day with oil and some of the calefacients: but in this disease, friction must not be applied over the abdomen. Mustard must be laid on it frequently until it corrode the skin; and the abdomen is to be ulcerated in several places with hot irons, and these to be kept open for some time. Also boiled squills may be advantageously taken in the form of an electuary. It will be requisite to abstain from all flatulent food for some time after the disease has subsided.

But if the disease be what is called leucophlegmatia, we should submit those parts which are tumefied to the sun, but not too much, lest that may excite a slight fever: if the sun be very violent, the head must be covered, and friction applied, the hands being only moistened with water, to which salt, nitre, and a little oil have been added; and for that purpose the hands of children or females may be applied, inasmuch as theirs is the softer touch: and if the strength permit that, it may be continued for a whole hour, before mid-day; and half an hour in the after-



tet. Utilia etiam sunt cataplasmata, quæ reprimunt; maximeque si corpora teneriora sunt. Incidendum quoque est super talum, quatuor fere digitis, ex parte interiore, qua per aliquot dies frequens humor feratur; atque ipsos tumores incidere altis plagis oportet: concutiendumque multa gestatione corpus est: atque, ubi inductæ vulneribus cicatrices sunt, addiciendum et exercitationibus est et cibus, donec corpus ad pristinum habitum revertatur. Cibus valens esse debet, et glutinosus, maximeque caro: vinum, si propter stomachum licet, dulcius; sed ita, ut invicem biduo triduoque, modo aqua, modo id bibatur. Prodest etiam lactucæ marinæ, quæ grandis juxta mare nascitur, semen, cum aqua potui datum. Si valens est, qui id accipit, et scilla cocta, sicut supra dixi, delingitur. Auctoresque multi sunt, inflatis vesicis pulsandos tumores esse.

Si vero id morbi genus est, quo in uterum multa aqua contrahitur, ambulare, sed magis modice oportet; malagma, quod digerat, impositum habere; idque ipsum superimposito triplici panno, fascia, non nimium tamen vehe-

## ORDO.

post meridiem. Etiam cataplasmata quæ reprimunt sunt, utilia; quæ maxime si corpora sunt teneriora. Quoque est incidendum super talum, fere quatuor digitis ex interiore parte, qua frequens humor feratur per aliquot dies; atque oportet incidere tumores ipsos altis plagis: quæ corpus est concutiendum multa gestatione: atque, ubi cicatrices sunt inductæ vulneribus, (est) addiciendum et exercitationibus et cibus, donec corpus revertatur ad pristinum habitum. Cibus debet esse valens, et glutinosus, quæ maxime caro: vinum (esse) dulcius, si licet per stomachum; sed ita, ut invicem modo aqua, modo id bibatur biduo ve triduo. Etiam semen marinæ lactucæ, quæ nascitur grandis juxta mare, prodest datum cum aqua potui. Si est valens qui accipit id, et delingitur cocta scilla, ut dixi supra. Quæ sunt multi auctores, tumores esse pulsandos inflatis vesicis.

Vero si est id genus morbi, quo aqua contrahitur in uterum, oportet ambulare, sed magis modice; habere malagma, quod impositum, digerat; quæ triplici panno superimposito, fascia, tamen non nimium vehementer; adstringere id ipsum; quod pro-

## TRANSLATION.

noon. Restraining cataplasms also are useful, and especially in delicate constitutions. An incision must be made on the inside of the leg, about four fingers breadth above the ankle, from which abundant moisture may be discharged for some days: it is also proper to make deep incisions in the tumours themselves: and the body must be shaken by much gestation: and when the wounds have acquired cicatrices, the food and exercises must be augmented, until the body return to its former habit. The food ought to be strong and glutinous, and chiefly flesh: his wine should be rather sweet, if tolerated by the stomach: but in this manner, that alternately for two or three days he may drink water, and then wine. The seed of the marine lettuce (spurge) which grows large near the sea, may be advantageously given with water for drink. If the patient be vigorous who receives it, also boiled squills may be administered as an electuary, as I have said above. There are many authors, who direct the tumours to be beaten with inflated bladders.

But if the disease be of that kind in which water is collected in the abdomen, (ascites,) it behoves the patient to walk, but more moderately; to have a discutient poultice laid on; and to bind a triple cloth over it with a roller, but not too tight;

menter, adstringere: quod a Tharria profectum, servatum esse a pluribus video. Si jecur, aut splenem affectum esse, manifestum est, ficum pinguem contusam, adjecto melle, superponere. Se per talia auxilia venter non siccatur, sed humor nihilominus abundat, celeriori via succurrere, ut is per ventrem ipsum emittatur. Neque ignoro, Erasistrato displicuisse hanc curandi viam: morbum enim hunc jocinoris putavit: ita illud esse sanandum; frustra que aquam emitti, quæ, vitiatum illo, subinde nascatur. Sed primum, non hujus visceris unius hoc vitium est: nam et liene affecto, et in totius corporis malo habitu fit. Deinde, ut inde cœperit, tamen aqua nisi emittitur, quæ contra naturam ibi substitit, et jocinori, et ceteris interioribus partibus nocet. Convenitque, corpus nihilo minus esse curandum. Neque enim sanat emissus humor, sed medicinæ locum facit, quam intus inclusus impedit. Ac ne illud quidem in controversiam venit, quin non omnes in hoc morbo sic curari possint; sed juvenes robusti, qui vel ex toto carent febre, vel certe satis liberales intermissiones habent. Nam quorum sto-

## ORDO.

fectum a Tharria, video esse servatum a pluribus. Si est manifestum jecur aut splenem esse affectum, superponere contusam pinguem ficum, melle adjecto. Si venter non siccatur per talia auxilia, sed nihilominus humor abundat, succurrere celeriori via, ut is emittatur per ventrem ipsum. Neque ignoro, hanc viam curandi displicuisse Erasistrato: enim putavit hunc (esse) morbum jocinoris: ita illud esse sanandum; que aquam emitti frustra, quæ, illo vitiatum, nascatur subinde. Sed primum, hoc vitium non est hujus unius visceris: nam fit in malo habitu et affecto liene, et totius corporis. Deinde, ut cœperit inde, tamen nisi aqua quæ subsistit ibi contra naturam, emittitur, nocet et jocinoro, et ceteris interioribus partibus. Que nihilominus convenit, corpus esse curandum. Enim neque humor emissus, sanat, sed facit locum medicinæ, quam impedit, inclusus intus. Ac ne quidem illud venit in controversiam, quin omnes non possint sic in hoc morbo; sed robusti juvenes, qui vel carent febre ex toto, vel certe habent satis liberales intermissiones. Nam stomachus quorum est cor-

## TRANSLATION.

which having been introduced by Tharrias, I see is still observed by many. If there be any evident affection of the liver or spleen, a mellow fig bruised with honey to be laid over it. If the abdomen be not emptied by these means, and the fluid still abound, we must employ a more summary process, that it may be discharged by the abdomen itself. I am aware that this mode of treatment did not receive the approbation of Erasistratus; for he considered this to be a disease of the liver: therefore this viscus being cured, the water will be discharged to no purpose, the same organ being diseased, the water will be reproduced from time to time. But, in the first place, this is not a disease of the liver alone; for it arises both in affections of the spleen, and in a cachectic habit of the whole body. In the next place, although it might have begun thence, yet unless the water be discharged which exists there contrary to nature, it injures both the liver and the other interior parts: and it is admitted even in that case, that the body should be treated generally. For the discharge of the fluid does not cure the disease, but it affords an opportunity for medical treatment, which that impedes while inclosed within. Neither does this admit of contradiction, that all persons in this disease cannot be treated in this way; but robust youth who are entirely free from fever, or at least have ample intermissions. For those whose stomachs are vitiated, or

machus corruptus est, quive ex atra bile huc deciderunt, quive malum corporis habitum habent, idonei huic curationi non sunt.

Cibus autem, quo die primum humor emissus est, supervacuum est, nisi si vires desunt: insequentibus diebus, et is, et vinum meracius quidem, sed non ita multum dari debet, paulatimque evocandus æger est ad exercitationes, frictions, solem, sudationes, fatigationes, et idoneos cibos, donec ex toto convalescat. Balneum rarum res amat; frequentiore in jejuno vomitum. Si æstas est, in mari natere commodum est. Ubi convaleuit aliquis, diu tamen alienus ei veneris usus est.

## ORDO.

ruptus, ve qui deciderunt huc ex atra bile, ve qui habent malum habitum corporis, non sunt idonei huic curationi.

Autem cibus, primum die quo humor est emissus, est supervacuum nisi si vires desunt: insequentibus diebus, et is, et quidem meracius vinum, sed non ita multum debet dari, quæ æger est evocandus paulatim ad exercitationes, frictions, solem, sudationes, fatigationes, et idoneos cibos, donec convalescat ex toto. Res amat rarum balneum; frequentiore vomitum in jejuno. Si est æstas, est commodum natere in mari. Ubi aliquis convaleuit, tamen usus veneris diu est alienus ei.

## TRANSLATION.

who have fallen into dropsy from atrabilis, or a cachectic habit of body, are not proper subjects for this mode of treatment.

Now food is improper on the first day that the fluid is discharged, unless the strength be deficient: on the following days, both food and indeed very pure wine ought to be given, but in moderation, and the patient must be gradually accustomed to exercises, frictions, the solar heat, perspiration, fatigue, and appropriate food, until he become entirely well. This disease seldom requires a bath, but more frequently vomiting on an empty stomach. Sea-bathing is advantageous in summer. But even after a person has become convalescent, the pleasure of venery is improper for him.

## CAP. XXII.

## DE TABE, ET EJUS SPECIEBUS.

DIUTIUS sæpe et periculosius tabes eos male habet, quos invasit. Atque hujus quoque plures species sunt. Una

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXII.

## DE TABE, ET SPECIEBUS EJUS.

TABES sæpe habet eos quos invasit, diutius et periculosius male. Atque quoque sunt plures species hujus. Una est, qua cor-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXII.

## OF CONSUMPTION AND ITS SPECIES.

CONSUMPTION is often a lingering and a dangerous disease to those whom it attacks: and there are several species of this also. One is, in which the body is un-



est, qua corpus non alitur, et naturaliter semper aliquibus decedentibus, nullis vero in eorum locum subeuntibus, summa macies oritur; et, nisi occurratur, tollit. Ἀτροφίαν hanc Græci vocant. Ea duabus fere de causis incidere consuevit. Aut enim nimio timore aliquis minus, aut aviditate nimia plus, quam debet, assumit: ita vel, quod deest, infirmat, vel, quod superat, corrumpitur.

Altera species est, quam Græci καχεξίαν appellant: ubi malus corporis habitus est; ideoque omnia alimenta corrumpuntur. Quod fere fit, cum longo morbo vitata corpora, etiamsi illo vacant, refectioem tamen non accipiunt; aut cum malis medicamentis corpus affectum est; aut cum diu necessaria defuerunt; aut cum inusitados et inutiles cibos aliquis assumpsit, aliquidve simile incidit. Huic, præter tabem, illud quoque nonnumquam accidere solet, ut per assiduas pustulas, aut ulcera, summa cutis exasperetur, vel aliquæ corporis partes intumescant.

Tertia est, longeque periculosissima species, quam Græci φθίσιν nominant. Oritur fere a capite; inde in

## ORDO.

pus non alitur, et aliquibus semper decedentibus naturaliter, vero nullis subeuntibus in locum eorum, summa macies oritur, et, nisi occurratur, tollit. Græci vocant hanc Ἀτροφίαν, (atrophia). Ea consuevit incidere fere de duabus causis. Enim aliquis aut assumit minus quam debet, nimio timore, aut plus nimia aviditate: ita, vel, quod deest, infirmat; vel quod superat, corrumpitur.

Est altera species, quam Græci appellant καχεξίαν (cachexia); ubi est malus habitus corporis; que ideo omnia alimenta corrumpuntur. Quod fit fere, cum corpora vitata longo morbo, etiamsi vacante illo, tamen non accipiunt refectioem; aut cum corpus est affectum malis medicamentis; aut cum necessaria defuerunt diu; aut cum aliquis assumpsit inusitados et inutiles cibos, vel aliquid simile incidit. Præter tabem, illud solet accidere nonnumquam huic, ut summa cutis exasperetur per assiduas pustulas, aut ulcera, vel aliquæ partes corporis intumescant.

Tertia, que longe periculosissima species est, quam Græci nominant φθίσιν (phthisis). Oritur fere a capite; inde destillat

## TRANSLATION.

nourished, and as some portions are constantly departing naturally, and nothing being supplied in their place to support the constitutional decay, extreme emaciation takes place; and unless opposed, speedily carries off its victim. The Greeks call this atrophía. It generally results from one or other of two causes. For a person through excessive fear takes less, another from too great avidity takes more than he ought to do; therefore, either the deficiency debilitates; or the superfluity is corrupted.

There is another kind which the Greeks call cachexia, where there is a depraved habit of body; and on that account all the aliments are corrupted. This generally happens, when the body becomes vitiated by a protracted disease, even if liberated from it, yet receives no nutrition; or when the body has been affected by maltreatment; or when the necessities of life have been deficient a long time; or when unusual or pernicious food has been taken, or from some similar cause. In this last case, besides consumption, it is not unusual for the surface of the skin to be exasperated by continual pustules, or ulcers, or some parts of the body become tumefied.

The third, and by far the most dangerous species of it is, that which the Greeks have named phthisis. It arises for the most part from the head; thence it drops

pulmonem destillat; huic exulceratio accedit; ex hac febricula levis fit, quæ etiam, cum quievit, tamen repetit; frequens tussis est; pus exscreatur; interdum cruentum aliquid. Quidquid exscreatum est, si in ignem impositum est, mali odoris est: itaque, qui de morbo dubitant, hac nota utuntur.

Cum hæc genera tabis sint, animadvertere primum oportet, quid sit, quo laboretur. Deinde, si tantummodo non ali corpus apparet, causam ejus attendere; et si cibi minus aliquis, quam debet, assumpsit, adjicere, sed paulatim; ne si corpus insuetum subita multitudine oneraverit, concoctionem impediatur. Si vero plus justo quis assumere solitus est, abstinere uno die; deinde ab exiguo cibo incipere; quotidie adjicere, donec ad justum modum perveniat. Præter hæc convenit ambulare locis quam minime frigidis, sole vitato; per manus quoque exerceri: si infirmior est, gestari, ungi, perfricari, si potest, maxime per seipsum, sæpius eodem die, et ante cibum, et post eum, sic, ut interdum oleo quædam adjiciantur calefacientia, donec insudet.

## ORDO.

in pulmonem; ulceratio accedit huic; ex hac levis febricula fit, quæ etiam, cum quievit, repetit; tussis est frequens; pus exscreatur; aliquid cruentum interdum. Quidquid est exscreatum, si est impositum in ignem, est mali odoris: itaque, qui dubitant de morbo, utuntur hac nota.

Cum hæc sint genera tabis, oportet animadvertere primum, quid sit, in quo laboretur. Deinde, si corpus tantummodo apparet non ali, attendere causam ejus; et si aliquis assumpsit minus cibi, quam debet, adjicere, sed paulatim; ne si oneravit insuetum corpus subita multitudine, impediatur concoctionem. Si vero quis est solitus assumere plus justo, (debet) abstinere uno die; deinde incipere ab exiguo cibo; adjicere quotidie, donec perveniat ad justum modum. Præter hæc, convenit ambulare quam minime (in) frigidis locis, sole vitato; quoque exerceri per manus: si est infirmior (debet) gestari, ungi, perfricari, si potest, maxime per seipsum, sæpius eodem die, et ante cibum, et post eum, sic ut interdum quædam calefacientia adjiciantur oleo, donec insudet.

## TRANSLATION.

down into the lungs; ulceration accedes to this; from this a slight fever supervenes, which although it subsides, yet returns again; there is frequent cough; pus is expectorated, sometimes mixed with blood. The matter expectorated, if thrown on the fire emits a disagreeable odour. Therefore those who have any doubt concerning the disease, employ this experiment.

As these are the several species of consumption, it will be necessary to discriminate first, under what species the patient is suffering. Then if it appear that the body receives no nourishment from food, the cause must be attended to; and if the patient have taken less food than he ought, he should augment it gradually; lest he suddenly over charge the unaccustomed stomach, and impede digestion. But if any person be in the habit of taking more food than what was sufficient, he should fast for one day; afterwards, to begin with a little food, and that to be augmented every day until he arrive at the full quantity. Besides these means, he ought to walk in such places as are least exposed to cold, avoiding the solar heat; also to be exercised by manual labour; if he be very infirm, to be carried, anointed, and rubbed if possible with his own hands frequently, during the same day, both before and after food, occasionally adding some of the calefacients to the oil until he perspire.

Prodestque jejuno prehendere per multas partes cutem, et attrahere, ut relaxetur; aut, imposita resina et abducta, subinde idem facere. Utile est etiam interdum balneum, sed post cibum exiguum. Atque in ipso solio recte cibi aliquid assumitur; aut, si sine hoc frictio fuit, post eam protinus. Cibi vero esse debent ex iis, qui facile concoquuntur, qui maxime alunt. Ergo vini quoque, sed austeri, necessarius usus est. Movenda urina.

At si malus corporis habitus est, primum abstinendum est; deinde alvus ducenda; tum paulatim cibi dandi, adjectis exercitationibus, unctionibus, frictionibus. Utilius his frequens balneum est, sed jejunis; etiam usque sudorem. Cibus vero opus est copiosis, variis, boni succi, quique etiam minus facile corrumpantur, vino austero. Si nihil reliqua proficiunt, sanguis mittendus est; sed paulatim, quotidieque pluribus diebus, cum eo, ut cetera quoque eodem modo servantur.

Quod si mali plus est, et vera phthisis est, inter initia protinus occurrere necessarium est: neque enim facile is morbus, cum inveteraverit, evincitur. Opus est, si vires patiuntur, longa na-

## ORDO.

Que prodest prehendere cutem per multas partes jejuno, et attrahere, ut relaxetur; aut, resina imposita et abducta, facere idem subinde. Balneum interdum etiam est utile, sed post exiguum cibum. Atque aliquid cibi assumitur recte in solio ipso; aut, si fuit frictio sine hoc, protinus post eam. Vero cibi debent esse ex iis, qui concoquuntur facile, (et) qui alunt maxime. Ergo usus vini est quoque necessarius, sed austeri. Urina movenda.

At si est malus habitus corporis, est primum abstinendum; deinde alvus ducenda; tum cibi dandi paulatim, exercitationibus, unctionibus, frictionibus adjectis. Sed, frequens balneum est utilius his jejunis; etiam usque sudorem. Vero est opus copiosis, variis cibis, boni succi, que qui etiam corrumpantur minus facile, austero vino. Si reliqua proficiunt nihil, sanguis est mittendus; sed paulatim, que plurimis diebus, quotidie cum eo, ut cetera quoque servantur eodem modo.

Quod si est plus mali, et est vera phthisis, est necessarium occurrere (ea) protinus inter initia: enim neque is morbus evincitur facile, cum inveteraverit. Est opus, si vires patiuntur,

## TRANSLATION.

It is advantageous also to seize the skin in various places, and to extend it, that it may be relaxed; or to effect the same by frequently affixing a piece of resin on the skin and withdrawing it. Sometimes the bath is useful after a spare meal: and sometimes food may be taken with propriety even in the solium itself, or immediately after friction, if the bath have not been used. Now the food ought to be that which is easily digested, and most nutritive. Therefore the use of austere wine is also necessary: the urine must be promoted.

But if there be a depraved habit of body, abstinence must be observed: then an enema exhibited; afterwards food should be given gradually, adding exercise, unction, and friction. Frequent bathing is very useful to those patients, when fasting, even until they perspire. The food must be abundant, varied, and of a good juice, such as may not easily become putrid, and austere wine. If other remedies avail nothing, blood must be let; but gradually, and daily for some time, with this proviso, that the other means be also observed in the same manner.

But if the disease be more severe, and a true phthisis established, it is necessary to oppose it from the very commencement: for that disease is not easily overcome, when it becomes inveterate. If the strength permit, there is a necessity of long



vigatione, cœli mutatione, sic ut densius quam id est, ex quo discedit æger, petatur: ideoque aptissime Alexandriam ex Italia itur. Fereque id posse inter principia corpus pati debet, cum hic morbus ætate firmissima maxime oriatur, id est ab anno duodevicesimo ad annum quintum et tricesimum. Si id imbecillitas non sinit, nave tamen non longe gestari commodissimum est: si navigationem aliqua res prohibet, lectica, vel alio modo corpus movendum est.

Tum a negotiis abstinendum est, omnibusque rebus, quæ sollicitare animum possunt; somno indulgendum; cavendæ destillationes, ne, si quid cura levarit, exasperent; et ob id vitanda cruditas, simulque et sol, et frigus; os obtegendum, fauces velandæ, tussicula suis remediis finienda: et, quamdiu quidem febricula incursat, huic interdum abstinencia, interdum etiam tempestivis cibis medendum; eoque tempore bibenda aqua. Lac quoque, quod in capitis doloribus, et in acutis febribus, et per eas facta nimia siti, ac, sive præcordia tument, sive biliosa urina est, sive sanguis fluxit, pro veneno est; in

## ORDO.

longa navigatione, mutatione cœli, sic ut æger petatur densius (cœlum) quam id est, ex quo discedit: quæ ideo itur ex Italia Alexandriam (est) aptissime. Quæ corpus debet posse pati id fere inter principia; cum hic morbus oriatur maxime (in) firmissima ætate, id est ab duodevicesimo anno, ad quintum et tricesimum annum. Si imbecillitas non sinit id, est commodissimum gestari nave, tamen non longe: si aliqua res prohibet navigationem, corpus est movendum lectica, vel alio modo.

Tum est abstinendum a negotiis, quæ omnibus rebus quæ possunt sollicitare animum; indulgendum somno; cavendæ destillationes, ne, si cura levarit quid, exasperent; et ob id cruditas (est) vitanda, quæ simul et sol, et frigus; os (est) obtegendum, fauces velandæ, tussicula finienda suis remediis: et, quidem quamdiu febricula incursat, (est) medendum huic interdum abstinencia, interdum etiam tempestivis cibis; quæ aqua (est) bibenda eo tempore. Lac quoque est pro veneno, quod in doloribus capitis, et in acutis febribus, et per eas facta nimia siti, ac, sive præcordia tument, sive urina est biliosa, sive sanguis fluxit; tamen potest dari

## TRANSLATION.

voyages, with change of climate, so that he may search for a more dense atmosphere, than the one he departs from; and for this reason invalids migrate from Italy to Alexandria advantageously. The body ought to be able to support this in the commencement of the disease, as it generally arises at the most vigorous period of life, that is, from the eighteenth to the thirty-fifth year. If the constitutional debility cannot support that, short trips on board of a ship will be most advantageous: if there be any objection to sailing, the body must be moved from place to place in a palanquin, or in some other manner.

At that time all business and mental solicitude must give place to tranquillity of mind; he must indulge in sleep; catarrhs must be guarded against, lest they exasperate that, which care and treatment may have mitigated; and for that reason indigestion must be avoided, and at the same time both the heat of the sun and cold; the face is to be covered, the throat wrapped up, and the tickling cough to be removed by appropriate remedies: and indeed as long as the fever continues to attack, it must be treated sometimes by abstinence, sometimes by seasonable food; and at that time water is to be drunk. Milk also, which is as bad as poison in pains of the head, and in acute fevers, and in excessive thirst occasioned by these, if the præcordia be swollen, or the urine bilious, or hæmorrhage; yet it

phthisi tamen, sicut in omnibus longis difficilibusque febriculis, recte dari potest.

Quod si febris aut nondum incursat, aut jam remisit, decurrendum est ad modicas exercitationes, maximeque ambulationes; item lenes frictiones. Balneum alienum est. Cibus esse debet primo acer, ut allium, porrum, idque ipsum ex aceto, vel ex eodem intubus, ocimum, lactuca: deinde lenis, ut sorbitio ex ptisana, vel ex alica, vel ex amylo, lacte adjecto. Idem oryza quoque, et, si nihil aliud est, far præstat. Tum invicem modo his cibus, modo illis utendum est; adjiciendaque quædam ex media materia, præcipueque vel ex prima cerebellum, vel pisciculus, et his similia. Farina etiam cum sevo ovillo caprinove mista, deinda incocta, pro medicamento est. Vinum assumi debet leve, austerum.

Hactenus non magna mole pugnatur: si vehementior noxa est, ac neque febricula, neque tussis quiescit, tenuarique corpus apparet, validioribus auxiliis opus est. Exulcerandum est ferro candenti, uno loco sub mento, altero in gutture, duobus ad mammam utramque; item sub imis ossibus scapularum, quas

## ORDO.

recte, in phthisi, sicut in omnibus longis que difficilibus febriculis.

Quod si febris aut nondum incursat, aut jam remisit, est decurrendum ad modicas exercitationes, que maxime ambulationes; item lenes frictiones. Balneum est alienum. Cibus debet esse primo acer, ut allium, porrum, ocimum, lactuca, que id ipsum ex aceto, vel intubus ex eodem: deinde (esse) lenis, ut sorbitio ex ptisana, vel ex alica, vel ex amylo, lacte adjecto. Quoque oryza, et si est nihil aliud, far præstat idem. Tum est utendum modo his cibus, modo illis, invicem; que adjiciendum quædam ex media materia, que præcipue vel cerebellum ex prima, vel pisciculus, et similia his. Etiam farina mista cum ovillo ve caprino sevo, deinde incocta, est pro medicamento. Leve austerum vinum debet assumi.

Hactenus (morbis) pugnatur non magna mole: si noxa est vehementior, ac neque febricula quiescit, neque tussis, que corpus apparet tenuari, est opus validioribus auxiliis. Est exulcerandum candenti ferro, uno loco sub mento, altero in gutture, duobus ad utramque mammam; item sub imis ossibus scapularum,

## TRANSLATION.

may be given beneficially in phthisis, as well as in all chronic and obstinate fevers.

But if the fever have not commenced, or have already remitted, we must have recourse to moderate exercises, especially walking, and also gentle friction. A bath is improper. The food ought to be acrid at first, such as garlic, leek, and that itself with vinegar, or endive with the same, basil, lettuce; afterwards the food should be mild, such as gruel made of ptisan, or alica, or of starch with the addition of milk. Rice also, and if there be nothing else, far answers the same purpose. Then these may be used alternately; adding something of the middle class, especially the brains of those animals in the first class, or small fish, and the like. Flour also mixed with mutton or goat suet and then boiled, is medicinal. Light austere wine ought to be taken.

Thus far the disease is combated without much difficulty: but if the malady be more vehement, accompanied with fever and cough, and the body appear emaciated, there is a necessity for more powerful remedies. Ulcerations are to be effected with a burning iron in one place under the chin, another on the throat, two on each breast; also under the lower margin of the scapulæ, which the Greeks

ὁμοπλάτας Græci vocant, sic, ne sanescere ulcera sinamus, nisi tussi finita: cui per se quoque medendum esse, manifestum est. Tunc ter quaterve die vehementer extremæ partes perfricandæ, thorax levi manu pertractandus, post cibum intermittenda hora, et perfricanda crura, brachiaque: interpositis decem diebus, demittendus est æger in solium, in quo sit aqua calida et oleum: ceteris diebus bibenda aqua; tum vinum, si tussis non est, potui frigidum dandum; si est, egelidum. Utile est etiam in remissionibus quotidie cibos dari: frictiones gestationesque similiter adhiberi: eadem acria quarto, aut quinto die sumere: interdum herbam sanguinalem ex aceto, vel plantaginem esse. Medicamentum est etiam vel plantaginis succus per se, vel marubii cum melle incoctus; ita ut illius cyathus sorbeatur, hujus cochleare plenum paulatim delingatur; vel inter se mista, et incocta resinæ terebinthinæ pars dimidia, butyri et mellis pars altera. Præcipua tamen ex his omnibus sunt victus, vehiculum, et navis, et sorbitio. Alvus cita utique vitanda est. Vomitus in hoc morbo frequens, perniciosus est, maximeque sanguinis. Qui melior esse cœpit, adjicere debet exer-

## ORDO.

quas Græci vocant ὁμοπλάτας (omoplatas), sic, ne sinamus ulcera sanescere, nisi tussi finita: cui est quoque manifestum, esse medendum per se. Tunc extremæ partes (sunt) perfricandæ ter ve quater die, thorax (est) pertractandus levi manu, post cibum hora (est) intermittenda, et crura, que brachia sunt perfricanda: decem diebus interpositis, æger est demittendus in solium, in quo sit oleum et aqua calida: bibenda aqua ceteris diebus; tum si non est tussis, frigidum vinum dandum potui; si est (tussis) egelidum. Est etiam utile in remissionibus cibos dari quotidie: frictiones que gestationes adhiberi similiter: assumere eadem acria quarto, aut quinto die: interdum esse sanguinalem, vel plantaginem herbam ex aceto. Etiam succus vel plantaginis per se, vel marubii incoctus cum melle est medicamentum; ita ut cyathus illius sorbeatur, plenum cochleare hujus delingatur paulatim; vel dimidia pars resinæ terebinthinæ, altera pars butyri et mellis mista inter se, et incocta. Tamen præcipua ex omnibus his sunt victus, vehiculum, et navis, et sorbitio. Cita alvus est vitanda utique. Frequens vomitus, que maxime sanguinis, in hoc morbo est perniciosus. Qui cœpit esse melior, debet adjicere

## TRANSLATION.

call omoplatæ, which ulcers must not be permitted to heal, unless the cough have ceased, which manifestly requires a mode of treatment peculiar to itself. Then the extremities are to be rubbed violently three or four times a day, the chest is to be rubbed with a light hand; an hour after food, the legs and arms are to be rubbed: ten days having intervened, the patient is to be put into the solium, prepared with warm water and oil: on the other days water is to be drunk, and if there be no cough, cold wine may be given him to drink, if there be cough, tepid. It is also proper to give food daily in the remissions; to apply friction and gestation in the same manner; to take the above-mentioned acrid things every fourth day: sometimes to eat the herb blood-wort or plantain with vinegar. The juice of plantain either by itself or of horehound boiled up with honey is medicinal; so that a glassful of the first may be sipped, and a table spoonful of the latter may be taken gradually as an electuary; or one half part turpentine resin, another of butter and honey mixed and boiled together. But the principal of all these are diet, carriage exercise, sailing, and gruel. A diarrhœa is particularly to be avoided. Frequent vomiting in this disease is dangerous, and especially of blood. When a patient begins to grow a little better, he ought to increase his exercises,



citationes, frictiones, cibos: deinde ipse se, suppresso spiritu, perfricare: diu abstinere a vino, balneo, venere.

ORDO.  
exercitationes, frictiones, cibos: deinde ipse perfricare se, spiritu suppresso: abstinere diu a vino, balneo, venere.

## TRANSLATION.

frictions, and food: afterwards to rub himself, meantime retaining his breath; to abstain a long time from wine, the bath, and venery.

## CAP. XXIII.

## DE COMITIALI MORBO.

INTER notissimos morbos est etiam is, qui comitalis, vel major nominatur. Homo subito concidit; ex ore spumæ moventur; deinde interposito tempore ad se redit, et per se ipse consurgit. Id genus sæpius viros, quam fœminas occupat. Ac solet quidem etiam longum esse, usque mortis diem, et vitæ non periculosum; interdum tamen cum recens est, hominem consumit: et sæpe eum, si remedia non sustulerunt, in pueris veneris, in puellis menstruorum initium tollit. Modo cum distentione nervorum prolabitur aliquis, modo sine illa.

Quidam hos quoque iisdem, quibus lethargicos, excitare conantur: quod

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIII.

## DE COMITIALI MORBO.

ETIAM is, qui nominatur comitalis, vel major (morbis), est inter notissimos morbos. Homo concidit subito; spumæ moventur ex ore; deinde tempore interposito, redit ad se, et ipse consurgit per se. Id genus occupat viros sæpius, quam fœminas. Ac quidem solet esse longum, etiam usque diem mortis, et non (est) periculosum vitæ; tamen interdum cum est recens, consumit hominem: et sæpe, si remedia non sustulerunt eum, initium veneris tollit (eum) in pueris, (initium) menstruorum (tollit eum) in puellis. Modo aliquis prolabitur cum distentione nervorum, modo sine illa.

Quidam quoque conantur excitare hos iisdem, quibus (co-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## OF EPILEPSY.

AMONG the most noted diseases is that which is named comitial (10) or the greater. The man falls suddenly; and he foams at the mouth; after some time he returns to himself, and rises by his own efforts. This malady more frequently attacks men than women; and indeed it is usual for it to become rebellious, and continue for life, without endangering existence; yet sometimes it destroys the patient when it is recent: and very often the first sexual intercourse of boys, or the catamenia in girls removes the disease, unless previously cured by medicine. Sometimes a person falls down with convulsions of the limbs, sometimes without.

Some endeavour to arouse these patients by the same remedies which is applied

admodum supervacuum est; et quia ne lethargicus quidem his sanatur; et quia, cum possit ille numquam expergisci, atque ita fame interire, hic ad se utique revertitur.

Ubi concidit aliquis, si nulla nervorum distentio accessit, utique sanguis mitti debet: si accessit, non utique mittendus est, nisi alia quoque hortantur. Necessarium autem est, ducere alvum, vel nigro veratro purgare, vel utrumque facere, si vires patiuntur: tunc caput tondere, oleoque et aceto perungere: cibum post diem tertium, simul transiit hora, qua concidit, dare. Neque sorbitiones autem his, aliiue molles, et faciles cibi, neque caro, minimeque suilla convenit; sed mediæ materiæ: nam et viribus opus est, et cruditates cavendæ sunt. Cum quibus fugere oportet solem, balneum, ignem, omniaque calefacientia; item frigus, vinum, venerem, loci præcipitis conspectum, omniumque terrentium, vomitum, lassitudinem, sollicitudines, negotia omnia. Ubi tertio die cibum datus est, intermittere quartum, et invicem alterum quemque, eadem hora cibi servata, donec quatuordecim dies transeant. Quos ubi morbus excessit,

## ORDO.

nantur excitare) lethargicos: quod est admodum supervacuum; et quia nequidem lethargicus sanatur his; et quia, cum ille numquam possit expergisci, atque ita interire fame, utique hic revertitur ad se.

Ubi aliquis concidit, si nulla distentio nervorum accessit, utique sanguis debet mitti: si accessit, utique non est mittendus, nisi alia quoque hortantur. Autem est necessarium, ducere alvum, vel purgare nigro veratro, vel facere utrumque, si vires patiuntur: tunc tondere caput, et perungere (caput) oleo et aceto: dare cibum post tertium diem, simul hora transiit, qua concidit. Autem neque sorbitiones, que alii molles, et faciles cibi, neque caro, que minime suilla convenit his; sed mediæ materiæ: nam est et opus viribus, et cruditates sunt cavendæ. Cum oportet quibus fugere solem, balneum, ignem, que omnia calefacientia; item frigus, vinum, venerem, conspectum præcipitis loci, que omnium terrentium, vomitum, lassitudinem, sollicitudines, omnia negotia. Ubi cibum est datus tertio die, intermittere quartum, et quemque alterum invicem, eadem hora cibi servata, donec quatuordecim dies transeant. Quos ubi morbus

## TRANSLATION.

to lethargic persons, which is very wrong; because even a lethargic person is never cured by these things, and indeed it is possible he may never awake, and so perish of hunger, whereas the epileptic is sure to return to himself.

When a person falls down, if the fit be not accompanied with convulsions, he ought to lose blood immediately: but if on the contrary, then blood must not be taken, unless other circumstances urge it. But it will be necessary to administer an enema, or to purge with black hellebore, or to do both, if the strength permit: then to have the hair cut close, and anoint his head with oil and vinegar; to give food on the third day, as soon as that hour shall have passed, on which he fell. Now gruels, and all bland, soft food, flesh, and particularly that of pork, are all improper for such patients; but a middle diet: for there is a necessity to keep up the strength, and at the same time indigestion must be avoided. With these he must avoid the sun, the bath, fire, and all calefacients; also cold, wine, venery, the sight of a precipice, and every object of terror, vomiting, lassitude, solicitude, and negociations of every kind. When food has been given on the third day, he should intermit on the fourth, and every other day alternately; observing the same hour for food, for the space of fourteen days. After which time, should the disease

acuti vim deposuit: ac, si manet, curandus jam ut longus est. Quod si, non quo die primum id incidit, medicus accessit; sed is, qui cadere consuevit, ei traditus est; protinus eo genere victus habito, qui supra comprehensus est, exspectandus est dies, quo prolabatur; utendumque tum vel sanguinis missione, vel ductione alvi, vel nigro veratro, sicut præceptum est: insequentibus deinde diebus, per eos cibos, quos proposui, vitatis omnibus, quæ cavenda dixi, nutriendus.

Si per hæc morbus finitus non fuerit, confugiendum erit ad album veratrum; ac ter quoque aut quater eo utendum, non ita multis interpositis diebus; sic tamen, ne iterum umquam sumat, nisi conciderit. Mediis autem diebus vires ejus erunt nutriendæ; quibusdam, præter ea, quæ supra scripta sunt, adjunctis. Ubi mane expectatus est, corpus ejus leniter ex oleo vetere, cum capite excepto ventre, permulceatur: tum ambulatione quam maxime longa et recta utatur: post ambulationem loco tepido vehementer et diu, ac non minus ducenties, nisi infirmus erit, perfricetur: deinde per caput multa aqua frigida perfundatur; paulum

## ORDO.

excessit, deposuit vim acuti: ac, si manet est jam curandus ut longus. Quod si, id non incidit die quo, medicus primum accessit, sed is, qui consuevit cadere, est traditus ei; protinus eo genere victus habito, qui est comprehensus supra, dies est exspectandus, quo prolabatur; que tum utendum vel missione sanguinis, vel ductione alvi, vel nigro veratro, sicut est præceptum: deinde nutriendus insequentibus diebus, per eos cibos, quos proposui, omnibus vitatis, quæ dixi cavenda.

Si morbus non fuerit finitus per hæc, erit confugiendum ad album veratrum; ac quoque utendum eo ter aut quater, non ita multis diebus interpositis; tamen sic, ne sumat umquam iterum, nisi conciderit. Autem vires ejus erunt nutriendæ mediis diebus; quibusdam adjunctis, præter ea, quæ sunt scripta supra. Ubi est expectatus mane, corpus ejus permulceatur leniter ex vetere oleo, capite cum ventre excepto: tum utatur longa et recta ambulatione quam maxime: post ambulationem, perfricetur vehementer et diu tepido loco, ac non minus ducenties, nisi erit infirmus: deinde multa frigida aqua perfundatur per caput; assumat

## TRANSLATION.

be protracted, it loses the acute form, and if it remain, it must be treated as chronic. Now if a physician be not called on the very day on which it first happened, but a patient comes under his care who has been accustomed to these falling fits; in the first place that regimen which has been described above must be observed, and to wait in anticipation of another attack; and then he must employ either venesection, injection, or black hellebore, as already prescribed: afterwards, on the subsequent days he is to be nourished by those aliments which I have mentioned before, and to avoid all those things which I have interdicted.

If the disease should not terminate by these means, it will be necessary to employ white hellebore; and that must be used three or four times, interposing a few days between the doses; but this is never to be taken again, unless the disease shall return. On the intermediate days his strength must be supported, by adding something, besides those, which have been mentioned above. When he has awoke in the morning, his body may be rubbed over with old oil, (the head and abdomen excepted): then let him walk as long and as straight as possible: after walking he should be forcibly rubbed in a warm place for a considerable time, and the number of movements must not be less than two hundred, unless he be very weak: afterwards cold water should be freely poured over the head; he may take a little



cibi assumat; conquiescat: rursus ante noctem ambulatione utatur: iterum vehementer perfricetur, sic ut neque venter, neque caput contingatur: post hæc cœnet; interpositisque tribus aut quatuor diebus, uno aut altero acria assumat.

Si ne per hæc quidem fuerit liberatus, caput radat; ungatur oleo vetere, adjecto aceto et nitro; perfundatur aqua salsa; bibat jejunos ex aqua castoreum; nulla aqua, nisi decocta, potionis causa utatur. Quidam jugulati gladiatoris calido sanguine epoto tali morbo se liberarunt: apud quos miserum auxilium tolerabile miserius malum fecit. Quod ad medicum pertinet, ultimum est, juxta talum, ex utroque crure paulum sanguinis mittere; occipitium incidere, et cucurbitulas admovere; ferro candenti in occipitio quoque et infra, qua summa vertebra cum capite committitur, adurere duobus locis, ut per ea perniciosus humor evadat. Quibus si finitum malum non fuerit, prope est, ut perpetuum sit. Ad levandum id, tantummodo utendum erit exercitatione multa, frictione, cibusque iis, qui supra comprehensi sunt: præcipueque vitanda omnia, quæ ne fierent, excepinus.

## ORDO.

paulum cibi; conquiescat: utatur ambulatione rursus ante noctem: iterum perfricetur vehementer, sic ut neque venter, neque caput contingatur: post hæc cœnet; que tribus aut quatuor diebus interpositis, assumat acria uno aut altero.

Si ne quidem fuerit liberatus per hæc, radat caput; ungatur vetere oleo, aceto et nitro adjecto; salsa aqua perfundatur; jejunos bibat castoreum ex aqua; utatur nulla aqua causa potionis, nisi decocta. Quidam liberarunt se tali morbo, epoto calido sanguine jugulati gladiatoris: apud quos, miserum auxilium fecit miserius malum tolerabile. Quod pertinet ad medicum, est ultimum, mittere paulum sanguinis ex utroque crure juxta talum; incidere occipitium, et admovere cucurbitulas; quoque adurere duobus locis candenti ferro, in occipitio et infra, qua summa vertebra committitur cum capite, ut perniciosus humor evadat per ea. Quibus si malum non fuerit finitum, est prope, ut sit perpetuum. Ad levandum id, tantummodo, erit utendum multa exercitatione, frictione, que iis cibus, qui sunt comprehensi supra: que præcipue vitanda omnia, quæ excepinus, ne fierent.

## TRANSLATION.

food, and rest: he may walk again before night: the friction to be renewed vehemently, without touching the head or abdomen; these being done, he may sup; after three or four days, he may take acrid things, for a day or two.

If the patient be not freed even by these means, let his head be shaved: then anointed with old oil, adding vinegar and nitre; and salt water affused over it: when his stomach is empty, let him drink castor and water: to drink no water, unless it has been boiled. Some have liberated themselves from such a disease, by drinking the warm blood of a slain gladiator; to whom a wretched remedy is rendered tolerable by a still more wretched disease. As far as it relates to the physician, the last auxiliary is to let a little blood from each leg, near the ankle; to make an incision in the occiput and apply the cupping instruments; also to burn in two places with a hot iron, in the occiput and below it, where the first vertebra is connected with the head, that the pernicious humour may escape by them. If the disease be not terminated by these means, it may be considered perpetual. To alleviate it, much exercise must only be used, with friction, and those foods above mentioned, and especially all those things are to be avoided, which we have denounced.

## CAP. XXIV.

DE REGIO MORBO.

ÆQUE notus est morbus, quem interdum arquatum, interdum regium nominant. Quem Hippocrates ait, si post septimum diem febricitante ægro supervenit, tutum esse, mollibus tantummodo præcordiis substantibus: Diocles, ex toto, si post febrem oritur, etiam prodesset; si post hunc febris, occidere. Color autem eum morbum detegit, maxime oculorum, in quibus, quod album esse debet, fit luteum. Soletque accedere et sitis, et dolor capitis, et frequens singultus, et præcordiorum dextra parte durities, et, ubi corporis vehemens motus est, spiritus difficultas, membrorumque resolutio: atque, ubi diutius manet morbus, totum corpus cum pallore quodam inalbescit.

Primodie abstinere ægrum oportet; secundo ducere alvum: tum, si febris est, eam victus genere discutere; si non est, scammoniam potui dare, vel cum aqua betam albam contritam, vel cum aqua

ORDO.

## CAP. XXIV.

DE REGIO MORBO.

MORBUS est æque notus, quem nominant interdum arquatum, interdum regium. Quem Hippocrates ait esse tutum, si supervenit post septimum diem febricitante ægro, tantummodo præcordiis substantibus mollibus: Diocles, (ait) ex toto, si oritur post febrem, etiam prodesset, si febris (oritur) post hunc, occidere. Autem, color detegit eum morbum, maxime oculorum, in quibus, quod debet esse album, fit luteum. Que et sitis, et dolor capitis, et frequens singultus, et durities dextra parte præcordiorum, et, ubi motus corporis est vehemens, difficultas spiritus, que resolutio membrorum solet accedere: atque, ubi morbus manet diutius, totum corpus inalbescit cum quodam pallore.

Oportet ægrum abstinere primo die; ducere alvum secundo (die): tum, si est febris, discutere eam, genere victus; si non est, dare scammoniam potui, vel albam betam contritam cum

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIV.

OF THE JAUNDICE.

THAT malady which they sometimes call the arched disease (11), sometimes the royal, is equally well known. Hippocrates pronounced it to be safe, if it supervene after the seventh day of a fever, provided the præcordia remain soft: Diocles maintained without reserve, that if it came on after a fever, it was even salutary; but if fever come on after, it is fatal. Now this disease is discovered by the colour of the skin, but more particularly in the eyes, in which, what ought to be white, becomes pale yellow. And it is generally attended by a thirst, head-ache, frequent hiccough, hardness of the præcordia on the right side, and when there is violent motion of the body, dyspnœa and paralysis ensue: and when the disease becomes chronic, the whole body appears blanched with a peculiar icteritious pallor.

On the first day the patient must abstain from food: on the second to administer an injection; then if there be fever, to dissipate that by a febrifuge regimen; if there be no fever, to give scammony as a drink, or white beet bruised with water,

mulsa nuces amaras, absinthium, anisum, sic ut pars hujus minima sit. Asclepiades aquam quoque salsam, et quidem per biduum, purgationis causa bibere cogebat, iis, quæ urinam movent, rejectis. Quidam, superioribus omissis, per hæc, et per eos cibos, qui extenuant, idem se consequi dicunt. Ego utique, si satis virium est, validiora; si parum, imbecilliora auxilia præfero. Si purgatio fuit, post eam triduo primo modice cibum oportet assumere ex media materia, et vinum bibere Græcum salsum, ut resolutio ventris maneat: tum altero triduo validiores cibos, et carnis quoque aliquid esse, intraque aquam manere: deinde ad superius genus victus reverti, cum eo, ut magis satiatur; omisso Græco vino bibere integrum, austereum; atque ita per hæc variare, ut interdum acres quoque cibos interponat, interdum ad salsum vinum redeat.

Per omne vero tempus utendum est exercitatione, frictione; si hiems est, balneo, si æstas, frigidis natationibus; lecto etiam, et conclavi cultiore, lusu, joco, ludis, lascivia, per quæ mens exhilaretur: ob quæ regius morbus dictus videtur.

## ORDO.

aqua, vel amaras nuces, absinthium, anisum, cum mulsa aqua, sic ut sit minima pars hujus. Asclepiades quoque cogebat (ægros) bibere salsam aquam, et quidem per biduum, causa purgationis, iis rejectis quæ movent urinam. Quidam, superioribus omissis, dicunt se consequi idem per hæc, et per eos cibos, qui extenuant. Utique, ego præfero validiora auxilia, si est satis virium; imbecilliora (auxilia) si (est) parum. Si fuit purgatio, post eam oportet assumere cibum modice ex media materia primo triduo, et bibere Græcum salsum vinum, ut resolutio ventris maneat: tum esse validiores cibos, et quoque aliquid carnis altero triduo, que manere intra aquam: deinde reverti ad superius genus victus, cum eo, ut satiatur magis; Græco vino omisso, bibere integrum, austereum (vinum); atque ita variare per hæc, ut interdum quoque interponat acres cibos, interdum redeat ad salsum vinum.

Vero est utendum exercitatione, frictione, per omne tempus; (est utendum) balneo, si est hiems, frigidis natationibus, si (est) æstas; etiam conclavi, et cultiore lecto, lusu, joco, ludis, lascivia, per quæ mens exhilaretur: ob quæ videtur dictus regius morbus. Quoque malagma,

## TRANSLATION.

or bitter almonds, wormwood, and anise with hydromel, but of this last the smallest portion. Asclepiades compelled his patients to drink salt water, for the space of two days, for the purpose of purging them, rejecting those things which promote urine. Some, omitting the former remedies, say, that they can obtain the same result by diuretics and extenuating diet. Indeed I prefer the more potent remedies, if there be a sufficiency of strength; but the milder, if there be debility. If the patient have been purged, he ought to take food moderately for the first three days' afterwards of the middle class, and to drink salt Greek wine, in order to keep the bowels relaxed: then for the next three days to eat more substantial food, and also some flesh, and to remain on water for drink: afterwards to resume the former regimen, with this addition, that he may partake more freely: omitting the Greek wine, he ought to drink that which is pure and austere; and to vary these occasionally, interposing at one time acrid food, at another he may return to the salt wine.

But during the whole of this time exercise and friction must be employed; if in winter, the bath; if in summer, swimming in cold water; also the patient's bed and chamber ought to be more ornamented; and with mirth and jest, farce and frolic, and all those amusements calculated to exhilarate the mind; hence it appears to be called the royal disease. A discutient malagma applied over the præ-



Malagma quoque, quod digerat, super præcordia datum prodest; vel arida ibi ficus imposita, si jecur aut splenis affectus est.

## ORDO.

quod digerat, datum super præcordia prodest; vel arida ficus imposita ibi, si jecur aut splenis est affectus.

## TRANSLATION.

cordia seems to have a good effect; or a dry fig laid on there, if the liver or spleen be affected.

## CAP. XXV.

## DE ELEPHANTIA.

IGNOTUS autem pene in Italia, frequentissimus in quibusdam regionibus is morbus est, quem *ἐλεφαντίασις* Græci vocant; isque longis annumeratur. Totum corpus afficitur ita, ut ossa quoque vitari dicantur. Summa pars corporis crebras maculas crebrosque tumores habet; rubor earum paulatim in atrum colorem convertitur; summa cutis inæqualiter crassa, tenuis, dura, mollisque, quasi squamis quibusdam exasperatur; corpus emacrescit, os, suræ, pedes intumescunt: ubi vetus morbus est, digiti in manibus pedibusque sub tumore conduntur, febricula oritur, quæ facile tot malis obrutum hominem consumit.

Protinus ergo inter initia sanguis per biduum mitti debet, aut nigro ve-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXV.

## DE ELEPHANTIA.

AUTEM is morbus, quem Græci vocant *ἐλεφαντίασις*, (elephantiasis,) est pæne ignotus in Italia, (que) frequentissimus in quibusdam regionibus; que is annumeratur longis. Totum corpus ita afficitur, ut ossa quoque dicantur vitari. Summa pars corporis habet crebras maculas que crebros tumores; rubor earum convertitur paulatim in atrum colorem; summa cutis inæqualiter crassa, tenuis, dura, que mollis, quasi exasperatur quibusdam squamis: corpus emacrescit, os, suræ, pedes intumescunt: ubi morbus est vetus, digiti in manibus que pedibus conduntur sub tumore, febricula oritur, quæ facile consumit hominem obrutum tot malis.

Ergo sanguis debet mitti protinus inter initia per biduum,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXV.

## OF ELEPHANTIASIS.

THAT disease which the Greeks call elephantiasis, is very common in some countries, although scarcely known in Italy, and is of the chronic class. The whole body is affected in such a manner, that even the bones may be said to be diseased. The surface of the body frequently exhibits blotches and tumours: their red colour is gradually converted into a black: the surface of the skin is unequally thick and thin, hard and soft, assuming a squamous appearance; the body becomes emaciated, the mouth, the calves, and feet swell; when the disease becomes inveterate, the fingers and toes are involved in the swelling, slight fever arises, which soon carries off its victim overwhelmed with so many afflictions.

Therefore at the commencement blood ought to be let immediately two days

ratro venter solvi: adhibenda tum, quanta sustineri potest, inedia est: paulum deinde vires reficiendæ, et ducenda alvus: post hæc, ubi corpus levatum est, utendum est exercitatione, præcipueque cursu: sudor primum labore ipsius corporis, deinde etiam siccis sudationibus evocandus: frictio adhibenda: moderandumque inter hæc, ut vires conserventur. Balneum rarum esse debet; cibus sine pinguibus, sine glutinosis, sine inflantibus: vinum, præterquam primis diebus, recte datur. Corpus contrita plantago et illita optime tueri videtur.

## ORDO.

aut venter (debet) solvi nigro veratro: tum inedia est adhibenda, quanta potest sustinere: deinde vires reficiendæ paulum, et alvus ducenda: post hæc, ubi corpus est levatum, est utendum exercitatione, que præcipue cursu: sudor (est) primum evocandus labore corporis ipsius, deinde etiam siccis sudationibus: frictio adhibenda: que moderandum inter hæc, ut vires conserventur. Balneum debet esse rarum; cibus sine pinguibus, sine glutinosis, sine inflantibus: vinum datur recte, præterquam primis diebus. Contrita et illita plantago videtur tueri corpus optime.

## TRANSLATION.

successively, or the bowels purged with black hellebore: then the most rigid abstinence must be enjoined: afterwards the strength may be improved a little, and the bowels relieved by injection: when the body has been alleviated by these means, exercise must be employed, and particularly running; perspiration is to be elicited first by corporeal action of the body itself, and afterwards by dry sweatings: also friction must be applied; but these means must be so moderated, that the strength may be preserved. The bath ought to be employed rarely; the food should consist of nothing fat, glutinous, or flatulent: wine may be given with propriety, except on the first days. Plantain bruised and applied over the body, appears to be the best protection.

## CAP. XXVI.

## DE ATTONITIS.

ATTONITOS quoque raro videmus, quorum et corpus et mens stupet. Fit interdum ictu fulminis, interdum morbo: ἀποπληξίαν hunc Græci appellant. His

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVI.

## DE ATTONITIS.

QUOQUE raro videmus attonitos, et corpus et mens quorum stupet. Interdum fit ictu fulminis, interdum morbo: Græci appellant hunc ἀποπληξίαν (apoplexia).

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVI.

## OF THUNDER-STRUCK PERSONS, OR APOPLEXY.

It is also rarely we see thunder-struck persons in whom a total privation both of mental and physical power takes place. Sometimes it is caused by a stroke of lightning, sometimes by disease: the Greeks call the last apoplexia. Blood

sanguis mittendus est: veratro quoque albo, vel alvi ductione utendum. Tum adhibendæ frictiones, et ex media materia minime pingues cibi; quidam etiam acres; et a vino abstinendum.

## ORDO.

Sanguis est mittendus his: quoque utendum albo veratro, vel ductione alvi. Tum frictiones adhibendæ, et minime pingues cibi ex media materia; etiam quidam acres; et abstinendum a vino.

## TRANSLATION.

must be taken freely from them, and the white hellebore administered as a purgative, or alviduction employed. Then frictions are to be employed, and the leanest food of the middle class: also some acrid foods; and to abstain from wine.

## CAP. XXVII.

## ORDO.

## DE RESOLUTIONE NERVORUM.

## CAP. XXVII.

## DE RESOLUTIONE NERVORUM.

1. At resolution nervorum frequens ubique morbus est: sed interdum tota corpora, interdum partes infestat. Veteres auctores illud ἀποπληξίαν, hoc παράλυσιν nominaverunt: nunc utrumque παράλυσιν appellari video. Solent autem, qui per omnia membra vehementer resoluti sunt, celeriter rapi: ac si correpti non sunt, diutius quidem vivunt; sed raro tamen ad sanitatem perveniunt, et plerumque miserum spiritum trahunt, memoria quoque amissa.

In partibus vero numquam acutus, sæpe longus, fere sanabilis morbus est.

1. At resolutio nervorum est frequens morbus ubique: sed interdum infestat tota corpora, interdum partes. Veteres auctores nominaverunt illud ἀποπληξίαν (apoplexia), hoc παράλυσιν (paralysis): nunc video utrumque appellari παράλυσιν (paralysis). Autem, qui sunt vehementer resoluti per omnia membra, solent rapi celeriter: ac si non sunt correpti, quidem vivunt diutius; sed tamen raro perveniunt ad sanitatem, et plerumque memoria quoque amissa; trahunt miserum spiritum.

Vero morbus in partibus est numquam acutus, sæpe longus,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## OF PARALYSIS.

Now resolution of the nervous system is of frequent occurrence every where: but sometimes it attacks the whole body, sometimes only parts. Ancient authors have named the first APOPLEXIA, the last PARALYSIS: but now I perceive PARALYSIS to be a common term for both. It is not an unusual occurrence for those whose limbs are violently paralysed to be carried off rapidly: but if they survive the shock, indeed they may live very long, yet seldom arrive at convalescence, and generally prolong a miserable vegetative existence, with a total loss of memory.

When it is partial, the disease is never acute, frequently chronic, and for the



Si omnia membra vehementer resoluta sunt, sanguinis detractio vel occidit, vel liberat: aliud curationis genus vix umquam sanitatem restituit, sæpe mortem tantum differt, vitam interim infestat. Post sanguinis missionem, si non redit et motus et mens, nihil spei superest; si redit, sanitas quoque prospicitur.

At ubi pars resoluta est, pro vi et malo corporis, vel sanguis mittendus, vel alvus ducenda. Cetera eadem in utroque casu facienda sunt: siquidem vitare præcipue convenit frigus; paulatimque ad exercitationes revertendum est, sic, ut ingrediatur ipse protinus, si potest: si id crurum imbecillitas prohibet, vel gestetur, vel motu lecti concutitur: tum id membrum, quod deficit, si potest, per se, sin minus, per alium moveatur, et vi quadam ad consuetudinem suam redeat. Prodest etiam torpentis membri summam cutem exasperasse, vel urticis cæsam, vel imposito sinapi, sic ut, ubi rubere cœperit corpus, hæc removeantur. Scilla quoque contrita, bulbique contriti cum thure recte imponuntur. Neque alienum est, resina cutem tertio quoque die diutius vellere, pluribus etiam locis; aliquando sine ferro cucurbitulas admovere.

## ORDO.

fere sanabilis. Si omnia membra sunt vehementer resoluta, detractio sanguinis vel occidit, vel liberat: aliud genus curationis vix umquam restituit sanitatem, sæpe differt mortem, interim infestat vitam. Post missionem sanguinis, si et motus et mens non redit, nihil spei superest; si redit, sanitas prospicitur quoque.

At ubi pars est resoluta, vel sanguis (est) mittendus, vel alvus (est) ducenda, pro vi et malo corporis. Cetera sunt facienda eadem in utroque casu: siquidem convenit præcipue vitare frigus; que est revertendum paulatim ad exercitationes, sic, ut ingrediatur protinus ipse, si potest: si imbecillitas crurum prohibet id, vel gestetur, vel concutitur motu lecti: tum id membrum quod deficit, redeat ad suam consuetudinem, si potest, per se, sin minus, moveatur per alium, et quadam vi. Etiam prodest, exasperasse summam cutem torpentis membri, vel cæsam urticis, vel sinapi imposito, sicut, ubi corpus cœperit rubere, hæc removeantur. Quoque contrita scilla, que contriti bulbi cum thure imponuntur recte. Neque est alienum, quoque vellere cutem resina diutius tertio die, etiam pluribus locis; aliquando admovere cucurbitu-

## TRANSLATION.

most part curable. If all the limbs be violently paralysed, the extraction of blood either kills, or cures: any other mode of treatment scarcely ever restores health; often, only delays death, while it renders life intolerable. After blood-letting, if neither voluntary motion nor intelligence return, no hope remains; if they do return, there is also a prospect of recovery.

But when the paralysis is partial, either blood must be taken, or an injection administered proportioned to the strength of the patient and the violence of the disease. The other remedies to be adopted are the same in both cases: above all things it is proper to avoid cold; and to resume exercises by degrees, so that he may walk as soon as he is able: if debility of the legs prevent that, he may be carried or moved by the action of a (*suspended*) bed: then that limb which is affected should be moved by itself if possible; or if not, by another, and that it may be forced to return to its accustomed action. It is also beneficial to irritate the surface of the skin on the torpid limb, either by beating it with nettles, or by applying mustard on it, which may be removed when the part begins to grow red. Also bruised squills, or bulbous roots, beat up with frankincense. Neither is it improper, to vellicate the skin with resin for some considerable time every third day, and that too in many places; sometimes to apply the cupping instruments

Uctioni vero aptissimum est vetus oleum, vel nitrum aceto et oleo mistum. Quin etiam fovere aqua calida marina, vel, si ea non est, tamen salsa, magnopere necessarium est. Ac si quo loco vel naturales, vel etiam manufactæ tales natationes sunt, iis potissimum utendum est; præcipueque in his agitanda membra, quæ maxime deficiunt: si id non est, balneum tamen prodest. Cibus esse debet ex media materia, maximeque ex venatione; potio sine vino, aquæ calidæ: si tamen vetus morbus est, interponi quarto vel quinto die purgationis causa vinum Græcum salsum potest. Post cœnam utilis vomitus est.

2. Interdum vero etiam nervorum dolor oriri solet. In hoc casu non vomere, non medicamentis urinam movere, non exercitatione sudorem, ut quidam præcipiunt, expedit. Bibenda aqua est bis in die: in lectulo leniter satis diu corpus perfricandum est, deinde retento spiritu: ab ipsa exercitatione potius superiores partes movendæ: balneo raro utendum: mutandum subinde peregrinationibus cœlum. Si dolor est, ea ipsa pars sine oleo, nitro ex aqua perungenda est; deinde invol-

## ORDO.

las sine ferro. Vero vetus oleum, vel nitrum mistum aceto et oleo est aptissimum unctioni. Quin etiam fovere calida marina aqua, vel, si non est ea, tamen salsa, est magnopere necessarium. Ac si sunt tales natationes (in) quo loco vel naturales, vel etiam manufactæ, est utendum iis potissimum; que membra quæ deficiunt maxime, præcipue (sunt) agitanda in his: si non est id, tamen balneum prodest. Cibus debet esse ex media materia, que maxime ex venatione; potio calidæ aquæ, sine vino: si tamen morbus est vetus, Græcum salsum vinum potest interponi quarto vel quinto die causa purgationis. Vomitus est utilis post cœnam.

2. Vero interdum dolor nervorum etiam solet oriri. In hoc casu expedit non vomere; non movere urinam medicamentis, non (movere) sudorem exercitatione, ut quidam præcipiunt. Aqua est bibenda bis in die: corpus est perfricandum leniter, satis diu, in lectulo, deinde spiritu retento: superiores partes (sunt) movendæ potius ab exercitatione ipsa: utendum balneo raro: mutandum cœlum subinde peregrinationibus. Si est dolor, ea pars ipsa est perungenda nitro ex aqua, sine oleo; de-

## TRANSLATION.

without incision. But old oil is most fit for unction, or nitre mixed with vinegar and oil. Moreover it is highly necessary to foment with warm sea-water, or if that is not to be had, at least with salt water. If there be any natural swimming places, or even such as may be constructed by art of this kind, they should be used by all means: and the limbs which are most affected, ought to be exercised there especially: if that cannot be had, still the common bath will be found serviceable. The food ought to be of the middle material, and especially of game: to drink warm water, without wine: but if the disease have become chronic, the Greek salt wine may be interposed every fourth or fifth day as a purgative. An emetic after supper is useful.

2. Sometimes there arises a pain of the nerves. In this case it is not expedient either to excite vomiting by emetics, or promote the urine by diuretics, or to elicit diaphoresis by exercise as some physicians prescribe. Water must be drunk twice in the day: the body should be rubbed gently for a considerable time in bed, afterwards retaining the breath; during the exercise the superior parts are to be moved in preference: the bath to be used seldom: occasionally changing his climate by travelling. If there be pain in any part, that is to be anointed with nitre and water without oil; afterwards to be wrapped up, and held over a gentle

venta, et subjicienda pruna lenis, et sulphur, atque ita id suffumigandum; idque aliquamdiu faciendum, sed jejuno, cum bene jam concoxerit. Cucurbitulæ quoque sæpe dolenti parti admovendæ sunt, pulsandusque leniter inflatis vesicis bubulis is locus est. Utile est etiam sebum miscere cum hyoscyami et urticæ contritis seminibus, sic, ut omnium par modus sit, idque imponere: fovere aqua, in qua sulphur decoctum sit. Utriculi quoque recte imponuntur aqua calida repleti, aut bitumen cum hordeacea farina mistum. Atque in ipso potissimum dolore, utendum gestatione vehementi est: quod in aliis doloribus pessimum est.

3. Tremor autem nervorum æque vomitu medicamentisque urinam moventibus intenditur. Inimica etiam habet balneum, assasque sudationes. Bibenda aqua est: acri ambulatione utendum; item unctionibus, frictionibusque, maxime per seipsum: pila, similibusque superiores partes dimovendæ: cibo quolibet utendum, dummodo concoctioni utique studeatur: secundum cibum, curis abstinendum: rarissima venere opus est. Si quando quis in eam prolapsus est, tum oleo leniter diuque in

## ORDO.

inde (sunt) involvenda, et lenis pruna, et sulphur subjicienda, atque ita fumigandum id; que id faciendum aliquamdiu, sed jejuno, cum jam concoxerit bene. Quoque cucurbitulæ sunt admovendæ sæpe dolenti parti, que is locus est pulsandus leniter inflatis bulbulis vesicis. Est etiam utile miscere sebum cum contritis seminibus hyoscyami et urticæ, sic, ut modus omnium sit par, que imponere id: fovere aqua, in qua sulphur sit decoctum. Quoque utriculi repleti calida aqua imponuntur recte, aut bitumen mistum cum hordeacea farina. Atque est potissimum utendum vehementi gestatione in dolore ipso: quod est pessimum in aliis doloribus.

3. Antem tremor nervorum intenditur æque vomitu, que medicamentis moventibus urinam. Etiam habet balneum que assas sudationes inimica. Aqua est bibenda: (est) utendum acri ambulatione; item unctionibus, que frictionibus, maxime per se ipsum: superiores partes dimovendæ pila, que similibus: (est) utendum quolibet cibo, dummodo utique studeatur concoctioni: secundum cibum, (est) abstinendum curis: est opus venere rarissima. Si quando quis est prolapsus in eam, tum debet perfricari leniter, que diu oleo in lec-

## TRANSLATION.

live coal with sulphur, and in this manner to be fumigated: and that should be done for some time, but while the stomach is empty and after he shall have digested well. The cupping-glasses also ought to be applied frequently to the affected part, and that place should be gently beaten with inflated bladders. Equal parts of suet, the bruised seeds of henbane and nettles, mixed together and laid on the part will be found useful: also to foment with water in which sulphur has been boiled. Small leathern bottles filled with hot water, or bitumen mixed with barley-meal may be very properly applied to the part. Vehement gestation should be employed, and especially during the pain itself, which in other affections would be extremely pernicious.

3. A tremor of the nerves is also aggravated by vomiting and diuretics. The bath and dry perspiration are inimical. The drink should be water: to employ brisk walking; also unction and friction, especially applied by himself: the superior extremities must be exercised by the ball and similar games: he may take any food he likes, provided that a due regard be paid to digestion: after food he must abstain from every care; and sexual indulgences ought to be few and far between. If he should at any time luxuriate in this particular, then he ought to



lectulo perfricari manibus puerilibus potius, quam virilibus, debet.

4. Suppurationes autem, quæ in aliqua interiori parte oriuntur, ubi notæ fuerint, primum id agere oportet per ea cataplasmata, quæ reprimunt, ne coitus inutilis materiæ fiat; deinde, si hæc victa sunt, per ea malagmata, quæ digerunt, ut dissipetur. Quod si consecuti non sumus, sequitur, ut evocetur: deinde, ut maturescat. Omnis tum vomicæ finis est, ut rumpatur: indiciumque est, pus vel alvo vel ore redditum. Sed nihil facere oportet, quominus, quidquid est puris, excedat. Utendum maxime sorbitionibus est, et aqua calida. Ubi pus ferri desiit, transeundum ad faciles quidem, sed tamen validiores et frigidos cibos, frigidamque aquam, sic ut ab egelidis tamen initium fiat.

Primoque cum melle quædam edenda, ut nuclei pinei, vel Græcæ nuces, vel Avellanæ: postea submovendum id ipsum, quo maturius induci cicatrix possit. Medicamentum eo tempore ulceri est, succus assumptus vel porri vel marrubii, et omni cibo porrum ipsum adjectum. Oportebit autem uti in iis partibus, quæ non afficiuntur, frictioni-

## ORDO.

tulo potius puerilibus manibus, quam virilibus.

4. Autem ubi suppurationes, quæ oriuntur aliqua interiori parte, fuerint notæ, primum oportet agere id per ea cataplasmata, quæ reprimunt, ne fiat inutilis coitus materiæ; deinde, si hæc victa sunt, ut dissipetur per ea malagmata, quæ digerunt. Quod si non sumus consecuti, sequitur, ut evocetur: deinde, ut maturescat. Tum est finis omnis vomicæ, ut rumpatur: que pus redditum vel alvo vel ore, est indicium. Sed oportet facere nihil, quo quidquid est puris, excedat minus. Est maxime utendum sorbitionibus, et calida aqua. Ubi pus desiit ferri, (est) quidem transeundum ad faciles, sed tamen validiores et frigidos, que frigidam aquam, tamen sic ut fiat initium ab egelidis.

Que primo edenda quædam cum melle, ut pinei nuclei, vel Græcæ nuces, vel Avellanæ: postea submovendum id ipsum, quo cicatrix possit induci maturius. Succus vel porri vel marrubii assumptus, est medicamentum ulceri eo tempore, et porrum ipsum adjectum omni cibo. Autem oportebit uti frictionibus in iis partibus, quæ non afficiun-

## TRANSLATION.

be gently rubbed with oil for a long time in bed, by the hands of a boy rather than by that of a man.

4. But when abscesses, which arise in some internal part, have been detected, it behoves us to attend to these first, and by the application of repellent cataplasms prevent the formation of matter which would be injurious; afterwards, if these have been overcome; let them be dispersed by discutient malagmata. But if we have not succeeded, it follows, that they should be brought forward: afterwards, to effect maturation: then the termination of every abscess is, that it may burst: and this is indicated by an evacuation of pus, either by the mouth or anus. But nothing should be done, by which the discharge of matter may be rendered less. Gruels and warm water must be the principal nourishment. When the discharge of matter has ceased, we may pass to such food, as may be easily digested, but yet more nutritive and cold; also cold water, and that a beginning be made with lukewarm things.

At first some things are to be eaten with honey, as pine nuts, or sweet almonds, or hazel nuts. Afterwards even the honey must be omitted, by which means a cicatrix may be the sooner formed. The expressed juice of the leek or horehound being taken at that time is medicinal for the ulcer; and adding leeks to every meal is advantageous. But we should use friction to those parts which are not

bus; item ambulationibus lenibus: vitandumque erit, ne vel luctando, vel currendo, vel alia ratione sanescentia ulcera exasperentur. In hoc enim morbo perniciosus, ideoque omni modo cavendus sanguinis vomitus est.

## ORDO.

tur; item lenibus ambulationibus: que erit vitandum, ne sanescentia ulcera exasperentur vel luctando, vel currendo, vel alia ratione. Enim vomitus sanguinis est perniciosus in hoc morbo, que ideo est cavendus omni modo.

## TRANSLATION.

affected; also gentle walking: taking all care that the granulating ulcers be not irritated by struggling, running, or any other means; for a vomiting of blood in this disease is attended with imminent danger, and for this reason should be guarded against in every manner.

# A. CORN. CELSI

DE MEDICINA  
LIBER QUARTUS.

## CAP. I.

DE HUMANI CORPORIS INTERIORIBUS  
SEDIBUS.

I. HACTENUS reperiuntur ea genera morborum, quæ in totis corporibus ita sunt, ut iis certæ sedes assignari non possint: nunc de iis dicam, quæ sunt in partibus. Facilius autem omnium interiorum morbi curationesque in notitiam venient, si prius eorum sedes breviter ostendero.

Caput igitur, eaque, quæ in ore sunt, non lingua tantummodo palatoque terminantur; sed etiam, quatenus oculis nostris exposita sunt. In dextra sinistraque circa guttur venæ grandes, quæ

ORDO.

QUARTUS LIBER  
AUR. COR. CELSI  
DE MEDICINA.

## CAP. I.

DE INTERIORIBUS SEDIBUS  
HUMANI CORPORIS.

HACTENUS ea genera morborum reperiuntur, quæ sunt ita in totis corporibus, ut certæ sedes non possint assignari iis: nunc dicam de iis, quæ sunt in partibus. Autem morbi omnium interiorum quæ curationes venient in notitiam facilius, si prius breviter ostendero sedes eorum.

Igitur caput, quæ ea (partes), quæ sunt in ore, terminantur non tantummodo lingua quæ palato, sed etiam, quatenus sunt exposita nostris oculis. In dextra quæ sinistra circa guttur (sunt) grandes venæ, quæ nominantur

TRANSLATION.

## THE FOURTH BOOK OF AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS ON MEDICINE.

### CHAP. I.

OF THE INTERNAL PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY.

HITHERTO those species of diseases have been treated of, which so often affect the whole body, that a determined locality cannot be assigned to them: I shall now speak of those which are local. Now the diseases and treatment of all internal parts will be more easily understood, when I shall have previously described briefly their *structure* and relative position.

Therefore the head, and those parts contained in the mouth, are bounded not only by the tongue and palate, but also, as far as they are exposed to our view. On the right and left of the throat are large veins which are named sphagitides or



σφαγιτίδες nominantur; itemque arteriæ, quas καρωτίδας vocant, sursum procedentes ultra aures feruntur. At in ipsis cervicibus glandulæ positæ sunt, quæ interdum cum dolore intumescunt.

Deinde duo itinera incipiunt: alterum, asperam arteriam nominant; alterum, stomachum. Arteria exterior ad pulmonem; stomachus interior ad ventriculum fertur: illa spiritum; hic cibum recipit. Quibus cum diversæ viæ sint, qua coeunt, exigua in arteria sub ipsis faucibus lingua est; quæ, cum spiramus, attollitur, cum cibum potionemque assumimus, arteriam claudit.

Ipsa autem arteria, dura et cartilaginosa, in gutture assurgit, ceteris partibus residit. Constat ex circulis quibusdam, compositis ad imaginem earum vertebrarum, quæ in spina sunt: ita tamen, ut ex parte exteriori aspera, ex interiori, stomachi modo lævis sit: eaque descendens ad præcordia cum pulmone committitur.

Is spongiosus, ideoque spiritus capax, et a tergo spinæ ipsi junctus, in duas fibras, unguæ bubulæ modo, dividitur.

## ORDO.

σφαγιτίδες (sphagitides); que item arteriæ quas vocant καρωτίδας (carotidas) procedentes sursum feruntur ultra aures. At glandulæ sunt positæ in cervicibus ipsis: quæ interdum intumescunt cum dolore.

Deinde duo itinera incipiunt: nominant alterum asperam arteriam (*trachea*); alterum, stomachum (*œsophagus*). Arteria exterior fertur ad pulmonem; stomachus interior (fertur) ad ventriculum. Illa recipit spiritum; hic cibum. Cum sint diversæ viæ quibus, quæ coeunt, est exigua lingula (*epiglottis*) in arteria sub faucibus ipsis; quæ, cum spiramus, attollitur; cum assumimus cibum que potionem, claudit arteriam.

Autem arteria (*trachea*) ipsa est dura et cartilaginosa, assurgit in gutture; residit (in) cæteris partibus. Constat ex quibusdam circulis, compositis ad imaginem earum vertebrarum, quæ sunt in spina: tamen ita, ut sit aspera ex exteriori parte; (sit) lævis ex interiori modo stomachi: que ea descendens committitur cum pulmone ad præcordia. Is (est) spongiosus, que ideo (est) capax spiritus, et junctus spinæ ipsi a tergo, dividitur in duas fibras, modo bubulæ unguæ.

## TRANSLATION.

*jugular*; and also arteries, which they call *carotides*, and proceeding upwards extend beyond the ears. But glands are situated in the neck itself which sometimes become painfully swollen.

Here two passages begin: they term one the rough artery, or *trachea*; the other, the stomach, or *œsophagus*. The *trachea* being situated more anteriorly passes into the lungs; the *œsophagus* is placed rather posteriorly, and conducts to the stomach: the former is for the reception of air, the latter for food. These two passages having a distinct course, where they come in contact, there is a small tongue or *epiglottis* affixed to the *trachea*, directly under the fauces: now this *valve* or *little tongue* is elevated when we breathe; but it effectually shuts the orifice of the *trachea* when we take food or drink.

The *trachea* itself is hard and cartilaginous, rises up in the throat, and recedes in other parts. It is composed of several imperfect circles, arranged in the form of those *vertebræ* which are in the spine: yet so that it is rough externally, and smooth internally, like the *œsophagus*: and in this manner descending the *præcordia*, it is connected with the lungs. These are spongy in their structure, and on that account capable of containing air, and being joined posteriorly to the spine, are divided into two lobes, resembling an ox's hoof.

Huic cor annexum est, natura musculosum, in pectore sub sinistro mamma situm; duosque quasi ventriculos habet. At sub corde atque pulmone, transversum ex valida membrana septum est, quod a præcordiis uterum diducit; idque nervosum, multis etiam venis per id discurrentibus, a superiore parte, non solum intestina, sed jecur quoque lienemque discernit. Hæc viscera proxime, sed infra tamen posita, dextra sinistraque sunt.

Jecur a dextra parte sub præcordiis ab ipso septo orsum, intrinsecus cavum, extrinsecus gibbum est: quod prominens leviter ventriculo insidet, et in quatuor fibras dividitur. Ex inferiore vero parte ei fel inhæret. At lienis sinistra, non eidem septo, sed intestino innexus est, natura mollis et rarus, longitudinis crassitudinisque modicæ; isque paulum a costarum regione in uterum excedens, ex maxima parte sub his conditur. Atque hæc quidem juncta sunt. Renes vero diversi; qui lumbis sub imis costis inhærent, a parte earum rotundi, ab altera resimi; qui et venosi sunt, et ventriculos habent, et tunicis super conteguntur.

## ORDO.

Cor est annexum huic, musculosum natura, situm in pectore sub sinistro mamma; que habet quasi duos ventriculos. At sub corde atque pulmone, est transversum septum (diaphragma) ex valida membrana, quod diducit uterum a præcordiis; idque, nervosum (que) etiam multis venis discurrentibus per id, non solum discernit intestina, a superiore parte, sed quoque jecur que lienem. Hæc viscera sunt proxime, sed tamen posita infra, dextra que sinistra.

Jecur orsum a dextra parte ab septo ipso sub præcordiis, est cavum intrinsecus, (est) gibbum extrinsecus. Quod prominens, insidet leviter ventriculo, et dividitur in quatuor fibras. Vero fel inhæret ei ex interiore parte. At lienis sinistra, non est annexus eidem septo, sed intestino, natura mollis et rarus, modicæ longitudinis que crassitudinis; que is excedens paulum a regione costarum in uterum, conditur ex maxima parte sub his. Atque quidem hæc sunt juncta. Vero renes (sunt) divisi; qui inhærent lumbis sub imis costis, rotundi a parte earum, resimi ab altera; qui sunt et venosi, et habent (duos) ventriculos, et conteguntur super tunicis.

## TRANSLATION.

With these lobes the HEART is connected by the *pulmonary vessels*: this is by nature a muscular organ, situated in the thorax under the left breast; and has two small cavities, named ventricles. But below the heart and lungs there is the transverse septum (*diaphragm*) composed of a strong membrane, which divides the abdomen from the præcordia, this being of a tendinous texture, and very vascular, separates not only the intestines, but also the liver and spleen from the superior parts. These viscera are in proximity, but yet placed beneath, on the right and left.

The liver having the origin from the diaphragm itself, on the right side under the præcordia, is internally concave, externally convex: which being prominent, slightly rests on the stomach, and is divided into four lobes. The gall-bladder adheres to it inferiorly. But the spleen being on the left, is not connected to the diaphragm, but to the intestine; is soft and incompact in its texture, of a moderate length and thinness; and advancing a little beyond the region of the ribs into the abdomen, is principally covered by them. Indeed these are in contact (1). But the kidneys are separate, which adhere to the loins below the last ribs, convex towards these and internally concave: they are vascular, containing two ventricles, and are invested with tunics.

Ac viscerum quidem hæ sedes sunt. Stomachus vero, qui intestinorum principium est, nervosus a septima spinæ vertebra incipit; circa præcordia cum ventriculo committitur. Ventriculus autem, qui receptaculum cibi est, constat ex duobus tergoribus; isque inter lienem et jecur positus est, utroque ex his paulum super eum ingrediente. Suntque etiam membranulæ tenues, per quas inter se tria ista connectuntur, jungunturque ei septo, quod transversum esse, supra posui. Inde ima ventriculi pars paulum in dexteriolem partem conversa, in summum intestinum coarctatur.

Hanc juncturam *πυλωρὸν* Græci vocant, quoniam portæ modo in inferiores partes ea, quæ excreturi sumus, emittit. Ab ea jejunum intestinum incipit, non ita implicitum: cui tale vocabulum est, quia numquam, quod accipit, continet; sed protinus in inferiores partes transmittit. Inde tenuius intestinum est, in sinus vehementer implicitum: orbes vero ejus per membranulas singuli cum interioribus connectuntur; qui in dexteriolem partem conversi, et e regione dexterioris coxæ finiti, superiores tamen partes magis complent.

## ORDO.

Ac quidem hæ sunt sedes viscerum. Vero stomachus (œsophagus), qui est principium intestinorum, (est) nervosus, incipit a septima vertebra spinæ; committitur circa præcordia cum ventriculo. Autem ventriculus, qui est receptaculum cibi, constat ex duobus tergoribus; que is est positus inter lienem et jecur, utroque ex his ingrediente paulum super eum. Que etiam sunt tenues membranulæ, per quas ista tria (viscera) connectuntur inter se, quæ junguntur ei septo, quod posui supra esse transversum. Inde ima pars ventriculi conversa paulum in dexteriolem partem, coarctatur in summum intestinum.

Græci vocant hanc juncturam *πυλωρὸν* (pylorus), quoniam, emittit ea quæ sumus excreturi, in inferiores partes, modo portæ. Jejunum intestinum incipit ab ea, non ita implicitum: cui tale vocabulum est, quia numquam continet, quod accipit; sed transmittit (quod accipit) protinus in inferiores partes. Inde est tenuius intestinum (ileum), vehementer implicitum in sinus: vero singuli orbes ejus connectuntur cum interioribus per membranulas; qui conversi in dexteriolem partem, et finiti e regione dexterioris coxæ, tamen complent superiores partes magis.

## TRANSLATION.

These then are the relative situations of the viscera. Now the œsophagus which is the commencement of the alimentary canal, being a membranous tube, arises opposite the seventh vertebra of the spine, and is united with the stomach about the præcordia. The stomach which is the receptacle of food, consists of two coats, and is situated between the spleen and the liver; each of these passing a little over it. There are also some fine membranes, by which these three are connected together, and joined to the transverse septum, which I have described above. Then the inferior curve of the stomach converging a little towards the right side, becomes contracted and forms the upper intestine (*or duodenum*).

This junction between the stomach and duodenum, the Greeks call pylorus, because it discharges the office of a door keeper to the lower intestines, by permitting the escape of such things, which we are about to excrete. After the duodenum, begins the jejunum, not so much convoluted: which, as the name imports, never retains what it receives; but immediately transmits it into the inferior parts. Thence begins the smaller intestine, or ileum, highly convoluted; each of whose convolutions being held down by small connecting membranes; which being turned towards the right hypogastric region terminates in the great intestine, yet occupy more the superior parts.



Deinde id intestinum cum crassiore altero transverso committitur, quod a dextra parte incipiens, in sinisteriorem pervium et longum est, in dexteriorem non est; ideoque cæcum nominatur. At id, quod pervium est, late fusum atque sinuatum, minusque quam superiora intestina nervosum, ab utraque parte huc atque illuc volutum, magis tamen sinisteriores inferioresque partes tenens, contingit jecur atque ventriculū: deinde cum quibusdam membranulis a sinistro rene venientibus jungitur; atque hinc dextra recurvatum in imo dirigitur, qua excernit; ideoque id ibi rectum intestinum nominatur.

Contegit vero universa hæc omentum, ex inferiore parte læve et strictum, ex superiore mollius; cui adeps quoque innascitur; quæ sensu, sicut cerebrum quoque et medulla, caret. At a renibus singulæ venæ, colore albæ, ad vesicam feruntur: οὐρητιδες Græci vocant, quod per eas inde descendentem urinam in vesicam destillare concipiunt. Vesica autem ipso sinu nervosa et duplex, cervice plena atque carnosa, jungitur per venas cum intestino, eoque osse, quod pubi subest: ipsa soluta atque liberior est: aliter in viris atque in

## ORDO.

Deinde id intestinum committitur cum altero crassiore transverso, quod incipiens a dextra parte, est longum et pervium in sinisteriorem, non est in dexteriorem; que ideo nominatur cæcum. At id (intestinum) quod est pervium, late fusum atque sinuatum, que minus nervosum quam superiora intestina, volutum ab utraque parte huc atque illuc, tamen tenens sinisteriores que inferiores partes magis, contingit jecur atque ventriculū: deinde jungitur cum quibusdam membranulis venientibus a sinistro rene; atque hinc recurvatum in dextra dirigitur in imo, qua excernit: que ideo id nominatur ibi rectum intestinum.

Vero omentum contegit universa hæc, læve et strictum ex inferiore parte, mollius ex superiore; cui adeps quoque innascitur; quæ caret sensu, sicut cerebrum et quoque medulla. At singulæ venæ, albæ (in) colore feruntur ad vesicam a renibus; Græci vocant οὐρητιδες (ureteras), quod concipiunt urinam descendentem inde per eas destillare in vesicam. Autem vesica (est) nervosa et duplex (in) sinu ipso, plena atque carnosa cervice, jungitur cum intestino per venas, que eo osse, quod subest pubi: est soluta ipsa atque liberior: posita aliter in viris atque feminis.

## TRANSLATION.

Afterwards, this intestine is joined by a thicker transverse one, which commences on the right side, is pervious and extends towards the left, forming an arch, which is not so towards the right, and for this reason is named the cæcum. But that portion which is open, being of large capacity and sinuous, less tendinous than the upper intestines, and arranged in various convolutions on each side, yet occupying the left and lower parts most, touches the liver and the stomach: then it is connected with some small membranes coming from the left kidney; and taking a curve to the right forms the descending portion, where it excretes the fæces; and on that account is there termed the straight gut or rectum.

All these parts are covered by omentum, the under surface of which is smooth and contracted. the upper softer: and there is also fat formed on it, which like the brain and marrow is destitute of feeling. Each kidney sends a tube of a white colour to be inserted into the bladder: the Greeks call them ureters, because they imagine the urine to be conveyed by these into the bladder. The body of this organ is membranous and duplex itself, but full and fleshy about the cervix, and is connected by veins (*cellular tissue*) to the rectum, and to that bone, which is under the pubes by the two anterior ligaments: this organ in itself is loose and very free: be-

fœminis posita. Nam in viris juxta rectum intestinum est, potius in sinistram partem inclinata; in fœminis super genitale earum sita est, supraque lapsa, ab ipsa vulva sustinetur.

Tum in masculis iter urinæ spatiosius et compressus a cervice hujus descendit ad colem: in fœminis brevius et plenius, super vulvæ cervicem se ostendit. Vulva autem in virginibus quidem admodum exigua est: in mulieribus vero, nisi ubi gravidæ sunt, non multo major, quam ut manu comprehendatur. Ea, recta tenuataque cervice, quem canalem vocant, contra mediam alvum orsa, inde paulum ad dexterio-rem coxam convertitur; deinde super rectum intestinum progressa, iliis fœminæ latera sua innectit. Ipsa autem ilia inter coxas et pubem imo ventre posita sunt.

A quibus ac pube abdomen sursum versus ad præcordia pervenit; ab exteriore parte, evidenti cute; ab interiore levi membrana inclusum, quæ omento jungitur; περιτόναιος autem a Græcis nominatur.

#### ORDO.

Nam in viris est juxta rectum intestinum, inclinata potius in sinistram partem; est sita in fœminis super genitale earum, quæ, lapsa supra, sustinetur ab vulva ipsa.

Tum iter urinæ descendit spatiosius et compressius a cervice hujus ad colem in masculis: brevius et plenius in fœminis, ostendit se super cervicem vulvæ. Autem vulva in virginibus quidem est admodum exigua: vero non est multo major, quam ut comprehendatur manu, in mulieribus, nisi ubi sunt gravidæ. Ea orsa, contra mediam alvum, recta que tenuata cervice, quem vocant canalem, inde convertitur paulum ad dexterio-rem coxam; deinde progressa super rectum intestinum, innectit sua latera iliis fœminæ. Autem ilia ipsa sunt posita imo ventre inter coxas et pubem.

A quibus ac pube abdomen pervenit sursum versus ad præcordia; inclusum evidenti cute, ab exteriore parte; levi membrana ab interiore, quæ jungitur omento; autem nominatur a Græcis περιτόναιος (peritoneum).

#### TRANSLATION.

ing placed differently in males from those in females. For in the male it is in juxta position to the rectum, rather inclining to the left side: in the female it is placed above the genital organs, and is supported by the uterus itself as it glides over it.

Now in the male the urethra is much longer and narrower, and proceeds from the neck of the bladder to the penis: in females it is shorter and more capacious, and shows itself above the neck of the womb. The uterus in virgins, indeed, is very small; even in women, unless they be pregnant, not much larger, than what may be grasped in the hand. It commences opposite the median line of the abdomen, with a straight and narrowed neck, termed the vagina, and has a slight inclination towards the right hip; then having proceeded over the rectum, it unites its sides to the ilia of the female.

The ilia themselves are placed between the hips and pubes at the lower part of the abdomen. From which and the pubes, the abdomen extends upwards to the præcordia; externally covered by cuticle which is evident; internally it is lined by a fine membrane, which is joined to (*forms*) the omentum, and is named by the Greeks peritonæum.

## CAP. II.

DE CURATIONE MORBORUM, QUI NASCUNTUR A CAPITIBUS.

1. His veluti in conspectum quemdam, quatenus scire curanti necessarium est, adductis, remedia singularum laborantium partium exsequar, orsus a capite: sub quo nomine nunc significo eam partem, quæ capillo tegitur: nam oculorum, aurium, dentium dolor, et si quis similis est, alias erit explicandus.

In capite autem interdum acutus et pestifer morbus est, quam κεφαλαίαν Græci vocant: cujus notæ sunt, horror validus, nervorum resolutio, oculorum caligo, mentis alienatio, vomitus, sic, ut vox supprimatur; vel sanguinis ex naribus cursus, sic, ut corpus frigescat, anima deficiat: præter hæc, dolor intolerabilis, maxime circa tempora, vel occipitium. Interdum autem in capite longa imbecillitas, sed neque gravis, neque periculosa, per hominis ætatem est: interdum gravior dolor, sed brevis, neque tamen mortiferus; qui vel vino, vel cruditate, vel frigore, vel igne, aut

## ORDO.

## CAP. II.

DE CURATIONIBUS MORBORUM, QUI NASCUNTUR A CAPITIBUS.

1. His adductis veluti in quemdam conspectum, exsequar remedia singularum laborantium partium quatenus est necessarium curanti scire, orsus a capite: sub quo nomine significo eam partem, quæ tegitur a capillo: nam si est quis dolor oculorum, aurium, dentium, et similis, erit explicandus alias.

Autem interdum est acutus et pestifer morbus in capite, quam Græci vocant κεφαλαίαν (cephalaia). Cujus validus horror, resolutio nervorum, caligo oculorum, alienatio mentis, vomitus, sic, ut vox supprimatur, sunt notæ; vel cursus sanguinis ex naribus, sic, ut corpus frigescat, (que) anima deficiat: præter hæc, intolerabilis dolor, maxime circa tempora, vel occipitium. Autem interdum est longa imbecillitas in capite, sed per ætatem hominis (est) neque gravis, neque periculosa. Interdum (est) gravior, sed brevis dolor, tamen neque (est) mortiferus; qui contrahitur vel vino, vel cruditate, vel frigore, vel igne, aut

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

## TREATMENT OF DISEASES ARISING FROM THE HEAD.

1. HAVING demonstrated those parts as it were to the view, as far as it is necessary for a physician to know them, I shall proceed to the treatment of the several parts affected, commencing with the head: under which I designate that part only which is covered with hair: for pains of the eyes, ears, teeth, and the like will be explained elsewhere.

Now there is sometimes an acute and destructive disease in the head, which the Greeks call cephalia: the symptoms of which are a violent shivering, nervous debility, dimness of sight, mental alienation, vomiting, suppression of the voice, or epistaxis, with coldness of the body, and syncope: besides these, there is an insupportable pain, especially around the temples, or occiput. But there is sometimes a permanent debility of the head, during the whole of a person's life, which is neither severe nor dangerous. Sometimes there is a more violent pain, but of short duration, neither is it fatal; this may arise either from wine or indigestion, or cold,



sole contrahitur. Hique omnes dolores modo in febre, modo sine hac sunt; modo in toto capite, modo in parte; interdum sic, ut oris quoque proximam partem excrucient.

Præter hæc etiamnum invenitur genus, quod potest longum esse; ubi humor cutem inflat, eaque intumescit, et prementi digito cedit: *ὑδροκέφαλον* Græci appellant. Ex his id, quod secundo loco positum est, dum leve est, qua sit ratione curandum, dixi, cum persequer ea, quæ sani homines in imbecillitate partis alicujus facere deberent. Quæ vero auxilia sint capitis, ubi cum febre dolor est, eo loco explicatum est, quo februm curatio exposita est. Nunc de ceteris dicendum est.

Ex quibus id, quod acutum est, et id, quod supra consuetudinem intenditur, idque, quod ex subita causa, etsi non pestiferum, tamen vehemens est, primam curationem habet, qua sanguis mittatur. Sed id, nisi intolerabilis dolor est, supervacuum est: satiusque est abstinere a cibo; si fieri potest, etiam a potione; si non potest, aquam bibere. Si postero die dolor remanet, alvum ducere, sternutamenta evocare, nihil

## ORDO.

sole. Que omnes hi dolores sunt modo in febre, modo sine hac: modo excrucient in toto capite, modo in parte; interdum sic, ut quoque excrucient proximam partem oris.

Etiamnum præter hæc, genus (morbi) invenitur, quod potest esse longum; ubi humor inflat cutem, que ea intumescit, et cedit digito prementi: Græci appellant *ὑδροκέφαλον* (hydrocephalus). Ex his id, quod est positum (in) secundo loco, dixi, qua ratione sit curandum, dum est leve, cum persequer ea, quæ, sani homines deberent facere in imbecillitate alicujus partis. Vero quæ sint auxilia capitis, ubi est dolor cum febre, est explicatum eo loco, quo curatio februm est exposita. Nunc est dicendum de cæteris.

Ex quibus id, quod est acutum, et id, quod intenditur supra consuetudinem, que id, quod (est ortus) ex subita causa, etsi non est pestiferum, tamen (est) vehemens, habet primam curationem, qua sanguis mittatur. Sed id, est supervacuum, nisi est intolerabilis dolor: que est satius, abstinere a cibo; (que) etiam a potione, si potest fieri; si non potest (abstinere), bibere aquam. Si dolor remanet postero die, ducere alvum, (que) evocare sternutamenta, assumere nihil, nisi

## TRANSLATION.

or heat, or a scorching sun. All these pains are sometimes accompanied with, and sometimes without fever; sometimes in the whole orbit, sometimes in a part; sometimes it extends even with excruciating torment to the contiguous part of the face.

Besides these, there is another genus to be met with, which may become chronic: this is when a fluid distends the skin, the part appears tumefied and yields to the pressure of the finger: the Greeks call this hydrocephalus. I have already treated of these kinds mentioned in the second place, when the complaint is light, where I have explained those methods to be observed by people in ordinary health having some partial weakness. Also the requisite remedies when head-ache is accompanied with fever, have been explained in that part which came under the treatment of fevers. Now I shall proceed with the others.

The first step to be taken with that which is acute, and that which is unusually violent, and that arising from some sudden cause, although not fatal, yet being very severe, is to let blood. But that remedy is unnecessary, unless the pain be insupportable: and it is advisable to abstain from food; and also from drink if possible; if not, to drink water. If on the following day the pain still remain, let the bowels be relieved by injection; sneezing be excited; and nothing taken but

assumere, nisi aquam. Sæpe enim dies unus aut alter totum dolorem hac ratione discutit; utique si ex vino vel cruditate origo est.

Si vero in his auxilii parum est, tonderi oportet ad cutem: deinde considerandum est, quæ causa dolorem excitarit. Si calor, aqua frigida multa perfundere caput expedit: spongiam concavam imponere, subinde in aqua frigida expressam: ungere rosa et aceto, vel potius his tinctam lanam succidam imponere, aliave refrigerantia cataplasmata.

At si frigus nocuit, caput oportet perfundere aqua calida marina, vel certe salsa, aut in qua laurus decocta sit: tum caput vehementer perfricare: deinde calido oleo implere et veste velare. Quidam etiam id devinciunt; alii cervicalibus vestimentisque onerant, et sic levantur; alios calida cataplasmata adjuvant. Ergo etiam, ubi causa incognita est, videre oportet, refrigerantia magis, an calefacientia leniant, et iis uti, quæ experimentum approbarit.

At si parum causa discernitur, perfundere caput, primum aqua calida, sicut supra præceptum est, vel salsa, vel ex lauro decocta; tum frigida posca.

## ORDO.

aquam. Enim unus aut alter dies sæpe discutit totum dolorem hac ratione; utique, si origo est ex vino vel cruditate.

Vero si est parum auxilii in his, oportet tondere ad cutem: deinde est considerandum, quæ causa excitarit dolorem. Si calor (est causa) expedit perfundere multa frigida aqua caput: imponere concavam spongiam, subinde expressam frigida aqua: ungere rosa et aceto, vel potius imponere succidam lanam tinctam his, ve alia refrigerantia cataplasmata.

At si frigus nocuit, oportet perfundere calida marina aqua caput, vel certe salsa, aut (aqua) in qua laurus sit decocta: tum perfricare caput vehementer: deinde implere calido oleo et velare veste. Quidam etiam devinciunt id; alii onerant cervicalibus que vestimentis, et sic levantur; calida cataplasmata adjuvant alios. Ergo etiam, ubi causa est incognita, oportet videre, an refrigerantia leniant magis, (an) calefacientia, et uti iis, quæ experimentum approbarit.

At si causa discernitur parum, (est) perfundere caput, primum calida aqua, sicut est præceptum supra, vel salsa (aqua), vel decocta ex lauro; tum frigida posca.

## TRANSLATION.

water: for this treatment often removes the pain in a day or two; especially if it arose from wine or indigestion.

But if these remedies have afforded but little relief, the hair should be cut close to the scalp: then we should consider well the exciting cause of pain. If heat, it is expedient to pour plenty of cold water over the head; to apply a concave sponge occasionally expressed out of cold water; to annoint with rose oil and vinegar, or rather lay on rancid wool dipped in these, or some refrigerant cataplasms.

But if cold have brought on the malady, it will be proper to pour warm sea water upon the head, or at least salt water, or water in which laurel has been boiled: then to rub the head smartly; afterwards to drench it with warm oil, and to cover it. Some even bind it up; others load it with neckcloths (2), or napkins, and are in this way relieved; others find relief in warm cataplasms: and when the cause is unknown, it is proper to try, whether refrigerants, or calefacients give most relief, and to select those which experience shall have approved of.

But if the cause be obscure, it is proper to drench the head first with warm water, as above prescribed, or with salt water, or laurel water; then with cold

Illa in omni vetusto capitis dolore communia sunt: sternutamenta excitare, inferiores partes vehementer perfricare, gargarizare iis, quæ salivam movent, cucurbitulas temporibus et occipitio admove- re, sanguinem ex naribus detrahere, resina subinde tempora pervellere, et imposito sinapi exulcerare ea, quæ male habent, ante linteolo subjecto, ne vehementer arrodat, candentibus ferramentis, ubi dolor est, ulcera excitare, cibum permodicum cum aqua sumere: ubi levatus est dolor, in balneum ire, ibi multa aqua prius calida, deinde frigida per caput perfundi: si discussus ex toto dolor est, etiam ad vinum reverti; sed postea semper, antequam quidquam aliud, aquam bibere.

Dissimile est id genus, quod humorem in caput contrahit. In hoc tondere ad cutem necessarium est; deinde imponere sinapi, sic, ut exulceret: si id parum profuit, scalpello utendum est. Illa cum hydropicis communia sunt, ut exerceatur, insudet, vehementer perfricetur, cibus potionibusque utatur urinam præcipue moventibus.

2. Circa faciem vero morbus innascitur, quem Græci κυνικὸν σπασμὸν nomi-

#### ORDO.

Illa sunt communia in omni vetusto dolore capitis: excitare sternutamenta, perfricare inferiores partes vehementer, gargarizare iis, quæ movent salivam, admove- re cucurbitulas temporibus et occipitio, detrahere sanguinem ex naribus, pervellere tempora subinde resina, et exulcerare ea sinapi imposito, quæ habent male, linteolo subjecto ante, ne arrodat vehementer, ubi est dolor, excitare ulcera, candentibus ferramentis, sumere modicum cibum cum aqua: ubi dolor est levatus, ire in balneum, ibi caput perfundi multa calida aqua prius, deinde frigida. Si dolor est discussus ex toto, etiam reverti ad vinum; sed postea bibere aquam semper, antequam quidquam aliud.

Id genus est dissimile, quod contrahit humorem in caput. In hoc est necessarium tondere ad cutem: deinde imponere sinapi, sic ut exulceret: si id profuit parum, est utendum scalpello. Illa sunt communia cum hydropicis, ut exerceatur, insudet, perfricetur vehementer, que præcipue utatur cibus (que) potionibus moventibus urinam.

2. Vero morbus innascitur circa faciem, quem Græci nominant κυνικὸν σπασμὸν (cynicus spasmus).

#### TRANSLATION.

vinegar and water. The following are of universal application in all chronic pains of the head: to excite sneezing, to rub the lower extremities briskly, to gargle with those things which promote the saliva, to apply the cupping glasses to the temples and occiput, to extract blood from the nostrils (3), to vellicate the temples occasionally with resin, and to blister those parts which have been affected, with sinapisms, first applying a bit of lint below, lest it should corrode violently; to ulcerate those parts where the pain is with hot irons; and to eat very moderately, and drink water: when the pain has been relieved, to go into a bath, there to have plenty of warm water poured over the head, then cold. If the pain be entirely removed, he may return to the use of wine; but afterwards, to drink water always, before any thing else.

That is a different species, in which there is a collection of fluid in the head. Here it is necessary to cut the hair close to the scalp: then sinapisms to be applied, in order to excite ulceration: if that appear to have done but little good, incisions should be made with a scalpel. The following remedies are of general application in dropsical cases, let the patient be exercised, that he may perspire, and to be rubbed forcibly, and to select that food and drink, best calculated to promote the urine.

2. There is a disease incident to the face, which the Greeks have named the



nant. Is cum acuta fere febre oritur; os cum motu quodam pervertitur; ideoque nihil aliud est, quam distentio oris. Accedit crebra coloris in facie totoque corpore mutatio; somnus in promptu est. In hoc sanguinem mittere optimum est: si finitum eo malum non est, ducere alvum: si ne sic quidem discussum est, albo veratro vomitum movere.

Præter hæc necessarium est vitare solem, lassitudinem, vinum. Si discussum his non est, utendum est cursu; frictione in eo, quod læsum est, leni et multa; in reliquis partibus breviori, sed vehementi. Prodest etiam movere sternutamenta; caput radere; idque perfundere aqua calida, vel marina, vel certe salsa, sic, ut ei sulphur quoque adjiciatur; post perfusionem iterum perfricari; sinapi manducare; eodemque tempore affectis oris partibus ceratum, integris idem sinapi, donec arrodat, imponere. Cibus aptissimus ex media materia est.

3. At si lingua resoluta est, quod interdum per se, interdum ex morbo aliquo fit, sic, ut sermo hominis non explicetur; oportet gargarizare ex aqua, in qua vel thymum, vel hyssopum, vel nepeta decocta sit; aquam bibere;

## ORDO.

Is oritur fere cum acuta febre. Os pervertitur cum quodam motu, que ideo est nihil aliud, quam distentio oris. Crebra mutatio coloris accedit in facie que toto corpore; somnus est in promptu. In hoc est optimum mittere sanguinem. Si malum non est finitum eo, ducere alvum: si ne quidem est discussum sic, movere vomitum albo veratro.

Præter hæc est necessarium vitare solem, lassitudinem, vinum. Si non est discussum his, est utendum cursu; et leni (et) multa frictione in eo, quod est læsum; in reliquis partibus breviori, sed vehementi. Etiam prodest movere sternutamenta; radere caput; que perfundere calida, vel marina, vel certe salsa aqua id, sic ut quoque sulphur adjiciatur ei; post perfusionem perfricare iterum; manducare sinapi; que eodem tempore imponere ceratum affectis partibus oris, item (imponere) sinapi integris (partibus), donec arrodat. Aptissimus cibus est ex media materia.

3. At si lingua est resoluta, quod interdum fit per se, interdum ex aliquo morbo, sic, ut sermo hominis non explicetur; oportet gargarizare ex aqua, in qua vel thymum, vel hyssopum, vel nepeta sit decocta; bibere aquam;

## TRANSLATION.

cynic spasm. It is generally accompanied with an acute fever; the mouth being distorted by a certain morbid action; and on that account is nothing else than a convulsion of the mouth. A frequent change of colour takes place in the face and whole body, with a great propensity to sleep. The best remedy in this disease is to let blood: if the disease be not terminated by that, to give an injection; and if this also have failed to discuss the malady, to excite vomiting by white hellebore.

Besides all these, it is necessary to avoid the sun, lassitude, and wine. If the disease have resisted all these, running must be tried; with gentle and long continued friction on the part affected; but for a shorter space and more violent on the other parts. It is also beneficial to excite sneezing; to shave the head; and to pour either warm sea water over it, or at least sulphurated salt water; after this affusion he is to be rubbed again; to masticate mustard, at the same time to apply cerate to the affected parts, and mustard to the sound, until it blisters. The most proper food will be from the middle class.

3. But if the tongue be paralysed, so as to obstruct the pronunciation, which sometimes happens spontaneously, sometimes the effect of another disease, it will be necessary to gargle with a decoction of thyme, or of hyssop, or of cat-mint; to

caput, et os, et ea, quæ sub mento sunt, et cervicem vehementer perfricare; lasere linguam ipsam linere; manducare, quæ sunt acerrima, id est sinapi, allium, cepam; magna vi luctari, ut verba exprimantur; exerceri retento spiritu; caput sæpe aqua frigida perfundere; nonnumquam multam esse radiculam, deinde vomere.

4. Destillat autem humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est; interdum in fauces, quod pejus est; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est. Si in nares destillavit, tenuis per has pituita profluit, caput leviter dolet, gravitas ejus sentitur, frequentia sternutamenta sunt. Si in fauces, has exasperat, tussiculam movet. Si in pulmonem, præter sternutamenta, et tussim, est etiam capitis gravitas, lassitudo, sitis, æstus, biliosa urina.

Aliud autem, quamvis non multum distans, malum, gravedo est. Hæc nares claudit, vocem obtundit, tussim siccam movet: sub eadem salsa est saliva, sonant aures, venæ moventur in capite, turbida urina est. Hæc omnia *νοβύλας* Hippocrates nominat: nunc

## ORDO.

perfricare caput, et os, et ea, quæ sunt sub mento, et cervicem vehementer; linere linguam ipsam lasere; manducare, quæ sunt acerrima, id est sinapi, allium, cepam: luctari magna vi, ut verba exprimantur: exerceri spiritu retento, perfundere caput sæpe frigida aqua; nonnumquam esse multam radiculam, deinde vomere.

4. Autem interdum humor destillat in nares de capite, quod est leve; interdum in fauces, quod est pejus; etiam interdum in pulmonem, quod est pessimum. Si destillavit in nares, tenuis pituita profluit per has, caput dolet leviter, gravitas ejus sentitur, sunt frequentia sternutamenta. Si (destillavit) in fauces, exasperat has, movet tussiculam. Si (destillavit) in pulmonem, præter sternutamenta et tussim, est etiam gravitas capitis, lassitudo, sitis, æstus, biliosa urina.

Autem gravedo est aliud malum quamvis non multum distans. Hæc claudit nares, obtundit vocem, movet siccam tussim: vero sub eadem saliva est salsa, aures sonant, venæ moventur in capite, urina est turbida. Hippocrates nominat

## TRANSLATION.

drink water; to rub the head and face, and those parts which are under the chin and neck briskly; to besmear the tongue itself with assafœtida: to chew the most acrid things, such as mustard, garlick, onion; let his utmost efforts be exercised in expressing the words distinctly; during exercise to retain his breathing; cold affusion to be applied frequently to the head; sometimes to eat liberally of radishes, and then to vomit.

4. Sometimes there is a humour discharged from the head into the nose, which is only a slight inconvenience; sometimes into the fauces, which is worse; sometimes even into the lungs, which is the worst of all. If it have dropped down into the nostrils, a slight discharge takes place from them, a slight pain is felt in the head with a sensation of heaviness, and sneezings are frequent. If upon the fauces, it irritates them, and excites a slight cough. If into the lungs, besides the sneezings and cough, there is also a heaviness of the head, lassitude, thirst, heat, and bilious urine.

But a gravedo, although it does not differ much, is nevertheless another disease. This obstructs the nostrils, renders the voice obtuse, and excites a dry cough: at the same time the saliva is salt, there is a noise in the ears, the veins (*arteries*) of the head are excited, and the urine is turbid. Hippocrates named all these affec-

video apud Græcos in gravedine hoc nomen servari; destillationem, κατὰσταγμὸν appellari.

Hæc autem et brevia, et si neglecta sunt, longa esse consuerunt. Nihil pestiferum est, nisi quod pulmonem exulceravit. Ubi aliquid ejusmodi sensimus, protinus abstinere a sole, balneo, vino, venere debemus: inter quæ unctione, et assueto cibo nihilominus uti licet. Ambulatione tantum acri, sed tecta utendum est, et post eam caput atque os supra quinquagies perfricandum. Raroque fit, ut si biduo, vel certe triduo nobis temperavimus, id vitium non levetur.

Quo levato, si in destillatione crassa facta pituita est, vel in gravedine nares magis patent, balneo utendum est, multaue aqua prius calida, post egelida, fovendum os, caputque; deinde cum cibo pleniore vinum bibendum. At si æque tenuis quarto die pituita est, vel nares æque clausæ videntur, assumendum est vinum Aminæum austereum; deinde rursus biduo aqua; post quæ ad balneum, et ad consuetudinem revertendum est.

Neque tamen illis ipsis diebus, quibus aliqua omittenda sunt, expedit

## ORDO.

omnia hæc κορυζας (coryza): nunc video hoc nomen servari in gravedine apud Græcos: destillationem, appellari κατὰσταγμὸν (catastagnus).

Autem et hæc consuerunt esse brevia, et si sunt neglecta, longa. Nihil est pestiferum, nisi quod exulceravit pulmonem. Ubi sensimus aliquid ejusmodi, debemus protinus abstinere a sole, balneo, vino, venere: inter quæ nihilominus licet uti unctione, et assueto cibo. Est tantum utendum acri ambulatione, sed tecta, et post eam caput atque os (est) perfricandum supra quinquagies. Que raro fit, ut id vitium non levetur nobis, si temperavimus biduo, ve certe triduo.

Quo levato, si pituita est facta crassa in destillatione, vel nares magis patent, in gravedine, est utendum balneo, quæ os fovendum quæ caput, multa aqua prius calida, post egelida; deinde bibendum vinum cum pleniore cibo. At si pituita est æque tenuis quarto die, vel nares videntur æque clausæ, est assumendum Aminæum vinum, austereum; deinde aqua (est assumenda) rursus biduo, post quæ est revertendum ad balneum, et ad consuetudinem.

Neque tamen expedit agere tamquam ægros, illis diebus ipsis, quibus aliqua sunt omit-

## TRANSLATION.

tions "CORYZÆ": I observe that this term is now applied by the Greeks to gravedo, and catarrhs are called by them catastagmi.

These are common affections, and generally of short duration, and if they be neglected, may continue long. None of them are dangerous, unless they produce ulceration of the lungs. Whenever we feel any thing of this kind we should immediately avoid the sun, the bath, wine, and venery: at the same time unction may be used, and the usual diet. The patient must be exercised by brisk walking, but under a cover, and after that the head and face to be rubbed at least fifty times. And it seldom happens, if we have restrained ourselves for two or three days at most, that the disease is not mitigated.

This relief being obtained, if in catarrh the rheum become thick, or in a gravedo, the nostrils are more free, the bath may be employed then, and the head and face freely fomented, first with warm water, afterwards with tepid; after which, wine may be given and a more liberal diet. But if the discharge be equally thin on the fourth day, or the nostrils appear no less obstructed, austere Aminæan(4) wine should be taken; afterwards water to be given for two days again; after which he may return to the bath, and his ordinary habits.

Neither is it expedient to confine the patient to the strict regimen of an invalid



tamquam ægros agere; sed cetera omnia quasi sanis facienda sunt, præterquam si diutius aliquem, et vehementius ista sollicitare consuerunt: huic enim quædam curiosior observatio necessaria est. Igitur huic, si in nares vel in fauces destillavit, præter ea, quæ supra retuli, protinus primis diebus multum ambulandum est; perfricandæ vehementer inferiores partes; levior frictio adhibenda thoraci erit; levior capiti; demenda assueto cibo pars dimidia; sumenda ova, amyllum, similiaque, quæ pituitam faciunt crassiorem; siti contra, quanta maxima sustineri potest, pugnandum.

Ubi per hæc idoneus aliquis balneo factus, eoque usus est, adjiciendus est cibo pisciculus, aut caro; sic tamen, ne protinus justus modus cibi sumatur: vino meraco copiosius utendum est. At si in pulmonem quoque destillat, multo magis et ambulatione et frictione opus est; eademque adhibita ratione in cibis, si non satis illi proficiunt, acrioribus utendum est; magis somno indulgendum, abstinendumque a negotiis omnibus; aliquando, sed serius, balneum tentandum.

## ORDO.

tenda; sed omnia cetera sunt facienda quasi sanis, præterquam si ista consueverunt sollicitare aliquem diutius, et vehementius: enim huic quædam curiosior observatio est necessaria. Igitur si destillavit in nares vel in fauces, præter ea, quæ retuli supra, multum ambulandum est huic protinus primis diebus; inferiores partes perfricandæ vehementius; levior frictio erit adhibenda thoraci; levior capiti; dimidia pars demenda assueto cibo; ova, amyllum, quæ similia, quæ faciunt crassiorem pituitam, sumenda; pugnandum (est) contra siti, quanta maxima potest sustineri.

Ubi per hæc aliquis est factus idoneus balneo, quæ est usus eo, pisciculus est adjiciendus cibo, aut caro; sic tamen, ne sumatur protinus (quam) justus modus cibi: utendum est copiosius meraco vino. At si destillat in pulmonem quoque, est opus multo magis et ambulatione, et frictione; quæ eadem ratione adhibita in cibis, si illi non proficiunt satis, utendum est acrioribus; indulgendum (est) magis somno, quæ abstinendum ab omnibus negotiis; aliquando, balneum tentandum (est), sed serius.

## TRANSLATION.

even on those days, on which some things are prohibited; but in every other respect, as if they were in ordinary health, except that person, who is more liable to be attacked longer and more severely by these complaints: for such, a more particular treatment will be requisite. Therefore, when the defluxion of humours have descended into the nostrils or fauces, besides those things which I have stated above, the patient should walk much on the first days of his indisposition: to rub the inferior parts briskly, the friction must be more gentle on the chest, and gentler still on the head: his usual diet must be diminished by one half: eggs, starch, and similar nutrients should be taken which generate a thicker phlegm; he must resist thirst to the utmost of his ability.

When a patient has been rendered a fit subject for the bath by these means, and has used it, a little fish may be added to his food, or even flesh, provided that he do not take his ordinary quantity at once: pure wine may be taken more liberally. But if the disease fall upon the lungs, there is a greater necessity for walking, and friction; and the same attention paid to the food; if these things have not the desired effect, he must use more powerful stimulants; to indulge more in sleep, and to abstain from all business; sometimes to try a bath, but at a later period.

In gravedine autem, primo die quiescere, neque esse, neque bibere, caput velare, fauces lana circumdare: postero die surgere, abstinere a potione, aut, si res coegerit, non ultra heminam aquæ assumere: tertio die panis non ita multum ex parte interiore cum pisciculo, vel levi carne sumere, aquam bibere: si quis sibi temperare non potuerit, quo minus pleniore victu utatur, vomere: ubi in balneum ventum est, multa calida aqua caput et os fovere usque ad sudorem: tum ad vinum redire. Post quæ vix fieri potest, ut idem incommodum maneat: sed si manserit, utendum erit cibus frigidis, aridis, levibus, humore quam minimo, servatis frictionibus exercitationibusque, quæ in omni tali genere valetudinis necessariæ sunt.

## ORDO.

Autem in gravedine (debet) quiescere primo die, neque esse, neque bibere, velare caput, circumdare fauces lana: postero die surgere, abstinere a potione, aut, si res coegerit, non assumere ultra heminam aquæ: tertio die, non sumere ita multum panis, ex interiore parte, cum pisciculo, vel levi carne, bibere aquam: si quis non potuerit temperare sibi, quo utatur minus pleniore victu, vomere: ubi ventum est in balneum, fovere caput et os multa calida aqua usque ad sudorem: tum redire ad vinum. Post hæc vix potest fieri, ut idem incommodum maneat: sed si manserit, erit utendum cibus, frigidis, aridis, levibus, humore quam minimo, frictionibus que exercitationibus servatis, quæ sunt necessariæ in omni genere valetudinis.

## TRANSLATION.

But in a grævedo it will be necessary to enjoin rest on the first day, neither to eat nor drink, to cover the head, and to surround the throat with wool (*flannel*): on the following day to rise, and to refrain from drink, or, if the necessity of the case be urgent, not to exceed a hemina (5) of water: on the third day to take a little of the crumb of bread, with a small fish, or light flesh, and to drink water: if a person cannot restrain himself from eating freely, he must vomit: when he is about to take a bath, let him foment his head and face with plenty of warm water until perspiration comes on: after this he may resume his wine. After which it rarely happens, that the same indisposition shall remain: but if it should, it will be necessary to give cold, dry, light food, with as little liquid as possible, the friction and exercise being still continued, which are necessary in every complaint of this nature.

## CAP. III.

## ORDO.

## DE CERVICIS MORBIS.

## CAP. III.

## DE MORBIS CERVICIS.

A CAPITE transitus ad cervicem est; quæ gravibus admodum morbis obnoxia

TRANSITUS est a capite ad cervicem; quæ est admodum ob-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

## DISEASES OF THE NECK.

FROM the head we pass to the neck, which is subject to very severe diseases.

est. Neque tamen alius importunior acutiorque morbus est, quam is, qui quodam rigore nervorum, modo caput scapulis, modo mentum pectori adnectit, modo rectam et immobilem cervicem intendit. Priorem Græci ὀπισθότονον, insequentem ἐμπροσθότονον, ultimum τέτανον appellant: quamvis minus subtiliter quidam indiscretis his nominibus utuntur. Ea sæpe intra quartum diem tollunt; si hunc evaserunt, sine periculo sunt.

Eadem omnia ratione curantur; idque convenit. Sed Asclepiades utique mittendum sanguinem credidit: quod quidam utique vitandum esse dixerunt, eo quod maxime tum corpus calore egeret; isque esset in sanguine. Verum hoc quidem falsum est. Neque enim natura sanguinis est, ut utique caleat; sed ex iis, quæ in homine sunt, hic celerime vel calescit, vel refrigescit. Mitti vero nec ne debeat, ex iis intelligi potest, quæ de sanguinis missione præcepta sunt. Utique autem recte datur castoreum, et cum hoc piper, vel laser: deinde opus est fomento humido et calido: itaque plerique aqua calida multæ cervicis subinde perfundunt. Id in

## ORDO.

noxia gravibus morbis. Neque tamen est alius morbus importunior que acutior, quam is, qui quodam rigore nervorum, modo annectit caput scapulis, modo mentem pectori, modo intendit cervicem rectam et immobilem. Græci appellant priorem ὀπισθότονον, (opisthotonos,) insequentem ἐμπροσθότονον, (emprosthotonos,) ultimum, τέτανον (tetanus): quamvis quidam minus subtiliter utuntur his nominibus indiscretis. Ea tollunt sæpe intra quartum diem: si evaserunt hunc, sunt sine periculo.

Omnia curantur eadem ratione; que id convenit. Sed Asclepiades credidit sanguinem esse mittendum utique: quod quidam dixerunt esse vitandum utique, eo, quod corpus tum egeret calore maxime; que is esset in sanguine. Verum hoc est falsum quidem. Enim neque natura sanguinis, ut caleat utique; sed ex iis quæ sunt in homine, hic vel calescit celerime, vel refrigescit. Vero, (an) debeat mitti necne, potest intelligi ex iis, quæ sunt præcepta de missione sanguinis. Autem utique castoreum datur recte, et cum hoc piper, vel laser: deinde opus est humido et calido fomento: itaque plerique perfundunt cervicem multa calida aqua subinde. Id levat in præ-

## TRANSLATION.

Neither is there a more troublesome nor more acute disease than that, which by a certain rigor of the nerves, sometimes attaches the head to the shoulders, sometimes the chin to the breast, sometimes stretches the neck straight and immoveable. The Greeks have named the first opisthotonos, the second emprosthotonos, and the last tetanus: although some less skilfully apply these terms indiscriminately. These often carry off the patient within four days; if they get over that time there will be no danger.

All these forms are to be treated in the same way; and thus far they are unanimous. But Asclepiades considered blood-letting to be essentially necessary; which remedy is condemned by some, and above all others to be avoided, for this reason. that the body then stood much in need of warmth, and this is contained in the blood. This indeed is false: for it is not the peculiar property of the blood to become hot: but this, above all other substances which compose the human frame, most rapidly grows either cold or hot. But whether it ought to be taken or not, may be learned from what I have already said on blood-letting. At all events castor, either with pepper or assafoetida, may be given with propriety: then a moist and warm fomentation will be necessary: therefore most physicians pour plenty of warm water occasionally on the neck. That relieves for a time, but



præsentia levat; sed opportuniore  
nervos frigori reddit: quod utique vi-  
tandum est.

Utilius igitur est, cerato liquido pri-  
mum cervicem perungere; deinde ad-  
movere vesicas bubulas vel utriculos  
oleo calido repletos, vel ex farina cali-  
dum cataplasma, vel piper rotundum  
cum ficu contusum. Utilissimum tamen  
est, humido sale fovere: quod quomodo  
fieret, jam ostendi. Ubi eorum aliquid  
factum est, admovere ad ignem, vel si  
æstas est, in sole ægrum oportet;  
maximeque oleo vetere; si id non est,  
Syriaco; si ne id quidem est, adipe  
quam vetustissima cervicem et scapu-  
las, et spinam perfricare.

Frictio cum omnibus in homine verte-  
bris utilis sit, tum iis præcipue, quæ in  
collo sunt. Ergo die nocteque, inter-  
positis tamen quibusdam temporibus,  
hoc remedio utendum est; dum in-  
termittitur, imponendum malagma ali-  
quod ex calefacientibus. Cavendum  
vero præcipue frigus; ideoque in eo con-  
clavi, quo cubabit æger, ignis conti-  
nuus esse debet, maximeque tempore  
antelucano, quo præcipue frigus inten-  
ditur.

Neque inutile erit, caput attonsum  
habere, idque irino vel cyprino calido

#### ORDO.

sentia; sed reddit nervas oppor-  
tuniore frigori; quod est utique  
vitandum.

Igitur est utilius, primum per-  
ungere cervicem liquido cerato;  
deinde admovere vesicas bubulas  
vel utriculos repletos calido oleo,  
vel calidum cataplasma ex farina,  
vel rotundum piper contusum  
cum ficu. Tamen utilissimum est,  
fovere humido sale: quod os-  
tendi jam, quomodo fieret. Ubi  
aliquid eorum est factum, oportet  
admovere ægrum ad ignem,  
vel si est æstas, in sole; que per-  
fricare cervicem et scapulas, et  
maxime spinam, vetere oleo; si  
id non est, Syriaco; si id ne  
quidem est, quam vetustissima  
adipe.

Cum frictio sit utilis omnibus  
vertebris in homine, tum præci-  
pue iis, quæ sunt in collo. Ergo  
utendum est hoc remedio noc-  
teque die, tamen quibusdam  
temporibus interpositis; dum in-  
termittitur, aliquid malagma  
imponendum ex calefacientibus.  
Vero frigus cavendum præcipue:  
que ideo debet esse continuus  
ignis in eo conclavi in quo æger  
cubabit, que maxime tempore  
antelucano, quo frigus præci-  
pue intenditur.

Neque erit inutile, habere ca-  
put attonsum, que id madefacere  
calido irino vel cyprino, et velare

#### TRANSLATION.

renders the nerves more susceptible of cold, which ought to be particularly avoided.

Therefore it is more proper to anoint the neck first with liquid cerate (6): then to apply ox bladders, or bottles filled with hot oil, or a warm meal poultice, or round pepper bruised with figs. Yet the most useful as a fomentation is moist salt: the modus operandi I have already shewn. When any of these means has been adopted, it behoves us to place the sick person near the fire, or if in summer, in the sun; and to rub the neck and shoulders, and especially the spine, with old oil; if that is not to be had, with Syrian; if not even this last be at hand, with the oldest fat.

Since friction may be usefully applied to all the vertebræ of the spine, it is particularly so to those which are in the neck. Therefore this remedy should be applied both by day and night; but with occasional intermissions; during which, some calefacient malagma must be resorted to. Cold must be avoided above all things. On this account a fire must be kept constantly in the patient's bedchamber, and particularly about the break of day, at which time the cold is more intense.

Neither will it be improper to have the hair removed from the head, and to

madefacere, et superimposito pileo velare; nonnumquam etiam in calidum oleum totum descendere, vel in aquam calidam, in qua fœnum græcum decoctum sit, et adjecta olei pars tertia. Alvus quoque ducta sæpe superiores partes resolvit.

Si vero etiam vehementius dolor crevit, admovendæ cervicibus cucurbitulæ sunt, sic, ut cutis incidatur: eadem aut ferramentis, aut sinapi adurenda. Ubi levatus est dolor, moverique cervix cœpit, scire licet, cedere remediis morbum. Sed diu vitandus cibus, quisquis mandendus est. Sorbitionibus utendum, itemque ovis sorbilibus, aut mollibus; jus aliquod assumendum. Id si bene processerit, jamque ex toto recte se habere cervices videbuntur, incipiendum erit a pulicula, vel intrita bene madida. Celerius tamen etiam panis mandendus, quam vinum gustandum: siquidem hujus usus præcipue periculosus; ideoque in longius tempus differendus est.

## ORDO.

superimposito pileo; etiam descendere totum nonnumquam in calidum oleum, vel in calidam aquam, in qua fœnum græcum sit decoctum, et tertia pars olei adjecta. Alvus ducta quoque sæpe resolvit superiores partes.

Vero si etiam dolor crevit vehementius, cucurbitulæ sunt admovendæ cervicibus, sic, ut cutis incidatur: eadem adurenda aut ferramentis, aut sinapi. Ubi dolor est levatus, que cervix cœpit moveri, licet scire, morbum cedere remediis. Sed cibus vitandus diu, quisquis est mandendus. Utendum sorbitionibus, que item sorbilibus, aut mollibus ovis; aliquod jus assumendum. Si id processerit bene, que cervices videbuntur jam habere se recte ex toto, erit incipiendum a pulicula, vel bene madida intrita. Tamen etiam panis mandendus celerius quam vinum gustandum: siquidem usus hujus præcipue periculosus; que ideo est differendus in longius tempus.

## TRANSLATION.

moisten it with warm iris oil, or with that of cypress, and to cover it with a cap; also to descend at times entirely into a bath of warm oil, or in a warm decoction of fœnugreek, to which one third part of oil has been added. The superior parts are often relieved by unloading the bowels.

But if the pain have increased in violence, the cupping-glasses should be applied on the neck, the parts being previously incised: and the same part should be scorched either by the actual cautery or vesicated by sinapisms. When the pain has been relieved, and the neck has begun to be moved, it is reasonable to conclude, that the disease is yielding to the remedies. But every kind of food requiring mastication must be avoided for a long time. Let him live on gruels, eggs, poached, or soft, and some broths may be taken. If this mode of treatment have proceeded favourably, and the neck shall appear to be entirely well, we must begin with panada, or very thin intrita. But bread may be masticated before the patient can venture on wine: for the use of this last, is highly dangerous, and on that account must be deferred for a longer time.

## CAP. IV.

DE MORBIS FAUCIUM: ET PRIMUM DE  
ANGINA.

1. UT hoc autem morbi genus circa totam cervicem; sic alterum, æque pestiferum acutumque, in faucibus esse consuevit. Nostri anginam vocant: apud Græcos nomen, prout species est. Interdum enim neque rubor, neque tumor ullus apparet; sed corpus aridum est, vix spiritus trahitur, membra solvuntur: id *συνάγχην* vocant.

Interdum lingua faucesque cum rubore intumescunt, vox nihil significat, oculi vertuntur, facies pallet, singultusque est: id *κυνάγχην* vocatur. Illa communia sunt; æger non cibum devorare, non potionem potest; spiritus ejus intercluditur. Levius est, ubi tumor tantummodo et rubor est, cætera non sequuntur: id *παρὰσυνάγχην* appellant.

Quidquid est, si vires patiuntur, sanguis mittendus est, si non abundat: secundum est, ducere alvum. Cucurbitula quoque recte sub mento, et circa

## ORDO.

## CAP. IV.

## DE MORBIS FAUCIUM: ET PRIMUM DE ANGINA.

1. AUTEM ut hoc genus morbi consuevit esse circa totam cervicem; sic alterum æque pestiferum que acutum in faucibus. Nostri vocant anginam: apud Græcos, nomen est prout species. Enim interdum neque ullus rubor, neque tumor apparet; sed corpus est aridum, spiritus vix trahitur, membra solvuntur. Vocant id *συνάγχην* (synanche).

Interdum lingua que fauces intumescunt cum rubore, vox significat nihil, oculi vertuntur, facies pallet, que est singultus: vocatur *κυνάγχην* (cynanche). Illa sunt communia; æger non potest devorare cibum, non (potest) potionem; spiritus ejus intercluditur. Est levius, ubi est tantummodo rubor et tumor, cætera non sequuntur: appellant id *παρὰσυνάγχην* (parasyranche).

Quidquid est, sanguis est mittendus, si vires patiuntur, si non abundat: secundum, est ducere alvum. Quoque cucurbitula admoveatur sub mento, et

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

## THE DISEASES OF THE FAUCES: AND FIRST OF ANGINA.

1. As the disease last treated of is accustomed to occupy the entire neck, so there is another, equally pestiferous and acute, arises in the fauces. Our countrymen call it angina (*quinsy*). Among the Greeks the name varies according to the species. For sometimes neither redness, nor tumour appears: but the body is arid, the breathing difficult, the limbs are relaxed: this they call synanchê (8).

Sometimes the tongue is red and swollen, the voice is gone, the eyes are turned, the face is pale and there is hiccough: this is called cynanche. These symptoms are common to both: the patient is not able to swallow either food or drink; and his breathing is impeded. It takes a milder form, when there are only swelling and redness, the other symptoms being absent: this they call parasyranchê.

Whatever species it may be, blood must be let, if the strength of the patient permit, even although it be not abundant: then we must relieve the bowels by enema. It is also proper to apply a cupping glass below the chin, and over the fauces, in



fauces admovetur; ut id, quod strangulat, evocet. Opus est deinde fomentis humidis: nam sicca spiritum elidunt. Ergo admoveere spongas oportet; quæ melius in calidum oleum, quam in calidam aquam subinde demittuntur: efficacissimusque est hic quoque, salis calidus succus. Tum commodum est, hyssopum, vel nepetam, vel thymum, vel absinthium, vel etiam furfures, aut ficus aridas, cum mulsa aqua decoquere, eaque gargarizare: post hæc palatum ungere vel felle taurino, vel eo medicamento, quod ex moris est. Polline etiam piperis id recte respergitur.

Si per hæc parum proficitur, ultimum est, incidere satis altis plagis sub ipsis maxillis supra collum, et in palato circa uvam, vel eas venas, quæ sub lingua sunt; ut per ea vulnera morbus erumpat. Quibus si non fuerit æger adjutus, scire licet, malo victum esse. Si vero his morbus levatus est, jamque fauces et cibum et spiritum capiunt, facilis ad bonam valetudinem recursus est.

Atque interdum natura quoque adjuvat, si ex angustiore sede vitium transit in latiore: itaque rubore et tumore in præcordiis orto, scire licet fauces li-

## ORDO.

circa fauces recte; ut evocet id, quod strangulat. Deinde est opus humidis fomentis: nam sicca elidunt spiritum. Ergo oportet admoveere spongas; quæ demittuntur melius subinde in calidum oleum, quam in calidam aquam: quæ calidus succus salis est quoque efficacissimus hic. Tum est commodum, decoquere hyssopum, vel nepetam, vel thymum, vel absinthium, vel etiam furfures, aut aridas ficus, cum mulsa, quæ gargarizare ea: post hæc ungere palatum vel taurino felle, vel eo medicamento, quod ex moris. Etiam id respergitur recte polline piperis.

Si proficitur parum per hæc, est ultimum, incidere satis altis plagis sub maxillis ipsis, supra collum, et in palato circa uvam, vel (in) eas venas, quæ sunt sub lingua; ut morbus erumpat per ea vulnera. Quibus si æger non fuerit adjutus, licet scire, esse victum a malo. Si vero morbus est levatus his, quæ fauces jam capiunt et cibum et spiritum, recursus ad bonam valetudinem est facilis.

Atque interdum natura quoque adjuvat, si vitium transit ex angustiore sede in latiore: itaque rubore et tumore orto in præcordiis, licet scire fauces li-

## TRANSLATION.

order to extract the suffocating matter. Afterwards moist fomentations will be requisite; for dry ones oppress the breathing. Therefore sponges dipped occasionally in warm oil, rather than in hot water should be applied; and here too the warm juice of salt is most efficacious. Then we should gargle with a decoction of hyssop, or cat-mint, or thyme, or wormwood, or even bran, or dried figs in hydromel; after that to anoint the palate either with ox-gall, or with that medicine which is composed of mulberries. The pollen of pepper is very properly sprinkled on it.

If we have made but little progress by the foregoing means, the last remedy is to make free incisions under the inferior maxillary bones themselves, above the neck, and in the palate about the uvula, or in the sublingual veins; that the morbid humours may be thrown off by those wounds. From which, if the patient be not relieved, we may conclude that he is about to fall a victim to the disease. But if the disease be mitigated by these means and the fauces are capable of admitting both food and air, his recovery will be easy.

Sometimes nature also lends her aid, if the disease make a transit from a contracted to a more spacious situation: therefore a redness and swelling having

berari. Quidquid autem eas levari, incipiendum est ab humidis, maximeque aqua mulsa decocta: deinde assumendi molles et non acres cibi sunt, donec fauces ad pristinum habitum revertantur.

Vulgo audio, si quis pullum hirundinis ederit, angina toto anno non periclitari; servatumque eum ex sale, cum is morbus urget, comburi, carbonemque ejus contritum in aquam mulsam, quæ potui datur, infriari, et prodesse. Id cum idoneos auctores ex populo habeat, neque habere quidquam periculi possit, quamvis in monumentis medicorum non legerim, tamen inserendum huic operi meo credidi.

2. Est etiam circa fauces malum, quod apud Græcos aliud aliudque nomen habet, prout se intendit. Omne in difficultate spirandi consistit: sed hæc dum modica est, neque ex toto strangulat, δύσπνοια appellatur: cum vehementior est, ut spirare æger sine sono et anhelatione non possit, ἀσθμα: cum accessit id quoque, ne nisi recta cervice spiritus trahatur, ὀρθόπνοια.

## ORDO.

berari. Antem quidquid levari eas, est incipiendum ab humidis, que maxime decocta mulsa aqua: deinde molles et non acres cibi sunt assumendi, donec fauces revertantur ad pristinum habitum.

Audio vulgo, si quis ederit pullum hirundinis, angina non periclitari toto anno; que eum servatum ex sale, cum is morbus urget, comburi, que ejus carbonem infriari, et contritum in mulsam aquam, quæ datur potui, prodesse. Cum id habeat idoneos auctores ex populo, neque possit habere quidquam periculi, quamvis non legerim (id) in monumentis medicorum, tamen credidi inserendum huic meo operi.

2. Etiam est malum circa fauces, quod habet apud Græcos aliud que aliud nomen, prout intendit se. Omne consistit in difficultate spirandi; sed hæc dum est modica, neque strangulat ex toto, appellatur δύσπνοια (dyspnœa): cum est vehementior, ut æger non possit spirare sine sono et anhelatione, (appellatur) ἀσθμα (asthma): quoque cum id (asthma) accessit, spiritus ne trahatur, nisi recta cervice, (appellatur) ὀρθόπνοια (orthopnœa):

## TRANSLATION.

arisen in the præcordia, we may conclude that the fauces are freed. But whatever has relieved them, the patient must begin with fluids, especially with boiled hydromel: then bland soft food, such as is not acrid, must be taken, until the fauces return to their former habit.

I have heard it vulgarly reported, that if a person eat a young swallow, he will be in no danger of angina during a whole year; and that it is beneficial, if this young swallow be preserved in salt, burned, and the carbon reduced to powder and given in hydromel when the patient is labouring under angina. Now as this remedy seems to have creditable authority among the common people, and to be attended with no danger, although I have not read of it in the records of physicians, yet I consider it worthy of being inserted in my work.

2. There is also a disease about the fauces, which has received different appellations among the Greeks according to its different degrees of violence. They all consist of a difficulty of breathing: but while this is moderate, and does not entirely suffocate, it is called dyspnœa: when it is more violent, so that the patient cannot respire without noise and panting, asthma: and when this difficulty has reached that degree, that respiration can only be performed in the erect position of the neck, orthopnœa.

Ex quibus id, quod primum est, potest diutius trahi; duo insequentia acuta esse consuerunt. His communia sunt: quod propter angustias, per quas spiritus evadit, sibilum edit, dolor in pectore præcordiisque est, interdum etiam in scapulis, isque modo decedit, modo revertitur; ad hæc tussicula accedit.

Auxilium est, nisi aliquid prohibet, in sanguinis detractio. Neque id satis est, sed lacte quoque venter solvendus est. Liquanda alvus, interdum etiam ducenda; quibus extenuatum corpus incipit spiritum trahere commodius. Caput autem etiam in lecto sublimè habendum est: thorax fomentis, cataplasmatisque calidis, aut siccis, aut etiam humidis adjuvandus est; et postea vel malagma superimponendum, vel certe ceratum ex cyprino, vel irino unguento. Sumenda deinde jejuno potui mulsa aqua, cum qua vel hyssopus cocta, vel contrita capparis radix sit.

Delingitur etiam utiliter, aut nitrum, aut nasturtium album frictum, deinde contritum et cum melle mistum: simulque coquuntur mel, galbanum, resina terebinthina, et ubi coierunt, ex his,

## ORDO.

Ex quibus id, quod est primum, potest trahi diutius; duo insequentia consuerunt esse acuta. Communia (symptomata) his sunt: quod propter angustias, per quas spiritus evadit, edit sibilum, est dolor in pectore que præcordiis, interdum etiam in scapulis, que is modo decedit, modo revertitur; ad hæc tussicula accedit.

Est auxilium, in detractio sanguinis, nisi aliquid prohibet. Neque est id satis, sed venter est quoque solvendus lacte. Alvus (est) liquanda, interdum etiam ducenda; quibus extenuatum corpus incipit trahere spiritum commodius. Autem etiam caput est habendum sublimè in lecto: thorax est adjuvandus fomentis, que calidis cataplasmatibus, aut siccis, aut etiam humidis; et postea vel malagma, vel certe ceratum ex cyprino, (est) superimponendum, vel unguento irino. Deinde mulsa aqua, cum qua vel hyssopus, vel contrita radix capparis sit cocta, est sumenda potui jejuno.

Etiam aut nitrum, aut album nasturtium frictum, deinde contritum et mistum cum melle delingitur utiliter: que mel, galbanum, terebinthina resina coquantur simul, et ubi coierunt,

## TRANSLATION.

Of these, the first may be protracted for a very long time: the two following are generally acute. The symptoms common to these are, that on account of the constriction of the respiratory passage, the breath is emitted with a sibilous noise, there is pain in the chest and præcordia, sometimes also in the shoulders, and that sometimes departs, sometimes returns; in addition to these a slight cough accedes.

Now blood-letting is the remedy in this, unless contra-indicated by any circumstance. Neither is that of itself sufficient, but the bowels must be relaxed also with milk. The lower intestines (9) should be purged even by injections sometimes; by which means the body being extenuated, the patient begins to breathe more freely. But the head must be kept high in bed: the thorax should be relieved by fomentations, and hot cataplasms, either dry or moist: afterwards a malagma is to be applied, or at least cypress cerate, or iris ointment. After this hydromel may be given fasting as a drink, in which hyssop, or the bruised root of capers has been boiled.

It is useful also to take either nitre, or white cresses fried, then bruised and mixed up with honey and given in the form of an electuary: also honey, galbanum, and turpentine resin are to be boiled together, and when they have coalesced, as



quod fabæ magnitudinem habet, quotidie sub lingua liquatur: aut sulphuris ignem non experti p. ℞. =. abrotoni p. ℞. in vini cyatho teruntur, idque tepefactum sorbetur. Est etiam non vana opinio, vulpinum jecur, ubi siccum et aridum factum est, contundi oportere, polentamque ex eo potioni aspergi: vel ejusdem pulmonem quam recentissimum assum, sed sine ferro coctum, edendum esse.

Præterea, sorbitionibus et lenibus cibis utendum est; interdum vino tenui austero; nonnumquam vomitu. Prosunt etiam, quæcumque urinam movent: sed nihil magis, quam ambulatio lenta pene usque ad lassitudinem; frictio multa, præcipue inferiorum partium, vel in sole, vel ad ignem, et per seipsum, et per alios, usque ad sudorem.

3. In interiore vero faucium parte interdum exulceratio esse consuevit. In hac plerique extrinsecus cataplasmatibus calidis, fomentisque humidis utuntur: volunt etiam vaporem calidum ore recipi: per quæ molliores alii partes eas fieri dicunt, opportunioresque vitio jam hærenti. Sed, si bene vitari frigus potest, tuta illa præsidia; si metus ejus est, supervacua sunt. Utique

## ORDO.

quod habet magnitudinem fabæ ex his, liquatur sub lingua quotidie: aut p. ℞. =. sulphuris non experti ignem, p. ℞. abrotoni teruntur in cyatho vini, quæ id tepefactum sorbetur. Etiam non est vana opinio, (ut) jecur vulpinum, ubi est factum siccum et aridum, oportere contundi, quæ polentam aspergi ex eo potioni: vel quam recentissimum pulmonem ejusdem esse edendum assum, sed coctum sine ferro.

Præterea, est utendum sorbitionibus et lenibus cibis; interdum (est utendum) tenui austero vino; nonnumquam vomitu. Etiam quæcumque movent urinam, prosunt: sed nihil (prosunt) magis, quam lenta ambulatio pene usque ad lassitudinem; multa frictio, præcipue inferiorum partium, vel in sole, vel ad ignem, et per seipsum, et per alios, usque ad sudorem.

3. Vero interdum exulceratio consuevit esse in interiore parte faucium. In hac plerique utuntur calidis cataplasmatibus, quæ humidis fomentis extrinsecus: volunt etiam calidum vaporem recipi ore: per quæ alii dicunt eas partes fieri molliores, quæ opportuniore vitio jam in hærenti. Sed, si frigus potest vitari bene, illa præsidia (sunt) tuta; si est metus ejus, sunt supervacua. Autem utique per-

## TRANSLATION.

much of this as the size of a bean may be dissolved under the tongue daily: or of impure sulphur p. ℞. =. of southernwood p. ℞. are triturated together in a glass of wine, and sipped warm. Neither is it an idle notion, that a fox's liver when dried and hardened, ought then to be reduced to powder, and sprinkled on the drink; or the lungs of the same animal as recent as possible to be eaten roasted, being cooked without the use of any iron utensil in the process.

Besides these, he should take gruels and mild food; sometimes light austere wine, sometimes a vomit. Also, every thing which promotes the urine, is beneficial: but nothing more so than gentle walking, almost to lassitude; much friction, especially of the lower extremities, either in the sun, or at the fire, both by the patient himself and by others, until he perspire.

3. Now it is not unusual for ulcerations to take place sometimes in the interior part of the fauces. In this case most physicians apply hot cataplasms, and moist fomentations externally: they also administer hot vapour into the mouth: others contend that the parts are rendered softer, and more susceptible of the disease already existing by these remedies. But if cold can be carefully avoided, these means are safe: if there be any apprehension of this, they are incompatible. To

autem perfricâre fauces periculosum est: exulcerat enim. Neque utilia sunt, quæ urinæ movendæ sunt; quia possunt, dum transeunt, ibi quoque pituitam extenuare, quam suppressi melius est.

Asclepiades multarum rerum, quas ipsi quoque secuti sumus, auctor bonus, acetum ait quam acerrimum esse sorbendum: hoc enim sine ulla noxa comprimere ulcera. Sed id suppressere sanguinem potest, ulcera ipsa sanare non potest. Melius huic rei lycium est; quod idem quoque æque probat: vel porri, vel marrubii succus, vel nuces Græcæ cum tragacantho contritæ et cum passo mistæ, vel lini semen contritum et cum dulci vino mistum.

Exercitatio quoque ambulandi currendique necessaria est: frictio a pectore vehemens toti inferiori parti adhibenda. Cibi vero esse debent, neque nimium acres, neque asperi; mel, lentacula, tragus, lac, ptisana, pinguis caro, præcipueque porrum, et quidquid cum hoc mistum est.

Potionis quam minimum esse convenit. Aqua dari potest, vel pura, vel in qua malum cotoneum, palmulæ decoctæ sunt. Gargarizationes quoque lenes; sin hæ parum proficiunt, repri-

## ORDO.

fricare fauces est periculosum: enim exulcerat. Neque sunt utilia, quæ sunt (apta) movendæ urinæ; quia dum transeunt ibi, possunt quoque extenuare pituitam, quam est melius suppressi.

Asclepiades, bonus auctor multarum rerum, quas quoque sumus secuti ipsi, ait acetum quam acerrimum (debet) esse sorbendum: enim ulcera comprimere hoc sine ulla noxa. Sed id potest suppressere sanguinem, non potest sanare ulcera ipsa. Lycium est melius huic rei; quod idem (Asclepiades) quoque æque probat: vel succus porri, vel marrubii, vel Græcæ nuces contritæ cum tragacantho et mistæ cum passo, vel semen lini contritum et mistum cum dulci vino.

Quoque exercitatio ambulandi que currendi est necessaria: vehemens frictio (est) adhibenda a pectore toti inferiori parti. Vero cibi debent esse, neque nimium acres, neque asperi; mel, lentacula, tragus, lac, ptisana, pinguis caro, que præcipue porrum, et quidquid est mistum cum hoc.

Convenit esse quam minimum potionis. Aqua potest dari, vel pura, vel (aqua) in qua cotoneum malum, vel palmulæ sunt decoctæ. Quoque lenes gargarizationes; sin hæ proficiunt parum, repri-

## TRANSLATION.

rub the throat is certainly dangerous, for it ulcerates. Neither are diuretics of any use, because, while they pass, they may attenuate the phlegm there, which had better be repressed.

Asclepiades, an excellent author of many things, in which we have also followed him, says that very strong vinegar should be sipped; for by this the ulcers are repressed without any injury; that the other may repress the flux of blood, but cannot heal the ulcers. To effect this, lycium (10) is a better application; which Asclepiades equally approves of: or the juice of leek, or of horehound, or sweet almonds triturated with tragacanth and mixed with raisin wine, lint-seed bruised and mixed with sweet wine.

The exercise of walking and running is also necessary. Strong friction is to be applied from the chest downwards over all the lower parts. But the food ought to be neither too acrid, nor too sharp: honey, lentils, tragus, milk, ptisan, fat meat, and particularly leeks, and whatever composition they enter into.

The drink should be as sparing as possible. Water may be given, either pure, or boiled with pomegranates or dates. Also mild gargles: but if these avail little,

mentes utiles sunt. Hoc genus neque acutum est, et potest esse non longum: curationem tamen maturam, ne vehementer et diu lædat, desiderat.

4. Tussis vero fere propter faucium exulcerationem molesta est; quæ multis modis contrahitur. Itaque, illis restitutis, ipsa finitur. Solet tamen interdum per se quoque male habere; et vix, cum vetus facta est, eliditur. Ac modo arida est, modo pituitam citat.

Oportet hyssopum altero quoque die bibere; spiritu retento currere, sed minime in pulvere; ac lectione uti vehementi, quæ primo impeditur a tussi, post eam vincit: tum ambulare: deinde per manus quoque exerceri, et pectus diu perfricare: post hæc quam pinguiissimæ ficus uncias tres, super prunam incoctas, esse.

Præter hæc, si humida est, prosunt frictiones validæ, cum quibusdam calefacientibus, sic, ut caput quoque simul vehementer perfricetur: item cucurbitulæ pectori admotæ; sinapi ex parte exteriori faucibus impositum, donec leviter exulceret; potio ex mentha, nuci-

## ORDO.

mentes sunt utiles. Neque est hoc genus acutum, et non potest esse longum: tamen desiderat maturam curationem, ne lædat vehementer et diu.

4. Vero tussis est fere molesta propter exulcerationem faucium; quæ contrahitur multis modis. Itaque, illis restitutis, ipsa finitur. Tamen interdum solet quoque habere male per se; et vix eliditur, cum est facta vetus. Ac est modo arida, modo citat pituitam.

Oportet bibere hyssopum quoque altero die; currere spiritu retento, sed minime in pulvere; ac uti vehementi lectione, quæ primo impeditur a tussi, post vincit eam: tum ambulare: deinde exerceri quoque per manus, et perfricare pectus diu: post hæc esse tres uncias quam pinguiissimæ ficus, incoctas super primam.

Præter hæc, si est humida, validæ frictiones cum quibusdam calefacientibus prosunt, sic, ut caput quoque perfricetur vehementer simul: item cucurbitulæ admotæ pectori; sinapi impositum faucibus ex exteriori parte, donec exulceret leviter; potio ex mentha, que Græcis

## TRANSLATION.

astrigent ones will be useful. Neither is the disease acute, and may not be of long duration; yet it requires early treatment, lest it become aggravated and tedious.

4. A cough, may be contracted in many different ways, and on account of the ulceration of the fauces, is generally a very troublesome concomitant. Therefore when their healthy action is restored, the cough itself ceases. Yet it is not unusual for a cough to exist sometimes without any primary disease; and when it becomes chronic, is removed with difficulty. Sometimes it is dry, sometimes it excites an expectoration of phlegm.

It is requisite to drink hyssop every other day; to run, at the same time retaining the breath, but by no means, in the dust; to read aloud, which at first is impeded by the cough, but afterwards overcomes it; then to walk: after this to exercise the arms, and to rub the chest for a considerable time: after these things being done, he is to eat three ounces of the mellowest figs stewed over a clear fire.

Besides these, if the cough be moist, strong friction with some of the calefacients does good, and in this way the head should be rubbed briskly at the same time: also the cupping glasses to be applied to the chest; sinapisms to be placed on the fauces externally, as a rubefacient; the drink may be prepared from mint, sweet



busque Græcis et amylo; primoque assumptus panis aridus, deinde aliquis cibus lenis.

At si sicca tussis est, cum ea vehementissime urget, adjuvat vini austeri cyathus assumptus, dum ne amplius id, interposito tempore aliquo, quam ter aut quater fiat: item laseris quam optimi paulum devorare opus est; porri vel marrubii succum assumere; scillam delingere; acetum ex ea, vel certe acre sorbere, aut cum spica allii contriti duos vini cyathos.

Utilis etiam in omni tussi est peregrinatio, navigatio longa, loca maritima, natationes: interdum lenis cibus, ut malva, urtica; interdum acer, ut lac cum alio coctum: sorbitiones, quibus laser sit adjectum, aut in quibus porrum incoctum tabuerit: ovum sorbile, sulphure adjecto: potui primum aqua calida, deinde invicem aliis diebus hæc, aliis vinum.

5. Magis terreri potest aliquis, cum sanguinem expuit: sed id modo minus, modo plus periculi habet. Exit modo ex gingivis, modo ex ore: et quidem ex hoc interdum etiam copiose, sed sine tussi, sine ulcere, sine gingivarum ullo

#### ORDO.

nucibus et amylo; que primo aridus panis assumptus, deinde aliquis lenis cibus.

At si tussis est sicca, cyathus austeri vini assumptus adjuvat, cum ea urget vehementissime, dum id fiat ne amplius, quam ter aut quater, aliquo tempore interposito: item est opus devorare paulum quam optimi laseris; assumere succum porri vel marrubii; delingere scillam; sorbere acetum ex ea, vel certe acre, aut duos cyathos vini cum spica contriti allii.

Etiam peregrinatio est utilis in omni tussi, longa navigatio, maritima loca, natationes: cibus (est) interdum lenis, ut malva, urtica; interdum acer, ut lac coctum cum alio: sorbitiones, quibus laser sit adjectum, aut in quibus incoctum porrum tabuerit: sorbile ovum, sulphure adjecto: calida aqua primum potui, deinde invicem aliis diebus hæc, aliis vinum.

5. Aliquis potest terreri magis, cum expuit sanguinem: sed id habet modo minus, modo plus periculi. Exit modo ex gingivis, modo ex ore: et quidem interdum etiam copiose ex hoc, sed sine tussi, sine ulcere, sine ullo

#### TRANSLATION.

almonds and starch; and beginning with dry bread at first, afterwards some mild food.

But if the cough be dry, and very violent, a glass of austere wine being taken assists; provided that be not done oftener than thrice or four times at proper intervals: it is also necessary to swallow a small quantity of the best assafœtida; to take the juice of leeks, or of horehound; squills as an electuary; to sip the vinegar, or at least some acrid preparation of it, or two glasses of wine with a clove of bruised garlick.

Travelling also is beneficial in every kind of cough; long voyages, a maritime residence, and swimming: the food sometimes should be mild, as the mallow, or nettle; sometimes acrid, as milk boiled with garlick; broths, to which assafœtida has been added, or in which leeks have been boiled away; a soft egg with sulphur added; warm water may be taken for drink at first, afterwards alternately, some days water, other days wine.

5. A person may be more alarmed, when he spits blood; but that is less or more dangerous. Sometimes it comes from the gums, sometimes from the mouth; and indeed from the latter very copiously at times, even without a cough, or ulcer, or

vitio; ita ut nihil exscreetur: verum ut ex naribus aliquando, sic ex ore prorumpit. Atque interdum sanguis profuit, interdum simile aquæ quiddam, in qua caro recens lota est. Nonnumquam autem is a summis faucibus fertur, modo exulcerata ea parte, modo non exulcerata; sed aut ore venæ alicujus adaperto, aut tuberculis quibusdam natis, exque his sanguine erumpente.

Quod ubi incidit, neque lædit potio aut cibus, neque quidquam, ut ex ulcere, exscreatur. Aliquando vero, gutture et arteriis exulceratis, frequens tussis sanguinem quoque extundit: interdum etiam fieri solet, ut aut ex pulmone, aut ex pectore, aut ex latere, aut ex jocinore feratur: sæpe foeminæ, quibus sanguis per menstrua non respondet, hunc expuunt.

Auctoresque medici sunt, vel exesa parte aliqua sanguinem exire, vel rupta, vel ore alicujus venæ patefacto. Primam διάβρωσιν, secundam ρήξιν, tertiam ἀναστόμωσιν appellant. Ultima minime nocet; prima gravissime. Ac sæpe quidem evenit, uti sanguinem pus sequatur.

Interdum autem, qui sanguinem ipsum suppressit, satis ad valetudi-

## ORDO.

vitio gingivarum; ita ut nihil exscreetur: verum ut aliquando prorumpit ex naribus, sic ex ore. Atque interdum sanguis profuit, interdum quiddam simile aquæ, in qua recens caro est lota. Autem nonnumquam is fertur a summis faucibus, modo ea parte exulcerata, modo non exulcerata; sed aut ore alicujus venæ adaperto, aut quibusdam tuberculis natis, que sanguine erumpente ex his.

Quod ubi incidit, neque potio aut cibus lædit, neque quidquam exscreatur, ut ex ulcere. Vero aliquando, frequens tussis quoque extundit sanguinem, gutture et exulceratis arteriis: etiam interdum solet fieri, ut aut feratur ex pulmone, aut ex pectore, aut ex latere, aut ex jocinore: foeminæ sæpe expuunt hunc, quibus sanguis non respondet per menstrua.

Sunt medici que auctores (qui dicunt), sanguinem exire vel aliqua parte exesa, vel rupta, vel ore alienjus venæ patefacto. Appellant primam διάβρωσιν (diabrosis), secundam ρήξιν (rexin), tertiam ἀναστόμωσιν (anastomosis). Ultima nocet minime; prima gravissime. Ac quidem sæpe evenit, uti pus sequatur sanguinem.

Autem interdum, qui suppressit sanguinem ipsum, profuit satis ad valetudinem. Sed si

## TRANSLATION.

any other disease of the gums, so that nothing may be expectorated: but as it bursts out at times from the nose, so it does from the mouth. Sometimes pure blood is discharged, at other times it resembles water, in which fresh meat has been washed. Sometimes it is discharged from the upper part of the fauces, that being ulcerated; sometimes an ulcer does not exist, but the blood is poured out, either from the mouth of a vein being laid bare, or from some tubercles having arisen there.

When this is the case, neither drink nor food injures, nor is there any matter excreted, as from an ulcer. But an ulceration in the œsophagus or trachea, with frequent cough, gives origin to hæmorrhage: sometimes it is not unusual to be sent from the lungs, or the breast(11), or the side, or the liver: females, who have a defective menstruation, often spit blood.

Medical authors say, that blood is lost either by the erosion, or rupture of any part, or the mouth of some vein being laid bare. They call the first diabrosis, the second rhexis, the third anastomosis(12). The first is most dangerous: the last is least injurious. It often happens that pus follows a hæmorrhage.

But sometimes, he who suppresses the hæmorrhage itself, is sufficient to ensure a

nem profuit. Sed si secuta ulcera sunt, si pus, si tussis est, prout sedes ipsa est, ita varia et periculosa genera morborum sunt.

Si vero sanguis tantum fluit, expeditius et remedium et finis est. Neque ignorari oportet, eis, quibus fluere sanguis solet, aut quibus spina dolet, coxæve, aut post cursum vehementem vel ambulationem, dum febris absit, non esse inutile sanguinis mediocri profluvium: idque per urinam redditum ipsam quoque lassitudinem solvere: ac ne in eo quidem terribile esse, qui ex superiore loco decedit; si tamen in ejus urina nihil novavit: neque vomitum hujus afferre periculum, etiam cum repetit, si ante confirmare et implere corpus licuit: et ex toto nullum nocere, qui in corpore robusto, neque nimius est, neque tussim aut calorem movet.

Hæc pertinent ad universum: nunc ad ea loca, quæ proposui, veniam. Si ex gingivis exit, portulacam manducasse satis est. Si ex ore, continuasse eo merum vinum: si id parum proficit, acetum. Si inter hæc quoque graviter erumpit, quia consumere hominem po-

## ORDO.

ulcera sunt secuta, si est pus, si (est) tussis, ita sunt varia et periculosa genera morborum, prout sedes ipsa est.

Vero si sanguis tantum fluit, et remedium et finis est expeditius. Neque oportet ignorari, eis, quibus sanguis solet fluere, aut quibus spina dolet, ve coxæ, aut post vehementem cursum vel ambulationem, dum febris absit, mediocri profluvium sanguinis non esse inutile: que id redditum per urinam ipsam quoque solvere lassitudinem: ac ne quidem esse terribile in eo, qui decedit ex superiore loco; si tamen novavit nihil in urina ejus: neque vomitum hujus afferre periculum, etiam cum repetit, si corpus licuit confirmare et implere ante: et nullum nocere ex toto, qui est neque nimius, in robusto corpore, neque movet tussim aut calorem.

Hæc pertinent ad universam, nunc veniam ad ea loca, quæ proposui. Si exit ex gingivis, est satis manducasse portulacam. Si (exit) ex ore, continuasse merum vinum eo: si id proficit parum, acetum. Si quoque erumpit graviter inter hæc, quia potest consumere hominem, est

## TRANSLATION.

recovery. But if ulcers have followed, if there be pus, or cough, hence the diseases arising are both various and dangerous, from the nature of their situation.

If blood only be discharged, the remedy and the termination are more expeditious. Neither should we be ignorant that a moderate discharge of blood is not prejudicial to those who have habitual hæmorrhages, or to those who have pains in the spine, or in the hips, or after violent running, or walking, provided there be no fever; and even that which is voided by the urine itself tends to relieve lassitude: and that it need not excite any alarm in a person who has fallen from some height, if no change have taken place in the urine: neither is a vomiting of blood to be considered dangerous, even when it returns, if the body have regained its strength and complement of blood in the interspace: and that there is not the least danger, when it occurs in a robust constitution, and is not excessive, nor excites a cough, nor heat.

These observations apply to all the species. Now I shall proceed with those parts which I have already mentioned. If the blood proceed from the gums, it is sufficient to chew purslane. If from the mouth, to retain pure wine in it; if that avail little, vinegar. If the hæmorrhage should become violent during the applica-



test, commodissimum est, impetum ejus, admota occipitio cucurbitula, sic, ut cutis quoque incidatur, avertere.

Si id mulieri, cui menstrua non feruntur, evenit, eandem cucurbitulam, incisus inguinibus ejus, admovere. At si ex faucibus, interioribusve partibus processit, et metus major est, et cura major adhibenda. Sanguis mittendus est; et si nihilominus ex ore processit, iterum tertioque, et quotidie paulum aliquid: protinus autem debet sorbere vel acetum, vel cum thure plantaginis aut porri succum; imponendaque extrinsecus supra id, quod dolet, lana succida ex aceto est, et id spongia subinde refrigerandum.

Erasistratus horum crura quoque et femora brachiaque pluribus locis deligabat. Id Asclepiades, adeo non prodesse, etiam inimicum esse proposuit. Sed id sæpe commodè respondere experientia testantur.

Neque tamen pluribus locis deligari necesse est: sed sat est infra inguina, et super talos, summosque humeros, etiam brachia. Tum, si febris urget,

## ORDO.

commodissimum, avertere impetum ejus, cucurbitula admota occipitio, sic, ut cutis quoque incidatur.

Si id evenit muliere, cui menstrua non feruntur, admovere eandem cucurbitulam, inguinibus ejus incisus. At si processit ex faucibus, ve interioribus partibus, est et major metus, et major cura (est) adhibenda. Sanguis est mittendus; et si nihilominus aliquid processit ex ore, que iterum paulum tertio, et quotidie: autem protinus debet sorbere vel acetum, vel succum plantaginis aut porri cum thure; que succida lana ex aceto, est imponenda supra id, quod dolet, et id (est) refrigerandum subinde spongia.

Erasistratus deligabat crura et quoque femora que brachia horum pluribus locis. Asclepiades proposuit id, adeo non prodesse, etiam esse inimicum. Sed experientia testantur id sæpe respondere commodè.

Tamen neque est necesse deligari pluribus locis; sed est sat (deligari) infra inguina, et super talos, que summos humeros, etiam brachia. Tum, si febris

## TRANSLATION.

tion of these remedies, and as it is possible to exhaust the patient, it would be most expedient to avert its impetus by the application of the cupping glasses and scarificator to the occiput.

If that should occur to a female who does not menstruate, to apply the cupping glasses and scarificator to her groins. But if it have proceeded from the fauces, or the internal parts, there is both greater apprehension, and more care required in the treatment. Blood must be abstracted; and if it still continue from the mouth, the operation must be repeated a second and a third time; and every day a little to be taken away: the patient ought to sip vinegar immediately, or the juice of plantain, or of leek with frankincense (13); and sordid wool moistened in vinegar is to be applied externally over the part affected, and that is to be cooled occasionally by a sponge.

Erasistratus also applied several ligatures on the legs, thighs, and arms of such patients. Asclepiades has affirmed that it is so far from being beneficial, he even condemned it as injurious. But experiments testify that it often succeeds very well.

Now there is no necessity for the application of ligatures in many places: but it is sufficient to put one on below each groin, and above the ancles, and at the upper part of the shoulders, and also on the fore arms. Then, if there be fever, gruel

danda est sorbitio, et potui aqua, in qua aliquid ex iis, quæ alvum adstringunt, decoctum sit: at si abest febris, vel elota alica, vel panis ex aqua frigida, et molle quoque ovum dari potest; potui, vel idem, quod supra scriptum est, vel vinum dulce, vel aqua frigida. Sed sic bibendum erit, ut sciamus, huic morbo sitim prodesse.

Præter hæc necessaria sunt quies, securitas, silentium. Caput hujus quoque cubantis sublime esse debet; recteque tondetur. Facies sæpe aqua frigida fovenda est. At inimica sunt vinum, balneum, venus, in cibo oleum, acria omnia, item calida fomenta, conclave calidum et inclusum, multa vestimenta corpori injecta, etiam frictiones. Ubi bene sanguis conquievit, tum vero incipiendum est a brachiis, cruribusque; a thorace abstinendum. In hoc casu per hiemem, locis maritimis; per æstatem, mediterraneis opus est.

## ORDO.

urget, sorbitio, et aqua in qua aliquid ex iis, quæ adstringunt alvum, sit decoctum, est danda potui: at si febris abest, vel elota alica, vel panis ex frigida aqua, et quoque molle ovum potest dari; vel idem, quod est scriptum supra, vel dulce vinum, vel frigida aqua, potui. Sed erit sic bibendum, ut sciamus, sitim prodesse huic morbo.

Præter hæc, quies, securitas, silentium sunt necessaria. Quoque caput hujus debet esse sublime cubantis; que tondetur recte. Facies est fovenda sæpe frigida aqua. At vinum, balneum, venus, oleum in cibo, omnia acria, item calida fomenta, calidum et inclusum conclave, multa vestimenta injecta corpori, etiam frictiones sunt inimica. Ubi sanguis conquievit bene, vero tum est incipiendum a brachiis, que cruribus; (est) abstinendum a thorace. In hoc casu, est opus maritimis locis, per hiemem; mediterraneis, per æstatem.

## TRANSLATION.

must be given, and water for drink, in which some of those astringents of the bowels have been boiled: but if there be no fever, either washed alica, or bread moistened in cold water, and also a soft egg may be given: the drink may be either such as I have mentioned above, or sweet wine, or cold water. But in the administration of drinks, we should bear in mind that thirst is beneficial in this disease.

Besides these means, repose, tranquillity of mind, and silence are all necessary. The patient's head also should be kept high in bed; and it is proper to cut the hair close. The face should be bathed frequently in cold water. But wine, the bath, venery, oil with the food, every thing acrid, also hot fomentations, a hot and close chamber, covering the body with much clothing, and also frictions are all inimical. When the hæmorrhage has been entirely subdued, then, indeed friction may be tried on the arms and legs, but withheld from the chest. In this case the patient should select a maritime residence during the winter, and an inland retreat during the summer.

## CAP. V.

## DE STOMACHI MORBIS.

FAUCIBUS subest stomachus; in quo plura longa vitia incidere consuerunt. Nam modo ingens calor, modo inflatio hunc, modo inflammatio, modo exulceratio afficit: interdum pituita, interdum bilis oritur: frequentissimumque ejus malum est, quo resolvitur; neque ulla re magis aut afficitur, aut corpus afficit.

Diversa autem, ut vitia ejus, sic etiam remedia sunt. Ubi exæstuat, aceto cum rosa extrinsecus subinde fovendus est; imponendusque pulvis — cum oleo; et ea cataplasmata, quæ simul et reprimunt, et emolliunt. Potui, nisi quid obstat, gelida aqua præstanda.

Si inflatio est, prosunt admotæ cucurbitulæ; neque incidere cutem necesse est: prosunt sicca et calida fomenta, sed non vehementissima. Interponenda abstinencia est. Utilis in

## ORDO.

## CAP. V.

## DE MORBIS STOMACHI.

STOMACHUS subest faucibus; in quo plura longa vitia consuerunt incidere. Nam modo ingens calor afficit hunc, modo inflatio, modo inflammatio, modo exulceratio: interdum pituita, interdum bilis oritur: que est frequentissimum malum ejus, quo resolvitur; neque aut afficitur magis ulla re, aut afficit corpus.

Autem ut sunt diversa vitia ejus, sic etiam (sunt diversa) remedia. Ubi exæstuat, est fovendus extrinsecus subinde rosa cum aceto; que pulvis — cum oleo (est) imponendus; et ea cataplasmata, quæ simul et reprimunt, et emolliunt. Gelida aqua præstanda potui, nisi quid obstat.

Si est inflatio, cucurbitulæ admotæ prosunt; neque est necesse incidere cutem: sicca et calida fomenta prosunt, sed non vehementissima. Abstinencia est interponenda. Potio absinthii,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

## THE DISEASES OF THE STOMACH.

THE stomach is below the fauces; an organ which is subject to a variety of chronic diseases. For sometimes it is affected by great heat, sometimes by flatulency, again by inflammation, at another time by ulceration: sometimes phlegm, sometimes bile arises there: but the most frequent complaint is debility, or dyspepsia; neither is there any thing from which this viscus either suffers more in itself, or gives origin to other constitutional diseases.

Now as the maladies of this organ are so diversified, so are the remedies. When it is hot, it should be fomented externally with vinegar and rose oil occasionally; and the powder of — (14) mixed with oil is to be laid on; and those cataplasms which at the same time both repress and soften. Cold water may be given for drink, unless that be contra-indicated by any circumstance.

If there be flatulency, the application of the dry cupping glasses does good; for there is no necessity to incise the skin: dry and hot fomentations, but not very strong, are beneficial. Abstinence must be interposed. The infusion of wormwood,



jejuno potio est absinthii, aut hyssopi, aut rutæ. Exercitatio primo lenis, deinde major adhibenda est; maximeque, quæ superiores partes moveat: quod genus in omnibus stomachi vitiis aptissimum est.

Post exercitationem opus est unctione, frictione; balneo quoque nonnumquam, sed rarius; interdum alvi ductione; cibus deinde calidis, neque infantibus; eodemque modo calidis potionibus, primo aquæ, post, ubi resedit inflatio, vini austeri. Illud quoque in omnibus stomachi vitiis præciendum est, ut, quo modo se quisque æger refecerit, eo sanus utatur: nam redit huic imbecillitas sua, nisi iisdem defenditur bona valetudo, quibus reddita est.

At si inflammatio aliqua est, quam fere tumor et dolor sequitur, prima sunt quies et abstinencia, lana sulphurata circumdata, in jejuno absinthium. Si ardor stomachum urget, aceto cum rosa subinde fovendus est: deinde cibus quidem utendum est modicis; imponenda vero extrinsecus quæ simul et reprimunt et emolliunt: postea deinde, his detractis, utendum calidis ex farina ca-

## ORDO.

ant hyssopi, aut rutæ, est utilis in jejuno. Exercitatio primo lenis, deinde major est adhibenda; quæ maxime, quæ moveat superiores partes: quod genus est aptissimum in omnibus vitiis stomachi.

Post exercitationem est opus unctione, frictione; quoque nonnumquam (est opus) balneo, sed rarius; interdum ductione alvi; deinde calidis cibus, neque infantibus; quæ eodem modo calidis potionibus, primo aquæ, post, ubi inflatio resedit, austeri vini. Quoque illud est præciendum in omnibus vitiis stomachi, ut, quo modo quisque æger refecerit se, utatur eo sanus: nam sua imbecillitas redit huic, nisi bona valetudo defenditur iisdem, quibus est reddita.

At si est aliqua inflammatio, quam tumor et dolor fere sequitur, quies et abstinencia sunt prima, sulphurata lana circumdata, absinthium in jejuno. Si ardor urget stomachum, est fovendus subinde aceto cum rosa: deinde quidem est utendum modicis cibus; vero quæ simul et reprimunt et emolliunt (sunt) imponenda extrinsecus: postea deinde, his detractis, est uten-

## TRANSLATION.

or of hyssop or of rue taken fasting is useful. Exercise must be employed, at first gentle, and afterwards to be augmented; and especially that which may bring the superior extremities into action; which kind is best adapted for all diseases of the stomach.

Exercise should be followed by unction and friction; and sometimes, though rarely, a bath; sometimes an injection; afterwards warm food, such as may not produce flatulence; and to proceed in the same manner with warm drinks, first of water, then when the flatus has been subdued, of austere wine. This maxim must be observed in all diseases of the stomach, that by whatever means a patient has recovered, he should adhere to the same plan when he is well: for this debility will return on him unless the health be guarded by the same means, by which it has been restored.

But if there be any inflammation, which is generally followed by swelling and pain, the first remedies should be rest and abstinence; sulphureted wool being applied around it and taking wormwood fasting. If there be oppressive heat in the stomach, let it be fomented occasionally with vinegar and rose oil: then food is to be given in moderation; and the external remedies must be such as repress and soften at the same time: afterwards these being withdrawn, warm cataplasms of flour

taplasmatis, quæ reliquias digerant : interdum alvus ducenda : adhibenda exercitatio, et cibus plenior.

At si exulceratio stomachum infestat, eadem fere facienda sunt, quæ in faucibus exulceratis præcepta sunt. Exercitatio, frictio inferiorum partium adhibenda ; adhibendi lenes et glutinosi cibi, sed citra satietatem ; omnia acria atque acida removenda ; vino, si febris non est, dulci, aut, si id inflat, certe leni utendum ; sed neque perfrigido, neque nimis calido.

Si vero pituita stomachus impletur, necessarius modo in jejuno, modo post cibum vomitus est : utilis exercitatio, gestatio, navigatio, frictio : nihil edendum, bibendumque, nisi calidum ; vitatis tantum iis, quæ pituitam contrahere consuerunt.

Molestius est, si stomachus bile vitiosus est. Solent autem ii, qui sic tentantur, interpositis quibusdam diebus, hanc, et quidem, quod pessimum est, atram vomere. His recte alvus ducitur : potiones ex absinthio dantur : necessaria gestatio, navigatio est ; si fieri potest, ex nausea vomitus : vitanda

## ORDO.

dum calidis cataplasmatibus ex farina, quæ digerant reliquias : interdum alvus (est) ducenda : exercitatio et plenior cibus (est) adhibenda.

At si exulceratio infestat stomachum, eadem sunt fere facienda, quæ sunt præcepta in exulceratis faucibus. Exercitatio, frictio inferiorum partium adhibenda ; lenes et glutinosi cibi (sunt) adhibendi, sed citra satietatem ; omnia acria atque acida (sunt) removenda ; si non est febris, est utendum dulci vino, aut, si id inflat, certe leni ; sed neque perfrigido, neque nimis calido.

Vero si stomachus impletur pituita, vomitus est necessarius modo in jejuno, modo post cibum : exercitatio, gestatio, navigatio, frictio (est) utilis : nihil (est) edendum, quæ bibendum, nisi calidum ; tantum iis vitatis, quæ consuerunt contrahere pituitam.

Est molestius, si stomachus est vitiosus bile. Antem ii, qui sic tentantur, solent vomere hanc, et quidem quibusdam diebus interpositis, atram (bilem), quod est pessimum. Alvus ducitur recte his : potiones ex absinthio dantur : gestatio, navigatio est necessaria ; vomitus ex nausea,

## TRANSLATION.

must be used, which may disperse the remains : sometimes the bowels are to be relieved by injections : exercise must be employed, and a fuller diet.

But if ulceration attack the stomach, almost a similar treatment must be pursued as have been prescribed in ulcerated fauces. Exercise and friction of the lower parts must be used : mild and glutinous food should be given, but not to satiety ; all acrid and acid things are to be withheld ; sweet wine may be allowed, if there be no fever, or if that inflate, let him take at least a milder wine ; but neither of these should be too cold nor too hot.

If the stomach be surcharged with phlegm, a vomit is necessary, sometimes fasting, sometimes after food : exercise, gestation, sailing, and friction do good : nothing is to be eaten or drunk, except what is warm ; those things only to be avoided which usually generate phlegm.

The disease is more troublesome, when the stomach becomes vitiated with bile. But those who are affected in this manner, usually eject this, after an interval of some days, and indeed sometimes black bile is vomited, which is the worst of all. In these cases injections are proper : infusion of wormwood given for drink : gestation and sailing are necessary : and if possible to excite vomiting by sea-sickness :

cruditas: sumendi cibi faciles et stomacho non alieni, vinum austerum.

Vulgatissimum vero pessimumque stomachi vitium est resolutio, id est cum cibi non tenax est, soletque desinere ali corpus, ac sic tabe consumi. Huic generi inutilissimum balneum est; lectiones; exercitationesque superioris partis necessariae; item unctiones, frictionesque. His perfundi frigida, atque in eadem natate; canalibus ejusdem subjicere etiam stomachum ipsum, et magis etiam a scapulis id quod contra stomachum est; consistere in frigidis, medicatisque fontibus, quales Cutiliarum Sumbruinarumque sunt, salutare est.

Cibi quoque assumendi sunt frigidi, qui potius difficulter coquuntur, quam facile vitiantur. Ergo plerique, qui nihil aliud concoquere possunt, bubulam coquunt. Ex quo colligi potest, neque avem, neque venationem, neque piscem dari debere, nisi generis durioris. Potui quidem aptissimum est vinum frigidum, vel certe bene calidum, meracum, potissimum Rheticum, vel Allobrogicum, aliudve, quod et austerum et

## ORDO.

si potest fieri: cruditas (est) vitanda: faciles cibi et (qui) non (sunt) alieni stomacho sumendi, austerum vinum.

Vero vulgatissimum que pessimum vitium stomachi est resolutio (dyspepsia), id est cum non est tenax cibi, que corpus solet desinere ali, ac sic consumi tabe. Balneum est inutilissimum huic generi; lectiones, que exercitationes superioris partis (sunt) necessariae; item unctiones, que frictiones. Frigida (aqua) perfundi his, atque natate in eadem; etiam subjicere stomachum ipsum canalibus ejusdem, et magis etiam id quod est contra stomachum a scapulis; consistere in frigidis, que medicatis fontibus, quales sunt Cutiliarum que Sumbruinarum, est salutare.

Quoque frigidi cibi sunt assumendi, qui coquuntur difficulter potius, quam vitantur. Ergo plerique, qui possunt concoquere nihil aliud, coquunt bubulam. Ex quo potest colligi, neque avem, neque venationem, neque piscem debere dari, nisi durioris generis. Quidem frigidum vinum est aptissimum potui, vel certe bene calidum, meracum, potissimum Rheticum, vel Allobrogicum, ve aliud, quod

## TRANSLATION.

indigestion must be avoided, and such foods are to be taken which are easy of digestion, and not improper for the stomach, with austere wine.

But the most common and the worst disorder of the stomach is relaxation, that is, when it is not capable of retaining the food, by which means the body is deprived of nourishment, consequently it is wasted by consumption. In this case the bath is very injurious; reading, and exercises of the superior extremities are necessary; also unctions and frictions. It is also salutary to drench those patients with cold water all over the body, and to swim in it, to subject the stomach itself to spouts of the same, and more particularly that part below the shoulders opposite this organ; to stand for some time in cold and medicinal springs, such as those of Cutilia and Sumbruina (15).

The food now should be taken cold, and that which is more difficult of digestion, rather than what is easily decomposed. Therefore, most persons, who are able to digest nothing else, can digest beef. From this we may learn, that neither birds, nor game, nor fish, ought to be given, except of the harder kinds. Cold wine indeed is fittest for drink, or at least a very warm pure wine, particularly the Rhetic or Allobrogic (16), or any other if it be austere, and seasoned with



resina conditum est; si id non est, quam asperrimum, maximeque Signinum.

Si cibus non continetur, danda aqua, et eliciendus plenior vomitus est, iterumque dandus cibus; et tum ad-movendæ duobus infra stomachum digitis cucurbitulæ, ibique duabus aut tribus horis continendæ sunt. Si simul et vomitus, et dolor est, imponenda supra stomachum est lana succida, vel spongia ex aceto, vel cataplasma, quod refrigeret: perfricanda vero non diu, sed vehementer brachia et crura, et calefacienda.

Si plus doloris est, infra præcordia quatuor digitis cucurbitula utendum est; et protinus dandus panis ex posca frigida: si non continuit, post vomitum leve aliquid ex iis, quæ non aliena stomacho sint: si ne id quidem tenuit, singuli cyathi vini, singulis interpositis horis, donec stomachus consistat. Valens etiam medicamentum est, radiculæ succus: valentius, acidi Punici mali, cum pari modo succi, qui ex dulci Punico malo est, adjecto etiam intubi succo, et menthæ, sed hujus minima parte; quibus tantumdem, quantum in

## ORDO.

est austerrimum et conditum resina; si id non est, quam asperissimum, quæ maxime Signinum.

Si cibus non continetur, aqua est danda, et plenior vomitus (est) eliciendus, quæ cibus (est) dandus iterum; et tum cucurbitulæ sunt ad-movenda duobus digitis infra stomachum, quæ (sunt) continendæ ibi duabus aut tribus horis. Si est simul et vomitus, et dolor, succida lana, vel spongia ex aceto, vel cataplasma quod refrigeret, est imponenda supra stomachum: sed brachia et crura (sunt) perfricanda, et calefacienda, vero non diu.

Si est plus doloris, est utendum cucurbitula quatuor digitis infra præcordia; protinus panis ex frigida posca est dandus: si non continuit, post vomitum aliquid leve ex iis, quæ non sint aliena stomacho: si ne quidem tenuit id, singuli cyathi vini, singulis horis interpositis, donec stomachus consistat. Succus radiculæ est etiam valens medicamentum: valentius, acidi Punici mali, cum pari modo succi, qui est ex dulci Punico malo, etiam succo intubi, et menthæ adjecto, sed hujus minima parte; quibus tantumdem, quantum est in omnibus his,

## TRANSLATION.

resin; if that is not to be had, the roughest possible, and especially the Signine (17).

If the food be not retained on the stomach, water must be given and a copious vomiting is to be elicited, and food is to be given again; and then the cupping glasses are to be applied two fingers' breadth below the stomach, and retained there for two or three hours. If there be vomiting and pain at the same time, sordid wool should be laid over the stomach, or a sponge dipped in vinegar, or a refrigerant cataplasm: the arms and legs must be warmed and rubbed actively, but not too long.

If the pain be more severe, the cupping glasses must be applied four fingers' breadth below the præcordia, then bread sopped in cold posca to be given immediately: if that be not retained, after the vomiting, give some of those things which are light, at the same time grateful to the stomach: if even that have not remained, let one glass of wine be given every hour, until the stomach retain the food. The juice of radishes is also a powerful medicine; but a more powerful still is the juice of the acid pomegranate, with an equal quantity of the sweet being added to that of endive and mint, but of the latter the smallest portion,

his omnibus est, aquæ frigidæ quam optime miscetur. Id enim plus quam vinum ad comprimendum stomachum potest.

Supprimendus autem vomitus est, qui per se venit, etsi nausea est. Sed si coacuit intus cibus, aut computruit, quorum utrumlibet ructus ostendit, ejiciendus est; protinusque, cibus assumptis iisdem, quos proxime posui, stomachus restituendus. Ubi sublatus est præsens metus, ad ea redeundum est, quæ supra præcepta sunt.

## ORDO.

frigidæ aquæ miscetur quam optime. Enim id potest ad comprimendum stomachum plus quam vinum.

Autem vomitus qui venit per se, etsi est nausea est supprimendus. Sed si cibus coacuit intus, aut computruit, ructus ostendit utrumlibet quorum, est ejiciendus; que protinus, iisdem cibus assumptis, quos posui proxime, stomachus (est) restituendus. Ubi præsens metus est sublatus, est redeundum ad ea, quæ sunt præcepta supra.

## TRANSLATION.

with which as much cold water, as all these juices put together, and well mixed. For that is more effectual in tranquillizing the stomach than wine.

But spontaneous vomiting is to be suppressed, although there be nausea: or, if the ingesta have become acid, or vitiated within the stomach, either of which is indicated by the eructations, it is to be ejected; and immediately the same kind of food is to be administered for the restoration of the stomach, which I have just now mentioned. When we have removed the present danger, the patient may be put upon that regimen which has been prescribed above.

## CAP. VI.

## DE LATERUM DOLORIBUS.

STOMACHUS lateribus cingitur; atque in his quoque vehementes dolores esse consuerunt. Et initium vel ex frigore, vel ex ictu, vel ex nimio cursu, vel ex morbo est: sed interdum id malum intra dolorem est, isque modo tarde, modo celeriter solvitur; interdum ad perniciem quoque procedit, oriturque acutus morbus, qui πλευριτικός a Græcis nominatur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. VI.

## DE DOLORIBUS LATERIS.

STOMACHUS cingitur lateribus; atque in his quoque vehementes dolores consuerunt esse. Et initium (eorum) est vel ex frigore, vel ex ictu, vel ex nimio cursu, vel ex morbo: sed interdum id malum est intra dolorem, que is modo solvitur tarde, modo celeriter; interdum quoque procedit ad perniciem, que acutus morbus oritur, qui nominatur πλευριτικός (pleuriticus) a Græcis.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

## OF PLEURITIS.

THE stomach is bounded by the sides; and these are subject to violent pains also. The first cause may be either from cold, or from a blow, or from excessive running, or from disease: but the complaint sometimes consists only of a pain, and that is sometimes removed slowly, sometimes rapidly; sometimes it terminates fatally, giving origin to an acute disease, named by the Greeks pleuritis.

Huic dolori lateris, febris et tussis accedit: et per hanc exscreatur, si tolerabilis morbus est, pituita; si gravis, sanguis. Interdum etiam sicca tussis est, quæ nihil emolitur: idque primo vitio gravius, secundo tolerabilius est.

Remedium vero est magni et recentis doloris, sanguis missus. At, sive levior, sive vetustior casus est, vel supervacuuum, vel serum id auxilium est; confugiendumque ad cucurbitulas est, ante summa cute incisa. Recte etiam sinapi ex aceto super pectus imponitur, donec ulcera pustulasque excitet; et tum medicamentum, quod humorem illuc citet.

Præter hæc, circumdare primum oportet latus hapso lanæ sulphuratæ: deinde, cum paulum inflammatio se remisit, siccis et calidis fomentis uti. Ab his transitus ad malagmata est.

Si vetustior dolor remanet, novissime resina imposita discutitur. Utendum cibis potionibusque calidis; vitandum frigus: inter hæc tamen non alienum est extremas partes oleo et sulphure perfricare. Si levata tussis est, leni lectione uti; jamque et acres cibos, et vinum meracius assumere. Quæ a me-

## ORDO.

Febris, et tussis accedit huic dolori lateris: et pituita exscreatur per hanc, si morbus est tolerabilis; si gravis, sanguis. Interdum etiam est sicca tussis, quæ emolitur nihil: que id est gravius primo vitio, secundo tolerabilius.

Vero remedium magni et recentis doloris est, sanguis missus. At, sive casus est levior, sive vetustior, id auxilium est vel supervacuuum, vel serum; que est confugiendum ad cucurbitulas, summa cute incisa ante. Etiam sinapi ex aceto imponitur recte super pectus, donec excitet ulcera que pustulas; et tum medicamentum, quod citet humorem illuc.

Præter hæc, primum oportet circumdare latus hapso sulphuratæ lanæ: deinde, cum inflammatio remisit se paululum, uti siccis et calidis fomentis. Ab his transitus est malagmata.

Si dolor remanet vetustior, novissime discutitur resina imposita. (Est) utendum calidis cibis que potionibus; frigus (est) vitandum: tamen inter hæc non est alienum perfricare extremas partes oleo et sulphure. Si tussis est levata, uti leni lectione; que jam assumere et acres cibos, et meracius vinum. Quæ

## TRANSLATION.

To this pain of the side supervene fever and cough; and by this latter, phlegm is expectorated, if the disease be not violent; if severe, blood is discharged. At times there is a dry cough, which expectorates nothing; and this is worse than the first malady, but more supportable than the second.

Now the remedy for a violent and recent pain is blood-letting. But whether the case be very slight, or chronic, that remedy is either superfluous, or too late; and in this case we must apply the cupping glasses with the scarificator. Also sinapisms prepared with vinegar may be advantageously applied on the chest, until vesicles and pustules be excited; and then a medicament which may extract the humour thither.

Besides these, the side should be surrounded first with a band of sulphurated wool; and when the inflammation has subsided a little, to use dry and warm fomentations. After these we must proceed with malagmas.

If the pain become inveterate it is to be discussed at last by the application of resin. Warm food and drink must be given; and cold avoided: at the same time it might be beneficial to rub the extremities with sulphureted oil. If the cough be relieved, the patient may read softly, and then take both acrid food, and stronger wine. These things then are prescribed by physicians; yet without



dicis præcipiuntur, ut tamen sine his rusticos nostros epota ex aqua herba trixago satis adjuvet.

Hæc in omni lateris dolore communia sunt: plus negotii est, si acutus quoque morbus is factus est. In hoc, præter ea, quæ supra posita sunt, hæc animadvertenda sunt: ut cibus sit quam maxime tenuis et lenis, præcipueque sorbitio, eaque ex ptisana potissimum, aut jus in quo porrus cum pullo gallinaceo coctus sit; idque non nisi tertio quoque die detur, si tamen per vires licebit: potui vero aqua mulsa, in qua hyssopum, aut ruta decocta sit.

Quæ quibus temporibus danda sint, ex ratione vel adauctæ; vel levatæ febris apparebit, sic, ut in remissione quam maxima dentur: cum eo tamen, ut sciamus, non esse ejus generis tussi aridas fauces committendas: sæpe enim, ubi nihil est, quod exscreetur, continuatur, et strangulat. Ob quam causam dixi etiam pejus id genus esse tussis, quod nihil, quam quod pituitam moveret.

Sed hic vinum sorbere, ut supra præcepimus, morbus ipse non patitur: in

#### ORDO.

præcipiuntur a medicis, ut tamen sine his herba trixago epota ex aqua adjuvet nostros rusticos satis.

Hæc sunt communia in omni dolore lateris: est plus negotii, si quoque is morbus est factus acutus. In hoc, præter ea, quæ sunt posita supra, hæc sunt animadvertenda: ut cibus sit quam maxime tenuis, et lenis, quæ præcipue sorbitio, quæ potissimum ea ex ptisana, aut jus in quo porrus sit coctus cum pullo gallinaceo; quæ id quoque non detur nisi tertio die: si tamen licebit per vires: vero potui mulsa aqua, in qua hyssopum, aut ruta sit decocta.

Quibus temporibus quæ sint danda, apparebit ex ratione vel adauctæ; vel levatæ febris, sic, ut dentur quam maxima in remissione: tamen cum eo, ut sciamus, fauces non esse committendas aridas tussi ejus generis: enim sæpe, ubi est nihil, quod exscreetur, continuatur, et strangulat. Ob quam causam, etiam dixi id genus tussis quod moveret nihil, esse pejus, quam quod (moveret) pituitam.

Sed hic, morbus ipse non patitur sorbere vinum, ut præcepimus supra: in vicem ejus, cre-

#### TRANSLATION.

these, the watery infusion of the herb germander being drunk seems to be a satisfactory remedy for our peasants.

These (*following*) rules are applicable in every species of pleuritis: there will be a greater difficulty, if the disease have assumed an acute character. In this latter case, besides those rules which have been given above, these must be observed: that the food should be as thin and mild as possible, particularly gruel, and more especially that which is prepared of ptisan, or leeks boiled in chicken-broth; and that is not to be allowed oftener than every third day, and even then, it must be regulated by the patient's strength: but for drink a decoction of hyssop or rue in hydromel.

The times in which these remedies are to be administered, will be apparent by a vigilant attention to the progressing, or regressing stage of the fever, so that they may be given in the greatest possible remission: yet on this condition, that we bear in mind that the fauces must not be allowed to become dry in a cough of this kind: for very often, when there is nothing expectorated, it is continued, and has a tendency to suffocate. For this reason I said that a cough, which brings up nothing, is worse than that which expectorates phlegm.

But in this case the disease itself forbids wine to be given, as we have mentioned

vicem ejus, cremor ptisanæ sumendus est. Ut his autem in ipso morbi fervore sustinendus æger est, sic, ubi paulum is se remisit, alimenta pleniora, et vini quoque aliquid dari potest; dum nihil detur, quod aut refrigeret corpus, aut fauces asperet.

Si in refectioe quoque manserit tussis, intermittere oportebit uno die; posteroque, cum cibo vini paulo plus assumere. Atque incipiente quoque tussi, tum non erit alienum, ut supra quoque positum est, vini cyathos sorbere: sed in hoc genere valetudinis, dulce, vel certe lene commodius est. Si malum inveteravit, atletico victu corpus firmandum est.

## ORDO.

mor ptisanæ est sumendus. Antem ut æger est sustinendus in fervore ipso morbi, sic, ubi is remisit se paulum, pleniora alimenta, et quoque aliquid vini potest dari; dum nihil detur, quod aut refrigeret corpus, aut asperet fauces.

Si tussis quoque manserit in refectioe, oportebit intermittere uno die; que postero (die), assumere paulo plus vini cum cibo. Atque, tussi incipiente, tum non erit alienum, sorbere cyathos vini, ut quoque est positum supra; sed in hoc genere valetudinis, dulce (vinum), vel certe lene est commodius. Si malum inveteraverit, corpus est firmandum atletico victu.

## TRANSLATION.

above: instead of it the cream of ptisan is to be taken. But as the patient is to be supported by these things in the violence of the disease itself, so, when it has remitted a little, a fuller diet, and also some wine may be given; but nothing should be given, that would either refrigerate the body or exasperate the fauces.

If the cough continue during convalescence also, it will be expedient to intermit for one day; and on the following to take wine and food more freely: and in the incipient stage of cough, it will not be improper to sip wine by glasses, in the manner above directed: but in a malady of this kind, sweet, or at least a mild wine is more advantageous. If it have become chronic, the body must be strengthened by athletic diet.

## CAP. VII.

DE VISCERUM MORBIS, ET PRIMO, DE PULMONE.

A COMPAGINE corporis ad viscera transeundum est; et in primis ad pulmonem veniendum; ex quo vehemens et acutus morbus oritur, quem *περιπνευ-*

## ORDO.

## CAP. VII.

DE MORBIS VISCERUM; ET PRIMO, DE PULMONE.

EST transeundum a compagine corporis ad viscera; et in primis (est) veniendum ad pulmonem; ex quo vehemens et acutus morbus oritur, quem Græci vocant

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

OF THE DISEASES OF THE VISCERA, AND IN THE FIRST PLACE OF THE LUNGS.

FROM the structure of the body we must proceed to the viscera, and first of all to the lungs; in which a violent and acute disease takes place, which the Greeks

μουνὸν Græci vocant. Ejus hæc conditio est: pulmo totus afficitur: hunc casum ejus subsequitur tussis, bilem vel pus trahens, præcordiorum totiusque pectoris gravitas, spiritus difficultas, magnæ febres, continua vigilia, cibi fastidium, tabes. Id genus morbi plus periculi quam doloris habet.

Oportet, si satis validæ vires sunt, sanguinem mittere: sin minores, cucurbitulas sine ferro præcordiis admove. Tum, si satis valet, gestando ægrum, digerere: si parum, intra domum tamen dimovere. Potionem autem hyssopi dare, cum quo ficus arida sit incocta; aut aquam mulsam, in qua vel hyssopum vel ruta decocta sit: frictione uti diutissime in scapulis, proxime ab his in brachiis et pedibus et cruribus, leniter contra pulmonem; idque bis quotidie facere.

Quod ad cibum vero pertinet, huic nec salsis opus est, neque acribus, neque amaris, neque alvum astringentibus, sed paulo lenioribus. Ergo primis diebus danda est sorbitio ptisanæ, vel alicæ, vel oryzæ, cum qua recens adeps cocta sit: cum hac, sorbile ovum, nucleï pinei ex melle, panis vel elota alica ex aqua mûlsa: potui deinde non solum

## ORDO.

περιπνευμονιδὸν (peripneumonia). Hæc est conditio ejus: totus pulmo afficitur: tussis subsequitur hunc casum ejus, trahens bilem vel pus, gravitas præcordiorum que totius pectoris, difficultas spiritus, magnæ febres, continua vigilia, fastidium cibi, tabes. Id genus morbi habet plus periculi quam doloris.

Oportet, mittere sanguinem, si vires sunt satis validæ: sin minores, admove cucurbitulas sine ferro præcordiis. Tum, si valet satis, ægrum digerere gestando: si (valet) parum, tamen dimovere intra domum. Autem dare potionem hyssopi, cum quo arida ficus sit incocta; aut mulsam aquam, in qua vel hyssopum vel ruta sit decocta: uti frictione diutissime in scapulis, proxime ab his in brachiis et pedibus et cruribus, leniter contra pulmonem; que facere id bis quotidie.

Vero quod pertinet ad cibum, est opus nec salsis huic, neque acribus, neque amaris, neque astringentibus alvum, sed paulo lenioribus. Ergo sorbitio ptisanæ, vel alicæ, vel oryzæ, cum qua recens adeps sit decocta, est danda primis diebus: cum hac, sorbile ovum, pinei nucleï ex melle, panis vel elota alica ex mûlsa aqua: deinde non solum

## TRANSLATION.

call peripneumonia. The nature of the disease is this: the whole structure of the lungs is affected: cough follows this, (*as cause and effect*,) bringing up bile, or pus; a weight of the præcordia and of the whole chest, difficulty of breathing, high fever, constant watching, fastidious appetite and consumption. This disease is more dangerous than painful.

It will be proper to let blood, if the strength of the patient admit of it: but if that be deficient, to apply the cupping glasses without incision to the præcordia. Then, if the patient go on improving satisfactorily, to discuss it by gestation: if otherwise, to move him about in the house. To give a decoction of hyssop and dry figs as drink; or hydromel, in which either hyssop or rue has been boiled: to apply friction for a considerable time about the shoulders, next after these on the arms, feet, legs, and gently over the lungs; and to do that twice daily.

But with respect to food, he should neither have salt, nor acrid, neither bitter, nor astringent things, but those of a milder nature. Therefore at the beginning gruel of ptisan should be given, or of alica, or rice boiled with fresh fat: with this a soft or poached egg, pine nuts with honey, bread or washed alica with hydromel;



pura aqua, sed etiam mulsa egelida, aut, si æstas est, etiam frigida; nisi quid obstat.

Hæc autem altero quoque die, incremente morbo, dare satis est: ubi in incremento constitit, quantum res patitur, ab omnibus abstinendum est, præterquam aqua egelida. Si vires desunt, adjuvandæ sunt aqua mulsa. Prosuntque adversus dolores imposita calida fomenta, vel ea, quæ simul et reprimunt et emolliunt: prodest impositus super pectus sal bene contritus, cum cerato mistus; quia leviter cutem erodit, eo-que impetum materiæ, quo pulmo vexatur, evocat. Utile etiam aliquod malagma est ex iis, quæ materiam trahunt.

Neque alienum est, dum premit morbus, clausis fenestris ægrum continere: ubi paulum levatus est, ter aut quater die, fenestris aliquantum apertis, parvum aërem recipere. Deinde in refectione pluribus diebus a vino abstinere; gestatione, frictione uti; sorbitionibus et prioribus cibis adjicere, ex oleribus porrum, ex carne ungulas et summa trunculorum atque pisciculos, sic, ut diu nihil nisi molle et lene sumatur.

#### ORDO.

pura aqua potui, sed etiam egelida mulsa, aut, si est æstas, etiam frigida; nisi quid obstat.

Autem, morbo incremente, est satis dare hæc quoque altero die: ubi constitit in incremento, est abstinendum ab omnibus, quantum res patitur, præterquam egelida aqua. Si vires desunt, sunt adjuvandæ mulsa aqua. Que calida fomenta imposita prosunt adversus dolores, vel ea, quæ simul et reprimunt et emolliunt: bene contritus sal impositus supra pectus, prodest, mistus cum cerato; quia erodit cutem leviter, que evocat impetum materiæ eo, quo pulmo vexatur. Etiam aliquod malagma ex iis, quæ trahunt materiam, est utile.

Neque est alienum, continere ægrum clausis fenestris, dum morbus premit: ubi est levatus paulum, (debet) recipere parvum aërem, ter aut quater die, fenestris aliquantum apertis. Deinde in refectione (debet) abstinere a vino pluribus diebus; uti gestatione, frictione; adjicere prioribus sorbitionibus et cibis, ex oleribus porrum, ex carne ungulas et summa trunculorum atque pisciculos, sic, ut nihil nisi molle et lene sumatur diu.

#### TRANSLATION.

then for drink, not only pure water, but lukewarm hydromel, or if it be summer, even cold, unless there be any circumstance which may forbid that.

But it will be sufficient to give these things every alternate day, when the disease is increasing; but when it is at the height, the patient must abstain as rigidly as the case will allow from every thing except lukewarm water. If the strength fail, it should be assisted with hydromel. Hot fomentations being applied relieve the pains, or those which at the same time repress and mollify: salt well triturated with cerate, being laid on the chest does good; because it corrodes the skin slightly, and by this excites a revulsion of the matter, by which the lungs are oppressed. Also some malagmas composed of those articles which have a tendency to draw out the matter, are useful.

Neither is it improper to keep the patient's chamber windows shut during the severity of the disease: but when he has been relieved a little, to admit a small portion of air, three or four times a day, by opening the windows a little. Then during his convalescence to abstain from wine for several days; to employ gestation and friction; to augment the gruels and former food, from the pot-herbs with leeks, and of animal substances, the heels and pettitoes, and small fish, so that nothing except what is soft and mild may be taken for a long time.

## CAP. VIII.

## DE HEPATICIS.

ALTERIUS quoque visceris morbus, id est jecinoris, æque modo longus, modo acutus esse consuevit: ἡπατικὸν Græci vocant.

Dextra parte sub præcordiis vehemens dolor est; idemque ad latus dextrum, et ad jugulum, humerumque partis ejusdem pervenit: nonnumquam manus quoque dextra torquetur: horror validus est: ubi male est, bilis evomitur: interdum singultus prope strangulat. Et hæc quidem acuti morbi sunt.

Longioris vero, ubi suppuratio in jecinore est; dolorque modo finitur, modo intenditur; dextra parte præcordia dura sunt, et tument; post cibum major spiritus difficultas est; accedit maxillarum quædam resolutio. Ubi inveteravit malum, venter et crura pedesque intumescunt; pectus atque humeri, circaque jugulum utrumque extenuatur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. VIII.

## DE HEPATICIS.

QUOQUE (est) morbus alterius visceris, id est jecinoris, æque consuevit esse modo longus, modo acutus: Græci vocant ἡπατικὸν (hepaticus).

Est vehemens dolor dextra parte sub præcordiis; que idem pervenit ad dextrum latus, et ad jugulum, que humerum ejusdem partis: nonnumquam quoque dextra manus torquetur: est validus horror: ubi est male, bilis evomitur: interdum singultus prope strangulat. Et quidem hæc sunt (symptomata) acuti morbi.

Vero longioris, ubi est suppuratio in jecinore; que dolor modo finitur, modo intenditur; præcordia sunt dura (in) dextra parte, et tument; post cibum est major difficultas spiritus; quædam resolutio maxillarum accedit. Ubi malum inveteraverit, venter et crura que pedes intumescunt; pectus atque humeri, que circa utrumque jugulum extenuatur.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

## OF HEPATITIS.

THERE is also a disease of another viscus, that is the liver, which is equally subject to be sometimes chronic, sometimes acute: the Greeks call it hepaticus.

There is a violent pain in the right side under the præcordia; and this extends up the right side as far as the clavicle, and to the shoulder of the same side: sometimes the right hand also is tormented with the pain; there is violent shivering; when it is severe, bile is vomited: sometimes the patient is almost strangled with hiccough. These then are the symptoms of the acute form of the disease.

But when the disease proceeds to suppuration in the liver, then it is more of a chronic character: and the pain sometimes ceases; sometimes it is augmented; the præcordia are hard and swollen in the right side; there is greater difficulty of breathing after food; the jaws become affected with a species of paralysis. When the disease has grown inveterate, the abdomen, legs, and feet become œdematous; the chest, shoulders, and around the clavicles on each side of the neck are emaciated.

Initio sanguinem mittere optimum est : tum venter solvendus est, si non potest aliter, per nigrum veratrum : imponenda extrinsecus cataplasmata, primum quæ reprimant, deinde calida, quæ diducant ; quibus recte iris vel absinthium adjicitur : post hæc, malagma.

Dandæ vero sorbitiones sunt, omnesque cibi, et calidi, et qui non multum alunt, et fere qui pulmonis quoque dolori conveniunt ; præterque eos, qui urinam movent, potionesque ad id efficaces. Utilia in hoc morbo sunt thymum, satureia, hyssopum, nepeta, amyllum, sesamum, lauri baccae, pini flos, herba sanguinalis, mentha, ex malo cotoneo medium, columbæ jecur recens et crudum : ex quibus quædam per se esse, quædam adjicere vel sorbitioni vel potioni licet ; sic tamen, ut parce assumantur. Neque alienum est, absinthium contritum ex melle et pipere, ejusque catapotium quotidie devorare.

Abstinendum utique est ab omnibus frigidis : neque enim res ulla magis jecur lædit. Frictionibus utendum in extremis partibus : vitandus omnis labor, omnis vehementior motus : ne spiritus quidem diutius continendus est. Ira, trepidatio, pondus, ictus, cursus,

## ORDO.

Initio est optimum mittere sanguinem : tum venter est solvendus, si non potest aliter, per nigrum veratrum : cataplasmata imponenda extrinsecus, primum quæ reprimant, deinde calida, quæ diducant ; quibus iris vel absinthium adjicitur recte : post hæc, malagma.

Vero sorbitiones, que omnes cibi, et calidi, et qui non alunt multum sunt dandæ, et fere qui quoque conveniunt dolori pulmonis ; que præter eos, qui movent urinam, que potiones (sunt) efficaces ad id. Thymum, satureia, hyssopum, nepeta, amyllum, sesamum, baccae lauri, flos pini, sanguinalis herba, mentha, medium ex cotoneo malo, recens et crudum jecur columbæ, sunt utilia in hoc morbo : ex quibus licet quædam esse per se, adjicere quædam vel sorbitioni vel potioni ; tamen sic, ut assumantur parce. Neque est alienum, absinthium contritum ex melle et pipere, que devorare catapotium ejus quotidie.

Utique est abstinendum ab omnibus frigidis : enim neque ulla res lædit jecur magis. (Est) utendum frictionibus in extremis partibus : omnis labor (est) vitandus, omnis vehementior motus : ne quidem spiritus est continendus diutius. Ira, trepidatio, pondus, ictus, cursus, sunt

## TRANSLATION.

The first and best step is to let blood : then the bowels must be purged by black hellebore, if that cannot be done otherwise : at first astringent cataplasms must be applied externally, then warm discutient ones : to which iris or wormwood may be advantageously added : after these, a malagma.

Now gruels are to be given, and all food must be both warm and slightly nutritious, and especially such things as are indicated in disease of the lungs ; and besides these, other aliments which promote the urine, and diuretic drinks. The following are useful in this disease ; viz. thyme, savoury, hyssop, catmint, starch, sesamum, laurel-berries, pine flowers, blood-wort, mint, the pulp of a quince, a fresh raw pigeon's liver : of these some may be eaten alone, some may be added either to the gruel or the drink, yet in such a manner, that they may be taken sparingly. Neither is it improper to swallow wormwood bruised with honey and pepper, and to take a bolus of this daily.

He must carefully avoid every thing cold : for nothing injures the liver more. To employ friction on the extremities : all labour, and violent motion must be avoided : not even the breath should be retained too long. Anger, trepidation, a



inimica sunt. Perfusio corporis multa prodest ex aqua, si hiems est, calida; si æstas, tepida: item liberalis unctio, et in balneo sudor. Si vero jecur vomica laborat, eadem facienda sunt, quæ in ceteris interioribus suppurationibus. Quidam etiam contra id scalpello aperiunt, et ipsam vomicam adurunt.

## ORDO.

inimica. Perfusio corporis ex multa aqua prodest, si est hiems, calida; si æstas, tepida: item liberalis unctio, et sudor in balneo. Vero si jecur laborat vomica, eadem sunt facienda, quæ in ceteris interioribus suppurationibus. Etiam quidam aperiunt contra id scalpello, et adurunt vomicam ipsam.

## TRANSLATION.

heavy weight, blows, are all inimical. In winter the body should be subjected to a copious effusion of warm water; but in summer, tepid; also plentiful unction, and sweating in the bath. But if there be an imposthume in the liver, the same means are to be used, as in other internal suppurations. Some even make an opening over it with a scalpel, and cauterize the imposthume itself.

## CAP. IX.

## DE LIENOSIS.

AT lienis ubi affectus est, intumescit, simulque cum eo pars sinistra; eaque dura est, et prementi renititur: venter intentus est: aliquis etiam cruribus tumor est: ulcera aut omnino non sanescunt, aut certe cicatricem vix recipiunt: in intenta ambulatione cursuque dolor et quædam difficultas est.

Hoc vitium quies auget: itaque exercitatione et labore opus est; habita tamen ratione, ne febrem ista, si nimium processerint, excitent. Uctiones,

## ORDO.

## CAP. IX.

## DE LIENOSIS.

AT ubi est affectus lienis, intumescit, que simul sinistra pars (intumescit) cum eo; que ea est dura, et renititur prementi: venter est intentus: etiam est aliquis tumor cruribus: ulcera aut non sanescunt omnino, aut certe vix recipiunt cicatricem: est quædam dolor et difficultas in intenta ambulatione que cursu.

Quies auget hoc vitium: itaque est opus exercitatione et labore; tamen habita ratione, ne ista excitent febrem, si processerint nimium. Uctiones, que

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

## DISEASES OF THE SPLEEN.

BUT when the spleen is affected, it swells, and at the same time the left side is enlarged with it, indurated, and resists pressure: the abdomen is tense: there is also some swelling of the legs: the ulcers either do not heal at all, or at best they cicatrize with difficulty: walking briskly or running is accompanied with pain and some difficulty.

Rest aggravates this disease: hence labour and exercise are necessary; yet exercising a due precaution, lest those things excite fever, if they be carried too

frictionesque, et sudores necessarii sunt. Dulcia omnia inimica sunt; item lac et caseus: acida autem maxime conveniunt. Ergo acetum acre per se sorbere, et magis etiam, quod scilla conditum est, expedit.

Edenda sunt salsamenta, vel oleæ ex muria dura; tinctæ in aceto lactucæ, intubique ex eodem, betæ ex sinapi, asparagus, armoracia, pastinaca, ungulæ, rostra, aves macræ, ejusdem generis venatio. Potui vero jejuno dari debet absinthium incoctum: at post cibum aqua a ferrario fabro, in qua candens ferrum subinde tinctum sit: hæc enim vel præcipue lienem coerces. Quod animadversum est in iis animalibus, quæ apud hos fabros educata exiguos lienes habent.

Potest etiam dari vinum tenue, austerrum; omniaque in cibis et potionibus, quæ urinæ movendæ sunt. Præcipueque ad id valet vel trifolii semen, vel cuminum, vel apium, vel serpyllum, vel cytissus, vel portulaca, vel nepeta, vel thymum, vel hyssopum, vel satureia: hæc enim inde commodissime videntur humorem educere. Lienis quoque bubulus utiliter esui datur; præcipueque eruca et nasturtium lienem extenuant.

## ORDO.

frictiones, et sudores sunt necessarii. Omnia dulcia sunt inimica; item lac et caseus: autem acida conveniunt maxime. Ergo, expedit sorbere acre acetum per se, et etiam magis, quod est conditum scilla.

Salsamenta sunt edenda, vel oleæ ex dura muria; lactucæ tinctæ in aceto, que intubi ex eodem, betæ ex sinapi, asparagus, armoracia, pastinaca, ungulæ, rostra, macræ aves, venatio ejusdem generis. Vero incoctum absinthium debet dari potui jejuno: at aqua a ferrario fabro, in qua candens ferrum sit tinctum subinde post cibum: enim hæc vel præcipue coerces lienem. Quod est animadversum in iis animalibus, quæ educata apud hos fabros, habent exiguos lienes.

Tenne, austerrum vinum etiam potest dari; que omnia in cibis et potionibus, quæ sunt movendæ urinæ. Que præcipue vel semen trifolii valet ad id, vel cuminum, vel apium, vel serpyllum, vel cytissus, vel portulaca, vel nepeta, vel thymum, vel hyssopum, vel satureia: enim hæc videntur educere humorem inde commodissime. Quoque lienis bubulus datur esui utiliter; que eruca et nasturtium præcipue extenuant lienem.

## TRANSLATION.

far. Uction, friction, and perspiration are necessary. All sweet things are injurious; also milk and cheese: but acid things are more compatible. Therefore it is expedient to sip sharp vinegar by itself, and more particularly that in which squills have been preserved.

Salsaments should be eaten, or olives preserved in strong brine; lettuces and endive dipped in vinegar, and beet-root with mustard, asparagus, horseradish, wild parsnip, the feet, cheeks of animals, lean birds, and game. But a decoction of wormwood ought to be given to the patient fasting by way of drink: but after food the water of a blacksmith's forge, in which he plunges his hot irons very frequently, for this has a very powerful effect on the spleen. This has been observed in those animals reared about smithies, that they have small spleens.

Attenuated, and even austere wine may be given, and every thing in the food or drink that is calculated to promote the urine. The seed of trefoil possesses considerable efficacy, or cummin, or parsley, or wild thyme, or cytissus (18), or purslane, or cat-mint, or thyme, or hyssop, or savoury: for these things seem to abstract the humour from it most effectually. The spleen of an ox is also given with advantage; and rocket and cresses have a powerful influence in extenuating the spleen.

Imponenda quoque extrinsecus sunt, quæ levent. Fit ex unguento et palmulis, quod *μυροβάλανον* Græci vocant: fit ex lini et nasturtii semine, quo vinum et oleum adjicitur: fit ex cupresso viridi, et arida ficu: fit ex sinapi, cui sevi hircini a renibus quarta pars ponderis adjicitur, teriturque in sole, et protinus imponitur.

Multisque modis huic rei cappari aptum est: nam et ipsum cum cibo assumere, et muriam ejus cum aceto sorbere commodum est. Quin etiam extrinsecus radicem contritam, vel corticem ejus cum furfuribus, aut ipsum cappari cum melle contritum imponere expedit. Malagmata quoque huic rei aptantur.

## ORDO.

Quoque, quæ levent sunt imponenda extrinsecus. Quod Græci vocant *μυροβάλανον* (myrobalanus), fit ex unguento et palmulis: fit ex semine lini et nasturtii, quo vinum et oleum adjicitur: fit ex viridi cupresso, et arida ficu: fit ex sinapi, cui quarta pars ponderis sevi a renibus hircini adjicitur, que teritur in sole, et imponitur protinus.

Que cappari est aptum huic rei multis modis: nam et est commodum assumere ipsum cum cibo, et sorbere muriam ejus cum aceto. Quin etiam expedit imponere radicem, vel corticem ejus contritam cum furfuribus, aut cappari ipsum contritum cum melle extrinsecus. Quoque malagmata aptantur huic rei.

## TRANSLATION.

There should be some external applications also to relieve the pain. That which the Greeks call myrobalanus is made out of ointment and dates: or of lintseed and the seed of cresses, to which they add wine and oil: or it is made of green cypress and dry figs: or of mustard with a fourth part of the suet of a goat's kidney, rubbed in the sun, and laid on immediately.

Capers too under various modifications are applicable in this case: for it is not only advantageous to take it with food, but to sip the liquor of it with vinegar. Also it is expedient to apply the bruised root externally, or the rind of it with bran, or the caper itself rubbed up with honey. Malagmata also are applicable in this disease.

## CAP. X.

## DE RENUM MORBIS.

AT renes ubi affecti sunt, diu male habent. Pejus est, si frequens biliosus vomitus accedit. Oportet conquiescere: cubare molliter: solvere alvum; si ali-

## ORDO.

## CAP. X.

## DE MORBIS RENUM.

AT ubi renes sunt affecti, habent male diu. Est pejus, si frequens biliosus vomitus accedit. Oportet conquiescere: cubare molliter: solvere alvum; si non respondet

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

## THE DISEASES OF THE KIDNEYS.

BUT when the kidneys are affected, they remain so for a long time. It is worse if frequent bilious vomiting accompany it. Rest must be enjoined: to lie on a soft



ter non respondet, etiam ducere: sæpe desiderare in aqua calida: neque cibum, neque potionem frigidam assumere: abstinere ab omnibus salsis, acribus, acidis, pomis: bibere liberaliter: adjicere modo cibo, modo potioni piper, porrum, ferulam, album papaver, quæ maxime inde urinam movere consuerunt.

Auxilio quoque his exulceratis sunt, si adhuc ulcera purganda sunt, cucumeris semina detractis corticibus sexaginta, nuclei ex pinu silvestri duodecim, anisi quod tribus digitis sumi possit, croci paulum, contrita et in duas mulsi potiones divisa.

Si vero dolor tantum levandus est, ejusdem cucumeris semina triginta, iidem nuclei viginti, nuces Græcæ quinque, croci paululum, contrita et cum lacte potui data. Ac super quoque recte quædam malagmata injiciuntur; maximeque ea, quæ humori extrahendo sunt.

## ORDO.

aliter, etiam ducere: sæpe desiderare in calida aqua: assumere neque cibum, neque frigidam potionem: abstinere ab omnibus salsis, acribus, acidis, pomis: bibere liberaliter: adjicere modo cibo, modo potioni, piper, porrum, ferulam, album papaver, quæ maxime consuerunt movere urinam inde.

Quoque, si ulcera sunt purganda adhuc, sexaginta semina cucumeris, corticibus detractis, duodecim nuclei ex silvestri pinu, anisi quod possit sumi tribus digitis, paulum croci, contrita et divisa in duas potiones mulsi, sunt auxilio his exulceratis.

Vero si dolor tantum est levandus, triginta semina ejusdem cucumeris, iidem viginti nuclei, quinque Græcæ nuces, paululum croci, contrita et data cum lacte potui. Ac quoque quædam malagmata injiciuntur super recte; que maxime ea, quæ sunt extrahendo humori.

## TRANSLATION.

bed: to relax the bowels; even to glyster them, if they be not opened otherwise: to sit down frequently in warm water: to take neither food nor drink cold: to abstain from every thing salt, acrid, acid, and fruit of the apple kind: to drink copiously: to add sometimes to the food, sometimes to the drink, pepper, leeks, ferula (19), and the white poppy, which things possess a powerful influence in promoting the urine from thence.

If the kidneys be ulcerated, and those ulcers require to be cleansed, the following remedy will be beneficial: take sixty cucumber seeds decorticated, twelve kernels of the wild pine, of anise as much as may be taken up with three fingers, a little saffron: all these to be bruised together, and divided into two draughts of hydromel.

But if the pain only is to be alleviated, thirty cucumber seeds, twenty of the above named kernels, five sweet almonds, a very little saffron, all bruised and given with milk as a drink. Also some malagmata may be applied over the part; and especially those which are calculated for extracting the humour.

## CAP. XI.

DE INTESTINORUM MORBIS: ET  
PRIMO DE CHOLERA.

A VISCERIBUS ad intestina veniendum est, quæ sunt et acutis et longis morbis obnoxia. Primoque facienda mentio est cholerae; quia commune id stomachi atque intestinorum vitium videri potest. Nam simul et dejectio et vomitus est: præterque hæc inflatio est, intestina torquentur, bilis supra infraque erumpit, primum aquæ similis, deinde ut in ea recens caro lota esse videatur, interdum alba, nonnumquam nigra, vel varia.

Ergo eo nomine morbum hunc *χολέραν* Græci nominarunt. Præter ea vero, quæ supra comprehensa sunt, sæpe etiam crura manusque contrahuntur, urget sitis, anima deficit: quibus concurrentibus non mirum est, si subito quis moritur. Neque tamen ulli morbo minori momento succurritur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XI.

DE MORBIS INTESTINORUM; ET  
PRIMO DE CHOLERA.

Est veniendum a visceribus ad intestina, quæ sunt obnoxia et acutis et longis morbis. Que primo mentio est facienda cholerae; quia id potest videri commune vitium stomachi atque intestinorum. Nam est simul et dejectio et vomitus: que præter hæc est inflatio, intestina torquentur, bilis erumpit supra que infra, primum similis aquæ, deinde ut recens caro videatur esse lota in ea, interdum alba, nonnumquam nigra, vel varia.

Ergo Græci nominarunt hunc morbum eo nomine *χολέραν* (cholera). Vero præter ea, quæ sunt comprehensa supra, crura que manus etiam contrahuntur sæpe, sitis urget, anima deficit: quibus concurrentibus non est mirum, si quis moritur subito. Neque tamen succurritur ulli morbo minori momento.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XI.

## DISEASES OF THE INTESTINES, AND FIRST OF CHOLERA.

FROM the viscera we proceed to the intestines, which are susceptible both of acute and chronic diseases. In the first place I must make mention of cholera; because it appears to be a disease common to the stomach and intestines. For there is both purging and vomiting at the same time: besides these, there is flatus, tormina of the intestines, bile is ejected both upwards and downwards, at first it resembles water, afterwards as if fresh meat had been washed in it, sometimes white, sometimes black, or variegated.

Therefore the Greeks have given to this disease the name of cholera. But besides those symptoms which have been enumerated above, the legs and hands are often seized with involuntary contractions, and the patient is attacked with violent thirst and syncope: with such a combination of causes it need not surprise us if the patient die suddenly. Yet there is no disease relieved with less difficulty.

Protinus ergo, ubi ista cœperunt, aquæ tepidæ quam plurimum bibere oportet, et vomere. Vix umquam sic non vomitus sequitur; sed etiamsi non incidit, miscuisse tamen novam materiam corruptæ prodest; parsque sanitatis est, vomitum esse suppressum. Si id incidit, protinus ab omni potione abstinendum est. Si vero tormina sunt, oportet frigidis et humidis fomentis stomachum fovere; vel, si venter dolet, iisdem egelidis, sic, ut venter ipse mediocriter calentibus juvetur.

Quod si vehementer et vomitus, et dejectio, et sitis vexant, et adhuc subcruda sunt, quæ vomuntur, nondum vino maturum tempus est: aqua, neque ea ipsa frigida, sed potius egelida danda est: admovendumque naribus est pulegium ex aceto, vel polenta vino aspersa, vel mentha secundum naturam est.

At cum discussa cruditas est, tum magis verendum est, ne anima deficiat. Ergo tum confugiendum est ad vinum. Id esse oportet tenue, odoratum, cum aqua frigida mistum; vel polenta ad-

## ORDO.

Ergo protinus, ubi ista cœperunt, oportet bibere quam plurimum tepidæ aquæ, et vomere. Sic vomitus vix umquam non sequitur; sed etiamsi non incidit, tamen prodest miscuisse novam materiam corruptæ; que vomitum esse suppressum, est pars sanitatis. Si id incidit, est protinus abstinendum ab omni potione. Vero si sunt tormina, oportet fovere stomachum frigidis et humidis fomentis; vel, si venter dolet, iisdem egelidis, sic, ut venter ipse juvetur mediocriter calentibus.

Quod si et vomitus, et dejectio, et sitis vexant vehementer, et quæ vomuntur, sunt adhuc subcruda, est nondum maturum tempus vino: aqua est danda, neque ea ipsa frigida, sed potius egelida: que pulegium ex aceto est admovendum naribus, vel polenta aspersa vino, vel mentha secundum naturam.

At cum cruditas est discussa, tum est verendum magis, ne anima deficiat. Tum ergo est confugiendum ad vinum. Id oportet esse tenue, odoratum, mistum cum frigida aqua; vel

## TRANSLATION.

Therefore when those symptoms have appeared, he should be compelled to drink copiously of tepid water without delay, and to vomit. This scarcely ever fails to excite vomiting; but although it may not, yet it will be beneficial to mingle fresh fluids with that which is already vitiated; and it is one half of the recovery, if the vomiting be suppressed. If that be accomplished, he should abstain from all drink immediately. If there be tormina, it will be necessary to bathe the stomach with cold and moist fomentations; or if the abdomen be painful, the same to be applied, tepid, and to relieve the bowels themselves by something moderately warm.

But if both vomiting, and purging, and thirst violently harass the patient, and what is ejected be as yet somewhat crude, it is not yet the proper time for wine: water must be given, and even that itself not cold, but rather lukewarm. Pennyroyal dipped in vinegar should be applied to the nostrils, or polenta sprinkled with wine, or mint in the natural state (20).

But when the indigestion has been removed, then there is the more reason to apprehend syncope. Therefore that is the time to resort to wine. This ought to be diluted, fragrant, and mixed with cold water; or it may be expedient to take it



jecta, vel melle quoque assumere expedit: quotiesque aliquid aut stomachus, aut venter effudit, toties per hæc vires restituere.

Erasistratus primo tribus vini guttis, aut quinis aspergendam potionem esse dixit; deinde paulatim merum adjiciendum. Is, si et ab initio vinum dedit, et metum cruditatis secutus est, non sine causa fecit: si vehementem infirmitatem adjuvari posse tribus guttis putavit, erravit.

At si inanis est homo, et crura ejus contrahuntur, interponenda potio absinthii est. Si extremæ partes corporis frigent, ungendæ sunt calido oleo, cui ceræ paulum sit adjectum, calidisque fomentis nutriendæ. Si ne sub his quidem quies facta est, extrinsecus contra ventriculum ipsum cucurbitula admovenda est, aut sinapi superimponendum.

Ubi is constitit, dormire oportet: postero die utique a potione abstinere: die tertio in balneum ire: paulatim se cibo reficere; somno quisquis facile adquiescit; vitataque lassitudine et frigore. Si post suppressam choleram

#### ORDO.

polenta adjecta, vel quoque expedit assumere melle: que quoties aut stomachus, aut venter effudit aliquid, toties restituere vires per hæc.

Erasistratus primo dixit potionem esse aspergendam tribus, aut quinis guttis vini; deinde merum (est) adjiciendum paulatim. Is, si dedit vinum et ab initio, et est secutus metum cruditatis, fecit non sine causa: si putavit vehementem infirmitatem posse adjuvari tribus guttis, erravit.

At si homo est inanis, et crura ejus contrahuntur, potio absinthii est interponenda. Si extremæ partes corporis frigent, sunt ungendæ calido oleo, cui paulum ceræ sit adjectum, que (sunt) nutriendæ calidis fomentis. Si ne quidem quies est facta sub his, cucurbitula est admovenda extrinsecus contra ventriculum ipsum, aut sinapi (est) superimponendum.

Ubi is constitit, oportet dormire: utique abstinere a potione postero die: ire in balneum tertio die: reficere se cibo paulatim; quisquis adquiescit facile somno; que lassitudine et frigore vitata. Si febricula manet post choleram suppressam

#### TRANSLATION.

either with the addition of polenta, or honey: and as often as the stomach or bowels have ejected their contents, so often must they be replenished by these means.

Erasistratus said that the drink should be mixed at first with three or five drops of wine; afterwards pure wine to be added gradually. If he gave wine from the beginning, with the fear of indigestion, he did it not without a motive: but if he thought that great debility could be relieved by three drops of wine, he was mistaken.

But if the patient be weak, and his legs affected with spasm, a potion of worm-wood is to be given at intervals. If the extremities of the body be cold, they are to be anointed with hot oil, to which a little wax may be added, and to be soothed with hot fomentations. If rest have not been procured even by these, a cupping glass should be applied externally over the stomach itself, or a sinapism laid over it.

*- disease -* When the ~~action~~ action of this organ has ceased, it behoves the patient to sleep: on the following day he must abstain from drink: on the third day to take a bath; to restore himself gradually with food, and sleep, whoever rests easily; avoiding lassitude and cold. If slight fever remain after the suppression of the cholera, it will

febricula manet, alvum duci necessarium est: tum cibus, vinoque utendum est. Sed hic quidem morbus et acutus est, et inter intestina stomachumque versatur sic, ut, cujus potissimum partis sit, non facile dici possit.

## ORDO.

sam, est necessarium alvum duci: tum est utendum cibus, que vino. Sed hic quidem morbus est et acutus, et sic versatur inter stomachum que intestina, ut, non possit facile dici, cujus partis potissimum sit.

## TRANSLATION.

be necessary to administer an injection, then to take food and wine. Now this disease indeed is both acute, and exists between the stomach and intestine, so that it is a difficult matter to say, of what part it may be.

## CAP. XII.

## DE CÆLIACO VENTRICULI MORBO.

IN ipsius vero ventriculi porta consistit is, qui et longus esse consuevit: κοιλιακός a Græcis nominatur. Sub hoc venter indurescit, dolorque ejus est: alvus nihil reddit, ac ne spiritum quidem transmittit: extremæ partes frigescunt: difficulter spiritus redditur.

Commodissimum est inter initia calida cataplasmata toti ventri imponere, ut dolorem leniant: post cibum vomere, atque ita ventrem exinanire: proximis deinde diebus cucurbitulas

## ORDO.

## CAP. XII.

## DE CÆLIACO MORBO VENTRICULI.

VERO is qui consistit in porta ventriculi ipsius, et (qui) consuevit esse longus: nominatur κοιλιακός (cæliacus morbus). Sub hoc venter indurescit, que est dolor ejus: alvus reddit nihil, ac ne quidem transmittit spiritum: extremæ partes frigescunt: spiritus redditur difficulter.

Est commodissimum imponere calida cataplasmata toti ventri inter initia, ut leniant dolorem: vomere post cibum, atque ita exinanire ventrem: deinde proximis diebus admoveere cu-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XII.

## THE CÆLIAC DISEASE OF THE STOMACH.

BUT there exists in the pyloric orifice of the stomach itself, a disease which is usually of a chronic character: it is named cæliacus by the Greeks. Under this disease, the abdomen becomes indurated and painful: the bowels are constricted, and does not even permit the escape of flatus: the extremities are cold: the breathing is rendered difficult.

In the commencement it is most advantageous to apply hot cataplasms over the whole of the abdomen, that they may relieve the pain: to vomit after food, and by this to empty the stomach: on the subsequent days to apply the cupping glasses

sine ferro ventri et coxis admovere: ventrem ipsum liquare dato lacte, et vino salso, frigido; si tempus anni patitur, etiam viridibus ficis: sic tamen, ne quis aut cibus, aut humor universus detur, sed paulatim.

Ergo per intervalla temporis sat est cyathos binos ternosve sumere, et cibum pro portione hujus: commodeque facit cyatho lactis cyathus aquæ mistus, et sic datus: cibique inflantes et acres utiliores sunt; adeo ut lacti quoque recte contritum allium adjiciatur. Procedente vero tempore, opus est gestari; maximeque navigare; perfricari ter aut quater in die, sic, ut nitrum adjiciatur; perfundi aqua calida post cibum; deinde sinapi imponere per omnia membra, excepto capite, donec arrodatur et rubeat; maximeque si corpus durum et virile est: paulatim deinde faciendus est transitus ad ea, quæ ventrem comprimunt.

Assa caro danda, valens, et quæ non facile corrumpatur: potui vero, pluvialis aqua decocta, sed quæ per binos ternosve cyathos bibatur. Si vetus vitium est, oportet laser quam optimum ad piperis magnitudinem de-

## ORDO.

curbitulas sine ferro ventri et coxis: liquare ventrem ipsum lacte dato, salso, et frigido vino; si tempus anni patitur, etiam viridibus ficis: tamen sic, ne quis aut cibus, aut humor detur universus, sed paulatim.

Ergo per intervalla temporis est sat sumere binos ve ternos cyathos, et cibum pro portione hujus: quæ cyathus lactis mistus cyatho aquæ, et sic datus, facit commode: quæ inflantes et acres cibi sunt utiliores; adeo ut quoque contritum allium adjiciatur lacti recte. Vero tempore procedente, est opus gestari; quæ maxime navigare; perfricari ter aut quater in die, sic, ut nitrum adjiciatur oleo; calida aqua perfundi post cibum; deinde imponere sinapi per omnia membra, capite excepto, donec arrodatur, et rubeat; quæ maxime si corpus est durum et virile: deinde transitus est faciendus paulatim ad ea, quæ comprimunt ventrem.

Valens assa caro (est) danda, et quæ non corrumpatur facile: vero decocta pluvialis aqua potui, sed quæ bibatur per binos ternosve cyathos. Si vitium est vetus, oportet devorare laser quam optimum, ad magnitu-

## TRANSLATION.

without incision on the abdomen and hips: to relax the bowels by giving milk, and cold salt wine; green figs also, if it be the season of the year; yet this must be managed so that, neither the food nor the drink be given all together, but by little and little at a time.

Therefore it will be sufficient to take two or three glasses at intervals of time, and food in proportion: a glass of water mixed with a glass of milk, and so given, does very well: inflating and acrid foods are the more useful; so that bruised garlick may be given with milk advantageously. But in the progress of the treatment, gestation will be necessary, and especially sailing; to be rubbed three or four times a day, with oil and nitre commixed; to have warm water poured over him after food; then to apply sinapisms over all the limbs except the head, until they become blistered and red; especially if the body be firm and muscular; afterwards we must make a gradual transition to those things which repress the bowels.

The best roast flesh should be given, such as does not easily become putrescent: boiled rain water for drink, which may be taken by two or three glasses. If the disease be chronic, the patient must swallow the size of a pepper corn of the best



vorare: altero quoque die vinum vel aquam bibere: interdum interposito cibo, singulos vini cyathos sorbere: ex inferiori parte infundere pluviatilem egelidam aquam, maximeque si dolor in imis partibus remanet.

## ORDO.

dinem piperis: bibere vinum vel aquam quoque altero die: interdum cibo interposito, sorbere singulos cyathos vini: infundere egelidam pluviatilem aquam ex inferiore parte, que maxime si dolor remanet in imis partibus.

## TRANSLATION.

assafoetida: on every other day to drink wine or water: sometimes to sip single glasses of wine, interposing food between: to inject tepid rain water *per rectum*, and especially, if the pain remain in the lower parts.

## CAP. XIII.

## DE TENUIORIS INTESTINI MORBO.

INTRA ipsa vero intestina consistunt duo morbi; quorum alter in tenuiore, alter in pleniore est. Prior acutus est; insequens esse longus potest. Diocles Carystius tenuioris intestini morbum *χόρδαψον*, plenioris *εἰλεὼν* nominavit. A plerisque video nunc illum priorem *εἰλεὼν*, hunc *κολικὸν* nominari.

Sed prior modo supra umbilicum, modo sub umbilico dolore movet. Fit alterutro loco inflammatio: nec alvus, nec spiritus infra transmittitur: si superior pars affecta est, cibus, si in-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIII.

## DE MORBO TENUIORIS INTESTINI.

VERO duo morbi consistunt intra intestina ipsa; alter quorum est in tenuiore, alter in pleniore. Prior est acutus; insequens potest esse longus. Diocles Carystius nominavit morbum tenuioris intestini *χόρδαψον* (chordapsus), plenioris *εἰλεὼν* (ileus). Nunc video illum priorem nominari *εἰλεὼν* (ileum), hunc *κολικὸν* (colicum) a plerisque.

Sed prior movet dolore modo supra umbilicum, modo sub umbilico. Inflammatio fit alterutro loco: nec alvus, nec spiritus transmittitur infra: si superior pars est affecta, cibus redditur per os, si inferior (est

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIII.

## THE DISEASE OF THE SMALLER INTESTINES.

Now there are two diseases peculiar to the intestines themselves; one of which is in the smaller, the other in the larger intestine. The first is acute: the latter may be chronic. Diocles the Carystian called the disease of the smaller intestine chordapsus, that of the larger ileus.

But I observe now that most persons term the first ileus, the latter colicus. Now the first causes a pain sometimes above the umbilicus, sometimes below it. Inflammation takes place in either part: neither the fæces nor wind pass downwards: if the upper part be affected, food, if the lower, stercoraceous matter is

ferior, stercus per os redditur; si utrumlibet vetus est. Adjicit periculo vomitus biliosus, mali odoris, aut varius, aut niger.

Remedium est, sanguinem mittere; vel cucurbitulas pluribus locis admove, non ubique cute incisa: id enim duobus aut tribus locis satis est: ex ceteris spiritum evocare abunde est. Tum animadvertere oportet, quo loco malum sit: solet enim contra id tumere.

Et si supra umbilicum est, alvi ductio utilis non est: si infra est, alvum ducere, ut Erasistrato placuit, optimum est; et sæpe id auxilii satis est. Ducitur autem percolato ptisanæ cremore, cum oleo et melle, sic, ut præterea nihil adjiciatur. Si nihil tumet, duas manus imponere oportet supra summum ventrem, paulatimque deducere: invenietur enim mali locus, qui necesse est renitatur; et ex eo deliberari poterit, ducenda, nec ne alvus sit.

Illa communia sunt: calida cataplasmata admove, eaque imponere a mammis usque ad inguina et spinam, ac sæpe mutare: brachia cruraque perfri-

## ORDO.

affected), stercus (redditur per os); si utrumlibet (morbus) est vetus. Biliosus, aut varius, aut niger vomitus, mali odoris, adjicit periculo.

Remedium est, mittere sanguinem; vel admove cucurbitulas pluribus locis, cute non incisa ubique: enim id est satis duobus aut tribus locis: est abunde evocare spiritum ex ceteris. Tum oportet animadvertere, quo loco malum sit: enim solet tumere contra id (locum).

Et si est supra umbilicum, ductio alvi non est utilis: si est infra, est optimum, ducere alvum, ut placuit Erasistrato; et id est sæpe satis auxilii. Autem ducitur percolato cremore ptisanæ, cum oleo et melle, sic, ut nihil præterea adjiciatur. Si nihil tumet, oportet imponere duas manus supra summum ventrem, que deducere paulatim: enim locus mali invenietur, qui est necesse renitatur; et poterit deliberari ex eo, necne, alvus sit ducenda.

Illa sunt communia (remedia): admove calida cataplasmata, que imponere ea a mammis usque ad inguina et spinam, ac mutare sæpe: perfricare brachia

## TRANSLATION.

rendered by the mouth; in either the one or the other the case is inveterate. Bilious vomiting of bad odour, or various coloured, or black, increases the danger.

The remedy is blood-letting; or to apply the cupping glasses in several places, but the incisions are not to be made every where: for that is sufficient in two or three places: it is enough to abstract the air from the others. Then it is necessary to ascertain, in what place the disease may be seated: for there is usually a swelling over it.

If it be above the umbilicus injections avail nothing: if below, according to Erasistratus, it is best to purge the bowels by injections; and very frequently this remedy is sufficient of itself. Now this enema is composed of the strained liquor of ptisan with oil and honey, so that nothing else need be added. If there be no tumefaction, it will be necessary to apply both hands to the upper part of the abdomen, and pass them down gradually; for by this the seat of the disease will be discovered, which must necessarily resist the pressure: and from that it may be inferred, whether the bowels are to be clystered or not.

These are general remedies: to apply hot cataplasms from the breasts as far as the groins and extending to the spine, and to change them often: to rub the arms

care: demittere totum hominem in calidum oleum: si dolor non quiescit, etiam in alvum ex parte inferiore tres aut quatuor cyathos calidi olei dare. Ubi per hæc consecuti sumus, ut jam ex inferiore parte spiritus transmittatur, offerre potui mulsum tepidum non multum: nam ante magna cura vitandum est, ne quid bibat. Si id commode cessit, adjicere sorbitionem.

Ubi dolor et febricula quierunt, tum demum uti cibo pleniore; sed neque inflante, neque duro, neque valido, ne intestina adhuc imbecilla lædantur. Potui vero nihil, præterquam puram aquam. Nam sive quid vinolentum sive acidum est, id huic morbo alienum est. Ac postea quoque vitare oportet balneum, ambulationem, gestationem, ceterosque corporis motus. Nam facile id malum redire consuevit; et sive cum frigus subit, sive aliqua jactatio, nisi bene jam confirmatis intestinis, revertitur.

## ORDO.

que crura: demittere totum hominem in calidum oleum: si dolor non quiescit, etiam dare in alvum ex inferiore parte tres aut quatuor cyathos calidi olei. Ubi consecuti sumus per hæc, ut spiritus jam transmittatur ex inferiore parte, offerre non multum tepidum mulsum potui: nam ante magna cura est vitandum, ne bibat quid. Si id cessit commode, adjicere sorbitionem.

Ubi dolor et febricula quierunt, tum demum uti pleniore cibo; sed neque inflante (cibo), neque duro, neque valido, ne intestina adhuc imbecilla lædantur. Vero (dare) nihil potui, præterquam puram aquam. Nam sive quid est vinolentum sive acidum, id est alienum huic morbo. Ac postea oportet quoque vitare balneum, ambulationem, gestationem, que ceteros motus corporis. Nam id malum consuevit redire facile; et sive cum frigus subit, sive aliqua jactatio, revertitur, nisi intestinis bene confirmatis jam.

## TRANSLATION.

and legs: to immerse the patient entirely in warm oil: if the pain yield not, to give an injection composed of three or four glasses of warm oil. When by these means we have obtained the expulsion of the wind inferiorly, we may allow the patient a little warm hydromel, but the greatest care must be taken that he shall have drunk nothing previously. If the result be favourable we may add gruel.

When the pain and fever have ceased then we may allow a fuller diet, but neither flatulent, hard, nor strong, lest the intestines being as yet weak, may be injured. But for drink, nothing except pure water: for, whether any thing be vinous or acid, it is alike injurious in this disease. Even afterwards he must avoid bathing, walking, gestation, and other movements of the body. This disease is easily induced to return; and whether it be brought on by cold, or some agitation, unless the intestinal canal be restored to a healthy state, it is reproduced.



## CAP. XIV.

## DE MORBO INTESTINI PLENIORIS.

Is autem morbus, qui in intestino pleniore est, in ea maxime parte est, quam cæcam esse proposui. Vehemens fit inflatio, vehementes dolores, dextra magis parte: intestinum, quod verti videtur, prope spiritum elidit. In plerisque post frigora cruditatesque oritur, deinde quiescit; et per ætatem sæpe repetens sic cruciat, ut vitæ spatio nihil demat.

Ubi is dolor cœpit, admovere sicca et calida fomenta oportet; sed primo lenta, deinde validiora; simulque frictione ad extremas partes, id est, crura brachiaque materiam evocare: si discussus non est, qua dolet, cucurbitulas sine ferro defigere. Est etiam medicamentum ejus rei causa comparatum, quod *κολικόν* nominatur. Id se repperisse Cassius gloriabatur. Magis prodest potui datum: sed impositum quoque extrinsecus, digerendo spiritum, dolorem levat.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIV.

## DE MORBO PLENIORIS INTESTINI.

AUTEM is morbus, qui est in pleniore intestino, est maxime in ea parte, quam proposui esse cæcam. Vehemens inflatio fit, vehementes dolores, magis dextra parte: intestinum, quod videtur verti, prope elidit spiritum. In plerisque oritur post frigora que cruditates, deinde quiescit; et sæpe repetens per ætatem sic cruciat, ut demat nihil spatio vitæ.

Ubi is dolor cœpit, oportet admovere sicca et calida fomenta; sed primo lenta, deinde validiora; que simul evocare materiam ad extremas partes, id est, crura que brachia frictione: si non est discussus, qua dolet, defigere cucurbitulas sine ferro. Etiam est medicamentum comparatum causa ejus rei, quod nominatur *κολικόν* (colicus). Cassius gloriabatur se repperisse id. Prodest magis datum potui: sed quoque impositum extrinsecus, levat dolorem, digerendo spiritum.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIV.

## THE DISEASE OF THE LARGER INTESTINE.

Now that disease, which arises in the larger intestine, is chiefly confined to that part which I previously described as the cæcum. There is great inflation produced, violent pains, particularly in the right side: the intestine, which seems to be everted, almost forces out the wind. It arises in most cases after colds and indigestion, then ceases: and frequently returning during the whole of a person's life, inflicts a torment, without abbreviating the term of existence.

When this pain has begun, it is necessary to apply dry and warm fomentations; but at first gentle, afterwards more powerful; and at the same time to produce a derivation of the humour to the extremities, that is the legs and arms, by friction: if it be not removed, to apply dry cupping over the part affected. There is also a remedy prepared for this purpose, which is named Colicon. Cassius boasted of having discovered it. It is more advantageously given as a drink; but even applied externally it relieves the pain, by dispersing the wind.

Nisi finito vero tormento, recte neque cibus neque potio assumitur. Quo victu sit utendum iis, qui hoc genere tentantur, jam mihi dictum est. Confectio medicamenti, quod *κολικόν* nominatur, ex his constat. Costi, anisi, castorei, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . III. petroselini p. den. III. piperis longi, et rotundi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . II. papaveris lacrimæ, junci rotundi, myrrhæ, nardi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . VI. quæ melle excipiuntur. Id autem et devorari potest, et ex aqua calida sumi.

## ORDO.

Vero neque cibus neque potio assumitur recte, nisi tormento finito. Jam est dictum mihi, quo victu sit utendum iis, qui tentantur hoc genere. Confectio medicamenti, quod nominatur *κολικόν* (colicus), constat ex his. Costi, anisi, castorei, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . III. petroselini p. den. III. longi, et rotundi piperis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . II. lacrimæ papaveris, rotundi junci, myrrhæ, nardi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . VI. quæ excipiuntur melle. Autem id et potest devorari, et sumi ex calida aqua.

## TRANSLATION.

But neither food nor drink should be given until the pain be removed. I have already treated of the regimen proper for those who are afflicted by this kind of disease (21). The composition of that medicine, which is called Colicon, consists of the following ingredients : of costus, anise, castor, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . III. of parsley p. den. III. of long, and round pepper of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . II. of poppy tears, round cyperus, myrrh, nard, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . VI. all incorporated with honey. Now this may be swallowed alone, or taken with warm water.

## CAP. XV.

## DE TORMINIBUS.

PROXIMA his inter intestinorum mala tormina esse consueverunt: *δυσεντερία* Græce vocatur. Intus intestina exulcerantur: ex his cruor manat; isque modo cum stercore aliquo semper liquido, modo cum quibusdam quasi mucosis excernitur: interdum simul quædam carnosa descendunt: frequens dejicien-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XV.

## DE TORMINIBUS.

PROXIMA his inter mala intestinorum consueverunt esse tormina: vocatur Græce *δυσεντερία* (dysenteria). Intestina exulcerantur intus: cruor manat ex his; que is modo excernitur cum aliquo stercore, modo cum quibusdam quasi mucosis, semper liquido: interdum quædam carnosa descendunt simul: est fre-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XV.

## OF DYSENTERIA.

THE next disease of the intestines is usually called tormina: in the Greek language it is termed dysenteria. The intestines are ulcerated internally: grumous evacuations come from them; sometimes the excretions are mixed with faecal matter always liquid, at other times the discharges are slimy; sometimes particles like flesh pass with them: there is a frequent desire of going to stool,

di cupiditas, dolorque in ano est : cum eodem dolore exiguum aliquid emittitur : atque eo quoque tormentum intenditur ; idque post tempus aliquod levatur ; exiguaque requies est : somnus interpellatur : febricula oritur : longoque tempore id malum, cum inveteraverit, aut tollit hominem, aut, etiam si finitur, excruciat.

Oportet in primis conquiescere ; siquidem omnis agitatio exulcerat : deinde jejunum sorbere vini cyathum, cui contrita radix quinquefolii sit adjecta : imponere cataplasmata super ventrem, quæ reprimunt ; quod in superioribus ventris morbis non expedit : quotiesque desidit, subluere aqua calida, in qua decoctæ verbenæ sint : portulacam vel coctam, vel ex dura muria edisse ; cibos potionesque eas, quæ adstringunt alvum.

Se vetustior morbus est, ex inferioribus partibus tepidum infundere vel ptisanæ cremorem, vel lac, vel adipem liquatam, vel medullam cervinam, vel oleum, vel cum rosa butyrum, vel cum eadem album crudum ex ovis, vel aquam, in qua lini semen decoctum sit ; vel, si somnus non accedit, vitellos cum aqua, in qua rosæ floris folia cocta sint. Levant enim dolorem hæc, et

#### ORDO.

quens cupiditas dejiendi, que dolor in ano : aliquid exiguum emittitur cum eodem dolore : atque quoque tormentum intenditur eo ; que id post aliquod tempus levatur ; que est exigua requies : somnus interpellatur : febricula oritur : que cum id malum inveteraverit, longo tempore, aut tollit hominem, aut, etiamsi finitur, excruciat.

Oportet conquiescere in primis ; siquidem omnis agitatio exulcerat : deinde sorbere cyathum vini, cui contrita radix quinquefolii sit adjecta, jejunum : imponere cataplasmata quæ reprimunt, super ventrem ; quod non expedit in superioribus morbis ventris : que quoties discedit, subluere calida aqua, in qua verbenæ sint decoctæ : vel portulacam coctam, vel edisse ex dura muria ; cibos que eas potiones, quæ adstringunt alvum.

Si morbus est vetustior, infundere vel tepidum cremorem ptisanæ, ex inferioribus partibus, vel lac, vel liquatam adipem, vel cervinam medullam, vel oleum, vel butyrum cum rosa, vel crudum album ex ovis cum eadem, vel aquam, in qua semen lini sit decoctum ; vel, si somnus non accedit, vitellos cum aqua, in qua folia floris rosæ sint cocta. Enim hæc levant dolorem, et efficiunt

#### TRANSLATION.

and pain in the anus : with this pain a small portion is voided ; and even by this the pain is augmented ; that is relieved after some time ; and then there is a short repose : the sleep is interrupted ; slight fever ensues, and in the progress of time, that disease either destroys the patient, when it has become inveterate, or even although it may be terminated, exerts a baneful influence for a long time.

In the first place rest must be enjoined, for every species of agitation ulcerates : then to sip a glass of wine fasting, to which the bruised root of cinquefoil may be added : to apply astringent cataplasms over the abdomen ; which are not expedient in the above mentioned diseases of this part ; and as often as he goes to stool, to bathe the anus with a warm decoction of vervains ; to eat purslane, either boiled or preserved in strong brine ; to take those foods and drinks which have a tendency to bind the bowels (22).

If the disease be of long standing, it is proper to inject the cream of ptisan, or milk, or melted fat, or the marrow of a deer, or oil, or butter with rose oil, or the raw whites of eggs with the same, or a decoction of linseed : or if there be no sleep obtained, the yolks of eggs with a decoction of rose leaves : for these relieve



mitiora ulcera efficiunt; maximeque utilia sunt, si cibi quoque secutum fastidium est.

Themison muria dura quam asperima sic utendum memoriæ prodidit. Cibi vero esse debent, qui leniter ventrem adstringant. At ea, quæ urinam movent, si id consecuta sunt, in aliam partem humorem avertendo, prosunt; si non sunt consecuta, noxam augment: itaque nisi in quibus prompte id facere consuerunt, non sunt adhibenda. Potui, si febricula est, aqua pura calida, vel ea, quæ ipsa quoque adstringat, dari debet: si non est, vinum leve, austereum.

Si pluribus diebus nihil remedia alia juverunt, vetusque jam vitium est, aquæ bene frigidæ potio assumpta ulcera adstringit, et initium secundæ valetudinis facit. Sed ubi venter suppressus est, protinus ad calidam potionem revertendum est. Solet autem interdum etiam putris sanies, pessimique odoris descendere: solet purus sanguis profluere.

Si superius vitium est, alvus aqua mulsa duci debet; tum deinde eadem infundi, quæ supra comprehensa sunt.

## ORDO.

ulcera mitiora; que sunt maxime utilia, si fastidium cibi quoque est secutum.

Themison prodidit memoriæ, quam asperima dura muria utendum sic. Vero cibi debent esse, qui leniter adstringant ventrem. At ea, quæ movent urinam, prosunt, si sunt consecuta id, avertendo humorem in aliam partem; si non sunt consecuta, augment noxam: itaque non sunt adhibenda, nisi in quibus consuerunt facere id prompte. Si est febricula, pura calida aqua debet dari potui, vel ea, quæ ipsa quoque adstringat: si non est, leve, austereum vinum.

Si alia remedia juverunt nihil pluribus diebus, que vitium est jam vetus, potio bene frigidæ aquæ assumpta adstringit ulcera, et facit initium secundæ valetudinis. Sed ubi venter est suppressus, est protinus revertendum ad calidam potionem. Autem interdum etiam putris sanies, que pessimi odoris solet descendere: purus sanguis solet profluere.

Si vitium est superius, alvus debet duci mulsa aqua; tum deinde eadem, quæ sunt comprehensa supra, infundi. Que

## TRANSLATION.

the pain, and render the ulcers milder, and are particularly beneficial, if nausea also have supervened.

Themison has transmitted by his opinion, that the strongest brine should be used in this manner. But the food ought to be such as may bind the bowels gently. But those things which promote the urine have a good effect, if they succeed, by determining the fluids into another part; if they do not, they increase the mischief: therefore they must not be administered, except to those on whom they have been accustomed to produce that effect readily. If there be fever, pure warm water must be given to drink, or that which has an astringent property: if that is not to be had, light, austere wine.

If those remedies have rendered no assistance after the experience of several days, and now the malady has become chronic, the drinking of very cold water astringes the ulcers and thereby institutes the beginning of a cure. But when the bowels have been once constipated, then the patient may return to warm drinks immediately. Sometimes also a putrid sanies, of a most fetid odour descends; and at other times a flux of pure blood.

If in the former of these maladies, the bowels ought to be injected with dilated hydromel, and then with those things which have been comprehended above. A

Valensque est etiam adversus cancerem intestinorum, minii gleba cum salis hemina contrita, si mista his aqua in alvum datur. At si sanguis profluit, cibi potionesque esse debent, quæ adstringant.

## ORDO.

etiam, gleba minii contrita cum hemina salis, est valens adversus cancerem intestinorum, si aqua mista his datur in alvum. At si sanguis profluit, cibi que potiones debent esse, quæ adstringant.

## TRANSLATION.

piece of minium triturated with a hemina of salt has a powerful influence on ulcers of the intestines, if these be mixed with water and injected into the bowels. But if there be a flux of blood, the food and drink too should possess astringent properties.

## CAP. XVI.

## DE LÆVITATE INTESTINORUM.

Ex torminibus interdum intestinorum lævitas oritur; qua continere nihil possunt, et quidquid assumptum est, imperfectum protinus reddunt. Id interdum ægros trahit, interdum præcipitat.

In hoc utique adhibere oportet comprimentia; quo facilius tenendi aliquid intestinis vis sit. Ergo et super pectus ponatur sinapi; exulcerataque cute, malagma, quod humorem evocet: et ex verbenis decocta in aqua desidat: et cibos potionesque assumat, quæ alvum adstringunt: et frigidis utatur perfusionibus.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVI.

## DE LÆVITATE INTESTINORUM.

LÆVITAS intestinorum interdum oritur ex torminibus; qua nihil possunt continere, et quidquid est assumptum, reddunt protinus imperfectum. Interdum id trahit ægros, interdum præcipitat.

Utique oportet adhibere comprimentia in hoc; quo sit vis intestinis tenendi aliquid facilius. Ergo et sinapi ponatur super pectus; que malagma (ponatur) exulcerata cute, quod evocet humorem: et (malagma) ex verbenis decocta in aqua, desidat: et assumat cibos que potiones, quæ adstringunt alvum: et utatur frigidis perfusionibus.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVI.

## OF LIENTERIA.

LIENTERIA sometimes arises from dysentery; in which the intestines can retain nothing, and whatever the ingesta may be, it is voided in an imperfect state. Sometimes a patient lingers in this disease, sometimes it carries him off rapidly.

In this it is particularly necessary to administer astringents; by which the power of the intestines may be enabled to retain any thing. Therefore mustard should be laid on the chest; and when the skin is ulcerated, a malagma calculated to promote the discharge: the patient may also sit down in a decoction of vervains; and take such food and drink as bind the bowels; and employ the cold affusion.

Oportet tamen prospicere, ne, simul his omnibus admotis, vitium contrarium per immodicas inflationes oriatur. Paulatim ergo firmari intestina debebunt, aliquibus quotidie adjectis. Et cum in omni fluore ventris, tum in hoc præcipue necessarium est, non quoties libet desiderare, sed quoties necesse est; ut hæc ipsa mora in consuetudinem ferendi oneris intestina deducat.

Alterum quoque, quod æque ad omnes similes affectus pertinet, in hoc maxime servandum est; ut, cum pleraque utilia insuavia sint, qualis est plantago, et rubi, et quidquid malicorio mistum est, ea potissimum ex his dentur, quæ maxime æger volet: deinde, si omnia ista fastidiet, ad excitandam cibi cupiditatem, interponatur aliquid minus utile, sed magis gratum. Exercitationes et frictiones huic quoque morbo necessariæ sunt; et cum his sol, ignis, balneum, vomitus, ut Hippocrati visum est, etiam albo veratro, si cetera parum proficient, evocatus.

## ORDO.

Tamen oportet prospicere, ne, omnibus his admotis, contrarium vitium oriatur per immodicas inflationes. Ergo intestina debebunt firmari paulatim, aliquibus adjectis quotidie. Et cum est necessarium, non desiderare quoties libet, sed quoties est necesse, in omni fluore ventris, tum præcipue in hoc; ut hæc mora ipsa deducat intestina in consuetudinem ferendi oneris.

Quoque alterum, quod æque pertinet ad omnes similes affectus, est servandum maxime in hoc; ut, cum sint pleraque utilia insuavia, qualis est plantago, et rubi, et quidquid est mistum malicorio, potissimum ea dentur ex his, quæ æger maxime volet: deinde, si fastidiet omnia ista, ad excitandam cupiditatem cibi, aliquid minus utile interponatur, sed magis gratum. Exercitationes et quoque frictiones sunt necessariæ huic morbo; et cum his, sol, ignis, balneum, vomitus etiam evocatus albo veratro, ut est visum Hippocrati, si cetera proficient parum.

## TRANSLATION.

But it is necessary, however, to guard, lest the application of all those remedies at the same time, may not give rise to another disease in the opposite extreme from immoderate flatulencies. Therefore the intestines ought to be strengthened gradually, by adding something to the food daily. Hence in every disorder of the bowels, but more particularly in this, it is necessary, not to go to stool so often as there is a desire, but as often as there is a necessity; that this delay itself may habituate the intestines to bear their usual burden.

There is also, another observation which is equally applicable to all similar affections, and must be particularly adhered to in this; that, since the most useful remedies in this disorder are disagreeable, such as plantain, bramble berries, and whatever is mixed with pomegranate rind, those chiefly are to be given which the patient shall wish most for: but should he loath them all, something less beneficial, but more grateful, may be interposed, to excite a desire for food. Exercises and frictions are also necessary in this disease; and with these, Hippocrates approved of the heat of the sun, fire, the bath, and vomiting, even with white hellebore, if the other means prove abortive.



## CAP. XVII.

## ORDO.

## DE LUMBRICIS ALVUM OCCUPANTIBUS.

## CAP. XVII.

DE LUMBRICIS OCCUPANTIBUS  
ALVUM.

NONNUMQUAM autem lumbrici quoque occupant alvum; hique modo ex inferioribus partibus, modo fœdus ore redduntur: atque interdum latos eos, qui pejores sunt, interdum teretes videmus.

AUTEM nonnumquam lumbrici quoque occupant alvum; que hi modo redduntur ex inferioribus partibus modo fœdus, ore: atque interdum videmus eos latos, qui sunt pejores, interdum teretes.

Si lati sunt, aqua potui dari debet, in qua lupinum, aut cortex mori decoctus sit; aut cui adjectum sit contritum vel hyssopum, vel piperis acetabulum, vel scammoniae paulum. Vel etiam pridie, cum multum allium ederit, vomat: posteroque die mali Punici tenues radículas colligat, quantum manu comprehendet; eas contusas in aquæ tribus sextariis decoquat, donec tertia pars supersit; huc adjiciat nitri paulum, et jejunos bibat. Interpositis deinde tribus horis, duas potiones sumat, aut aquæ, vel muriæ duræ sit adjecta: tum desidat subjecta calida aqua in pelve.

Si sunt lati, aqua debet dari potui, in qua lupinum, aut cortex mori sit decoctus; aut cui vel contritum hyssopum, vel acetabulum piperis, vel paulum scammoniae sit adjectum. Vel etiam vomat pridie, cum ederit multum allium: que postero die colligat tenues radículas Punici mali, quantum comprehendit manu; eas contusas decoquat in tribus sextariis aquæ, donec tertia pars supersit; huc adjiciat paulum nitri, et bibat jejunos. Deinde tribus horis interpositis, sumat duas potiones, aut aquæ, vel sit adjecta duræ muriæ: tum desidat calida aqua in pelve subjecta.

Si vero teretes sunt, qui pueros maxime exercent, et eadem dari possunt, et

Vero si sunt teretes, qui maxime exercent pueros, et eadem

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVII.

## OF WORMS OCCUPYING THE ALIMENTARY CANAL.

Now sometimes worms are found to occupy the intestines; and these are sometimes passed downwards, sometimes, more disagreeably, by the mouth: and sometimes we observe them to be broad, which are worse, sometimes round.

If they be broad, a decoction of lupins, or mulberry bark may be given as a drink; or to which either bruised hyssop, or an acetabulum of pepper, or a little scammony may be added. Or let the patient take an emetic, after having eaten plentifully of garlick the day before: and on the day following let him collect a handful of the small tendrils of pomegranate; boil these, after bruising them, in three sextarii of water, until only one-third remain; to this he may add a little nitre, and drink this decoction fasting. Then after an interval of three hours, he may take two draughts of this decoction (23), or of water, with the addition of strong brine: then he may go to stool, having a basin of hot water placed below him.

But if they be the round worm, which are mostly found in children, the same

quædam leviora; ut contritum semen urticæ, aut brassicæ, aut cumini cum aqua, vel mentha cum eadem, vel absinthium decoctum, vel hyssopum ex aqua mulsa, vel nasturtii semen cum aceto contritum. Edisse etiam et lupinum, et allium prodest; vel in alvum oleum subter dedisse.

## ORDO.

possunt dari, et quædam leviora; ut contritum semen urticæ, aut brassicæ, aut cumini cum aqua, vel mentha cum eadem, vel decoctum absinthium, vel hyssopum ex mulsa aqua, vel semen nasturtii contritum cum aceto. Etiam edisse et lupinum, et allium prodest; vel dedisse oleum subter in alvum.

## TRANSLATION.

medicine may be given, and something milder; as the bruised seed of nettles, or of cabbage, or of cumin with water, or mint with the same, or a decoction of wormwood, or hyssop with hydromel, or the seed of cresses bruised with vinegar. To eat either lupins or garlick does good; or to administer an injection of oil.

## CAP. XVIII.

## DE TENESMO.

EST autem aliud levius omnibus proximis, de quibus supra dictum est, quod *τενισμὸν* Græci vocant. Id neque acutis neque longis morbis adnumerari debet, cum et facile tollatur, neque umquam per se jugulet.

In hoc æque atque in torminibus frequens desidendi cupiditas est; æque dolor, ubi aliquid excernitur. Descendunt autem pituitæ mucusque similia, interdum etiam leviter subcruenta: sed his interponuntur nonnumquam ex cibo quoque recte coacta.

Desidere oportet in aqua calida; sæpiusque ipsum anum nutrire; cui plura

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVIII.

## DE TENESMO.

AUTEM est aliud levius (quam) omnibus proximis, de quibus est dictum supra, quod Græci vocant *τενισμὸν* (tenesmus). Id debet neque adnumerari acutis morbis, neque longis, cum et tollatur facile, neque umquam jugulet per se.

In hoc æque atque in torminibus est frequens cupiditas desidendi; ubi aliquid excernitur, æque dolor. Autem pituitæ que similia mucus descendunt, interdum etiam leviter subcruenta: sed (hæc) interponuntur nonnumquam his quoque recte coacta ex cibo.

Oportet desiderare in calida aqua; que nutrire anum ipsum sæpius; cui plura medicamenta

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## OF A TENESMUS.

BUT there is another disorder milder than all those I have been treating of, which the Greeks call Tenesmus. This ought to be classed neither with the acute nor chronic diseases, since it may be easily removed, and never of itself destroys life.

In this as in dysentery there is a frequent desire of going to stool; and also attended with as much pain when any thing is evacuated. The discharges resemble phlegm and mucus, sometimes slightly grumous: but these are intermixed sometimes with fæces naturally formed from the food.

He ought to sit down in warm water; and to apply soothing fomentations to

medicamenta idonea sunt: butyrum cum rosa; acacia ex aceto liquata; emplastrum id, quod τετραφάρμακον Græci vocant, rosa liquatum; alumen lana circumdatum, et ita appositum; eademque ex inferiore parte indita, quæ torminum auxilia sunt; eadem verbenæ decoctæ, ut inferiores partes foveantur.

Alternis vero diebus aqua, alternis leve et austerum vinum bibendum est. Potio esse debet egelida et frigidæ propior; ratio victus talis, qualem ad tormina supra præcepimus.

## ORDO.

sunt idonea: butyrum cum rosa; acacia liquata ex aceto; id emplastrum, quod Græci vocant τετραφάρμακον (tetrapharmacus), liquatum rosa; alumen circumdatum lana, et ita appositum; quæ eadem indita ex inferiore parte, quæ sunt auxilia torminum; eadem verbenæ decoctæ, ut inferiores partes foveantur.

Vero aqua (est bibenda) alternis diebus, leve et austerum vinum est bibendum alternis. Potio debet esse egelida, et propior frigidæ; ratio victus (est) talis, qualem præcepimus supra ad tormina.

## TRANSLATION.

the anus itself; for which there are many things proper: for instance, butter with rose oil; acacia dissolved in vinegar; that plaster, which the Greeks call tetrapharmacon (24), melted with rose oil; alum enveloped in wool, and thus applied; and the same remedies inferiorly, which are salutary in dysentery; also the same decoction of vervains to foment the lower parts.

But on every other day water and light austere wine should be drunk alternately. The drink ought to be lukewarm, or nearly cold: the regimen to be the same as we have prescribed for dysentery.

## CAP. XIX.

## DE FLUXU VENTRIS.

LEVIORE etiam, dum recens, dejectio est; ubi et liquida alvus, et sæpius quam ex consuetudine fertur: atque interdum tolerabilis dolor est, interdum gravissimus; idque pejus est. Sed uno die fluere alvum sæpe pro valetudine est: atque etiam pluribus, dum febris

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIX.

## DE FLUXU VENTRIS.

ETIAM dejectio est levior, dum recens; ubi (est) et liquida alvus, et fertur sæpius quam ex consuetudine: atque interdum dolor est tolerabilis, interdum gravissimus; quæ id est pejus. Sed alvum fluere uno die sæpe pro valetudine: atque etiam in pluribus, dum febris

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIX.

## OF DIARRHŒA.

A SIMPLE purging, while recent, is still lighter, in which the discharge is both liquid, and rendered more frequent than usual: and sometimes the pain is tolerable, sometimes very severe; and that is the worst. But for the bowels to be relaxed for one day, is very often conducive to health; and even for several days,



absit, et intra septimum diem id conquiescat. Purgatur enim corpus, et, quod intus læsurum erat, utiliter effunditur.

Verum spatium periculosum est: interdum enim tormina ac febriculas excitat, viresque consumit. Primo die quiescere satis est; neque impetum ventris prohibere. Si per se desiit, balneo uti, paulum cibi capere: si mansit, abstinere non solum a cibo, sed etiam a potione. Postero die, si nihilominus liquida alvus est, æque conquiescere; paulum adstringentis cibi sumere. Tertio die in balneum ire: vehementer omnia præter ventrem perfricare: ad ignem lumbos, scapulasque admovere: cibis uti, sed ventrem contrahentibus; vino non multo, meraco.

Si postero quoque die fluet, plus edisse, sed vomere ex toto. Donec conquiescat, contra siti, fame, vomitu niti. Vix enim fieri potest, ut, post hanc animadversionem, alvus non contrahatur.

Alia via est, ubi velis suppressere: cœnare, deinde vomere: postero die in lecto conquiescere; vespere ungi, sed

## ORDO.

absit, et id conquiescat intra septimum diem. Enim corpus purgatur, et, quod erat læsurum intus, effunditur utiliter.

Verum spatium est periculosum: enim interdum excitat tormina ac febriculas, que consumit vires. Primo die est satis quiescere; neque prohibere impetum ventris. Si desiit per se, uti balneo, capere paulum cibi: si mansit, non solum abstinere a cibo, sed etiam a potione. Postero die, si nihilominus alvus est liquida, conquiescere æque; sumere paulum adstringentis cibi. Tertio die ire in balneum: perfricare omnia vehementer præter ventrem: admovere lumbos, que scapulas ad ignem: uti cibis sed contrahentibus ventrem; non multo meraco vino.

Si quoque fluet postero die, edisse plus, sed vomere ex toto. Niti contra siti, fame, vomitu, donec conquiescat. Enim vix potest fieri, ut, post hanc animadversionem, alvus non contrahatur.

Est alia via, suppressere ubi velis: cœnare, deinde vomere: postero die conquiescere in lecto; ungi vespere, sed leniter: deinde

## TRANSLATION.

provided there be no fever present, and that cease within the seventh day. For by this the body is purified, and the offending matter from within, is advantageously thrown off by a spontaneous effort of nature.

But the continuation of it is dangerous: for sometimes it produces tormina, slight fevers, and prostration of strength. On the first day it is sufficient to enjoin rest; to take nothing that may restrain the bowels. If the disease have ceased of its own accord, a bath may be taken, and a little food: if it continue, to abstain not only from food, but also from drink. On the following day, if the bowels be nevertheless relaxed, to remain quiet, and to take a little astringent food. On the third day to go into a bath: to apply vehement friction to all parts except the abdomen: to turn the loins and shoulders near to the fire; to take food, but that of an alvine astringent, with a little undiluted wine.

If on the following day, the purging still continue, to eat more, but to vomit also. Upon the whole to combat with it by thirst, hunger, and vomiting until it may cease. For it is scarcely possible to happen, that after this plan of treatment the bowels should remain unconfined.

There is another mode to suppress it when one is inclined: to sup and then to vomit: on the following day to rest in bed; to be anointed in the evening, but

leniter: deinde panis circa selibram ex vino Aminæo mero sumere; tum assum aliquid, maximeque avem; et postea vinum idem bibere aqua pluviali mistum: idque usque quintum diem facere, iterumque vomere. Frigidam autem assidue potionem esse debere, contra priores auctores Asclepiades affirmavit, et quidem frigidissimam. Ego experimentis quemque in se credere debere existimo, calida potius, an frigida utatur.

Interdum autem evenit, ut id pluribus diebus neglectum, curari difficilius possit. A vomitu oportet incipere: deinde postero die vespere tepido loco ungi; cibum modicum assumere, vinum meracum quam asperrimum; impositam super ventrem habere cum cerato rutam. In hoc autem affectu corporis neque ambulatione, neque frictione opus est: vehiculo sedisse, vel magis etiam equo, prodest: neque enim ulla res magis intestina confirmat.

Si vero etiam medicamentis utendum est, aptissimum est id, quod ex pomis fit. Vindemiæ tempore in grande vas conjicienda sunt pira atque mala silvestria: si ea non sunt, pira Tarentina viridia, vel Signina, mala Scandiana

## ORDO.

sumere circa selibram panis ex mero Aminæo vino; tum aliquid assum, que maxime avem; et postea bibere idem vinum mistum pluviali aqua: que facere id usque quintum diem, que vomere iterum. Antem Asclepiades affirmavit contra priores auctores, potionem debere esse assidue frigidam, et quidem frigidissimam. Ego existimo quemque debere credere experimentis in se, an utatur calida potius, frigida.

Autem interdum evenit, ut id neglectum pluribus diebus, possit curari difficilius. Oportet incipere a vomitu: deinde ungi vespere postero die tepido loco; assumere modicum cibum, meracum quam asperrimum vinum; habere rutam impositam super ventrem cum cerato. Autem in hoc affectu corporis neque est opus ambulatione, neque frictione: sedisse vehiculo, vel etiam magis equo, prodest: enim neque ulla res confirmat intestina magis.

Vero si est etiam utendum medicamentis, id est aptissimum, quod fit ex pomis. Silvestria pira atque mala sunt conjicienda in grande vas tempore vindemiæ: si ea non sunt, viridia Tarentina, vel Signina pira, Scandiana

## TRANSLATION.

gently: afterwards to take about half a pound of bread with pure Aminæan wine; then something roasted, and especially a bird; after this to drink the same kind of wine mixed with rain-water: to continue this plan until the fifth day, and again to vomit. But Asclepiades, contrary to the opinion of former authors, has affirmed that the drink ought to be constantly cold: indeed very cold. I think that every one ought to determine by his own experience, whether he may use it hot or cold.

But sometimes it happens, when this complaint is neglected for several days it may be more difficult to be cured. It is necessary to commence with a vomit: then on the evening of the following day let him be anointed in a warm place; to take a moderate portion of food, and pure wine as rough as possible: to have rue and cerate applied over the abdomen. But in this affection of the system, neither walking nor friction are necessary: to take an airing in a carriage is advantageous, but more so on horseback: for nothing strengthens the intestines so much.

If medicines are to be given, those consisting of the apple kind are the most admissible. During the vintage, pears and crab-apples are to be put into a large vessel: if these are not to be obtained, green Tarentine or Signine pears, Scandian

vel Amerina, myrapia; hisque adjicienda sunt cotonea, et cum ipsis corticibus suis Punica, sorba, et, quibus magis utimur, etiam torminalia, sic, ut hæc tertiam ollæ partem teneant: tum deinde ea musto implenda est; coquendumque id, donec omnia, quæ indita sunt, liquata, in unitatem quamdam coeant. Id gustui non insuave est; et, quandocumque opus est, assumptum leniter, sine ulla stomachi noxa, ventrem tenet. Duo aut tria cochlearia uno die sumpsisse, satis est.

Alterum valentius genus: myrti baccas legere, ex his vinum exprimere, id decoquere, ut decima pars remaneat, ejusque cyathum sorbere. Tertium, quod quandocumque fieri potest: malum Punicum excavare, exemptisque omnibus seminibus, membranas, quæ inter ea fuerunt, iterum conjicere: tum infundere cruda ova, rudiculaque miscere: deinde malum ipsum super prunam imponere; quod, dum humor intus est, non aduritur: ubi siccum esse cœpit, remove oportet, extractumque cochleari, quod intus est, edisse.

Aliquibus adjectis, majus momentum habet: itaque etiam in piperatum conjicitur, misceturque cum sale et pipere,

## ORDO.

ana vel Amerina mala, myrapia; que his sunt adjicienda cotonea, et Punica cum suis corticibus ipsis, sorba, et, quibus utimur magis, etiam torminalia, sic, ut hæc teneant tertiam partem ollæ: tum deinde ea est implenda musto; que coquendum id, donec omnia, quæ sunt indita, liquata, coeant in quamdam unitatem. Id non est insuave gustui; et, quandocumque est opus, leniter assumptum, tenet ventrem, sine ulla noxa stomachi. Sumpsisse duo aut tria cochlearia uno die est satis.

Alterum (est) valentius genus: legere baccas myrti, exprimere vinum ex his, decoquere id, ut decima pars remaneat, que sorbere cyathum ejus. Tertium, quod potest fieri quandocumque: excavare Punicum malum, que omnibus seminibus exemptis, iterum conjicere membranas, quæ fuerunt inter ea: tum infundere cruda ova, que miscere rudicula: deinde imponere malum ipsum super prunam; quod dum humor est intus, non aduritur: ubi cœpit esse siccum, oportet remove, que quod est intus, extractum cochleari, edisse.

Aliquibus adjectis, habet magis momentum: itaque etiam conjicitur in piperatum, que miscetur cum sale et pipere, est

## TRANSLATION.

or Amerinian apples, or the Myrapian pear (25): and to these may be added quinces and pomegranates with their rind, service fruit, and also torminalia of which we use more, so that these last may occupy one third of the pot: then the vessel is to be filled with new wine; the whole is to be boiled, until they dissolve and become one uniform mass. This is not disagreeable to the taste; and whenever there is necessity, and being taken in moderation, it restrains the bowels without any injury of the stomach. Two or three spoonfuls in one day will be sufficient.

There is another and more powerful remedy prepared of the expressed juice of myrtle berries boiled down to one tenth, and to sip a glass of it. A third may be prepared at any time, by excavating a pomegranate, and having separated all the seeds, to return the pulp into the shell again: then to pour in raw eggs and mix with a wooden spatula: afterwards put the pomegranate shell with its contents over a clear coal fire, which will not burn while there is moisture within: when it begins to be dry, it should be removed, then taking out the contents with a spoon let it be eaten.

This last remedy acquires more efficacy by the addition of some other things: therefore it is put into peppered vinegar (26), mixed with salt and pepper, and



est quid ex his edendum est. Pulticula etiam, cum qua paulum ex favo vetere coctum sit, et lenticula cum malicorio cocta, rubique cacumina in aqua decocta, et ex oleo atque aceto assumpta, efficacia sunt: atque ea aqua, in qua vel palmulæ, vel malum cotoneum, vel arida sorba, vel rubi decocti sunt, potata: quod genus significo, quoties potionem dandam esse dico, quæ adstringat.

Triticique hemina in vino Aminæo austero decoquitur; idque triticum jejuno ac sitienti datur; superque id vinum id sorbetur: quod jure valentissimis medicamentis adnumerari potest. Atque etiam potui datur vinum Signinum, vel resinatum austerum, vel quodlibet austerum. Contunditurque cum corticibus, seminibusque suis Punicum malum, vinoque tali miscetur: idque vel merum sorbet aliquis, vel bibit mistum. Sed medicamentis uti, nisi in vehementibus malis, supervacuum est.

## ORDO.

quid est edendum ex his. Etiam pulticula, cum qua paulum ex vetere favo sit coctum, et lenticula cocta cum malicorio, que cacumina rubi decocta in aqua, et assumpta ex oleo atque aceto, sunt efficacia: atque ea aqua, in qua vel palmulæ, vel cotoneum malum, vel arida sorba, vel rubi sunt decocti, potata: quod genus significo, quoties dico potionem esse dandam, quæ adstringat.

Quoque hemina tritici decoquitur in austero Aminæo vino; que id triticum datur jejuno ac sitienti; que super id, id vinum sorbetur: quod potest adnumerari jure valentissimis medicamentis. Atque etiam Signinum, vel resinatum austerum vel quodlibet austerum vinum datur potui. Que Punicum malum contunditur cum suis corticibus, que seminibus, que miscetur tali vino: que aliquis sorbet id vel merum, vel bibit mistum. Sed uti medicamentis, nisi in vehementibus malis, est supervacuum.

## TRANSLATION.

eaten with these (27). Also pulse, with which a little old honeycomb has been boiled, and lentiles boiled with pomegranate rind, and bramble tops boiled in water, and eaten with oil and vinegar are efficacious: also to drink a decoction either of dates, or quinces, or dry service fruit, or bramble berries: which is the kind I mean, whenever I order this drink to be given as an astringent.

A hemina of wheat is also boiled in austere Aminæan wine; and that wheat is given to the patient fasting and thirsty, and the same wine is to be sipped after it; which may be justly enumerated amongst the most powerful of medicines. The Signine wine is also given to drink, or the austere resined, or any rough wine. The pomegranate is bruised with its rinds and seeds, and mixed with wine of the same sort: and a person may either drink this alone or mixed. But the use of medicines is superfluous, except in violent cases.

## CAP. XX.

## DE VULVÆ MORBO.

1. Ex vulva quoque fœminis vehemens malum nascitur: proximeque ab stomacho, vel afficitur hæc, vel corpus afficit. Interdum etiam sic exanimat, ut tamquam comitali morbo prosternat. Distat tamen hic casus, eo quod neque oculi vertuntur, nec spumæ profluunt, nec nervi distenduntur: sopor tantum est. Idque quibusdam fœminis crebro revertens perpetuum est.

Ubi incidit, si satis virium est, sanguis missus adjuvat: si parum est, cucurbitulæ tamen defigendæ sunt in inguinibus. Si diutius aut jacet aut aliqui jacere consuevit, admoveere oportet naribus extinctum ex lucerna linamentum, vel aliud ex iis, quæ fœdioris esse odoris retuli, quod mulierem excitet. Idemque aquæ quoque frigidæ perfusio efficit. Adjuvatque ruta contrita cum melle, vel ex cyprino ceratum, vel quodlibet calidum et humidum ca-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XX.

## DE MORBO VULVÆ.

1. QUOQUE vehemens malum nascitur ex vulva fœminis: que proxime ab stomacho, vel hæc afficitur, vel afficit corpus. Interdum etiam sic exanimat, ut prosternat tamquam comitali morbo. Tamen hic casus distat eo, quod neque oculi vertuntur, nec spumæ profluunt, nec nervi distenduntur: est tantum sopor. Que id revertens crebro quibusdam fœminis est perpetuum.

Ubi incidit, si est satis virinum, sanguis missus adjuvat: si est parum, tamen cucurbitulæ sunt defigendæ in inguinibus. Aut si jacet diutius, aut consuevit jacere aliqui, oportet admoveere naribus linamentum ex lucerna extinctum, vel aliud ex iis, quæ retuli esse fœdioris odoris, quod excitet mulierem. Que perfusio frigidæ aquæ quoque efficit idem. Que ruta contrita cum melle adjuvat, vel ceratum ex cyprino, vel quodlibet calidum et humidum cataplasma, im-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XX.

## ON DISEASES OF THE WOMB.

FEMALES are subject to a malignant disease of the womb: and next to the stomach, this organ is highly susceptible of being affected either in itself, or by sympathy affects the rest of the body. Sometimes this affection deprives the patient of all sensibility, in the same manner as if she had fallen in epilepsy. Yet with this difference, that neither the eyes are turned, nor does foam flow from the mouth, nor are there any convulsions: there is only a profound sleep. This disease returning frequently to some females at last becomes habitual.

When this happens, if there be sufficient strength, blood-letting will relieve: if not, the cupping-glasses must be applied to each groin. If the woman remain long in this state, or if accustomed to do so at other times, we should apply the extinguished wick of a lamp to the nostrils which may excite her, or any of those things which I have described as of a very fœtid odour. The affusion of cold water produces the same effect. Rue bruised up with honey assists, or cerate of cyprine oil,

taplasma, naturalibus pube tenus impositum. Inter hæc etiam perfricare coxas, et poplites oportet.

Deinde, ubi ad se rediit, circumcidendum vinum est in totum annum, etiamsi casus idem non revertitur: frictione quotidie utendum totius quidem corporis, præcipue vero ventris, et poplitum: cibus ex media materia dandus: sinapi super imum ventrem tertio quoque aut quarto die imponendum, donec corpus rubeat.

Si durities manet, mollire commodè videtur solanum in lac demissum, deinde contritum; et cera alba atque medulla cervina cum irino, aut sebum taurinum vel caprinum cum rosa mistum. Dandum etiam potui vel castoreum est, vel gith, vel anethum. Si parum pura est, purgetur junco quadrato. Si vero vulva exulcerata est, ceratum ex rosa fiat, et recens suilla adeps, et ex ovis album misceatur, idque apponatur; vel album ex ovo cum rosa mistum, adjecto, quo facilius consistat, contritæ rosæ pulvere. Dolens vero ea sulphure suffumigari debet.

At si purgatio nimia mulieri nocet, remedio sunt cucurbitulæ, cute incisa,

#### ORDO.

positum naturalibus tenus pube. Etiam oportet perfricare coxas, et poplites inter hæc.

Deinde, ubi rediit ad se, vinum est circumcidendum in totum annum, etiamsi idem casus non revertitur: quidem (est) utendum frictione totius corporis quotidie, vero præcipue ventris, et poplitum: cibus (est) dandus ex media materia: sinapi imponendum super imum ventrem quoque tertio aut quarto die, donec corpus rubeat.

Si durities manet, solanum demissum in lac, deinde contritum, videtur mollire commodè; et alba cera atque cervina medulla cum irino, aut taurinum sebum vel caprinum mistum cum rosa. Etiam vel castoreum, vel gith, vel anethum est dandum potui. Si est parum pura, purgetur quadrato junco. Vero si vulva est exulcerata, fiat ceratum ex rosa, et recens suilla adeps, et album ex ovis misceatur, que id apponatur; vel album ex ovo mistum cum rosa, adjecto, pulvere contritæ rosæ, quo consistat facilius. Vero ea dolens debet suffumigari sulphure.

At si nimia purgatio nocet mulieri, cucurbitulæ admotæ,

#### TRANSLATION.

or any hot and moist cataplasm, applied to the genitals, extending up to the pubes. In the mean time the hips and hams ought also to be rubbed.

Afterwards when she returns to her accustomed state, wine must be withheld from her for a whole year, even although the malady should not return. Daily friction must be employed over the whole body, but especially on the abdomen and hams. The diet should be of the middle class: sinapisms are to be laid on the inferior part of the abdomen every third or fourth day, until the part become red.

If the hardness remain (28) the nightshade moistened with milk and bruised, appears to be a proper emollient, so does white wax and deer's marrow with iris oil, or beef or goat's suet mixed with rose oil. Castor, git, or dill must be given in her drink. If there be impurities of habit, let her be purged with the square cyperus. But if the womb be ulcerated, a cerate may be prepared of rose oil: also fresh hog's lard and the whites of eggs may be mixed together and that applied; or the white of an egg mixed with rose oil, with the addition of rose leaves in powder to make it more tenacious. But when the womb is in pain it ought to be fumigated with sulphur.

If a woman appear to suffer from excessive menstrual discharge, the cupping,



inguinibus vel etiam sub mammis ad-  
motæ. Si maligna purgatio est, sub-  
jicienda sunt \* \* \* \* \* [*Desunt in  
vetustissimo exemplari duo folia.*]  
coeuntia. Id faciunt etiam albæ  
olivæ, et nigrum papaver cum melle  
assumptum, et gummi cum trito semine  
apii liquatum, et cum cyatho passi  
datum. Præter hæc, in omnibus ve-  
sicæ doloribus idoneæ potiones sunt,  
quæ ex odoribus fiunt, id est spica  
nardi, croco, cinnamo, casia, similibus-  
que: idemque etiam decocta lentiscus  
præstat. Si tamen intolerabilis dolor  
est, et sanguis profluit, etiam sanguinis  
detractio apta est; aut certe coxis ad-  
motæ cucurbitulæ cute incisa.

2. At cum urina super potionum  
modum etiam sine dolore profluens  
maciem et periculum facit, si tenuis  
est, opus est exercitatione et frictione,  
maximeque in sole, vel ad ignem:  
balneum rarum esse debet, neque longa  
in eo mora: cibus comprimens: vinum  
austerum meracum, per æstatem, fri-  
gidum; per hiemem, egelidum; sed  
tantum; quantum minimum sit. In-  
firma alvus quoque vel ducenda vel  
lacte purganda est. Si crassa urina est,  
vehementior esse debet et exercitatio,

## ORDO.

cute incisa, inguinibus vel  
etiam sub mammis, sunt re-  
medio. Si purgatio est maligna,  
sunt subjicienda \* \* \* \* \*  
[*Duo folia desunt in vetustissimo  
exemplari.*] coeuntia. Etiam  
albæ olivæ, et nigrum papaver  
assumptum cum melle, et gummi  
liquatum cum trito semine apii,  
et datum cyatho passi, faciunt  
id. Præter hæc, potiones sunt  
idoneæ in omnibus doloribus  
vesicæ, quæ fiunt ex odoribus,  
id est spica nardi, croco, cin-  
namo, casia, que similibus: que  
etiam decocta lentiscus præstat  
idem. Tamen si dolor est intol-  
erabilis, et sanguis profluit,  
etiam detractio sanguinis est  
apta; aut certe cucurbitulæ ad-  
motæ coxis cute incisa.

2. At cum urina profluens su-  
per modum potionum etiam sine  
dolore facit maciem et pericu-  
lum, si est tenuis, est opus exer-  
citatione et frictione, que maxime  
in sole, vel ad ignem: balneum  
debet esse rarum, neque mora  
in eo longa: comprimens cibus;  
meracum austerum vinum, fri-  
gidum, per æstatem; egelidum,  
per hiemem; sed tantum, quan-  
tum sit minimum. Quoque in-  
firma alvus est vel ducenda vel  
purganda lacte. Si urina est  
crassa, et exercitatio, et frictio  
debet esse vehementior: lon-

## TRANSLATION.

glasses and scarificator should be applied to each groin, or even under the breasts as a remedy. If the discharge be malignant (29) \* \* \* \* \* [*Here two leaves are wanting in the oldest copy.*] White olives have this effect, black poppies taken with honey, and gum dissolved with bruised parsley seed and given with a glass of raisin wine. Besides these, in all affections of the bladder, such aromatic potions are very proper, that is the spikenard, saffron, cinnamon, cassia, and such like: also the decoction of mastich has the same effect. Yet if the pain be intolerable, accompanied with hæmorrhage, it is proper to let blood, or at least the cupping instruments and scarificator may be applied to the hips.

2. When the urine is discharged in an undue proportion to the drink, without pain, producing emaciation and endangering life, if it be limpid, there is a necessity for exercise and friction, particularly in the sun, or near a fire: a bath should rarely be given, neither ought the patient to remain long in it: astringent food: pure austere wine, during the summer, and cold: during the winter lukewarm; but in as small a quantity as possible. The lower intestines are either to be cleared by injections, or purged with milk. If the urine be thick, the exercise

et frictio : longior in balneo mora : cibis opus est teneris : vinum idem. In utroque morbo vitanda omnia sunt, quæ urinam movere consuerunt.

ORDO.  
gior mora in balneo : est opus teneris cibis : idem vinum. In utroque morbo omnia sunt vitanda, quæ consuerunt movere urinam.

## TRANSLATION.

and friction ought to be the more violent : to remain longer in the bath ; the food should be tender ; the wine as above directed. In either of those affections every thing must be avoided which has a tendency to promote the urine.

## CAP. XXI.

DE SEMINIS NIMIA EX NATURALIBUS PROFUSIONE.

EST etiam circa naturalia vitium, nimia profusio seminis, quod sine venere, sine nocturnis imaginibus sic fertur, ut, interposito spatio, tabe hominem consumat.

In hoc affectu salutes sunt vehementes frictiones, perfusiones, natationesque quam frigidissimæ : neque cibi, nec potio, nisi frigida assumpta. Vitare autem oportet cruditates, et omnia infantia : nihil ex iis assumere, quæ contrahere semen videntur ; qualia sunt, siligo, simila, ova, alica, amyllum, omnis caro glutinosa, piper, eruca, bulbi, nuclei pinei. Neque alienum

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXI.

DE NIMIA PROFUSIONE SEMINIS EX NATURALIBUS.

ETIAM est vitium circa naturalia, nimia profusio seminis, quod fertur sic, sine venere, sine nocturnis imaginibus, ut, spatio interposito, consumat hominem tabe.

In hoc affectu vehementes frictiones, perfusiones, que quam frigidissimæ natationes sunt salutes : neque cibi, nec potio, nisi assumpta frigida. Autem oportet vitare cruditates, et omnia infantia : assumere nihil ex iis, quæ videntur contrahere semen ; qualia sunt, siligo, simila, ova, alica, amyllum, omnis glutinosa caro, piper, eruca, bulbi, pinei nuclei. Neque est

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXI.

## TREATMENT OF SEMINAL DISCHARGES.

THERE is also a disease of the genital organs, an excessive discharge of semen which is rendered without sexual intercourse or nocturnal illusions to such an excess, that in time a man may be carried off by consumption.

In this affection, powerful frictions, the shower-bath, swimming in the coldest water are salutary : neither food nor drink, except what is taken cold. It is also requisite to avoid indigestion and every thing flatulent : to take none of those things which seem to generate semen ; such as siligo, simila, eggs, alica, starch, all glutinous flesh, pepper, rocket, bulbs, pine nuts. Neither is it improper to foment

est, fovere inferiores partes aqua decocta ex verbenis comprimentibus: ex iisdem aliqua cataplasmata imo ventri inguinibusque circumdare; præcipueque ex aceto rutam: vitare et ne supinus obdormiat.

## ORDO.

alienum, fovere inferiores partes aqua decocta ex comprimentibus verbenis: circumdare aliqua cataplasmata ex iisdem imo ventri que inguinibus; que præcipue rutam ex aceto: et vitare ne obdormiat supinus.

## TRANSLATION.

the lower parts with a decoction of the astringent vervains: to surround the pubic and inguinal regions with cataplasms of the same; and especially of rue with vinegar: and to avoid falling asleep in the supine position.

## CAP. XXII.

## ORDO.

## DE COXARUM MORBIS.

## CAP. XXII.

## DE MORBIS COXARUM.

SUPEREST, ut ad extremas partes corporis veniam, quæ articulis inter se conseruntur. Initium a coxis faciam. Harum ingens dolor esse consuevit: isque hominem sæpe debilitat, et quosdam non dimittit. Eoque id genus difficillime curatur, quod fere post longos morbos vis pestifera huc se inclinat: quæ ut alias partes liberat, sic hanc ipsam quoque affectamprehendit.

Fovendum primum aqua calida est: deinde utendum calidis cataplasmatibus. Maxime prodesse videtur, aut cum hordeacea farina, aut cum ficu ex aqua de-

SUPEREST, ut veniam ad extremas partes corporis, quæ conseruntur inter se articulis. Faciam initium a coxis. Ingens dolor harum consuevit esse: que is sæpe debilitat hominem, et non dimittit quosdam. Que id genus curatur difficillime eo, quod pestifera vis fere inclinat se huc post longos morbos: quæ ut liberat alias partes, sic apprehendit hanc ipsam quoque affectam.

Primum est fovendum calida aqua: deinde utendum calidis cataplasmatibus. Concisus cortex capparis mistus, aut cum hordeacea farina, aut cum ficu decocta ex aqua, videtur pro-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXII.

## DISEASES OF THE HIP JOINT.

It remains that I come now to the extremities, which are connected together by articulations. I shall begin with the hips. These are often subject to great pain: and that debilitates the man, and some it never leaves. For this reason, that kind is most difficult to cure, because after long diseases it generally clings with a pestiferous tenacity to those parts: which as it leaves others seizes on this which is affected.

It must be fomented with hot water first: then hot cataplasms should be applied. That which appears to be the most useful in this case, is the sliced bark of the



cocta mistus capparīs cortex concisus; vel lolii farina ex vino diluto cocta, et mista cum arida fæce: quæ quia refrigerant, imponere noctu malagmata commodius est. Inulæ quoque radix contusa, et postea ex vino austero cocta, et late super coxam imposita, inter valentissima auxilia est. Si ista non solverunt, sale calido et humido utendum est.

Si ne sic quidem finitus dolor est, aut tumor ei accedit, incisa cute admovendæ sunt cucurbitulæ; movenda urina; alvus, si compressa est, ducenda. Ultimum est, et in veteribus quoque morbis efficacissimum, tribus aut quatuor locis super coxam, cutem candentibus ferra-mentis exulcerare. Frictione quoque utendum est, maxime in sole, et eodem die sæpius; quo facilius ea, quæ coeundo nocuerunt, digerantur: eaque, si nulla exulceratio est, etiam ipsis coxis; si est, ceteris partibus adhibenda est.

Cum vero sæpe aliquid exulcerandum candenti ferramento sit, ut materia inutilis evocetur, illud perpetuum est, non, ut primum fieri potest, hujus generis ulcera sanare; sed ea trahere, donec id vitium, cui per hæc opitulamur, conquiescat.

#### TRANSLATION.

caper mixed either with barley-meal or with a decoction of figs; or the flour of darnel boiled in diluted wine and mixed with dry lees: which things as they are apt to cool, it is more advantageous to apply them by night, as malagmata. Also the root of elecampane, bruised and then boiled with austere wine, and laid on extensively over the hip, is among the most powerful remedies. If those things have not removed the malady, hot and moist salt must be applied.

If the pain cease not even then, or if swelling supervene, the cupping glasses and scarificator must be applied: diuretics to be administered; the bowels to be injected, if constipated. The last and most efficacious remedy in chronic cases, is to form ulcers in the skin with hot irons in three or four places above the hip. To apply friction several times in the day, especially in the sun: by which means that accumulation of peccant humour may be the more easily dispersed; and that is to be applied on the hips themselves, if there be no ulceration: if there be any, then it is to be employed on other parts of the body.

But since it may be necessary to ulcerate a part frequently with the actual cautery, that the offending matter may be elicited, this rule should always be observed, not to heal ulcers of this kind, so soon as it might be done; but to protract the discharge, until that disease subside, which we wish to relieve by these means.

#### ORDO.

desse maxime; vel farina lolii cocta ex diluto vino, et mista cum arida fæce: quæ quia refrigerant, est commodius imponere (ut) malagmata noctu. Quoque radix inulæ contusa, et postea cocta ex austero vino, et imposita late super coxam, est inter valentissima auxilia. Si ista non solverunt, est utendum calido et humido sale.

Si ne quidem dolor est finitus sic, aut tumor accedit ei, cucurbitulæ sunt admovendæ cute incisa; urina movenda; alvus ducenda, si est compressa. Exulcerare cutem candentibus ferra-mentis, tribus aut quatuor locis super coxam quoque est ultimum, et efficacissimum in veteribus morbis. Quoque est utendum frictione, maxime in sole, et sæpius in eodem die; quo ea digerantur facilius, quæ nocuerunt coeundo: quæ ea, etiam coxis ipsis, si est nulla exulceratio; si est (exulceratio) est adhibenda ceteris partibus.

Vero cum aliquid sit exulcerandum sæpe candenti ferramento, ut inutilis materia evocetur, illud est perpetuum, non, sanare ulcera hujus generis, primum ut potest fieri; sed trahere ea, donec id vitium, cui opitulamur per hæc, conquiescat.

## CAP. XXIII.

## DE GENUUM DOLORE.

COXIS proxima genua sunt; in quibus ipsis nonnumquam dolor esse consuevit. In iisdem autem cataplasmatibus cucurbitulisque præsidium est: sicut etiam, cum in humeris, aliisve commissuris dolor aliquis exortus est. Equitare ei, cui genua dolent, inimicissimum omnium est. Omnes autem ejusmodi dolores, ubi inveteraverunt, vix citra ustionem finiuntur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIII.

## DE DOLORE GENUUM.

GENUA sunt proxima coxis; in quibus ipsis dolor nonnumquam consuevit esse. Autem præsidium est in iisdem cataplasmatibus que cucurbitulis: sicut etiam, cum aliquis dolor est exortus in humeris, ve aliis commissuris. Ei equitare, cui genua dolent, est inimicissimum omnium. Autem omnes dolores ejusmodi, ubi inveteraverunt, vix finiuntur citra ustionem.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## OF A PAIN IN THE KNEES.

THE knees are next in succession to the hips: which are not unfrequently the seat of pain. But there is a remedy in the same cataplasms and cupping instruments: as also when a pain has arisen in the shoulders, or in the other joints. It is most inimical to him who has pain in the knee joints to ride on horseback. Now all pains of this kind, when they become chronic, are scarcely ever cured without the aid of the actual cautery.

## CAP. XXIV.

DE MANUUM ET PEDUM ARTICULORUM  
QUE VITIIS.

IN manibus pedibusque articulorum vitia frequentiora longioraque sunt; quæ in podagris chiragrisve esse consuerunt.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIV.

DE VITIIS MANUUM ET PEDUM  
QUE ARTICULORUM.

SUNT frequentiora que longiora vitia articulorum in pedibus que manibus; quæ consuerunt esse in podagris ve chiragris. Ea

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIV.

## THE DISEASES IN THE JOINTS OF THE HANDS AND FEET.

DISEASES of the joints in the hands and feet are more frequent and of longer duration; which may be observed in those who are accustomed to gout in either the

Ea raro vel castratos, vel pueros ante fœminæ coitum, vel mulieres, nisi quibus menstrua suppressa sunt, tentant.

Ubi sentiri cœperunt, sanguis mittendus est: id enim inter initia statim factum, sæpe annuam, nonnumquam perpetuam valetudinem bonam præstat. Quidam etiam, cum asinino lacte epoto sese eluissent, in perpetuum hoc malum evaserunt. Quidam, cum toto anno a vino, mulso, venere sibi temperassent, securitatem totius vitæ consecuti sunt. Idque utique post primum dolorem servandum est, etiamsi quievit.

Quod si jam consuetudo ejus facta est, potest quidem aliquis esse securior iis temporibus, quibus dolor se remisit: majorem vero curam adhibere debet iis, quibus id revertitur; quod fere vere autumnove fieri solet.

Cum vero dolor urget, mane gestari debet; deinde ferri, inambulatione leni se dimovere, et, si podagra est, interpositis temporibus exiguis, invicem modo sedere, modo ingredi; tum, antequam cibum capiat, sine balneo, loco calido leniter perfricari, sudare, perfundi aqua egelida; deinde cibum su-

#### ORDO.

raro tentant vel castratos, vel pueros ante coitum fœminæ, vel mulieres, nisi quibus menstrua sunt suppressa.

Ubi cœperunt sentiri, sanguis est mittendus: enim id factum statim inter initia, sæpe annuum, nonnumquam præstat perpetuum bonam valetudinem. Etiam quidam, cum eluissent sese asinino lacte epoto, evaserunt hoc malum in perpetuum. Quidam, cum temperassent sibi toto anno a vino, mulso, venere, sunt consecuti securitatem totius vitæ. Que utique id est servandum post primum dolorem, etiamsi quievit.

Quod si consuetudo est facta jam, quidem aliquis potest esse securior, iis temporibus, quibus dolor remisit se: vero debet adhibere majorem curam iis, quibus id revertitur; quod fere solet fieri vere ve autumno.

Vero cum dolor urget, debet gestari mane; deinde ferri, dimovere se leni inambulatione, et, si est podagra, invicem modo sedere, modo ingredi, exiguis temporibus interpositis; tum, antequam capiat cibum, perfricari leniter calido loco, sine balneo, sudare, egelida aqua perfundi; deinde sumere cibum ex

#### TRANSLATION.

hands or feet. Such diseases rarely attack eunuchs or boys before they have intercourse with women, or females, unless the catamenia be suppressed.

When those pains are incipient, blood should be let immediately: for this being done immediately during the commencement often secures the patient good health for one year, sometimes for life. Some also have escaped this malady entirely, after having purified themselves by drinking ass's milk. Others have attained perpetual security from it, by refraining a whole year from wine, hydromel, and venery. This ought to be observed particularly after the first attack, even although it has subsided.

But if the attacks have become habitual, a person may be less guarded against its return at those times in which it usually remits: but he ought to employ greater care at the seasons of its recurrence, which generally happen in spring or autumn.

Now when the pain is oppressive, he ought to employ gestation in the morning; then to be carried, or to exercise himself by gentle walking, and if it be foot-gout, to walk and rest alternately, at short intervals; then, before he take food, without bathing, to be rubbed gently in a hot place, to perspire, to be put under a



mere ex media materia, interpositis rebus urinam moventibus; quotiesque plenior est, evomere.

Ubi dolor vehemens urget, interest, sine tumore is sit, an tumor cum calore, an tumor jam etiam obcalluerit. Nam si tumor nullus est, calidis fomentis opus est. Aquam marinam, vel muriam duram fervere facere oportet, deinde in pelvem conjicere, et, cum jam homo potest, pedes demittere, superque pallam dare, et vestimento tegere; paulatim deinde juxta labrum ipsum ex eadem aqua leniter infundere, ne calor intus destituat; ac deinde noctu cataplasmata calefacientia imponere, maximeque hibisci radicem ex vino coctam.

Si vero tumor calorque est, utiliora sunt refrigerantia, recteque in aqua quam frigidissima articuli continentur; sed neque quotidie, neque diu, ne nervi lædantur. Imponendum vero est cataplasma, quod refrigeret: neque tamen in hoc ipso diu permanendum; sed ad ea transeundum, quæ sic reprimunt, ut emolliant.

Si major est dolor, papaveris cortices in vino coquendi, miscendique cum cerato sunt, quod ex rosa factum sit: vel

## ORDO.

media materia, rebus moventibus urinam interpositis; que quoties est plenior, evomere.

Ubi vehemens dolor urget, interest, is sit sine tumore, an (est) tumor cum calore, an tumor jam etiam obcalluerit. Nam si est nullus tumor, est opus calidis fomentis. Oportet fervere facere marinam aquam, vel duram muriam, deinde conjicere in pelvem, et, cum jam homo potest demittere pedes, que dare pallam super, et tegere vestimento; deinde paulatim infundere juxta labrum ipsum leniter ex eadem aqua, ne calor destituat intus; ac deinde imponere calefacientia cataplasmata noctu, que maxime radicem hibisci coctam ex vino.

Vero si est tumor que calor, refrigerantia sunt utiliora, que articuli continentur in quam frigidissima aqua recte; sed neque quotidie, neque diu, ne nervi lædantur. Vero cataplasma quod refrigeret, est imponendum: neque tamen (est) permanendum diu in hoc ipso; sed (est) transeundum ad ea, quæ sic reprimunt, ut emolliant.

Si est major dolor, cortices papaveris coquendi in vino, que sunt miscendi cum cerato, quod sit factum ex rosa: vel ceræ et

## TRANSLATION.

tepid shower bath (30); afterwards to take nourishment of the middle class, taking occasionally diuretics; and as often as he becomes plethoric, let him vomit.

When the attack is violent, it is of importance whether that be accompanied with swelling and heat, or without swelling, or whether the tumour has already grown callous. For if there be no tumour, there is an opportunity of applying hot fomentations. Sea-water or strong brine should be made hot, and poured into a basin, and when the patient can bear it, to put his feet in, and a cloak over them, then cover him up; then pour in gradually more of the same water, by the edge of the vessel, that there may be a sufficient heat kept up within; and afterwards apply calefacient cataplasms during the night, particularly marsh-mallow root boiled with wine.

But if there be swelling and heat, refrigerants are more useful, and then the joints are very properly to be kept in very cold water; but neither daily nor for a long time, lest the nerves may be injured. But a refrigerant cataplasm is to be laid on: even this must not be continued long, but to substitute some of those things which repress and soften at the same time.

If the pain be more severe, the rind of poppies are to be boiled in wine and mixed with cerate composed of rose oil: or equal parts of wax and hog's lard

ceræ et adipis suillæ tantumdem una liquandum, deinde his vinum miscendum, atque ubi, quod ex eo impositum est, incaluit, detrahendum, et subinde aliud imponendum est.

Si vero tumores etiam obcalluerunt, et dolent, levat spongia imposita, quæ subinde ex oleo, et aceto, vel aqua frigida exprimitur; aut pari portione inter se mista pix, cera, alumen. Sunt etiam plura idonea manibus pedibusque malagmata.

Quod si nihil superimponi dolor patitur, id, quod sine tumore est, fovere oportet spongia, quæ in aquam calidam demittatur, in qua vel papaveris cortices, vel cucumeris silvestris radix decocta sit: tum inducere articulis crocum cum succo papaveris et ovillo lacte.

At si tumor est, foveri quidem debet aqua egelida, in qua lentiscus, aliave verberna ex reprimentibus decocta sit: induci vero medicamentum ex nucibus amaris cum aceto tritis; aut ex cerussa, cui contritæ herbæ muralis succus sit adjectus. Lapis etiam, qui carnem exedit, quem *σαρκοφάγον* Græci vocant, excisus, sic, ut pedes capiat, demissos eos, cum dolent, retentosque ibi levare consuevit. Ex quo in Asia lapidi Asio gratia est.

#### ORDO.

suillæ adipis tantumdem liquandum una, deinde vinum (est) miscendum his, atque ubi, quod est impositum ex eo, incaluit, (est) detrahendum, et aliud est imponendum subinde.

Vero si tumores etiam obcalluerunt, et dolent, spongia imposita levat, quæ subinde exprimitur ex aceto, et oleo, vel frigida aqua; aut pix, cera, alumen mista inter se pari portione. Etiam sunt plura idonea malagmata manibus que pedibus.

Quod si dolor patitur nihil superimponi, oportet fovere id, quod est sine tumore, spongia quæ demittatur in calidam aquam, in qua vel cortices papaveris, vel radix silvestris cucumeris sit decocta: tum inducere crocum articulis cum succo papaveris et ovillo lacte.

At si est tumor, quidem debet foveri egelida aqua, in qua lentiscus, ve alia verberna ex reprimentibus sit decocta: vero medicamentum ex amaris nucibus tritis cum aceto induci; aut ex cerussa, cui succus contritæ muralis herbæ sit adjectus. Etiam lapis, qui exedit carnem, quem Græci vocant *σαρκοφάγον* (sarcophagus), excisus, sic, ut capiat pedes, eos demissos, que retentos ibi consuevit levare, cum dolent. Ex quo in Asia est gratia Asio lapidi.

#### TRANSLATION.

melted together, then wine mixed with these, and when an application of this has grown hot, it is to be removed occasionally, and another substituted.

But if the tumours have become indurated and painful, the application of a sponge dipped occasionally in oil and vinegar, or cold water, gives relief; or equal parts of pitch, wax, and alum mixed together. There are also many malagmata proper for the hands and feet.

But if the pain will not admit of any thing to be laid on, that part which is not swollen should be fomented with a sponge dipped in a hot decoction of poppy bark, or of wild cucumber root; then to apply saffron with poppy juice and sheeps' milk to the joints.

If there be swelling, that should be fomented with a tepid decoction of mastich, vervains, or any other astringent: also a medicament composed of bitter almonds bruised with oil should be applied; or ceruss, to which the juice of the bruised wall herb may be added. That stone also which corrodes the flesh, and by the Greeks termed sarcophagus (31), cut out in such a manner as to receive the feet, generally relieves them, when they are put into it and retained there. From which circumstance, in Asia, the Asian stone is held in great repute.

Ubi dolor et inflammatio se remiserunt (quod intra dies quadraginta fit, nisi vitium hominis accessit) modicis exercitationibus, abstinence, unctionibus lenibus utendum est, sic, ut etiam acopo, vel liquido cerato cyprino articuli perfricentur. Equitare podagricis quoque alienum est.

Quibus vero articularum dolor certis temporibus revertitur, hos ante et curioso victu cavere oportet, ne inutilis materia corpori supersit, et crebriore vomitu; et, si quis ex corpore metus est, vel alvi ductione uti, vel lacte purgari. Quod Erasistratus in podagricis expulit, ne in inferiores partes factus cursus pedes replet: cum evidens sit, omni purgatione non superiora tantummodo, sed etiam inferiora exinaniri.

## ORDO.

Ubi dolor et inflammatio remiserunt se (quod fit intra quadraginta dies, nisi vitium hominis accessit) est utendum modicis exercitationibus, abstinence, lenibus unctionibus, sic, ut etiam articuli perfricentur acopo, vel liquido cyprino cerato. Quoque equitare est alienum podagricis.

Vero quibus dolor articularum revertitur certis temporibus, oportet hos cavere ante et curioso victu, ne inutilis materia supersit corpori, et crebriore vomitu; et, si est quis metus ex corpore, vel uti ductione alvi, vel purgari lacte. Quod Erasistratus expulit in podagricis, ne cursus factus in inferiores partes replet pedes: cum sit evidens, non tantummodo superiora exinaniri omni purgatione, sed etiam inferiora.

## TRANSLATION.

When the pain and inflammation have remitted, (which happens within forty days, unless the patient has been at fault,) he should employ moderate exercises, abstinence, gentle unctions, so that the joints also may be rubbed with acopum (32), or with liquid cyprine cerate. Riding also is improper for those who have gout in their feet.

Those who have periodical returns of these affections of the joints, ought to be on their guard, lest an injurious redundancy abound in the system, both by a more rigid regimen, and by more frequent vomiting; and if there be any apprehension arising from the state of the body, to use either injections, or milk purgatives: which Erasistratus has rejected in the treatment of persons afflicted with gout in the feet, lest a revulsion of the humours downwards might cause a redundancy in the lower extremities: although it is evident, that, not only the superior parts, but also the inferior are depleted by every kind of purgative.



## CAP. XXV.

## ORDO.

DE REFECTIOE CONVALESCENTIUM  
A MORBO.

## CAP. XXV.

DE REFECTIOE CONVALESCEN-  
TIUM A MORBO.

Ex quocumque autem morbo quis convalescit, si tarde confirmatur, vigilare prima luce debet; nihilominus in lecto conquiescere: circa tertiam horam leniter unctis manibus corpus permulcere: deinde delectationis causa, quantum juvat, ambulare, circumcisa omni negotiosa actione: tum gestari diu: multa frictione uti: loca, cœlum, cibos sæpe mutare: ubi triduo quatrduove vinum bibit, uno aut etiam altero die interponere aquam. Per hæc enim fiet, ne in vitia tabem inferentia incidat, et ut mature vires suas recipiat.

Cum vero ex toto convalerit, periculose vitæ genus subito mutabit, et inordinate aget. Paulatim ergo debebit, omissis his legibus, eo transire, ut arbitrio suo vivat.

AUTEM ex quocumque morbo quis convalescit, si confirmatur tarde, debet vigilare prima luce; nihilominus conquiescere in lecto: circa tertiam horam permulcere corpus leniter unctis manibus: deinde causa delectationis, ambulare, juvat quantum, omni negotiosa actione circumcisa: tum gestari diu: uti multa frictione: mutare loca, cœlum, cibos sæpe: ubi bibit vinum triduo ve quatrduo, interponere aquam uno aut etiam altero die. Enim per hæc fiet, ne incidat in vitia inferentia tabem, et ut recipiat suas vires mature.

Vero cum convalerit ex toto, mutabit genus vitæ subito, periculose, et aget inordinate. Ergo, his legibus omissis debebit transire paulatim eo, ut vivat suo arbitrio.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXV.

## THE TREATMENT OF CONVALESCENTS.

FROM whatever disease a patient may be recovering, if his improvement be tardy, he ought to awake at the dawn of day; nevertheless to rest in bed: about the third hour to rub the body gently with anointed hands; then to walk as far as it may be agreeable, for the sake of recreation, setting all business aside; then to use gestation for a considerable time: to apply much friction; a frequent change of residence, air, and diet: when he has drunk wine for three or four days, let him take water for one or two. For by these means, he will not only evade the predisposing causes of consumption, but sooner recover his strength.

But when he is entirely recovered, any sudden change of life, or irregularity of action, is not unattended with danger. Therefore he ought to lay aside those restraints gradually in his transition to that state, in which he may live without control.

## END OF VOL. I.

CELSUS DE MEDICINA.

---

VOL. II.

A. COR. CELSI  
M E D I C I N Æ

LIBRI OCTO,

EX RECENSIONE L. TARGÆ,

CUM ORDINE VERBORUM,

NOTIS ANGLICANIS,

ET VERSIONE AD VERBUM, QUANTUM FIERI POTUIT, REDACTA.



# AUR. COR. CELSUS

ON

## MEDICINE,

IN EIGHT BOOKS,

LATIN AND ENGLISH.

TRANSLATED FROM L. TARGA'S EDITION,

THE WORDS OF THE TEXT BEING ARRANGED IN THE ORDER OF  
CONSTRUCTION.

TO WHICH ARE PREFIXED,

A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR,

TABLES OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES,

WITH

EXPLANATORY NOTES, ETC. DESIGNED TO FACILITATE THE  
PROGRESS OF MEDICAL STUDENTS.

BY ALEX. LEE, A.M., SURG.

---

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

---



LONDON:

E. COX, ST. THOMAS'S STREET, SOUTHWARK.

---

MDCCCXXXVI.

G. WOODFALL, ANGEL COURT, SKINNER STREET, LONDON.

# CONTENTS

## OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

---

### BOOK V.

	PAGE
PREFACE .....	1
CHAP. I. Styptics .....	3
II. Agglutinants and Detergents .....	3
III. Digestives .....	4
IV. Aperients .....	5
V. Detergents .....	5
VI. Corrosives .....	6
VII. Escharotics .....	7
VIII. Caustics .....	8
IX. For cicatrising Ulcers .....	9
X. Resolvents .....	9
XI. Discutients .....	10
XII. Emollients and Resolvents .....	11
XIII. For relieving Asperities .....	11
XIV. Incarnating Materials .....	12
XV. Emollients .....	12
XVI. For purifying the Skin .....	13
XVII. Of Compounds and the Proportion of Ingredients .....	13
XVIII. Malagmata .....	16
XIX. Plasters for recent Wounds .....	26
XX. Of Troches .....	35
XXI. Of Pessaries .....	38
XXII. Of Medicines which are to be used in a dry form .....	40
XXIII. Of Antidotes, and the Diseases in which they are applicable .....	44
XXIV. Of Acopa .....	47
XXV. Of Catapotia .....	48
XXVI. Of Five different Diseases incident to the Body .....	55
XXVII. Of Wounds produced by Bites .....	85
XXVIII. The Treatment of external Ulcers .....	96

---

### BOOK VI.

I. Of the falling off of the Hair .....	151
II. Of Porrigo .....	132
III. Of the Sycosis .....	133



CHAP.	PAGE
IV. Of Areaæ.....	134
V. Of Vari, Lenticulæ, and Ephelides.....	136
VI. Of the Diseases of the Eyes.....	138
VII. Diseases of the Ears.....	168
VIII. Of the Diseases of the Nose.....	179
IX. Of Tooth-ache.....	182
X. Diseases of the Tonsils.....	186
XI. Of Ulcers in the Mouth.....	189
XII. Of Ulcers in the Tongue.....	192
XIII. Of Parulides, Tubercles, and Ulcers of the Gums.....	193
XIV. The Disease of the Uvula.....	195
XV. Of Cancers of the Mouth.....	197
XVI. Of Parotid Swellings.....	199
XVII. Treatment of a prominent Umbilicus.....	200
XVIII. Diseases incident to the Parts of Generation.....	201
XIX. Of Ulcers of the Fingers.....	216

## BOOK VII.

PREFACE.....	218
CHAP. I. Of Contusions.....	221
II. Of Tumours which arise spontaneously.....	222
III. Good or bad Symptoms of Suppuration.....	227
IV. On Fistulas.....	229
V. Extractions of Weapons out of the Body.....	234
VI. Of Ganglions, Meliceris, Atheroma, &c.....	240
VII. Of the Diseases of the Eyes.....	243
VIII. Diseases of the Ear.....	267
IX. Mode of repairing Defects in the Ears, Lips, and Nose.....	269
X. Treatment of Polypi.....	272
XI. Treatment of Ozæna.....	273
XII. Operations for Diseases of the Mouth.....	275
XIII. On Diseases of the Neck.....	281
XIV. On Diseases of the Navel.....	282
XV. Method of performing Paracentesis Abdominis.....	287
XVI. Of Wounds of the Intestines.....	289
XVII. Of rupture of the interior Part of the Abdomen.....	292
XVIII. Description of the Testicles and their Diseases.....	294
XIX. General Directions for Treatment of diseased Testicles.....	300
XX. Treatment of Hernia.....	308
XXI. Treatment of Epiplocele.....	311
XXII. Treatment of Varicocele.....	314
XXIII. Sarcocoele.....	317
XXIV. Circocoele in the Groin.....	318
XXV. To cover the Glans Penis when exposed.....	319
XXVI. Of difficulty of passing Urine, of Stone, &c.....	322

CHAP.	PAGE
XXVII. Gangrene after Lithotomy .....	339
XXVIII. Operation for imperforate Vagina .....	344
XXIX. Method of extracting a dead Fœtus .....	346
XXX. Diseases of the Rectum .....	351
XXXI. Of Varices in the Legs .....	355
XXXII. Malformation and Adhesion of the Fingers .....	357
XXXIII. Treatment of Gangrene .....	358

## BOOK VIII.

I. Form and Situation of Bones .....	360
II. Symptoms of diseased Bones .....	373
III. Method of excising a Bone .....	377
IV. Of a fractured Skull .....	383
V. Fracture of the Nose .....	394
VI. Lacerations of the Ears .....	397
VII. Fractures of the Maxilla .....	398
VIII. Fracture of the Clavicle .....	401
IX. Fractures of the Ribs .....	404
X. Fractures of Arms, Fore-arms, &c. ....	409
XI. Of Luxations .....	424
XII. Of luxated Maxilla .....	428
XIII. Luxation of the Head .....	430
XIV. Luxation of the Spine .....	431
XV. Luxation of the Humerus .....	433
XVI. Luxation of the Cubitus .....	436
XVII. Luxation of the Hand .....	438
XVIII. Luxation of the Palm .....	439
XIX. Luxation of the Fingers .....	440
XX. Luxation of the Femur .....	441
XXI. Luxation of the Knee .....	444
XXII. Luxation of the Ankle .....	445
XXIII. Luxations in the Soles of the Feet .....	447
XXIV. Luxation of the Toes .....	447
XXV. Luxations attended with a Wound .....	447

NOTES .....	451
INDEX RERUM .....	469
INDEX MEDICORUM, &c. ....	503





# A. CORN. CELSI

DE MEDICINA  
LIBER QUINTUS.

---

## PREFATIO.

DIXI de iis malis corporis, quibus victus ratio maxime subvenit: nunc transeundum est ad eam medicinæ partem, quæ magis medicamentis pugnat. His multum antiqui auctores tribuerunt, et Erasistratus, et ii qui se *ἐμπειρικοὺς* nominaverunt; præcipue tamen Herophilus, deductique ab illo viri; adeo ut nullum morbi genus sine his curarent. Multaque etiam de facultatibus medicamentorum memoriæ prodiderunt, qualia sunt vel Zenonis, vel Andreae, vel Apollonii, qui Mys cognominatus est. Horum autem usum ex magna parte Asclepiades non sine causa sustulit; et, cum omnia fere

ORDO.

LIBER QUINTUS  
A. COR. CELSI  
DE MEDICINA.

---

## PREFATIO.

DIXI de iis malis corporis, quibus ratio victus subvenit maxime; nunc est transeundum ad eam partem medicinæ, quæ pugnat magis medicamentis. Antiqui auctores tribuerunt multum his, et Erasistratus, et ii qui nominaverunt se *ἐμπειρικοὺς* (empiricos); tamen præcipue Herophilus, que viri deducti ab illo; adeo ut curarent nullum genus morbi sine his. Que etiam prodiderunt memoriæ multa de facultatibus medicamentorum, qualia sunt vel Zenonis, vel Andreae, vel Apollonii, qui est cognominatus Mys. Autem Asclepiades sustulit usum horum ex magna parte non sine causa; et, cum fere omnia medi-

TRANSLATION.

THE FIFTH BOOK

OF

AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS

ON MEDICINE.

---

## PREFACE.

HITHERTO I have only treated of those diseases which are relieved by regimen: I shall now proceed to that branch of Medicine which relates more particularly to Pharmacy. The ancient physicians, as well as Erasistratus and those who called themselves empirics, had great confidence in those remedies; especially Herophilus and those who followed him: so much so, that they never attempted the cure of a disease without them. Hence we have so many volumes written by them on their properties, such as those of Zeno or of Andreas, or Apollonius, who was surnamed Mys. Asclepiades in a great measure banished the use of them, nor

medicamenta stomachum lædant, mali-  
que succi sint, ad ipsius victus ratio-  
nem potius omnem curam suam trans-  
tulit. Verum, ut illud in plerisque  
morbis utilius est, sic multa admodum  
corporibus nostris incidere consuerunt,  
quæ sine medicamentis ad sanitatem  
pervenire non possunt. Illud ante  
omnia scire convenit, quod omnes me-  
dicinæ partes ita innexæ sunt, ut ex  
toto separari non possint; sed ab eo  
nomen trahant, a quo plurimum petunt.  
Ergo et illa, quæ victu curat, ali-  
quando medicamentum adhibet, et illa,  
quæ præcipue medicamentis pugnat,  
adhibere etiam rationem victus debet;  
quæ multum admodum in omnibus  
malis corporis proficit. Sed cum omnia  
medicamenta proprias facultates ha-  
beant, ac sæpe simplicia opitulentur,  
sæpe mista; non alienum videtur ante  
proponere et nomina, et vires, et mis-  
turas eorum; quo minor ipsas cura-  
tiones exsequentibus mora sit.

## ORDO.

camenta lædant stomachum, quæ  
sint mali succi, transtulit omnem  
suam curam potius ad rationem  
victus ipsius. Verum, ut illud est  
utilius in plerisque morbis, sic  
multa consuerunt incidere nostris  
corporibus, quæ admodum non  
possunt pervenire ad sanitatem  
sine medicamentis. Convenit  
scire illud ante omnia, quod omnes  
partes medicinæ sunt ita innexæ,  
ut non possint separari ex toto;  
sed trahant nomen ab eo, a quo  
petunt plurimum. Ergo et illa,  
quæ curat victu, aliquando adhi-  
bet medicamentum, et illa, quæ  
pugnat medicamentis, etiam debet  
præcipue adhibere rationem vic-  
tus; quæ admodum proficit multum  
in omnibus malis corporis. Sed  
cum omnia medicamenta habebant  
propriam facultates, ac sæpe opi-  
tulentur simplicia, sæpe mista,  
non videtur alienum proponere  
ante et nomina, et vires, et mis-  
turas eorum; quo sit minor mora,  
(nobis) exsequentibus ipsas cura-  
tiones.

## TRANSLATION.

nor did he employ them, without good reason: for, since medicines generally offend the stomach, and the juices may be depraved, he thought proper to direct his attention principally to diet. However, although this may be useful in most complaints, yet there are a number of diseases incident to the human frame which cannot be removed without the aid of medicine. It is also necessary to observe here, that all the different branches of medicine are so connected together, that they cannot be entirely separated; but each branch derives its denomination from that, which is principally made use of in the treatment. Therefore, those who profess to employ regimen, sometimes employ medicine, and those who chiefly use medicine, ought not to reject a regulated diet; which is also very beneficial in disorders of the body. But as all medicines possess some peculiar property, and often afford relief singly, sometimes compounded with others, I consider it necessary before we proceed further, to mention their names and properties, and the compositions into which they enter; by which we shall facilitate the treatment to be pursued.

## CAP. I.

## ORDO.

DE SIMPLICIBUS FACULTATIBUS QUARUMCUNQUE RERUM, EX QUIBUS MEDICAMENTA SUNT: ET PRIMO DE HIS, QUÆ SANGUINEM SUPPRIMUNT.

SANGUINEM supprimunt, atramentum sutorium, quod Græci *χάλκανθον* appellant, chalcitis, acacia, et ex aqua lycium, thus, aloë, gummi, plumbum combustum, porrum, herba sanguinalis, creta vel Cimolia vel figularis, misy, frigida aqua, vinum, acetum, alumen, melinum, squama et ferri et æris; atque hujus quoque duæ species sunt, alia tantum æris, alia rubri æris.

## CAP. I.

DE SIMPLICIBUS FACULTATIBUS QUARUMCUNQUE RERUM, EX QUIBUS MEDICAMENTA SUNT (FACTA): ET PRIMO DE HIS, QUÆ SUPPRIMUNT SANGUINEM.

(HÆC) supprimunt sanguinem, atramentum sutorium, quod Græci appellant *χάλκανθον* (chalcanthus), chalcitis, acacia, et lycium ex aqua, thus, aloë, gummi, combustum plumbum, porrum, sanguinalis herba, vel cimolia vel figularis creta, misy, frigida aqua, vinum, acetum, alumen, melinum, squama et ferri et æris, atque quoque sunt duæ species hujus, alia æris tantum, alia rubri æris.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. I.

## STYPTICS.

A HÆMORRHAGE is arrested by a solution of the sulphate of copper, which the Greeks call chalcanthus, calcitis (1), acacia, lycium mixed with water, frankincense, aloes, gum, calcined lead (2), leeks, blood herb, chalk, either cimolian or potter's, misy (3), cold water, wine, vinegar, alum, melinum, the scales of both iron and copper; and of this last there are two species, the one of common copper, the other of red copper.

## CAP. II.

## ORDO.

QUÆ VULNUS GLUTINANT.

GLUTINANT vulnus, myrrha, thus, gummi, præcipueque acanthinum, psyllium, tragacantha, cardamomum, bulbi,

## CAP. II.

QUÆ GLUTINANT VULNUS.

(HÆC) glutinant vulnus, myrrha, thus, gummi, que præcipue acanthinum, psyllium, tragacantha, cardamomum, bulbi, semen lini,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

## AGGLUTINANTS AND DETERGENTS.

WOUNDS are cicatrised by myrrh, frankincense, gum, especially gum acanthine (4), psyllium (5), tragacanth, cardamom, bulbusses, lintseed, cresses, white of an egg,



lini semen, nasturtium, ovi album, gluten, ichthyocolla, vitis alba, contusæ cum testis suis cochleæ, mel coctum, spongia vel ex aqua frigida, vel ex vino, vel ex aceto expressa; ex iisdem lana succida; si levis plaga est, etiam aranea.

Reprimunt, alumen et scissile, quod *σχιστόν* vocatur, et liquidum, melinum, auripigmentum, ærugo, chalcitis, atramentum sutorium.

## ORDO.

nasturtium, album ovi, gluten, ichthyocolla, alba vitis, cochleæ, contusæ cum suis testis, coctum mel, spongia expressa vel ex frigida aqua, vel ex vino vel ex aceto, succida lana ex iisdem; si plaga est levis, etiam aranea.

Erhæcreprimunt, scissile alumen, quod vocatur *σχιστόν* (schiston), et liquidum, melinum, auripigmentum, ærugo, chalcitis, atramentum sutorium.

## TRANSLATION.

glue, isinglass, white briony, snails bruised with their shells, boiled honey, sponge dipped in cold water, or in wine, or vinegar, or rancid wool moistened with any of these liquids; if the wound be slight, even cob-webs.

Detergents are alum, either bruised in small fragments, which the Greeks call schiston, or in solution, also melinum, orpiment, verdigris, (*impure subacetate of copper*,) chalcitis, and the sulphate of iron.

## CAP. III.

QUE CONCOQUANT, ET MOVEANT PUS.

CONCOQUUNT et movent pus, nardum, myrrha, costum, balsamum, galbanum, propolis, styrax, thuris et fuligo et cortex, bitumen, pix, sulphur, resina, sebum, adeps, oleum.

## ORDO.

## CAP. III.

QUE CONCOQUANT, ET MOVEANT PUS.

(HÆC) concoquant et movent pus, nardum, myrrha, costum, balsamum, galbanum, propolis, styrax et fuligo et cortex thuris, bitumen, pix, sulphur, resina, sebum, adeps, oleum.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

## DIGESTIVES.

MATURANTS are nard, myrrh, costum, balsam, galbanum, propolis (6), storax, both the soot and the bark of the frankincense tree, bitumen, pitch, sulphur, resin, suet, lard, and oil.

## CAP. IV.

ORDO.

QUÆ APERIANT VULNERA.

CAP. IV.

QUÆ APERIANT VULNERA.

APERIUNT tamquam ora in corporibus, quod *στόμα* Græce dicitur, cinnamomum, balsamum, panaces, juncus quadratus, pulegium, flos albæ violæ, bdellium, galbanum, resina terebinthina et pinea, propolis, oleum vetus, piper, pyrethrum, chamæpitys, uva taminia, sulphur, alumen, rutæ semen.

(HÆC) tamquam aperiunt ora in corporibus, quod dicitur Græce *στόμα* (stoma), cinnamomum, balsamum, panaces, quadratus juncus, pulegium, flos albæ violæ, bdellium, galbanum, terebinthina et pinea resina, propolis, vetus oleum, piper, pyrethrum, chamæpitys, taminia uva, sulphur, alumen, semen rutæ.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

APERIENTS.

THE aperients which we employ to open the mouths of vessels, which is termed in Greek stoma, are cinnamon, balsam, panaces, the square cyperus, pennyroyal, the flowers of white violet, bdellium (7), galbanum, resins of turpentine and of pine, propolis, old oil, pepper, pellitory, ground-pine, staphisagria, sulphur, alum, seed of rue.

## CAP. V.

ORDO.

QUÆ PURGENT.

CAP. V.

QUÆ PURGANT.

PURGANT, ærugo, auripigmentum, quod *ἀρσενικόν* a Græcis nominatur; (huic autem et sandarachæ in omnia eadem vis, sed validior est); squama æris, pumex, iris, balsamum, styrax, thus, thuris cortex, resina, et pinea, et terebinthina liquida, ænanthe, lacerti sterco, sanguis columbæ, et palumbi,

(HÆC) purgant, ærugo, auripigmentum, quod nominatur, *ἀρσενικόν* (arsenicum) a Græcis; (autem et vis sandarachæ (est) eadem in omnia huic, sed est validior) squama æris, pumex, iris, balsamum, styrax, thus, cortex thuris, et liquida resina, et pinea et terebinthina, ænanthe, sterco lacerti, sanguis columbæ, et palumbi, et

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

DETERGENTS.

DETERGENTS are verdigris, orpiment, which is termed arsenic by the Greeks; (this has the same properties in every respect as sandarach, but more violent,) scales of copper, pumice stone, iris balsam, storax, frankincense, bark of frankincense, the liquid resin of pine and turpentine, ænanthe (8), lizard's dung, the blood of

et hirundinis, ammoniacum, bdellium; (quod in omnia idem, quod ammoniacum, potest; sed valentius est); abrotonum, ficus arida, coccum Gnidium, scobis eboris, omphacium, radícula, coagululum, sed maxime leporinum; (cui eadem, quæ ceteris coagulis, facultas, sed utique validior est;) fel, vitellus crudus, cornu cervinum, gluten taurinum, mel crudum, misy, chalcitis, crocum, uva taminia, spuma argenti, galla, squama æris, lapis hæmatites, minium, costum, sulphur, pix cruda, sebum, adeps, oleum, ruta, porrum, lenticula, ervum.

## ORDO.

hirundinis, ammoniacum, bdellium; (quod est idem in omnia, quod ammoniacum potest, sed valentius;) abrotonum, arida ficus, Gnidium coccum, scobis eboris, omphacium, radícula, coagululum, sed maxime leporinum (cui est eadem facultas, quæ ceteris coagulis, sed (est) utique validior); fel, crudus vitellus, cervinum cornu, taurinum gluten, crudum mel, misy, chalcitis, crocum, taminia uva, spuma argenti, galla, squama æris, hæmatites lapis, minium, costum, sulphur, cruda pix, sebum, adeps, oleum, ruta, porrum, lenticula, ervum.

## TRANSLATION.

pigeons, ring-doves, and swallows, gum ammoniacum, bdellium, (which has the same properties as the gum ammoniacum, but in a more powerful degree,) southernwood, dry figs, the Gnidian berry (9), ivory dust, verjuice, radish, coagulum of milk, especially that of a hare, (which possesses the same properties as others, but more powerful,) ox gall, yolk of a raw egg, hartshorn shavings, glue prepared of bull's ears, crude honey, misy, chalcitis, saffron, Taminian grape, litharge, nut galls, scales of copper, blood stone (10), minium (11), costum, sulphur, crude pitch, suet, lard, oil, rue, leeks, lentils and vetches.

## CAP. VI.

## ORDO.

## QUÆ RODANT.

## CAP. VI.

## QUÆ RODUNT.

RODUNT, alumen liquidum, sed magis rotundum, ærugo, chalcitis, misy, squama æris, sed magis rubri, æs combustum, sandaracha, minium Sinopicum, galla, balsamum, myrrha, thus, thuris cortex, galbanum, resina terebinthina

HÆC RODUNT, liquidum alumen, sed magis rotundum, ærugo, chalcitis, misy, squama æris, sed magis rubri, combustum æs, sandaracha, Sinopicum minium, galla, balsamum, myrrha, thus, cortex thuris, galbanum, humida terebinthina re-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

## CORROSIVES.

THE corrosives are, liquid alum, but particularly the round, verdigris, chalcitis, misy, scales of copper, more so the red, calcined copper (12), sandarach, minium from Sinope, nut galls, balsam, myrrh, frankincense and its bark, galbanum, liquid



humida, piper utrumque, sed rotundum magis, cardamomum, auripigmentum, calx, nitrum, et spuma ejus, apii semen, narcissi radix, omphacium, alcyonium, oleum ex amaribus nucibus, allium, mel crudum, vinum, lentiscus, squama ferri, fel taurinum, scammonia, uva taminia, cinnamomum, styrax, cicuta semen, resina, narcissi semen, fel, nuxes amaræ, oleumque earum, atramentum sutorium, chrysocolla, veratrum, cinis.

## ORDO.

sina, utrumque piper, sed rotundum magis, cardamomum, auripigmentum, calx, nitrum, et spuma ejus, semen apii, radix narcissi, omphacium, alcyonium, oleum ex amaribus nucibus, allium, crudum mel, vinum, lentiscus, squama ferri, taurinum fel, scammonia, taminia uva, cinnamomum, styrax, semen cicuta, resina, semen narcissi, fel, amaræ nuxes, quæ oleum earum, atramentum sutorium, chrysocolla, veratrum, cinis.

## TRANSLATION.

turpentine resin, both kinds of pepper, but especially the round, cardamom, orpiment, lime, nitre, subcarbonate of soda, smallage seed, narcissus root, omphacium, bastard sponge, oil of bitter almonds, garlic, crude honey, wine, mastich, iron scales, ox gall, scammony, Taminean grape, cinnamon, storax, hemlock seed, resin, narcissus seed, gall, bitter almonds, as well as their oil, solution of the sulphate of iron, borax, hellebore, and cinis (13).

## CAP. VII.

## ORDO.

## QUÆ EXEDANT CORPUS.

## CAP. VII.

## QUÆ EXEDANT CORPUS.

EXEDUNT corpus, acaciæ succus, hebenus, ærugo, squama æris, chrysocolla, cinis Cyprius, nitrum, cadmia, spuma argenti, hypocistis, diphryges, sal, auripigmentum, sulphur, cicuta, sandaracha, salamandra, alcyonium, æris flos, chalcitis, atramentum sutorium, ochra,

(HÆC) exedunt corpus, succus acaciæ, hebenus, ærugo, squama æris, chrysocolla, Cyprius cinis, nitrum, cadmia, spuma argenti, hypocistis, diphryges, sal, auripigmentum, sulphur, cicuta, sandaracha, salamandra, alcyonium, flos æris, chalcitis, atramentum sutorium, ochra, calx, ace-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

## ESCHAROTICS.

THE medicaments which act as escharotics are, the juice of acacia, ebony, verdigris, protoxyde of copper, borax, cyprus ashes, nitre, native oxyd of zinc, litharge, hypocistis (14), diphryges (15), salt, orpiment, sulphur, hemlock, sandarach, salamandar (16), bastard sponge, per-oxyde of copper, chalcitis, solution of the sulphate of copper, yellow ochre, lime, vinegar, nut galls, alum, milk of the wild fig tree, or

calx, acetum, galla, alumen, lac caprifici, vel lactucæ marinæ, quæ *τιθύμαλλος* a Græcis nominatur, fel, thuris fuligo, spodium, lenticula, mel, oleæ folia, marrubium, lapis hæmatites, et Phrygius, et Asius, et scissilis, misy, vinum.

## ORDO.

tum, galla, alumen, lac caprifici, vel marinæ lactucæ, quæ nominatur a Græcis *τιθύμαλλος* (tithymallus), fel, fuligo thuris, spodium, lenticula, mel, folia oleæ, marrubium, hæmatites lapis, et Phrygius, et Asius (lapis), et scissilis lapis, misy, vinum.

## TRANSLATION.

the milky juice of the marine lettuce, which the Greeks call tithymallus, ox-gall, soot of frankincense, spodium (17), lentil, honey, olive-leaves, horehound, red hæmatite, the Phrygian stone (18), the Asian stone, and the scissile stones (19), misy, and wine.

## CAP. VIII.

## ORDO.

## QUÆ ADURANT.

## CAP. VIII.

## QUÆ ADURANT.

ADURUNT, auripigmentum, atramentum sutorium, chalcitis, misy, ærugo, calx, charta combusta, sal, squama æris, fæx combusta, myrrha, stercus et lacerti, et columbæ, et palumbi, et hirundinis, piper, coccum Gnidium, allium, diphryges, lac utrumque, quod proximo capite supra comprehensum est, veratrum et album et nigrum, cantharides, corallium, pyrethrum, thus, salamandra, eruca, sandaracha, uva taminia, chrysocolla, ochra, alumen scissile, ovillum stercus, cenanthe.

(HÆC) adurunt (corpus), auripigmentum, atramentum sutorium, chalcitis, misy, ærugo, calx, combusta charta, sal, squama æris, combusta fæx, myrrha, stercus et lacerti, et columbæ, et palumbi, et hirundinis, piper, Gnidium coccum, allium, diphryges, utrumque lac, quod est comprehensum supra proximo capite, et album et nigrum veratrum, cantharides, corallium, pyrethrum, thus, salamandra, eruca, sandaracha, taminia nva, chrysocolla, ochra, scissile alumen, ovillum stercus, cenanthe.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

## CAUSTICS.

THE caustics are, orpiment, solution of the sulphate of iron, chalcitis, misy, verdigris, lime, burned paper (20), salt, protoxyde of copper, burned lees (21), myrrh, lizard's dung, pigeon's, ring-dove's and swallow's, pepper, Gnidian berry, garlick, diphryges, both milks mentioned in last chapter, both white and black hellebore, cantharides, coral, pellitory, frankincense, salamander, rocket, sandarach, Taminian grape, borax, yellow ochre, scissile alum, sheep's dung, cenanthe.

## CAP. IX.

QUÆ CRUSTAS ULCERIBUS INDUCANT.

EADEM fere crustas ulceribus tamquam igne adustis inducunt; sed præcipue chalcitis, utique si cocta est, flos æris, ærugo, auripigmentum, misy, et id quoque magis coctum.

ORDO.

## CAP. IX.

QUÆ INDUCANT CRUSTAS ULCERIBUS.

EADEM fere inducunt crustas ulceribus, tamquam adustis igne; sed præcipue chalcitis, utique si est cocta, flos æris, ærugo, auripigmentum, misy, et quoque id (quod est) coctum magis.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

FOR CICATRISING ULCERS.

THE preceding medicines assist in forming crusts on ulcers, as if they had been scorched by fire; but especially chalcitis, and the more so, if it be calcined, peroxide of copper, verdigris, orpiment, misy, the effect of which is augmented if it be calcined.

## CAP. X.

QUÆ CRUSTAS ULCERIBUS RESOLVANT.

CRUSTAS vero has resolvit farina triticea cum ruta, vel porro, aut lenticula cui mellis aliquid adjectum est.

ORDO.

## CAP. X.

QUÆ RESOLVANT CRUSTAS ULCERIBUS.

VERO triticea farina cum ruta, vel porro, aut lenticula, cui aliquid mellis est adjectum resolvit has crustas.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

RESOLVENTS.

THE eschars of ulcers are softened by wheat-flour with rue, by leeks or lentils, with the addition of some honey.



## CAP. XI.

QUE DISCUTIANT EA, QUÆ IN ALIQUA  
PARTE CORPORIS COIERUNT.

AD discutienda vero ea, quæ in corporis parte aliqua coierunt, maxime possunt, abrotonum, helenium, amaracus, alba viola, mel, lilium, sampsucus Cyprius, lac, sertula Campana, serpyllum, cupressus, cedrus, iris, viola purpurea, narcissus, rosa, crocum, passum, juncus quadratus, nardum, cinnamomum, casia, ammoniacum, cera, resina, uva taminia, spuma argenti, styrax, ficus arida, tragoriganus, lini et narcissi semen, bitumen, sordes ex gymnasio, pyrites lapis, aut molaris, crudus vitellus, amaræ nuces, sulphur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XI.

QUÆ DISCUTIANT EA, QUÆ COIERUNT IN ALIQUA PARTE CORPORIS.

VERO ad discutienda ea, quæ coierunt in aliqua parte corporis, (hæc) possunt maxime, abrotonum, helenium, amaracus, alba viola, mel, lilium, Cyprius sampsucus, lac, Campana sertula, serpyllum, cupressus, cedrus, iris, purpurea viola, narcissus, rosa, crocum, passum, quadratus juncus, nardum, cinnamomum, casia, ammoniacum, cera, resina, taminia uva, spuma argenti, styrax, arida ficus, tragoriganus, semen lini et narcissi, bitumen, sordes ex gymnasio, pyrites lapis, aut molaris, crudus vitellus, amaræ nuces, sulphur.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XI.

## DISCUTIENTS.

FOR dissipating any collection of humour in any part of the body, the principal are southernwood, elecampane, marjoram, white violets, honey, lilies, mastich, cyperus, milk, melilot, serpyllum, cypress, cedar, iris, purple violet, narcissus, roses, saffron, passum, the square cyperus, nard, cinnamon, cassia, ammoniacum, wax, resin, Taminiau grape, litharge, storax, dry figs, wild marjoram, the seeds of lint, and of narcissus, bitumen, the dust collected in the Gymnasium, the common pyrite stone, or mill stone, raw yolks of eggs, bitter almonds, and sulphur.

## CAP. XII.

QUÆ EVOCENT, ET EDUCANT.

EVOCAT et educit ladanum, alumen rotundum, hebenus, lini semen, omphacium, fel, chalcitis, bdellium, resina terebinthina et pinea, propolis, ficus arida decocta, stercus columbæ, pumex, farina lolii, grossi in aqua cocti, elaterium, lauri baecæ, nitrum, sal.

ORDO.

## CAP. XII.

QUÆ EVOCENT ET EDUCANT.

LADANUM evocat et educit, (etiam) rotundum alumen, hebenus, semen lini, omphacium, fel, chalcitis, bdellium, terebinthina et pinea resina, propolis, decocta arida ficus, stercus columbæ, pumex, farina lolii, grossi cocti in aqua, elaterium, baccæ lauri, nitrum, sal.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XII.

EMOLLIENTS AND RESOLVENTS.

THE following are at the same time attractive and resolvent, ladanum, round alum, ebony, lintseed, verjuice, gall, chalcitis, bdellium, turpentine and pine resin, propolis, dry figs boiled, pigeon's dung, pumice stone, darnel flour, green figs boiled in water, elaterium, laurel berries, nitre, and salt.

## CAP. XIII.

QUÆ EXASPERATA LÆVENT.

LÆVAT id, quod exasperatum est, spodium, hebenus, gummi, ovi album, lac, tragacanthum.

ORDO.

## CAP. XIII.

QUÆ LÆVENT EXASPERATA.

SPODIUM, hebenus, gummi, album ovi, lac, tragacanthum lævat id, quod est exasperatum.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIII.

FOR RELIEVING ASPERITIES.

EMOLLIENTS, for parts exasperated, are spodium, ebony, gum, white of an egg, milk, tragacanth.

## CAP. XIV.

QUÆ CARNEM NUTRIANT, ET ULCUS  
IMPLEANT.

CARNEM alit et ulcus implet resina  
pineæ, ochra Attice, vel asterace, cera,  
butyrum.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIV.

QUÆ NUTRIUNT CARNEM, ET IM-  
PLEANT ULCUS.

PINEA resina, Attice ochra, vel  
asterace, cera, butyrum alit car-  
nem et implet ulcus.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIV.

## INCARNATING MATERIALS.

PINE resin, Attic ochre, or asterace (22), wax, and butter, are calculated for faci-  
litating the regeneration of granulating ulcers and wounds.

## CAP. XV.

QUÆ MOLLIANT.

MOLLIUNT, æs combustum, terra Ere-  
tria, nitrum, papaveris lacrima, ammo-  
niacum, bdellium, cera, sebum, adeps,  
oleum, ficus arida, sesamum, sertula  
Campana, narcissi et radix et semen,  
rosæ folia, coagulum, vitellus crudus,  
amaræ nuces, medulla omnis, stibi, pix,  
cochlea cocta, cicuta semen, plumbi  
recrementum; (σκωρίαν μολύβδου Græci  
vocant); panaces, cardamomum, gal-  
banum, resina, uva taminia, styrax,  
iris, balsamum, sordes ex gymnasio,  
sulphur, butyrum, ruta.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XV.

QUÆ MOLLIANT.

COMBUSTUM æs, Eretria terra,  
nitrum, lacrima papaveris, am-  
moniacum, bdellium, cera, sebum,  
adeps, oleum, arida ficus, sesa-  
mum, Campana sertula, et radix et  
semen narcissi, folia rosæ, coagu-  
lum, crudus vitellus, amaræ nuces,  
omnis medulla, stibi, pix, cocta  
cochlea, semen cicuta, recrementum  
plumbi; (Græci vocant  
σκωρίαν μολύβδου scorian molybdou);  
panaces, cardamomum, galbanum,  
resina, taminia uva, styrax, iris,  
balsamum, sordes ex gymnasio,  
sulphur, butyrum, ruta molliunt.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XV.

## EMOLLIENTS.

THE emollients are, calcined copper, Eretrian earth (23), nitre, poppy-tears (24),  
ammoniacum, bdellium, wax, suet, lard, oil, dry figs, sesamum, melilot, the root and  
seed of narcissus, rose leaves, coagulum of milk, the yolks of raw eggs, bitter  
almonds, all marrow, sulphuret of antimony, pitch, boiled snails, hemlock seed, the  
scoria of lead (25), (which the Greeks call scoria molybdus) panaces, cardamom,  
galbanum, resin, staphisagria, storax, iris, balsam, dust of the Gymnasium, sulphur,  
butter, and rue.



## CAP. XVI.

QUÆ CUTEM PURGENT.

CUTEM purgat mel, sed magis, si est cum galla, vel ervo, vel lenticula, vel marrubio, vel iride, vel ruta, vel nitro, vel æruginē.

ORDO.

## CAP. XVI.

QUÆ PURGENT CUTEM.

MEL purgat cutem, sed magis, si est cum galla, vel ervo, vel lenticula, vel marrubio, vel iride, vel ruta, vel nitro, vel æruginē.

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVI.

FOR PURIFYING THE SKIN.

HONEY cleanses the skin, still better with galls, or with vetches, small lentils, horehound, iris, rue, nitre, or with verdigris.

## CAP. XVII.

DE MISTURIS SIMPLICIUM RERUM; ET  
DE RATIONE PONDERUM.

1. EXPOSITIS simplicibus facultatibus, dicendum est, quemadmodum misceantur, quæque ex his fiant. Miscentur autem varie, neque hujus ullus modus est; cum ex simplicibus alia demantur, alia adjiciantur; iisdemque servatis, ponderum ratio mutetur. Itaque, cum facultatum materia non ita

ORDO.

## CAP. XVII.

DE MISTURIS SIMPLICIUM  
RERUM; ET DE RATIONE  
PONDERUM.

SIMPLICIBUS facultatibus expositis, est dicendum, quemadmodum misceantur, quæque fiant ex his. Autem misceantur varie, neque est ullus modus hujus; cum alia demantur, ex simplicibus alia adjiciantur; que iisdem servatis, ratio ponderum mutetur. Itaque, cum materia facultatum non sit

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVII.

OF COMPOUNDS, AND THE PROPORTION OF INGREDIENTS.

1. HAVING spoken of the virtues of simple substances, I come now to treat of the manner of compounding them, and the compositions into which they enter. But they are mixed variously, neither is there any certain rule for this; since at one time one substance is withheld, at another time others; and although the same substances be retained, the proportion of their weights may be changed. Therefore, although the number of simple substances be not so very great, yet an infinite number of

multiplex sit, innumerabilia misturarum genera sunt; quæ comprehendi si possent, tamen esset supervacuum. Nam et iidem effectus intra paucas compositiones sunt, et mutare eas cuilibet, cognitis facultatibus, facile est. Itaque contentus iis ero, quas accepi velut nobilissimas.

In hoc autem volumine eas explicabo, quæ vel desiderari in prioribus potuerunt; vel ad eas curationes pertinent, quas protinus hic comprehendam, sic, ut tamen, quæ magis communia sunt, simul jungam. Si qua singulis, vel etiam paucis accommodata sunt, in ipsarum locum differam.

Sed et ante sciri volo, in uncia pondus denariorum septem esse; unius deinde denarii pondus dividi a me in sex partes, id est sextantes; ut idem in sextante denarii habeam, quod Græci habent in eo, quem *ὀβολόν* appellant. Id ad nostra pondera relatum paulo plus dimidio scrupulo facit.

2. Malagmata vero, atque emplastra pastillique, quos *τροχίσκους* Græci vocant, cum plurima eadem habeant; differunt eo, quod malagmata maxime ex odoribus eorumque etiam surculis, emplastra pastillique magis ex quibus-

## ORDO.

ita multiplex, genera misturarum sunt innumerabilia; quæ si possent comprehendi, tamen esset supervacuum. Nam et iidem effectus sunt (comprehensi) intra paucas compositiones, et facultatibus cognitis, est facile, cuilibet mutare eas. Itaque ero contentus iis, quas accepi velut nobilissimas.

Autem in hoc volumine explicabo eas, quæ vel potuerunt desiderari in prioribus; vel pertinent ad eas curationes, quas comprehendam hic protinus, tamen sic, ut jungam simul, quæ sunt magis communia. Si qua sunt accommodata singulis, vel etiam paucis, differam in locum ipsarum.

Sed et volo scire ante, pondus septem denariorum esse in uncia: deinde pondus unius denarii dividi a me in sex partes, id est, sextantes; ut habeam idem in sextante denarii; quod Græci habent in eo, quem appellant *ὀβολόν* (obolus). Id relatum ad nostra pondera facit paulo plus (quam) dimidio scrupulo.

2. Vero malagmata, atque emplastra, que pastilli, quos Græci vocant *τροχίσκους* (trochisci) cum habeant eadem plurima; differunt eo, quod malagmata fiunt maxime ex odoribus que etiam surculis eorum, emplastraque pastilli (fiunt) magis ex quibus-

## TRANSLATION.

mixtures may be made of them; which it would be superfluous to mention here, though it were possible; since the same effect may be produced by a few ingredients, and it is easy for any person who is acquainted with their medicinal properties to change them. Therefore I shall confine myself to those which are in most repute.

Now in this Book I will describe those, which are either omitted in the preceding, or only relate to the cases of which I am about to treat; at the same time I shall only join those things which are most analogous. If there be any articles more appropriate to one, or even a few disorders, I will treat of them in their proper places.

In the first place I wish it to be known, that the ounce contains seven denarii, then, I divide the denarius into six parts, that is sextantes; and that each sextans of a denarius may be equivalent to the obolus of the Greeks. That being reduced to our weights, makes a little more than half a scruple.

2. Now malagmata, plasters, and troches, which the Greeks term Trochisci, since they are in many respects the same, differ in this, that malagmata are principally made from aromatic flowers, and even their stalks, plasters and troches are gene-

dam metallicis fiunt. Deinde malagmata contusa abunde mollescunt: nam super integram cutem injiciuntur: laboriose vero conteruntur ea, ex quibus emplastra pastillique fiunt; ne lædant vulnera, cum imposita sunt. Inter emplastrum autem et pastillum hoc interest, quod emplastrum utique liquati aliquid accipit: in pastillo tantum arida medicamenta aliquo humore junguntur.

Tum emplastrum hoc modo fit: arida medicamenta per se teruntur; deinde mistis his instillatur aut acetum, aut si quis alius non pinguis humor accessurus est, et ea rursus ex eo teruntur: ea vero, quæ liquari possunt, ad ignem simul liquantur; et si quid olei misceri debet, tum infunditur: interdum etiam aridum aliquod ex oleo prius coquitur. Ubi facta sunt, quæ separatim fieri debuerunt, in unum omnia miscentur. At pastilli hæc ratio est: arida medicamenta contrita humore non pingui, ut vino vel aceto, coguntur, et rursus coacta, inarescunt; atque, ubi utendum est, ejusdem generis humore diluuntur. Tum emplastrum imponitur, pastillus illinitur, aut alicui molliori, ut cerato, miscetur.

## ORDO.

dam metallicis. Deinde malagmata contusa abunde mollescunt: nam injiciuntur super integram cutem: vero ea, ex quibus emplastra que pastilli fiunt, conteruntur laboriose; ne lædant vulnera, cum sunt imposita. Autem hoc interest inter emplastrum et pastillum, quod emplastrum accipit aliquid utique liquati: in pastillo arida medicamenta junguntur tantum aliquo humore.

Tum emplastrum fit hoc modo: arida medicamenta teruntur per se; deinde his mistis aut acetum instillatur, aut quis alius humor est accessurus si non pinguis, et rursus ea teruntur ex eo: vero ea, quæ possunt liquari, liquantur simul ad ignem; et si quid olei debet misceri, tum infunditur: interdum etiam aliquod coquitur prius ex oleo. Ubi sunt facta, quæ debuerunt fieri separatim, omnia miscentur in unum. At hæc est ratio pastilli: arida medicamenta contrita coguntur humore non pingui, ut vino vel aceto, et coacta rursus, inarescunt; atque, ubi est utendum, diluuntur humore ejusdem generis. Tum emplastrum imponitur, pastillus illinitur, aut miscetur alicui molliori, ut cerato.

## TRANSLATION.

rally compounded from some metallic substance. Besides, malagmata being beat up, are sufficiently soft; for they are applied to the unbroken surface: whereas, the materials which enter into the composition of the plasters and troches require to be powdered more carefully, lest they injure the wounds when they are laid on. Betwixt a plaster and troche there is this difference, that a plaster always receives something melted in its composition; in a troche there are only dry medicines united by some liquid.

Then a plaster is made in this manner: the dry ingredients are bruised separately; then these being mixed together, vinegar is to be dropped into them, or any other liquid that is not greasy; these again are to be beat up: we should also melt together such ingredients as are capable of being melted, and if it be necessary to add any oil, that is the time it should be done: sometimes the dry material is first boiled with the oil. When we have prepared the ingredients, which ought to be done separately, the whole is to be mixed together in one mass. But troches are made in this manner: the dry ingredients are to be rubbed together, afterwards they are to be united by some liquid that is not oily, such as wine or vinegar; after being brought to a proper consistence, it is left to dry again, and when used, it is to be moistened by some liquid of the same kind. The plaster is applied externally, the troche is rubbed on, or it is softened with something, or mixed with cerate.



## CAP. XVIII.

## DE MALAGMATIS.

1. His cognitis, primum malagmata subijciam, quæ fere non sunt refrigerandi, sed calefaciendi causa reperta. Est tamen, quod refrigerare possit, ad calidas podagras aptum.

Habet gallæ et immaturæ et alterius, coriandri seminis, cicutæ, lacrimæ aridæ, gummi, singulorum plenum acetabulum, cerati eloti, quod *πεπλυμένον* Græci vocant, selibram. Reliqua fere calefaciunt : sed quædam digerunt materiam, quædam extrahunt, quæ *ἐπισπαστικά* vocantur ; pleraque certis magis partibus membrorum accommodata sunt.

2. Si materia extrahenda est, ut in hydropico, in lateris dolore, in incipiente abscessu, in suppuratione quoque mediocri, aptum est id, quod habet resinæ aridæ, nitri, ammoniaci, galbani, singulorum pondo, ceræ pondo. Aut in quo hæc sunt : æruginis rasæ,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVIII.

## DE MALAGMATIS.

1. His cognitis, primum subijciam malagmata, quæ fere non reperta sunt causa refrigerandi, sed calefaciendi. Tamen, quod possit refrigerare, est aptum ad calidas podagras.

Habet gallæ et immaturæ et alterius, seminis coriandri, cicutæ, aridæ lacrimæ, gummi, singulorum plenum acetabulum, eloti cerati, quod Græci vocant *πιπλυμένον* (peplumenon), selibram. Fere reliqua calefaciunt : sed quædam digerunt materiam, quædam extrahunt, quæ vocantur *ἐπισπαστικά* (epispastica) ; pleraque sunt magis accommodata certis partibus membrorum.

2. Si materia est extrahenda, ut in hydropico (morbo), in dolore lateris, in incipiente abscessu, quoque in mediocri suppuratione, id est aptum, quod habet aridæ resinæ, nitri, ammoniaci, galbani, singulorum pondo, ceræ pondo. Aut in quo hæc sunt : rasæ æru-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## MALAGMATA.

1. HAVING premised these things, I shall first subjoin malagmata, which are generally composed of such ingredients as excite warmth, not with a design to cool. There is one, however, intended as a refrigerant in hot gout.

It is composed of nut galls, ripe and unripe, coriander seeds, hemlock, dry tears of ——— (26), gum, of each an acetabulum ; of bleached wax, which the Greeks call Peplumenon, half a pound. Almost all the others are calefacients : some of these have the property of dissipating the matter, others of drawing it to the surface, the last are called epispastic ; the greater part of them are appropriated to particular parts of the body.

2. If the matter is to be drawn out, as in dropsy, or in pleuritis, in incipient abscess, or even in moderate suppuration itself, it should contain of dry resin, nitre, ammoniacum, galbanum, of each a pound, of wax a pound. Or that which is com-

thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . II. ammoniac salis p.  $\times$ . VI. squamæ æris, ceræ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . VIII. resinæ aridæ, p.  $\times$ . XII. aceti cyathus. Idem præstat cumini farina cum struthio, et melle.

3. Si jecur dolet, id in quo est balsami lacrimæ p.  $\times$ . XII. costi, cinnamomi, casiaæ corticis, myrrhæ, croci, junci rotundi, balsami seminis, iridis Illyricæ, cardamomi, amomi, nardi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XVI. quibus adjicitur nardinum unguentum, donec cerati crassitudo sit. Et hujus quidem recentis usus est: si vero servandum est, resinæ terebinthinæ p.  $\times$ . XVI. ceræ p.  $\times$ . X. ex vino leni contunduntur, tum eo miscentur.

4. At si lienis torquet, glandis, quam *βάλανον μυρεψικὴν* Græci vocant, cortex et nitrum paribus portionibus contunduntur, respergunturque aceto quam acerrimo: ubi cerati crassitudinem habet, linteo, ante in aqua frigida madefacto, illinitur, et sic imponitur, supraque farina hordeacea injicitur: sed manere ibi non amplius sex horis debet, ne lienem consumat; satisque est id bis, aut ter fieri.

5. Commune autem et jocinori, et lienī, et abscessibus, et strumæ, par-

## ORDO.

ginis, thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . II. salis ammoniaci p.  $\times$ . VI. squamæ æris, ceræ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . VIII. aridæ resinæ, p.  $\times$ . XII. cyathus aceti. Farina cumini cum struthio et melle præstat idem.

3. Si jecur dolet, id in quo est lacrimæ balsami p.  $\times$ . XII. costi, cinnamomi, corticis casiaæ, myrrhæ, croci, rotundi junci, seminis balsami, Illyricæ iridis, cardamomi, amomi, nardi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XVI. quibus nardinum unguentum adjicitur, donec sit crassitudo cerati. Et quidem usus hujus est recentis: vero si est servandum, p.  $\times$ . XVI. terebinthinæ sinæ p.  $\times$ . X. coræ contunduntur ex leni vino, tum miscentur eo.

4. At si lienis torquet, cortex glandis, Græci vocant, *βάλανον μυρεψικὴν* (balanon murepsichen), et nitrum contunduntur paribus portionibus, que resperguntur quam acerrimo aceto: ubi habet crassitudinem cerati, atque illinitur linteo madefacto in frigida aqua, et sic imponitur, que hordeacea farina injicitur supra: sed non debet manere ibi amplius (quàm) sex horis, ne consumat lienem; que est satis id fieri bis aut ter.

5. Autem Lysias composnit (malagma) ex his commune et jocinori, et lienī, et abscessibus, et

## TRANSLATION.

posed of rasile verdigris, frankincense, of each p.  $\times$ . II. sal ammoniac p.  $\times$ . VI. copper scales, wax, of each p.  $\times$ . VIII. dry resin p.  $\times$ . XII. of vinegar a glassful. The same effect is obtained by the flour of cummin seed with struthium and honey.

3. If the liver pain, we may apply a malagma which contains balsam tears, p.  $\times$ . XII. costus, cinnamon, cassia bark, myrrh, saffron, round cyperus, seeds of balsam tree, Illyrian iris, cardamoms, amomum, nard, of each p.  $\times$ . XVI. to these nard ointment is to be added until it become of the consistence of cerate. This should be used fresh; but if it is to be kept for any length of time, we should add to the mixture turpentine resin, p.  $\times$ . XVI. of wax p.  $\times$ . X. these beat up in mild wine.

4. But if the pain be in the spleen, the bark of that acorn which the Greeks call balanos murepsicos, with an equal portion of nitre bruised with it, and sprinkled over with the strongest vinegar: when it has acquired the consistence of cerate, it is to be spread upon lint, previously moistened with cold water, and so applied, over which barley meal is to be laid; but it should not remain longer than six hours, lest it may waste: and it is preferable for this to be done twice or thrice.

5. But Lysias composed a malagma adapted for the liver, the spleen, abscesses,

otidibus, articulis, calcibus quoque suppurantibus, aut aliter dolentibus, etiam concoctioni ventris, Lysias composuit ex his: opopanax, styracis, galbani, resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. ii. ammoniaci, bdellii, ceræ, sevi taurini, iridis aridæ p. ℥. iv. cachryos acetabulo, piperis granis quadraginta: quæ contrita irino unguento temperantur.

6. Ad laterum autem dolores compositio est Apollophanis: in qua sunt resinæ terebinthinæ, thuris fuliginis, singulorum p. ℥. iv. bdelli, ammoniaci, iridis, sevi vitulini, aut caprini a renibus, visci, singulorum p. ℥. iv. Hæc autem eadem omnem dolorem levant, dura emolliunt, mediocriter calefaciunt.

7. Ad idem Andreae quoque malagma est; quod etiam resolvit, humorem educit, pus maturat, ubi id maturum est, cutem rumpit, et ad cicatricem perducit. Prodest impositum minutis majoribusque abscessibus: item articulis, ideoque et coxis, et pedibus dolentibus: item, si quid in corpore collisum est, reficit; præcordia quoque dura et inflata emollit: ossa extrahit: ad omnia denique valet, quæ adjuvare

## ORDO.

strumæ, parotidibus, articulis, quoque suppurantibus calcibus, aut aliter dolentibus, etiam concoctioni ventris: opopanax, styracis, galbani, resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. ii. ammoniaci, bdellii, ceræ, taurini sevi, aridæ iridis p. ℥. iv. acetabulo cachryos, quadraginta granis piperis: quæ contrita temperantur irino unguento.

6. Autem compositio Apollophanis est ad dolores laterum: in qua sunt terebinthinæ resinæ, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p. ℥. iv. bdellii, ammoniaci, iridis, vitulini sevi, aut caprini (sevi) a renibus, visci, singulorum p. ℥. iv. Autem hæc eadem levant omnem dolorem, dura emolliunt, mediocriter calefaciunt.

7. Quoque malagma Andreae est ad idem; quod etiam resolvit, educit humorem, maturat pus, rumpit cutem, ubi id est maturum, et perducit ad cicatricem. Impositum prodest minutis quæ majoribus abscessibus: item articulis, quæ ideo et dolentibus coxis, et pedibus: item si quid est collisum in corpore, reficit; quoque emollit dura et inflata præcordia: extrahit ossa: denique valet ad omnia, quæ calor

## TRANSLATION.

scrofula, and swellings of the parotid glands, the joints, to suppurations of the heels, or otherwise painful, he also intended to promote digestion in the stomach by these materials: of opopanax, storax, galbanum, resin, of each p. ℥. ii. ammoniacum, bdellium, wax, beef suet, dry iris, p. ℥. iv. with an acetabulum of cachrys (27), with forty grains of pepper, these being bruised together, and mixed to a proper consistence by the iris ointment.

6. There is also a composition of Apollophanes for pleurisies: which contain turpentine resin, frankincense soot, of each p. ℥. iv. of bdellium, ammoniacum, iris, veal suet, or the fat of a goat's kidneys, of viscum (28), of each p. ℥. iv. But these also relieve pain, at the same time they soften indurated parts, and excite a moderate warmth.

7. There is also a malagma of Andreas for the same purpose; which also loosens, draws humour to the surface, maturates pus, and when it is ripe, facilitates its escape, and promotes granulations in the opening. It may be applied either to large or small abscesses; also to the joints, either of the hip or feet, when in pain; it relieves any part which has been bruised; softens indurations and inflations of the præcordia; it detaches the exfoliations of bones; finally, it



calor potest. Id habet ceræ p.  $\times$ . xi. visci, sycamini, quam alias sycorum vocant, lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. piperis et rotundi, et longi, ammoniaci thymiamatis, bdellii, iridis Illyricæ, cardamomi, amomi, xylobalsami, thuris masculi, myrrhæ, resinæ aridæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . x. pyrethri, cocci Gnidii, spumæ nitri, salis ammoniaci, aristolochiæ Creticæ, radicis ex cucumere agresti, resinæ terebinthinæ liquidæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xx. quibus adjicitur unguenti irini, quantum satis est ad ea mollienda, atque cogenda.

8. Præcipuum vero est ad resolvenda, quæ adstricta sunt, mollienda, quæ dura sunt, digerenda, quæ coeunt, id, quod ad Polyarchum auctorem refertur. Habet junci quadrati, cardamomi, thuris fuliginis, amomi, ceræ, resinæ liquidæ pares portiones.

9. Aliud ad eadem Nilei: crocomagmatis, quod quasi crecrementum ejus est, p.  $\times$ . iv. ammoniaci thymiamatis, ceræ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xx. ex quibus duo priora ex aceto teruntur, cera cum rosa liquatur, et tum omnia junguntur.

10. Proprie etiam dura emollit id,

## ORDO.

potest adjuvare. Id habet ceræ p.  $\times$ . xi. visci, sycamini, quam alias vocant sycorum, lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. et rotundi, et longi piperis, ammoniaci thymiamatis, bdellii, Illyricæ iridis cardamomi, amomi, xylobalsami, masculi thuris, myrrhæ, aridæ, resinæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . x. pyrethri, Gnidii cocci, spumæ nitri, salis ammoniaci, Creticæ aristolochiæ radicis ex agresti cucumere, liquidæ terebinthinæ resinæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xx. quibus adjicitur irini unguenti, quantum est satis ad mollienda, atque cogenda ea.

8. Vero id, quod refertur ad Polyarchum auctorem, est præcipuum ad resolvenda, quæ sunt adstricta, mollienda, quæ sunt dura, digerenda, quæ coeunt. Habet quadrati junci, cardamomi, fuliginis thuris, amomi, ceræ, liquidæ resinæ pares portiones.

9. (Est) aliud Nilei ad eadem: crocomagmatis, quod est quasi crecrementum ejus, p.  $\times$ . iv. thymiamatis ammoniaci, ceræ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xx. duo priora ex quibus teruntur ex aceto, cera liquatur cum rosa, et tum omnia junguntur.

10. Etiam id, quod dicitur esse Moschi, proprie mollit dura. Ha-

## TRANSLATION.

is advantageous in all cases where heat would be of service. It is composed of wax, p.  $\times$ . xi. of viscum, of sycamine tears, which some call sycamore, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of pepper, both round and long, gum ammoniacum, bdellium, Illyrian iris, cardamoms, amomum, wood of the balsam tree, male frankincense, myrrh, dry resin, of each, p.  $\times$ . x. of wild pellitory, Gnidian berry, the spume of nitre, sal ammoniac, Cretan aristolochy, wild cucumber root, liquid resin of turpentine, of each, p.  $\times$ . xx. to which is added as much iris ointment as may bring them to a proper consistence.

8. But the principal malagma for relaxing parts which are bound, for softening parts which are indurated, and for dispersing accumulations of matter, is that which is ascribed to Polyarchus. It contains of the square cyperus, of cardamoms, soot of frankincense, amomum, wax, liquid resin, equal parts.

9. There is another by Nileus for the same purposes: of crocomagma (29), which is, as it were, the dregs of saffron, p.  $\times$ . iv. of gum ammoniacum, of wax, of each, p.  $\times$ . xx. of which the two former are rubbed down with vinegar, the wax is melted with rose oil, and then put all together.

10. That malagma which is ascribed to Moschus, has the peculiar property,

quod Moschi esse dicitur. Habet galbani unciam, thuris fuliginis p. =. ceræ, ammoniaci thymiamatis trientes, picis aridæ p. ii. aceti heminas tres.

11. Fertur etiam ad digerenda, quæ coeunt, sub auctore Medio, quod habet ceræ p. =. panacis p. x. s. squamæ æris, aluminis rotundi, item scissilis, p. x. 1. plumbi combusti p. x. i. s.

12. Ad eadem Panthemus utebatur, calcis p. s. sinapis contriti, item fœni Græci, aluminis, singulorum p. i. sevi bubuli p. ii. s.

13. 14. Ad strumam multa malagmata invenio. Credo autem, quo pejus id malum est, minusque facile discutitur, eo plura esse tentata; quæ in personis varie responderunt. Andreas auctor est, ut hæc misceantur: urticæ seminis p. x. i. piperis rotundi, bdellii, galbani, ammoniaci thymiamatis, residæ aridæ, singulorum p. x. iv. resinæ liquidæ, ceræ, pyrethri, piperis longi, lactucæ marinæ seminis, sulphuris ignem non experti, quod *ἄπυρον* vocatur, fæcis aridæ aceti, spumæ nitri, salis ammoniaci, sinapis, cardamomi, radicis ex cucumere silvestri, resinæ, singulorum p. x. viii. quæ ex leni vino contunduntur.

# ORDO.

bet unciam galbani, p. =. fuliginis thuris, trientes thymiamatis ammoniaci, aridæ picis p. ii. tres heminas aceti.

11. Etiam sub auctore Medio, quod habet p. =. ceræ, p. x. s. panacis, squamæ æris, rotundi, item scissilis aluminis, singulorum p. x. i. combusti plumbi p. x. i. s. fertur ad digerenda, quæ coeunt.

12. Panthemus utebatur ad eadem, calcis p. s. contriti sinapis, item Græci fœni, aluminis, singulorum p. i. bubuli sevi p. ii. s.

13. 14. Invenio multa malagmata ad strumam. Autem credo, quo pejus id malum est, que minus facile discutitur, eo plura esse tentata; quæ responderunt varie in personis. Andreas est auctor, ut hæc misceantur: seminis urticæ p. x. i. rotundi piperis, bdellii, galbani, thymiamatis ammoniaci, aridæ resinæ, singulorum p. x. iv. liquidæ resinæ, ceræ, pyrethri, longi piperis, seminis marinæ lactucæ, sulphuris non experti ignem, quod vocatur *ἄπυρον* (apuron), aridæ fæcis aceti, spumæ nitri, salis ammoniaci, sinapis, cardamomi, radicis ex silvestri cucumere, resinæ, singulorum p. x. viii. quæ contunduntur ex leni vino.

## TRANSLATION.

of softening indurations. It has of galbanum an ounce, the soot of frankincense, p. =. wax, gum ammoniacum, one third, of dry pitch, p. ii. of vinegar, three heminæ.

11. There is another given under the name of Medus for dispersing accumulations of humour, which is composed of wax, p. =. of panaces, p. x. s. copper scales, round alum, also of scissile alum, of each, p. x. i. calcined lead, p. x. i. s.

12. Panthemus, with the same intention, used of lime, p. s. bruised mustard, also fœnugreek, alum, of each, p. i. of beef suet, p. ii. s.

13, 14. I find there are many malagmata for struma. But I believe indeed, that the more malignant the disease, and the less easily removed, the greater number of remedies have been tried; which have had various success in different persons. Andreas composed the following mixture: nettle seed, p. x. i. round pepper, bdellium, galbanum, ammoniacum, dry resin, of each, p. x. iv. liquid resin, wax, pellitory, long pepper, seed of the marine lettuce, crude sulphur, which is called apuron, the dry lees of vinegar, spume of nitre, sal ammoniac, mustard, cardamoms, root of the wild cucumber, of resin, of each, p. x. viii. which are bruised together with mild wine.

15. Expeditius ad idem fit, quod habet visci seminis, stercoris—resinæ, sulphuris ignem non experti pares portiones. Et in quo est sulphuris p. x. i. lapidis, quem *πυρίτην* vocant, p. x. iv. cumini acetabulum. Item in quo est lapidis ejusdem pars una, sulphuris duæ partes, resinæ terebinthinæ partes tres.

16. Arabis autem cujusdam est ad strumam, et orientia tubercula, quæ *φύματα* vocantur, quod hæc digerit. Habet myrrhæ, salis ammoniaci, thuris, resinæ et liquidæ et aridæ, crocomagmatis, ceræ, singulorum p. x. i. lapidis ejus, quem *πυρίτην* vocant, p. iii. quibus quidam adjiciunt sulphuris p. x. ii.

17. Est etiam proficiens in struma, et in iis tuberibus, quæ difficiliter concoquantur, et in iis, quæ *καρκινώδη* vocantur, quod ex his constat; sulphuris p. x. ii. nitri p. x. iv. myrrhæ p. x. vi. fuliginis thuris p. s. salis ammoniaci p. =. ceræ p. i.

18. Protarchus autem ad *παρωτίδας*, eaque tubercula, quæ *μελικήρια*, id est favi, vel *φύματα* nominantur, item mala ulcera, pumicis, resinæ pinæ liquidæ, thuris fuliginis, spumæ nitri, iridis,

## ORDO.

15. Quod habet seminis visci, stercoris—resinæ, sulphuris non experti ignem, pares portiones, fit expeditius. Et in quo est sulphuris p. x. i. lapidis, quem Græci vocant *πυρίτην* (puriten) p. x. iv. acetabulum cumini. Item in quo est una pars ejusdem lapidis, duæ partes sulphuris, tres partes terebinthinæ resinæ.

16. Autem est cujusdam Arabis ad strumam, et orientia tubercula, quæ vocantur *φύματα* (phymata), quod digerit hæc. Habet myrrhæ, salis ammoniaci, thuris, et liquidæ et aridæ resinæ, crocomagmatis, ceræ, singulorum p. x. i. ejus lapidis, quem vocant *πυρίτην* (puriten) p. x. iii. quibus quidam adjiciunt sulphuris p. x. ii.

17. Etiam quod constat ex his est proficiens in struma, et in iis tuberibus, quæ concoquantur difficiliter, et in iis, quæ vocantur *καρκινώδη* (carcinode), sulphuris p. x. ii. nitri p. x. iv. myrrhæ p. x. vi fuliginis thuris p. s. salis ammoniaci p. =. ceræ p. i.

18. Autem ad *παρωτίδας* (parotidas), que ea tubercula, quæ nominantur *μελικήρια* (meliceria), id est favi, vel *φύματα* (phymata), item mala ulcera, Protarchus miscebat pumicis, liquidæ pinæ resinæ, fuliginis thuris, spumæ nitri,

## TRANSLATION.

15. A more expeditious method is that which contains the seed of viscum, —'s dung (30), resin, crude sulphur, equal parts. Another, in which there are of sulphur, p. x. i. pyrites, p. x. iv. an acetabulum of cumin. Likewise that which contains one part of the same stone, two parts of sulphur, three parts of turpentine resin.

16. But there is a malagma of a certain Arabian for struma, and the rising tubercles, (*enlargement of the glands*), which are called phymata, which disperses them. It is composed of myrrh, sal ammoniac, frankincense, resin both liquid and dry, the lees of saffron oil, wax, of each p. x. i. of that stone called pyrites, p. x. iii., to which some add sulphur, p. x. ii.

17. This is also of service in struma, and in those tumours which suppurate badly; also in those which are called carcinomatous, which consists of the following: of sulphur, p. x. ii., nitre, p. x. iv., myrrh p. x. vi., soot of frankincense, p. s., sal ammoniac, p. =, wax, p. i.

18. But for swelling of the parotid glands, and those tubercles which are called meliceria, that is, honey-combs, or phymata; and for malignant ulcers, Protarchus made the following mixture: of pumice stone, liquid, pine resin, soot of frank-



singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . viii. cum ceræ p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ix. miscebat, hisque olei cyathum et dimidium adiciebat.

19. At adversus panem, tum primum orientem, quod *φύγεθλον* Græci vocant, et omne tuberculum, quod *φῦμα* nominatur, miscetur ochra, quæ Attice nominatur, cum duabus partibus similæ, hisque, dum contunduntur, subinde mel instillatur, donec malagmatis crassitudo sit.

20. Discutit etiam omne tuberculum, quod *φῦμα* vocatur, id, quod habet calcis, nitri spumæ, piperis rotundi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. galbani p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii. salis p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. quæ excipiuntur cerato ex rosa facto.

21. Supprimitque omne, quod abscedit, id, in quo est galbani, fabæ fressæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. myrrhæ, thuris, ex radice capparis corticis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. Satisque omnia abscedentia digerit murex combustus, et bene contritus, aceto subinde adjecto.

22. At si satis sanguis subit, recte imponitur, quod adversus phymata quoque potest. Constat ex his: bdellii, styracis, ammoniaci, galbani, resinæ et aridæ et liquidæ pineæ, item ex lentisco, thuris, iridis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii.

## ORDO.

iridis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . viii. cum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ix. ceræ, quæ adiciebat cyathum et dimidium olei his.

19. At adversus panem, tum primum orientem, quod Græci vocant *φύγεθλον* (phygethlon), et omne tuberculum, quod nominatur *φῦμα* (phyma), ochra, quæ nominatur Attice, miscetur cum duabus partibus similæ, quæ, dum contunduntur, mel instillatur his subinde, donec sit crassitudo malagmatis.

20. Etiam id, quod habet calcis, spumæ nitri, rotundi piperis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. galbani p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii. salis p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. quæ excipiuntur cerato facto ex rosa, discutit omne tuberculum, quod vocatur *φῦμα* (phyma).

21. Que id, in quo est galbani, fressæ fabæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. myrrhæ, thuris, corticis ex radice capparis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. supprimit omne, quod abscedit. Que combustus, et bene contritus murex, aceto subinde adjecto, satis digerit omnia abscedentia.

22. At si sanguis satis subit, quod potest adversus phymata, quoque imponitur recte. Constat ex his: bdellii, styracis, ammoniaci galbani, et aridæ et liquidæ pineæ resinæ, item ex lentisco, thuris, iridis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii.

## TRANSLATION.

incense, spume of nitre, iris, of each, p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . viii., with p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ix. of wax: to these he added a glass and a half of oil.

19. But for panus, when it first appears, which the Greeks call phygethlon, and every tubercle which is named phyma, a mixture is made of Attic ochre with two parts of fine flour, to these honey is added drop by drop occasionally, while they are being bruised, until it acquire the consistence of a malagma.

20. There is another which dissipates every tubercle, that is called phyma, and consists of lime, spume of nitre, round pepper, of each, p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i., galbanum, p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii. of salt, p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv., which are to be incorporated with cerate made of rose oil.

21. This malagma suppresses all incipient abscesses, and is composed of galbanum, bruised beans, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i., myrrh, frankincense, the root-bark of the caper tree, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. Fresh lime in powder, with the addition of a little vinegar, is a powerful discutient to all incipient abscesses.

22. But if there be much extravasation of blood, we can employ successfully a malagma for phymata. It consists of these ingredients, bdellium, storax, ammoniacum, galbanum, pine resin, both dry and liquid, also mastich, frankincense, iris, of each, p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii.

23. Καρκινώδη vero phymata commode his leniuntur: galbani, visci, ammoniaci, resinæ terebinthinæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. sevi taurini p. s. fæcis combustæ quam maxima portione, dum id siccius non faciat, quam esse malagma oportet.

24. Quod si facie contusa livor subcruentus est, hæc compositio nocte et die imposita tollit. Aristolochiæ, thapsiæ, singulorum p. ℥. ii. bdellii, styracis, ammoniaci thymiamatis, galbani, resinæ aridæ, et ex lentisco liquidæ, thuris masculi, iridis Illyricæ, ceræ, singulorum p. ℥. iv. Idem faba quoque imposita proficit.

25. Sunt etiam quædam malagmata, quæ στοματικά Græci vocant, quoniam aperiendi vim habent. Quale est, quod ex his constat: piperis longi, spumæ nitri, singulorum p. ℥. ii. erysimi p. ℥. iv. quæ cum melle miscentur. Idoneaque etiam strumæ aperiendæ sunt. Ejus generis, vehementiusque ex his est id, quod habet calcis p. ℥. iv. piperis grana sex, nitri, ceræ, singulorum p. ℥. x. mellis p. =. olei hemina.

26. Miconis quoque est, quod resolvit, aperit, purgat. Habet alcyo-

## ORDO.

23. Vero καρκινώδη (carcinode) phymata leniuntur commode his: galbani, visci, ammoniaci, terebinthinæ resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. taurimi sevi p. s. combustæ fæcis quam maxima portione, dum non faciat id siccius, quam oportet esse malagma.

24. Quod si est subcruentus livor contusa facie, hæc compositio imposita nocte et die tollit. Aristolochiæ, thapsiæ, singulorum p. ℥. ii. bdellii, styracis, thymiamatis ammoniaci, galbani, aridæ resinæ, et liquidæ ex lentisco, masculi thuris, Illyricæ iridis, ceræ, singulorum p. ℥. iv. Quoque faba imposita proficit idem.

25. Etiam sunt quædam malagmata, quæ Græci vocant στοματικά (stomatoca), quoniam habent vim aperiendi. Quale est, quod constat ex his: longi piperis, spumæ nitri, singulorum p. ℥. ii. erysimi p. ℥. iv. quæ miscentur cum melle. Que etiam sunt idonea aperiendæ strumæ. Que vehementius ex his ejus generis est id, quod habet calcis p. ℥. iv. sex grana piperis, nitri, ceræ, singulorum p. ℥. x. mellis p. =. hemina olei.

26. Quoque est Miconis, quod resolvit, aperit, purgat. Habet

## TRANSLATION.

23. We can alleviate the violence of carcinomatous phymata by the following: of galbanum, viscum, ammoniacum, turpentine resin, of each p. ℥. i, beef suet, p. s., burned lees, as much as may be necessary, without making it drier than a malagma ought to be.

24. But if there be a contusion of the face, with extravasation and livor, this composition being applied night and day, removes it: Of aristolochy, thapsia (31), of each p. ℥. ii., of bdellium, storax, gum ammoniacum, galbanum, dry resin, and of liquid mastich, male frankincense, Illyrian iris, wax, of each p. ℥. iv. Also beans laid on are serviceable in the same case.

25. There are some malagmata which the Greeks call stomotica, because they possess the property of opening. Such as that which is composed of the following; of long pepper, spume of nitre, of each p. ℥. ii., erysimum (32), p. ℥. iv. which are mixed with honey. They are also good for opening scrofulous tumours. A more powerful one of this kind is that which contains lime, p. ℥. iv., pepper six grains, nitre, wax, of each p. ℥. x., of honey, p. =, oil a hemina.

26. There is one of Mico's, which relaxes, opens, and purifies. It contains

nium, sulphur, nitrum, pumicem, paribus portionibus; quibus tantum picis, et ceræ adjicitur, ut fiat cerati crassitudo.

27. Ad ossa autem Aristogenis, fit ex his: sulphuris p. x. i. resinæ terebinthinæ, nitri spumæ, et ex scilla partis interioris, plumbi eloti, singulorum p. x. ii. thuris fuliginis p. x. viii. ficus aridæ quam pinguiissimæ, sevi taurini, singulorum p. x. viii. ceræ p. x. xii. iridis Macedonicæ p. x. vi. sesami fricti acetabulum.

28. Maximeque nervis et articulis malagma convenit. Igitur Euthylei est, et ad articulos, et ad omnem dolorem, et ad vesicæ, et ad recenti cicatrice contractos articulos, quas ἀγκύλας Græci nominant, conveniens, quod habet fuliginis thuris acetabulum, resinæ tantundem, galbani sine surculis sescunciam, ammoniaci, bdellii, singulorum p. =. ceræ p. s. Ad eosdem: iridis, ammoniaci, galbani, nitri, singulorum p. x. xiv. resinæ liquidæ p. x. vi. ceræ p. x. xvi.

29. Ad dolores articulorum Sosagoræ: plumbi combusti, papaveris lacrimæ, corticis hyoseyami, styracis, peucedani, sevi, resinæ, ceræ pares portiones.

# ORDO.

alcyonium, sulphur, nitrum, pumicem, paribus portionibus; quibus tantum picis, et ceræ adjicitur, ut fiat crassitudo cerati.

27. Autem (malagma) Aristogenis ad ossa fit ex his: sulphuris p. x. i. terebinthinæ resinæ, spumæ nitri, et interioris partis ex scilla, eloti plumbi, singulorum, p. x. ii. fuliginis thuris p. x. viii. quam pinguiissimæ aridæ ficus, taurini sevi, singulorum p. x. viii. ceræ p. x. xii. Macedonicæ iridis p. x. vi. fricti sesami acetabulum.

28. Que (hoc) malagma convenit maxime nervis et articulis. Igitur Euthylei est conveniens, et ad articulos, et ad omnem dolorem, et ad (dolorem) vesicæ, et ad contractos articulos recenti cicatrice, quas Græci nominant ἀγκύλας (anchylas), quod habet acetabulum fuliginis thuris, tantundem resinæ, sescunciam galbani sine surculis, ammoniaci, bdellii, singulorum p. =, ceræ p. s. Ad eosdem: iridis, ammoniaci, galbani, nitri singulorum p. x. xiv. liquidæ resinæ p. x. vi. ceræ p. x. xvi.

29. (Est malagma) Sosagoræ ad dolores articulorum: (nempe) combusti plumbi, lacrimæ papaveris, corticis hyoseyami, styracis, peucedani, sevi, resinæ, ceræ pares portiones.

## TRANSLATION.

of bastard sponge, sulphur, nitre, pumice stone, equal parts; to which as much pitch and wax is to be added as may make it of the consistence of cerate.

27. Aristogenes composed the following for the bones: of sulphur p. x. i. resin of turpentine, spume of nitre, the pulp of squills, carbonate of lead, of each p. x. ii., frankincense soot p. x. viii., dry mellow figs, beef suet, of each p. x. viii. wax p. x. xii. Macedonian iris p. x. vi., an acetabulum of fried sesamum.

28. Euthyleus composed a malagma, particularly applicable for the tendons, joints, and all pains in the bladder, and any contraction of the articulations from a recent cicatrix, which the Greeks call anchylosis, it contains soot of frankincense, an acetabulum, of resin the same quantity, galbanum without the stalks, an ounce and a half, ammoniacum, bdellium, of each p. =, wax, p. s. There is another for the same purpose (33), of iris, ammoniacum, galbanum, nitre, of each p. x. xiv. liquid resin p. x. vi., wax p. x. xvi.

29. Sosagoras has another malagma for pains in the joints: calcined lead, poppy tears, rind of henbane, storax, peucedanum (34), suet, resin, and wax in equal portions.



30. Chrysippi: resinæ liquidæ, sandarachæ, piperis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XII. quibus ceræ paululum adjicitur.

31. Ctesiphontis: ceræ Creticæ, resinæ terebinthinæ, nitri quam ruberrimi, singulorum p. s. olei cyathi tres. Sed id nitrum ante per triduum, instillata aqua, teritur, et cum sextario ejus incoquitur, donec omnis humor consumatur. Potest vero ea compositio etiam ad parotidas, phymata, strumam, omnemque coitum humoris emolliendum.

32. Ad articulos, fici quoque aridi partem nepetæ mistam; vel uvam taminiam sine seminibus cum pulegio recte aliquis imponit.

33. Eadem podagræ præsidio sunt. Sed ad eam fit Aristonis quoque, quod habet nardi, cinnamomi, casiæ, chamæleontis, junci rotundi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . VIII. sevi caprini ex irino liquati p.  $\times$ . XX. iridis p.  $\times$ . I. quæ in aceto quam acerrimo jacere per XX. dies debet. Idem autem etiam recentia phymata doloresque omnes discutit.

34. At Theoxenus ad pedum dolores, sevi a renibus partem tertiam, salis partes duas miscebat, hisque membranulam illitam imponebat; tum su-

## ORDO.

30. Malagma Chrysippi: liquidæ resinæ, sandarachæ, piperis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XII. quibus paululum ceræ adjicitur.

31. Malagma Ctesiphontis: Creticæ ceræ, terebinthinæ resinæ, quam ruberrimi nitri, singulorum p. s. tres cyathi olei. Sed id nitrum, aqua instillata, teritur per triduum ante, et incoquitur cum sextario ejus, donec omnis humor consumatur. Vero ea compositio potest etiam ad parotidas, phymata, strumam, que emolliendum omnem coitum humoris.

32. Quoque aliquis recte imponit ad articulos, partem aridi fici mistam nepetæ; vel taminiam uvam sine seminibus, cum pulegio.

33. Eadem sunt præsidio podagræ. Sed quoque (malagma) Aristonis fit ad eam, quod habet nardi, cinnamomi, casiæ, chamæleontis, rotundi junci, singulorum p.  $\times$ . VIII. caprini sevi liquati ex irino p.  $\times$ . XX. iridis p.  $\times$ . I. quæ debet jacere in quam acerrimo aceto per XX. dies. Autem idem etiam discutit recentia phymata que omnes dolores.

34. At Theoxenes ad dolores pedum, miscebat tertiam partem sevi a renibus, duas partes salis, que imponebat membranulam il-

## TRANSLATION.

30. Chrysippus composed the following: of liquid resin, sandarach, of pepper, each p.  $\times$ . XII., to which a very little wax is added.

31. The next belongs to Ctesiphon: Cretan chalk, turpentine resin, nitre as red as possible, of each, p. s., three cupsful of oil. But the nitre is first to be rubbed for three days, occasionally dropping water on it, and then boiled with a sextarius of that water, until all the moisture be evaporated. This composition is serviceable in parotid swellings, phymata, struma, and for softening all collections of humour.

32. A person may very properly apply part of a dry fig, mixed with cat-mint, to the joints, or the Taminian grape, without the seeds, with penny-royal.

33. This is also good against the gout. But that of Arison is peculiarly adapted for that complaint, which consists of nard, cinnamon, casia, chamæleon, round cyperus, of each p.  $\times$ . VIII., goat-suet melted with iris oil, p.  $\times$ . XX., iris p.  $\times$ . I. which ought to be in very strong vinegar, for twenty days. This also dissipates recent phymata, and all pains.

34. Theoxenus composed a malagma for pains in the feet, consisting of one-

perinjiciebat ammoniacum thymiama in aceto liquatum.

35. At Numenius podagram, ceterosque articulos induratos hoc mollebat: abrotoni, rosæ aridæ, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p. ℥. III. resinæ terebinthinæ p. ℥. IV. thuris, spumæ nitri, singulorum p. ℥. VIII. iridis, aristolochiæ, singulorum p. ℥. XII. ceræ p. III. quibus adjicitur cedri cyathus unus, olei laurei cyathi tres, olei acerbi sextarius.

36. Si quando autem in articulis callus increvit, Dexius docuit imponere, calcis p. ℥. IV. cerussæ p. ℥. VIII. resinæ pineæ p. ℥. XX. piperis grana xxx. ceræ p. =. quibus, dum contunduntur, hemina vini lenis instillatur.

## ORDO.

litam his; tum superinjiciebat thymiama ammoniacum liquatum in aceto.

35. At Numenius mollebat podagram, que ceteros induratos articulos hoc: abrotoni, aridæ rosæ, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p. ℥. III. terebinthinæ resinæ p. ℥. IV. thuris, spumæ nitri, singulorum p. ℥. VIII. iridis, aristolochiæ, singulorum p. ℥. XII. ceræ p. III. quibus adjicitur unus cyathus cedri, tres cyathi laurei olei, sextarius acerbi olei.

36. Autem si quando callus increvit in articulis, Dexius docuit imponere; calcis p. ℥. IV. cerussæ p. ℥. VIII. pineæ resinæ p. ℥. XX. xxx grana piperis, p. =. ceræ, quibus, dum contunduntur, hemina lenis vini instillatur.

## TRANSLATION.

third part of kidney suet, two parts of salt, and applied this spread upon thin leather: then he covered this over with gum ammoniacum, dissolved in vinegar.

35. But Numenius alleviated the gout and other indurations of the joints with this: of southernwood, dry rose leaves, poppy tears, of each p. ℥. III., turpentine resin p. ℥. IV., frankincense, spume of nitre, of each p. ℥. VIII., iris, aristolochy, of each p. ℥. XII., of wax p. III., to this he added a glass of cedar oil, and three glasses of laurel oil, and one sextarius of bitter oil.

36. But if at any time hard substances have grown on the joints, Dexius has ordered to apply, of lime p. ℥. IV., ceruss p. ℥. VIII., pine resin p. ℥. XX. pepper xxx grains, wax p. =. While they are being bruised a hemina of mild wine is to be poured in gradually.

## CAP. XIX.

## ORDO.

## DE EMPLASTRIS.

## CAP. XIX.

## DE EMPLASTRIS.

Ex emplastris autem nulla majorem usum præstant, quam quæ cruentis protinus vulneribus injiciuntur: ἐναίμα

AUTEM ex emplastris nulla præstant majorem usum, quam quæ injiciuntur protinus cruentis vulneribus: Græci vocant ἐναίμα

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIX.

## PLASTERS FOR RECENT WOUNDS.

OF plasters, none afford greater assistance than those applied immediately to bloody wounds: the Greeks call them Enaima. For these repress inflammation,

Græci vocant. Hæc enim reprimunt inflammationem, nisi magna vis eam cogit, atque illius quoque impetum minuunt: tum glutinant vulnera, quæ id patiuntur, cicatricem iisdem inducunt. Constant autem ex medicamentis non pinguibus; ideoque ἀλιπαίνη nominantur.

1. Optimum ex his est, quod Barbarum vocatur. Habet æruginis rasæ p. ℥. xii. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xx. aluminis, picis aridæ, resinæ pineæ aridæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. quibus adjiciuntur olei et aceti singulæ heminæ.

2. Alterum ad idem, quod Coacon vocant, habet spumæ argenti p. ℥. c. resinæ aridæ tantundem: sed spuma prius ex tribus olei heminis coquitur. His duobus emplastris color niger est, qui fere talis fit ex pice atque resina: at ex bitumine nigerrimus; ex æruginē, aut æris squama, viridis; ex minio ruber; ex cerussa albus.

3. Paucae admodum compositiones sunt, in quibus aliquid misturæ varietas novat. Ergo id quoque nigrum est, quod βασιλικὸν nominatur. Habet panacis p. ℥. i. galbani p. ℥. ii. picis, et resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. x. olei dimidium cyathum.

## ORDO.

(enaima). Enim hæc reprimunt inflammationem, nisi magna vis cogit eam, atque quoque minuunt impetum illius: tum glutinant vulnera, quæ patiuntur id, inducunt cicatricem iisdem. Autem constant ex medicamentis non pinguibus, que ideo nominantur ἀλιπαίνη (alipaina).

1. Optimum ex his est, quod vocatur Barbarum. Habet rasæ æruginis p. ℥. xii. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xx. aluminis, aridæ picis, aridæ pineæ resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. quibus singulæ heminæ olei et aceti adjiciuntur.

2. (Est) alterum ad idem, quod vocant Coacon, habet spumæ argenti p. ℥. c. aridæ resinæ tantundem: sed spuma prius coquitur ex tribus heminis olei. Color his duobus emplastris est niger, qui fere sit talis ex pice atque resina: at nigerrimus ex bitumine; viridis, ex æruginē, aut squama æris; ruber ex minio; albus ex cerusso.

3. Sunt admodum paucae compositiones, in quibus aliquid varietas misturæ novat. Ergo id quoque est nigrum, quod nominatur βασιλικὸν (basilicon). Habet panacis p. ℥. i. galbani p. ℥. ii. picis, et resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. x. dimidium cyathum olei.

## TRANSLATION.

unless excited by some violent cause, and even then they diminish the violence of it, and agglutinate the wounds which admit of it, and promote cicatrization on them. They admit of no fat substances in their composition, and on that account are called by the Greeks Alipænes.

1. The best of these is that which is called the Barbarian. It contains of scraped verdigris p. ℥. xii. litharge p. ℥. xx. alum, dry pitch, dry pine resin, of each p. ℥. i. to which are added a hemina of oil, and another of vinegar.

2. There is another for the same intention, which they call Coacon: it consists of litharge p. ℥. c. the same quantity of dry resin: but the litharge must be previously boiled with three hemina of oil. These two plasters have a black colour, which is generally produced by the pitch and resin: but that which contains the bitumen is very black; that which is made of verdigris or copper scales is green; that made with minium is red; that made with carbonate of lead is white.

3. There are very few compositions in which the variety of the mixture changes the colour. Therefore that plaster is black which is called Basilicon. It consists of panaces p. ℥. i. galbanum p. ℥. ii. pitch, resin, of each p. ℥. x. of oil half a glass.



4. At quod perviride est, smaragdinum appellatur: in quo sunt resinæ pineæ p. ℥. iii. ceræ p. ℥. i. æruginis p. s. thuris fuliginis p. =. olei tantundem, aceti, quo fuligo et ærugo in unum cogantur.

5. Est etiam coloris fere rufi, quod celeriter ad cicatricem vulnera perducere videtur. Habet thuris p. ℥. i. resinæ p. ℥. ii. squamæ æris p. ℥. iv. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xx. ceræ p. ℥. c. olei heminam.

6. Præterea est, quam παρακολλητικήν a glutinando vocant. Constat ex his: bituminis, aluminis scissilis, p. ℥. iv. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xl. olei veteris hemina.

7. Præterea sunt quædam generis ejusdem, quæ, quia capitibus fractis maxime conveniunt, κεφαλικά a Græcis nominantur. Philotæ compositio habet terræ Eretriæ, chalcitidis, singulorum p. ℥. iv. myrrhæ, æris combusti, singulorum p. ℥. x. ichthyocollæ p. ℥. vi. æruginis rasæ, aluminis rotundi, misy crudi, aristolochiæ, singulorum p. ℥. viii. squamæ æris p. ℥. x. thuris masculi p. ℥. ii. ceræ p. i. rosæ, et olei acerbi, ternos cyathos, aceti quantum satis est, dum arida ex eo conteruntur.

## ORDO.

4. At quod est perviride, appellatur smaragdinum: in quo sunt pineæ resinæ p. ℥. iii. ceræ p. ℥. i. æruginis p. s. fuliginis thuris p. ℥. =. tantundem olei, aceti, quo fuligo et ærugo cogantur in unum.

5. Etiam est fere rufi coloris, quod videtur celeriter perducere cicatricem ad vulnera. Habet thuris p. ℥. i. resinæ p. ℥. ii. squamæ æris p. ℥. iv. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xx. ceræ p. ℥. c. heminam olei.

6. Est præterea, quam vocant παρακολλητικήν (paracolleticen) a glutinando. Constat ex his: bituminis, scissilis aluminis, p. ℥. iv. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xl. hemina veteris olei.

7. Præterea sunt quædam ejusdem generis, quæ, quia maxime conveniunt fractis capitibus, nominantur κεφαλικά (cephalica). Compositio Philotæ habet Eretriæ terræ, chalcitidis, singulorum p. ℥. iv. myrrhæ, combusti æris, singulorum p. ℥. x. ichthyocollæ p. ℥. vi. rasæ æruginis rotundi aluminis, crudi misy, aristolochiæ, singulorum p. ℥. viii. squamæ æris p. ℥. x. masculi thuris p. ℥. ii. ceræ p. i. rosæ, et acerbi olei, ternos cyathos, aceti quantum est satis, dum arida conteruntur ex eo.

## TRANSLATION.

4. But that which is very green is called Smaragdine: it contains of pine resin p. ℥. iii. wax p. ℥. i. verdigris p. s. soot of frankincense p. =. oil the same quantity, and as much vinegar as will incorporate the soot and frankincense together.

5. There is one plaster almost of a red colour, which seems to bring wounds very rapidly to cicatrize. It has of frankincense p. ℥. i. resin p. ℥. ii. copper scales p. ℥. iv. litharge p. ℥. xx. wax p. ℥. c. of oil one hemina.

6. There is another composition which they call Paracolleticon, from its property of agglutinating (or rather granulating) wounds: it consists of, bitumen, scissile alum p. ℥. iv. litharge p. ℥. xl. old oil, a hemina.

7. Besides these, there are some of the same kind, which, because they are more adapted for fractures of the cranium, are named by the Greeks, Cephalica. The composition of Philotas contains Eretrian earth, chalcitis, of each p. ℥. x. myrrh, calcined copper, of each p. ℥. x. isinglass p. ℥. vi. rasile verdigris, aristolochy, round alum, of each p. ℥. viii. copper scales p. ℥. x. of male frankincense p. ℥. ii. wax p. i. of rose oil, bitter oil, three glassfuls, of vinegar, a sufficient quantity to rub down the dry ingredients in it.

8. Aliud ad idem viride : æris combusti, squamæ æris, myrrhæ, ichthyocollæ, singulorum p. ℥. vi. misy crudi, æruginis rasæ, aristolochiæ, aluminis rotundi, singulorum p. ℥. viii. ceræ p. ℥. i. olei hemina, aceti quod satis sit.

9. Puri autem movendo non aliud melius, quam quod expeditissimum est: τετραφάρμακον a Græcis nominatur. Habet pares portiones ceræ, picis, resinæ, sevi taurini; si id non est, vitulini.

10. Alterum ad idem, ἐννεαφάρμακον nominatur; quod magis purgat. Constat ex novem rebus, cera, melle, sevo, resina, myrrha, rosa, medulla vel cervina vel vitulina vel bubula, œsypo, butyro: quorum ipsorum quoque pondera paria miscentur.

11. Sunt autem quædam emplastra, quibus utriusque rei facultas est: quæ, si singula habenda sunt, meliora sunt; sed in copia rejicienda sunt; iis potius adhibitis, quæ proprie id, quod eo tempore opus est, consequuntur. Exempli causa duo proponam. Est igitur ad vulnera Attalum; quod habet squamæ æris p. ℥. xvi. thuris fuliginis

## ORDO.

8. (Est) aliud viride ad idem: combusti æris, squamæ æris, myrrhæ, ichthyocollæ, singulorum p. ℥. vi. crudi misy, rasæ æruginis, aristolochiæ, rotundi aluminis singulorum p. ℥. viii. ceræ p. ℥. i. hemina olei, quod sit satis aceti.

9. Autem movendo puri non est aliud melius, quam quod (est) expeditissimum: nominatur a Græcis τετραφάρμακον (tetrapharmacum). Habet pares portiones ceræ, picis, resinæ, taurini sevi; si id non est, vitulini.

10. Alterum ad idem, nominatur ἐννεαφάρμακον (enneapharmacum); quod purgat magis. Constat ex novem rebus, cera, melle, sevo, resina, myrrha, rosa, vel cervina vel vitulina vel bubula medulla, œsypo, butyro; quorum ipsorum paria pondera quoque miscentur.

11. Autem sunt quædam emplastra, quibus est facultas utriusque rei: quæ, si sunt habenda singula, sunt meliora; sed sunt rejicienda in copia; iis potius adhibitis, quæ proprie consequuntur id, quod est opus eo tempore. Causa exempli proponam duo. Igitur Attalum est ad vulnera; quod habet squamæ æris p. ℥. xvi.

## TRANSLATION.

8. There is another for the same purpose of a green colour: it is composed of calcined copper, copper scales, myrrh, isinglass, of each p. ℥. vi. crude misy, rasile verdigris, aristolochy, round alum, of each p. ℥. viii. wax p. ℥. i. oil of hemina, of vinegar what may be sufficient.

9. One of the best suppurative plasters which we can employ, and that which is very easily prepared, is named by the Greeks Tetrapharmacon. It contains equal portions of wax, pitch, resin, beef suet; if this last is not to be obtained, of veal.

10. Another for the same purpose is named Enneapharmacon: which is more detergent. It consists of nine articles; wax, honey, suet, resin, myrrh, rose oil, deer, veal, or beef marrow, œsypum (35) and butter: of these equal quantities are to be mixed together.

11. But there are some plasters which combine these two properties: (*that is, suppurative and detergent*;) which are preferable, if only one plaster could be obtained; but when there is a choice, they are to be rejected, and those only employed which are peculiarly adapted for the case at that time. I shall propose two for the sake of example.

There is the Attalan plaster for wounds: composed of copper scales p. ℥. xvi.

p. xv. ammoniaci tantumdem, resinæ terebinthinæ liquidæ p. ℥. xxv. sevi taurini tantumdem, aceti heminas tres, olei sextarium.

At inter ea, quæ fracto capiti accommodantur, habent quidam id, quod ad auctorem Judæum refertur. Constat ex his: salis p. ℥. iv. squamæ æris rubri, æris combusti, singulorum p. ℥. xii. ammoniaci thymiamatis, thuris fuliginis, resinæ aridæ, singulorum p. ℥. xvi. resinæ Colophoniacæ, ceræ, sevi vitulini curati, singulorum p. ℥. xx. aceti sesquicyathos, olei minus cyathos. Τεθεραπευμένα Græci appellant, quæ curata vocant; cum ex sevo puta omnes membranulæ diligenter exemptæ sunt, ex alio medicamento.

12. Sunt etiam quædam emplastra nobilia ad extrahendum; quæ ipsa quoque ἐπισπαστικὰ nominantur quale est, quod, quia lauri baccas habet, διὰ δαρυίδων appellatur. In eo est, resinæ terebinthinæ p. ℥. x. nitri, ceræ, picis aridæ, baccarum lauri, singulorum p. ℥. xx. olei paulum. Quoties aut baccam, aut nucem, aut simile aliquid posuero, scire oportebit, antequam expendatur, ei summam pelliculam esse demendam.

## ORDO.

fuliginis thuris p. ℥. xv. ammoniaci tantumdem, liquidæ terebinthinæ resinæ p. ℥. xxv. taurini sevi tantumdem, tres heminas aceti, sextarium olei.

At inter ea, quæ accommodantur fracto capiti, quidam habent id, quod refertur ad Judæum auctorem. Constat ex his: salis p. ℥. iv. squamæ rubri æris, combusti æris (oxydum zinci), singulorum p. ℥. xii. thymiamatis ammoniaci, fuliginis thuris, aridæ resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. xvi. Colophoniacæ resinæ, ceræ, curati vitulini sevi, singulorum p. ℥. xx. sesquicyathos aceti, minus cyathos olei. Quæ (nostris) vocant curata, Græci appellant Τεθεραπευμένα (Tetherapeumena); puta, cum omnes membranulæ sunt exemptæ diligenter ex sevo, (aut) ex oleo medicamento.

12. Etiam sunt quædam nobilia emplastra ad extrahendum (pus); quæ quoque ipsa nominantur ἐπισπαστικὰ: quale est, quod, quia habet baccas lauri, appellatur διὰ δαρυίδων (diadaphnidon). Est in eo, terebinthinæ resinæ p. ℥. x. nitri, ceræ, aridæ picis, lauri baccarum, singulorum p. ℥. xx. paulum olei. Quoties posuero aut baccam, aut nucem, aut aliquid simile, oportebit scire, antequam expendatur, summam pelliculam esse demendam ei.

## TRANSLATION.

soot of frankincense p. ℥. xv. the same quantity of ammoniacum, liquid turpentine resin p. ℥. xxv. the same proportion of beef suet, of vinegar three hemina, of oil a sextarius.

But among those which are adapted for a fracture of the cranium, some use that which is ascribed to Judæus. It consists of salt p. ℥. iv. the scales of red copper, calcined copper, of each p. ℥. xii. gum ammoniacum, soot of frankincense, dry resin, of each p. ℥. xvi. Colophonian resin, wax, prepared veal suet, of each p. ℥. xx. with a glassful and a half of vinegar, and a little less than a glassful of oil. What the Greeks call Tetherapeumena, our countrymen call Curata, (*prepared ingredients*;) for instance, when all the little membranes have been diligently freed from the suet, or any other article in a similar way.

12. There are some plasters famed for drawing; they are also named Epi-spastica: such is that which is composed of laurel berries, it is termed Diadaphnidon. It contains turpentine resin p. ℥. x. of nitre, wax, dry pitch, laurel berries, of each p. ℥. xx. and a little oil. As often as I shall mention either berry, nut, or such like article, let it be understood that the external pellicle is to be removed before it is weighed.



13. Aliud eodem nomine, quod puri quoque movendo est. Sevi vitulini, ammoniaci thymiamatis, picis, ceræ, nitri, baccarum lauri, resinæ aridæ, aristolochiæ, pyrethri pares portiones.

14. Præter hæc, est Philocratis; quod habet salis Ammoniaci p.  $\times$ . vii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . viii. ceræ, resinæ terebinthinæ, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xv. spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . xxxii. Quibus, ut pus quoque moveant, iridis p.  $\times$ . iv. et galbani p. vi. adjiciuntur.

15. Optimum tamen ad extrahendum est id, quod a similitudine sordium  $\rho\upsilon\pi\omega\delta\epsilon\varsigma$  Græci appellant. Habet myrrhæ, croci, iridis, propolis, bdellii, capitulorum Punici mali, aluminis et scissilis et rotundi, misy, chalcitidis, atramenti sutorii cocti, panacis, salis Ammoniaci, visci, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . viii. squamæ æris p.  $\times$ . xvi. resinæ terebinthinæ p.  $\times$ . lxxv. ceræ, et sevi vel taurini vel hircini, singulorum p.  $\times$ . c.

16. Hecatæo quoque auctore emplastrum generis ejusdem fit ex his: galbani p.  $\times$ . ii. fuliginis thuris p.  $\times$ . iv. picis p.  $\times$ . vi. ceræ, et resinæ terebinthinæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . viii. quibus paulum irini unguenti miscetur.

## ORDO.

13. Et aliud eodem nomine, quod quoque (est) movendo puri. Pares portiones vitulini sevi, thymiamatis, ammoniaci, picis, ceræ, nitri, baccarum lauri, aridæ resinæ, aristolochiæ, pyrethri.

14. Præter hæc, est Philocratis; quod habet ammoniaci salis p.  $\times$ . vii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . viii. ceræ, terebinthinæ resinæ, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xv. spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . xxxii. Quibus, ut quoque moveant pus, iridis p.  $\times$ . iv. et galbani p. vi. adjiciuntur.

15. Tamen id est optimum ad extrahendum (pus), quod a similitudine sordium Græci appellant  $\rho\upsilon\pi\omega\delta\epsilon\varsigma$  (rhypodes). Habet myrrhæ, croci, iridis, propolis, bdellii, capitulorum Punici mali, et scissilis et rotundi aluminis, misy, chalcitidis, cocti sutorii atramenti, panacis, ammoniaci salis, visci, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . viii. squamæ æris p.  $\times$ . xvi. terebinthinæ resinæ p.  $\times$ . lxxv. ceræ, vel taurini vel hircini sevi singulorum p.  $\times$ . c.

16. Quoque emplastrum ejusdem generis fit ex his auctore Hecatæo: galbani p.  $\times$ . ii. fuliginis thuris p.  $\times$ . iv. picis p.  $\times$ . vi. ceræ, et terebinthinæ resinæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . viii. quibus paulum irini unguenti miscetur.

## TRANSLATION.

13. There is another under the same name, for promoting suppuration. It is composed of veal suet, gum ammoniacum, pitch, wax, nitre, laurel berries, dry resin, aristolochy, pellitory, in equal proportions.

14. Besides these, there is that of Philocrates: which consists of sal ammoniac p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochy p.  $\times$ . viii. wax, turpentine resin, soot of frankincense, of each p.  $\times$ . xv. litharge, p.  $\times$ . xxxii. To which are added, in order to promote suppuration, of iris p.  $\times$ . iv. of galbanum p.  $\times$ . vi.

15. Yet the best for drawing is that which the Greeks call Rhypodes, from its resemblance to sordes. It is composed of myrrh, saffron, iris, bee-bread, bdellium, the tops of pomegranates, scissile and round alum, misy, chalcitis, a boiled solution of the sulphate of copper (36), panaces, sal ammoniac, viscum, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. of aristolochy p.  $\times$ . viii. scales of copper p.  $\times$ . xvi. turpentine resin p.  $\times$ . lxxv. of wax, and either beef or goat suet, of each p.  $\times$ . c.

16. Hecatæus also composed a similar plaster, consisting of the following: galbanum p.  $\times$ . ii. soot of frankincense p.  $\times$ . iv. pitch p.  $\times$ . vi. wax and turpentine resin, of each p.  $\times$ . viii. to which a little iris ointment is to be added.

17. Valensque ad idem emplastrum viride Alexandrinum est. Habet aluminis scissilis p. ℥. viii. salis Ammoniaci p. ℥. viii. =. squamæ æris p. ℥. xvi. myrrhæ, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. xviii. ceræ p. ℥. cl. resinæ Colophoniacæ aut pineæ p. ℥. cc. olei heminam, aceti sextarium.

18. Quædam autem sunt emplastra exedentia, quæ *σηπτά* Græci vocant: quale est id, quod habet resinæ terebinthinæ, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p. =. squamæ æris p. ℥. i. ladani p. ℥. ii. aluminis tantundem, spumæ argenti p. ℥. iv.

19. Exest etiam vehementer corpus, atque ossa quoque resolvit, et supercrescentem carnem coercet, id quod habet spumæ argenti, squamæ æris, uncias singulas, nitri ignem non experti, lapidis Asii, aristolochiæ p. sextantes, ceræ, resinæ terebinthinæ, thuris, olei veteris, atramenti sutorii, salis ammoniaci p. s. æruginis rasæ p. bessem, aceti scillitici heminam, vini Aminæi tantundem.

20. Sunt etiam adversus morsus quædam accommodata; quale est Diogeni nigrum, quod habet bituminis, ceræ, resinæ pineæ aridæ, singulorum

## ORDO.

17. Que viride Alexandrinum emplastrum est valens ad idem. Habet scissilis aluminis p. ℥. viii. = ammoniaci salis p. ℥. viii. squamæ æris p. ℥. xvi. myrrhæ, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. xviii. ceræ p. ℥. cl. Colophoniacæ aut pineæ resinæ p. ℥. cc. heminam olei, sextarium aceti.

18. Autem sunt quædam exedentia emplastra, quæ Græci vocant *σηπτά* (septa): quale id est, quod habet terebinthinæ resinæ, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p. =. squamæ æris p. ℥. i. ladani p. ℥. ii. tantundem aluminis, spumæ argenti p. ℥. iv.

19. Id etiam vehementer exest corpus atque quoque resolvit ossa, et coercet supercrescentem carnem quod habet singulas uncias spumæ argenti, squamæ æris, nitri non experti ignem, Asii lapidis, p. sextantes aristolochiæ, ceræ, terebinthinæ resinæ, thuris, veteris olei, sutorii atramenti, p. s. salis ammoniaci, p. s. bessem p. rasæ æruginis, heminam scillitici aceti, tantundem, Aminæi vini.

20. Quædam etiam sunt accommodata adversus morsus: quale est nigrum Diogeni, quod habet bituminis, ceræ, aridæ pineæ resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. xx. spumæ

## TRANSLATION.

17. The green Alexandrian plaster is also efficacious for drawing. It contains of scissile alum p. ℥. viii. sal ammoniac p. ℥. viii. =. scales of copper p. ℥. xvi. myrrh, frankincense, of each p. —. xviii. p. ℥. cl. Colophonian or pine resin p. ℥. cc. of oil, a hemina, of vinegar a sextarius.

18. Some plasters are corrosive, which the Greeks call Septa: such as that which contains resin of turpentine, soot of frankincense, of each p. =. scales of copper p. ℥. i. ladanium p. ℥. ii, alum the like quantity, litharge p. ℥. iv.

19. This also corrodes violently and even dissolves the bones, and checks the superabundant granulations; it contains litharge, scales of copper, one ounce of each, crude nitre, Asian stone, aristolochy, p. sextans of each, wax, turpentine resin, frankincense, sulphate of iron, sal ammoniac p. s. scraped verdigris p. eight ounces, of vinegar of squills one hemina, of Aminæan wine the same quantity.

20. There are also plasters prepared against bites; such as the black plaster of Diogenes which contains bitumen, wax, dry pine resin, of each p. ℥. xx.

p. ℥. xx. spumæ argenti p. ℥. c. olei sextarium. Aut in quo sunt squamæ æris p. ℥. iv. cerussæ, et æruginis rasæ, singulorum p. ℥. viii. ammoniaci p. ℥. xii. ceræ, resinæ pineæ, singulorum p. ℥. xxv. spumæ argenti p. ℥. c. olei sextarium. Aut in quo sunt squamæ æris p. ℥. xiv. galbani p. ℥. vi. cerussæ, et æruginis rasæ, singulorum p. ℥. viii. ammoniaci p. ℥. xii. ceræ, resinæ pineæ, singulorum p. ℥. xxxv. spuma argenti concoquitur.

21. Rubrum quoque emplastrum, quod Ephesium vocatur, huc aptum est. Habet resinæ terebinthinæ p. ℥. ii. galbani p. ℥. iv. minii Sinopici p. ℥. vi. thuris fuliginis p. ℥. vi. ceræ p. ℥. viii. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xxxvi. olei veteris heminam.

22. Item id, quod ex his constat: squamæ æris, thuris fuliginis, singulorum p. ℥. iv. galbani p. ℥. vi. salis ammoniaci p. ℥. xii. =. ceræ p. ℥. xxvi. olei tribus heminis. Hæc autem aliis quoque recentioribus vulneribus recte imponuntur.

23. Sunt etiam alba lenia (λευκά Græci vocant) fere non gravibus vulneribus accommodata, præcipueque senilibus: quale est quod habet cerussæ

## ORDO.

argenti p. ℥. c. sextarium olei. Aut (unum), in quo sunt squamæ æris p. ℥. iv. cerussæ, et rasæ æruginis, singulorum p. ℥. viii. ammoniaci p. ℥. xii. ceræ, pineæ resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. xxv. spumæ argenti, p. ℥. c. sextarium olei. Aut (unum), in quo sunt squamæ æris p. ℥. xiv. galbani p. ℥. vi. cerussæ, et rasæ æruginis, singulorum p. ℥. viii. ammoniaci p. ℥. xii. ceræ, resinæ pineæ singulorum p. ℥. xxxv. spuma argenti concoquitur.

21. Quoque rubrum emplastrum, quod vocatur Ephesium, est aptum huc. Habet terebinthinæ resinæ p. ℥. ii. Galbani p. ℥. iv. Sinopici minii p. ℥. vi. fuliginis thuris p. ℥. vi. ceræ p. ℥. viii. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xxxvi. heminam veteris olei.

22. Item id (emplastrum) quod constat ex his: squamæ æris, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p. ℥. iv. galbani p. ℥. vi. ammoniaci salis p. ℥. xii. =. ceræ p. ℥. xxvi. tribus heminis olei. Autem quoque hæc imponuntur recte aliis recentioribus vulneribus.

23. Etiam sunt alba lenia (emplastra), Græci vocant λευκά (leuca), fere non accommodata gravibus vulneribus, que præcipue senilibus: quale est quod habet

## TRANSLATION.

litharge p. ℥. c. of oil one sextarius. Or that which consists of scales of copper p. ℥. iv. carbonate of lead, and of scraped verdigris, of each p. ℥. viii. ammoniacum p. ℥. xii. of wax, pine resin, of each p. ℥. xxv. litharge p. ℥. c. of oil a sextarius. Or that which is composed of scales of copper p. ℥. xiv. of galbanum p. ℥. vi. of ceruse, and scraped verdigris, of each p. ℥. viii. ammoniacum p. ℥. xii. wax, and pine resin, of each p. ℥. xxxv.; the litharge is to be boiled with them.

21. There is also a red plaster, called the Ephesian, and is applicable in similar cases. It is composed of turpentine resin p. ℥. ii. galbanum p. ℥. iv. Sinopian minium p. ℥. vi. soot of frankincense p. ℥. vi. wax p. viii. litharge p. ℥. xxxvi. of old oil a hemina.

22. Likewise that which consists of the following materials: scales of copper, soot of frankincense, of each p. ℥. iv. of galbanum p. ℥. vi. of sal ammoniac p. ℥. xii. =. wax p. ℥. xxvi. with three hemina of oil. These also are proper applications to other recent wounds.

23. There are also white plasters, more lenient, mostly adapted for slight wounds, particularly in old persons: which the Greeks call Leuca (from their colour): such



p. ℥. xxxii. sevi vitulini curati, et ceræ, singulorum p. ℥. xlviii. olei heminas tres, ex quibus cerussa coquitur.

24. Aliud, quod habet cerussæ p. ℥. xx. ceræ p. ℥. xxxv. olei heminam, aquæ sextarium. Quæ quoties adjiciuntur cerussæ vel spumæ argenti, scire licet, illa ex his coquenda esse. Est autem ea percandida compositio, quæ supra posita est, ideoque ἐλεφαντίνη nominatur.

25. Lenia quoque quædam emplastra sunt, quas λιπαράς fere Græci nominant; ut id quod habet minii p. ℥. iv. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xxv. ceræ, et adipis suillæ, singulorum p. ℥. xxxvii. vitellos quatuor.

26. Alia compositio generis ejusdem: ceræ, resinæ terebinthinæ, singulorum p. ℥. vi. cerussæ p. ℥. viii. spumæ argenti, plumbi recrementi, σκωρίαν μολύβδου Græci vocant, singulorum p. ℥. xx. cicini olei, et myrtei, singulorum heminæ.

27. Tertia, quæ ad auctorem Archagathum refertur: misy cocti, æris combusti, singulorum p. ℥. iv. cerussæ coctæ p. ℥. viii. resinæ terebinthinæ p. ℥. x. spumæ argenti p. ℥. vi.

# ORDO.

cerussæ p. ℥. xxxii. curati vitulini sevi, et ceræ, singulorum p. ℥. xlviii. tres heminas olei, ex quibus cerussa coquitur.

24. Aliud quod habet cerussæ p. ℥. xx. ceræ p. ℥. xxxv. heminam olei, sextarium aquæ. Quæ (res) quoties adjiciuntur cerussæ, vel spumæ argenti, licet scire, illa esse coquenda ex his. Autem ea compositio, quæ est posita supra, est percandida, quæ ideo nominatur ἐλεφαντίνη (elephantine).

25. Quoque sunt quædam lenia emplastra, quas Græci fere nominant λιπαράς (liparas); ut id quod habet minii p. ℥. iv. spumæ argenti p. ℥. xxv. ceræ, et suillæ adipis, singulorum p. ℥. xxxvii. quatuor vitellos.

26. (Est) alia compositio ejusdem generis: ceræ, terebinthinæ resinæ, singulorum p. ℥. vi. cerussæ p. ℥. viii. spumæ argenti, recrementi plumbi, (quem) Græci vocant σκωρίαν μολύβδου (skoria molybdon) singulorum p. ℥. xx. cicini olei, et myrtei, singulorum heminæ.

27. Tertia, quæ refertur ad auctorem Archagathum: cocti misy, combusti æris, singulorum p. ℥. iv. coctæ cerussæ p. ℥. viii. terebinthinæ resinæ p. ℥. x. spumæ argenti p. ℥. vi.

# TRANSLATION.

is that which is composed of carbonate of lead p. ℥. xxxii. prepared veal suet and of wax, of each p. ℥. xlviii. of oil three hemina, in which the ceruse has been boiled.

24. There is another which contains of ceruse p. ℥. xx. of wax p. ℥. xxxv. of oil a hemina, of water a sextarius. Now as often as these things are added to ceruse or litharge, let it be understood that they are to be boiled together. But that composition which is just mentioned above, is very white, and on that account is called Elephantine.

25. There are some mild plasters which the Greeks commonly call Lipara: such as the following, of minium p. ℥. iv. litharge p. ℥. xxv. of wax, and hog's lard, of each p. ℥. xxxvii. and the yolks of four eggs.

26. There is another composition of the same kind, consisting of wax, turpentine resin, of each p. ℥. vi. of ceruse p. ℥. viii. litharge, the scoria of lead (the Greeks call it the scoria molybdi) of each p. ℥. xx. castor oil, myrtle oil, a hemina of each.

27. The third which is ascribed to Archagathus consists of boiled misy, calcined copper, of each p. ℥. iv. boiled ceruse p. viii. turpentine resin p. ℥. x. of litharge p. ℥. vi.

28. Etiamnum generis ejusdem: spumæ argenti, ceræ, adipis suillæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xxvii. vitelli cocti quatuor, rosæ hemina. Aut, cerati ex oleo myrteo facti partes tres, adipis suillæ pars quarta, paulum ex plumbi recremento. Aut, spumæ argenti selibra, ex olei hemina, et aquæ marinæ altera, cocta, donec bullire desierit, cui paulum ceræ sit adjectum. Aut, pares portiones ceræ, sevi, stibis, spumæ argenti, cerussæ.

## ORDO.

28. Etiamnum (emplastrum) ejusdem generis: spumæ argenti, ceræ, suillæ adipis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xxvii. quatuor cocti vitelli, hemina rosæ. Aut, cerati facti ex myrteo oleo tres partes, suillæ adipis quarta pars, paulum ex recremento plumbi. Aut, selibra spumæ argenti, hemina ex oleo, et altera marinæ aquæ, cocta, donec desierit bullire, cui paulum ceræ sit adjectum. Aut pares portiones ceræ, sevi, stibis, spumæ argenti, cerussæ.

## TRANSLATION.

28. There is yet another of the same kind; it consists of litharge, wax, hog's lard, of each, p.  $\times$ . xxvii. the yolks of four boiled eggs, and one hemina of rose oil. Or, three parts of myrtle cerate, one fourth part of hog's lard, the scoria of lead. Or, of litharge half a pound, boiled with a hemina of oil, and another of seawater, until it cease to give out bubbles, to which a little wax may be added. Or, equal parts of wax, suet, antimony, litharge, and carbonate of lead.

## CAP. XX.

## DE PASTILLIS.

1. PASTILLI quoque facultates diversas habent. Sunt enim ad recentia vulnera glutinanda sanandaque apti: qualis est, qui habet chalcitidis, misy, spumæ nitri, floris æris, gallæ, aluminis scissilis modice cocti, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. æris combusti, capitulorum mali Punici, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iii. Hunc oportet diluere aceto, ac sic, ubi vulnus glutinandum est, illinere. At,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XX.

## DE PASTILLIS.

PASTILLI quoque habent diversas facultates. Sunt enim (pastilli) apti ad glutinanda que sananda recentia vulnera: qualis est, qui habet chalcitidis, misy, spumæ nitri, floris æris, gallæ, scissilis aluminis modice cocti, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. combusti æris, capitulorum Punici mali, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iii. Oportet diluere hunc aceto, ac illinere sic, ubi vulnus est glutinandum. At, si ille locus est ner-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XX.

## OF TROCHES.

1. TROCHES also have various properties. For they are adapted to agglutinate and cure recent wounds: such as that consisting of chalcitis, misy, spume of nitre, the flower of copper, nut gall, alum in coarse powder moderately boiled, of each p.  $\times$ . i. calcined copper, pomegranate tops, of each p.  $\times$ . iii. It is necessary to dilute this with vinegar, and so applied, when a wound is to be agglutinated.

si nervosus aut musculosus is locus est, commodius est cerato miscere; sic ut illius octo partes, nona hujus sit.

Alius ad idem constat ex his: bituminis, aluminis scissilis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. æris combusti p.  $\times$ . iv. spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . xi. olei sextario.

2. Sed longe Polybi celeberrimus est; σφραγίς autem nominatur: qui habet aluminis scissilis p.  $\times$ . i. =. atramenti sutorii p.  $\times$ . ii. myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . v. aloes tantundem, capitulorum Punici mali, fellis taurini, singulorum p.  $\times$ . vi. quæ contrita vino austero excipiuntur.

3. Ad ulcera sordida, et nigritiem in auribus, naribus, obscœnis partibus, inflammationesque eorum: chrysocollæ p.  $\times$ . i. atramenti sutorii, aluminis scissilis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. halicacabi corticis p.  $\times$ . iv. minii p.  $\times$ . vi. spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . xii. cerussæ p.  $\times$ . xvi. quæ ex aceto, et coguntur, et, ubi utendum est, diluuntur.

4. Andronis vero est ad uvam inflammata, ad naturalia sordida, etiam cancro laborantia: gallæ, atramenti sutorii, myrrhæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. aristolochiæ, aluminis scissilis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. capitulorum Punici mali p.  $\times$ . xxv. ex passo coacta, et

## ORDO.

vosus aut musculosus, est commodius miscere cerato, sic, ut sit octo partes illius, nona hujus.

Alius (applicetur) ad idem constat ex his: bituminis, scissilis aluminis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. combusti æris, p.  $\times$ . iv. spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . xi. sextario olei.

2. Sed (pastillus) Polybi est longe celeberrimus; autem nominatur σφραγίς (sphragis): qui habet scissilis aluminis p.  $\times$ . i. =. sutorii atramenti p.  $\times$ . ii. myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . v. tantundem aloes, capitulum Punici mali, taurini fellis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . vi. quæ contrita austero vino, excipiuntur.

3. Ad sordida ulcera, et nigritiem in auribus, naribus, obscœnis partibus, quæ inflammationes eorum: chrysocollæ p.  $\times$ . i. sutorii atramenti, scissilis aluminis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. corticis halicacabi p.  $\times$ . iv. minii p.  $\times$ . vi. spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . xii. cerussæ p.  $\times$ . xvi. quæ et coguntur ex aceto, et diluuntur, ubi est utendum.

4. Vero (pastillus) Andronis est (aptius) ad inflammata uvam, ad sordida naturalia, etiam laborantia cancro: gallæ, sutorii atramenti, myrrhæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. aristolochiæ, scissilis aluminis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. capitulorum Punici mali p.  $\times$ . xxv. coacta ex passo, et cum usus exigat, diluta

## TRANSLATION.

But if that place be tendinous, or muscular, it is more advantageous to mix it with cerate, so that there may be eight parts of the former to one of the latter.

Another for the same purpose consists of these; bitumen, alum, of each p.  $\times$ . i. calcined copper, p.  $\times$ . iv. litharge p.  $\times$ . xi. of oil a sextarius.

2. But the most celebrated by far is that of Polybus: it is also named sphragis by the Greeks: it consists of scissile alum p.  $\times$ . i. =. sulphate of copper p.  $\times$ . ii. of myrrh, p.  $\times$ . v. of aloes just as much, pomegranate tops, ox-gall, of each p.  $\times$ . vi. which are to be bruised together and incorporated with austere wine.

3. For foul ulcers, and blackness in the ears, nose, private parts, and for inflammations in these; take of borax p.  $\times$ . i. copperas, fragments of alum, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. the bark of the halicacabus (37) p.  $\times$ . iv. of minium p.  $\times$ . vi. litharge p.  $\times$ . xii. ceruse p.  $\times$ . xvi. which are to be combined with vinegar, and diluted when used.

4. But there is another of Andro's for inflammation of the uvula, for sordes on the parts of generation, or cancer. It is composed of nut-galls, copperas, myrrh, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of aristolochy, the fragments of alum, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. pomegranate tops p.  $\times$ . xxv. to be combined with raisin wine, and when required to be



cum usus exigit, aceto vel vino diluta, prout valentius aut levius vitium est, cui medendum est.

5. Proprie autem ad ani fissa, vel ora venarum fundentia sanguinem, vel cancrum : æruginis p. ℥. ii. myrrhæ p. ℥. xii. stibis, lacrimæ papaveris, acaciæ, singulorum p. ℥. xvi. quæ ex vino et teruntur, et in ipso usu deliquantur.

6. Expellere autem ex vesica cum urina calculum videtur hæc compositio : casia, croci, myrrhæ, costi, nardi, cinnamomi, dulcis radicis, balsami, hyperici pares portiones conteruntur; deinde vinum lene instillatur, et pastilli fiunt, qui singuli habeant p. ℥. =. hique singuli quotidie mane jejuno dantur.

## ORDO.

aceto vel vino, prout vitium est valentius aut levius, cui est medendum.

5. Autem proprie ad fissa ani, vel ora venarum fundentia sanguinem, vel cancrum : æruginis p. ℥. ii. myrrhæ p. ℥. xii. stibis, lacrimæ papaveris, acaciæ, singulorum p. ℥. xvi. quæ et teruntur ex vino, et deliquantur in usu ipso.

6. Autem hæc compositio videtur expellere calculum cum urina ex vesica : pares portiones casia, croci, myrrhæ, costi, nardi, cinnamomi, dulcis radicis, balsami, hyperici, conteruntur; deinde lene vinum instillatur, et pastilli fiunt, qui habeant p. ℥. =. singuli, que hi singuli dantur mane quotidie jejuno.

## TRANSLATION.

used, to be diluted with vinegar or wine, in proportion as the disease may be more or less violent to which it is applied.

5. But there is another particularly adapted for fissures about the anus, or an effusion of blood from the hæmorrhoidal veins, or cancer: it is made of verdigris p. ℥. ii. myrrh p. ℥. xii. gum p. ℥. viii. of frankincense p. ℥. xii. antimony, poppy tears, acacia, of each p. ℥. xvi. which are to be rubbed down with the wine, and diluted with the same liquor when used.

6. But the following composition is said to have the property of expelling a calculus out of the bladder along with the urine: of cassia, saffron, myrrh, costum, nard, cinnamon, sweet liquorice root, balsam, hypericum (38), equal portions are to be bruised together; then mild wine is to be dropped in gradually and troches are to be formed, each containing p. ℥. =. One of these is to be given daily on an empty stomach.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE PESSIS.

1. HÆC tria compositionum genera, id est, quæ in malagmatis, emplastris, pastillisque sunt, maximum præcipueque varium usum præstant. Sed alia quoque utilia sunt; ut ea quæ fœminis subjiciuntur: πεσσοῦς Græci vocant. Eorum hæc proprietas est: medicamenta composita molli lana excipiuntur, eaque lana naturalibus conditur.

Ad sanguinem autem evocandum, cauneis duabus adjicitur nitri p. ℥. i. aut allii semen conteritur, adjicitur myrrhæ paululum, et unguento susino miscetur: aut cucumeris silvestris pars interior ex lacte muliebri diluitur.

2. Ad vulvam molliendam, ovi vitellus, et fœnum Græcum, et rosa, et crocum temperantur. Aut elaterii p. ℥. =. salis tantundem, uvæ tamininæ p. ℥. vi. melle excipiuntur.

3. Aut Boetho auctore: croci, resinæ terebinthinæ, singulorum p. ℥. iv.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE PESSIS.

1. HÆC tria genera compositionum, id est quæ sunt in malagmatis, emplastris, que pastillis, præcipue præstant maximum que varium usum. Sed sunt quoque alia utilia; ut ea quæ subjiciuntur fœminis: Græci vocant πεσσοῦς (pessoi). Proprietas eorum est hæc: composita medicamenta excipiuntur molli lana, que ea lana conditur naturalibus.

Autem ad evocandum sanguinem, p. ℥. i. nitri adjicitur duabus cauneis, aut semen allii, conteritur, paululum myrrhæ adjicitur, et miscetur susino unguento: aut interior pars silvestris cucumeris diluitur ex muliebri lacte.

2. Ad molliendam vulvam, vitellus ovi, et Græcum fœnum, et rosa, et crocum temperantur. Aut p. ℥. =. elaterii, tantundem salis, tamininæ uvæ p. ℥. vi. excipiuntur melle.

3. Aut Boetho auctore, croci, resinæ terebinthinæ, singulorum p. ℥. iv. myrrhæ p. ℥. =. rosæ

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXI.

## OF PESSARIES.

1. THESE three kinds of compositions, that is, the malagmata, the plasters, and troches, afford the greatest variety in their application and use. But there are other things useful, such as those which are destined for the use of females. They are termed *Pessoi* by the Greeks. The mode of applying them is thus: when the materials are prepared, they are spread upon soft wool, and introduced into the vagina.

Now to induce menstruation p. ℥. 1. of nitre is added to two Caunian (39) figs, or garlick seed is bruised together: very little of myrrh added; then mixed with lily-ointment (40), or the pulp of the wild cucumber is diluted with a woman's milk.

2. But an emollient pessary to soften the vagina is made of the yolk of an egg, fœnugreek, rose oil, and saffron mixed together. Or of elaterium p. ℥. =. of salt an equal quantity, staphisagria p. ℥. vi. combined with honey.

3. Or this by Boethus: of saffron, turpentine resin, of each p. ℥. iv. myrrh, p. ℥. =. =. of rose oil p. ℥. 1. veal suet p. ℥. 1. wax p. ℥. mix.

myrrhæ p. ℥. =. rosæ p. ℥. i. sevi vitulini p. ℥. i. =. ceræ p. ℥. ii. miscentur.

4. Optima autem adversus inflammationes vulvæ Numenii compositio est, quæ habet croci p. ℥. =. ceræ p. ℥. i. butyri p. ℥. viii. adipis anserinæ p. ℥. xii. vitellos coctos duos, rosæ minus cyatho.

5. Si vero infans intus decessit, quo facilius ejiciatur, malicorium ex aqua terendum, eoque utendum est.

6. Si concidere vitio locorum mulier solet, cochlæ cum testis suis comburendæ, conterendæque, deinde his mel adjiciendum est.

7. Si non comprehendit, adeps leonina ex rosa mollienda est.

## ORDO.

p. ℥. i. vitulini sevi p. ℥. i. =. ceræ p. ℥. ii. miscentur.

4. Autem compositio Numenii est optima adversus inflammationes vulvæ, quæ habet croci p. ℥. =. ceræ p. ℥. i. butyri p. ℥. viii. anserinæ adipis p. ℥. xii. duos coctos vitellos, minus cyatho rosa.

5. Si vero infans decessit intus, quo ejiciatur facilius, malicorium est terendum ex aqua, que (est) utendum eo.

6. Si mulier solet concidere vitio locorum, cochleæ cum suis testis (sunt) comburendæ, que conterendæ, deinde mel est adjiciendum his.

7. Si mulier non comprehendit, leonina adeps est. mollienda ex rosa.

## TRANSLATION.

4. But the composition of Numenius is the best against inflammation of the bladder, which contains of saffron p. ℥. =. wax p. ℥. i. butter p. ℥. viii. goose grease p. ℥. xii. the yolks of two boiled eggs, of rose oil a little less than a glassful.

5. But if the fœtus have died in utero, in order that it may be expelled the more easily, the rind of pomegranates must be rubbed down with water, and so used with it.

6. If a woman be accustomed to faint from some affection of the womb, snails are to be calcined with their shells and powdered, afterwards honey added to them.

7. If a woman does not conceive, lion's fat must be softened with rose oil, and applied as a pessary.



## CAP. XXII.

DE MEDICAMENTIS, QUIBUS ARIDIS  
UTIMUR.

1. QUÆDAM autem misturæ medicamentorum sunt, quibus aridis neque coactis utimur, sic, ut inspergamus, aut cum aliquo liquido mista illinamus: quale est, ad carnem supercrescentem exedendam, quod habet squamæ æris, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. æruginis p. ℥. ii. Hæc autem eadem cum melle purgant ulcera; cum cera, implent. Misy quoque et galla, si paribus portionibus misceantur, corpus consumunt: eaque vel arida inspergere licet, vel excepta cadmia illinere.

2. Putrem vero carnem continet, neque ultra serpere patitur, et leniter exest, mel vel cum lenticula, vel cum marrubio, vel cum oleæ foliis, ante ex vino decoctis: item sertula Campana in mulso cocta, deinde contrita: aut calx cum cerato: aut amaræ nuces cum allio, sic, ut hujus pars tertia sit, paulumque his croci adjiciatur: aut quod

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXII.

DE QUIBUS MEDICAMENTIS, (UT)  
UTIMUR ARIDIS.

1. AUTEM sunt quædam misturæ medicamentorum, quibus, utimur aridis neque coactis, sic, ut inspergamus, aut illinamus mista cum aliquo liquido: quale est, ad exedendam supercrescentem carnem, quod habet squamæ æris, fuliginis, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. æruginis p. ℥. ii. Autem hæc eadem (mistæ) cum melle purgant ulcera, cum cera, implent. Quoque misy et galla, si misceantur (in) paribus portionibus, consumunt corpus: que licet vel inspergere ea arida, vel illinere excepta cadmia.

2. Vero, mel vel cum lenticula, vel cum marrubio, vel cum foliis oleæ, ante decoctis ex vino, continet putrem carnem, neque patitur serpere ultra, et leniter exest: item Campana sertula cocta in mulso, (et) deinde contrita; aut calx cum cerato: aut amaræ nuces cum allio, sic ut sit tertia pars hujus (posterius), que paulum croci adjiciatur his: aut quod habet

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXII.

OF MEDICINES WHICH ARE TO BE USED IN A DRY FORM.

1. THERE are some compounds which we use in a dry and pulverulent form, and uncombined with moisture, so that we may either sprinkle or smear on the parts when mixed with some liquid. Such as that for repressing the superabundant granulations of flesh, composed of the scales of copper, soot of frankincense, of each p. ℥. i. of verdigris, p. ℥. ii. The same combined with honey is a detergent for foul ulcers; with wax they fill up. Also misy, and nut galls, if they be mixed in equal portions, corrode the flesh, they may be sprinkled on dry, or formed into an ointment with cadmia.

2. Honey, either mixed with lentils, or with horehound, or with olive leaves previously boiled with wine, arrests the extension of gangrene from spreading, and is a mild corrosive. Also melilot boiled in hydromel, then bruised, or lime with cerate, or bitter almonds with garlick, but only one-third part of the latter, to which

habet spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . vi. cornu bubuli combusti p.  $\times$ . xii. olei myrtei, et vini cyathos ternos : aut quod ex his constat : floris Punici mali, atramentsutorii, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. aluminis scissilis, thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. gallæ p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . x. Vehementius idem facit, etiam adurendo, auripigmentum cum chalcitide, et aut nitro, aut calce, aut charta combusta : item sal cum aceto : vel ea compositio, quæ habet chalcitidis, capitulorum Punici mali, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. aluminis scissilis, thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. gallæ p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . x. mellis quantum satis sit ad ea cogenda : vel cantharides  $\times$ . i. sulphuris p.  $\times$ . i. lolii p.  $\times$ . iii. quibus adjicitur picis liquidæ quantum satis est ad jungendum : vel chalcitis quoque cum resina et ruta mista : aut cum eadem resina diphryges : aut uva taminia cum pice liquida. Idem vero possunt et fæces vini combustæ, et calcis et nitri pares portiones : vel aluminis scissilis p.  $\times$ . = =. thuris, sandarachæ, nitri, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. gallæ p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . x. mellis quantum satis est.

3. Est etiam Heræ compositio, quæ habet myrrhæ, chalcitidis, singulo-

## ORDO.

spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . vi. combusti cornu bubuli p.  $\times$ . xii. myrtei olei, et vini ternos cyathos : aut quod constat ex his : floris Punici mali, sutorii atramenti, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. scissilis aluminis, thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. gallæ p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . x. Etiam auripigmentum cum chalcitide, et aut (mista cum) nitro, aut calce, aut combusta charta facit idem vehementius, adurendo : item sal cum aceto : vel ea compositio, quæ habet chalcitidis, capitulorum Punici mali, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. scissilis aluminis, thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. gallæ p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . x. (et) quantum satis sit mellis ad cogenda ea : vel cantharides  $\times$ . i. sulphuris p.  $\times$ . i. lolii p.  $\times$ . iii. quibus adjicitur liquidæ picis quantum est satis ad jungendum. Vel quoque chalcitis mixta cum resina et ruta ; aut diphryges (mixta) cum eadem resina ; aut taminia uva cum liquida pice. Vero combustæ fæces vini, et pares portiones calcis et nitri, possunt (efficere) idem : vel scissilis aluminis p.  $\times$ . = =. thuris, sandarachæ, nitri, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. gallæ p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochiæ p.  $\times$ . x. mellis quantum est satis.

3. Est etiam compositio Heræ, quæ habet myrrhæ, chalcitidis,

## TRANSLATION.

a little saffron may be added. Or that which is composed of litharge p.  $\times$ . vi. burned ox-horn p.  $\times$ . xii. of myrtle oil and wine, three glassfuls. Or that which consists of the following : flowers of pomegranate, sulphate of copper, aloes, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of scissile alum, frankincense, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. of nut galls p.  $\times$ . viii. of aristolochy p.  $\times$ . x. Also orpiment with chalcitis, or either with nitre, or lime, or with burned paper has the same effect. Also salt and vinegar. Or that which consists of chalcitis, pomegranate tops, aloes, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. scissile alum, frankincense, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. nut galls, p.  $\times$ . viii. aristolochy p.  $\times$ . x. of honey, as much as may be sufficient to incorporate them. Or of cantharides,  $\times$  sulphur, of each p.  $\times$ . i. darnel p.  $\times$ . iii. to which as much liquid pitch is to be added as may be requisite to unite them. Or even chalcitis mixed with resin and rue ; or diphryges mixed with the same resin ; or staphisagria mixed with liquid pitch. But burnt wine lees, with equal portions of lime and nitre, have the same effect. Or scissile alum p.  $\times$ . = =. of frankincense, sandarach, nitre, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of nut galls p.  $\times$ . viii. of aristolochy p.  $\times$ . x. of honey as much as may be sufficient.

3. There is another composition of Hera, which consists of myrrh, chalcitis, of each

rum p. ℥. ii. aloes, thuris, aluminis scissilis, singulorum p. ℥. iv. aristolochiæ, gallæ immaturæ, singulorum p. ℥. viii. malicorii contriti p. ℥. x.

4. Est Judæi, in qua sunt calcis partes duæ, nitri quam ruberrimi pars tertia: quæ urina impuberis pueri coguntur, donec strigmenti crassitudo sit. Sed subinde is locus, cui id illinitur, madefaciendus est.

5. At Jollas, chartæ combustæ, sandarachæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. calcis p. ℥. ii. auripigmenti tantumdem miscebat.

6. Si vero ex membrana, quæ super cerebrum est, profluit sanguis, vitellus combustus et contritus inspergi debet: si alio loco sanguinis profluvium est, auripigmenti, squamæ æris, singulorum p. ℥. i. sandarachæ p. ℥. ii. marmoris cocti p. ℥. iv. inspergi debet. Eadem cancro quoque obsistunt. Ad inducendam cicatricem, squamæ æris, thuris fuliginis, singulorum p. ℥. ii. calcis p. ℥. iv. Eadem incrementem quoque carnem coercent.

7. Timæus autem ad ignem sacrum, et ad cancrum his utebatur: myrrhæ

## ORDO.

singulorum p. ℥. ii. aloes, thuris, scissilis aluminis, singulorum p. ℥. iv. aristolochiæ, immaturæ gallæ, singulorum p. ℥. viii. contriti malicorii p. ℥. x.

4. Est (etiam compositio) Judæi, in qua sunt duæ partes calcis, tertia pars nitri quam ruberrimi, quæ coguntur urina pueri impuberis donec sit crassitudo strigmenti. Sed is locus, cui id illinitur, est subinde madefaciendus.

5. At Jollas miscebat combustæ chartæ, sandarachæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. calcis p. ℥. ii. auripigmenti tantumdem.

6. Vero si sanguis profluit ex membrana quæ est super cerebrum, combustus et contritus vitellus debet inspergi. Si est profluvium sanguinis ex alio loco, auripigmenti, squamæ æris, singulorum p. ℥. i. sandarachæ p. ℥. ii. cocti marmoris p. ℥. iv. debent inspergi. Eadem quoque obsistunt cancro. Ad cicatricem inducendam, squamæ æris, fuliginis thuris, singulorum p. ℥. ii. calcis p. ℥. iv. Eadem quoque coercent incrementem carnem.

7. Autem Timæus utebatur his ad sacrum ignem (Erysipelas) et

## TRANSLATION.

p. ℥. ii. of aloes, frankincense, scissile alum, of each p. ℥. iv. of aristolochy, unripe nut galls, of each p. ℥. viii. bruised pomegranate rind p. ℥. x.

4. There is another of Judæus, in which there are two parts of lime, a third part of the reddest nitre, which are to be united with the urine of a boy under the age of puberty, until it becomes of the consistence of strigment. But that on which it is to be applied should be occasionally moistened.

5. But Jollas mixed of burned paper, of sandarach, of each p. ℥. i. of lime p. ℥. ii. of orpiment the like quantity.

6. If there be a hæmorrhage from that membrane which envelopes the brain, the burned and powdered yolk of an egg ought to be sprinkled on it. If the discharge proceed from any other part, then orpiment, scales of copper, of each p. ℥. i. of sandarach p. ℥. ii. of calcined marble p. ℥. iv. ought to be sprinkled on it. The same remedies also have a good effect in opposing the progress of cancer. To induce cicatrization of a wound, take of scales of copper, soot of frankincense, of each p. ℥. ii. of lime p. ℥. iv. The same composition is also proper to repress fungous flesh.

7. Timæus, employed the following composition in the Ignis Sacer (41) and in



p.  $\times$ . II. thuris, atramenti sutorii, singulorum p.  $\times$ . III. sandarachæ, auripigmenti, squamæ æris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . IV. gallæ p.  $\times$ . VI. cerussæ combustæ p.  $\times$ . VIII. Ea vel arida inspersa, vel melle excepta idem præstant.

8. Sternutamenta vero vel albo veratro, vel struthio coniecto in nares excitantur, vel his mixtis: piperis, veratri albi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . =. castorei p.  $\times$ . I. spumæ nitri p.  $\times$ . I. struthii p.  $\times$ . IV.

9. Gargarizationes autem aut lævandi causa fiunt, aut reprimendi, aut evocandi. Lævant, lac, cremor vel ptisanæ, vel furfurum: reprimunt aqua, in qua vel lenticula, vel rosa, vel rubus, vel cotoneum malum, vel palmulæ decoctæ sunt: evocant, sinapi, piper.

## ORDO.

ad cancerum: myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . II. thuris, atramenti sutorii (Sulphatis cupri) singulorum p.  $\times$ . III. sandarachæ, auripigmenti, squamæ æris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . IV. gallæ p.  $\times$ . VI. combustæ cerussæ p.  $\times$ . VIII. Ea vel inspersa arida, vel excepta melle, præstant idem.

8. Vero sternutamenta excitantur vel albo veratro, vel struthio coniecto in nares, vel his mixtis: piperis, albi veratri, singulorum p.  $\times$ . =. castorei p.  $\times$ . I. spumæ nitri p.  $\times$ . I. struthii p.  $\times$ . IV.

9. Antem gargarizationes fiunt aut causa lævandi, aut reprimendi, aut evocandi (humores). Lac, cremor vel ptisanæ vel furfurum lævant. Aqua in vel lenticula, vel rosa, vel rubus, vel cotoneum malum, vel palmulæ decoctæ sint, reprimunt. Sinapi, piper, evocant.

## TRANSLATION.

cancer: of myrrh p.  $\times$ . II. of frankincense, copperas, of each p.  $\times$ . III. sandarach, orpiment, scales of copper, of each p.  $\times$ . IV. of nut galls p.  $\times$ . VI. of calcined ceruse, p.  $\times$ . VIII. These either sprinkled on dry, or mixed with honey, afford the same result.

8. But sneezings are either produced by white hellebore, or struthium being drawn into the nares, or by being mixed with white hellebore, and pepper, of each p. =. castor p.  $\times$ . I. spume of nitre p.  $\times$ . I. struthium p.  $\times$ . IV.

9. Gargarisms are used either to alleviate, repress, or facilitate the evacuation of the humours. Therefore, a soothing gargle is composed of milk, or of the cream of ptisan, or of bran. An astringent is made either of a decoction of lentils, or of roses, or brambles, or quinces, or dates. Mustard and pepper are evacuants.

## CAP. XXIII.

DE ANTIDOTIS, ET QUIBUS MALIS  
OPITULENTUR.

1. ANTIDOTA raro, sed præcipue interdum necessaria sunt, quia gravissimis casibus opitulatur. Ea recte quidem dantur collisis corporibus vel per ictus, vel ubi ex alto deciderunt, vel in viscerum, laterum, faucium, interiorumque partium doloribus: maxime autem desideranda sunt adversus venena, vel per morsus, vel per cibos, aut potiones nostris corporibus inserta.

Unum est, quod habet lacrimæ papaveris p. x. = =. acori, malobathri, p. x. v. iridis Illyricæ, gummi, singulorum p. x. ii. anisi p. x. iii. nardi Gallici, foliorum rosæ aridorum, cardamomi, singulorum p. x. iv. petrosellini p. x. iv. = =. trifolii p. x. v. casiae nigrae, silis, bdellii, balsami seminis, piperis albi, singulorum p. x. v. = =. styracis p. x. v. = =. myrrhæ, opopanax, nardi Syri, thuris

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIII.

DE ANTIDOTIS, ET QUIBUS MALIS  
OPITULENTUR.

1. ANTIDOTA sunt raro, sed interdum præcipue necessaria, quia opitulatur gravissimis casibus. Ea dantur recte quidem corporibus collisis, vel per ictus, vel ubi deciderunt ex alto (loco), vel in doloribus viscerum, laterum, faucium que interiorum partium. Autem sunt maxime desideranda adversus venena inserta nostris corporibus vel per morsus, vel per cibos, aut potiones.

Est unum (antidotum) quod habet lacrimæ papaveris p. x. = =. acori, malobathri p. x. v. Illyricæ iridis, gummi, singulorum p. x. ii. anisi p. x. iii. Gallici nardi, aridorum foliorum rosæ, cardamomi, singulorum p. x. iv. petrosellini p. x. iv. = =. trifolii p. x. v. nigrae casiae, silis bdellii, seminis balsami, albi piperis singulorum p. x. v. = =. styracis p. x. v. = =. myrrhæ, opopanax, Syri nardi, masculi

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIII.

OF ANTIDOTES, AND THE DISEASES IN WHICH THEY ARE  
APPLICABLE.

1. ANTIDOTES, though seldom required, are sometimes particularly necessary, because they are the remedial agents in the most dangerous cases. They may be properly given when a person has been precipitated from some height, or bruised by blows, or in pains of the viscera, sides, fauces, or internal parts. But their principal use is against poisons introduced into our bodies, either by bites, or being received with our food or drink.

There is one antidote consisting of poppy tears p. x. = =. sweet flag, malobathrum (42) p. x. v. of Illyrian iris, of gum, of each p. x. ii. anise p. x. iii. Gallic nard, dry rose leaves, cardamoms, of each p. x. iv. parsley p. x. iv. = =. trefoil p. x. v. black cassia, sil (43), bdellium, balsam seed, white pepper, of each p. x. v. = =. storax p. x. v. = =. myrrh, opopanax, Syria nard, male frankincense.

masculi, hypocistidis succi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . vi. castorei p.  $\times$ . vi. costi, piperis albi, galbani, resinæ terebinthinæ, croci, floris junci rotundi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . vi. = =. dulcis radicis p.  $\times$ . viii. = =. quæ vel melle vel passo excipiuntur.

2. Alterum, quod Zopyrus regi Ptolemæo dicitur composuisse, atque Ambrosiam nominasse, ex his constat: costi, thuris masculi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . v. piperis albi p.  $\times$ . =. floris junci rotundi p.  $\times$ . ii. cinnamomi p.  $\times$ . iii. casiae nigræ p.  $\times$ . iv. croci Cilicii p.  $\times$ . iv. z. =. myrrhæ, quam *στακτὴν* nominant p.  $\times$ . v. nardi Indici p.  $\times$ . v. =. quæ singula contrita melle cocto excipiuntur; deinde, ubi utendum est, id, quod Ægyptiæ fabæ magnitudinem impleat, in potione vini diluitur.

3. Nobilissimum autem est Mithridatis, quod quotidie sumendo rex ille dicitur adversus venenorum pericula tutum corpus suum reddidisse: in quo hæc sunt: costi p.  $\times$ . z. =. acori p.  $\times$ . v. hyperici, gummi, sagapeni, acaciæ succi, iridis Illyricæ, cardamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. anisi p.  $\times$ . iii. nardi Gallici, gentianæ radicis, aridorum rosæ foliorum, singulorum p.  $\times$ .

## ORDO.

thuris, succi hypocistidis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . vi. castorei p.  $\times$ . vi. costi, albi piperis, galbani, resinæ terebinthinæ, croci, floris rotundi junci, singulorum p.  $\times$ . vi. = =. dulcis radicis p.  $\times$ . viii. = =. quæ excipiuntur vel melle vel passo.

2. Alterum quod Zopyrus dicitur composuisse regi Ptolemæo, atque nominasse Ambrosiam, constat ex his: costi, masculi thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . v. albi piperis p.  $\times$ . =. floris rotundi junci p.  $\times$ . ii. cinnamomi p.  $\times$ . iii. nigræ casiae p.  $\times$ . iv. Cilicii croci p.  $\times$ . iv. z. =. myrrhæ quam nominant *στακτὴν* (stakten) p.  $\times$ . v. Indici nardi p.  $\times$ . v. =. quæ singula contrita excipiuntur cocto melle: deinde ubi est ulendum, id quod impleat magnitudinem Ægyptiæ fabæ diluitur in potione vini.

3. Autem nobilissimum (antidotum) est Mithridatis, sumendo quod quotidie ille rex dicitur reddidisse suum corpus tutum adversus pericula venenorum. In quo sunt hæc: costi p.  $\times$ . z. =. acori p.  $\times$ . v. hyperici, gummi, sagapeni, succi acaciæ, Illyricæ iridis, cardamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. anisi p.  $\times$ . iii. Gallici nardi, gentianæ radicis, aridorum foliorum rosæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv.

## TRANSLATION.

the juice of hypocistis (44), of each p.  $\times$ . vi. castor p.  $\times$ . vi, costum, white pepper, galbanum, turpentine resin, saffron, flower of the round cyderus, of each p.  $\times$ . vi. = =. sweet liquorice root p.  $\times$ . viii. = =. which are to be incorporated either with honey, or with raisin wine.

2. Another antidote, which Zopyrus is said to have compounded for King Ptolemy, and named it Ambrosia, consists of the following things: of costum, male frankincense, of each p.  $\times$ . v. of white pepper p.  $\times$ . = =. the flowers of round cyperus p.  $\times$ . ii. cinnamon p.  $\times$ . iii. black cassia p.  $\times$ . iv. Cicilian saffron p.  $\times$ . iv. =. myrrh, which they call stacte (45) p.  $\times$ . v. of Indian nard p.  $\times$ . =. which being bruised separately, are to be mixed with boiled honey; when it is to be used, that which may equal the size of an Ægyptian bean is to be diluted in a draught of wine.

3. But the most celebrated antidote is that of Mithridates; by taking which every day, that king is said to have rendered his body proof against the dangers of poisons. It is composed of the following ingredients: costum p.  $\times$ . s. =. of acorum p.  $\times$ . v. of hypericon, gum, sagapenum, agacia juice, Illyrian iris, cardamom, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of anise p.  $\times$ . iii. Gallic nard, Gentian root, dry rose leaves,



iv. papaveris lacrimæ, petroselini, singulorum p. ℥. iv. =. casia, silis, polii, piperis longi, singulorum p. ℥. vi. stryacis p. ℥. v. =. castorei, thuris, hypocistidis succi, myrrhæ, opopanax, singulorum p. ℥. vi. malobathri folii p. ℥. vi. floris junci rotundi, resinae terebinthinæ, galbani, dauci Cretici seminis, singulorum p. ℥. vi. =. nardi, opobalsami, singulorum p. ℥. vi. =. thlaspi p. ℥. v. =. radice Ponticæ p. ℥. vii. croci, zingiberis, cinnamomi, singulorum p. ℥. viii. Hæc contrita melle excipiuntur, et adversus venenum, quod magnitudinem nucis Græcæ impleat, ex vino datur: in ceteris autem affectibus corporis pro modo eorum, vel quod Ægyptiæ fabæ, vel quod ervi magnitudinem impleat, satis est.

## ORDO.

lacrimæ papaveris, petroselini, singulorum p. ℥. iv. =. casia, silis, lolii, longi piperis, singulorum p. ℥. vi. styracis p. ℥. v. =. castorei, thuris, succi hypocistidis. myrrhæ, opopanax, singulorum p. ℥. vi. folii malobathri p. ℥. vi. floris rotundi junci, resinae terebinthinæ, galbani, seminis danci Cretici, singulorum p. ℥. vi. =. nardi, opobalsamum, singulorum p. ℥. =. thlasis p. ℥. v. =. Ponticæ radice p. ℥. vii. croci, zingiberis, cinnamomi, singulorum p. ℥. viii. Hæc contrita excipiuntur melle, et quod impleat magnitudinem Græcæ nucis, datur ex vino, adversus venenum. Autem in ceteris affectibus corporis, pro modo eorum, vel quod impleat magnitudinem Ægyptiæ fabæ, vel quod ervi, est satis.

## TRANSLATION.

of each p. ℥. iv. poppy, parsley, of each p. ℥. iv. =. of cassia, silis, darnel, long pepper, of each p. ℥. vi. storax p. ℥. v. =. of castor, frankincense, juice of the hypocistis, myrrh, opopanax, of each p. ℥. vi. leaves of the malobathrum p. ℥. vi. flowers of the round cyperus, turpentine resin, galbanum, seed of the wild Cretan carrot, of each p. x. vi. =. hard, opobalsam, of each p. ℥. vi. =. thlasi (46), p. ℥. v. =. Pontic root (47) p. ℥. vii. of saffron, ginger, cinnamon, of each p. ℥. viii. These being bruised are to be combined with honey, and the size of a sweet almond is to be given as an antidote against poison, in a glass of wine. But in other affections of the body, the size of an Egyptian bean, or vetch, may be sufficient, according to the virulence of the disease.

## CAP. XXIV.

## DE ACOPIS.

1. ACOPA quoque utilia nervis sunt: quale est, quod habet floris junci rotundi p.  $\times$ . II. = =. costi, junci quadrati, lauri baccarum, ammoniaci, cardamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . IV. =. myrrhæ, æris combusti, singulorum p.  $\times$ . VII. iridis Illyricæ, ceræ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XIV. Alexandrini calami, junci rotundi, aspalathi, xylobalsami, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XXVIII. sevi p. I. unguenti irini cyathum.

2. Alterum, quod  $\epsilon\nu\omega\delta\epsilon\varsigma$  vocant, hoc modo fit: ceræ p. =. olei tantumdem, resinæ terebinthinæ ad nucis juglandis magnitudinem, simul incoquantur; deinde in mortario teruntur, instillaturque subinde quam optimi mellis acetabulum, tum irini unguenti, et rosæ terni cyathi.

3.  $\epsilon\chi\chi\rho\iota\sigma\tau\alpha$  autem Græci vocant liquida, quæ illinuntur: quale est, quod fit ad ulcera purganda et implenda, maxime inter nervos. Paribus por-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIV.

## DE ACOPIS.

ACOPA quoque sunt utilia nervis. Quale est quod habet floris rotundi junci p.  $\times$ . = =. costi, quadrati junci, baccarum lauri, ammoniaci cardamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . IV. =. myrrhæ, combustæ æris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . VII. Illyricæ iridis, ceræ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XIV. Alexandrini calami, rotundi junci, aspalathi, xylobalsami, singulorum p.  $\times$ . XXVIII. sevi p.  $\times$ . I. unguenti irini cyathum.

2. Alterum (acopum) quod vocant  $\epsilon\nu\omega\delta\epsilon\varsigma$  (enodes), fit hoc modo. Ceræ p. =. olei tantumdem, resinæ terebinthinæ ad magnitudinem nucis juglandis, incoquantur simul: deinde teruntur in mortario, que acetabulum mellis quam optimi subinde instillatur, tum terni cyathi unguenti irini, et rosæ.

3. Autem Græci vocant liquida (compositiones) quæ illinuntur  $\epsilon\chi\chi\rho\iota\sigma\tau\alpha$  (enchrista). Quale est quod fit ad ulcera purganda et implenda, maxime inter nervos,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIV.

## OF ACOPA.

1. ACOPA (48) are useful medicines for the nerves. Such is that which contains the flowers of the round Cyperus p.  $\times$ . II. = =. costum, square Cyperus, bay berries, ammoniacum, cardamoms, of each p.  $\times$ . =. myrrh, calcined copper, of each p.  $\times$ . VIII. Illyrican iris, wax, of each p.  $\times$ . XIV. Alexandrian reed, round Cyperus, aspalathus (49), balsam wood, of each p.  $\times$ . XXVIII. of suet p.  $\times$ . I. iris ointment a glassful.

2. There is another which they call Euodes, (*odoriferous*), composed in this manner. Wax, p. =. of oil just as much, and of turpentine resin the size of a walnut; these are to be boiled together; afterwards bruised in a mortar, and a cupful of the best honey gradually added; then three cups of rose oil and iris ointment.

3. But the Greeks call those liquid applications which are anointed on the body enehrista. Such as that which is made for cleaning and incarnating ulcers, espe-

tionibus inter se mistis, butyri, medullæ vitulinæ, sevi vitulini, adipis anserinæ, ceræ, mellis, resinæ terebinthinæ, rosæ, olei cicini: quæ separatim omnia liquantur, deinde liquida miscentur, et tum simul teruntur. Et hoc quidem magis purgat: magis vero emollit, si pro rosa cyprus infunditur.

4. Ad sacrum ignem: spumæ argenti p. ℥. vi. cornu bubuli combusti p. ℥. ii. conteruntur, adjiciturque invicem vinum, et id, quod specialiter sic vocatur, et myrteum, donec utriusque terni cyathi conficiantur.

## ORDO.

paribus portionibus butyri, medullæ vitulinæ, sevi vitulini, adipis anserinæ, ceræ, mellis, resinæ terebinthinæ, rosæ, olei cicini, mixtis inter se, omnia quæ liquantur separatim, deinde miscentur liquida, et tum terentur simul. Et hoc quidem purgat magis: vero emollit magis, si cyprus infunditur pro rosa.

4. Ad sacrum ignem (Erysipelas) spumæ argenti p. ℥. vi. combusti cornu bubuli p. ℥. ii. conteruntur, que vinum et id quod specialiter vocatur sic, et (vinum) myrteum adjicitur invicem, donec terni cyathi utriusque conficiantur.

## TRANSLATION.

cially among the tendons. It consists of equal portions of butter, veal marrow, veal suet, goose grease, wax, honey, turpentine resin, rose oil, castor oil; these being dissolved separately, and mixed while liquid, and afterwards beat up together. Indeed this is a detergent composition; but it would be more emollient, if Cyprus oil, instead of rose be poured in.

4. For the Ignis Sacer we employ litharge p. ℥. vi. burnt bullock's horn p. ℥. ii. These are to be bruised together, and to pour in alternately the ordinary wine so called, and that of myrtle, three cups of each until they are united.

## CAP. XXV.

## DE CATAPOTIIS.

1. CATAPOTIA quoque multa sunt, variisque de causis fiunt. Ἀνώδυνα vocant, quæ somno dolorum levant: quibus uti, nisi nimia necessitas urget,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXV.

## DE CATAPOTIIS.

SUNT multa catapotia quoque, que fiunt de variis causis. Vocant illa anodyna quæ levat dolorem somno: uti quibus, nisi nimia necessitas urget, est alienum: enim

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXV.

## OF CATAPOTIA.

1. There are also many kinds of Catapotia (50), composed for various occasions. The Greeks call those Anodyne, which relieve pain by inducing sleep; the use of which are pernicious unless there be great necessity. They are composed of



alienum est. Sunt enim ex vehementibus medicamentis, et stomacho alienis. Prodest tamen etiam ad concoquendum, quod habet papaveris lacrimæ, galbani, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. myrrhæ, castorei, piperis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. ex quibus, quod ervi magnitudinem habet, satis est devorasse.

2. Alterum, stomacho pejus, ad somnum valentius, ex his fit: mandragoræ p.  $\times$ . i. =. apii seminis, item hyoseyami seminis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. quæ ex vino teruntur. Unum autem ejusdem magnitudinis, quæ supra posita est, abunde est sumpsisse.

3. Sive autem capitis dolores, sive ulcera, sive lippitudo, sive dentes, sive spiritus difficultas, sive intestinorum tormenta, sive inflammatio vulvæ est, sive coxa, sive jecur, aut lienis, aut latus torquet, sive vitio locorum aliqua prolabitur et obmutescit, occurrit dolori per quietem ejusmodi catapotium. Silis, acori, rutæ silvestris seminis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. castorei, cinnamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. papaveris lacrimæ, panacis radicis, mandragoræ malorum aridorum, junci rotundi floris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iii. piperis grana lvi. Hæc per se contrita, rursus instillato subinde passo si-

## ORDO.

sunt (fiunt) ex medicamentis (et) vehementibus et alienis stomacho. Tamen (est unum) etiam prodest ad concoquendum, quod habet lacrimæ papaveris, galbani, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. myrrhæ, castorei, piperis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. Ex quibus, est satis devorasse quod habet magnitudinem ervi.

2. Alterum, (qui est) pejus stomacho, (sed) valentius ad somnum, fit ex his, mandragoræ p.  $\times$ . i. =. seminis apii, item seminis hyoseyami, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. quæ teruntur ex vino. Autem est abunde sumpsisse unum ejusdem magnitudinis, quæ est posita supra.

3. Autem sive dolores capitis, sive ulcera, sive lippitudo, sive dentes, sive difficultas spiritus, sive tormenta intestinorum, sive est inflammatio vulvæ, sive coxa, sive jecur, aut lienis, aut latus torquet, sive aliqua prolabitur et obmutescit, vitio locorum, catapotium ejusmodi occurrit dolori per quietem. Silis, acori, seminis silvestris rutæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. castorei, cinnamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. lacrimæ papaveris, radicis panacis, aridorum malorum mandragoræ, floris rotundi junci, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iii. grana piperis lvi. Hæc contrita per se, omnia teruntur rursus simul, passo instillato sub-

## TRANSLATION.

powerful ingredients, consequently injurious to the stomach. There is one, however, which facilitates digestion, and consists of the following ingredients; poppy-tears, galbanum, of each p.  $\times$ . i. myrrh, castor, and pepper, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of which, the size of a lentil is sufficient to be taken.

2. There is another more baneful to the stomach, but better calculated to procure sleep composed of mandrake p.  $\times$ . i. =. parsley seed, henbane seed, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. These are to be bruised with wine. One of the size above-mentioned, is sufficient to be taken.

3. If there be pains of the head, or ulcers, or lippitudo, or tooth-ache, or difficulty of breathing, or tormina of the intestines, or if there be inflammation of the womb, or hip joint, or of the liver, or spleen, or side, if a woman should fall down, and become insensible from some affection of the uterine system, a pill of this kind mitigates the pain by procuring sleep:

Take of sil, acorum, seeds of wild rue, of each p.  $\times$ . i. castor, cinnamon, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. poppy tears, root of panaces, dry mandrake apples, flowers of the round cyperus, of each p.  $\times$ . iii. fifty-six pepper corns. These being bruised separately, they are to be triturated again with raisin wine gradually dropped in until they

mul omnia teruntur, donec crassitudo sordium fiat. Ex eo paulum aut devoratur, aut aqua diluitur, et potui datur.

4. Quin etiam silvestris papaveris, cum jam ad excipiendam lacrimam maturum est, qui manu comprehendi potest, in vas demittitur, et superinfunditur aqua, quæ id contegat, atque ita coquitur. Ubi jam bene manipulus is coctus est, ibidem expressus projicitur, et cum eo humore passum pari mensura miscetur, infervetque, donec crassitudinem sordium habeat. Cum infrixit, catapotia ex eo fiunt, ad nostræ fabæ magnitudinem, habentque usum multiplicem. Nam et somnum faciunt, vel per se assumpta, vel ex aqua data: et aurium dolores levant, adjectis exiguo modo rutæ succo, ac passo: et tormina supprimunt ex vino liquata: et inflammationem vulvæ coercent, mista cerato ex rosa facto, cum paulum his croci quoque accessit: et ex aqua fronti inducta, pituitam in oculos decurrentem tenent.

5. Item, si vulva dolens somnum prohibet: croci p. x. = =. anisi, myrrhæ, singulorum p. x. i. papaveris lacrimæ p. x. iii. cicutæ seminis p. x.

#### ORDO.

inde, donec fiat crassitudo sordium. Ant paulum ex eo devoratur aut diluitur aqua, et datur potui.

4. Quin etiam silvestris papaveris qui potest comprehendi in manu, cum jam est maturum ad excipiendam lacrimam, demittitur in vas, et aqua superinfunditur, quæ contegat id, atque ita coquitur. Ubi is manipulus est jam bene coctus, expressus, projicitur ibidem, et passum miscetur cum eo humore pari mensura, que infervet, donec habet crassitudinem sordium. Cum infrixit, catapotia fiunt ex eo, ad magnitudinem nostræ fabæ, que habent multiplicem usum. Nam et faciunt somnum, vel assumpta per se, vel data ex aqua: et levant dolores aurium, succo rutæ, ac passo adjectis exiguo modo: et supprimunt tormina liquata ex vino: et coercent inflammationem vulvæ, mista cerato facto ex rosa, quoque paulum croci accessit his: et inducta fronti ex aqua, tenent pituitam decurrentem oculos.

5. Item, si vulva dolens prohibet somnum: croci p. = =. anisi, myrrhæ, singulorum p. x. i. lacrimæ papaveris p. x. iii. seminis cicutæ p. x. viii. miscen-

#### TRANSLATION.

become of the consistence of sordes. Of this a small portion is to be swallowed or diluted in a draught of water.

4. There is also another composed of the wild poppy, when it is sufficiently ripe for the tears to be collected; thus, take a handful (51), let them be put into a vessel, water poured in sufficient to cover them, and in this manner boiled. When this has boiled sufficiently, press out the liquor, cast the poppy heads away, and to this strained decoction add an equal quantity of dry raisin wine, boil again, until it becomes of the consistence of sordes. When cold, pills are to be made of it, to the size of our bean, and they are of very extensive use. For they procure sleep, either by themselves, or given with water: they alleviate pains of the ears, by adding a moderate portion of raisin wine and the juice of rue: and being dissolved in a little wine, they arrest the progress of dysentery; they also check an inflammation of the womb, by being mixed with a little rose cerate, with the addition of a little saffron: a small portion being dissolved in water, and applied to the forehead, stops the current of pituitous humour to the eyes.

5. Again, if a pain in the womb prohibit sleep: take of saffron p. x. = =. anise, myrrh, of each p. x. i. poppy tears p. x. iii. hemlock seed p. x. viii. let these

VIII. miscentur, excipiunturque vino vetere, et, quod lupini magnitudinem habet, in tribus cyathis aquæ diluitur. Id tamen in febre periculose datur.

6. Ad sanandum jecur: nitri p. ℥. =. croci, myrrhæ, nardi Gallici, singulorum p. ℥. i. melle excipiuntur, daturque, quod Ægyptiæ fabæ magnitudinem habeat.

7. Ad lateris dolores finiendos: piperis, aristolochiæ, nardi, myrrhæ pares portiones.

8. Ad thoracis: nardi p. ℥. i. thuris, casiæ, singulorum p. ℥. iii. myrrhæ, cinnamomi, singulorum p. ℥. vi. croci p. ℥. viii. resinæ terebinthinæ quadrans, mellis heminæ tres.

9. Ad tussim, Athenionis: myrrhæ, piperis, singulorum p. ℥. i. castorei, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. quæ separatim contusa postea junguntur, et ad magnitudinem fabæ nostræ, bina catapotia mane, bina noctu dormituro dantur.

10. Si tussis somnum prohibet, ad utrumque Heraclidis Tarentini: croci p. ℥. =. myrrhæ, piperis longi, costi, galbani, singulorum p. ℥. =. cinna-

## ORDO.

tur, que excipiuntur vetere vino, et, quod habet magnitudinem lupini, diluitur in tribus cyathis aquæ. Tamen id datur periculose in febre.

6. Ad sanandum jecur: nitri p. ℥. =. croci, myrrhæ, Gallici nardi, singulorum p. ℥. i. excipiuntur melle, que, quod habeat magnitudinem Ægyptiæ fabæ, datur.

7. Ad finiendos dolores lateris: pares portiones piperis, aristolochiæ, nardi, myrrhæ.

8. Ad (dolores) thoracis: nardi p. ℥. i. thuris, casiæ, singulorum p. ℥. iii. myrrhæ, cinnamomi, singulorum p. ℥. vi. croci p. ℥. viii. terebinthinæ resinæ quadrans, tres heminæ mellis.

9. (Catapotia) Athenionis (pro-sunt) ad tussim: myrrhæ, piperis, singulorum p. ℥. i. castorei, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum, p. ℥. i. quæ contusa separatim, postea junguntur, et ad magnitudinem nostræ fabæ, bina catapotia dantur mane, bina (dantur) noctu dormituro.

10. (Catapotia) Heraclidis Tarentini (sunt apta) ad utrumque, si tussis prohibet somnum: croci p. ℥. =. myrrhæ, longi piperis, costi, galbani, singulorum p. ℥. =,

## TRANSLATION.

be mixed together and incorporated with old wine, and the size of a lupin dissolved in three glassfuls of water to be given. It would be dangerous however to give these pills in fever.

6. In affections of the liver: take of nitre p. ℥. =. saffron, myrrh, Gallic nard, of each p. ℥. i. These are to be incorporated with honey, and the size of an Ægyptian bean given for a dose.

7. For alleviating pains of the side, take of pepper, aristolochy, nard, and myrrh, equal parts.

8. For pains in the chest: take of nard p. ℥. i. frankincense, cassia, of each p. ℥. iii. myrrh, cinnamon, of each p. ℥. vi. saffron p. ℥. viii. turpentine resin a quadrans, of honey three heminæ.

9. Athenion's pills for a cough: take of myrrh, pepper, of each p. ℥. i. castor, poppy tears, of each p. ℥. i. These being bruised separately, and afterwards mixed, two pills, not exceeding the size of our bean, are to be given in the morning, and two when the patient is going to sleep at night.

10. If the cough prevent sleep, that catapotia of Heraclides of Tarentum is calculated to mitigate both these complaints: it is composed of saffron p. ℥. =.



momii, castorei, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i.

11. Quod si purganda ulcera in faucibus tussientibus sunt, panacis, myrrhæ, resinæ terebinthinæ, singulorum p. uncia, galbani p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . =. hyssopi p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . =. conterenda sunt, hisque hemina mellis adjicienda, et quod digito excipi potest, devorandum est.

12. Colice vero Cassii ex his constat: croci, anisi, castorei, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iii. petroselini p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. piperis et longi et rotundi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . v. papaveris lacrimæ, junci rotundi, myrrhæ, nardi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . vi. quæ melle excipiuntur. Id autem et devorari potest, et ex aqua calida sumi.

13. Infantem vero mortuum, aut secundas expellit aquæ potio, cui salis ammoniaci p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. aut cui dictamni Cretici p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. adjectum est.

14. Ex partu laboranti erysimum ex vino tepido jejunæ dari debet.

15. Vocem adjuvat thuris p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. in duobus cyathis vini datum.

16. Adversus urinæ difficultatem: piperis longi, castorei, myrrhæ, galbani, papaveris lacrimæ, croci, costi, un-

#### ORDO.

cinnamomi, castorei, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i.

11. Quod si sunt ulcera in tussientibus faucibus, (ad) purganda (ea) panacis, myrrhæ, terebinthinæ resinæ, singulorum p. uncia, galbani p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . =. hyssopi p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . =. sunt conterenda, que hemina mellis adjicienda his, et quod potest excipi digito, est devorandum.

12. Vero colice Cassii constat ex his: croci, anisi, castorei, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iii. petroselini p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. et longi et rotundi piperis, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . v. lacrimæ papaveris, rotundi junci, myrrhæ, nardi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . vi. quæ excipiuntur melle. Autem et id potest devorari, et sumi ex calida aqua.

13. Vero, potio aquæ, cui salis ammoniaci p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. aut cui Cretici dictamni p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. est adjectum, expulit mortuum infantem, aut secundas.

14. Erysimum ex tepido vino debet dari laboranti ex partu jejunæ.

15. Thuris p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. datum in duobus cyathis vini adjuvat vocem.

16. Adversus difficultatem urinæ: longi piperis, castorei, myrrhæ, galbani, lacrimæ papaveris,

#### TRANSLATION.

myrrh, long pepper, costum, galbanum, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . =. cinnamon, castor, and poppy tears, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i.

11. But as a detergent for ulcers in the fauces of persons labouring under cough, we take of panaces, myrrh, turpentine resin, of each p. an ounce, of galbanum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . =. hyssop p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . =. These are to be bruised, and a hemina of honey added. The dose is as much as may be taken up on the point of the finger.

12. The remedy of Cassius for colic consists of: saffron, anise, castor, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iii. of parsley p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. both round and long pepper, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . v. poppy tears, round cyperus, myrrh, nard, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . vi. these are to be incorporated with honey. It may be swallowed by itself, or taken with warm water.

13. But to facilitate the expulsion of a dead fœtus, or the secundines, a draught of water, to which is added sal ammoniac p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. or the dittany of Crete p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i.

14. In difficult parturition, erysimum ought to be given in tepid wine when the patient is fasting.

15. The voice is strengthened by frankincense p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. given in two glassfuls of wine.

16. In a difficulty of voiding the urine: take of long pepper, castor, myrrh, galbanum, poppy tears, saffron, costum, an ounce of each, storax, turpentine, resin,

ciæ singulæ, styracis, resinæ terebinthinæ, pondo sextantes, mellis, absinthii, cyathi singuli: ex quibus ad magnitudinem fabæ Ægyptiæ et mane et cœnato dari debet.

17. Arteriacæ vero hoc modo fit: cassiæ, iridis, cinnamomi, nardi, myrrhæ, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. croci p. ℥. ii. =. piperis grana xxx. ex passi tribus sextariis decoquuntur, donec mellis crassitudo his fiat: aut croci, myrrhæ, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. conjiciuntur in passi eundem modum, eodemque modo decoquuntur: aut ejusdem passi heminæ tres usque eo coquuntur, donec extracta inde gutta indurescat; eo adjicitur tritæ cassiæ p. ℥. i.

## ORDO.

croci, costi, singulæ uncia, styracis, terebinthinæ resinæ, pondo sextantes, mellis, absinthii, singuli cyathi; ex quibus debet dari ad magnitudinem Ægyptii fabæ et mane et cœnato.

17. Vero arteriacæ fit hoc modo: cassiæ, iridis, cinnamomi, nardi, myrrhæ, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. croci p. ℥. i. =. piperis, xxx. grana. decoquuntur ex tribus sextariis passi, donec fiat crassitudo mellis his; aut croci, myrrhæ, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. conjiciuntur in eundem modum passi, que decoquuntur eodem modo: aut tres heminæ ejusdem passi coquuntur usque eo, donec gutta extracta inde, indurescat: tritæ cassiæ p. ℥. i. adjicitur eo.

## TRANSLATION.

of each a sextans, of honey, wormwood, of each a glass: of which the size of an Ægyptian bean may be given in the morning and after supper.

17. An arteriacæ (52) is made in this manner: take of cassia, iris, cinnamon, nard, myrrh, frankincense, of each p. ℥. i. saffron p. ℥. i. =. thirty pepper corns, to be boiled in three sextarii of raisin wine, until they are of the consistence of honey. Or of saffron, myrrh, frankincense, of each p. ℥. i. these are to be put into the like quantity of raisin wine, and boiled in the same manner: or three heminæ of the same raisin wine are boiled, until a drop, when withdrawn from it, may become firm: to this is added of bruised cassia p. ℥. i.

## CAP. XXVI.

DE QUINQUE GENERIBUS NOXARUM  
CORPORIS.

1. CUM facultates medicamentorum proposuerim, genera, in quibus noxa corpori est, proponam. Ea quinque sunt: cum quid extrinsecus læsit, ut in vulneribus; cum quid intra seipsum corruptum est, ut in cancro; cum quid innatum est, ut in vesica calculus; cum quid increvit, ut vena, quæ intumescens in varicem convertitur; cum quid deest, ut cum curta pars aliqua est. Ex his alia sunt, in quibus medicamenta, alia in quibus plus manus proficit. Ergo, dilatis iis, quæ præcipue scalpellum et manum postulant, nunc de iis dicam, quæ maxime medicamentis egent. Dividam autem hanc quoque curandi partem, sicut priorem; et ante dicam de iis, quæ in quamlibet partem corporis incident; tum de iis, quæ certas partes infestant. Incipiam a vulneribus.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVI.

DE QUINQUE GENERIBUS NOXARUM  
CORPORIS, ET PRIMO DE  
VULNERIBUS, QUÆ INFERUNTUR  
MAXIME PER TELA.

1. CUM proposuerim facultates medicamentorum, proponam genera in quibus est noxa corpori. Ea sunt quinque: cum quid læsit extrinsecus, ut in vulneribus; cum quid est corrupta intra seipsum, ut in cancro; cum quid est innatum, ut calculus in vesica; cum quid increvit, ut vena, quæ intumescens convertitur in varicem; cum quid deest, ut cum aliqua est curta. Sunt alia ex his, in quibus medicamenta (proficiunt), alia in quibus manus proficit plus. Ergo, dilatis eis, quæ præcipue postulant scalpellum et manum, nunc dicam de iis, quæ maxime egent medicamentis. Autem dividam quoque hanc partem curandi, sicut priorem; et dicam ante de iis quæ incident in quamlibet partem corporis: tum (dicam) de iis, quæ infestant certas partes. Incipiam a vulneribus.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVI.

OF FIVE DIFFERENT DISEASES INCIDENT TO THE BODY,  
THEIR SYMPTOMS AND TREATMENT.

1. SINCE I have treated of the properties of medicines, I shall now proceed to the various diseases which affect the body. These are of five kinds: when there is some external injury, as in wounds; when there is some part vitiated internally, as in cancer; when some extraneous substance has been produced in the body, such as a calculus in the bladder; when any part has become preternaturally enlarged; as a vein, when tumified, is termed varicose; and lastly, when there is a deficiency in any part, or malconformation. Some of these must be treated medicinally, others require manual operations. Therefore I shall defer for the present the consideration of those diseases, which more properly come under surgery, and proceed with those which are to be remedied principally by medicine. I shall divide this part also, as I did the former; and first treat of those diseases which happen in any part of the body generally: then of those which are local, or peculiar to certain parts. I shall begin with wounds.



In his autem ante omnia scire medicus debet, quæ insanabilia sint, quæ difficilem curationem habeant, quæ promptiorem. Est enim prudentis hominis, primum eum, qui servari non potest, non attingere, nec subire speciem ejus, ut occisi, quem sors ipsius interemit: deinde, ubi gravis metus sine certa tamen desperatione est, indicare necessariis periclitantis, in difficili rem esse; ne, si victa ars malo fuerit, vel ignorasse, vel fefellisse videatur. Sed ut hæc prudenti viro conveniunt; sic rursus histrionis est, parvam rem attollere, quo plus præstitisse videatur. Obligari æquum est confessione promptæ rei, quo curiosius etiam circumspiciat, ne, quod per se exiguum est, majus curantis negligentia fiat.

2. Sanari non potest, cui basis cerebri, cui cor, cui stomachus, cui jocinoris portæ, cui in spina medulla percussa est; cuique aut pulmo medius, aut jejunum, aut tenuius intestinum, aut ventriculus, aut renes vulnerati sunt; cuive circa fauces grandes venæ, vel arteriæ præcisæ sunt.

## ORDO.

Autem in his, medicus debet scire ante omnia, quæ sint insanabilia, quæ habeant difficilem curationem, quæ (habeant) promptiorem (curationem). Enim est (officium) prudentis hominis, primum, non attingere eum, qui non potest servari, nec subire speciem ejus, ut occisi, quem sors ipsius interemit: deinde ubi est gravis metus, tamen sine certa desperatione, (debet) indicare necessariis periclitantis, rem esse in difficili: ne, si ars fuerit victa malo, (medicus) videatur vel ignorasse, vel fefellisse. Sed ut hæc conveniunt prudenti viro; sic rursus est (pars) histrionis, attollere parvam rem, quo videatur præstitisse plus. Est æquum obligari confessione promptæ rei, quo etiam circumspiciat curiosius, ne quod est exiguum per se, fiat majus negligentia curantis.

2. Non potest sanari, cui basis cerebri, cui cor, cui stomachus, cui portæ jocinoris, cui medulla in spina est percussa; que cui aut medius pulmo, aut jejunum, aut tenuius intestinum, aut ventriculus, aut renes sunt vulnerati; vel cui grandes venas vel arteriæ circa fauces sunt præcisæ.

## TRANSLATION.

Now the principal point to be attended to by a physician, is to know what are incurable, what are difficult to cure, what are more easy. For it is the duty of a prudent man, not to undertake a case which he cannot cure, nor to subject himself to the imputation of having destroyed a patient, who is destined to die of disease: then, when there is imminent danger, yet not entirely hopeless, to communicate to the friends of the patient the uncertainty and difficulty of effecting a cure; (lest the disease prevail over his science,) then it will be evident that he was neither ignorant of it himself, nor to have deceived others. But as these things are to be observed by a prudent man; so on the other hand it is only the part of a charlatan to exaggerate a slight case, in order that he may seem to have performed a miraculous cure. He should rather promise the patient a speedy restoration of health, in order that he may apply all his care to prevent a disease, in itself unimportant, from assuming a more serious aspect, by negligence or maltreatment.

2. Injuries of the base of the brain, or of the heart, or of the œsophagus, or of the vena portæ of the liver, or of the medulla spinalis; or when the middle of the lungs, or the jejunum, or the small intestines, or the stomach, or when the kidneys have been wounded, are incurable; or when those large veins or arteries about the fauces have been cut,

3. Vix autem ad sanitatem perveniunt, quibus aliqua parte pulmo, aut jocinoris crassum, aut membrana, quæ continet cerebrum, aut lienis, aut vulva, aut vesica, aut ullum intestinum, aut septum transversum vulneratum est. Ii quoque in præcipiti sunt, in quibus usque ad grandes intusque conditas venas in alis vel poplitibus mucro desedit. Periculosa etiam vulnera sunt, ubicumque venæ majores sunt, quoniam exhaurire hominem profusione sanguinis possunt: idque evenit non in alis tantum, atque poplitibus; sed etiam in iis venis, quæ ad anum testiculosque perveniunt. Præter hæc malum vulnum est, quodcumque in alis vel feminibus, vel inanibus locis, vel in articulis, vel inter digitos est: item quodcumque musculum, aut nervum, aut arteriam, aut membranam, aut os, aut cartilaginem læsit. Tutissimum omnium, quod in carne est.

4. Et hæc quidem loco vel pejora, vel mitiora sunt. Modo vero periculum facit, quodcumque magnum est.

5. Aliquid etiam in vulneris genere figuraque est. Nam pejus est, quod etiam collisum, quam quod tantum di-

## ORDO.

3. Autem (hi) vix perveniunt ad sanitatem, quibus pulmo, aut crassum (partem) jocinoris, aut membrana quæ continet cerebrum, aut lienis, aut vulva, aut vesica, aut ullum intestinum, aut transversum septum est vulneratum aliqua parte. Ii quoque sunt in præcipiti, in quibus mucro desedit usque ad grandes que conditas intus venas in alis vel poplitibus. Etiam vulnera sunt periculosa, ubicumque venæ sunt majores, quoniam possunt exhaurire hominem profusione sanguinis: que id evenit non tantum in alis, atque poplitibus; sed etiam in iis venis quæ perveniunt ad anum que testiculos. Præter hæc est malum vulnus, quodcumque est in alis vel feminibus, vel inanibus locis, vel in articulis, vel inter digitos: item quodcumque læsit musculum, aut nervum, aut arteriam, aut membranam, aut os, aut cartilaginem. (Vulnus) quod est in carne, (est) tutissimum omnium.

4. Et quidem hæc sunt vel pejora, vel meliora loco. Vero quodcumque est magnum, facit periculum modo.

5. Etiam est aliquid in figura que genere vulneris. Nam est pejus, quod est etiam collisum, quam quod (est) tantum discis-

## TRANSLATION.

3. It is also difficult to heal a wound in any part of the lungs, or the thick part of the liver, or the enveloping membranes of the brain, or the spleen, or the womb, or the bladder, or any intestine, or the diaphragm.

They are also in extreme danger, who may have the point of a weapon thrust as far as the large and deeply seated blood vessels in the arm-pits, or in the hams. Wounds are dangerous wherever there are large veins, since they may exhaust a man by hæmorrhage: and this happens not only in the arm-pits, and in the hams, but also in the hemorrhoidal veins about the anus, and those supplying the testicles.

Besides these, all wounds in the axilla, or in the inside of the thighs, (*the perineum*), or in any cavity, or in the joints, or between the fingers, are dangerous; so is the wound of a muscle, or nerve, or artery, or membrane, bone, or cartilage.

4. These wounds are more or less dangerous, according to the nature of the part which they occupy. But in general, the danger of a wound is proportioned to its extent.

5. There is also something to be considered in the nature and figure of a wound. For that wound which is accompanied with contusion, is worse than when there

scissum est: adeo ut acuto quoque, quam retuso telo, vulnerari commodius sit. Pejus etiam vulnus est, ex quo aliquid excisum est; ex quoque caro alia parte abscissa, alia dependet. Pessimaque plaga in orbem est; tutissima, quæ lineæ modo recta est. Quo deinde propius huic illive figuræ vulnus est, eo vel deterius vel tolerabilius est.

6. Quin etiam confert aliquid et ætas, et corpus, et vitæ propositum, et anni tempus: quia facilius sanescit puer vel adolescens, quam senior; valens, quam infirmus; neque nimis tenuis, neque nimis plenus, quam si alterum ex his est; integri habitus, quam corrupti; exercitatus, quam iners; sobrius et temperans, quam vino venerique deditus. Opportunissimumque curationi tempus, vernum est, aut certe neque fervens, neque frigidum: siquidem vulnera et nimius calor et nimium frigus infestant; maxime tamen horum varietas: ideoque perniciosissimus autumnus est.

7. Sed pleraque ex vulneribus oculis subjecta sunt: quorundam ipsæ sedes

## ORDO.

sum: adeo ut quoque sit commodius vulnerari acuto telo, quam retuso (telo). Etiam vulnus est pejus, ex quo aliquid est excisum, vel ex quo caro abscissa alia parte, dependet alia. Que est pessima plaga (cum est) in orbem; tutissima, quæ est recta modo lineæ. Deinde, quo vulnus est propius huic vel illi figuræ, eo vel est deterius, vel tolerabilius.

6. Quin et ætas, et corpus, et propositum vitæ, et tempus anni etiam confert aliquid: quia puer vel adolescens sanescit facilius quam senior: valens quam infirmus; neque nimis tenuis, neque nimis plenus, quam si (æger) est alterum ex his; (potius) integri habitus quam corrupti; exercitatus quam iners; sobrius et temperans, quam deditus vino que veneri. Que vernum est opportunissimum tempus curationi, aut certe neque fervens, neque frigidum: siquidem et nimius calor, et nimius frigus infestant vulnera; tamen maxime varietas horum: que ideo autumnus est perniciosissimus.

7. Sed pleraque ex vulneribus sunt subjecta oculis: sedes ipsæ

## TRANSLATION.

is only a solution of continuity: for this reason, a wound caused by a sharp weapon is less dangerous than one produced by an obtuse one. A wound with the loss of substance, or when the flesh is detached from one part, and hangs to another, is of a serious nature. The worst description of wounds are those which are curved; the safest are those which happen to be rectilineal: consequently the danger is in proportion as the wound may assume either the first or second of these figures.

6. But there is also the age, the constitution, mode of living, and the season of the year to be considered: for a boy or youth recovers more easily than an older person; the man who is of a vigorous temperament, more easily than he who is of a weak; a person who is neither too slender, nor too full, than if he were in either of these extremes; a sound constitution rather than a vitiated one: an active, rather than an indolent one; the sober and temperate rather than one addicted to wine and lust. Then, the most genial season for healing a wound is the spring, or at least when the weather is temperate: since both excessive heat and intense cold are alike injurious to wounds; especially the sudden transition of these: and on this account the autumn is the most injurious season.

7. The greater number of wounds are exposed to our view: but there are some indicated by the situation of the parts themselves, which we have demon-



indices sunt; quas alio loco demonstravimus, cum positus interiorum partium ostendimus. Verumtamen, quia quædam vicina sunt, interestque, vulnus in summa parte sit, an penitus penetraverit, necessarium est notas subijcere, per quas quid intus ictum sit, scire possimus; et ex quibus vel spes, vel desperatio oriatur.

8. Igitur, corde percusso, sanguis multus fertur, venæ languescunt, color pallidissimus, sudores frigidi, mali odoris, tamquam irrorato corpore oriuntur: extremisque partibus frigidis matura mors sequitur.

9. Pulmone vero icto, spirandi difficultas est; sanguis ex ore spumans, ex plaga rubens, simulque etiam spiritus cum sono fertur; in vulnus inclinari juvat: quidam sine ratione consurgunt: multi si in ipsum vulnus inclinati sunt, loquuntur; si in aliam partem, obmutescunt.

10. Jecinoris autem vulnerati notæ sunt: multus sub dextra parte præcordiorum profusus sanguis; ad spinam reducta præcordia; in ventrem cubandi

## ORDO.

quorundam sunt indices; quas demonstravimus alio loco, cum ostendimus positus interiorum partium. Verumtamen quia quædam sunt vicina, que interest, an vulnus sit in summa parte (an) penetravit intus, est necessarium subijcere notas, per quas possimus scire, quid sit ictum intus; et ex quibus vel spes, vel desperatio oriatur.

8. Igitur, corde percusso, multus sanguis fertur, venæ languescunt, color (est) pallidissimus, que frigidi sudores, mali odoris, tamquam irrorato corpore, oriuntur: que extremis partibus frigidis matura mors sequitur.

9. Vero pulmone icto, est difficultas spirandi; sanguis spumans ex ore, rubens ex plaga, que etiam simul spiritus fertur cum sono, juvat inclinari in vulnus: quidam consurgunt sine ratione: multi loquuntur, si sunt inclinati in vulnus ipsum: obmutescunt, si in aliam partem.

10. Antem (hæc) sunt notæ vulnerati jecinoris; multus sanguis profusus sub dextra parte præcordiorum; præcordia reducta ad spinam; dulcedo cubandi in

## TRANSLATION.

strated in another place, where the relative positions of the internal parts were pointed out.

Yet there are some of these superficial, and it is of importance to know, whether a wound extends farther than the integuments, or, whether it has penetrated deep, hence it is necessary to subjoin the signs by which we may be able to ascertain what is injured internally; by which we may draw our prognosis of hope or fear.

8. When the heart is wounded, there is a great effusion of blood; the pulsations become languid, the colour of the skin grows very pale; the patient is bedewed with cold perspirations, and of an offensive odour: the extremities grow cold, and death soon follows.

9. When the lungs are wounded, there is a difficulty of breathing; the blood which is discharged from the wound by the mouth is frothy and red; at the same time the expiration is accompanied with a sibilous noise; the patient is relieved by lying on the wound: some patients start up without any motive; many speak when they recline upon the wound itself; but they become dumb if put in any other position.

10. The signs of a wounded liver are the following: there is a great effusion of blood under the right præcordia; the præcordia itself being drawn towards the spine; a relief is experienced by lying on the abdomen; pungent pains are

dulcedo; punctiones, doloresque usque ad jugulum, junctumque ei latum scapularum os, intenti: quibus nonnumquam etiam biliosus vomitus accedit.

11. Renibus vero percussis, dolor ad inguina testiculosque descendit; difficulter urina redditur; eaque aut est cruenta, aut cruor fertur.

12. At liene icto, sanguis niger a sinistra parte prorumpit; præcordia cum ventriculo ab eadem parte indurescunt; sitis ingens oritur; dolor ad jugulum, sicut jecinore vulnerato, venit.

13. At cum vulva percussa est, dolor in inguinibus, et coxis, et femoribus est; sanguinis pars per vulnus, pars per naturale descendit; vomitus bilis insequitur; quædam obmutescunt; quædam mente labuntur; quædam, sui compotes, nervorum oculorumque dolore urgeri se confitentur; morientesque eadem, quæ corde vulnerato, patiuntur.

14. Sin cerebrum membranave ejus vulnus accepit, sanguis per nares, quibusdam etiam per aures exit; fereque bilis vomitus insequitur; quorundam sensus obtunduntur, appellatique ig-

## ORDO.

ventrem: punctiones, que dolores intenti usque ad jugulum, que latum os scapularum junctum ei; quibus etiam biliosus vomitus nonnumquam accedit.

11. Vero renibus percussis, dolor descendit ad inguina que testiculos; urina redditur difficulter; que ea est aut cruenta, aut cruor fertur.

12. At liene icto, niger sanguis prorumpit a sinistra parte; præcordia indurescunt cum ventriculo ab eadem parte; ingens sitis oritur; dolor venit ad jugulum, sicut vulnerato jecinore.

13. At cum vulva est percussa, est dolor in inguinibus, et coxis, et femoribus; pars sanguinis descendit per vulnus, pars per naturale; vomitus bilis insequitur; quædam obmutescunt; quædam labuntur mente; quædam, compotes sui, confitentur se urgeri dolore nervorum que oculorum; que morientes, patiuntur eadem, quæ (patiuntur) corde vulnerato.

14. Sin cerebrum, vel membrana ejus accepit vulnus, sanguis exit per nares, etiam quibusdam per aures; que vomitus bilis fere insequitur; sensus quorundam obtunduntur, que appellati igno-

## TRANSLATION.

felt extending as far as both clavicles, and the adjoining scapulæ: to which bilious vomiting sometimes accedes.

11. When the kidneys are injured, the pains extend to each groin and the testicles; the urine is voided with difficulty; and it is either bloody, or blood itself is discharged.

12. When the spleen is wounded, black blood is poured out from the left side; the præcordia and stomach on the same side become hard; great thirst ensues; the pain extends to the clavicles the same as in wounds of the liver.

13. When the matrix has been wounded, there is pain in each groin, in the hips, and in the thighs; the blood is partly discharged by the wound, partly by the vagina; a vomiting of bile follows; some females become speechless; some delirious; some retain their intellectual sensibility, but complain of violent pains of the nerves and eyes; and when dying, their sufferings resemble the symptoms of a wounded heart.

14. But if the brain, or its investing membrane, have received a wound, blood escapes by the nostrils, in some cases even through the ears; and generally a vomiting of bile ensues; in some the faculty of hearing is impaired, and they are in-

norant; quorumdam trux vultus est; quorumdam oculi, quasi resoluti, huc atque illuc moventur; fereque tertio, vel quinto die delirium accedit; multorum etiam nervi distenduntur: ante mortem autem plerique fascias, quibus caput deligatum est, lacerant, ac nudum vulnus frigori obijciunt.

15. Ubi stomachus autem percussus est, singultus, et bilis vomitus insequitur; si quid cibi vel potionis assumptum est, id redditur cito; venarum motus elanguescunt; sudores tenues oriuntur, per quos extremæ partes frigescunt.

16. Communes vero jejuni intestini et ventriculi vulnerati notæ sunt: nam cibus et potio per vulnus exeunt; præcordia indurescunt; nonnumquam bilis per os redditur: intestino tantum sedes inferior est. Cetera intestina icta vel stercus, vel odorem ejus exhibent.

17. Medulla vero, quæ in spina est, percussa, nervi resolvuntur, aut distenduntur; sensus intercidit; interposito tempore aliquo sine voluntate inferiores partes vel semen, vel urinam, vel etiam stercus excernunt.

#### ORDO.

rant; vultus est trux quorumdam; oculi quorumdam moventur huc atque illuc, quasi resoluti; que delirium fere accedit tertio vel quinto die; etiam nervi multorum distenduntur; autem ante mortem plerique lacerant fascias, quibus caput est deligatum, ac obijciunt nudum vulnus frigori.

15. Antem ubi stomachus est percussus, singultus et vomitus bilis insequitur; si quid cibi vel potionis est assumptum, id cito redditur; motus venarum elanguescunt; tenues sudores oriuntur, per quos extremæ partes frigescunt.

16. Vero notæ jejuni intestini et ventriculi vulnerati sunt communes: nam cibus et potio exeunt per vulnus; præcordia indurescunt; nonnumquam bilis redditur per os; tantum sedes est inferior intestino. Cetera intestina icta, exhibent vel stercus, vel odorem ejus.

17. Vero medulla, quæ est in spina, percussa, nervi resolvuntur, aut distenduntur; sensus intercidit; aliquo tempore interposito, inferiores partes excernunt sine voluntate, vel semen, vel urinam, vel etiam stercus.

#### TRANSLATION.

sensible when called upon; the countenance of some is ferocious; the eyes in others roll with a constant motion, as if paralysed; and generally delirium supervenes on the third or fourth day; many are also convulsed; and before death most of them tear off the bandages with which the head is bound up, and expose the uncovered wound to the cold.

15. When the œsophagus is wounded, singultus and bilious vomiting ensue; if any food or drink be swallowed, it is immediately rejected; the pulsations in the arteries become languid; a slight diaphoresis comes on, by which the extremities grow cold.

16. The symptoms of the stomach being wounded are common to that of the jejunum: for in both, the ingesta escape by the wound; the præcordia become hard; sometimes bile is ejected by the mouth: only the situation of the jejunum is lower than the stomach. When the other intestines are wounded, they emit either faecal matter, or the odour of it.

17. When the spinal cord is wounded, paralysis or convulsions ensue; the patient is deprived of all sensation; after a little time, the emission of either semen, urine, or fæces become involuntary from the lower parts.



18. At si septum transversum percutsum est, præcordia sursum contrahuntur; spina dolet; spiritus rarus est; sanguis spumans fertur.

19. Vesica vero vulnerata, dolent inguina; quod super pubem est, intenditur; pro urina, sanguis; at ex ipso vulnere urina descendit; stomachus afficitur; itaque aut bilem vomunt, aut singultiunt; frigus, et ex eo mors sequitur.

20. His cognitis, etiamnum quædam alia noscenda sunt, ad omnia vulnera ulceraque, de quibus dicturi sumus, pertinentia. Ex his autem exit sanguis, sanies, pus. Sanguis omnibus notus est; sanies est tenuior hoc, varie crassa, et glutinosa, et colorata; pus crassissimum albidissimumque, glutinosius et sanguine et sanie. Exit autem sanguis ex vulnere recenti, aut jam sanescente; sanies est inter utrumque tempus; pus ex ulcere jam ad sanitatem spectante. Rursus et sanies et pus quasdam species Græcis nominibus distinctas habent. Est enim quædam sanies, quæ vel ὑδρωψ, vel μελίκηρα nominatur: est pus, quod ἐλαιῶδες appellatur.

## ORDO.

18. At si transversum septum est percutsum, præcordia sursum contrahuntur; spina dolet; spiritus est rarus; spumans sanguis fertur.

19. Vero vesica vulnerata, inguina dolent; quod est super pubem, intenditur; sanguis, pro urina; at urina descendit ex vulnere ipso; stomachus afficitur; itaque aut vomunt bilem; aut singultiunt; frigus et mors sequitur ex eo.

20. His cognitis, etiamnum quædam alia sunt noscenda, pertinentia ad omnia ulcera que vulnera, de quibus sumus dicturi. Autem sanguis, sanies, pus exit ex his. Sanguis est notus omnibus; sanies est tenuior (quam) hoc, varie crassa, et glutinosa, et colorata; pus (est) crassissimum, que albidissimum, et (est) glutinosius (quam) sanguine, et sanie. Autem sanguis exit ex recenti aut jam sanescente vulnere; sanies est inter utrumque tempus; pus ex ulcere jam spectante ad sanitatem. Rursus, et pus et sanies habent quasdam distinctas species Græcis nominibus. Enim est quædam sanies, quæ nominatur vel ὑδρωψ, (hydrops) vel μελίκηρα, (melicera): est pus, quod appellatur ἐλαιῶδες (elaiōdes).

## TRANSLATION.

18. But if the diaphragm be wounded, the præcordia are contracted upward; the spine is painful; the breathing is slow; and frothy blood is emitted.

19. When the bladder is wounded, pain is felt in the groins; there is a tension of the parts immediately above the pubes; instead of urine, blood is evacuated; but the urine escapes by the wound itself; the stomach is sympathetically affected; so that the patients either vomit biles, or are seized with singultus; the extremities become cold, and after that death follows.

20. These symptoms being known, there are yet some others to be recognized in the treatment of all wounds and ulcers, on which we are about to proceed. Now these discharge blood, sanies, and pus. Blood is known to all; sanies is thinner than blood, of varied consistence, glutinous, and coloured: pus is very thick and white, also more glutinous than either blood or sanies. Blood is discharged from a recent wound, or from the tender granulations of one healing: sanies appears between these times; pus is discharged from an ulcer in a healing state. Again, both sanies and pus are distinguished by the Greeks into certain species. For there is some sanies which is called hydrops or ichor, another melicera; there is another species of pus called elaiodes.

Ἰδρωψ tenuis, subalbidus, ex malo ulcere exit, maximeque ubi, nervo læso, inflammatio secuta est.

Μελίκηρα crassior est, glutinosior, subalbida, mellique albo subsimilis. Fertur hæc quoque ex malis ulceribus, ubi nervi circa articulos læsi sunt; et inter hæc loca, maxime ex genibus.

Ἐλαϊῶδες tenue, subalbidum, quasi unctum, colore, atque pinguitudine oleo albo non dissimile apparet in magnis ulceribus sanescentibus.

Malus autem est sanguis, nimium aut tenuis, aut crassus, colore vel lividus, vel niger, aut pituita mistus, aut varius: optimus calidus, rubens, modice crassus, non glutinosus. Itaque protinus ejus vulneris expedita magis curatio est, ex quo sanguis bonus fluxit: itemque postea spes in iis major est, ex quibus melioris generis quæque proveniunt.

Sanies igitur mala est, multa, nimis tenuis, livida, aut pallida, aut nigra, aut glutinosa, aut mali odoris, aut quæ, et ipsum ulcus, et junctam ei cutem erodit: melior est non multa, modice crassa, subrubicunda, aut subalbida.

Ἰδρωψ autem pejor est multus, crassus, sublividus aut subpallidus, gluti-

## ORDO.

Ἰδρωψ (hydrops est) tenuis, subalbidus, exit ex malo ulcere, que maxime ubi nervo læso inflammatio est secuta.

Μελίκηρα (melicera) est crassior, glutinosior, subalbida, que subsimilis albo melli. Quoque hæc fertur ex malis ulceribus, ubi nervi circa articulos sunt læsi; et loca inter hæc (sunt) maxime ex genibus.

Ἐλαϊῶδες (elaiōdes est) tenue, subalbidum, quasi unctum, in magnis sanescentibus ulceribus, non apparet dissimile (in) colore atque pinguitudine albo oleo.

Autem sanguis est malus, (cum est) aut nimium tenuis, aut crassus, vel lividus, niger colore, aut mistus pituita, aut varius: calidus, rubens, modice crassus, non glutinosus (sanguis est) optimus. Itaque curatio ejus vulneris est protinus magis expedita, ex quo bonus sanguis fluxit; que item postea est major spes in iis, ex quibus quæque melioris generis proveniunt.

Igitur mala sanies est multa, nimis tenuis, livida, aut pallida, aut nigra, aut glutinosa, aut mali odoris, aut quæ erodit et ulcus ipsum, et cutem junctam ei: est melior, (cum est) non multa, modice crassa, subrubicunda, aut subalbida.

Autem Ἰδρωψ (hydrops) est pejor, (cum est) multus, crassus, sublividus, aut pallidus, glutinosus,

## TRANSLATION.

Ichor is thin, somewhat white, and is produced by an unhealthy ulcer, and particularly when a nerve has been injured, and followed by inflammation.

Melicera is more glutinous, thicker, and somewhat white, and to a certain degree resembles white honey. This last is also discharged from malignant ulcers, when the nerves (*tendons*) in the vicinity of the articulations have been injured, especially those places about the knees.

Elæodes is thin, approaching to white, unctuous, bearing some resemblance to white oil, and may be seen in large ulcers when they are healing.

Now blood is bad when it is either too thin or too thick, in colour either livid or black, or pituitous, or varicoloured: the best is warm, red, moderately thick, not glutinous. Therefore the wound which has poured out good blood, is more expeditiously cured; and, in general, our hopes should be regulated by the good or bad quality of the several humours discharged.

Therefore sanies is bad when it is profuse, too thin, livid, or pale, or black, glutinous, or of bad odour, or when it is phagedænic, destroying the ulcer itself; (or

nosus, ater, calidus, mali odoris : tolerabilior est subalbidus, qui cetera omnia contraria prioribus habet.

Μελίκηρα autem mala est, multa, et percassa : melior, quæ et tenuior, et minus copiosa est. Pus inter hæc optimum est. Sed id quoque pejus est, multum, tenue, dilutum ; magisque, si ab initio tale est : itemque, si colore sero simile, si pallidum, si lividum, si fæculentum est : præter hæc, si male olet ; nisi tamen locus hunc odorem excitat. Melius est, quo minus est, quo crassius, quo albidius : itemque, si læve est, si nihil olet, si æquale est. Modo tamen convenire et magnitudini vulneris, et tempori debet : nam plus ex majore, plus nondum solutis inflammationibus naturaliter fertur.

Ἐλαιῶδες quoque pejus est multum, et parum pingue : quo minus ejus, quoque id ipsum pinguius, eo melius est.

21. Quibus exploratis, ubi aliquis ictus est, qui servari potest, protinus prospicienda duo sunt : ne sanguinis

## ORDO.

ater, calidus, mali odoris ; est tolerabilior, (cum est) subalbidus, qui habet omnia cetera contraria prioribus.

Autem Μελίκηρα (melicera) est mala, (cum est) multa, et percassa : melior, quæ est et tenuior, et minus copiosa. Pus est optimum inter hæc. Sed quoque id est pejus, (quod est) multum, tenue, dilutum ; que magis, si est tale ab initio : que item si color est simile sero, si (est) pallidum, si lividum, si fæculentum : præter hæc, si olet male ; nisi tamen locus excitat hunc odorem. Est melius, quo est minus, quo crassius, quo albidius : que item si est læve, si olet nihil, si est æquale. Tamen debet convenire (in) modo, et magnitudini vulneris, et tempori : nam plus fertur naturaliter ex majore, plus inflammationibus nondum solutis.

Ἐλαιῶδες (elaiōdes) est quoque pejus, multum, et parum pingue : quo minus ejus, quoque id ipsum pinguius, eo est melius.

21. Quibus exploratis, ubi aliquis est ictus, qui potest servari, duo sunt protinus prospicienda : ne profusio sanguinis vel ne inflam-

## TRANSLATION.

rather the solid parts,) and the circumjacent skin ; it is better when it is in moderate quantity, sufficiently thick, inclining to red, or white.

Ichor again is worse when it is abundant, thick, livid, or somewhat pale, glutinous, black, hot, or fetid : it is more tolerable when a little white, and in every other respect the reverse of the former.

Melicera is bad when it is abundant, and very thick ; that is better which is thinner, and less copious. Amongst all these discharges, pure pus is the best : but even that is bad when it is abundant, thin, and diluted ; and the more so, if it be such from the beginning : also if it be like serum in colour, if pale, livid, or fæculent : and in addition to these, if it be of a disagreeable odour ; unless this odour should arise from some peculiarity of the part where the ulcer is situated. It is better in quality, in proportion as it is less in quantity, and the thicker and whiter it is : also if it be smooth, and emit no smell, if it be homogeneous. Yet it ought to be proportionate in quantity to the extent and duration of the wound : for it is natural that much pus will be thrown off by a large wound, and the more so while the inflammation remains unsubdued.

The elaiodes is worse when it is abundant, and destitute of fatty matter : consequently the less there is of it, and the more oily it is, so much the better it is.

21. Having examined into these things, when any person has been wounded, who can be saved, there are two things instantly to be provided for : lest the pa-



profusio, neve inflammatio interimat. Si profusionem timemus (quod ex sede vulneris, et ex magnitudine ejus, et ex impetu ruentis sanguinis intelligi potest) siccis linamentis vulnus implendum est, supraque imponenda spongia ex aqua frigida expressa, ac manu super comprimenda. Si parum sic sanguis conquiescit, sæpius linamenta mutanda sunt; et, si sicca parum valent, aceto madefacienda sunt. Id vehemens ad sanguinem supprimendum est: id eoque quidam id vulnere infundunt. Sed alius rursus metus subest; ne nimis valenter ibi retenta materia, magnam inflammationem postea moveat. Quæ res efficit, ut neque rodentibus medicamentis, neque adurentibus, et ob id ipsum inducentibus crustam, sit utendum; quamvis pleraque ex his sanguinem supprimunt: sed, si semel ad ea decurritur, iis potius, quæ mitius idem efficiunt.

Quod si illa quoque profluvio vincuntur, venæ, quæ sanguinem fundunt, apprehendendæ, circaque id, quod ictum est, duobus locis deligandæ, intercidendæque sunt, ut et in se ipsæ coeant, et nihilominus ora præclusa

## ORDO.

matio interimat (eum). Si timemus profusionem, (quod potest intelligi ex sede vulneris, et magnitudine ejus, et ex impetu ruentis sanguinis) vulnus est implendum siccis linamentis, quæ spongia expressa ex frigida aqua (est) imponenda supra, ac comprimenda supra manu. Si sanguis conquiescit parum sic, linamenta sunt mutanda sæpius; et si valent parum sicca, sunt madefacienda aceto. Id est vehemens ad reprimendum sanguinem: quæ ideo, quidam infundunt id vulnere. Sed rursus alius metus subest; ne materia retenta ibi nimis valenter, postea moveat magnam inflammationem. Quæ res efficit, ut neque sit utendum rodentibus medicamentis, neque adurentibus, et ob id ipsum inducentibus crustam; quamvis pleraque supprimunt sanguinem: sed, si semel decurritur ad ea, potius iis, quæ efficiunt idem mitius.

Quod si quoque illa (remedia) vincuntur profluvio, venæ quæ fundunt sanguinem, sunt apprehendendæ, quæ (sunt) deligandæ duobus locis, circa id quod est ictum, quæ intercidendæ, ut et ipsæ coeant in se, et nihilominus habeant ora præclusa.

## TRANSLATION.

tient should perish from hæmorrhage or inflammation. If we be afraid of hæmorrhage, (which may be known by the situation of the wound, and its extent, and by the violence of the rushing blood,) the wound is to be filled with dry lint, and a sponge expressed out of cold water is to be applied, and compressed with the hand. If the blood be not restrained by this, the lint must be changed frequently; and if dry lint have not the desired effect, the pledgets are to be moistened with vinegar. This has a powerful effect in arresting a hæmorrhage; and upon that account some physicians pour it into the wound. But in this again there is danger; lest the materials *which we employ*, being retained there too forcibly, may cause great inflammation afterwards. For this reason, neither corrosives, nor caustic applications should be used; although most of these things are well calculated to suppress hæmorrhage, and induce an eschar: but if at any time we have recourse to them, we ought to employ those rather, which produce the same effect more mildly.

But if these remedies are also ineffectual in restraining the hæmorrhage, the bleeding vessels are to be taken up, and two ligatures to be applied, one on each side of the wound, and then to be divided between the ligatures, that they may both unite together, by anastomosing branches, and effect an obliteration of their orifices.

habeant. Ubi ne id quidem res patitur, possunt ferro candenti aduri. Sed etiam satis multo sanguine effuso ex eo loco, quo neque nervus, neque musculus est, ut puta in fronte, vel superiore capitis parte, commodissimum tamen est, cucurbitulam admovere a diversa parte, ut illuc sanguinis cursus revocetur.

22. Et adversus profusionem quidem in his auxilium est: adversus inflammationem autem, in ipso sanguinis cursu. Ea timeri potest, ubi læsum est vel os, vel nervus, vel cartilago, vel musculus; aut ubi parum sanguinis pro modo vulneris fluxit. Ergo quoties quid tale erit, sanguinem mature suppressere non oportebit; sed pati fluere, dum tutum erit, adeo ut, si parum fluxisse videbitur, mitti quoque ex brachio debeat; utique, si corpus juvenile, et robustum, et exercitatum est: multoque magis, si id vulnus ebrietas præcessit. Quod si musculus læsus videbitur, præcidendus erit: nam percussus, mortiferus est; præcisus, sanitatem recipit.

23. Sanguine autem vel suppresso, si nimius erumpit; vel exhausto, si

## ORDO.

Ubi quidem id res ne patitur, possunt aduri candenti ferro. Sed etiam, satis multo sanguine effuso ex eo loco, (in) quo est neque nervus, neque musculus, ut puta in fronte, vel superiore parte capitis, tamen est commodissimum, admovere cucurbitulam a diversa parte, ut cursus sanguinis revocetur illuc.

22. Et quidem est auxilium in his adversus profusionem: autem adversus inflammationem, in cursu ipso sanguinis. Ea potest timeri, ubi vel os, vel nervus, vel cartilago, vel musculus est læsum; aut ubi parum sanguinis fluxit pro modo vulneris. Ergo quoties quid erit tale, non oportebit suppressere sanguinem mature; sed pati fluere, dum erit tutum, adeo ut, si videbitur fluxisse parum, quoque debeat mitti ex brachio; utique, si corpus est juvenile, et robustum, et exercitatum: que multo magis, si ebrietas præcessit id vulnus. Quod si musculus videbitur læsus, erit præcidendus: nam percussus, est mortiferus: præcisus, recipit sanitatem.

23. Autem vel suppresso sanguine, si erumpit nimius; vel, exhausto, si fluxit parum per se; est

## TRANSLATION.

When the case does not even admit of this last remedy, we may employ the actual cautery. But when a sufficient quantity of blood has escaped from a part where there is neither tendon, nor muscle, as for instance, in the forehead, or superior part of the head, then it is most proper to apply a cupping-glass to the opposite part, that the current of blood may be diverted thither.

22. These then are the remedies to be employed in hæmorrhage: but for an inflammation, the flow of blood itself is the cure. This may be apprehended when either a bone, or a tendon, or cartilage, or muscle has been injured; or when the hæmorrhage has been too small in proportion to the extent of the wound. Therefore, when a similar case may occur, the hæmorrhage should not be suppressed suddenly; but be suffered to flow, as long as it shall be unattended with danger; and even blood be taken from the arm when it appears to have flowed too little; especially if the patient be young, robust, and accustomed to exercise: much more so, if intoxication immediately preceded the wound. If a tendon appear to be lacerated, it must be divided, otherwise it proves fatal; but being cut through, it admits of a cure.

23. Now the hæmorrhage being arrested, when excessive, or aided by deple-

per se parum fluxit; longe optimum est, vulnus glutinari. Potest autem id, quod vel in cute, vel etiam in carne est, si nihil ei præterea mali accedit: potest caro, alia parte dependens, alia inhærens; si tamen etiamnum integra est, et conjunctione corporis fovetur.

In iis vero, quæ glutinantur, duplex curatio est. Nam si plaga in molli parte est, sui debet; maximeque, si discissa auris ima est, vel imus nasus, vel frons, vel bucca, vel palpebra, vel labrum, vel circa guttur cutis, vel venter. Si vero in carne vulnus est, hiatque, neque in unum oræ facile attrahuntur, sutura quidem aliena est; imponendæ vero fibulæ sunt (*ἀγκυτῆρας* Græci nominant) quæ oras, paulum tamen, contrahant, quo minus lata postea cicatrix sit.

Ex his autem colligi potest, id quoque, quod alia parte dependens, alia inhærebit, si alienatum adhuc non est, suturam, an fibulam postulet. Ex quibus neutra ante debet imponi, quam intus vulnus purgatum est; ne quid ibi concreti sanguinis relinquatur. Id enim et in pus vertitur, et inflamma-

## ORDO.

longe optimum, vulnus glutinari. Autem, quod est vel in cute, vel etiam in carne potest id, si nihil mali præterea accedit ei: caro potest, dependens alia parte, inhærens alia; si tamen est etiamnum integra, et fovetur conjunctione corporis.

Vero in iis, quæ glutinantur, curatio est duplex. Nam si plaga est in molle parti debet sui; quæ maxima, si est ima discissa auris, vel imus nasus, vel frons, vel bucca, vel palpebra, vel labrum, vel cutis circa guttur, vel venter. Si vero est vulnus in carne, quæ hiat, neque oræ attrahuntur facile in unum, sutura est quidem aliena; vero fibulæ sunt imponendæ, (Græci nominant *ἀγκυτῆρας* *agkiteras*) quæ contrahant oras, tamen paulum, quo cicatrix sit postea minus lata.

Autem ex his, id quoque potest colligi, quod dependens alia parte, inhærebit alia, si non est adhuc alienatum, postulet suturam, an fibulam. Neutra ex quibus debet imponi ante, quam vulnus est purgatum intus; ne quid concreti sanguinis relinquatur ibi. Enim id et vertitur in pus, et movet inflammationem, et prohibet

## TRANSLATION.

tion when too small of itself, it is by far the best method to effect a reunion of the wound.

This method may be employed for a wound either of the skin or of the flesh, if no other untoward symptom accompany it: also where the flesh is hanging down in one part, and attached to another; provided however that it be still sound, and supplied by nourishment in conjunction with the body.

There are two modes of effecting the reunion of wounds. For if the wound be in a soft part, it ought to be sewed; especially if the lobe of the ear, or the lowest part of the nose, or the forehead, or the cheek, or eyelid, or lip, or the skin about the throat, or abdomen, have been cut. But if the wound be in the flesh, and dilated, the lips of the wound being approximated with difficulty, then indeed the suture would be improper: but sutures (σ3) should be applied, (which the Greeks call *ancteras*,) in order to bring the lips of the wound a little closer, that the cicatrix may be small afterwards.

Now it may be determined, whether a wound, the flesh of which may be dependent in one part, and adherent in another, if yet healthy, may require a suture or a fibula. but neither of them ought to be applied before the wound be cleansed internally; lest any clotted blood be left there. For that not only generates pus, but excites



tionem movet, et glutinari vulnus prohibet. Ne linamentum quidem, quod suppressendi sanguinis causa inditum est, inibi relinquendum est: nam id quoque inflammatur.

Comprehendi vero sutura, vel fibula, non cutem tantum, sed etiam aliquid ex carne, ubi suberit hæc, oportebit; quo valentius hæreat, neque cutem abrumpat. Utraque optima est ex acia molli, non nimis torta, quo mitius corpori insadat. Utraque neque nimis rara, neque nimis crebra injicienda est. Si nimis rara est, non continet: si nimis crebra est, vehementer afficit; quia, quo sæpius acus corpus transiit, quoque plura loca injectum vinculum mordet, eo majores inflammationes oriuntur; magisque æstate.

Neutra etiam vim ullam desiderat; sed eatenus utilis est, qua cutis ducen-tem quasi sua sponte subsequitur. Fere tamen fibulæ latius vulnus esse patiuntur: sutura oras jungit, quæ ne ipsæ quidem inter se contingere ex toto debent; ut si quid intus humoris concreverit, sit qua emanet. Si quod vulnus neutrum horum recipit, id ta-

## ORDO.

vulnus glutinari. Ne quidem linamentum, quod est inditum causa suppressendi sanguinis, est relinquendum inibi: nam id quoque inflammatur.

Vero oportebit non tantum cutem, sed etiam aliquid ex carne, ubi hæc suberit, comprehendere (in) sutura, vel fibula; quo hæreat valentius, neque abrumpat cutem. Utraque est optima, ex molli acia, non nimis torta, quo insadat corpore mitius. Neque est utraque injicienda nimis rara, neque nimis crebra. Si est nimis rara, non continet: si est nimis crebra, afficit vehementer; quia, quo sæpius acus transiit corpus, quoque plura loca (ut) injectum vinculum mordet, eo majores inflammationes oriuntur; quo magis æstate.

Etiam neutra desiderat ullam vim; sed eatenus est utilis, qua cutis subsequitur, quasi ducen-tem sua sponte. Tamen fere fibulæ patiuntur vulnus esse latius: sutura jungit oras, quæ ipsæ quidem ne debent contingere ex toto inter se; ut si quid humoris concreverit intus, sit (fissura) qua emanet. Si quod vulnus recipit neutrum ho-

## TRANSLATION.

inflammation, and prevents cicatrization in the wound. Not even the lint which was employed in suppressing the hæmorrhage should be left there; for that also produces inflammation.

But in order to render the suture or fibula more secure, it will be necessary to include not only the skin, but also some portion of the flesh, when this shall be under it, lest it may lacerate the skin. Each of them is best done with soft thread, not over twisted, that it may be the more easy on the part. These should be inserted, neither too far apart nor too close. If they be too distant, they will not hold: if too near each other, they will produce much pain: because, the oftener the needle has to pass through, and in proportion to the number of places transfixed by the sutures, so much greater will the inflammations be, especially in summer.

Indeed neither of them requires any force: but the operation is so far useful, as that the skin may be approximated as if it were by its own accord. Now, fibulæ generally allow wounds to be more distended: the suture joins their lips, but these ought not to touch entirely in every part, for if any humour accumulate within, there may be a way for its escape. But if a wound admit of neither the one nor the other of these applications, nevertheless it ought to be cleansed. Then, the

men purgari debet. Deinde omni vulneri primo imponenda est spongia ex aceto expressa: si sustinere aliquis aceti vim non potest, vino utendum est.

Levis plaga juvatur etiam, si ex aqua frigida expressa spongia imponitur. Sed ea, quocumque modo imposta est, dum madet, prodest: itaque, ut inarescat, non est committendum. Licetque sine peregrinis, et conquisitis, et compositis medicamentis vulnus curare. Sed si quis huic parum confidit, imponere medicamentum debet, quod sine sevo compositum sit ex iis, quæ cruentis vulneribus apta esse proposui; maximeque si caro est, Barbarum, si nervi, vel cartilago, vel aliquid ex eminentibus, quales aures, vel labra sunt, Polybi sphragidem. Alexandrinum quoque viride nervis idoneum est: eminentibusque partibus ea, quam Græci *ῥάπτουσαν* vocant.

Solet etiam, colliso corpore, exigua parte findi cutis. Quod ubi incidit, non alienum est, scalpello latius aperire; nisi muscoli, nervique juxta sunt, quos incidi non expedit: ubi satis diductum est, medicamentum imponen-

#### ORDO.

rum, tamen id debet purgari. Deinde spongia expressa ex aceto est primo imponenda omni vulneri: si aliquis non potest sustineri vim aceti, est utendum vino.

Etiam levis plaga juvatur, si spongia expressa ex frigida aqua imponitur. Sed quocumque modo ea est imposita, dum madet, prodest: itaque non est committendum, ut inarescat. Que licet curare vulnus sine peregrinis, et conquisitis, et compositis medicamentis. Sed si quis confidet parum in huic, debet imponere medicamentum, quod sit compositum sine sevo ex iis, quæ proposui esse apta cruentis vulneribus; que maxime si est caro, Barbarum, (emplastrum,) si nervi, vel cartilago, vel aliquid ex eminentibus, quales sunt aures, vel labra, sphragidem Polybi. Quoque viride Alexandrinum, (emplastrum,) est idoneum nervis: que ea quam Græci vocant *ῥάπτουσαν* (rhapsousan) eminentibus partibus.

Solet etiam cutis findi exigua parte, corpore colliso. Quod ubi incidit, non est alienum aperire latius scalpello; nisi muscoli, que nervi sunt juxta, quos non expedit incidi: ubi est satis diductum, medicamentum est imponendum.

#### TRANSLATION.

first application to every wound should be a piece of sponge expressed out of vinegar: if the patient be unable to sustain the strength of the vinegar, wine must be employed.

A slight wound is assisted even by the application of a sponge dipped in cold water. But in whatever mode it is applied, it will be beneficial while it remains moist: therefore it must not be allowed to become dry. A wound may be healed without exotic, rare, or compound remedies. But if a person have no confidence in this method, he ought to apply a dressing composed entirely without suet, of those articles which I have recommended for bloody wounds; and especially if it be in the flesh, the Barbarum plaster; if it be a nerve, or cartilage, or any of the prominent parts, such as the ears, or lips, the Sphragis of Polybus. The green Alexandrian plaster also is a proper application for wounds of the nerves; and for the prominent parts, that composition which the Greeks call Rhapsousa (54).

It also happens, that there is only a slight abrasion of the skin, in contusions of the body. When this takes place, it is not improper to dilate the wound with the knife; unless there be muscles and nerves in contact, which ought not to be divided: when

dum est. At si id, quod collisum est, quamvis parum diductum est, latius tamen aperiri propter nervos aut musculos non licet, adhibenda sunt ea, quæ humorem leniter extrahant; præcipueque ex his id, quod ῥυπαῖδες vocari proposui. Non alienum est etiam, ubicumque vulnus grave est, imposito quo id juvetur, insuper circumdare lanam succidam ex aceto et oleo; vel cataplasma, si mollis is locus est, quod leniter reprimat; si nervosus, aut musculosus, quod emolliat.

24. Fascia vero ad vulnus deligandum lintea aptissima est; eaque lata esse debet, ut semel injecta non vulnus tantum, sed paulum utrimque etiam oras ejus comprehendat. Si ab altera parte caro magis recessit, ab ea melius attrahitur: si æque ab utraque, transversa comprehendere oras debet; aut si id vulneris ratio non patitur, media primum injicienda est, ut tum in utramque partem ducatur. Sic autem deliganda est, ut et contineat, nec adstringat: quod non continetur, elabitur; quod nimis adstrictum est, cancro periclitatur. Hieme sæpius fascia circuire debet: æstate, quoties necesse

## ORDO.

At si id, quod est collisum, quamvis est parum diductum, tamen non licet aperiri (vulnus) latius, propter nervos aut musculos, ea sunt adhibenda, quæ leniter extrahant humorem; que ex his præcipue id, quod proposui vocari ῥυπαῖδες (rhyodes). Etiam est non alienum, ubicumque vulnus est grave, circumdare succidam lanam insuper ex aceto et oleo, quo imposito, id juvetur; vel, si locus est mollis, cataplasma quod reprimat leniter; si (est) nervosus, aut musculosus, quod emolliat.

24. Vero lintea fascia est aptissima ad deligandum vulnus; que ea debet esse lata, ut semel injecta, comprehendat non tantum vulnus, sed etiam paulum utrimque oras ejus. Si caro recessit magis ab altera parte, attrahitur melius ab ea: si æque ab utraque, debet comprehendere oras transversa; aut si ratio vulneris non patitur id, media est primum injicienda, ut tum ducatur in utramque partem. Autem est sic deliganda, ut et contineat, nec adstringat; quod non continetur, elabitur; quod est nimis adstrictum periclitatur cancro. Hieme fascia debet circuire sæpius: æstate, est

## TRANSLATION.

it has been sufficiently distended, the dressing should be applied. But if that part which is bruised, do not admit of dilatation, on account of the proximity of nerves and muscles, although the opening be not sufficient, those applications must be used which excite a gentle discharge, and the fittest for this purpose is that which I have called Rhyodes. Neither is it improper also, wherever the wound is extensive, after having applied suitable dressings, to surround the part with rancid wool, dipt in vinegar and oil; or, an astringent cataplasm, if the part be soft; but if nervous, or muscular, an emollient one.

24. Now the best bandage for a wound is a linen roller; and this ought to be sufficiently broad, so that one turn of it may not only cover the wound, but include the margins a little on each side of it. If the flesh have receded more from one side, it is better to make pressure from that side; if both edges have equally retracted, then the bandage ought to embrace the lips of the wound transversely; but if the nature of the wound will not admit of this, let it be first applied on the middle, and afterwards brought round right and left. Now it must be put on in such a manner, that it may not only hold on, but it must not arrest the circulation: when it is not sufficiently tight, it will slip off; but that which is too tight endangers a mortification. The bandage ought to be longer in winter: in summer,



est. Tum extrema pars ejus inferioribus acu assuenda est : nam nodus vulnus lædit, nisi tamen longe est.

Illo neminem decipi decet, ut propriam viscerum curationem requirat, de quibus supra posui. Nam plaga ipsa curanda extrinsecus, vel sutura, vel alio medicinæ genere est. In visceribus nihil movendum est ; nisi, si quid aut ex jecinore, aut liene, aut pulmone dumtaxat extremo dependet, id præcidatur. Alioquin vulnus interiorius ea victus ratio eaque medicamenta sanabunt, quæ cuique visceri convenire superiore libro proposui.

25. His ita primo die ordinatis, homo in lecto collocandus est ; isque si grave vulnus est, abstinere, quantum vires patiuntur, ante inflammationem, cibo debet ; bibere, donec sitim finiat, aquam calidam, vel, si æstas est, ac neque febris, neque dolor est, etiam frigidam. Adeo tamen nihil perpetuum est, sed semper pro vi corporis æstimandum, ut imbecillitas etiam cibum protinus facere necessarium possit ; tenuem scilicet, et exiguum, qui

## ORDO.

quoties necesse. Tum extrema pars ejus inferioribus est assuenda acu : nam nodus lædit vulnus, nisi tamen est longe.

Decet neminem decipi illo, ut requirat propriam curationem viscerum, de quibus posui supra. Nam plaga est curanda ipsa extrinsecus, vel sutura, vel alio genere medicinæ. Nihil in visceribus est movendum, nisi, si quid aut ex jecinore, aut liene, aut pulmone dumtaxat, dependet extremo, id præcidatur. Alioquin, ea ratio victus, quæ ea medicamenta sanabunt interiorius vulnus, quæ proposui convenire cuique vulneri superiore libro.

25. His ita ordinatis primo die, homo est collocandus in lecto ; quæ, si vulnus est grave, is debet abstinere (a) cibo, quantum vires patiuntur, ante inflammationem ; (debet) bibere calidam aquam, vel si est æstas, ac est neque febris, neque dolor, etiam frigidam (aquam), donec finiat sitim. Tamen adeo nihil est perpetuum, sed (est) semper æstimandum pro vi corporis, ut imbecillitas etiam possit facere cibum protinus necessarium ; scilicet tenuem (cibum) et exiguum (in quantitate), qui tan-

## TRANSLATION.

no longer than is strictly requisite. Then the extremity of it should be sewed to the inferior parts with a needle and thread : since a knot would injure the wound, unless it were at some distance from it.

Now it behoves every surgeon to know, that the viscera which I have already mentioned, require no particular method of treatment. For an external wound is to be treated either by a suture, or some other remedy. In the bowels nothing should be moved, unless it should happen to be some depending portion of the extremity, either of the liver, the spleen, or the lungs, which may be cut off. In every other respect, wounds of the intestines are to be treated by that regimen and diet, which I have already mentioned in a former book as proper for each viscus.

25. These means being observed on the first day, the patient must be placed in bed ; and if the wound be severe, he must abstain from food to the extent that his strength will permit before inflammation comes on : he may quench his thirst by drinking warm water, or even cold water, if it be in the summer season, and there be neither fever nor pain. However, a fixed principle cannot be laid down, but that a proper attention must always be had to the constitutional powers, since a case of evident weakness may render it necessary to give food immediately ; that is to say, something light, and limited in quantity, just sufficient to sustain life. There

tantum sustineat. Multique etiam ex profluvio sanguinis intermorientes ante ullam curationem vino reficiendi sunt; quod alioqui inimicissimum vulnere est.

26. Nimis vero intumescere vulnus, periculosum; nihil intumescere, periculosissimum est: illud indicium est magnæ inflammationis; hoc, emortui corporis. Protinusque, si mens homini consistit, si nulla febris accessit, scire licet, mature vulnus sanum fore. Ac ne febris quidem terrere debet, si in magno vulnere, dum inflammatio est, permanet. Illa perniciosa est, quæ vel levi vulnere supervenit, vel ultra tempus inflammationis durat, vel delirium movet: vel si nervorum rigorem aut distentionem, quæ ex vulnere orta est, ea non finit.

Vomitum quoque biliosum non voluntarius, vel protinus, et percussus est aliquis, vel dum inflammatio manet, malum signum est in iis dumtaxat, quorum vel nervi, vel etiam nervosi loci vulnerati sunt. Sponte tamen vomere, non alienum est; præcipue iis, quibus in consuetudine fuit: sed neque protinus post cibum, neque jam inflam-

## ORDO.

tum sustineat (ægrum). Que etiam multi intermorientes ex profluvio sanguinis, sunt reficiendi vino ante ullam curationem; quod alioqui est inimicissimum vulnere.

26. Vero est periculosum, vulnus intumescere nimis; (est) periculosissimum, (vulnus,) intumescere nihil: illud est indicium magnæ inflammationis; hoc, corporis emortui. Que protinus si mens consistit homini, si nulla febris accessit, licet scire, vulnus fore sanum mature. Ac ne quidem debet febris terrere, si permanet in magno vulnere, dum est inflammatio. Illa est perniciosa, quæ vel supervenit levi vulnere, vel durat ultra tempus inflammationis, vel movet delirium: vel rigorem aut distentionem nervorum, quæ est orta ex vulnere, si ea non finit.

Quoque biliosum vomitum non voluntarius, vel protinus, ut (cum) aliquis est percussus, vel dum inflammatio manet, est malum signum dumtaxat in iis, quorum vel nervi, vel etiam nervosi loci sunt vulnerati. Tamen non est alienum vomere sponte; præcipue (in) iis, in quibus fuit consuetudine: sed neque (est alienum) protinus post cibum, neque in-

## TRANSLATION.

are many also, sinking under hæmorrhage, even require wine to be administered to them, before any thing else, which is highly inimical to a wound in other respects.

26. Now it is a dangerous symptom when a wound becomes much tumified; but very much so when there is no tumefaction at all: the first betokens great inflammation, the latter of mortification. We may immediately conclude that a wound will soon heal, if the patient retain his sensibility, and be free from fever. Indeed we ought not to be alarmed, even when there is fever, during the inflammatory stage, in a large wound. It is injurious when it either comes on after a slight wound, or lasts beyond the time of the inflammation; or excites delirium; or when it does not remove a tetanus, or convulsion, occasioned by a wound.

Also involuntary bilious vomiting taking place, either immediately after the wound, or during the inflammatory stage, is only a bad symptom in those whose nerves, or nervous parts have been wounded. Yet it is not improper to excite vomiting; especially in those who have been accustomed to it; but this must

matione orta, neque cum in superioribus partibus plaga est.

27. Biduo sic vulnere habito, tertio die id aperiendum, detergendaque sanies ex aqua frigida est, eademque rursus injicienda sunt. Quinto jam die, quanta inflammatio futura est, se ostendit. Quo die, rursus detecto vulnere, considerandus color est: qui si lividus, aut pallidus, aut varius, aut niger est, scire licet, malum vulnus esse; idque, quandocumque animadversum est, terrere nos potest. Album, aut rubicundum esse ulcus, commodissimum est. Item cutis dura, crassa, dolens, periculum ostendit: bona signa sunt, ubi hæc sine dolore, tenuis, et mollis est. Sed si glutinatur vulnus, aut leviter intumuit, eadem sunt imponenda, quæ primo fuerunt: si gravis inflammatio est, neque glutinandi spes est, ea quæ pus moveant. Jamque aquæ quoque calidæ necessarius usus est, ut et materiam digerat, et duritiam emolliat, et pus citet.

Ea sic temperanda est, ut manu contingenti jucunda sit; et usque eo adhibenda, donec aliquid minuisse ex

#### ORDO.

inflammatione jam orta, neque cum plaga est in superioribus partibus.

27. Vulnere habito sic biduo, id est aperiendum tertio die, quæ sanies detergenda ex frigida aqua, quæ eadem sunt injicienda rursus. Jam quinto die, quanta inflammatio est futura, ostendit se. Quo die, vulnere detecto rursus, color est considerandus: qui si est lividus, aut pallidus, aut niger, aut varius; licet scire, vulnus esse malum; quæ quandocumque, id est animadversum, potest terrere nos. Ulcus esse album aut rubicundum, est commodissimum. Item cutis dolens, dura, crassa, ostendit periculum: ubi est tensus et mollis, sine dolore, hæc sunt bona signa. Sed si vulnus glutinatur, aut intumuit leviter, eadem sunt imponenda, quæ fuerunt (imponenda) primo: si inflammatio est, gravis, neque est spes glutinandi, ea quæ moveant pus. Quæ jam quoque usus calidæ aquæ est necessarius, et ut digerat materiam, et emolliat duritiam, et citet pus.

Ea est sic temperanda ut sit jucunda contingenti manu; et adhibenda usque eo, donec videatur

#### TRANSLATION.

neither be done immediately after food, nor after the inflammation has commenced, nor when the wound is in the superior parts.

27. The wound being retained in this state for two days, should be opened on the third, the sanies to be washed off with cold water, and the same kind of dressings again applied. Now on the fifth day, the extent of the inflammation may be ascertained. On which day the wound must be uncovered, its appearance examined, and if livid, or pale, or varicoloured, or black, we may consider it a bad case; and whenever such an appearance is observed, we have some cause for alarm. It is most advantageous for a wound to be white or ruddy. Also the skin being hard, thick, and painful, denotes danger: but when it is free from pain, thin, and soft, the symptoms are favourable. But if the wound be agglutinated, or slightly tumified, the same dressings are to be applied, which were at first: if the inflammation be severe, and no hope of union, we must have recourse to suppuratives. At this juncture the use of warm water also will be necessary; that it may dissipate the matter, soften the hardness, and accelerate the pus.

The temperature should be agreeable to the hand when in contact, and to be continued until it appear to have diminished the swelling in some degree, and to



tumore, coloremque ulceri magis naturalem reddidisse videatur. Post id fomentum, si late plaga non patet, imponi protinus emplastrum debet; maximeque, si grande vulnus est, tetrapharmacum; si in articulis, digitis, locis cartilaginosis, rhyodes: at si latius hiat, illud emplastrum liquari ex irino unguento oportet, eoque illita linamenta disponi per plagam; deinde emplastrum supra dari, et super id succidam lanam; minusque etiam, quam primo, fasciæ adstringendæ sunt.

28. Proprie quædam in articulis visenda sunt. In quibus si præcisi nervi sunt, qui continebant, debilitas ejus partis sequitur. Si id dubium est, et ex acuto telo plaga est, ea transversa commodior est: si ex retuso et gravi, nullum in figura discrimen est; sed videndum est; pus supra articulum, an infra nascatur. Si sub eo nascitur, albumque et crassum diu fertur, nervum præcisum esse credibile est; magisque, quo majores dolores inflammationesque, et quo maturius excitatæ sunt.

Quamvis autem non abscissus nervus est; tamen, si circa tumor durus diu

## ORDO.

minuisse aliquid ex tumore, que reddidisse magis naturalem colorem ulceri. Post id fomentum, si plaga non patet late, emplastrum debet imponi protinus; que maxime si vulnus est grande, tetrapharmacum; si (est) in articulis, digitis, cartilaginosis locis, rhyodes: at si hiat latius, oportet liquari illud idem emplastrum ex irino unguento, que linamenta illita eo disponi per plagam; deinde emplastrum dari supra, et super id succidam lanam; que etiam fasciæ sunt adstringendæ minus, quam primo.

28. Quædam sunt visenda proprie in articulis. In quibus si nervi qui continebant, sunt præcisi, debilitas ejus partis sequitur. Si id est dubium, plaga est ex acuto telo, ea transversa est commodior: si (plaga est) ex retuso et gravi (telo), est nullum discrimen in figura; sed est videndum, an pus nascatur supra articulum, (an) infra. Si nascitur sub eo, que fertur diu album et crassum, est credibile nervum esse præcisum; que magis, quo sunt majores dolores que inflammationes, et quo maturius (sunt) excitatæ.

Autem quamvis nervus non est abscissus, tamen si tumor perma-

## TRANSLATION.

have rendered the ulcer of a more natural colour. After this fomentation, if the wound be not much distended, a plaster should be applied immediately, and if a large wound, the tetrapharmacum should be preferred: if in the joints, fingers, or cartilaginous parts, the rhyodes: but if the wound be considerably dilated, this plaster must be dissolved with a portion of iris-ointment spread upon linen, and laid over the wound: then the plaster applied above, and over that, the rancid wool; the tension of the rollers may be less than at first.

28. There are some peculiarities to be observed in the joints. If the nerves (*ligaments*) which held them together be divided, debility of that part will be the consequence. If that be doubtful, and the wound inflicted by some sharp weapon in a transverse direction, the cure will be easier; if with a blunt and clumsy instrument, the figure of it will make no difference; but we must watch and ascertain whether the matter be formed above or below the joint. If it arise from below, and is discharged for a long time white and thick, it is probable that the ligament has been cut, and the more so, the greater the pains and inflammations are excited, and the sooner they began.

But although the ligament be not divided, yet, if the surrounding tumefaction

permanet, necesse est, et diuturnum ulcus esse, et, sano quoque eo, tumorem permanere: futurumque est, ut tarde membrum id vel extendatur, vel contrahatur. Major tamen in extendendo mora est, ubi recurvato articulo curatio adhibita est; quam in recurvando eo, quod rectum continuerimus. Collocari quoque membrum, quod ictum est, ratione certa debet: si glutinandum est, ut superius sit; si in inflammatione est, ut in neutram partem inclinatum sit; si jam pus profluit, ut devexum sit.

Optimum etiam medicamentum, quies est: moveri, et ambulare, nisi sanis, alienum est. Minus tamen iis periculosum, qui in capite vel brachiis, quam qui in inferioribus partibus vulnerati sunt. Minimeque ambulatio convenit, femine, aut crure, aut pede laborante. Locus, in quo cubabit, tepidus esse debet. Balneum quoque, dum parum vulnus purum est, inter res infestissimas est: nam id et humidum et sordidum reddit: ex quibus ad cancerum transitus esse consuevit. Levis frictio recte adhibetur; sed iis partibus, quæ longius absunt a vulnere.

## ORDO.

net durus circa ulcus diu, est necesse, et ulcus esse diuturnum, et quoque, eo sano, tumorem permanere: que futurum est, ut id membrum vel extendatur tarde, vel contrahatur. Tamen est major mora in extendendo, ubi curatio est adhibita recurvato articulo; quam in recurvando eo, quod continuerimus rectum. Quoque membrum, quod est ictum, debet collocari certa ratione: ut sit superius, si est glutinandum; ut sit inclinatum in neutram partem, si est in inflammatione; ut sit devexum, si pus jam profluit.

Quies etiam est optimum medicamentum; est alienum moveri, et ambulare, nisi sanis. Tamen (est) minus periculosum iis, qui sunt vulnerati in capite vel brachiis, quam qui (sunt vulnerati) in inferioribus partibus. Que ambulatio convenit minime, femine, aut crure, aut pede laborante. Locus, in quo cubabit, debet esse tepidus. Quoque dum vulnus est parum purum, balneum est inter infestissimas res: nam id reddit (ulcus) et humidum, et sordidum: ex quibus consuevit transitus esse ad cancerum. Levis frictio adhibetur recte; sed iis partibus, quæ absunt longius a vulnere.

## TRANSLATION.

remain for a long time hard, the ulcer must necessarily be very tedious, and even when healed, the tumour will remain: and it will be a considerable time before that limb acquire either extension or flexion. Now the faculty of extension will be more tardily acquired, when it has been treated in the flexed position, than that of flexion in the limb which we have kept straight. The wounded limb ought to be placed also in a certain position, so that in order to accelerate adhesion, it should be elevated; if in the inflammatory stage, it should not be inclined either way; when the matter has commenced to flow, it should be kept in a depending posture.

Rest also is an excellent remedy: for motion and walking are improper, except to persons in health. Yet it is less dangerous to those who have been wounded in the head, or in the arms, than to those who have been wounded in the lower extremities. Walking is particularly improper when the thigh, leg, or foot is injured. The patient's chamber ought to be lukewarm. Bathing also, while the wound remains foul, is of all things the most injurious; for it renders it both moist and filthy: after which a transition to gangrene is not uncommon. Gentle friction may be advantageously applied; but to those parts which are a considerable distance from the wound.

29. Inflammatione finita, vulnus purgandum est. Id optime faciunt tincta in melle linamenta; supraque idem emplastrum, vel enneapharmacum dandum est. Tum demum vero purum ulcus est, cum rubet, ac nimium neque siccum, neque humidum est. At quodcumque sensu caret, quod non naturaliter sentit, quod nimium aut aridum aut humidum est, quod aut albidum, aut pallidum, aut lividum, aut nigrum est, id purum non est.

30. Purgato, sequitur ut impleatur. Jamque calida aqua eatenus necessaria est, ut sanies removeatur. Lanæ succidæ supervacuum usus est: lota melius circumdatur. Ad implendum autem vulnus proficiunt quidem etiam medicamenta aliqua: itaque ea adhiberi non alienum est; ut butyrum cum rosa, et exigua mellis parte; aut cum eadem rosa tetrpharmacum; aut ex rosa linamenta.

Plus tamen proficit balneum rarum, cibi boni succi, vitatis omnibus acribus; sed jam pleniores. Nam et avis, et venatio, et suilla elixa dari potest. Vinum omnibus, dum febris, dum inflammatio est, alienum est: itemque

## ORDO.

29. Inflammatione finita, vulnus est purgandum. Linamenta tincta in melle faciunt id optime; que idem emplastrum, vel enneapharmacum est dandum supra. Vero tum demum ulcus est purum, cum rubet, ac est neque nimium siccum, neque humidum. At quodcumque caret sensu, quod non sentit naturaliter, quod est aut nimium aridum, aut humidum, quod est aut albidum, aut pallidum, aut lividum, aut nigrum, id non est purum.

30. (Vulnere) purgato, sequitur ut impleatur. Que jam calida aqua est necessaria eatenus, ut sanies removeatur. Usus succidæ lanæ est supervacuum: lota (lana) circumdatur melius. Autem ad implendum vulnus, etiam aliqua medicamenta proficiunt quidem; itaque non est alienum adhiberi ea; ut butyrum cum rosa, et exigua parte mellis; aut tetrpharmacum cum eadem rosa; aut linamenta ex rosa.

Tamen rarum balneum proficit plus, cibi boni succi, omnibus acribus vitatis; sed jam pleniores. Nam et suilla, et venatio, et avis elixa, potest dari. Vinum est alienum omnibus, dum est febris, dum (est) inflammatio; que item

## TRANSLATION.

29. When the inflammation shall have ceased, the wound should be cleansed, and linen dipped in honey will answer this purpose best; and over that must be applied the same plaster (*tetrpharmacum*) or the *enneapharmacum*. Now an ulcer may be considered clean, when it has become red, and is neither too dry, nor too moist. But whatever ulcer is insensible, or which feels unnaturally, or is too dry, or too moist, which is either white, or pale, or livid, or black, is foul.

30. The wound being cleansed, it follows that regeneration will be facilitated: and for this purpose, warm water will be necessary, in order to remove the sanies. The application of rancid wool would be improper, let it be surrounded with washed wool, which is better. There are also certain applications which facilitate the granulations in a wound; therefore it may not be improper to apply them; such as butter with the oil of roses, and a small portion of honey; or the *tetrpharmacum* with the rose oil; or lint moistened in the same.

A moderate use of the bath now will be more efficacious, with good juicy food more copiously given, avoiding every thing acrid. We may now permit fowls, game, and boiled pork to be given. Wine is pernicious in all cases, while there



usque ad cicatricem, si nervi, musculive vulnerati sunt; etiam, si alte caro. At si plaga in summa cute, generis tutioris est, potest non pervetus, modice tamen datum, ad implendum quoque proficere. Si quid molliendum est, quod in nervosis locis, musculosisque necessarium est, cerato quoque super vulnus utendum est. At si caro supercrevit, modice reprimat siccum linamentum; vehementius squama æris. Si plus est, quod tolli opus est, adhibenda sunt etiamnum vehementiora, quæ corpus exedunt. Cicatricem, post omnia hæc, commode inducit lycium ex passo aut lacte dilutum; vel etiam per se impositum linamentum.

31. Hic ordo felicitis curationis est: sed quædam tamen pericula incidere consuerunt. Interdum enim vetustas ulcus occupat, induciturque ei callus, et circum oræ crassæ livent: post quæ, quidquid medicamentorum ingeritur, parum proficit: quod fere negligenter curato ulceri supervenit.

Interdum vel ex nimia inflammatione, vel ob æstus immodicos, vel ob nimia frigora, vel quia nimis vulnus adstrictum est, vel quia corpus senile,

#### ORDO.

usque ad cicatricem, si nervi, vel musculi sunt vulnerati; etiam si caro (est) vulneratus alte. At si plaga est tutioris generis in summa cute, tamen non pervetus (vinum) datum modice, potest quoque proficere ad implendum, (tamen) datum modice. Si quid est molliendum, quod est necessarium in nervosis que musculosis locis, est utendum quoque cerato super vulnus. At si caro supercrevit, siccum linamentum reprimat modice; squama æris vehementius. Si est plus, quod est opus tolli, etiamnum vehementiora sunt adhibenda, quæ exedunt corpus. Post omnia hæc, lycium, dilutum ex passo aut lacte, inducit cicatricem commode; vel etiam siccum linamentum impositum per se.

31. Hic est ordo felicitis curationis: sed tamen quædam pericula consuerunt incidere. Enim interdum vetustas occupat ulcus, que callus inducitur ei, et oræ circum crassæ livent: post quæ, quidquid medicamentorum ingeritur, proficit parum; quod fere supervenit ulceri curato negligenter.

Interdum cancer occupat vel ex nimia inflammatione, vel ob immodicos æstus, vel ob nimia frigora, vel quia vulnus est adstrictum nimis, vel quia corpus

#### TRANSLATION.

is fever or inflammation: and indeed, until cicatrization takes place, if the nerves or muscles be wounded, or even the flesh be deeply penetrated. But if the wound be only of the integuments, as this is of a safer kind, wine may be given with advantage, provided it be not very old, and only given in moderation. If it be necessary to soften any part which may be requisite in nervous and muscular structure, cerate must be applied over the wound. But if the granulations have been too profuse, a little dry lint will repress it gently; or the scales of copper (*the peroxyde*) more powerfully. If the luxuriant granulations require still more to be taken away, more active corrosives must be employed. After these, lycium diluted with passum, or with milk, or even dry lint laid on by itself, may be employed advantageously to induce a cicatrix.

31. Such then is the order of a successful treatment: but untoward circumstances are accustomed to happen. Sometimes an ulcer becomes chronic, and a callus induced; the surrounding edges become thick and livid: after which, whatever remedial agents may be employed, profit little; this is generally the result of an ulcer negligently treated.

Sometimes, either from violent inflammation, or excessive heat or cold, or an over

aut mali habitus est, cancer occupat. Id genus a Græcis diductum in species est; nostris vocabulis non est. Omnis autem cancer non solum id corrumpit, quod occupavit; sed etiam serpit: deinde aliis aliisque signis discernitur.

Nam modo super inflammationem rubor ulcus ambit, isque cum dolore procedit; *ἔρυσίπελας*, Græci nominant. Modo ulcus nigrum est, quia caro ejus corrupta est: idque vehementius etiam putrescendo intenditur, ubi vulnus humidum est, et ex nigro ulcere humor pallidus fertur, malique odoris est; carunculæque corruptæ, interdum etiam nervi ac membranæ resolvuntur; specillumque demissum descendit aut in latus, aut deorsum: eoque vitio nonnumquam os quoque afficitur. Modo oritur ea, quam Græci *γάγγραιναν* appellant.

Priora in qualibet parte corporis fiunt: hoc in prominentibus membris, id est inter ungues, et alas, vel inguina; fereque in senibus, vel in iis, quorum corpus mali habitus est. Caro in ulcere vel nigra, vel livida est, sed sicca et arida; proximaque cutis plerumque subnigris pustulis impletur: deinde ei

## ORDO.

est senile, aut mali habitus. Id genus diductum est a Græcis in species: non est nostris vocabulis. Autem omnis cancer non solum corrumpit id, quod occupavit; sed etiam serpit; deinde discernitur aliis que aliis signis.

Nam modo rubor super inflammationem ambit ulcus, que is procedit cum dolore; Græci nominant *ἔρυσίπελας* (erysipelas). Modo ulcus est nigrum, quia caro ejus corrupta est; que id intenditur etiam vehementius putrescendo, ubi vulnus est humidum, et pallidus humor fertur ex nigro ulcere, que est mali odoris, que corruptæ carunculæ, interdum etiam nervi ac membranæ resolvuntur; que specillum demissum descendit aut in latus, aut deorsum: que nonnumquam os quoque afficitur eo vitio. Modo ea (*species*) oritur, quam Græci appellant *γάγγραιναν* (gangrenam).

Priora fiunt in qualibet parte corporis: hoc in prominentibus membris, id est, inter ungues, et alas, vel inguina; que fere in senibus, vel in iis corpus quorum est mali habitus. Caro in ulcere est vel nigra, vel livida, sed sicca et arida; que proxima cutis plerumque impletur subni-

## TRANSLATION.

tight bandage, or old age, or a vitiated habit of body, gangrene takes place. This disease is divided into several species by the Greeks; for which we have no terms in our language. Now gangrene not only destroys that part where it takes place, but it extends: it is to be distinguished by the various symptoms hereinafter described.

Now there is generally a redness extending beyond the inflammation, accompanied with pain; the Greeks call this Erysipelas. Sometimes the ulcer is black, because the flesh of it is vitiated; and that is greatly extended as decomposition goes on, and when the wound is moist, discharging a pallid fetid humour from a dark ulcer: sometimes pieces of dead flesh, and even nerves and membranes are detached; and a probe being introduced will pass either laterally, or directly downwards: sometimes the bone also is diseased: and sometimes that species arises which the Greeks term gangrene.

The former maladies take place in all parts of the body: this latter in the extremities: that is, between the nails and arm-pits, or the groins; and mostly in old persons, or in those of a bad habit of body. The flesh in such an ulcer is either black, or livid, but dry and arid; and the adjoining cuticle is generally covered

proxima, vel pallida, vel livida, fereque rugosa et sine sensu est; ulterior in inflammatione est: omniaque ea simul serpunt: ulcus, in locum pustulosum; pustulæ, in eum, qui pallet aut livet; pallor aut livor, in id, quod inflammatum est; inflammatio, in id, quod integrum est, transit.

Inter hæc deinde febris acuta oritur, ingensque sitis: quibusdam etiam delirium accedit: alii, quamvis mentis suæ compotes sunt, balbutiendo tamen vix sensus suos explicant: incipit affici stomachus: fit foedi spiritus ipse odor. Atque initium quidem ejus mali recipit curationem: ubi vero penitus insedit, insanabile est; plurimumque sub frigido sudore moriuntur.

32. Ac pericula quidem vulnerum hæc sunt. Vetus autem ulcus scalpello concidendum est, excidendæque ejus oræ, et quidquid super eas livet æque incidendum. Si varicula intus est, quæ id sanari prohibet, ea quoque excidenda. Deinde, ubi sanguis emissus, novatumque vulnus est, eadem curatio adhibenda, quæ in recentibus vulneribus exposita est. Si scalpello ali-

## ORDO.

gris pustulis; proxima deinde est vel pallida, vel livida, que fere rugosa et sine sensu: ulterior est in inflammatione; que omnia ea serpunt simul: ulcus transit in pustulosum locum; pustulæ, in eum qui pallet aut livet; pallor aut livor, in id quod est inflammatum; inflammatio, in id quod est integrum.

Inter hæc deinde acuta febris oritur, que ingens sitis: quibusdam etiam delirium accedit: alii, quamvis sunt compotes suæ mentis, tamen vix balbutiendo explicant suos sensus: stomachus incipit affici: spiritus ipse fit foedi odoris. Atque initium quidem ejus mali recipit curationem: vero ubi insedit penitus, est insanabile; que plurimi moriuntur sub frigido sudore.

32. Ac hæc quidem sunt pericula vulnerum. Autem vetus ulcus est concidendum scalpello, que oræ ejus excidendæ, et quidquid livet super eas (est) æque incidendum. Si varicula est intus, quæ prohibet id sanari, ea quoque (est) excidenda. Deinde ubi sanguis emissus est, que vulnus novatum, eadem curatio (est) adhibenda, quæ exposita est in recentibus vulneribus. Si aliquis non vult uti scalpello, id emplas-

## TRANSLATION.

with dark-coloured pustules; then the next to this is either pale or livid, and generally corrugated and insensible; beyond this is the seat of inflammation: all these extend simultaneously; the ulcer invades the pustulous part; the pustules that which is pale or livid; the pallor or livor, that which is inflamed; and the inflammation, the sound cuticle.

During the progress of these symptoms, acute fever comes on, and excessive thirst: some patients even become delirious: others, although in possession of their intellects, can scarcely make themselves understood, on account of stammering: the stomach becomes affected: the breath itself becomes fetid. Now this disease admits of cure in its incipient stage: but when it has advanced deeply, it is irremediable, and most patients die in a cold perspiration.

32. Such are the dangers which accompany wounds. Now an old ulcer should be excised with the knife, and its edges pared, and the livid part extending beyond them should be scarified. If there be a small varix within, which retards the cure, that also must be removed. Afterwards, when a hæmorrhage is induced, and by this means a fresh wound produced, the same mode of treatment is to be pursued which has been directed in recent wounds. If any one be unwilling to employ the scalpel, that plaster which is composed of laudanum may regenerate it, and when



quis uti non vult, potest sanare id emplastrum, quod ex ladano fit: et, cum ulcus sub eo exesum est, id, quo cicatrix inducitur.

33. Id autem, quod ἐρυσίπτελας vocari dixi, non solum vulnere supervenire, sed sine hoc quoque oriri consuevit: atque interdum periculum majus affert; utique, si circa cervices aut caput constitit.

Oportet, si vires patiuntur, sanguinem mittere: deinde imponere simul reprimentia et refrigerantia; maximeque cerussam solani succo, aut Cimoliam cretam aqua pluviali exceptam, aut ex eadem aqua subactam farinam, cupresso adjecta, aut, si tenerius corpus est, lenticula.

Quidquid impositum est, betæ folio contegendum est, et super linteolum frigida aqua madens imponendum. Si per se refrigerantia parum proderunt, miscenda erunt hoc modo: sulphuris p. ℥. i. cerussæ et croci, singulorum p. ℥. xii. s., eaque cum vino conterenda sunt, et id his illinendum: aut, si durior locus est, solani folia contrita suillæ adipi miscenda sunt, et illita linteolo superinjicienda.

## ORDO.

trum quod fit ex ladano potest sanare: et cum ulcus sub eo est exesum, id (emplastrum) quo cicatrix inducitur.

33. Autem id, quod dixi vocari ἐρυσίπτελας (erysipelas), consuevit non solum supervenire vulnere, sed quoque oriri sine hoc: atque interdum affert majus periculum; utique si constitit circa cervices aut caput.

Oportet mittere sanguinem, si vires patiuntur: deinde imponere simul reprimentia et refrigerantia; que maxime cerussam exceptam succo solani, aut Cimoliam cretam aqua pluviali, aut farinam subactam eadem aqua, cupresso adjecta, aut lenticula, si corpus est tenerius.

Quidquid est impositum, est contegendum folio betæ, et linteolum madens frigida aqua imponendum super. Si refrigerantia proderunt parum per se, erunt miscenda hoc modo: sulphuris p. ℥. i. cerussæ et croci, singulorum p. ℥. xii. s. que ea sunt conterenda cum vino, et id illinendum his: aut si locus est durior, folia solani contrita sunt miscenda adipi suillæ, et illita linteolo superinjicienda.

## TRANSLATION.

the ulcer has been removed in this manner, we may then apply that which promotes cicatrization.

33. Now that which I have named Erysipelas, not only supervenes on a wound, but arises without one: and is sometimes accompanied with very great danger; especially if it occupy the neck or head.

If the strength permit of it, it will be necessary to let blood: afterwards to apply such things as may at the same time act as an astrigent and refrigerant; particularly the carbonate of lead, mixed with the juice of nightshade, or Cimolian chalk with rain water, or flour made into a paste with the same water, with the addition of cypress, or lentil, if the part be tender.

Whatever is employed should be covered with a leaf of beet, and a linen rag moistened with cold water laid over it. If refrigerants be insufficient by themselves, they should be mixed in this manner: of sulphur p. ℥. i. carbonate of lead, saffron, each p. ℥. xii. s. These are to be rubbed down with wine, and spread over the part: or if the place be very hard, the leaves of nightshade, bruised together with some hog's lard spread upon linen and applied.

At si nigrities est, nequedum serpit, imponenda sunt, quæ carnem putrem lenius exedunt: repurgatumque ulcus, sic, ut cetera, nutriendum est. Si magis putre est, jamque procedit ac serpit, opus est vehementius erodentibus. Si ne hæc quidem evincunt, aduri locus debet, donec ex eo nullus humor feratur: nam quod sanum est, siccum est, cum aduritur.

Post ustionem putris ulceris, superponenda sunt, quæ crustas a vivo resolvant; eas ἐσχάρας Græci nominant. Ubi eæ exciderunt, purgandum ulcus, maxime melle et resina est: sed aliis quoque purgari potest, quibus purulenta curantur, eodemque modo ad sanitatem perducendum est.

34. Gangrænam vero, si nondum plane tenet, sed adhuc incipit, curare non difficillimum est; utique in corpore juvenili: et magis etiam, si musculi integri sunt; si nervi vel læsi non sunt, vel leviter affecti sunt; neque ullus magnus articulus nudatus est; aut carnis in eo loco paulum est, ideoque non multum, quod putresceret, fuit; consistitque eo loco vitium; quod maxime fieri in digito potest.

#### ORDO.

At si est nigrities, nequedum serpit, quæ exedunt lenius putrem carnem sunt imponenda: que ulcus repurgatum, est nutriendum sic ut cetera. Si est magis putre, que jam procedit ac serpit, est opus erodentibus vehementius. Si ne quidem hæc evincunt, locus debet aduri donec nullus humor feratur ex eo: nam quod est sanum, est siccum cum aduritur.

Post ustionem putris ulceris (ea medicamenta) sunt superponenda quæ resolvant crustas a vivo; eas (crustas) Græci nominant ἐσχάρας (escharas). Ubi eæ exciderunt, ulcus est purgandum, maxime melle et resina: sed potest purgari quoque aliis quibus purulenta (vulnera) curantur, que est perducendum ad sanitatem eodem modo.

34. Vero est non difficillimum curare gangrænam, si tenet nondum plane, sed adhuc incipit; utique in juvenili corpore: et etiam magis si musculi sunt integri; si nervi sunt vel non læsi, vel sunt leviter affecti; neque ullus magnus articulus nudatus est; aut est paulum carnis in eo loco, que ideo non fuit nullum quod putresceret; que vitium consistit eo loco; quod maxime potest fieri in digito.

#### TRANSLATION.

But if there be blackness, without extension, such applications must be employed which will gently corrode the depraved part: and the ulcer being now cleansed, must be dressed like any other. If it be more putrid, and now begins to advance and spread, more powerful corrosives must be used. If even these fail to subdue the disease, the part must be cauterized, until moisture cease to be discharged from it; for the sound parts will remain dry when burnt.

After the cauterization of a putrid ulcer, those applications should be employed which will detach the sloughs from the animated flesh; the Greeks have termed them Eschars. When these have been removed, the ulcer must be dressed with honey and resin; but other detergents may be used, such as are applied to purulent wounds, and the same plan of treatment adopted.

34. Now it is not so difficult to cure gangrene, if it be not fully developed, and as yet incipient, especially in youth: and still more so when the muscles are sound; if the tendons are uninjured, or but slightly affected; and no large joint laid bare; or the part slightly covered with flesh, and on that account not much which could become putrid, and if the disease be confined to that place; this may very possibly happen in the finger.

In ejusmodi casu primum est, si vires patiuntur, sanguinem mittere: deinde, quidquid aridum est, et intentione quadam proximum quoque locum male habet, usque sanum corpus concidere. Medicamenta vero, dum malum serpit, adhibenda nulla sunt, quæ pus movere consuerunt; ideoque ne aqua quidem calida. Gravia quoque, quamvis reprimantia, aliena sunt; sed his quam levissimis opus est: superque ea, quæ inflammata sunt, utendum est refrigerantibus.

Si nihilo magis malum constitit, uri id, quod est inter integrum ac vitiatum locum, debet. Præcipueque in hoc casu petendum, non a medicamentis solum, sed etiam a victus ratione præsidium est: neque enim id malum, nisi corrupti vitiosique corporis est. Ergo primo, nisi imbecillitas prohibet, abstinentia utendum: deinde danda, quæ per cibum potionemque alvum, ideoque etiam corpus adstringant; sed ea levia. Postea, si vitium constitit, imponi super vulnus eadem debent, quæ in putri ulcere præscripta sunt.

Ac tum quoque plenioribus cibis uti licebit ex media materia; sed tamen

## ORDO.

In casu ejusmodi primum (*remedium*) est, mittere sanguinem, si vires patiuntur: deinde concidere quidquid est aridum, et habet male proximum locum quoque quadam intentione, usque sanum corpus. Vero dum malum serpit, nulla medicamenta quæ consueverunt movere pus, sunt adhibenda; que ideo, ne quidem calida aqua. Quoque gravia (*medicamenta*) quamvis reprimantia sunt aliena: sed est opus his quam levissimis: que est utendum refrigerantibus super ea (*partes*) quæ sunt inflammata.

Si malum constitit nihilo magis, id debet uri quod est inter integrum ac vitiatum locum. Que præcipue in hoc casu præsidium est petendum, non solum a medicamentis, sed etiam a ratione victus: enim neque est id malum, nisi corrupti que vitiosi corporis. Ergo primo (est) utendum abstinentia, nisi imbecillitas prohibet: deinde (ea) danda, quæ per cibum que potionem adstringant alvum, que ideo etiam corpus: sed ea (fuisse)nt levia. Postea si vitium constitit, eadem debent imponi super vulnus, quæ sunt præscripta in putri ulcere.

Ac tum quoque licebit uti plenioribus cibis ex media materia;

## TRANSLATION.

In a case of this kind, the first thing to be done is to let blood, if the strength will permit: then proceed to remove whatever portion has become arid and inanimate, and implicates the adjacent parts by a certain progressive extension, until the healthy parts be evident. But while the disease is extending, no remedies which are calculated to promote pus should be employed; and on this account not even warm water is to be applied. Heavy applications also, although repellent, are inimical: therefore there is a necessity for these to be as light as possible: and over those parts which are inflamed, refrigerants must be applied.

If the disease be nothing abated by these means, that which is between the sound and vitiated part must be cauterized. Now in this disease particularly, our aid is not only to be derived from medicines, but from a proper regimen: for this disease only takes place in a depraved and vitiated habit of body. Therefore, at first, abstinence must be practised, unless debility prohibit: then such things should be given by way of food and drink as may bind the bowels, and by that means improve the constitution also; but they should be of the lighter kind. Afterwards, if the disease cease extending, the same remedies should be applied over the wound which have been prescribed in a putrid ulcer.

At this stage it may be proper to allow a fuller diet, of the middle class; provided



non nisi alvum, corpusque siccantibus : aqua vero pluviali frigida. Balneum, nisi jam certa fiducia redditæ sanitatis est, alienum est : siquidem emollitum in eo vulnus cito rursus eodem malo afficitur. Solent vero nonnumquam nihil omnia auxilia proficere, ac nihilominus serpere is cancer : inter quæ miserum, sed unicum auxilium est, ut cetera pars corporis tuta sit, membrum, quod paulatim emoritur, abscindere.

35. Hæ gravissimorum vulnorum curationes sunt. Sed ne illa quidem negligenda, ubi integra cute interior pars collisa est ; aut ubi derasum, attritumve aliquid est ; aut ubi surculus corpori infixus est ; aut ubi tenue, sed altum vulnus insedit. In primo casu commodissimum est malicorium ex vino coquere, interioremque ejus partem conterere, et cerato miscere ex rosa facto, idque superponere : deinde, ubi cutis ipsa exasperata est, inducere lene medicamentum, qualis lipara est.

Deraso vero, detritoque, imponendum est emplastrum tetrapharmacum, minuendusque cibus, et vinum subtrahendum. Neque id, quia non

#### ORDO.

sed tamen non nisi siccantibus alvum que corpus, vero frigida aqua pluviali. Balneum est alienum, nisi est jam certa fiducia sanitatis redditæ : si quidem vulnus emollitum in eo cito afficitur rursus eodem malo. Vero nonnumquam omnia auxilia solent proficere nihil, ac nihilominus is cancer serpere : inter quæ est miserum, sed unicum auxilium, abscindere membrum, quod emoritur paulatim, ut cetera pars corporis sit tuta.

35. Hæ sunt curationes gravissimorum vulnorum. Sed ne quidem illa (sunt) negligenda, ubi cute integra, interior pars collisa est ; aut ubi aliquid est derasum, ve attritum ; aut ubi surculus est infixus corpori : aut ubi vulnus (est) tenue, sed insedit altum. In primo casu est commodissimum coquere malicorium ex vino, que conterere interiorem partem ejus, et miscere cerato facto ex rosa, que superponere id : deinde, ubi cutis ipsa est exasperata, inducere lene medicamentum, qualis est lipara.

Vero deraso, que detrito, emplastrum tetrapharmacum est imponendum, que cibus minuendus, et vinum subtrahendum. Neque

#### TRANSLATION.

such be calculated to dry the bowels, and the animal economy generally ; and cold rain water for drink. Bathing will be injurious, if there be any uncertainty of returning health ; since the ulcer would be softened by that means, and soon affected by the same disease again. But sometimes all these remedies avail nothing, and nevertheless the gangrene extends : in which case there is but one sad alternative ; amputation of the limb, which is perishing by degrees, in order to save the rest of the body.

35. Such then is the treatment of the severest wounds. But those are not to be neglected, where the cuticle is even entire, when the parts underneath are bruised ; or where any part is abraded or rubbed off ; or when a splinter has been driven into the body ; or when a wound, though small, has penetrated deep.

In the first case, it will be most advantageous to boil pomegranate bark with wine, and bruise the inner portion of it, then to mix it with cerate made with rose-oil, and laid on the part : then where the skin is only abraded, to apply a gentle dressing, such as the lipara.

But when there is abrasion, and solution of continuity, the tetrapharmacum plaster must be applied, the quantity of food diminished, and the wine to be with-

habebit altiores ictus, contemnendum erit: siquidem ex ejusmodi casibus sæpe cancri fiunt. Quod si levius id erit, et in parte exigua, contenti esse poterimus eodem leni medicamento.

Surculum vero, si fieri potest, oportet vel manu, vel etiam ferramento ejicere. Si vel præfractus est, vel altius descendit, quam ut id ita fieri possit, medicamento evocandus est. Optime autem educit superimposita arundinis radix, si tenera est, protinus contrita, si jam durior, ante in mulso decocta; cui semper mel adjiciendum est: aut aristolochia cum eodem melle.

Pessima ex surculis, arundo est; quia aspera est: eademque offensa etiam in filice est. Sed usu cognitum est, utramque adversus alteram medicamentum esse, si contrita ac superimposita est. Facit autem idem in omnibus surculis, quodcumque medicamentum extrahendi vim habet. Idem altis tenuibusque vulneribus aptissimum est. Priori rei Philocratis; huic Hecataei emplastrum maxime convenit.

36. Ubi vero in quolibet vulnere ventum ad inducendam cicatricem est; (quod perpurgatis jam, repletisque ul-

## ORDO.

erit id (vulnus) contemnendum, quia non habebit altiores ictus: siquidem cancri sæpe fiunt ex casibus ejusmodi. Quod si id erit levius, et in exigua parte, poterimus esse contenti eodem leni medicamento.

Vero oportet ejicere surculum, si potest fieri, vel manu, vel etiam ferramento. Si vel est præfractus, vel descendit altius quam ut id possit fieri ita, est evocandus medicamento. Autem radix arundinis superimposita educit optime, contrita protinus, si est tenera, si (id est) jam durior decocta ante in mulso; cui mel est semper adjiciendum, aut aristolochia cum eodem melle.

Pessima ex surculis est arundo, quia est aspera: que est eadem offensa etiam in filice. Sed est cognitum usu, utrumque esse medicamentum adversus alteram si est contrita ac super imposita. Autem quodcumque medicamentum habet vim extrahendi, facit idem in omnibus surculis. Idem est aptissimum altis que tenuibus vulneribus. Emplastrum Philocratis convenit maxime priori rei; (emplastrum) Hecataei huic.

36. Vero ubi est ventum ad inducendam cicatricem in quolibet vulnere; (quod est necessarium ulceribus jam perpurgatis, que

## TRANSLATION.

drawn. Neither should such a wound be treated slightly, although not very deep: since wounds of this kind frequently degenerate into gangrene. But if that be very slight, and circumscribed, we may be satisfied in applying that mild application above mentioned.

A splinter must be extracted if possible, either by the hand, or by an instrument. If broken, or too deep to admit of extraction, it must be drawn to the surface by a medicinal application. Now the best topic for that purpose is the root of a reed, applied raw, if tender, but if old and tough, it must be first boiled in hydromel; to which honey should always be added, or birthwort with honey.

The worst of splinters is the reed, because it is rough: and there is the same troublesome property in the fern. But experience has shewn, that either of these bruised and applied externally, is a remedy against the effects of the other. All medicines which possess the property of extraction, exert the same influence on all splinters. The same application is best adapted for narrow, but deep wounds. Philocrates' plaster is best calculated for the former case, that of Hecateus for the latter.

36. When a wound is about to form a cicatrix (which is a necessary consequence

ceribus necessarium est); primum ex aqua frigida linamentum, dum caro alitur; deinde, cum jam continenda est, siccum imponendum est, donec cicatrix inducatur: tum deligari super album plumbum oportet, quo et reprimatur cicatrix, et colorem maxime sano corpori similem accipit. Idem radix silvestris cucumeris præstat: idem compositio, quæ habet elaterii p. ℥. i. spumæ argenti p. ℥. ii. unguenti p. ℥. iv. quæ excipiuntur resina terebinthina, donec emplastri crassitudo ex omnibus fiat.

At nigras quoque cicatrices leniter purgant, paribus portionibus mista, ærugo et plumbum elotum, eademque resina coacta; sive ungitur cicatrix, quod in facie fieri potest; sive id ut emplastrum imponitur, quod in aliis partibus commodius est.

At si vel excrevit cicatrix, vel concava est, stultum est, decoris causa, rursus et dolorem et medicinam sustinere: alioquin res utrique succurri patitur. Siquidem utraque cicatrix exulcerari scalpello potest: si medicamentum aliquis mavult, idem efficiunt compositiones eæ, quæ corpus exedunt.

#### ORDO.

repletis;) primum, dum caro alitur, linamentum ex frigida aqua est imponendum; deinde cum est jam continenda, siccum (linamentum est imponendum), donec cicatrix inducatur: tum oportet album plumbum deligari super, quo et cicatrix reprimatur, et maxime accepit similem colorem sano corpori. Radix sylvestris cucumeris præstat idem: idem compositio, quæ habet elaterii p. ℥. i. spumæ argenti p. ℥. ii. unguenti p. ℥. iv. quæ excipiuntur terebinthina resina, donec crassitudo emplastri fiat ex omnibus.

At quoque, (hæc) leniter purgant nigras cicatrices, ærugo et elotum plumbum mixta paribus portionibus, quæ eadem coacta resina; sive cicatrix ungitur, quod potest fieri in facie; sive id imponitur ut emplastrum, quod est commodius in aliis partibus.

At si cicatrix vel excrevit, vel est concava, est stultum causa decoris, rursus sustinere et dolorem, et medicinam: alioquin res patitur succurri utrique. Siquidem utraque cicatrix potest exulcerari scalpello: si aliquis mavult medicamentum, eæ compositiones, quæ exedunt corpus, efficiunt

#### TRANSLATION.

after the ulcer has been cleansed and regenerated,) we must first cover it with a piece of linen dipped in cold water, while the granulations are shooting up; afterwards, when they are to be restrained, dry lint will answer that intention, until a cicatrix be induced: then it will be necessary to bind white lead over it, in order that it may compress the cicatrix, and assimilate its colour to that of the sound structure. The root of wild cucumber possesses the same property: also a composition, consisting of elaterium p. ℥. i. of litharge p. ℥. ii. of ointment p. ℥. iv. which are to be incorporated with as much turpentine resin as may be sufficient to form the whole into the consistence of a plaster.

But black cicatrices may be gently corrected, by mixing equal portions of verdigris and washed lead, and incorporated with the same resin: whether employed as an ointment, such as the face for instance; or applied as a plaster, which is more convenient in other parts of the body.

But if the cicatrix be either convex or concave, it would be folly to submit a second time to the pain and molestations of treatment, merely for the sake of appearance: otherwise, each case admits of a remedy. For either of these cicatrices may be converted into a wound by the knife: if the patient prefer a medical application, that purpose may be effected by some of the escharotic compositions.



Cute exulcerata, super eminentem carnem exedentia medicamenta conjicienda sunt; super concavam, implentia; donec utrumque ulcus sanæ cuti æquetur: et tum cicatrix inducatur.

## ORDO.

idem. Cute exulcerata, exedentia medicamenta sunt conjicienda super eminentem carnem: implentia, super concavam; donec utrumque ulcus æquetur sanæ cuti, et tum cicatrix inducatur.

## TRANSLATION.

When the eschar is removed, some corroding agent should be laid over the prominent part, and a sarcotick on the concave one, until each of these ulcers be brought on a level with the sound skin: and then a cicatrix induced.

## CAP. XXVII.

DE VULNERIBUS, QUÆ PER MORSUS INFERUNTUR, EORUMQUE CURATIONIBUS.

1. Dixi de iis vulneribus, quæ maxime per tela inferuntur: sequitur, ut de iis dicam, quæ morsu fiunt, interdum hominis, interdum simiæ, sæpe canis, nonnumquam ferorum animalium, aut serpentium.

Omnis autem fere morsus habet quoddam virus. Itaque si vehemens vulnus est, cucurbitula apponenda est: si levius, protinus emplastrum injiciendum, præcipueque Diogenis; si id non est,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVII.

DE VULNERIBUS, QUÆ INFERUNTUR PER MORSUS, QUÆ CURATIONIBUS EORUM.

1. DIXI de iis vulneribus quæ maxime inferuntur per tela: sequitur, ut dicam de iis, quæ fiunt morsu, interdum hominis, interdum simiæ, sæpe canis, nonnumquam ferorum animalium, aut serpentium.

Autem omnis morsus habet quoddam virus. Itaque, si vulnus est vehemens, cucurbitula est apponenda: si levius, emplastrum injiciendum protinus, quæ præcipue Diogenis; si id non

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## OF WOUNDS PRODUCED BY BITES, AND THEIR TREATMENT.

1. I HAVE spoken of those wounds which are principally inflicted by weapons: it follows that I now treat of those which are produced by the bite, sometimes of a man, sometimes of an ape, often of a dog, sometimes of ferocious animals, or of serpents.

Now every bite has most commonly some virus in it. Therefore if the wound be severe, a cupping-glass must be applied: if slight, a plaster must be put on immediately, and especially that of Diogenes; if that is not to be obtained, any of

quodlibet ex iis, quæ adversus morsus proposui; si ea non sunt, viride Alexandrinum; si ne id quidem est, quodlibet non pingue ex iis, quæ recentibus vulneribus accommodantur. Sal quoque his, præcipueque ei, quod canis fecit, medicamentum est, si manus vulnere imponitur, superque id duobus digitis verberatur: exsaniat enim. Ac salsamentum quoque recte super id vulnus deligatur.

2. Utique autem, si rabiosus canis fuit, cucurbitula virus ejus extrahendum est. Deinde, si locus neque nervosus, neque musculosus est, vulnus id adurendum est: si uri non potest, sanguinem homini mitti non alienum est. Tum uto quidem vulnere superimponenda, quæ ceteris ustis sunt: ei vero, quod expertum ignem non est, ea medicamenta, quæ vehementer exedunt. Post quæ nullo novo magisterio, sed jam supra posito ulcus erit implendum, et ad sanitatem perducendum.

Quidam post rabiosi canis morsum protinus in balneum mittunt; ibique patiuntur desudare, dum vires corporis sinunt, vulnere adaperto, quo magis

## ORDO.

est, quod libet ex iis quæ proposui adversus morsus; si ea non sunt, viride Alexandrinum: si ne quidem id est, quodlibet non pingue ex iis quæ accommodantur recentibus vulneribus. Sal quoque est medicamentum his, quæ præcipue ei, quod canis fecit, si manus imponitur vulnere, quæ verberatur super id duobus digitis: enim exsaniat. Ac salsamentum quoque deligatur recte super id vulnus.

2. Autem, si canis fuit rabiosus, virus ejus utique est extrahendum cucurbitula. Deinde, si locus est neque nervosus, neque musculosus, id vulnus est adurendum: si non potest uri, non est alienum sanguinem mitti homini. Tum (ea medicamenta) superimponenda quidem uto vulnere, quæ sunt ceteris ustis: vero ei (vulneri) quod non est expertum ignem, ea medicamenta quæ exedunt vehementer. Post quæ ulcus erit implendum, et perducendum ad sanitatem, nullo novo magisterio, sed (eo) jam posito supra.

Quidam post morsum rabiosi canis protinus mittunt (ægrum) in balneum; quæ patiuntur desudare ibi, dum vires corporis sinunt, vulnere adaperto, quo virus quo-

## TRANSLATION.

those which I have proposed for bites; if these be not at hand, the green Alexandrian; and in the absence of that, any of those calculated for recent wounds, which are destitute of grease. Salt is also a remedy for them, especially for that of a dog, if the hand be applied to the wound, and struck (*pressed*.) with two fingers over it, to express the sanies. A piece of salt meat may also be laid over such a wound.

2. But if the dog be rabid, it will be particularly requisite that the virus of that wound should be extracted by the cucurbital. Afterwards, if the part be neither nervous nor muscular, the wound should be cauterized: if it cannot be cauterized, it is proper that the patient should lose blood; then to apply over the cauterized wound such applications as are proper for burns: but to that which has not been cauterized, the most powerful caustic applications. After which, the ulcer must be regenerated by no other than the common method laid down above.

Some, immediately after the bite of a mad dog, order the patient into a hot bath, and allow him to perspire there as long as his strength will permit, the wound being enlarged, that the virus may be the more freely discharged; afterwards they follow

ex eo quoque virus destillet : deinde multo meraccoque vino excipiunt, quod omnibus venenis contrarium est. Idque cum ita per triduum factum est. tutus esse homo a periculo videtur.

Solet autem ex eo vulnere, ubi parum occursum est, aquæ timor nasci : *ὑδροφοβία* Græci appellant. Miserrimum genus morbi ; in quo simul æger et siti et aquæ metu cruciatur : quo oppressis in angusto spes est. Sed unicum tamen remedium est, nec opinantem in piscinam non ante ei provisam projicere, et, si natandi scientiam non habet, modo mersum bibere pati, modo attollere ; si habet, interdum deprimere, ut invitus quoque aqua satietur : sic enim simul et sitis, et aquæ metus tollitur.

Sed aliud periculum excipit, ne infirmum corpus in aqua frigida vexatum, nervorum distentio absumat. Id ne incidat, a piscina protinus in oleum calidum demittendus est. Antidotum autem, præcipue id, quod primo loco posui ; ubi id non est, aliud, si nondum æger aquam horret, potui ex aqua dandum est ; et si amaritudine offenditur, mel adjiciendum est : si

## ORDO.

que destillet magis ex eo : deinde excipiunt multo que meraco vino, quod est contrarium omnibus venenis. Que cum id est factum ita per triduum, homo videtur esse tutus a periculo.

Autem timor aquæ solet nasci ex eo vulnere, si est occursum parum ; Græci appellant *ὑδροφοβίαν* (Hydrophobian). Miserrimum genus morbi ; in quo æger cruciatur simul et siti et metu aquæ ; oppressis quo spes est in angusto. Tamen unicum remedium est, projicere ægrum in piscinam non ante provisam ei, nec opinantem, et, si non habet scientiam natandi, modo pati (eum) mersum bibere, modo attollere (eum) ; si habet (scientiam natandi), interdum deprimere (eum deorsum), ut quoque invitus, satietur aqua : enim sic simul et sitis, et metus aquæ tollitur.

Sed aliud periculum excipit, ne distentio nervorum absumat infirmum corpus vexatum in frigida aqua. Ne id incidat, est demittendus protinus a piscina in calidum oleum. Antidotum (dandum est), præcipue id quod posui primo loco ; ubi id non est, aliud est dandum potui ex aqua, si æger nondum horret aquam ; et, si offenditur amaritudine, mel est adjiciendum ei : si jam is morbus oc-

## TRANSLATION.

it up with plenty of strong wine, which is an antidote to all poisons. When this course has been followed for three days, the patient is considered out of danger.

Now it is not unusual for such a wound to produce a dread of water, if not effectually treated ; the Greeks call it Hydrophobia ; a most horrid disease, in which the afflicted person is tortured at the same time with thirst and a dread of water ; for those who are so afflicted, there is little hope left. Yet there is one remedy ; that is, to throw the patient unexpectedly into a pond, and should he not have the knowledge of swimming, to permit him to sink occasionally, in order that he may be compelled to drink, sometimes to elevate him, if however he can swim, to press him down sometimes, that though unwilling, he may be satiated with water : for thus both the thirst and the dread of water is at once taken away.

But another danger awaits him, lest his weak frame, being harassed in the cold water, be seized with convulsions. To prevent this, he should be immediately conveyed from the pond to a bath of warm oil. An antidote must be given, especially that which I have first mentioned ; when that is not to be had, another is to be substituted in water, if the patient do not as yet dread water ; if he be offended with



jam is morbus occupavit, per catapotia sumi potest.

3. Serpentium quoque morsus non nimium distantem curationem desiderant: quamvis in ea multum antiqui variarunt; adeo ut in singula genera anguium singula medendi genera præciperent; aliique alia. Sed in omnibus eadem maxime proficiunt.

Igitur in primis super vulnus id membrum deligandum est; non tamen nimium vehementer, ne torpeat: dein venenum extrahendum est. Id cucurbitula optime facit: neque alienum est, ante scalpello circa vulnus incidere, quo plus vitii jam sanguinis extrahatur. Si cucurbitula non est, quod tamen vix incidere potest, tum quodlibet simile vas, quod idem possit: si ne id quidem est, homo adhibendus est, qui vulnus exsugat.

Neque hercules scientiam præcipuam habent ii, qui Psylli nominantur; sed audaciam usu ipso confirmatam. Nam venenum serpentis, ut quædam etiam venatoria venena, quibus Galli præcipue utuntur, non gustu, sed in vulnere nocent. Ideoque colubra ipsa tuto estur: ictus ejus oc-

#### ORDO.

cupavit, potest sumi per catapotia.

3. Morsus serpentium quoque desiderant curationem non nimium distantem; quamvis antiqui variarunt multum in ea; adeo ut præciperent singula genera medendi in singula genera anguium; que alii alia. Sed in omnibus eadem (medicamenta) maxime proficiunt.

Igitur imprimis id membrum est deligandum super vulnus: tamen non nimium vehementer, ne torpeat: dein venenum est extrahendum. Cucurbitula facit id optime: neque est alienum, ante incidere scalpello circa vulnus, quo plus sanguinis jam vitii extrahatur. Si non est cucurbitula, quod tamen vix potest incidere, tum quodlibet simile vas, quod possit idem: si ne quidem est, homo est adhibendus, qui exsugat vulnus.

Neque hercules ii, qui nominantur Psylli habent præcipuam scientiam; sed audaciam confirmatam usu ipso. Nam venenum serpentis, ut etiam quædam venena venatoria, quibus Galli præcipue utuntur, non nocent gustu, sed in vulnere. Que ideo colubra ipsa estur tuto: ictus ejus occidit. Et

#### TRANSLATION.

its bitterness, honey must be added: but if he be advanced to that stage of the disease, it may be taken in pills.

3. The bites of serpents do not require a very different mode of treatment; yet the ancients varied very much in this; so much so, that they prescribed for each species of snake, a distinct plan of treatment; some pursuing one plan, some another. But the same remedies generally succeed in all of them.

In the first place then, a ligature must be placed on that limb above the wound; but not too tight, lest it become torpid: then the poison should be extracted. This is best effected by the cucurbitula. Neither would it be improper to make incisions around the wound previously, by which means more of the vitiated blood may be extracted. If a cupping-glass cannot be had, which is not likely to happen; then any similar vessel may answer the same purpose: if that too be wanting, a person must be employed to suck the wound.

To a certainty the Psyllians (55), as they were called, had no particular skill, but an audacity entirely confirmed by habit itself. For the virus of a serpent, as also certain poisons used by the Gauls in hunting, are innocuous when taken by the mouth, but injurious when injected by a wound. Hence the adder itself is eaten with im-

cidit. Et si stupente ea; quod per quædam medicamenta circulatores faciunt; in os digitum quis indidit, neque percussus est, nulla in ea saliva noxa est.

Ergo quisquis, exemplum Psylli secutus, id vulnus exsuxerit, et ipse tutus erit, et tutum hominem præstabit. Illud interea ante debebit attendere, ne quod in gingivis, palatove, aliave parte oris ulcus habeat. Post hæc is homo loco calido collocandus est, sic, ut id, quod percussus erit, in inferiorem partem inclinetur.

Si neque qui exsugat, neque cucurbitula est, sorbere oportet jus anserinum, vel ovillum, vel vitulinum, et vomere: vivum autem gallinaceum pullum per medium dividere, et protinus calidum super vulnus imponere, sic, ut pars interior corpori jungatur. Facit id etiam hædus agnusve discissus, et calida ejus caro statim super vulnus imposita: emplastra quoque, quæ supra comprehensa sunt; aptissimumque est, vel Ephesium, vel id quod ei subjectum est.

## ORDO.

si, ea stupente; (quod circulatores faciunt per quædam medicamentas) quis indidit digitum in os, neque est percussus, est nulla noxa in ea saliva.

Ergo quisquis, secutus exemplum Psylli, exsuxerit id vulnus, et ipse erit tutus, et præstabit hominem tutum. Interea debebit ante attendere illud, ne habeat quod ulcus in gingivis, ve palato, ve alia parte oris. Post hæc is homo est collocandus calido loco, sic, ut id quod erit percussus inclinetur in inferiorem partem.

Si est neque qui exsugat (virus,) neque cucurbitula, oportet (ægrum) sorbere jus anserinum, vel ovillum, vel vitulinum, et vomere: autem (debet quoque) dividere vivum pullum gallinaceum per medium, et protinus imponere calidum super vulnus, sic ut interior pars jungatur corpori. Etiam hædus ve agnus discissus, et calida caro ejus imposita statim super vulnus, facit id: quoque emplastra quæ comprehensa sunt supra; que est aptissimum, vel Ephesium, vel id quod est subjectum ei.

## TRANSLATION.

punity: its sting is fatal. The same animal, if rendered torpid by certain drugs, which these mountebanks take care to administer, any person having introduced his finger into its mouth, without being wounded, can receive no injury from the saliva.

Therefore, whoever will follow the example of the Psyllians by sucking the wound, may not only do so with impunity to himself, but save a fellow-creature. He must first, however, be cautious, lest he have any ulcer in the gums, palate, or any other part of the mouth. Afterwards the patient must be laid in a warm place, in such a posture that the wound may be inclined downwards.

If there be no person to suck the wound, nor a cucurbital at hand, the patient must sup either the broth of a goose, or of mutton, or of veal, and then excite vomiting: he ought also to divide a live chicken through the middle, and to apply it immediately over the wound while yet warm, so that its inner surface may be in contact with the body. The same effect is produced by a kid, or lamb cut up, and the warm flesh applied to the wound: also the plasters which have been mentioned above; and the most efficacious is the Ephesian, or that which is subjoined to it.

Præsensque in aliquo antidoto præsidium est. Sin id non est, necessarium est exsorbere potionem meri vini cum pipere, vel quidlibet aliud, quod calori movendo est, nec humorem intus coire patitur: nam maxima pars venenorum frigore interimit. Omnia etiam urinam moventia, quia materiam extenuant, utilia sunt.

4. Hæc adversus omnes ictus communia sunt: usus tamen ipse docuit, eum, quem aspis percussit, acetum potius bibere debere. Quod demonstrasse dicitur casus cujusdam pueri, qui, cum ab hac ictus esset, et partim ob ipsum vulnus, partim ob immodicos æstus siti premeretur, ac locis siccis alium humorem non reperiret, acetum, quod forte secum habebat, ebibit, et liberatus est.

Credo quoniam id, quamvis refrigerandi vim habet, tamen habet etiam dissipandi. Quo fit, ut terra respersa eo spumet. Eadem ergo vi verisimile est spissescentem quoque intus humorem hominis ab eo discuti, et sic dari sanitatem.

#### ORDO.

Que est præsens præsidium in aliquo antidoto. Sin id non est, est necessarium exsorbere potionem meri vini cum pipere, vel quidlibet aliud, quod est (aptum) calori movendo, nec patitur humorem coire intus: nam maxima pars venenorum interimit frigore. Etiam omnia moventia urinam, quia extenuant materiam sunt utilia.

4. Hæc sunt communia adversus omnes ictus: tamen usus ipse docuit, eum quem aspis (*coluber viperæ*) percussit, debere potius bibere acetum. Quod casus cujusdam pueri dicitur demonstrasse, qui, cum ictus esset ab hac (aspide), et partim ob vulnus ipsum, partim ob immodicos æstus premeretur siti, ac non reperiret alium humorem siccis locis, ebibit acetum, quod forte habebat secum, et est liberatus.

Credo quoniam id, quamvis habet vim refrigerandi, tamen habet etiam (vim) dissipandi. Quo fit, ut terra respersa eo spumet. Ergo est verisimile eadem vi quoque humorem hominis spissescentem intus discuti ab eo, et sic sanitatem dari.

#### TRANSLATION.

There is also instant protection to be found in some of the antidotes. But if that is not to be had, it will be necessary to sip a draught of pure wine with pepper, or any other stimulant which is calculated to promote heat, and prevent the fluids from inspissation: for the greatest part of poisons destroy by the cold they produce: all things possessing the property of promoting the urine are useful, because they attenuate the fluids.

4. Such is the general method to be employed against the bites of venomous animals; yet experience itself has taught us, that he who has been wounded by an asp, ought to drink vinegar in preference. The accident of a certain boy is said to have pointed out this remedy, who, when he had been wounded by one of these animals, was so oppressed with thirst, partly on account of the wound, partly on account of the immoderate heat, that not being able to find any other liquid in dry places, he drank off the vinegar, which he had by chance with him, and was cured.

My reason for believing this is, that although it has the property of refrigerating, yet it has also the faculty of dissipating at the same time. Hence it happens, that by sprinkling it on the ground, effervescence takes place. Therefore it is very probable, that the fluids of the human body becoming inspissated, are attenuated by it, and thus health restored.



5. In quibusdam etiam aliis serpentibus certa quædam auxilia satis nota sunt. Nam scorpio ipse sibi pulcherrimum medicamentum est. Quidam contritum cum vino bibunt: quidam eodem modo contritum super vulnus imponunt: quidam super prunam eo imposito, vulnus suffumigant, undique veste circumdata, ne is fumus dilabatur; tum carbonem ejus super vulnus deligant.

Bibere autem oportet herbæ solaris, quam ἡλιοτρόπιον Græci vocant, semen, vel certe folia ex vino. Super vulnus vero etiam furfures cum aceto, vel ruta silvatica recte imponitur, vel cum melle sal tostus. Cognovi tamen medicos, qui ab scorpione ictis nihil aliud, quam ex brachio sanguinem miserunt.

6. Et ad scorpionis autem et ad aranei ictum, allium cum ruta recte miscetur, ex oleoque contritum superimponitur.

7. At si cerastes, aut dipsas, aut hæmorrhoids percussit, asphodeli, quod Ægyptiæ fabæ magnitudinem æquet, arefactum, in duas potiones dividendum est, sic, ut ei rutæ paulum adjiciatur. Trifolium quoque et mentas-

#### ORDO.

5. Etiam in quibusdam aliis serpentibus quædam certa auxilia sunt satis nota. Nam scorpio ipse est pulcherrimum (*optimum*) medicamentum sibi. Quidam bibunt contritum cum vino: quidam imponunt contritum eodem modo super vulnus: quidam eo imposito super prunam, suffumigant vulnus, circumdata undique veste, ne is fumus dilabatur; tum deligant carbonem ejus super vulnus.

Autem oportet bibere semen, vel certe folia, herbæ solaris, quam Græci vocant ἡλιοτρόπιον (*Heliotropium Europæum*), ex vino. Vero etiam furfures ex aceto, vel ruta silvatica, imponitur recte super vulnus, vel sal tostus cum melle. Tamen cognovi medicos qui nihil aliud ictis ab scorpione quam miserunt sanguinem ex brachio.

6. Autem et ad ictum scorpionis, et ad aranei, allium miscetur recte cum ruta, qui contritum ex oleo, superimponitur.

7. At si cerastes, aut dipsas, aut hæmorrhoids percussit, asphodeli, quod æquet magnitudinem Ægyptiæ fabæ, arefactum est dividendum in duas potiones, sic ut paulum rutæ adjiciatur ei. Quoque trifolium et mentastrum, et pana-

#### TRANSLATION.

5. Against the poison of some other serpents, there are certain well-known remedies. For the scorpion is in itself, indeed, a bane and antidote. Some drink it bruised with wine: some bruise it in the same manner, and apply it over the wound: others broil it over some live coals, to fumigate the wound, surrounding the part on all sides with clothing, lest the fumes escape; then they bend the caput mortuum of it over the wound.

But it is proper that the patient should drink the seed, or at least the leaves of turnsole in wine, which the Greeks call *Heliotropium*. Bran moistened with vinegar, or wild rue, or salt toasted with honey, is proper to bind over the wound. But I have known physicians who have done nothing else but take blood from the arm, for the sting of a scorpion.

6. But for the sting of a scorpion, as well as for that of a spider, garlick well mixed with rue, and bruised in oil, is a good application.

7. For a wound inflicted by that species of serpent called *Cerastes* (56), or the *Dipsas* (57), or the *Hæmorrhoids* (58), take as much of asphodel as will equal the size of an Egyptian bean, let it be dried and divided into two draughts, with the addition of a little rue to it. Also trefoil and wild mint, and panaces with

trum, et cum aceto panaces æque proficiunt. Costumque, et casia, et cinnamomum recte per potionem assumuntur.

8. Adversus chersydri vero ictum, panaces, aut laser, quod sit scrupulorum III. s. Ⅹ. i. vel porri succus cum hemina vini sumendus est, et edenda multa satureia. Imponendum autem super vulnus stercus caprinum ex aceto coctum; aut ex eodem hordeacea farina; aut ruta, vel nepeta, cum sale contrita, melle adjecto. Quod in eo quoque vulnere, quod cerastes fecit, æque valet.

9. Ubi vero phalangium nocuit, præter eam curationem, quæ manu redditur, sæpe homo demittendus in solium est, dandusque ei myrrhæ et uvæ taminiae par modus ex passi hemina; vel radiculae semen, aut lolii radix ex vino; et super vulnus furfures ex aceto cocti, imperandumque, ut is conquiescat.

10. Verum hæc genera serpentium et peregrina, et aliquanto magis pestifera sunt; maximeque æstuosis locis gignuntur. Italia frigidioresque regiones hac quoque parte salubritatem habent, quod minus terribiles angues edunt.

#### ORDO.

ces cum aceto, æque proficiunt. Que costum, et casia, et cinnamomum assumuntur recte per potionem.

8. Vero adversus ictum chersydri, panaces, aut laser, quod sit scrupulorum III. s. Ⅹ. i. vel succus porri cum hemina vini, est sumendus, et multa satureia edenda. Autem stercus caprinum coctum ex aceto (est) imponendum super vulnus; aut farina hordeacea ex eodem; aut ruta, vel nepeta, contrita cum sale, melle adjecto. Quod quoque æque valet in eo vulnere quod cerastes fecit.

9. Vero ubi phalangium (*Tarantula*) nocuit, præter eam curationem quæ redditur manu, homo est sæpe demittendus in solium, que par modus myrrhæ et taminiae uvæ, ex hemina passi, est dandus ei; vel semen radiculae, aut radix lolii ex vina; et furfures cocti ex aceto (imponendi sunt) super vulnus, que (id est) imperandum, ut is conquiescat.

10. Vero hæc genera serpentium sunt et peregrina, et aliquanto magis pestifera; que gignuntur maxime æstuosis locis. Italia que frigidiores regiones habent salubritatem quoque hac parte; quod edunt minus terri-

#### TRANSLATION.

with vinegar are equally efficacious. So are also costum, cassia, and cinnamon, properly taken in drink.

8. But for the sting of the Chersydros (59), panaces, or laser, of each scruples III. Ⅹ. i. or the juice of leek with a hemina of wine, is to be taken, and abundance of savory eaten. Also goat's dung boiled in vinegar is to be laid over the wound; or barley meal with the same; or rue, or cat's-mint, bruised with salt, some honey being added. This is equally efficacious for the sting of a ceraste.

9. But when the injury has been perpetrated by a Phalangium (60), independently of the surgical treatment, the patient must be frequently immersed in the warm bath, and an equal portion of myrrh and of stavesacre, with a hemina of pas-sum, be given to him; or radish seed, or darnel root with wine; and over the wound bran boiled with vinegar, and it is imperative that he may be kept quiet.

10. But these species of serpents are all foreign, and somewhat more dangerous; and generated mostly in hot climates. Italy, and the colder regions, independently of their being more healthy, have an advantage in this, that they bring forth less

Adversus quos satis proficit herba Vetonica, vel Cantabrica, vel centaurion, vel argemonia, vel trixago, vel personina, vel marina pastinaca, singulæ binæve tritæ, et cum vino potui datæ, et super vulnus impositæ. Illud ignorari non oportet, omnis serpentis ictum et jejuni et jejuno magis nocere: ideoque perniciosissimi sunt, cum incubant; utilissimumque est, ubi ex anguibus metus est, non ante progredi, quam quis aliquid assumpsit.

11. Non tam facile iis opitulari est, qui venenum, vel in cibo, vel in potione sumpserunt: primum, quia non protinus sentiunt, ut ab angue icti; ita ne succurrere quidem statim sibi possunt: deinde, quia noxa non a cute, sed ab interioribus partibus incipit. Commodissimum est tamen, ubi primum sensit aliquis, protinus oleo multo epoto vomere: deinde, ubi præcordia exhaustit, bibere antidotum; si id non est, vel merum vinum.

12. Sunt tamen quædam remedia propria adversus quædam venena, max-

## ORDO.

biles angues. Adversus quos Vetonica herba, vel Cantabrica herba, vel centaurion, vel argemonia, vel trixago, vel personina, vel pastinaca marina proficit satis, singulæve binæve tritæ et datæ cum vino potui, et impositæ super vulnus. Oportet illud non ignorari, ictum omnis serpentis et nocere magis jejuni et jejuno: que ideo sunt perniciosissimi, cum incubant; que est utilissimum, ubi est metus ex anguibus, non progredi, ante quam quis assumpsit aliquid.

11. Est non tam facile opitulari iis, qui sumpserunt venenum, vel in cibo, vel in potione: primum, quia non sentiunt protinus, ut icti ab angue; ita ne quidem possunt statim succurrere sibi: deinde, quia noxa non incipit a cute, sed ab interioribus partibus. Tamen est commodissimum, ubi aliquis primum sensit(id), protinus evomere multo oleo epoto: deinde, ubi exhaustit præcordia, bibere antidotum; vel si est non id, (etiam) merum vinum.

12. Tamen sunt quædam propria remedia adversus quædam venena, que maxime leviora. Nam

## TRANSLATION.

formidable snakes. Against which, an efficacious remedy will be found in the herb betony, or the cantabrica, or centaury, or agrimony, or germander, or burdock, or the marine carrot, either singly, or any two of them taken together, being bruised in wine, and given to drink, and likewise applied over the wound. It is necessary to be informed, that the sting of every serpent is more noxious when the reptile is hungry, and the person on whom it is inflicted is fasting: on that account, they are most pernicious during incubation; and it is highly advantageous, if there be any apprehension of encountering snakes, not to go out before having taken something to eat.

11. It is not so easy to render assistance to those who have taken poison either in their food or drink: in the first place, because they do not perceive immediately, as those do, who are wounded by a snake, consequently cannot avail themselves of immediate relief: in the next place, because the injury is not inflicted on the skin, but on the internal parts. However, it will be most advantageous, as soon as detected, to swallow copious draughts of oil, then to excite immediate vomiting: the stomach being emptied, let him take an antidote; if that is not to be got, pure wine.

12. However, there are some remedies peculiar for certain poisons, and especially



imeque leviora. Nam si cantharidas aliquis ebibit, panaces cum lacte contusa, vel galbanum vino adjecto dari, vel lac per se debet.

13. Si cicutam, vinum merum calidum cum ruta quamplurimum ingerendum est; deinde is vomere cogendus; posteaque laser ex vino dandum: isque, si febre vacat, in calidum balneum mittendus; si non vacat, ungendus ex calefacientibus est: post quæ quies ei necessaria est.

14. Si hyoscyamum, fervens mulsum bibendum est, aut quodlibet lac, maxime tamen asininum.

15. Si cerussam, jus malvæ, vel juglandis ex vino contritæ, maxime prosunt.

16. Si sanguisuga epota est, acetum cum sale bibendum est. Si lac intus coit, aut passum, aut coagulum, aut cum aceto laser.

17. Si fungos inutiles quis assumpsit, radícula aut e posca, aut cum sale et aceto edenda est. Ipsi vero hi et specie quidem discerni possunt ab utilibus, et cocturæ genere idonei fieri.

#### ORDO.

si aliquis ebibit cantharidas, panaces contusas cum lacte, vel galbanum vino adjecto, vel lac per se debet dari.

13. Si (aliquis ebibit) cicutam, merum calidum vinum est ingerendum quamplurimum cum ruta; deinde is (est) cogendus vomere; que postea laser (est) dandum ex vino: que, si vacat febre, is (est) mittendus in calidum balneum: si non vacat, est unguendus ex calefacientibus: post quæ, quies est necessaria ei.

14. Si (aliquis ebibit) hyoscyamum, fervens mulsum est bibendum, aut quodlibet lac, tamen maxime asininum.

15. Si (aliquis ebibit) cerussam, jus malvæ, vel juglandis, contritæ ex vino, prosunt maxime.

16. Si sanguisuga est epota, acetum est bibendum cum sale. Si lac coit intus, aut passum, aut coagulum, aut laser cum aceto.

17. Si quis assumpsit inutiles fungos, radícula est edenda, aut e posca, aut cum sale et aceto. Vero hi ipsi, et quidem possunt discerni specie ab utilibus, et (possunt) fieri idonei genere coc-

#### TRANSLATION.

the lighter ones. For if a person have swallowed cantharides for instance, he should take panaces bruised, with milk, or galbanum, with the addition of wine, or milk by itself.

13. If hemlock be taken, let the patient drink copiously of pure hot wine with rue; afterward he must be forced to vomit: after that laser must be given with wine; and if he be free from fever, he must be put into a warm bath; if not, he must be anointed with some calefacient: after these, rest will be necessary for him.

14. For henbane, hot hydromel must be drunk, or some milk, especially that of asses.

15. For the carbonate of lead taken internally, the juice of mallows, or of walnut, bruised with wine, will have a good effect.

16. If a leech have been swallowed, salt and vinegar must be drunk. If milk have curdled on the stomach, give either passum, rennet, or laser, mixed with vinegar.

17. Should any person have taken noxious mushrooms, let him eat radish, either with posca, or with salt and vinegar. Now these may not only be distinguished from the wholesome kind by their form, but they may be rendered innocuous by a

Nam sive ex oleo inferbuerunt, sive piri surculus cum his inferbuit, omni noxa vacant.

18. Adustis quoque locis extrinsecus vis infertur: itaque sequi videtur, ut de his dicam. Hæc autem optime curantur foliis aut lilii, aut linguæ caninæ, aut betæ in vetere vino oleoque decoctis: quorum quodlibet protinus impositum ad sanitatem perducit. Sed dividi quoque curatio potest in ea, quæ mediocriter exedentia reprimentiaque, primo et pustulas prohibeant, et summam pelliculam exasperent: deinde ea, quæ lenia ad sanitatem perducant.

Ex prioribus est lenticulæ cum melle farina, vel myrrha cum vino, vel creta Cimolia cum thuris cortice contrita, et aqua coacta, atque ubi usus necessitas incidit, aceto diluta: ex insequentibus, quælibet lipara; sed idonea maxime est, quæ vel plumbi recrementum, vel vitellos habet.

Est etiam illa adustorum curatio, dum inflammatio est, impositam habere cum melle lenticulam: ubi ea declinavit, farinam cum ruta, vel porro, vel marrubio, donec crustæ cadant: tum

## ORDO.

turæ. Nam sive inferbuerunt ex oleo, sive surculus piri inferbuit cum his, vacant omni noxa.

18. Quoque vis infertur extrinsecus adustis locis: itaque videtur sequi, ut dicam de his. Autem hæc curantur optime foliis aut lilii, aut caninæ linguæ, aut betæ decoctis in vetere vino quæ oleo: quodlibet quorum impositum protinus, perducit ad sanitatem. Sed quoque curatio potest dividi in ea, quæ mediocriter exedentia, quæ reprimentia, primo et prohibeant pustulas, et exasperent summam pelliculam: deinde ea lenia, quæ perducant ad sanitatem.

Farina lenticulæ cum melle est ex prioribus, vel myrrha cum vino, vel Cimolia creta contrita cum cortice thuris, et coacta aqua, atque ubi necessitas usus incidit, diluta aceto: ex insequentibus, quælibet lipara; sed (ea) est maxime idonea, quæ habet vel recrementi plumbi, vel vitellos.

Est etiam illa curatio adustorum, dum est inflammatio, habere lenticulam impositam cum melle: ubi ea declinavit, farinam cum ruta, vel porro, vel marrubio, donec crustæ cadant: tum ervum

## TRANSLATION.

mode of cooking them. For if they have been boiled in oil, or with the twig of a pear tree, they become perfectly free from any noxious quality.

18. Burns also are enumerated among the effects of external violence: therefore, I must speak of them here, as a matter of course. Now they are best treated by the leaves either of lily, or of the hound's tongue, (*cynoglossus*), or of beet boiled in old wine and oil; any of these applied immediately will heal them. But the treatment may be divided also into those things which are moderately escharotic and repellent: at first we should apply those remedies which may prevent vesicles, and indurate the epidermis: afterwards, we may employ such lenient dressings as will facilitate a healthy action.

The first intention will be effected by the flour of lentils and honey, or by myrrh and wine, or with Cimolian chalk, rubbed up with the bark of frankincense, and incorporated with water; and when there happens to be a necessity for using it, let it be diluted with vinegar: for the second, any of the lipara: but that will be most proper which contains the scoria of lead, or the yolks of eggs.

There is also another method for the treatment of burns, during the inflammatory stage, to apply lentils with honey; when that has subsided, flour with rue, or leeks,

ervum cum melle, aut irim, aut resinam terebinthinam, donec ulcus purum sit: novissime siccum linamentum.

RDO.  
cum melle, aut irim, aut terebinthinam resinam, donec ulcus sit purum: novissime siccum linamentum.

## TRANSLATION.

or horehound, until the eschars fall off: then vetches with honey, or turpentine, resin, until the ulcer be clean: last of all, dry lint.

## CAP. XXVIII.

## ORDO.

DE INTERIORIBUS ULCERIBUS, QUÆ ALIQUA CORPORUM PARTE CORRUPTA NASCUNTUR.

## CAP. XXVIII.

DE INTERIORIBUS ULCERIBUS, QUÆ NASCUNTUR ALIQUA CORRUPTA PARTE CORPORUM.

1. AB his, quæ extrinsecus incidunt, ad ea veniendum est, quæ interius, corrupta aliqua corporum parte, nascuntur. Ex quibus non aliud carbunculo pejus. Ejus hæ notæ sunt: rubor est, superque eum non nimium pustulæ eminent, maxime nigræ, interdum sublividæ, aut pallidæ; in his sanies esse videtur; infra color niger est; ipsum corpus aridum, et durius, quam naturaliter oportet; circaque quasi crusta est; eaque inflammatione cingitur; neque in eo loco levare cutis potest, sed inferiori carni quasi affixa est; somnus urget; nonnumquam horror, aut febris oritur, aut utrumque.

1. AB his, quæ incidunt extrinsecus, est veniendum ad ea, quæ nascuntur interius, aliqua parte corporum corrupta. Ex quibus (est) non aliud pejus, (quam) carbunculo. Hæ sunt notæ ejus: est rubor, que super eum pustulæ eminent non nimium, maxime nigræ, interdum sublividæ, aut pallidæ; sanies videtur esse in his; infra color est niger; corpus ipsum (est) aridum et durius, quam oportet naturaliter; que circa est quasi crusta; quæ ea cingitur inflammatione; neque potest cutis levare in eo loco, sed est quasi affixa inferiori carni; somnus urget; nonnumquam horror, aut febris aut, utrumque oritur.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

THE TREATMENT OF EXTERNAL ULCERS, ARISING FROM SOME PART OF THE BODY BEING VITIATED INTERNALLY.

1. FROM those injuries which happen externally, we proceed to those which arise internally, depending on some depraved viscus. Of these there is none worse than the carbuncle. The following are its characteristic marks: there is redness, covered with vesicles slightly elevated, generally black, sometimes sublivid, or pale; these seem to contain a sanies; the colour underneath is black; the part itself is arid and preternaturally harder than it should be; it is encircled with a kind of crust; and that is surrounded with inflammation; neither can the cuticle be raised in that place, but is affixed as it were to the part beneath: sleep becomes oppressive: sometimes shivering or fever, or both arise.



Idque vitium subteractis quasi quibusdam radicibus serpit, interdum celerius, interdum tardius: supra quoque, procedens inalbescit; dein lividum fit, circumque exiguae pustulae oriuntur: et si circa stomachum faucesve incidit, subito spiritum saepe elidit.

Nihil melius est, quam protinus adurere. Neque id grave est: nam non sentit; quoniam ea caro mortua est. Finisque adurendi est, dum ex omni parte sensus doloris est. Tum deinde vulnus, sicut cetera adusta, curandum est. Sequitur enim sub medicamentis erodentibus crusta, undique a viva carne diducta, quae trahit secum, quidquid corruptum erat; purusque jam sinus curari potest implentibus.

At si in summa cute vitium est, possunt succurrere quaedam vel exedentia tantum, vel etiam adurentia: vis pro magnitudine adhibenda est. Quodcumque vero medicamentum impositum est, si satis proficiet, protinus a viva corruptam partem resolvit; certa-que esse fiducia potest fere, ut undique vitiosa caro excedat, qua hujusce rei medicamen exest. Si id non

## ORDO.

Que id vitium serpit quasi quibusdam subteractis radicibus, interdum celerius, interdum tardius: quoque procedens, inalbescit supra; dein fit lividum, quae exiguae pustulae oriuntur circum; et si incidit circa stomachum vel fauces, saepe subito elidit spiritum.

Nihil est melius, quam adurere protinus. Neque est id grave: nam ea caro non sentit, quoniam est mortua. Que est finis adurendi, dum sensus doloris est ex omni parte. Tum deinde vulnus est curandum, sicut cetera adusta. Enim crusta sequitur sub erodentibus medicamentis, quae diducta indigne a viva carne, quae trahit secum, quidquid erat corruptum; quae sinus jam purus, potest curari implentibus.

At si vitium est in summa cute, vel quaedam exedentia tantum, vel etiam adurentia possunt succurrere: vis est adhibenda pro magnitudine (vitii). Vero quodcumque medicamentum est impositum, si proficiet satis, protinus resolvit corruptam partem a viva; quae potest esse fere certa fiducia, ut vitiosa caro excedat undique, qua medicamen hujusce rei exest.

## TRANSLATION.

Now this disease extends, as it were, by some ramifications from below, sometimes very rapidly, sometimes more slowly: as it advances, it becomes white on the surface; afterwards livid, surrounded with small vesicles: and if this should be about the œsophagus, or fauces, suffocation would take place suddenly.

Nothing is better than to cauterize it immediately. Neither is this a severe operation: for that part is insensible, because it is mortified. The burning should be persisted in until a sensation of pain be felt in every part. Then the wound may be treated afterwards as other burns. For a crust will form under the application of caustics, which, being detached on each side from the living substance, attracts to itself whatever has been depraved; and now the clean abscess may be treated with sarcoticks.

But if the disease be only of the superficial skin, some of the corrosives, or even caustics, may be sufficient to afford relief. Their energy must be regulated by the magnitude of the disease. But whatever remedies we may apply, if they have the desired effect, will soon detach the unhealthy from the living part; and we may be confident of success, when the diseased substance is thrown off on each side, where

fit, medicamentumque malo vincitur, utique ad ustionem properandum est.

Sed in ejusmodi casu abstinendum a cibo, a vino est; aquam liberaliter bibere expedit: magisque ea servanda sunt, si febricula quoque accessit.

2. Non idem periculum *καρκίνωμα* affert, nisi imprudentia curantis agitatum est. Id vitium fit maxime in superioribus partibus, circa faciem, nares, aures, labra, mammas foeminarum. Et in jecore autem, aut splene hoc nascitur. Circa locum aliqua quasi puncta sentiuntur; isque immobilis, inæqualis tumet; interdum etiam torpet. Circa eum inflatæ venæ quasi recurvantur, hæque pallent, aut livent; nonnumquam etiam in quibusdam delitescunt: tactusque is locus, aliis dolorem affert, in aliis eum non habet: et nonnumquam sine ulcere durior aut mollior est, quam esse naturaliter debet; nonnumquam iisdem omnibus ulcus accedit: interdumque nullam habet proprietatem; interdum simile iis est, quæ vocant Græci *κονδυλώματα*, aspredine quadam et magnitudine sua: colorque ejus ruber est, aut lenticulæ similis; neque tuto feritur: nam protinus aut resolutio nervorum, aut distentio insequitur.

#### ORDO.

Si id non fit, que medicamentum vincitur malo, utique est properandum ad ustionem.

Sed in casu ejusmodi est abstinendum a cibo, a vino: expedit bibere aquam liberaliter: que ea sunt magis servanda, si quoque febricula accessit.

2. *Καρκίνωμα* (carcinoma) non offert idem periculum, nisi est agitatum imprudentia curantis. Id vitium fit maxime in superioribus partibus, circa faciem, nares, aures, labra, mammas foeminarum. Autem hoc nascitur, et in jecinore, aut splene. Aliqua quasi puncta sentiuntur circa locum; que is tumet immobilis, inæqualis; interdum etiam torpet. Venæ circa eum inflatæ quasi recurvantur, quæ hæ pallent, aut livent; nonnumquam etiam delitescunt in quibusdam: que is locus tactus, affert dolorem aliis, in aliis non habet eum: et nonnumquam est durior aut mollior, sine ulcere, quam debet esse naturaliter; nonnumquam ulcus accedit omnibus iisdem: que interdum habet nullam proprietatem; interdum est simile iis quæ Græci vocant *κονδυλώματα* (condylomata) quadam aspredine, et sua magnitudine: que color ejus est ruber, aut similis lenticulæ; neque feritur tuto; nam protinus aut resolutio nervorum, aut distentio insequitur.

#### TRANSLATION.

we have applied the caustic. If that be not done, and the malady rebel against the remedy, then indeed the actual cautery must not be deferred.

But in a case of this kind, solid food and wine must be withheld: water may be given freely, and these things should be the more strictly observed, if fever come on.

2. Carcinoma is not accompanied with the same danger, unless aggravated by the unskilfulness of the physician. This disease generally takes place in the superior parts, about the face, nostrils, ears, lips, and the breasts of females. But it also arises in the liver, or spleen. Some lancinating pains are felt about the part; and that is tumified, immoveable, and unequal; it is also sometimes torpid. The veins around it, being inflated and tortuous, are either pale, or livid; in some subjects they are concealed from the view: and that place being touched inflicts pain on some, on others not so: sometimes indeed without an ulcer, it is harder or softer than it ought to be naturally; sometimes an ulcer accedes to all these symptoms: and sometimes it has no peculiarity: sometimes it resembles those tumours which the Greeks call *Condylomata*, having a certain asperity and magnitude; its colour is red, or resembling that of a lentil; neither is it to be opened with safety: for paralysis or convulsion is the immediate consequence.

Sæpe homo ictus obmutescit, atque ejus anima deficit. Quibusdam etiam, si id ipsum pressum est, quæ circa sunt, intenduntur et intumescunt. Ob quæ pessimum id genus est. Fereque primum id fit, quod *κακόνθης* a Græcis nominatur: deinde ex eo id carcinoma quod sine ulcere est: deinde ulcus: ex eo thymium.

Tolli nihil, nisi cacoethes potest: reliqua curationibus irritantur; et quo major vis adhibita est, eo magis. Quidam usi sunt medicamentis adurentibus; quidam ferro adusserunt; quidam scalpello exciderunt: neque ulla umquam medicina profecit: sed adusta, protinus concitata sunt, et increverunt, donec occiderent; excisa, etiam post inductam cicatricem, tamen reverterunt, et causam mortis attulerunt: cum interim plerique nullam vim adhibendo, qua tollere id malum tentent, sed imponendo tantum lenia medicamenta, quæ quasi blandiantur, quominus ad ultimam senectutem perveniant, non prohibeantur.

Discernere autem cacoethes, quod curationem recipit, a carcinomate, quod non recipit, nemo scire potest, nisi tempore et experimento. Ergo ubi

## ORDO.

Sæpe homo ictus obmutescit, atque anima ejus deficit. Etiam quibusdam, si id ipsum est pressum, quæ sunt circa, intenduntur, et intumescunt. Ob quæ, id genus est pessimum. Que fere id (*genus*) fit primum, quod nominatur *κακόνθης* (*cacoethes*) a Græcis: deinde ex eo, id carcinoma, quod est sine ulcere: deinde ulcus: ex eo thymium.

Nihil potest tolli, nisi cacoethes: reliqua irritantur curationibus; et quo major vis est adhibita, eo magis (*irritantur*). Quidam usi sunt adurentibus medicamentis; quidam adusserunt ferro; quidam exciderunt scalpello: neque ulla medicina profecit unquam: sed adusta, protinus sunt concitata, et increverunt, donec occiderent; excisa, etiam post cicatricem inductam, tamen reverterunt, et attulerunt causam mortis: cum interim plerique non prohibeantur, adhibendo nullam vim, qua tentent tollere id malum, sed tantum imponendo lenia medicamenta, quæ quasi blandiantur, quo perveniant minus ad senectutem.

Autem nemo potest scire, discernere cacoethes, quod recipit curationem, a carcinomate, quod non recipit (*curationem*), nisi tempore et experimento. Ergo ubi, id

## TRANSLATION.

A blow received on the part occasions the person to become speechless, and faint. If the tumour be compressed in some, the parts in immediate contact become tense and swollen. For this reason it is the worst kind of disease. It generally commences by what the Greeks call *Cacoethes*, or *malignant tumour*, then proceeds to *Carcinoma*, or *scirrhus*, without ulceration: afterwards to ulcer: then to a thymium (61).

None of these can be removed except the *Cacoethes*: the rest are aggravated by every method of treatment; and the more energetic the remedies, the more irritable they become. Some have applied caustic applications, others the actual cautery; some have removed them with the knife: but none were ever treated successfully by medicine; even the application of the cautery has produced high excitement, and they have gone on increasing until they have destroyed the patient; after excision, notwithstanding a cicatrix has been formed, they have returned again, and carried off the patient: whereas, on the other hand, if no violent agents be employed in attempting to remove the disease, but such mild dressings, by way of placebo, many persons may prolong their existence to an extreme old age.

But no one can distinguish a cacoethes, which is curable, from a carcinoma, which is incurable, except by time and experiment. Therefore, when that disease first



primum id vitium notatum est, imponi debent medicamenta adurentia. Si levatur malum, minuunturque ejus indicia, procedere curatio potest et ad scalpellum, et ad ustionem: si protinus irritatum est, scire licet, jam carcinoma esse; removendaque sunt omnia acria, omnia vehementia. Sed si sine ulcere is locus durus est, imponi ficum quam pinguiissimam, aut rhyodes emplastrum satis est.

Si ulcus æquale est, ceratum ex rosa injiciendum est, adjiciendusque ei pulvis ex contrita testa, ex qua faber ferrarius tingere candens ferrum solitus est. Si id nimium supercrevit, tentanda squama æris est, quæ lenissima ex adurentibus est; eatenus, ne quid eminere patiatur: sed ita, si nihil exacerbat: sin minus, eodem cerato contenti esse debemus.

3. Est etiam ulcus, quod *θηρίωμα* Græci vocant. Id et per se nascitur, et interdum ulceri ex alia causa facto supervenit. Color est vel lividus, vel niger; odor fœdus; multus, et muco similis humor: ipsum ulcus neque tactum, neque medicamentum sentit; pru-

## ORDO.

vitium est primum notatum, adurentia medicamenta debent imponi. Si malum levatur, quæ ejus indicia minuuntur, curatio potest procedere et ad scalpellum, et ad ustionem: si est protinus irritatum, licet scire, esse jam carcinoma; quæ omnia acria, omnia vehementia sunt removenda. Sed si is locus est durus sine ulcere, est satis imponi quam pinguiissimam ficum, aut emplastrum rhyodes.

Si nlcus est æquale, ceratum ex roso est injiciendum, quæ pulvis ex contrita testa, ex qua faber ferrarius est solitus tingere candens ferrum, est adjiciendus. Si id supercrevit nimium, squama æris est tentanda, quæ est lenissima ex adurentibus; eatenus, ne patiatur eminere quid: sed ita, si exacerbavit nihil: sin minus, debemus esse contenti eodem cerato.

3. Est etiam ulcus, quod Græci vocant *θηρίωμα* (therioma.) Id, et nascitur per se, et interdum supervenit ulceri facto ex alia causa. Color est vel lividus, vel niger; odor (est) fœdus; (est) multus humor, et (est) similis muco: ulcus ipsum neque sensit tactum, neque (sensit) medicamen-

## TRANSLATION.

developes itself, caustic applications ought to be employed. If the malady be relieved, and its symptoms diminished, the treatment may proceed to extirpation, and the actual cautery: if it be immediately aggravated, we may now conclude that is a carcinoma: and all acrid, all violent applications are to be removed. But if that part be hard without ulceration, it will be sufficient to apply a very melow fig, or the rhyodes plaster over it.

If the ulcer have an even surface, a cerate made of rose oil is to be applied, with the addition of a shell reduced to powder, and water in which a blacksmith has been accustomed to dip his hot iron. If the ulcer be accompanied with considerable excrescence, the peroxyde of copper may be tried, which is the mildest of the caustics; so far only, that nothing be suffered to project above the skin: and even then, provided that no aggravation of the ulcer has been the result: if otherwise, we ought to be content with the same cerate above-mentioned.

3. There is an ulcer which the Greeks call Therioma. This not only arises spontaneously, but supervenes on an old ulcer produced by some other cause. The colour is either livid or black: the odour is fœtid; the discharge is copious, and resembling mucus: the ulcer itself is insensible both to the touch and to the remedies

rigine tantum movetur: at circa dolor est, et inflammatio: interdum etiam febris oritur: nonnumquam ex ulcere sanguis erumpit: atque id quoque malum serpit.

Quæ omnia sæpe intenduntur; fitque ex his ulcus, quod *φαιγέδαιναν* Græci vocant; quia celeriter serpendo, penetrandoque usque ossa, corpus vorat. Id ulcus inæquale est, cæno simile; inestque multus humor glutinosus, odor intolerabilis, majorque, quam pro modo ulceris, inflammatio. Utrumque, sicut omnis cancer, fit maxime in senibus, vel iis, quorum corpora mali habitus sunt.

Curatio utriusque eadem est: sed in majore malo major vis necessaria. Ac primum a victus ratione ordinandum est: ut quiescat in lectulo: ut primis diebus a cibo absteineat, aquam quam plurimam assumat: alvus quoque ei ducatur: dein, post inflammationem, cibum boni succi capiat, vitatis omnibus acribus; potionis quantum volet, sic, ut interdum quidem aqua contentus sit; in cœna vero etiam vini austeri aliquid bibat. Non æque tamen fame

## ORDO.

tum; tamen movetur prurigine; at est dolor, et inflammatio circa: interdum etiam febris oritur: nonnumquam etiam sanguis erumpit ex ulcere: atque id quoque malum serpit.

Omnia quæ sæpe intenduntur; que ulcus fit ex his, quod Græci vocant *φαιγέδαιναν* (phagedæna); quia celeriter vorat corpus, serpendo, que penetrando usque (ad) ossa. Id ulcus est inæquale, simile cæno; que inest multus glutinosus humor, intolerabilis odor, que major inflammatio quam pro modo ulceris. Utrumque, sicut omnis cancer, fit maxime in senibus, vel iis, corpora quorum sunt mali habitus.

Curatio utriusque est eadem; sed major vis (est) necessaria in majore malo. Ac primum est ordinandum a ratione victus: ut quiescat in lectulo: ut absteineat a cibo primis diebus, assumat quam plurimam aquam; quoque alvus ducatur ei: dein, capiat cibum boni succi, post inflammationem, omnibus acribus vitatis; quantum volet potionis, sic, ut interdum sit quidem contentus aqua; vero in cœna etiam bibat aliquid austeri vini. Tamen non erit

## TRANSLATION.

applied, and is only affected by itching: but there is pain and inflammation around it: sometimes hæmorrhage takes place from the ulcer: and this disease (*as well as cancer*) invades contiguous parts.

The foregoing symptoms often become augmented; and hence that ulcer is the result, which the Greeks call Phagedænic; because it extends rapidly, and penetrating even to the bones, devours the body. The ulcer is unequal, jagged, and foul; and there is a profuse discharge of glutinous humour, accompanied with an intolerable stench, the inflammation is greater, and disproportionate to the size of the ulcer. Each species, as indeed cancers of all kinds, attack aged persons principally, or those whose bodies are of depraved habit.

The treatment of each is the same: only more energetic remedies will be necessary for the more rebellious malady. At first we must institute a strict regimen: the patient must be kept quiescent in bed: let him abstain from solid food the first few days, he may take water freely; the bowels may be relieved by enema: the inflammation being subdued, he may take good succulent food, avoiding every thing acrid. Let him drink as much as he pleases, on condition that he shall be content with water in the day-time; but at supper he may take some austere wine. But

in iis, quos *φαγέδαινα* urgebit, atque iis, qui *θηρίωμα* adhuc habebunt, utendum erit. Et victus quidem talis necessarius est.

Super ulcus vero inspergenda arida aloë *œnanthe* est, et, si parum proficiet, *chalcitis*. Ac si quis nervus exesa carne nudatus est, contegendus ante linteolo est, ne sub eo medicamento aduratur. Si validioribus etiamnum remediis opus est, ad eas compositiones veniendum est, quæ vehementius adurant. Quidquid autem inspergitur, averso specillo infundi debet. Superdanda cum melle sunt vel linamenta, vel oleæ folia ex vino decocta, vel *marrubium*: eaque linteolo contegenda in aqua frigida madefacto, dein bene expresso: circaque, qua tumor ex inflammatione est, imponenda, quæ reprimant, cataplasmata.

Si sub his nihil proficitur, ferro locus aduri debet; diligenter nervis, si qui apparent, ante contextis. Adustum vel medicamentis vel ferro corpus, primum pugandum, deinde implendum esse, apparere cuilibet ex prioribus potest.

## ORDO.

utendum æque fame iis, quos *φαγέδαινα* (*phagedæna*) urgebit, atque iis, qui adhuc habebunt *θηρίωμα* (*therioma*). Et quidem talis victus est necessarius.

Vero arida aloë (vel) *œnanthe* est inspergenda super ulcus, et, *chalcitis*, si proficiet parum. Ac si quis nervus est nudatus, carne exesa, est contegendus ante linteolo, ne aduratur sub eo medicamento. Si etiamnum est opus validioribus remediis, est veniendum ad eas compositiones, quæ adurant vehementius. Autem quicquid inspergitur, debet infundi averso specillo. Linamenta sunt vel superdanda cum melle, vel folia oleæ, decocta ex vino, vel *marrubium*: que linteola madefacto ea contegenda frigida aqua, dein bene expresso: que cataplasmata quæ reprimant, (sunt) imponenda circa, qua tumor est ex inflammatione.

Si proficitur nihil sub his, locus debet aduri ferro; nervis, si qui apparent contextis ante diligenter. Potest apparere cuilibet, ex prioribus, (ut,) corpus adustum vel medicamentis vel ferro, (debet) esse primum purgandum, deinde implendum.

## TRANSLATION.

it will not be necessary to adopt such a rigorous abstinence with those affected with *phagedæna*, as with those who may have *therioma*. So much then for the necessary regimen.

Now dry aloes, or *œnanthe* may be sprinkled on the ulcer, and if these avail little, *chalcitis*. But if there be any nerve denuded by its ravages, it must be previously covered with some lint, that it may not be destroyed by this application. If there be a necessity for remedies still more powerful, we must employ those compositions which are more caustic. But whatever be sprinkled on, should be applied with the inverted or broad end of the probe. Over these should be applied either lint dipped in honey, or olive leaves boiled with wine, or horehound: and these again covered with some lint moistened in cold water, and pressed out; the contiguous parts, where there is swelling from inflammation, must be covered with astringent cataplasms.

If little advantage have been obtained by these applications, the part must be seared with a hot iron; previously protecting the nerves carefully, if there be any apparent. Now it must be evident to any person, from what I have said above, that when a part is destroyed by the application, either of actual or potential cautery, it must first be cleansed and then regenerated.



4. Sacer quoque ignis malis ulceribus adnumerari debet. Ejus duæ species sunt. Alterum est subrubicundum, aut mistum rubore atque pallore, exasperatumque per pustulas continuas, quarum nulla altera major est, sed plurimæ perexiguæ. In his semper fere pus, et sæpe rubor cum calore est: serpitque id nonnumquam sanescente eo, quod primum vitiatum est: nonnumquam etiam exulcerato, ubi ruptis pustulis ulcus continuatur, humorque exit, qui esse inter saniem et pus videri potest. Fit maxime in pectore, aut lateribus, aut eminentibus partibus, præcipueque in plantis.

Alterum autem est in summæ cutis exulceratione, sed sine altitudine, latum, sublividum, inæqualiter tamen; mediumque sanescit, extremis procedentibus: ac sæpe id, quod jam sanum videbatur, iterum exulceratur: at circa, proxima cutis, quæ vitium receptura est, tumidior et durior est, colorumque habet ex rubro subnigrum. Atque hoc quoque malo fere corpora seniores tentantur, aut quæ mali habitus sunt; sed in cruribus maxime.

Omnis autem sacer ignis, ut minimum periculum habet ex iis, quæ ser-

## ORDO.

4. Sacer ignis debet quoque adnumerari malis ulceribus. Sunt duæ species ejus. Alterum est rubicundum, aut mistum rubore atque pallore, que exasperatum per continuas pustulas, nulla quarum est major (quam) ulla, sed plurimæ (sunt) perexiguæ. Est fere semper pus in his, et sæpe rubor cum calore: que nonnumquam id serpit (a) sanescente eo, quod est primum vitiatum: nonnumquam etiam ex ulcerato, ubi ulcus continuatur ruptis pustulis, que humor exit, qui videri esse inter saniem et pus. Fit maxime in pectore, aut lateribus, aut eminentibus partibus, quæ præcipue in plantis.

Autem est alterum in exulceratione summæ cutis, sed (est) sine altitudine, latum, sublividum, tamen inæqualiter; que medium sanescit, extremis procedentibus: ac sæpe, id quod videbatur jam sanum, exulceratur iterum: at circa, proxima cutis, quæ est receptura vitium, est tumidior et durior, que habet colorem ex rubro (ad) subnigrum. Atque quoque seniores corpora fere tentantur hoc malo, aut quæ sunt mali habitus; sed maxime in cruribus.

Autem omnis sacer ignis, ut habet minimum periculum ex (omnibus) iis, quæ serpunt; sic tol-

## TRANSLATION.

4. The **IGNIS SACER** (62) also may be enumerated amongst malignant ulcers. There are two species of it. The one is somewhat red, or mixed with red and pale patches, with scabrous and continuous vesicles, of which no one appears larger than another, but very numerous and small. They generally contain pus, accompanied with redness and heat; and this sometimes extends, whilst that which was first seized becomes healthy; sometimes also it becomes ulcerated, and when these vesicles are ruptured, one continuous sore is formed, discharging a humour which may appear to resemble a purulent sanies. It attacks the chest, the sides, or the extremities, but especially the soles of the feet.

There is another in the ulceration of the cutis, but without depth, broad, somewhat livid, but unequal; the middle becomes healthy, while the extremities extend; and frequently that, which appeared to be sound, ulcerates again; the circumjacent skin, which is about to take on the disease, tumifies, and is harder, and is of a dark red colour. Elderly persons are generally afflicted with this disease, or those who are of a bad habit, but mostly in the legs.

Now every **Ignis Sacer**, as it is the least dangerous of those creeping disorders;

punt; sic prope difficillime tollitur. Medicamentum ejus fortuitum est, uno die febris, quæ humorem noxium absumat. Pus, quo crassius et albidius est, eo periculi minus est. Prodest etiam infra os ulcerum lædi, quo plus puris exeat; et id, quo ibi corruptum corpus est, extrahatur. Sed tamen, si febricula accessit, abstinencia, lectulo, alvi ductione opus est.

In omni vero sacro igni, neque lenibus et glutinosis cibis, neque salsis et acribus utendum est; sed iis, quæ inter utrumque sunt: qualis est panis sine fermento, piscis, hœdus, aves, exceptoque apro, omnis fere venatio. Si non est febricula, et gestatio utilis est, et ambulatio, et vinum austereum, et balneum. Atque in hoc quoque genere potio magis liberalis esse, quam cibus, debet.

Ipsa autem ulcera, si mediocriter serpunt, aqua calida; si vehementius, vino calido fovenda sunt: deinde acupustulæ, quæcumque sunt, aperiendæ: tum imponenda ea, quæ putrem carnem exedunt. Ubi inflammatio sublata, ulcusque purgatum est, imponi lene me-

## ORDO.

litur prope difficillime. Febris uno die, quæ absumat noxium humorem, est fortuitum medicamentum ejus. Quo, pus est crassius et albidius, eo, est minus periculi. Etiam prodest lædi infra os ulcerum, quo plus puris exeat; et id, quo corpus est corruptum ibi, extrahatur. Sed tamen, si febricula accessit, est opus lectulo, abstinencia, ductione alvi.

Vero in omni sacro igni, est neque utendum lenibus et glutinosis cibis, neque salsis et acribus; sed iis quæ sunt inter utrumque: qualis est panis sine fermento, piscis, hœdus, aves, quæ fere omnis venatio, apro excepto. Si febricula non est, et gestatio, et ambulatio, et austereum vinum, et balneum est utilis. Atque quoque in hoc genere, potio debet esse magis liberalis, quam cibus.

Autem ulcera ipsa sunt fovenda calida aqua, si serpunt mediocriter; si (serpunt) vehementius, (sunt fovenda) calido vino: deinde acupustulæ, quæcumque sunt, (sunt) aperiendæ acutis: tum ea (sunt) imponenda, quæ exedunt putrem carnem. Ubi inflammatio (est) sublata, quæ ulcus est purga-

## TRANSLATION.

so it is nearly the most difficult to be removed. A fever for one day, which may consume the noxious humour, is one of its fortuitous remedies. The thicker and whiter the pus is, there is proportionably less danger. It is also beneficial to make incisions below the mouths of the ulcers, by which means more pus may escape, and that matter by which the body is there corrupted, may be drawn out. But yet, if a slight fever come on, there will be a necessity for abstinence, rest in bed, and alvuduction.

Now in every species of this Ignis Sacer, we must neither give mild and glutinous food, nor salt and acrid things; but those which are between each; such as unfermented bread, fish, kid, birds, and almost all venison, except the wild boar. If there be no febricula, both gestation and walking will be useful, austere wine, and the bath: and in this disease also the drink ought to be more abundant than the food.

Even the ulcers themselves, if they spread moderately, should be fomented with warm water; if more violently, with warm wine: afterwards they are to be opened by a needle wherever they may be: then such dressings applied as may eat away the putrid flesh. When the inflammation is removed, and the ulcer

dicamentum debet. In altero autem genere, possunt proficere mala cotonea in vino cocta, atque contrita: potest emplastrum vel Heræ, vel tetrapharmacum, cui quinta pars thuris adjecta sit: potest nigra hederæ ex vino austero cocta; ac, si celeriter malum serpit, non aliud magis proficit. Purgato ulcere, quod in summa cute esse proposui, satis ad sanitatem eadem lenia medicamenta proficient.

5. Chironium autem ulcus appellatur, quod et magnum est, et habet oras duras, callosas, tumentes. Exit sanies non multa, sed tenuis; odor malus, neque in ulcere, neque in ejus humore est; nulla inflammatio, dolor modicus est; nihil serpit: ideoque nullum periculum adfert; sed non facile sanescit. Interdum tenuis cicatrix inducitur, deinde iterum rumpitur, ulcusque renovatur. Fit maxime in pedibus et cruribus.

Super id imponi debet, quod et lene aliquid, et vehemens, et reprimens habeat; quale ejus rei causa fit ex his: squamæ æris, plumbi eloti combusti, singulorum p. ʒ. iv. cadmiæ, ceræ,

## ORDO.

tum, lene medicamentum debet imponi. Autem in altero genere, cotonea mala contrita, atque cocta in vino possunt proficere: vel emplastrum Heræ, vel tetrapharmacum, cui quinta pars thuris sit adjecta, potest (proficere): nigra hederæ cocta ex austero vino potest (proficere); ac si malum celeriter serpit, aliud non proficit magis. Ulcere purgato, quod proposui esse in summa cute, eadem lenia medicamenta proficient satis ad sanitatem.

5. Autem ulcus appellatur Chironium, quod est et magnum, et habet duras, callosas, tumentes oras. Non multa sanies exit, sed tenuis; est malus odor neque in ulcere, neque in humore ejus; (est) nulla inflammatio, dolor est modicus; serpit nihil; que ideo adfert nihil periculum; sed non sanescit facile. Interdum tenuis cicatrix inducitur, deinde rumpitur iterum, que ulcus renovatur. Fit maxime in pedibus et cruribus.

Super id, debet imponi quod habeat aliquid et lene, et vehemens, et reprimens; quale, causa ejus rei, fit ex his: squamæ æris, eloti combusti plumbi, singulorum p. ʒ. iv.

## TRANSLATION.

cleansed, a mild dressing ought to be applied. But in the other species, quinces boiled in wine and bruised, may do good: also the plaster of Hera, or the tetrpharmacum, to which one-fifth part of frankincense may be added, likewise black ivy boiled in austere wine; and if the disease spread rapidly, no other remedy will be more efficacious. When the ulcer is cleansed, which I have described to be on the surface of the skin, the same mild applications will be sufficient to complete the cure.

5. But that ulcer is named Chironian (63) which is both large and has hard, calous, and tumified edges. A sanies is discharged; not much, but thin; there is no bad smell in the ulcer, nor in its discharge; there is no inflammation, the pain is moderate; it does not spread, and on this account is accompanied with no danger; but it does not heal easily. Sometimes a thin cicatrix is induced, then breaks again, and the ulcer is renewed. It takes place principally in the feet and legs.

The dressings applied ought to possess both lenient, strong, and astringent properties, such as is made for that purpose from the following: the oxyde of copper,



singulorum p. ℥. viii. rosæ quantum satis est ad ceram simul cum eis molliendam.

6. Fiunt etiam ex frigore hiberno ulcera, maxime in pueris, et præcipue pedibus, digitisque eorum, nonnumquam etiam in manibus. Rubor cum inflammatione mediocri est: interdum pustulæ oriuntur, deinde exulceratio: dolor autem modicus; prurigo major est: nonnumquam humor exit, sed non multus, qui referre vel pus, vel saniem videtur. In primis multa calida aqua fovendum est, in qua rapa decocta; aut si ea non sunt, aliquæ verbenæ ex reprimentibus. Si nondum adapertum ulcus est, æs, quam maxime calidum quis pati potest, admovendum est. Si jam exulceratio est, imponi debet alumen æqua portione cum thure contritum, vino adjecto, aut malicorium in aqua coctum, deinde contritum. Si summa detracta pellicula est, hic quoque melius lenia medicamenta proficiunt.

7. Struma quoque est tumor, in quo subter concreta quædam ex pure et sanguine quasi glandulæ oriuntur: quæ

#### ORDO.

cadmiæ, ceræ, singulorum p. ℥. viii. quantum est satis rosæ ad molliendam ceram simul cum eis.

6. Etiam ulcera fiunt ex hiberno frigore, maxime in pueris, et præcipue in pedibus, que digitis eorum, nonnumquam etiam (in) manibus. Est rubor cum mediocri inflammatione: interdum pustulæ oriuntur, deinde exulceratio: autem dolor (est) modicus; prurigo est major: nonnumquam humor exit; sed non multus, qui videtur referre vel pus, vel saniem. Est fovendum, in primis multa calida aqua in qua rapa (est) decocta; aut si ea non sunt, aliquæ verbenæ ex reprimentibus. Si ulcus est nondum adapertum, æs, quam maxime calidum, quis potest pati, est admovendum. Si est jam exulceratio, alumen contritum æqua portione cum thure, vino adjecto, debet imponi. Aut malicorium coctum in aqua, deinde contritum. Si summa pellicula est detracta, hic quoque lenia medicamenta proficiunt melius.

7. Quoque struma est tumor, in quo, subter concreta ex pure et sanguine, quædam quasi glandulæ oriuntur: quæ vel præcipue

#### TRANSLATION.

calcined lead washed, of each p. ℥. iv. cadmia, wax, each p. ℥. viii. of rose oil a sufficient quantity to soften the wax with the other ingredients.

6. Ulcers also take place from the winter's cold, for the most part in boys, especially in their feet and toes, sometimes in their hands also. There is redness with moderate inflammation, sometimes pustules arise, afterwards ulceration: the pain is moderate; the itching is considerable: sometimes there is a discharge of humour, but not excessive, which appears to resemble either pus or sanies. In the first place, they must be fomented freely with a hot decoction of turnips; or if these are not to be had, some of the repellent vervains. If the ulcer be not yet opened, copper, as hot as the patient is able to bear it, must be applied. If it be already ulcerated, bruised alum with frankincense in equal proportions, ought to be applied, wine being added; or pomegranate-rind boiled in water, and afterwards bruised. If the cuticle be removed, here also gentle medicines avail better.

7. Struma also is a tumour, in which some concretions are formed from pus and blood, like little glands: these are particularly obstinate even to physicians: be-

vel præcipue fatigare medicos solent; quoniam et febres movent, nec unquam facile maturescunt; et sive ferro, sive medicamentis curantur, plerumque iterum juxta cicatrices ipsas resurgunt; multoque post medicamenta sæpius: quibus id quoque accedit, quod longo spatio detinent. Nascuntur maxime in cervice; sed etiam in alis, et inguinibus, et in lateribus.

In mammis quoque foeminarum se reperisse, Meges auctor est. Propter hæc et album veratrum recte datur, atque etiam sæpius, donec ea digerantur: et medicamenta imponuntur, quæ humorem vel educant, vel dissipent; quorum supra mentio facta est. Adurentibus quoque quidam utuntur, quæ exedant, crustaque eum locum adstringant: tum vero ut ulcus curant. Quæcumque autem ratio curandi est, corpus, puro ulcere, exercendum atque alendum est, donec ad cicatricem perveniat. Quæ cum medici doceant, quorundam rusticorum experimento cognitum, quem struma male habet, eum, si anguem edit, liberari.

8. Furunculus vero, est tuberculum acutum cum inflammatione, et dolore;

## ORDO.

solent fatigare medicos; quoniam et movent febres, nec unquam facile maturescunt; et sive curantur ferro, sive medicamentis, plerumque iterum resurgunt juxta cicatrices ipsas; quæ multo sæpius post medicamenta: quibus id quoque accedit, quod detinent longo spatio. Nascuntur maxime in cervice; sed etiam (nascuntur) in alis, et inguinibus, et in lateribus.

Quoque Meges est auctor, se reperisse in mammis foeminarum. Propter hæc, et album veratrum datur recte, atque etiam sæpius, donec ea digerantur; et medicamenta imponuntur, quæ vel educant, vel dissipent humorem; quorum mentio est facta supra. Quidam quoque utuntur adurentibus, quæ exedant, quæ adstringant eum locum crusta: vero tum curant (id) ut ulcus. Autem quæcumque est ratio medendi, ulcere (facto) puro, corpus est alendum et exercendum, donec (ulcus) perveniat ad cicatricem. Cum medici doceant, quæ (res), cognitum (est) experimento quorundam rusticorum, eum, quem struma habet male, liberari, si edit anguem.

8. Furunculus vero est acutum tuberculum, cum inflammatione et

## TRANSLATION.

cause they excite fever, and scarcely ever mature kindly; and whether treated by the knife, or by medicines, they generally reappear near the old cicatrices: this indeed happens more frequently after medicines; to which this may be added, they are of long continuance. They arise chiefly in the neck, also in the axilla, groin, and sides.

Meges asserts that he found them also in the breast of females. For these cases white hellebore is properly given, and even very frequently, until they may be dispersed; also medicines are to be externally applied, which shall either draw out or dispel the humour, of which mention has been made above. Some employ caustics, which eat out, and astringe the part by an eschar, but then they treat it as an ulcer. But whatever method be adopted, the ulcer is to be cleansed, the body nourished and exercised, until a cicatrix be formed. These then are the methods prescribed by physicians, yet it has been known by the experience of some rustics, that a person has been freed from struma by eating a snake.

8. But a furnunculus is an acutely pointed tubercle, with inflammation and pain;

maximeque ubi jam in pus vertitur. Qui ubi adapertus est, et exiit pus, subter apparet pars carnis in pus versa, pars corrupta subalbida, subrubra; quem ventriculum quidam furunculi nominant. In eo nullum periculum est, etiamsi nulla curatio adhibeatur: maturescit enim per se, atque erumpit. Sed dolor efficit, ut potior medicina sit, quæ maturius liberet.

Proprium ejus medicamentum galbanum est: sed alia quoque supra comprehensa sunt. Si cetera desunt, imponi debet, primum non pingue emplastrum, ut id reprimat: deinde, si non repressit, quodlibet puri movendo accommodatum: si ne id quidem est, vel resina, vel fermentum. Expresso pure, nulla ultra curatio necessaria est.

9. Φύμα vero nominatur tuberculum furunculo simile, sed rotundius et planius, sæpe etiam majus. Nam furunculus ovi dimidii magnitudinem raro explet, numquam excedit: phyma etiam latius patere consuevit; sed inflammatio dolorque sub eo minores sunt. Ubi divisum est, pus eodem modo apparet: ventriculus, qui in furunculo, non invenitur: verum omnis corrupta caro

## ORDO.

dolore; que maxime ubi jam vertitur in pus. Qui ubi est adapertus, et pus exiit, pars carnis apparet subter, versa in pus, pars corrupta subalbida, subrubra; quem quidam nominant ventriculum furunculi. Est nullum periculum in eo, etiamsi nulla curatio adhibeatur: enim maturescit, atque erumpit per se. Sed dolor efficit, ut medicina sit potior, quæ liberet maturius.

Galbanum est proprium medicamentum ejus (generis); sed alia sunt quoque comprehensa supra. Si cetera desunt, emplastrum (ut est) non pingue, debet primum imponi, ut reprimat id: deinde, si (id) non repressit, (id) quodlibet accommodatum movendo puri; si ne quidem id est, vel resina, vel fermentum. Pure expresso, nulla ultra curatio est necessaria.

9. Vero (est) tuberculum simile furunculo, sed rotundius et planius, etiam sæpe majus, ut nominantur φύμα (phyma). Nam furunculus raro explet magnitudinem dimidii ovi, nunquam excedit: phyma etiam consuevit patere latius; sed inflammatio que dolor sunt minores sub eo. Ubi est divisum, pus apparet eodem modo: ventriculus, qui (est) in furunculo, non invenitur: verum

## TRANSLATION.

and especially when it is about to form pus. When this is opened, and the pus discharged, part of the flesh beneath appears converted into pus, part corrupted, of a whitish colour, inclining to red; which some have named the ventricle of the boil. There is no danger in this, even if no treatment be applied, for it matures by itself. But the pain renders some medicine preferable, which may liberate the matter sooner.

The proper application for it is galbanum: but there are other dressings also above mentioned. If those things are not to be had, let an astringent plaster be first applied, not greasy; if this does not repress it, then any plaster calculated to promote pus; if that be not attainable, either resin, or yeast (64). The pus being pressed out, no further treatment is necessary.

9. But there is a tubercle named Phyma, resembling a boil, but rounder, flatter, and frequently larger. For a boil seldom equals the size of half an egg, never exceeds it: the phyma generally extends wider: but the inflammation and pain in it are less. When it has been opened, the pus appears in the same manner; but the sac or ventricle, which is found in the furuncle, is not here: for all the



in pus vertitur. Id autem in pueris et sæpius nascitur et facilius tollitur: in juvenibus rarius oritur, et difficilius curatur: ubi ætas induravit, ne nascitur quidem. Quibus vero medicamentis discuteretur, supra propositum est.

10. Φύγεθλον autem est tumor, non altus, latus, in quo quiddam pustulæ simile est. Dolor distentioque vehemens est, et major quam pro magnitudine tumoris; interdum etiam febricula: idque tarde maturescit, neque magnopere in pus convertitur. Fit maxime aut in cervice, aut in alis, aut in inguinibus. Panem, ad similitudinem figuræ, nostri vocant. Atque id ipsum quo medicamento tolleretur, supra demonstravi.

11. Sed cum omnes hi nihil nisi minuti abscessus sint, generale nomen trahit latius vitium ad suppurationem spectans. Idque fere fit aut post febres, aut post dolores partis alicujus, maximeque eos, qui ventrem infestant. Sæpiusque oculis expositum est; siquidem latius aliquid intumescit ad similitudinem ejus, quod φῦμα vocari

## ORDO.

omnis corrupta caro vertitur in pus. Autem id et nascitur sæpius, et tollitur facilius in pueris: oritur rarius, et curatur difficilius in juvenibus: ubi ætas induravit, quidem ne nascitur. Vero est propositum supra, quibus medicamentis discuteretur.

10. Φύγεθλον (phygethlon) autem est tumor, non altus, latus, in quo est quiddam simile pustulæ. Dolor que distentio est vehemens, et major quam pro magnitudine tumoris; interdum etiam est febricula: que id maturescit tarde, neque convertitur magnopere in pus. Maxime fit aut in cervice, aut in alis, aut in inguinibus. Nostri vocant (id) panem, ad similitudinem figuræ. Atque demonstravi supra, quo medicamento, id ipsum tolleretur.

11. Sed cum omnes hi sint nihil nisi minuti abscessus, latius vitium spectans ad suppurationem trahit generale nomen. Que fere id fit aut post febres, aut post dolores alicujus partis, que maxime eos (dolores), qui infestant ventrem. Que sæpius est expositum oculis; siquidem aliquid intumescit latius, ad similitudinem ejus, quod proposui vocari φῦμα (phyma), que rubet cum ca-

## TRANSLATION.

diseased flesh is converted into pus. Now this occurs more frequently in children, and is more easily removed: in youths it arises more rarely, and is cured with more difficulty: when age has given firmness to the body, it does not appear at all. The medicines by which it is to be discussed are mentioned above.

10. A Phygethlon is a flat, broad tumour, in which there is some resemblance to a pustule. The pain and tension are violent, and greater than in proportion to the size of the tumour: sometimes there is a slight fever: it matures slowly, neither is there much of it converted into pus. It is formed chiefly in the neck, in the arm-pits, or in the groins. Our countrymen call it *panis*, from its resemblance to a *clue* or *ball*. I have already pointed out the remedies for removing this.

11. But since these are nothing more than small abscesses, a larger tumour tending to suppuration, more appropriately assumes this general term. Now this malady generally takes place, either after fevers, or after pains in some parts, and particularly those which infest the abdomen. It is more particularly manifest to the view; for it extends very broad, and swells, resembling *that* tumour which I have proposed to be called *Phyma*; it is red and hot, and in a little

proposui, rubetque cum calore, et paulo post etiam cum duritia, magisque nocenter indolescit, et sitim vigiliamque exprimit.

Interdum tamen nihil horum in cute deprehendi potest; maximeque, ubi altius pus movetur: sed cum siti vigiliamque sentiuntur intus aliquæ punctiones. Et quod de subito durius non est, melius est: et quamvis non rubet, coloris tamen aliter mutati est. Quæ signa jam pure oriente nascuntur: tumor ruborque multo ante incipiunt.

Sed si locus mollis est, avertendus materiæ aditus est per cataplasmata, quæ simul et reprimunt, et refrigerant: qualia et alias et paulo ante in erysipelate proposui. Si jam durior est, ad ea veniendum est, quæ digerant, et resolvant: qualis est ficus arida contusa; aut fæx mista cum cerato, quod ex adipe suilla coactum sit; aut cucumeris radix, cui ex farina duæ partes adjectæ sint, ante ex mulso decoctæ. Licet etiam miscere æquis portionibus ammoniacum, galbanum, propolim, viscum; pondusque adjicere myrrhæ dimidio minus, quam in prioribus singulis erit. Atque emplastra quoque et malagmata idem efficiunt, qua supra explicui.

#### TRANSLATION.

time becomes hard, more injuriously painful, producing thirst and watchfulness.

Sometimes, however, none of these can be detected on the surface; and especially when the pus is formed very deep; but internal pricking pains will be felt, accompanied with thirst and vigilance. That which does not become hard on a sudden, is more favourable; and although it be not red, yet it is of a changed colour. These symptoms take place when the matter is formed; the swelling and redness commence long before.

But if the part be soft, the accession of matter is to be averted by cataplasms, which may repel and refrigerate at the same time: such as I have prescribed for erysipelas a little before and elsewhere. If it has become hard, we must employ those applications which disperse and resolve: such is the property of a dry fig bruised; or the lees of wine mixed with cerate, which may be incorporated with hog's lard; or the root of wild cucumber, with the addition of two parts of meal, first boiled with hydromel. It is also proper to mix in equal portions ammoniacum, galbanum, propolis (65), misletoe, adding of myrrh by weight half the quantity that there may be of each of the other ingredients. The plasters and malagmata which I have mentioned before have also the same effect.

#### ORDO.

lore, et etiam paulo post cum duritia, que indolescit magis nocenter, et exprimit sitim que vigiliam.

Tamen interdum nihil horum potest deprehendi in cute; que maxime, ubi pus movetur altius: sed aliquæ punctiones sentiuntur intus cum siti que vigilia. Et quod est non durius de subito, est melius: et quamvis non rubet, tamen est aliter mutati coloris. Quæ signa jam nascuntur, pure oriente: tumor que rubor incipiunt multo ante.

Sed si locus est mollis, aditus materiæ est avertendus per cataplasmata, quæ simul et reprimunt, et refrigerant: qualia proposui et alias et paulo ante in erysipelate. Si est jam durior, est veniendum ad ea, quæ digerant, et resolvant: qualis est arida contusa ficus; aut fæx mista cum cerato, quod sit coactum ex adipe snilla; aut radix cucumeris, cui duæ partes ex farina, decoctæ ante ex mulso, adjectæ sint. Licet etiam miscere æquis portionibus ammoniacum, galbanum, propolim, viscum; que adjicere dimidio minus pondus myrrhæ, quam erit in singulis prioribus. Atque emplastra quoque et malagmata, quæ explicui supra; efficiunt idem.

Quod per hæc discussum non est, necesse est, maturescat. Ideo quo celerius fiat, imponenda est farina hordeacea, ex aqua cocta \* \* \* recte miscetur. Eadem autem hæc in minoribus quoque abscessibus, quorum nomina proprietatesque supra reddidi, recte fiunt. Eademque omnium curatio: tantum modo distat. Crudum est autem, in quo major quasi venarum motus est, et gravitas, et ardor, et distentio, et dolor, et rubor, et durities; et, si major abscessus est, horror, aut etiam febricula permanet: penitusque condita suppuratione, si pro his, quæ alibi cutis ostendit, punctiones sunt.

Ubi ista se remiserunt, jamque is locus prurit, et aut sublividus, aut subalbidus est, matura suppuratio est: eaque, ubi vel per ipsa medicamenta, vel etiam ferro aperta est, pus debet emitti. Tum si qua in alis, vel inguinibus sunt, sine linamento nutrienda sunt. In ceteris quoque partibus, si una plaga exigua est, si mediocris suppuratio fuit, si non alte penetravit, si febris non est, si valet corpus, æque linamenta supervacua sunt: in reliquis, parce tamen, nec, nisi magna plaga est, imponi debent.

## ORDO.

Quod non est discussum per hæc, est necesse maturescat. Que, quo id fiat celerius, hordeacea farina, cocta ex aqua \* \* \*, miscetur recte, est imponenda. Autem hæc eadem fiunt recte, quoque in minoribus abscessibus, nomina que proprietates quorum reddidi supra. Que curatio omnium (est) eadem: tantum distat modo. Autem est crudum, in quo est quasi major motus venarum, et gravitas, et ardor, et distentio, et dolor, et rubor, et durities; et, si est major abscessus, horror, aut etiam febricula permanet; que suppuratione penitus condita, si pro his (signis), quæ cutis ostendit alibi, sunt punctiones.

Ubi ista remiserunt se, que is locus jam prurit, et est aut sublividus, aut subalbidus, suppuratio est matura; que ubi ea est aperta vel per medicamenta ipsa, vel etiam ferro, pus debet emitti. Tum si sunt qua in alis, vel inguinibus, sunt nutrienda sine linamento. Quoque in ceteris partibus, si est (tantum) una exigua plaga, si suppuratio fuit mediocris, si non penetravit alte, si non est febris, si corpus valet, linamenta sunt æque supervacua; in reliquis, debent imponi, tamen parce, nec, nisi plaga est magna.

## TRANSLATION.

An abscess which is not discussed by these means, must necessarily mature. To facilitate this, barley meal, boiled in water (66) may be laid on with propriety. The same applications are proper for the lesser abscesses also, whose names and peculiarities I have related above. The mode of treatment is the same in all: it only differs in degree. That abscess is immature, in which there appears more vascular action, weight, heat, tension, pain, redness, and hardness; and if it be a very large abscess, shivering, or even a slight shivering may remain, and the suppuration being entirely concealed, if, instead of these symptoms which the skin displays to us in other cases, there be prickling, *darting sensations*.

When these symptoms have remitted, and that part begins to itch; and is either somewhat livid, or pale, the suppuration is complete: and whether it has been opened by medicines, or by incision, the pus ought to be evacuated. Then, if there be any in the arm-pits, or in the groins, they should be dressed without lint. Also in other parts, if there be but one small wound, if the suppuration has been moderate, if it has not penetrated deeply, and without fever, if the body be strong, lint dressings are equally superfluous: in other cases they ought to be applied, but sparingly, and then only when the wound is large.



Commode vero vel super linamenta, vel sine his imponitur lenticula ex melle, aut malicorium ex vino coctum : quæ et per se et mista idonea sunt. Si qua circa duriora sunt, ad ea mollienda, vel malva contrita, vel fœni Græci linive semen ex passo coctum superdandum est. Quidquid deinde impositum est, non adstringi, sed modice deligari debet. Illo neminem decipi decet, ut in hoc genere cerato utatur. Cetera, quæ pertinent ad purgandum ulcus, ad implendum, ad cicatricem inducendam, conveniunt, quæ in vulneribus exposita sunt.

12. Nonnumquam autem ex ejusmodi abscessibus, et ex aliis ulcerum generibus, fistulæ oriuntur. Id nomen est ulceri alto, angusto, calloso. Fit in omni fere parte corporis : habetque quædam in singulis locis propria. Prius de communibus dicam. Genera igitur fistularum plura sunt : siquidem aliæ breves sunt, aliæ altius penetrant ; aliæ rectæ intus feruntur, aliæ multoque plures transversæ ; aliæ simplices sunt, aliæ duplices triplicesve, ab uno ore intus orsæ quæ fiunt, aut etiam in plures sinus dividuntur : aliæ

## ORDO.

Vero lenticula ex melle, aut malicorium coctum ex vino imponitur commode, vel supra linamenta, vel sine his ; quæ sunt idonea et per se, et mista. Si qua sunt duriora circa, ad ea mollienda, vel contrita malva, vel semen Græci fœni, vel lini coctum ex passo est superdandum. Deinde quicquid est impositum, debet non adstringi, sed deligari modice. Illo decet neminem decipi, ut utatur cerato in hoc genere. Cetera, quæ pertinent ad ulcus purgandum, ad implendum, ad cicatricem inducendam, conveniunt quæ sunt exposita in vulneribus.

12. Autem nonnumquam, fistulæ oriuntur, ex abscessibus ejusmodi, et ex aliis generibus ulcerum. Id nomen est (datum) alto, angusto, calloso ulceri. Fit fere in omni parte corporis : que habet quædam propria in singulis locis. Dicam prius de communibus. Igitur sunt plura genera fistularum : siquidem, aliæ sunt breves, aliæ penetrant altius ; aliæ feruntur recte, quæ multo plures (feruntur) transversæ ; aliæ sunt simplices, aliæ sunt duplices vel triplices, quæ fiunt intus, orsæ ab uno ore, aut etiam dividuntur in plures sinus : aliæ sunt rectæ,

## TRANSLATION.

Lentils, with honey, or pomegranate-seed boiled with wine, either applied over lint, or without it, will be advantageous : these ingredients may be used alone or mixed. If there be induration of the surrounding parts, either bruised mallow, or fœnugreek seed, or linseed boiled in raisin wine, should be applied over it, in order to soften it. Then whatever bandage be applied, ought not to be tightened, but to be bound on in an easy manner. No person should be ignorant of the advantage of using cerate as dressing in a disease of this nature. The detail, relating to the cleansing, granulating, and cicatrising of an ulcer, are proper, which have been already treated of in wounds.

12. But sometimes *FISTULÆ* are formed from abscesses of this kind, and after other species of ulcers. This term is given to a deep, narrow, callous ulcer. It occurs almost in every part of the body ; and has some peculiarity in each part. I shall first mention the properties common to them. Now there are many kinds of fistulæ : for some are short, others penetrate very deeply ; some are carried directly inwards, others, and by far the greater number, go in a transverse direction ; some are simple, others double or triple, which having commenced from one internal orifice, divide afterwards into many sinuses : some straight, others

rectæ, aliæ flexæ, et tortuosæ sunt; aliæ intra carnem desinunt, aliæ ad ossa aut cartilaginem penetrant, aut, ubi neutrum horum subest, ad interiora perveniunt: aliæ deinde facile, aliæ cum difficultate curantur, atque etiam quædam insanabiles reperiuntur.

Expedita curatio est in fistula simplici, recenti, intra carnem: adjuvatque ipsam corpus, si juvenile, si firmum est. Inimica contraria his sunt: itemque, si fistula os, vel cartilaginem, vel nervum, vel musculos læsit; si articulum occupavit; si vel ad vesicam, vel ad pulmonem, vel ad vulvam, vel ad grandes venas arteriasve, vel ad inania, ut guttur, stomachum, thoracem penetravit. Ad intestina quoque eam tendere, semper periculosum, sæpe pestiferum est. Quibus multum mali accedit, si corpus vel ægrum, vel senile, vel mali habitus est.

Ante omnia autem demitti specillum in fistulam convenit, ut, quo tendat, et quam alte perveniat, scire possimus; simul etiam protinus humida, an siccior sit: quod extracto specillo patet. Si vero os in vicino est, id quoque disci potest, si jam, nec ne, eo fistula penetravit, quatenus nocuerit.

## ORDO.

aliæ (sunt) flexæ, et (sunt) tortuosæ, aliæ desinunt intra carnem, aliæ penetrant ad ossa aut cartilaginem, aut, ubi neutrum horum subest, perveniunt ad interiora: deinde aliæ curantur facile, aliæ (curantur) cum difficultate, atque quædam etiam reperiuntur insanabiles.

Curatio est expedita in simplici, recenti fistula intra carnem: que adjuvat ipsam, si corpus est juvenile et firmum. Contraria his sunt inimica: que item si fistula læsit os vel cartilaginem, vel nervum, vel musculos; si occupavit articulum; si vel penetravit ad vesicam, vel ad pulmonem, vel ad vulvam, vel ad grandes venas ve arterias, vel ad inania, ut guttur, stomachum, thoracem. Quoque eam (fistulam) tendere ad intestina, est semper periculosum, sæpe pestiferum. Quibus multum mali accedit, si corpus est vel ægrum, vel senile, vel mali habitus.

Antem ante omnia, convenit specillum demitti in fistulam, ut possimus scire, quo tendat, et quam alte perveniat; etiam, (ut) simul (possimus scire) protinus, an sit humida, (an sit) siccior: quod patet, specillo extracto. Vero si os est in vicino, id quoque potest disci, si jam fistula penetravit eo, nec ne, quatenus nocuerit.

## TRANSLATION.

bent, and tortuous; some terminate in the flesh, others penetrate to the bones or cartilage, or, when neither of these is subjacent, they terminate in the interior cavities: then some are cured easily, others with difficulty, and some are found even incurable.

It is easy to cure a simple, recent fistula, confined to the flesh; and it will be favourable if the person be youthful and strong. The contrary circumstances to these are inimical: such as, if the fistula have injured a bone, or a cartilage, or nerve, or muscles; if it have occupied a joint; or penetrated either to the bladder, or to the lungs, or to the womb, or to the large veins or arteries, or to the empty cavities, such as the throat, stomach (*œsophagus*), or thorax. When it extends to the intestines, it is always dangerous, often fatal. In which case the disease will be very much aggravated, if the patient be either sickly, aged, or otherwise of a bad habit.

But first of all it will be proper to pass a probe into the fistula, that we may be able to ascertain its direction and extent; and at the same time we may learn, on withdrawing the probe, whether it be moist, or drier than it should be. When it is in the vicinity of a bone, it can be known also, whether the fistula have penetrated thither, and how far it may have injured it.

Nam si molle est quod ultimo specillo contingitur, intra carnem adhuc vitium est: si magis id renititur, ad os ventum est. Ibi deinde si labitur specillum, nondum caries est: si non labitur, sed æquali innititur, caries quidem, verum adhuc levis est: si inæquale quoque et asperum subest, vehementius os exesum est. At cartilago ubi subsit, ipsa sedes docet; perventumque esse ad eam, ex renisu patet.

Et ex his quidem colliguntur fistularum sedes, spatia, noxæ. Simples vero eæ sint, an in plures partes diducantur, cognosci potest ex modo puris: cujus si plus fertur, quam quod simplici spatio convenit, plures sinus esse manifestum est. Cumque fere juxta sint caro, et nervus, et aliqua nervosa, quales fere tunicæ membranæque sunt, genus quoque puris docebit, num plures sinus intus diversa corporis genera perroserint.

Siquidem ex carne pus læve, album, copiosius fertur: at ex nervoso loco, coloris quidem ejusdem, sed tenuius et minus: ex nervo, pingue et oleo

## ORDO.

Nam si quod contingitur ultimo specillo, est molle, vitium est adhuc intra carnem: si id (specillum) renititur magis, est ventum ad os. Deinde si specillum labitur ibi, est nondum caries: si non labitur, sed innititur, æquali, est quidem caries, verum adhuc levis: quoque si subest inæquale et asperum, os est vehementius exesum. At ubi cartilago subsit, sedes ipsa docet; que esse perventum ad eam, patet ex renisu (specilli).

Et quidem ex his (signis) sedes, spatia, noxæ fistularum colliguntur. Vero potest cognosci ex modo puris, an eæ sint simplices, (an) diducantur in plures partes: cujus si plus fertur quam quod convenit simplici spatio, est manifestum esse plures sinus. Que cum caro, et nervus, et aliqua nervosa, quales tunicæ que membranæ fere sunt, sint fere juxta; genus puris quoque docebit, num plures sinus perroserint diversa genera corporis intus.

Siquidem, læve, album, pus fertur copiosius ex carne, at (fertur) quidem ejusdem coloris, sed tenuius et minus, ex nervoso loco: (fertur) pingue ex nervo, et non

## TRANSLATION.

Now if that part which is touched by the end of the probe be soft, the disease is as yet confined to the flesh: but if there be a greater resistance, it has invaded the bone. Then if the probe glide there, a caries does not exist as yet: if it will not glide, but rest on an equal surface, there is caries indeed, but as yet slight: if inequalities and asperities be felt, then the bone will be very much corroded. When there is a cartilage underneath, the situation itself will indicate; and whether the disease have reached, will be evident from the resistance to the probe.

From these circumstances then, the situation, the extent, and the injuries of fistulæ are collected. It may be known by the quantity of pus, whether they be simple, or divided into several parts: for if there be more of this discharged than what is compatible with a single cavity, it is evident that there are several sinuses. Therefore, since these may be in the vicinity of flesh and tendon, and nervous substances, such as the tunics and membranes are mostly composed of, the nature of the pus will teach us also whether the several sinuses have corroded these various internal structures.

The pus discharged from a fleshy part is smooth, white, and very copious; from a tendinous structure the discharge indeed is of the same colour, but thinner and less in quantity; that from a nerve is fat and oleaginous. Finally, the atti-



non dissimile. Denique etiam corporis inclinatio docet, num in plures partes fistulæ penetrarint; quia sæpe, cum quis aliter decubuit, aliterque membrum collocavit, pus ferri, quod jam desierat, iterum incipit; testaturque, non solum alium sinum esse, ex quo descendat, sed etiam in aliam corporis partem eum tendere.

Sed si et in carne et recens et simplex est, ac neque rugosa neque cava sede, neque in articulo, sed in eo membro, quod per se immobile, non nisi cum toto corpore movetur; satis proficiet emplastrum, quod recentibus vulneribus imponitur, dum habeat vel salem, vel alumen, vel squamam æris, vel æruginem, vel ex metallicis aliquid: exque eo collyrium fieri debet altera parte tenuius, altera paulo plenius, idque ea parte, qua tenuius est, antecedente demitti oportet in fistulam, donec purus sanguis se ostendat: quæ in omnibus fistularum collyriis perpetua sunt. Idem deinde emplastrum in linteolo superimponendum, supraque injicienda spongia est, in acetum ante demissa: solvique quinto die satis est. Genus victus adhibendum est, quo carnem ali docui.

## ORDO.

(est) dissimile oleo. Denique inclinatio corporis docet etiam, num fistulæ penetrarint in plures partes; quia sæpe, cum quis decubuit aliter, que collocavit membrum aliter, pus, quod jam desierat, iterum incipit (ferri); que testatur, non solum esse alium sinum, ex quo descendat, sed etiam eum tendere in aliam partem corporis.

Sed si est et in carne, et recens, et simplex, ac neque rugosa, neque cava sede, neque in articulo, sed in eo membro, quod (est) immobile per se, non movetur nisi cum toto corpore; emplastrum quod imponitur recentibus vulneribus proficiet satis, dum habeat vel salem, vel alumen, vel squamam æris, vel æruginem, vel aliquid ex metallicis: que ex eo collyrium debet fieri tenuius altera parte, paulo plenius altera, que oportet id demitti in fistulam, ea parte antecedente, qua est tenuius, donec purus sanguis ostendat se: quæ (precepta) sunt perpetua in omnibus collyriis fistularum. Deinde idem, emplastrum (est) superimponendum in linteolo, que spongia ante demissa in acetum est injicienda supra: que est satis solvi quinto die. Genus victus est adhibendum quo docui carnem ali.

## TRANSLATION.

tude of the body will also point out whether the fistulæ may have penetrated into several parts; for often, when the patient has altered his position, and placed the limb in another attitude, the pus which had already ceased, begins again to flow; which not only testifies that there is another sinus, from whence it descends, but that it also tends to another part of the body.

But if it be confined to the flesh, recent and simple, neither rugose, nor terminating in a cavity, nor in a joint, but in some member, which is immovable by itself, and is never put in motion but by the whole body: the plaster which is applied to recent wounds will be sufficiently effectual, provided it contain either salt, or allum, or copper scales, or verdigris, or any of the metallic oxides: and of this a collyrium or *tent* ought to be made, smaller at the one end, a little fuller at the other, and this ought to be introduced into the fistula by the smaller extremity, until pure blood shews itself: which method applies to all collyriums for fistulæ. Afterward the same plaster is to be applied on linen, then a sponge previously dipt in vinegar is to be placed over that: it will be sufficient to remove these on the fifth day. That kind of food should be given which I have recommended for granulating wounds.

Ac si longius a præcordiis fistula est, ex intervallo jejunum radículas esse, deinde vomere, necessarium est. Vetustate callosa fit fistula. Callus autem neminem fallit, quia durus est, et aut albus, aut pallidus. Sed tum validioribus medicamentis opus est: quale est, quod habet papaveris lacrimæ p. x. i. gummi p. x. iii. =. cadmiæ p. x. iv. atramenti sutorii p. x. viii. ex quibus aqua coactis collyrium fit: aut in quo sunt gallæ p. x. =. æruginis, sandarachæ, aluminis Ægyptii, singulorum p. x. i. atramenti sutorii combusti p. x. ii. aut quod constat ex chalcitide, et saxo calcis; quibus auripigmenti dimidio minus, quam in singulis prioribus est, adjicitur, eaque melle cocto excipiuntur.

Expediitissimum autem est ex præcepto Megetis, æruginis rasæ p. x. ii. conterere, deinde ammoniaci thymiamatis p. x. ii. aceto liquare, eoque infuso æruginem cogere: idque ex primis medicamentis est. Sed ut hæc maximi effectus sunt, si cui ista non adsunt, facile tamen est callum qui-

## ORDO.

Acsi fistula est longius a præcordiis, est necessarium (ægri) esse radículas jejunum ex intervallo, deinde vomere. Fistula fit callosa vetustate. Autem callus fallit neminem, quia est durus, et aut albus aut pallidus. Sed tum est opus validioribus medicamentis: quale est quod habet lacrimæ papaveris p. x. i. gummi p. x. iii. =. cadmiæ p. x. iv. atramenti sutorii (ferri sulphas) p. x. viii. ex quibus coactis aqua, collyrium fit: aut in quo sunt gallæ p. x. =. æruginis sandarachæ, Ægyptii aluminis, singulorum p. x. i. combusti atramenti sutorii (ferri sulphas) p. x. ii. aut quod constat ex chalcide, ex saxo calcis; quibus adjicitur dimidio minus auripigmenti quam est in singulis prioribus, que ea excipiuntur cocto melle.

Autem expediitissimum est ex præcepto Megetis, conterere p. x. ii. rasæ æruginis, deinde liquare p. x. ii. thymiamatis ammoniaci aceto, que eo infuso cogere æruginem: que id est ex primis medicamentis. Sed ut hæc sunt maximi effectus, si ista non ad sunt cui, tamen est facile erodere

## TRANSLATION.

But if the fistula be very far from the præcordia, it will be necessary for the patient to eat radishes, fasting, at intervals, and then to vomit. A fistula becomes callous in time. Now no one can be mistaken in a callus, for it is hard, and either white or pale. But then there is a necessity for more powerful medicines; such as that composition containing poppy tears p. x. i. of gum p. x. iii. =, of cadmia p. x. iv. of copperas p. x. viii. these being incorporated with water, to form a tent: or that consisting of galls p. x. =. of verdigris, of sandrach, of Egyptian alum, of each p. x. i. of burnt copperas p. x. ii. or that which is composed of chalcitis, and lime stone, to which is added of orpiment half less than there is in each of the former, the whole incorporated with boiled honey.

But the most expeditious is according to the prescription of Meges, to powder of rasile verdigris p. x. ii. then to dissolve in vinegar, of ammoniacum thymiamata p. x. ii. and that being poured in, to incorporate the verdigris: and this is one of the very best applications. But although these are very effectual, yet if they be not at hand, still it is easy to erode a callus with any caustic application:

buslibet adurentibus medicamentis erodere: satisque est vel papyrum intortum, vel aliquid ex penicillo in modum collyrii adstrictum eo illinere. Scilla quoque cocta et mista cum calce, calum exest.

Si quando vero longior et transversa fistula est, demisso specillo, contra principium hujus incidi commodissimum est, et collyrium utrimque demitti. At si duplicem esse fistulam vel multiplicem existimamus, sic tamen, ut brevis, intraque carnem sit, collyrio uti non debemus; quod unam partem curet, reliquas omittat; sed eadem medicamenta arida in calamum scriptorium conjicienda sunt, isque ori fistulæ aptandus, inspirandumque, ut ea medicamenta intus compellantur: aut eadem ex vino liquanda sunt; vel si sordidior fistula est, ex mulso; si callosior, ex aceto; idque intus infundendum.

Quidquid inditum est, superponenda sunt, quæ refrigerent et reprimant: nam fere, quæ circa fistulam sunt, habent aliquid inflammationis. Neque alienum est, ubi quis resolverit, antequam rursus alia medicamenta conjici-

## ORDO.

callum quibuslibet adurentibus medicamentis: que est satis illinere eo vel intortum papyrum, vel aliquid ex penicillo adstrictum in modum collyrii. Scilla quoque, cocta et mixta cum calce, exest callum.

Vero si quando fistula est longior et transversa, specillo demisso, est commodissimum incidi contra principium hujus, et collyrium demitti utrinque. At si existimamus fistulam esse duplicem vel multiplicem, tamen sic, ut sit brevis, que intra carnem, debemus non uti collyrio; quod curet unam partem, omittat reliquas: sed eadem arida medicamenta sunt conjicienda in scriptorium calamum, que is aptandus ori fistulæ, que inspirandum, ut ea medicamenta compellantur intus: aut eadem sunt liquanda ex vino: vel si fistula est sordidior, ex mulso; si callosior, ex aceto; que id infundendum intus.

Quidquid est inditum, quæ refrigerent et reprimant, sunt superponenda: nam fere (partes) quæ sunt circa fistulam habent aliquid inflammationis. Neque est alienum, ubi quis resolverit (fascias) antequam conjiciat rursus alia medicamenta, eluere fistulam per

## TRANSLATION.

and to effect this, it will be sufficient to anoint either twisted papyrus, or some pledget bound up in the form of a tent. Boiled squills also mixed with lime will destroy a callus.

But when the fistula is very long and transverse, a probe being passed, it will be proper to make an incision on its point, and to introduce a tent at each orifice. But if we think the fistula has two or several openings, provided these be not deep, and confined to the flesh, we ought not to use the tent; which may cure one part, and omit the others: but the same medicines in a dry state, are to be put into a writing-quill, one end of which is to be adapted to the orifice of the fistula, the mouth being applied to the other, and thus they are propelled into the sinus by the breath: or the same things may be dissolved in wine; or in hydromel if the fistula be very foul; or with vinegar if the fistula be very callous: this should be injected into the sinus.

Whatever ingredients have been injected, such applications as may refrigerate and astringe, should be laid over it: for the parts which surround a fistula have generally some inflammation. Neither is it improper, when the dressings have been removed, to wash the fistula by means of an ear-syringe, before the



ciat, per oricularium clysterem fistulum eluere, si plus puris fertur, vino; si callus durior est, aceto; si jam purgatur, mulso, vel aqua, in qua ervum coctum sit, sic, ut huic quoque mellis paulum adjiciatur.

Fere vero fit, ut ea tunica, quæ inter foramen et integram carnem est, victa medicamentis tota exeat, infraque ulcus purum sit. Quod ubi contigit, imponenda glutinantia sunt; præcipueque spongia melle cocto illita. Neque ignoro multis placuisse, linamentum in modum collyrii compositum tinctum melle demitti: sed celerius id glutinatur, quam impletur. Neque verendum est, ne purum corpus puro corpori junctum non coeat, adjectis quoque medicamentis ad id efficacibus; cum sæpe exulceratio digitorum, nisi magna cura prospeximus, sanescendo in unum eos jungat.

13. Est etiam ulceris genus, quod a favi similitudine *κηρίον* a Græcis nominatur: idque duas species habet. Alterum est subalbidum, furunculo simile; sed majus, et cum dolore majore: quod ubi maturescit, habet fora-

## ORDO.

clysterem oricularium, si plus puris fertur, vino: si callus est durior, aceto: si purgatur jam, mulso, vel aqua, in qua ervum coctum sit, sic ut paulum mellis quoque adjiciatur huic.

Vero fere fit, ut ea tunica quæ est inter foramen (fistulæ) et integram carnem, victa medicamentis, exeat tota, que ulcus sit purum infra. Ubi quod contigit, glutinantia sunt imponenda; que præcipue spongia illita cocto melle. Neque ignoro placuisse multis, linamentum compositum in modum collyrii tinctum melle demitti: sed id (genus ulceris) glutinatur celerius quam impletur. Neque est verendum, ne purum corpus junctum puro corpori non coeat, medicamentis quoque efficacibus ad id adjectis; cum exulceratio digitorum, sanescendo, sæpe jungat eos in unum, nisi prospeximus magna cura.

13. Est etiam genus ulceris quod nominatur a Græcis *Κηρίον* (Kerion) a similitudine favi: que id habet duas species. Alterum est subalbidum, simile furunculo; sed majus; et cum majore dolore; quod, ubi maturescat, habet fora-

## TRANSLATION.

other dressings are applied; if there be much pus discharged, with wine; if the callus be very hard, with vinegar; if indeed it be clean, with either hydromel, or water in which vetches have been boiled, so that a little honey be added to the latter.

But it generally happens, that the membrane situated between the fistulous opening and the sound flesh, being corroded by the applications, may be detached entirely, leaving a clean ulcer underneath. When this has taken place, agglutinants should be applied; and especially sponge anointed with boiled honey. Nor am I ignorant, that it is a favourite practice with many to employ lint made into the form of a tent, smeared over with honey: but a wound of this kind is more readily agglutinated than it is incarnated. Neither should we have any fear, that a sound body in contact with another sound body should not unite, when efficacious medicines for that purpose are employed: for in ulceration of the fingers, union would frequently take place in healing, unless we have watched with great care.

13. There is also a kind of ulcer, which from its resemblance to a honey-comb, is denominated KERION by the Greeks: and of this there are two species. The one is rather of a pale colour resembling a boil; but larger, and attended with

mina, per quæ fertur humor glutinosus et purulentus; nec tamen ad justam maturitatem pervenit. Si divisum est, multo plus intus corrupti, quam in furunculo, apparet, altiusque descendit. Raro fit nisi in capillis.

Alterum est minus, super corpus eminens, durum, latum, subviride, subpallidum, magis exulceratum: siquidem ad singulorum pilorum radices foramina sunt, per quæ fertur humor glutinosus, subpallidus, crassitudinem mellis, aut visci referens, interdum olei: si inciditur, viridis intra caro apparet. Dolor autem, et inflammatio ingens est, adeo ut acutam quoque febrem movere consuerint.

Super id, quod minus crebris foraminibus exasperatum est, recte imponitur et ficus arida, et lini semen in mulso coctum, et emplastra ac malagmata materiam educentia, aut quæ proprie huc pertinentia supra posui. Super alterum, et eadem medicamenta, et farina ex mulso cocta, sic, ut ei dimidium resinæ terebinthinæ misceatur; et ficus in mulso decocta, cui paulum hyssopi contriti sit adjectum; et uvæ tamininæ pars quarta fico ad-

## ORDO.

mina, per quæ glutinosus et purulentus humor fertur: nec tamen pervenit ad justam maturitatem. Si est divisum, multo plus corrupti (puris) apparet intus quam in furunculo, que descendit altius. Raro fit nisi in capillis.

Alterum est minus, eminens super corpus, durum, latum, subviride, subpallidum, magis exulceratum: siquidem sunt foramina ad radices singulorum pilorum, per quæ glutinosus, subpallidus humor fertur, referens crassitudinem mellis, aut visci, interdum olei: si inciditur, caro intra apparet viridis. Antem dolor et inflammatio est ingens, adeo ut consuerunt movere acutam febrem quoque.

Super id (genus) quod est exasperatum minus crebris foraminibus, et arida ficus imponitur recte, et semen lini coctum in mulso, et emplastra, ac educentia malagmata materiam, aut quæ posui supra pertinentia huc proprie. Super alterum (genus) ad eadem medicamenta, et farina cocta ex mulso, sic ut dimidium resinæ terebinthinæ misceatur ei: et ficus decocta in mulso, cui paulum contriti hyssopi sit adjectum; et quarta pars uvæ taminæ adjecta fico.

## TRANSLATION.

greater pain; which, when it suppurates, effects various foramina, through which a glutinous and purulent humour is discharged; but it never comes to a proper maturity. If it be divided by incision, much more diseased matter appears internally than in a boil, and more deeply seated. It rarely attacks any other part except where there is hair.

The other species is small, projecting above the surface, hard, broad, of a greenish hue, a little pale, and more ulcerated: there are openings at the root of each hair, through which a pale glutinous humour is discharged, resembling the consistence of honey or birdlime, sometimes of oil: and if an incision be made, the flesh within will appear green. But the pain and inflammation are so great, that they generally bring on acute fever.

Over that kind which is aggravated by fewer openings, a dry fig may be properly applied, and lintseed boiled in hydromel, and plasters, and malagmata possessing extractive properties, or those which I have particularized above, as applicable in such cases. Upon the other kind, the same applications, with meal boiled in hydromel, so that half the quantity of turpentine resin be mixed with it: and a fig boiled in hydromel, to which a little bruised hyssop may be added; also a fourth

jecta. Quod si parum in utrolibet genere medicamenta proficiunt, totum ulcus usque ad sanam carnem excidi oportet. Ulcere ablato, super plagam medicamenta danda sunt, primum, quæ pus citent; deinde, quæ purgent; tum, quæ impleant.

14. Sunt vero quædam verrucis similia; quorum diversa nomina, ut vitia sunt. *Ἀκροχορδῶνα* Græci vocant, ubi sub cute coit aliquid durius, et interdum paulo asperius, coloris ejusdem; infra tenue, ad cutem latius; idque modicum est, quia raro fabæ magnitudinem excedit.

Vix unum tantum eodem tempore nascitur; sed fere plura, maximeque in pueris; eaque nonnunquam subito desinunt, nonnunquam mediocrem inflammationem excitant; sub qua etiam in pus convertuntur. At *θύμιον* nominantur, quod super corpus quasi verrucula eminet, ad cutem tenue, supra latius, subdura, et in summo perasperum: idque summum colorem floris thymi repræsentat, unde ei nomen est; ibique facile finditur, et cruentatur; nonnunquam aliquantum sanguinis fundit: fereque citra magnitudinem

## ORDO.

Quod si medicamenta proficiunt parum in utrolibet genere, oportet totum ulcus excidi usque ad sanam carnem. Ulcere ablato medicamenta sunt danda (imponitur) super plagam, primum, quæ citent pus: deinde, quæ purgent; tum, quæ impleant.

14. Vero sunt quædam (tumores) similia verrucis, nomina quorum sunt diversa, ut vitia. Græci vocant *Ἀκροχορδῶνα* (acrochordona), ubi aliquid coit sub cute, durius et interdum paulo asperius, ejusdem coloris: tenue infra, latius ad cutem; que id est modicum, quia raro excedit magnitudinem fabæ.

Vix unum tantum nascitur eodem tempore; sed fere plura, que maxime in pueris; que ea nonnunquam desinunt subito, nonnunquam excitant mediocrem inflammationem: sub qua etiam convertuntur in pus. At nominatur *θύμιον*, (thymion) quod eminet super corpus quasi verrucula, tenne ad cutem, latius supra, subdura, et perasperum in summo (cute): que id summum repræsentat colorem floris thymi, unde est nomen ei; que ibi finditur facile, et cruentatur; nonnunquam fundit aliquantum sanguinis: que fere est citra magnitudinem Ægyptiæ fa-

## TRANSLATION.

part of stavesacre added to the fig. But if those medicines avail little in either kind, it will be necessary to cut away the whole ulcer as far as the sound part. The ulcer being removed, those applications should be laid over the wound that may first promote pus; then detergents, and lastly incarnants.

14. Now there are some tumours resembling warts, the names of which are as various as their species. The Greeks call those *acrochordones*, where there is a formation of something very hard, subcutaneous, sometimes a little rough, and of the same colour as the healthy parts; slender at its base, more expanded on the surface, and small, for it seldom exceeds the size of a bean.

They scarcely ever arise singly at the same time, generally in clusters, and principally in children; sometimes they disappear suddenly, sometimes they excite a moderate inflammation; by which they are converted into pus. But that is named *Thymion*, which rises above the surface like a small wart, small towards the skin, and more developed on the top, somewhat hard, and very rough on the surface, which resembles in colour the flowers of thyme, hence its name; and there it is easily split, and bloody; at times a slight hæmorrhage; it is generally under



fabæ Ægyptiæ est, raro majus, interdum perexiguum. Modo autem unum, modo plura nascuntur, vel in palmis, vel in inferioribus pedum partibus: pessima tamen in obscœnis sunt; maximeque ibi sanguinem fundunt.

*Μυρμήκια* autem vocantur humiliora thymio durioraque: quæ radices altius exigunt, majoremque dolorem movent: infra lata, supra autem tenuia; minus sanguinis mittunt; magnitudine vix unquam lupini modum excedunt. Nascuntur ea quoque aut in palmis, aut in inferioribus partibus pedum. Clavus autem nonnunquam quidem etiam alibi, sed in pedibus tamen maxime nascitur, præcipue ex contuso; quamvis interdum aliter: doloremque, etiamsi non alias, tamen ingredienti movet.

Ex his acrochordon et thymium sæpe etiam per se finiuntur; et quo minora sunt, eo magis: myrmecia et clavi sine curatione vix unquam desinunt. Acrochordon, si excisa est, nullam radiculam relinquit, ideoque ne renascitur quidem: thymio clavoque excisis, subter rotunda radícula nascitur, quæ penitus descendit ad carnem; ea-

## ORDO.

bæ, raro majus, interdum perexiguum. Autem modo unum, modo plura nascuntur, vel in palmis, vel in inferioribus partibus pedum: tamen pessima sunt in obscœnis (partibus); quæ ibi maxime fundunt sanguinem.

Autem vocantur *μυρμήκια* (myrmecia) (quæ sunt) humiliora quæ duriora (quam) thymio: quæ exigunt radices altius, que movent majorem dolorem: (sunt) lata infra, autem tennia supra; mittunt minus sanguinis; vix unquam excedunt magnitudine modum lupini. Ea quoque nascuntur aut in palmis, aut in inferioribus partibus pedum. Autem clavus nonnunquam quidem etiam nascitur alibi, sed tamen maxime in pedibus, præcipue ex contuso; quamvis interdum aliter; que movet dolorem, etiamsi non alias, tamen (cui) ingredienti.

Ex his acrochordon et thymium sæpe finiuntur etiam per se; et quo minora sunt, eo magis: myrmecia et clavi vix unquam desinunt sine curatione. Acrochordon relinquit nullam radiculam, si excisa est, quæ ideo ne quidem renascitur: thymio quæ clavo excisis, rotunda radícula nascitur subter, quæ descendit penitus ad

## TRANSLATION.

the size of an Egyptian bean, seldom larger, sometimes very small. Sometimes one, sometimes more arise, either in the palms of the hand or in the soles of the feet; yet the worst occur on the genitals, and there they generally bleed.

But those called Myrmecia are flatter and harder than the Thymium: they take deeper root, and cause greater pain: they are broad at the roots, but narrower above; they discharge less; they scarcely ever exceed the size of a lupin. These also arise either on the palms of the hands, or on the inferior parts of the lower extremities. But the CLAVUS or corn arises sometimes elsewhere, but principally on the feet, especially from contusion, although sometimes from other causes: they excite considerable pain in the act of walking, if not even at other times.

Of these the Acrochordon and the Thymium frequently terminate even of their own accord; and the more readily, the less they are: the Myrmecia and corns scarcely ever cease without treatment. The Acrochordon leaves no radicle, and on this account, if removed by incision, will not be reproduced. The Thymium and the Corn have a round little root, which penetrates inwardly to the flesh, and

que relictæ idem rursus exigit: myrmecia latissimis radicibus inhærent; ideoque ne excidi quidem sine magna exulceratione possunt.

Clavum subinde radere, commodissimum est: nam sine ulla vi sic mollescit; ac si sanguinis quoque aliquid emissum est, sæpe emoritur. Tollitur etiam, si quis eum circumpurgat, deinde imponit resinam, cui miscuit pulveris paulum, quem ex lapide molari contrito fecit. Cetera vero genera medicamentis adurenda sunt: aliisque id, quod ex fæce vini; myrmeciis id, quod ex alumine et sandaracha fit, aptissimum est. Sed ea, quæ circa sunt, foliis contegi debent, ne ipsa quoque exulcerentur: deinde postea lenticula imponi. Tollit thymium etiam ficus in aqua cocta.

15. At pustulæ maxime vernis temporibus oriuntur. Earum plura genera sunt. Nam modo circa totum corpus partemve aspritudo quædam fit, similis iis pustulis, quæ ex urtica, vel ex sudore nascuntur: *ἰξανθήματα* Græci vocant. Eæque modo rubent, modo colorem cutis non excedunt. Nonnunquam plures, similes varis oriuntur;

#### ORDO.

carnem; que ea relictæ exigit idem rursus: myrmecia inhærent latissimis radicibus; que ideo ne possunt quidem excidi sine magna exulceratione.

Est commodissimum radere clavum subinde: nam sic mollescit sine ulla vi: ac si aliquid sanguinis quoque emissum est, sæpe emoritur. Etiam tollitur, si quis circumpurgat eum, deinde imponit resinam, cui miscuit paulum pulveris, quem fecit ex molari lapide contrito. Vero cetera genera sunt adurenda medicamentis; que id quod fit ex fæce vini, est aptissimum aliis: id quod (fit) ex alumine et sandaracha, myrmeciis. Sed ea (partes) quæ sunt circa, debent contegi foliis, ne ipsa quoque exulcerentur: deinde lenticula imponi postea. Etiam ficus cocta in aqua tollit thymium.

15. At pustulæ oriuntur maxime vernis temporibus. Sunt plura genera earum. Nam modo quædam aspritudo fit circa totum corpus ve partem, similis iis pustulis, quæ nascuntur ex urtica, vel ex sudore; Græci vocant *ἰξανθήματα* (exanthemata). Quæ eæ modo rubent, modo non excedunt colorem cutis. Nonnunquam plures, similes varis oriuntur; nonnunquam

#### TRANSLATION.

although they be cut, yet those roots being left, reproduce their like again: the Myrmecia adhere by very extensive roots; and on this account cannot be removed without producing great ulceration.

It will be very proper to pare a corn occasionally: for thus it becomes soft without any violence; and if any blood escape, it frequently dies away. It is also removed, if the person well cleanse it around, and afterwards apply resin mixed up with some mill-stone powder, but the other kinds should be cauterized by medicine: and that which is prepared from wine-lees is best adapted for the first two: and for the Myrmecia, that preparation which is made of alum and sandrach. But the contiguous parts ought to be covered with leaves, lest they also become ulcerated: then a lentil should be laid over it. Also a fig boiled in water will remove a Thymium.

15. Now PUSTULES generally arise in the spring season. There are many kinds of them. For sometimes there is a roughness takes place about the whole body, or a part, resembling those pustules which are produced by nettles, or from perspiration. The Greeks call them Exanthemata. Sometimes these are red, sometimes they do not exceed the colour of the skin. Sometimes a great number appear,

nonnunquam majores : pustulæ lividæ, aut pallidæ, aut nigræ, aut aliter naturali colore mutato ; subestque his humor : ubi eæ ruptæ sunt, infra quasi exulcerata caro apparet : φλύκταιναι Græce nominantur. Fiunt vel ex frigore, vel ex igni, vel ex medicamentis.

Φλυζάκιον autem paulo durior pustula est, subalbida, acuta ; ex qua ipsa quod exprimitur, humidum est. Ex pustulis vero nonnunquam etiam ulcuscula fiunt, aut aridiora, aut humidiora ; et modo tantum cum prurigne, modo etiam cum inflammatione ac dolore ; exitque aut pus, aut sanies, aut utrumque. Maximeque id evenit in ætate puerili ; raro in medio corpore ; sæpe in eminentibus partibus.

Pessima pustula est, quæ ἐπινυκτίς vocatur. Ea colore vel sublivida, vel subnigra, vel alba esse consuevit : circa hanc autem vehemens inflammatio est ; et cum adaperata est, reperitur intus exulceratio mucosa, colore humori suo similis. Dolor ex ea supra magnitudinem ejus est : neque enim ea faba major est. Atque hæc quoque oritur in eminentibus partibus, et

## ORDO.

majores : pustulæ (sunt) lividæ, aut pallidæ, aut nigræ, aut naturali colore mutato aliter ; que humor subest his : ubi eæ sunt ruptæ, caro infra apparet quasi exulcerata ; nominantur Græce φλύκταιναι. Fiunt vel ex frigore, vel ex igni, vel ex medicamentis.

Antem φλυζάκιον (phlyzaktion) est paulo durior pustula, subalbida, acuta ; ex qua ipsa, quod exprimitur est humidum. Vero ex pustulis, nonnunquam etiam ulcuscula fiunt, aut aridiora aut humidiora, et modo tantum cum prurigne, modo etiam cum inflammatione ac dolore ; que aut pus exit, aut sanies, aut utrumque. Que id evenit maxime in puerili ætate ; raro in medio corpore ; sæpe in eminentibus partibus.

Pessima pustula est quæ vocatur ἐπινυκτίς (epinyctis). Ea consuevit esse colore vel sublivida, vel subnigra, vel alba ; autem est vehemens inflammatio circa hanc ; et cum adaperata est, mucosa exulceratio reperitur intus, similis colore suo humori. Dolor ex ea est supra magnitudinem ejus : enim neque est ea major faba. Atque hæc quoque oritur in eminentibus partibus, et

## TRANSLATION.

resembling pimples, sometimes larger : these pustules are either livid, or pale, or black, or of some other preternatural colour : they also contain a humour : when these are ruptured, the flesh underneath appears as if it were ulcerated : they are named in the Greek language Phlyctænæ. They are produced either by cold, or by fire, or from medicines.

But the Phlyzaktion is a pustule a little harder, rather white, and pointed ; and its contents when pressed out is moist. Now these pustules sometimes turn to small ulcers, either of a drier or more humid character ; and sometimes only attended with itching. Sometimes only with inflammation and pain ; and the discharge is either purulent, sanious, or both. This disease occurs generally in the infantile age ; rarely on the trunk of the body ; frequently on the extremities.

The worst kind of pustule is that which is termed Epinyctis. It is usually of a sublivid, or dark, or rather white colour : but there is a violent inflammation around it ; and when it has been opened, a mucous ulceration is found within, similar in colour to its own discharge. The pain of it is more considerable than



fere noctu; unde nomen quoque a Græcis ei est impositum.

In omni vero pustularum curatione primum est, multum ambulare atque exerceri; si quid ista prohibet, gestari: secundum est, cibum minuere; abstinere ab omnibus acribus et extenuantibus: eademque nutrices facere oportet, si lactens puer ita affectus est. Præter hæc is, qui jam robustus est, si pustulæ minutæ sunt, desudare in balneo debet; simulque super eas nitrum inspergere, oleoque vinum miscere, et sic ungi; tum descendere in solium. Si nihil sic proficitur, aut si majus pustularum genus occupavit, imponenda lenticula est; detractaque summa pellicula, ad medicamenta lenia transeundum. Epinyctis post lenticulam, recte herba quoque sanguinali, vel viridi coriandro curatur.

Ulcera vero ex pustulis facta tollit spuma argenti cum semine fœni Græci mista, sic, ut his invicem rosa atque intubi succus adjiciatur, donec mellis crassitudo ei fiat. Proprie ad eas pustulas, quæ infantes male habent, lapidis, quem *πυρίτην* vocant, p. X. VIII.

#### ORDO.

fere noctu, unde quoque nomen impositum est ei a Græcis.

Vero in omni curatione pustularum primum (remedium) est ambulare multum atque exerceri; si quid prohibet ista, gestari: secundum est minuere cibum; abstinere ab omnibus acribus et extenuantibus: que oportet nutrices facere eadem, si lactens puer est affectus ita. Præter hæc, is, qui est jam robustus, debet desudare in balneo, si pustulæ sunt minutæ; que simul inspergere nitrum super eas, que miscere vinum oleo, et sic ungi; tum descendere in solium. Si nihil proficitur sic, aut si majus genus pustularum occupavit, lenticula est imponenda; quesumma pellicula detracta, (est) transeundum ad lenia medicamenta. Post lenticulam Epinyctis recte curetur quoque herba sanguinali, vel viridi coriandro.

Vero spuma argenti mixta cum semine Græci fœni, tollit ulcera facta ex pustulis, sic, ut rosa atque succus intubi adjiciatur invicem his, donec crassitudo mellis fiat ei. Proprie ad eas pustulas quæ habent infantes male, lapidis quem vocant *πυρίτην* (puriten) p. X. VIII. miscetur cum quinqu-

#### TRANSLATION.

the size; for it is not larger than a bean. These also arise on the extremities, and generally in the night-time:—hence the name imposed on them by the Greeks.

Now in the treatment of all pustules, the first thing is to walk much, and to take exercise; if any thing prohibit these, let gestation be employed: the second is to diminish the quantity of food: to abstain from all acrid and attenuating things: and it behoves nurses to do the same, if the suckling infant has been thus affected. Besides these, he who is of a robust constitution, ought to perspire in the bath, if the pustules be small; and at the same time to sprinkle nitre over them; and to anoint the part with wine and oil; then to descend into the solium. If no progress have taken place from this treatment, or if the patient be troubled with a larger kind of pustules, a lentil must be applied, and when the cuticle is removed, then we must employ lenient applications. After the lentil, the Epinyctis may be properly treated with the blood-herb also, or with green coriander.

The ulcers formed by pustules are cured by litharge mixed with the seed of fœnugreek, rose-oil and the juice of endive being added alternately to these, until it assumes the thickness of honey. For those pustules which affect children, the proper composition is, of that stone which the Greeks call Pyrites

cum quinquaginta amaris nucibus miscetur, adjiciunturque olei cyathi tres. Sed prius ungi ex cerussa pustulæ debent, tum hoc illini.

16. Scabies vero est durior cutis, rubicunda, ex qua pustulæ oriuntur, quædam humidiores, quædam sicciores. Exit ex quibusdam sanies, fitque ex his continuata exulceratio pruriens, serpitque in quibusdam cito. Atque in aliis quidem ex toto desinit, in aliis vero certo tempore anni revertitur. Quo asperior est, quoque prurit magis, eo difficilior tollitur. Itaque eam, quæ talis est, ἀγρία, id est, feram, Græci appellant.

In hac quoque victus ratio eadem, quæ supra, necessaria est. Medicamentum autem ad incipientem hanc idoneum est, quod fit ex spodii, croci, æruginis, singulorum p. ℥. =. piperis albi, omphacii, singulorum p. ℥. i. cadmiæ p. ℥. viii. At ubi jam exulceratio est, id, quod fit ex sulphuris p. ℥. i. ceræ p. ℥. iv. picis liquidæ hemina, olei sextariis duobus : quæ simul incoquantur, dum crassitudo mellis fiat.

Est etiam, quod ad Protarchum auctorem refertur. Habet farinæ lupino-

## ORDO.

ginta amaris nucibus, quæ tres cyathi olei adjiciuntur. Sed pustulæ debent prius ungi ex cerussa, tum illini hoc.

16. Vero scabies est durior cutis, rubicunda, ex qua pustulæ oriuntur, quædam humidiores, quædam sicciores. Sanies exit ex quibusdam, quæ continuata pruriens exulceratio fit ex his, quæ in quibusdam serpit cito. Atque in aliis quidem desinit ex toto, vero in aliis revertitur certo tempore anni. Quo asperior est, quæ quo magis prurit, eo tollitur difficilior. Itaque Græci appellant eam, quæ est talis ἀγρία (agrian), id est, feram.

In hac quoque eadem ratio victus est necessaria, quæ (est) supra. Autem idoneum medicamentum ad hanc incipientem, est quod fit ex spodii, croci, æruginis, singulorum p. ℥. =. albi piperis, omphacii, singulorum p. ℥. i. cadmiæ p. ℥. viii. At ubi est exulceratio jam, id quod fit ex sulphuris p. ℥. i. ceræ p. ℥. iv. hemina liquidæ picis, duobus sextariis olii : quæ incoquantur simul, dum fiat crassitudo mellis.

Est etiam quod refertur ad Protarchum auctorem. Habet farinæ

## TRANSLATION.

p. ℥. viii. with fifty bitter almonds, and three cupsful of oil added. But the pustules ought to be previously rubbed with ceruse, then anointed with the above.

16. SCABIES exhibits a certain hardness of skin, of a reddish colour, after which pustules arise, some are moist, others more dry. From some, sanies is discharged, and a continued itching ulceration follows, which in some persons spreads rapidly. But in some it ceases entirely, in others it returns at a certain time of the year. The rougher it is, and the more it itches, the more difficult it will be to cure. Hence the Greeks call this species Agria, that is, Wild.

In this also the same regimen is necessary as above. But the proper application for this at the commencement is formed out of spodium (*tutty*) saffron, verdigris, of each p. ℥. =. of white pepper, verjuice, each p. ℥. =. i. of cadmia p. ℥. viii. But when there is ulceration, that which is composed of sulphur p. ℥. i. wax p. ℥. iv. with a hemina of liquid pitch, and two sextarii of oil, which are to be boiled together until they become of the consistence of honey.

There is another which is ascribed to Protarchus. It contains one sextarius of

rum sextarium, nitri cyathos quatuor, picis liquidæ heminam, resinæ humidæ selibram, aceti cyathos tres. Crocum quoque, lycium, ærugo, myrrha, cinis, æquis portionibus recte miscentur, et ex passo coquuntur: idque omnem pituitam utique sustinet. Ac si nihil aliud est, amurca ad tertiam partem decocta, vel sulphur pici liquidæ mixtum, sicut in pecoribus proposui, hominibus quoque scabie laborantibus opitulatur.

17. Impetiginis vero species sunt quatuor. Minime mala est, quæ similitudine scabiei repræsentat: nam et rubet, et durior est, et exulcerata est, et rodit. Distat autem ab ea, quod magis exulcerata est, et varis similes pustulas habet; videnturque esse in ea quasi bullulæ quædam, ex quibus interposito tempore squamulæ resolvuntur; certioribusque hæc temporibus revertitur.

Alterum genus pejus est, simile papulæ fere, sed asperius rubicundiusque, figuras varias habens: squamulæ ex summa cute discedunt, rosio major est, celerius et latius procedit, certioribusque etiamnum, quam prior, temporibus et fit; et desinit. Rubra cognominatur.

## ORDO.

lupinorum sextarium, nitri quatuor cyathos, liquidæ picis heminam, humidæ resinæ selibram, aceti tres cyathos. Quoque crocum, lycium, ærugo, myrrha, cinis, recte miscentur æquis portionibus, et coquuntur ex passo: que id utique sustinet (*reprimet*) omnem pituitam. Ac si est nihil aliud, amurca decocta ad tertiam partem, vel sulphur mixtum liquidæ pici, sicut proposui in pecoribus, quoque opitulatur hominibus laborantibus scabie.

17. Vero sunt quatuor species impetiginis. Est minime mala quæ representat scabiem similitudine: nam et rubet, et est durior, et est exulcerata, et rodit. Autem distat ab ea, quod est magis exulcerata, et habet pustulas similes varis; que quædam quasi bullulæ videntur esse in ea, ex quibus tempore interposito squamulæ resolvuntur; que hæc revertitur certioribus temporibus.

Alterum genus est pejus, fere simile papulæ, sed asperius que rubicundius, habens varias figuras: squamula discedunt ex summa cute, rosio est major, procedit celerius et latius, que et fit, et desinit etiamnum, certioribus temporibus quam prior. Cognominatur rubra.

## TRANSLATION.

lupine flour, four cups of nitre, one hemina of liquid pitch, half a pound of liquid resin, and three cupsful of vinegar. Also saffron, lycium, verdigris, myrrh, and ashes, mixed properly in equal portions, and boiled in raisin wine; this particularly represses every humour. But if there be nothing else, oil-lees boiled down to one-third part; or, sulphur mixed with liquid pitch, as I have prescribed for cattle, also relieve persons afflicted with scabies.

17. Now there are four species of IMPETIGO. The mildest is that which resembles scabies. For it is red, hardish, and corrosive. But it differs from this, because it is more ulcerated, and has pustules resembling the ordinary pimples: and some of them appear as if they contained vesicles or air-bubbles, after a certain time desquamation takes place; and this species returns at more certain periods.

The second species is worse, nearly resembling papulæ, but rougher, and redder, having various forms: little scales are detached from the surface, the erosion is greater, it proceeds more rapidly and more extensively; and it appears and disappears at more certain periods even than the former. It is called the Red.



Tertia etiamnum deterior est: nam et crassior est, et durior, et magis tumet; in summa cute finditur, et vehementius rodit; ipsa quoque squamosa, sed nigra; proceditque et late, nec tarde; et minus errat in temporibus, quibus aut oritur, aut desinit; neque ex toto tollitur. Nigræ cognomen est.

Quartum genus est, quod curationem omnino non recipit, distans colore: nam subalbidum est, et recenti cicatrici simile; squamulasque habet pallidas, quasdam subalbidas, quasdam lenticulæ similes; quibus demptis, nonnunquam profluit sanguis. Alioquin vero humor ejus albidus est, cutis dura atque fissa est; proceditque latius.

Hæc vero omnia maxime oriuntur in pedibus, et manibus; atque ungues quoque infestant. Medicamentum non aliud valentius est, quam quod ad scabiem quoque pertinere sub auctore Protarcho retuli. Serapion autem, nitri p. ꝯ. ii. sulphuris p. ꝯ. iv. excipiebat resina copiosa, eoque utebatur.

18. Papularum vero duo genera sunt. Alterum, in quo per minimas

## ORDO.

Tertia (genus) est etiamnum deterior: nam est et crassior, et durior, et tumet magis; finditur in summa cute, et rodit vehementius; ipsa quoque squamosa, sed nigra; que procedit et late, nec tarde; et errat minus in temporibus quibus aut oritur, aut desinit; neque tollitur ex toto. Est (ei) cognomen nigræ.

Quartum genus est, quod non recipit curationem omnino, distans colore; nam est subalbidum, et simile recenti cicatrici; que habet pallidas squamulas, quasdam subalbidas, quasdam similes lenticulæ; quibus demptis, nonnunquam sanguis profluit. Vero alioquin humor ejus est albidus cutis est dura atque fissa; que procedit latius.

Vero omnia hæc (genera) oriuntur maxime in pedibus, et manibus; atque infestant quoque ungues. Non aliud medicamentum est valentius, quam quod retuli pertinere quoque ad scabiem sub Protarcho auctore. Autem Serapion excipiebat nitri p. ꝯ. ii. sulphuris p. ꝯ. iv. copiosa resina, que utebatur eo.

18. Vero sunt duo genera papularum. Alterum, in quo cutis

## TRANSLATION.

The third species is still worse: for it is both thicker, harder, and more swollen; it produces fissures on the surface of the skin, and corrodes more violently: this is also squamous, but black; and advances both extensively and rapidly; and is still less erratic in the time of its coming on or going away; neither can it be removed entirely. It is denominated the Black.

There is a fourth kind, which does not admit of being cured by any means, differing in colour; for it inclines to white, and resembles a recent cicatrix; the little scales are pale, some resembling white, some a lentil; which being removed, blood sometimes follows. In other respects the discharge from it is white, the skin is hard and ragged, and advances most extensively.

All these kinds arise chiefly in the feet and hands; and they also attack the nails. There is not a more efficacious remedy than that which I have already described for scabies, under the authority of Protarchus. But Serapion took of nitre p. ꝯ. ii. of sulphur p. ꝯ. iv. and incorporated these with abundance of resin.

18. Now there are two kinds of PAPULÆ. One is where the skin is exasperated

pustulas cutis exasperatur, et rubet, leviterque roditur; medium habet pauxillo lævius; tarde serpit: idque vitium maxime rotundum incipit, eademque ratione in orbem procedit.

Altera autem est, quam ἀγρίαν Græci appellant: in qua similiter quidem, sed magis cutis exasperatur, exulceraturque, ac vehementius et roditur, et rubet, et interdum etiam pilos remittit.

Quæ minus rotunda est, difficilius sanescit: nisi sublata est, in impetiginem vertitur. Sed levis papula etiam, si jejuna saliva quotidie defricatur, sanescit: major, commodissime murali herba tollitur, si super eadem trita est. Ut vero ad composita medicamenta veniamus, idem illud Protarchi tanto valentius in his est, quanto minus in his vitii est. Alterum ad idem Myronis: nitri rubri, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. cantharidum purgatarum p. ℥. ii. sulphuris ignem non experti tantundem, resinæ terebinthinæ liquidæ p. ℥. xx. farinæ lolii sext. iii. gith cyathi tres, picis crudæ sextarius.

19. Vitiligo quoque, quamvis per se nullum periculum adfert; tamen et

#### ORDO.

exasperatur per minimas crustas, et rubet, que roditur leviter; habet medium pauxillo lævius; serpit tarde: que id vitium maxime incipit rotundum, que procedit eadem ratione in orbem.

Autem est altera, quam Græci appellant ἀγρίαν (agrian): in qua cutis exasperatur quidem similiter, sed magis, que exulceratur, ac et roditur, et rubet vehementius, et interdum etiam remittit pilos.

Quæ est minus rotunda, sanescit difficilius; nisi sublata est, vertitur in impetiginem. Sed levis papula sanescit, etiam si defricatur quotidie jejuna saliva: major tollitur commodissime herba murali, si eadem trita est super. Vero ut veniamus ad composita medicamenta, illud idem Protarchi est tanto valentius in his, quanto est minus vitii in his. Alterum ad idem Myronis: rubri nitri, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. i. purgatarum cantharidum sulphuris non experti ignem, tantundem, liquidæ resinæ terebinthinæ p. ℥. xx. farinæ lolii sext. iii. gith tres cyathi, crudæ picis sextarius.

19. Quoque vitiligo, quamvis adfert nullum periculum per se, ta-

#### TRANSLATION.

by very small pustules, red, and slightly eroded; it has a smoother centre; spreads tardily: this disease generally assumes a circular form in its beginning, and proceeds in the same shape.

But there is another which the Greeks call Agrian, or Wild: in which there is a similar appearance, but the cuticle is more unequal and ulcerated; it corrodes more vehemently, and is redder, and sometimes the patient loses the hair.

That which is not so round, heals with greater difficulty: and unless it be cured, is converted into impetigo. But a slight papula may be healed by rubbing it daily with fasting saliva. The more severe kind is cured very easily by an application formed of the bruised wall-herb. But if we come to compound medicaments, that one of Protarchus just named, is by far the most efficacious in these cases, in proportion as the disease may be less severe. There is another application of Myro's for the same disease, composed of red nitre, frankincense, of each p. ℥. i. cantharides freed from its impurities p. ℥. ii. crude sulphur, the like quantity, liquid turpentine resin p. ℥. xx. of darnel flour three sextantes, three cupful of git (67), and one sextans of crude pitch.

19. LEPROSY (68) also, although in itself unaccompanied with danger, yet it is

foeda est, et ex malo corporis habitu fit. Ejus tres species sunt. Ἀλφος vocatur, ubi color albus est, fere subasper et non continuus, ut quædam quasi guttæ dispersæ esse videantur: interdum etiam latius, et cum quibusdam intermissionibus serpit.

Μέλας colore ab hoc differt, quia niger est, et umbræ similis: cetera eadem sunt. Λευκή habet quiddam simile alphi, sed magis albida est, et altius descendit; in eaque albi pili sunt, et lanugini similes. Omnia hæc serpunt: sed in aliis celerius, in aliis tardius. Alphos et Melas in quibusdam variis temporibus et oriuntur et desinunt: Leuce, quem occupavit, non facile dimittit.

Priora curationem non difficillimam recipiunt: ultimum vix unquam sanescit; ac, si quid ei vitio demptum est, tamen non ex toto sanus color redditur. Utrum autem aliquod horum sanabile sit, experimento facile colligitur. Incidi enim cutis debet, aut acu pungi: si sanguis exit, quod fere fit in duobus prioribus, remedio

## ORDO.

men est et foeda, et fit ex malo habitu corporis. Sunt tres species ejus. Vocatur ἄλφος, (alphos) ubi color est albus, fere subasper et non continuus, ut quædam quasi guttæ videantur esse dispersæ: interdum etiam serpit latius et cum quibusdam intermissionibus.

Μέλας (melas) differt ab hoc colore, quia est niger, et similis umbræ: cetera sunt eadem. Λευκή (leukè) habet quiddam simile alphi, sed est magis albida, et descendit altius; que in ea sunt albi pili, et similes lanugini. Omnia hæc serpunt: sed celerius in aliis, tardius in aliis. Alphos et Melas et oriuntur et desinunt in quibusdam variis temporibus; quem Leucè occupavit, non dimittit facile.

Priora non recipiunt difficillimam curationem: ultimum vix unquam sanescit; ac, si quid est demptum ei vitio, tamen color non redditur ex toto sanus. Autem utrum aliquod horum sit sanabile, (an non sit,) colligitur facile experimento. Enim cutis debet incidi, aut pungi acu: si sanguis exit, quod fere fit in duobus prioribus, est locus remedio; si hu-

## TRANSLATION.

a loathsome disease, and arises from a bad habit of body. There are three species of it. It is termed ALPHOS, when the colour is white, generally a little rough, and not continuous, so that they appear as if drops were dispersed over the skin: sometimes it creeps more extensively, leaving some free interspaces.

The MELAS differs from this latter in colour, being black, and like a shadow: in other respects it is the same. The LEUKÈ has some resemblance to the Alphos, but is whiter, and penetrates more deeply, and has white downy hairs on it. All these spread, but more rapidly in some, more slowly in others. The Alphos and Melas both come and go at various periods. The Leukè does not easily quit the person it has once attacked.

The former are cured without much difficulty; the last scarcely ever admits of being cured; and although the disease be in some degree mitigated, yet the natural colour is never fully restored. Whether any of these be curable or not, may be easily known by an experiment. For *this purpose* the skin ought to be cut or punctured with a needle: if blood escape, which it generally does in the two



locus est; si humor albidus, sanari non potest. Itaque ab hoc quidem abstinendum est.

Super id vero, quod curationem recipit, imponenda lenticula mista cum sulphure et thure, sic, ut ea contrita ex aceto sit. Aliud ad idem, quod ad Irenæum auctorem refertur. Alcyonium, nitrum, cuminum, fici folia arida paribus portionibus contunduntur, adjecto aceto. His in sole vitiligo perungitur; deinde non ita multo post, ne nimis erodatur, eluitur. Proprie quidam, Myrone auctore, eos, quos Alphos vocari dixi, hoc medicamento perungunt: sulphuris p.  $\times$ . =. aluminis scissilis p.  $\times$ . =. nitri, p.  $\times$ . =. =. myrti aridæ contritæ acetabulum miscent, deinde in balneo super vitiliginem inspergunt farinam ex faba, tum hæc inducunt. Ii vero, quos Melanas vocari dixi, curantur, cum simul contrita sunt alcyonium, thus, hordeum, faba, eaque sine oleo in balneo ante sudorem insperguntur; tum genus id vitiliginis defricatur.

## ORDO.

mor (est) albidus, non potest sanari. Itaque est abstinendum quidem ab hoc. Vero lenticula mista cum sulphure et thure, sic ut contrita sit ex aceto, (est) imponenda super id, quod recipit curationem. Aliud medicamentum ad idem, (est) quod refertur ad Irenæum auctorem. Alcyonium, nitrum, cuminum, arida folia fici paribus portionibus contunduntur, aceto adjecto. Vitiligo perungitur his in sole; deinde, non ita multo post, eluitur, ne erodatur nimis.

Quidam, Myrone auctore, perungunt hoc medicamento proprie eos quos dixi vocari Alphos: miscent sulphuris p.  $\times$ . =. scissilis aluminis p.  $\times$ . =. nitri p.  $\times$ . =. =. acetabulum aridæ contritæ myrti, deinde in balneo inspergunt farinam ex faba super vitiliginem, tum inducunt hæc (nunc descripta). Vero ii, quos dixi vocari Melanas, curantur, cum alcyonium, thus, hordeum, faba, sunt contrita simul, que ea insperguntur sine oleo in balneo ante sudorem: tum id genus vitiliginis defricatur.

## TRANSLATION.

former species, the case admits of a remedy; if the humour be white, it will not yield to treatment: therefore, in this case, we must abstain from all medicaments.

To that species which admits of cure, lentils bruised with vinegar, and mixed with sulphur and frankincense, are to be applied. Another composition for the same malady is that described by Irenæus. Alcyonium, nitre, dried fig-leaves, in equal portions, are to be bruised with vinegar. With these the leprous parts are to be anointed in the sun: a short time afterward this should be washed off, lest it should corrode too much.

Some, following the practice of Myro, properly anoint the alphoid species only with the following: they mix of sulphur p.  $\times$ . =. of scissile alum p.  $\times$ . =. of nitre p.  $\times$ . =. =. of dried myrrh powdered, an acetabulum; then in the bath they sprinkle bean-flour over the leprous parts, and afterwards apply the composition just mentioned. But those which I have denominated melanes, are cured by a combination of the following ingredients beat up together: alcyonium, frankincense, barley, and beans; these are to be sprinkled on without oil, while the patient is in the bath, before perspiration comes on; and in this case the leprous scales are detached by friction.

# A. CORN. CELSI

DE MEDICINA

## LIBER SEXTUS.

DE VITIIS SINGULARUM CORPORIS  
PARTIUM.

---

### CAP. I.

DE CAPILLIS FLUENTIBUS.

DIXI de iis vitiis, quæ per totum corpus orientia, medicamentorum auxilium desiderant: nunc ad ea veniam, quæ non nisi in singulis partibus incidere consuerunt, orsus a capite. In hoc igitur capillis fluentibus maxime quidem sæpe radendo succurritur. Adjicit autem vim quamdam ad continendum ladanum cum oleo mistum. Nunc de iis capillis loquor, qui post morbum fere fluunt. Nam, quo minus caput quibusdam ætate nudetur, succurri nullo modo potest.

ORDO.

LIBER SEXTUS

## A. COR. CELSI

DE MEDICINA.

DE VITIIS SINGULARUM PARTIUM  
CORPORIS.

---

### CAP. I.

(PRIMO) DE FLUENTIBUS CAPILLIS.

DIXI de iis vitiis, quæ orientia per totum corpus, desiderant auxilia medicamentorum: nunc veniam ad ea, quæ non consuerunt incidere nisi in singulis partibus, orsus a capite. Igitur in hoc, quidem succurritur maxime fluentibus capillis, radendo sæpe. Autem ladanum mixtum cum oleo adjicit quamdam vim ad continendum. Nunc loquor de iis capillis, qui fere fluunt post morbum. Nam, quo minus caput quibusdam nudetur ætate, potest succurri nullo modo.

TRANSLATION.

THE SIXTH BOOK

OF

AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS

ON MEDICINE.

OF THE DISEASES OF DIFFERENT PARTS OF THE BODY.

---

### CHAP. I.

OF THE FALLING OFF OF THE HAIR.

I HAVE treated of those diseases which arise over the whole body requiring the aid of medicine: I shall now proceed to those which usually take place in particular parts, beginning with the head.

For a falling off of the hair, repeated shaving is the principal remedy. But ladanum mixed with oil in some measure conduces to this effect. But I am now speaking of those whose hair falls off generally after some disease. For where the head becomes bald in some persons from age, there is no remedy.

## CAP. II.

## DE PORRIGINE, ET EJUS CURATIONE.

PORRIGO autem est, ubi inter pilos quædam quasi squamulæ surgunt, eæque a cute resolvuntur; et interdum madent, multo sæpius siccæ sunt. Idque evenit modo sine ulcere, modo exulcerato loco: huic quoque modo malo odore, modo nullo accedente. Ferreque id in capillo fit, rarius in barba, aliquando etiam in supercilio: ac neque sine aliquo vitio corporis nascitur, neque ex toto inutile est. Nam bene integro capite, non exit: ubi aliquod in eo vitium est, non incommodum est, summam cutem potius subinde corrumpi, quam id, quod nocet, in aliam partem magis necessariam verti.

Commodius est ergo subinde peccando purgare, quam id ex toto prohibere. Si tamen ea res nimium offendit (quod humore sequente fieri potest; magisque si is etiam mali odoris

## ORDO.

## CAP. II.

## DE PORRIGINE, ET CURATIONE EJUS.

PORRIGO autem est, ubi quædam quasi squamulæ surgunt inter pilos, quæ eæ resolvuntur a cute; et interdum madent, multo sæpius sunt siccæ. Que id evenit modo sine ulcere, modo loco exulcerato: huic quoque, (est) modo malo odore, modo nullo (odore) accedente. Que fere id fit in capillo, rarius in barba, aliquando fit etiam in supercilio: ac neque nascitur sine aliquo vitio corporis, neque est inutile ex toto. Nam non exit bene integro capite: ubi est aliquid vitium in eo, est non incommodum, potius summam cutem corrumpi, quam (ut) id, quod decet, verti in aliam magis necessariam partem.

Ergo est commodius, repurgare subinde peccando, quam prohibere id ex toto. Si tamen ea res offendit nimium, (quod potest fieri se-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

## OF PORRIGO.

PORRIGO is a disease arising in the hair, resembling little scales, and these are detached from the skin; sometimes moist, much more frequently dry. This takes place sometimes without any ulceration, sometimes in a part that is ulcerated; sometimes it exhales a fætid odour, sometimes not. It generally occurs in the hairy part of the head, more rarely in the beard, sometimes in the eye-brows: it does not occur indeed without some previous disorder of the body, and therefore is not entirely useless. For it never appears when the head is in a healthy condition: and when there is any disease there, it will be more advantageous that the surface of the skin be occasionally corrupted, than that the noxious humour should be directed into another part more necessary for existence.

Therefore it will be more advantageous to cleanse the head by repeated combing than to repress it entirely. But if this mode be too offensive, (which may happen from the flow of humour, and particularly if this be of a fætid odour,) the head



est) caput sæpe radendum est; dein id super adjuvandum aliquibus ex leviter reprimentibus; quale est nitrum cum aceto, vel ladanum cum myrteo et vino, vel myrobalanum cum vino. Si parum per hæc proficitur, vehementioribus uti licet; cum eo, ut sciamus, utique in recenti vitio id inutile esse.

## ORDO.

quente humore, que magis, si is est etiam mali odoris,) caput est radendum sæpe; dein id super adjuvandum aliquibus ex leviter reprimentibus super; quale est nitrum cum aceto, vel ladanum cum myrteo et vino, vel myrobalanum cum vino. Si parum proficitur per hæc, licet uti vehementioribus: cum eo, ut sciamus, utique id esse inutile in recenti vitio.

## TRANSLATION.

must be frequently shaved, and afterwards assisted, still further by some of the milder repellents; such as nitre with vinegar, or ladanum with myrtle-oil and wine, or myrobalanum with wine. If these profit little, it may be proper to employ some more powerful; with this precaution, that such treatment would be injurious in a recent disease.

## CAP. III.

## DE SYCOSI.

EST etiam ulcus, quod a fici similitudine *σύνκωσις* a Græcis nominatur. Caro excrescit: et id quidem generale est. Sub eo vero duæ species sunt. Alterum ulcus durum et rotundum est: alterum humidum et inæquale. Ex duro exiguum quiddam et glutinosum exit: ex humido plus, et mali odoris.

## ORDO.

## CAP. III.

## DE SYCOSI.

ETIAM est ulcus, quod, a similitudine fici, nominatura Græcis *σύνκωσις* (sycosis). Caro excrescit; et quidem id est generale. Vero duæ species sunt sub eo. Alterum est durum et rotundum ulcus; alterum (est) humidum et inæquale. Quidam exiguum et glutinosum exit ex duro; plus (exit) ex humido, et (est) mali odoris. Utrumque fit in

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

## OF THE SYCOSIS.

THERE is an ulcer, which, from its resemblance to a fig, is termed by the Greeks SYCOSIS. A fleshy excrescence; and this is its general characteristic sign. But under this term are included two species. The one is a hard and round ulcer; the other is humid and unequal on the surface. From the hard one there is a small issue of glutinous matter; from the moist one it is more abundant, and exhales a bad

Fit utrumque in iis partibus, quæ pilis conteguntur: sed id quidem, quod callosum et rotundum est, maxime in barba; id vero, quod humidum, præcipue in capillo. Super utrumque oportet imponere elaterium, aut lini semen contritum et aqua coactum, aut ficum in aqua decoctum, aut emplastrum tetrapharmacum ex aceto subactum. Terra quoque Eretria ex aceto liquata recte illinitur.

## ORDO.

iis partibus, quæ conteguntur pilis: sed quidem id, quod est callosum et rotundum, maxime (fit) in barba; vero id, quod (est) humidum, (fit) præcipue in capillo. Oportet imponere elaterium, aut semen lini contritum et coactum aqua, aut ficum decoctum in aqua, aut tetrapharmacum emplastrum subactum ex aceto super utrumque. Quoque Eretria terra liquata ex aceto recte illinitur.

## TRANSLATION.

odour. Each kind takes place in those parts which are covered with hair: but that which is callous and round, chiefly in the beard; that which is moist, principally in the hair of the head.

It will be necessary to apply elaterium to each, or lintseed bruised and formed into a paste with water, or a fig boiled in water, or the tetrapharmacum plaster moistened with vinegar. Eretrian earth also liquified in vinegar may be laid over the part.

## CAP. IV.

DE AREIS, ET EARUM CURATIONIBUS.

AREARUM quoque duo genera sunt. Commune utrique est, quod emortua summa pellicula, pili primum extenuantur, deinde excidunt: ac, si ictus is locus est, sanguis exit liquidus, et mali odoris: increscitque utrumque in aliis celeriter, in aliis tarde. Pejus est, quod densam cutem, et subpinguem, et ex toto glabram fecit.

## ORDO.

## CAP. IV.

DE AREIS ET CURATIONIBUS  
EARUM.

SUNT quoque duo genera arearum. Est commune utrique, quod summa pellicula emortua pili extenuantur primum, deinde excidunt: ac, si is locus est ictus, liquidus sanguis exit, et (est) mali odoris: que utrumque increscit celeriter in aliis, tarde in aliis. (Id genus) est pejus, quod fecit cutem densam, et subpinguem, et glabram ex toto.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

OF AREÆ, AND THEIR TREATMENT.

THERE are also two kinds of AREÆ. It is common in both, for the cuticle to lose its vitality, the hair to become thinned at first, and then to fall off entirely; and if the part be struck, blood, of a disagreeable odour escapes: both species increase rapidly in some persons, in others tardily. That is the worst kind which renders the skin thick, pasty, and entirely smooth.

Sed ea, quæ ἀλωπεκία nominatur, sub qualibet figura dilatatur. Fit et in capillo, et in barba. Id vero, quod a serpentis similitudine ὀφίασις appellatur, incipit ab occipitio; duorum digitorum latitudinem non excedit; ad aures duobus capitibus serpit: quibusdam etiam ad frontem, donec se duo capita in priorem partem committant. Illud vitium in qualibet ætate est; hoc fere in infantibus: illud vix unquam sine curatione, hoc per se sæpe finitur. Quidam hæc genera arearum scalpello exasperant: quidam illinunt adurentia ex oleo; maximeque chartam combustam: quidam resinam terebinthinam cum thapsia inducunt. Sed nihil melius est, quam novacula quotidie radere: quia, cum paulatim summa pellicula excisa est, adaperiuntur pilorum radiculæ. Neque ante oportet desistere, quam frequentem pilum nasci apparuerit. Id autem, quod subinde raditur, illini atramento scriptorio satis est.

## ORDO.

Sed ea, quæ nominatur ἀλωπεκία (alopecia), dilatatur sub qualibet figura. Fit et in capillo, et in barba. Vero id, quod appellatur ὀφίασις (ophiasis) a similitudine serpentis, incipit ab occipitio; non excedit latitudinem duorum digitorum; serpit ad aures duobus capitibus: etiam quibusdam (serpit) ad frontem, donec duo capita committant se in priorem partem. Illud vitium est in qualibet ætate; hoc fere in infantibus: illud vix unquam finitur sine curatione, hoc sæpe (finitur) per se. Quidam exasperant hæc genera arearum scalpello: quidam illinunt adurentia ex oleo; que maxime combustam chartam: quidam inducunt terebinthinam resinam cum thapsia. Sed nihil est melius, quam radere novacula quotidie: quia, cum summa pellicula est paulatim excisa, radiculæ pilorum adaperiuntur. Neque oportet desistere, ante quam pilum apparuerit nasci frequentem. Autem est satis, id quod raditur subinde, illini scriptorio atramento.

## TRANSLATION.

But that species which is named Alopekia, assumes any shape. It attacks the hairy scalp and beard. Now that which takes the similitude of a serpent is called OPHIASIS, and commences at the back of the head; it does not exceed the breadth of two fingers; it extends to the ears by two heads or *points of prolongation*; in some, even to the forehead, where the two points unite. The first kind attacks any age; the latter mostly infants: the first scarcely ever yields but to medicine, the latter frequently goes away of itself.

Some practitioners scrape these kinds of areæ with a knife; others apply caustic remedies to them with oil; and especially burnt paper: some apply turpentine-resin with thapsia. But nothing is better than daily shaving with a razor; because when the cuticle has been gradually removed, the roots of the hairs are laid bare. Neither should this be discontinued, until the hair shall appear again and again. But it will be sufficient for that part which is frequently shaved to be smeared over with writing ink.



## CAP. V.

DE VARIS, ET LENTICULIS, ET EPHELIDE, ET EORUM CURATIONIBUS.

PENE ineptiæ sunt, curare varos, et lenticulas, et ephelidas : sed eripi tamen fœminis cura cultus sui non potest. Ex his autem, quæ supra proposui, vari lenticulæque vulgo notæ sunt ; quamvis rarior ea species est, quam Semion Græci vocant ; cum sit ea lenticula rubicundior, et inæqualior. Ephelis vero a plerisque ignoratur : quæ nihil est, nisi asperitas quædam et durities mali coloris. Cetera non nisi in facie : lenticula etiam in alia parte nonnunquam nasci solet ; de qua per se scribere alio loco, visum operæ pretium non est.

Sed vari commodissime tolluntur imposita resina, cui non minus quam ipsa est, aluminis scissilis, et paulum mellis adjectum est. Lenticulam tollunt galbanum et nitrum, cum pares portiones habent, contritaque ex aceto

## ORDO.

## CAP. V.

DE VARIS, ET LENTICULIS, ET EPHELIDE, ET CURATIONIBUS EORUM.

SUNT pene ineptiæ curare varos, et lenticulas, et ephelidas : sed tamen cura fœminis sui cultus non potest eripi. Autem ex his, quæ proposui supra, sunt vulgo notæ, vari que lenticulæ ; quamvis ea species est rarior, quam Græci vocant Semion ; cum ea sit rubicundior, et inæqualior (quam) lenticula. Vero Ephelis ignoratur a plerisque : quæ est nihil, nisi quædam asperitas, et durities mali coloris. Cetera non (solent nasci) nisi in facie : nonnunquam lenticula solet nasci etiam in alia parte ; de qua, non est visum pretium operæ, scribere per se alio loco.

Sed vari tolluntur commodissime, resina imposita, cui non minus, quam est ipsa scissilis aluminis, et paulum mellis est adjectum. Galbanum et nitrum, cum habent pares portiones, que sunt contrita ex aceto, donec venerint ad cras-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

OF VARI, LENTICULÆ, AND EPHELIDES, AND OF THEIR TREATMENT.

IT is almost a folly to treat PIMPLES, and LENTILS, and EPHELIDES : but yet the inseparable anxiety of the fair sex concerning their beauty is not to be overcome. But of those which I have already mentioned, vari and lentils are commonly known : although that species is more rare, which the Greeks call Semion, being of a more ruddy colour, and more unequal on the surface than the common lentil. But the ephelis is unknown by most persons, which is nothing more than a certain asperity, and hardness of a bad colour. The other arises only in the face : the lentil sometimes appears on other parts ; concerning which it does not seem of sufficient importance to treat separately in another place.

Now vari or pimples are most advantageously removed by the application of resin mixed with an equal quantity of scissile alum, and a little honey. Galbanum and nitre in equal quantities, beat up with vinegar to the consistence of

sunt, donec ad mellis crassitudinem venerint. His corpus illinendum, et, interpositis pluribus horis, mane eluendum est, oleoque leniter inungendum.

Ephelidem tollit resina, cui tertia pars salis fossilis et paulum mellis adjectum est. Ad omnia vero ista, atque etiam ad colorandas cicatrices, potest ea compositio, quæ ad Tryphonem patrem auctorem refertur. In ea pares portiones sunt myrobalani magmatis, cretæ Cimoliæ subcæruleæ, nucum amararum, farinæ hordei atque ervi, struthii albi, sertulæ Campanæ seminis: quæ omnia contrita, melle quam amarissimo coguntur, illitumque a vespere usque mane eluitur.

## ORDO.

situdinem mellis, tollunt lenticulam. Corpus (est) illinendum his, et pluribus horis interpositis, est eluendum mane, quæ (est) inungendum leniter oleo.

Resina tollit ephelidem, cui tertia pars fossilis salis, et paulum mellis est adjectum. Vero ad omnia ista, atque etiam ad colorandas cicatrices, ea compositio potest (satis), quæ refertur ad patrem Tryphonem auctorem. Sunt in ea, pares portiones magmatis myrobalani, Cimoliæ cretæ subcæruleæ, amararum nucum, farinæ hordei atque ervi, albi struthii, seminis sertulæ Campanæ: quæ omnia contrita, coguntur quam amarissimo melle, quæ illitum a vespere, eluitur usque mane.

## TRANSLATION.

honey, will cure the lentil. The body is to be anointed with these, and after an interval of some hours, washed off in the morning, and gently anointed with oil.

The EPHELIS is to be cured by resin, to which a third part of fossil salt, and a little honey has been added. But for all these disorders, and also for rendering the cicatrices of a healthy colour, that composition which is attributed to Tryphon the father is efficacious. In it there are equal portions of the magma of myrobalani, light blue Cimolian chalk, bitter almonds, flour of barley and vetches, white struthium, and seed of malitot; all of which being bruised and incorporated with the bitterest honey, are to be rubbed on at night, and washed off next morning.

## CAP. VI.

## ORDO.

DE OCULORUM MORBIS, CURATIONIBUSQUE EORUM, ET PRIMO DE HIS MORBIS, QUI LENIBUS MEDICAMENTIS CURANTUR.

## CAP. VI.

DE MORBIS OCULORUM; ET PRIMO DE HIS MORBIS, QUI CURANTUR LENIBUS MEDICAMENTIS.

1. SED hæc quidem mediocria sunt. Ingentibus vero et variis casibus oculi nostri patent: qui cum magnam partem ad vitæ simul et usum et dulcedinem conferant, summa cura tuendi sunt.

1. SED quidem hæc sunt mediocria. Vero nostri oculi patent ingentibus et variis casibus: qui cum conferant magnam partem, simul et ad usum, et (ad) dulcedinem vitæ, sunt tuendi summa cura.

Protinus autem orta lippitudine, quædam notæ sunt, ex quibus, quid eventurum sit, colligere possimus. Nam si simul et lacrima et tumor et crassa pituita cœperint; si ea pituita lacrimæ mista est; neque lacrima calida est, pituita vero alba et mollis, tumor non durus, longæ valetudinis metus non est. At si lacrima multa et calida, pituitæ paulum, tumor modicus est, idque in uno oculo est; longum id, sed sine periculo, futurum est. Idque lippitudinis genus minime cum dolore

Autem lippitudine orta protinus, sunt quædam notæ, ex quibus, possimus colligere, quid sit eventurum. Nam si et lacrima et tumor et crassa pituita cœperint simul; si ea pituita est mista lacrimæ; (si) neque lacrima est calida, vero pituita (est) alba et mollis, tumor non (est) durus, non est metus longæ valetudinis. At si lacrima (est) multa et calida, (est) paulum pituitæ, tumor est modicus, que id est in uno oculo; id futurum est longum, sed sine periculo. Que id genus lippitudinis,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

OF THE DISEASES OF THE EYES, AND THEIR TREATMENT; AND FIRST OF THOSE DISEASES WHICH ARE CURED BY MILD REMEDIES.

BUT the maladies *above mentioned* are of minor importance. Our eyes are exposed to great and various accidents: which, since they contribute a great part at the same time both of the conveniences and enjoyments of life, are to be guarded with the utmost care.

A lippitudo having taken place, there are certain indications, from which we may form a prognosis of the event. For if a suffusion of tears with tumefaction, and thick humour, have commenced at the same time; if that humour be mixed with the tears, and these be not hot; if the humour be white and soft, the tumour not hard, there will be no fear of a long illness. But if the tears be copious and hot, the humour small in quantity, the tumefaction moderate, and that confined to one eye; the case will prove tedious, but without danger. This species of lippitudo



est; sed vix ante vicesimum diem tollitur: nonnunquam per duos menses durat.

Quandoque finitur, pituita alba et mollis esse incipit, lacrimæque misceatur. At si simul ea utrumque oculum invaserunt, potest esse brevior, sed periculum ulcerum est. Pituita autem sicca et arida dolorem quidem movet, sed maturius desinit; nisi quid exulceravit.

Tumor magnus, si sine dolore est, et siccus, sine ullo periculo est: si siccus quidem, sed cum dolore est, fere exulcerat; et nonnunquam ex eo casu fit, ut palpebra cum oculo glutinetur. Ejusdem exulcerationis timor in palpebris pupillive est, ubi super magnum dolorem lacrimæ salsæ calidæque sunt; aut etiam si, tumore jam finito, diu lacrima cum pituita profluit.

Pejus etiamnum est, ubi pituita pallida aut livida est, lacrima calida et multa profluit, caput calet, a temporibus ad oculos dolor pervenit, nocturna vigilia urget: siquidem sub his oculis plerumque rumpitur; votumque est,

## ORDO.

est minime cum dolore; sed vix tollitur ante vicesimum diem: nonnunquam durat (per) duos menses.

Que quando finitur, pituita incipit esse alba et mollis, que misceatur lacrimæ. At si ea invaserunt utrumque oculum simul, potest esse brevior, sed est periculum ulcerum. Antem quidem sicca et arida pituita movet dolorem, sed desinit maturius; nisi quid exulceravit.

Si tumor est magnus et siccus sine dolore, est sine periculo: si quidem est siccus, sed cum dolore, fere exulcerat; et nonnunquam fit ex eo casu, ut palpebra glutinetur cum oculo. Est timor ejusdem exulcerationis in palpebris ve pupillis, ubi sunt salsæ que calidæ lacrimæ super magnum dolorem: aut etiam, si, tumore jam finito, lacrima profluit diu cum pituita.

Etiamnum est pejus, ubi pituita est pallida aut livida, (ubi) lacrima profluit calida et multa, (ubi) caput calet, (ubi) dolor pervenit ad oculos a temporibus, (que ubi) nocturna vigilia urget: si quidem oculus plerumque rumpitur sub his;

## TRANSLATION.

is by no means attended with pain; but is scarcely ever removed before the twentieth day: sometimes it continues for two months.

When it is about to terminate, the humour will begin to be white, soft, and mixed with the tears. But if those affections have invaded both eyes at the same time, the disease may be of shorter duration, and there will be danger of ulcers. A dry and acrid pituita certainly occasions pain, but it ceases earlier, unless it have produced some ulceration.

A great tumefaction, if it be without pain, and dry, is without danger: but if dry and painful, it generally ulcerates; and sometimes it may happen from this accident, that the eye-lid may be agglutinated to the eye. There is also reason to dread ulceration in the eye-lids, or in the pupils, when, besides great pain, the tears are salt and scalding; or even after the tumefaction have subsided, the tears flow for a long time blended with humour.

It is still worse when this pituitous humour is pale or livid, the tears hot and copious, the head hot, and the pain extending from the temples to the eyes, accompanied with nocturnal vigilance; and indeed under such an accumulation of evils the eye generally bursts: therefore it would be most desirable to limit the

ut tantum exulceretur. Intus ruptum oculum febricula juvat: si foras jam ruptus procedit, sine auxilio est. Si ex nigro aliquid albidum factum est, diu manet. At si asperum, et crassum est etiam post curationem vestigium aliquid relinquit.

Curari vero oculos sanguinis detractione, medicamento, balneo, vino, vetustissimus auctor Hippocrates memoriae prodidit. Sed eorum tempora et causas parum explicuit: in quibus medicinae summa est. Neque minus in abstinentia et alvi ductione saepe auxilii est.

Hos igitur interdum inflammatio occupat: ubi cum tumore in his dolor est; sequiturque pituitae cursus, nonnunquam copiosior vel acrior, nonnunquam utraque parte moderatur. In ejusmodi casu prima omnium sunt quies et abstinentia. Ergo primo die, loco obscuro cubare debet, sic, ut a sermone quoque absteineat; nullum cibum assumere; si fieri potest, ne aquam quidem; sin minus, certe quam minimum ejus.

Quod si graves dolores sunt, commodius secundo die; si tamen res urget, etiam primo sanguis mittendus

#### ORDO.

que votum est, ut exulceretur tantum. Febricula juvat oculum ruptum intus: si ruptus procedit jam foras, est sine auxilio. Si aliquid est factum albidum de nigro, manet diu. At si est asperum, et crassum, aliquid vestigium relinquit etiam post curationem.

Vero vetustissimus auctor Hippocrates prodidit memoriae, oculos curari detractione sanguinis, medicamento, balneo, vino. Sed explicuit parum causas et tempora eorum: in quibus est summa (ars) medicinae. Neque est saepe minus auxilii in abstinentia, et ductione alvi.

Interdum igitur inflammatio occupat hos: ubi est dolor cum tumore in his; que cursus pituitae sequitur nonnunquam (pituita est) copiosior vel acrior, nonnunquam (est) moderatur utraque parte. In casu ejusmodi, quies et abstinentia sunt prima omnium. Ergo, debet cubare obscuro loco, primo die, sic, ut quoque absteineat a sermone: (debet) assumere nullum cibum; ne quidem aquam, si potest fieri; sin minus, certe (debet assumere) quam minimum ejus.

Quod si dolores sunt graves, sanguis est commodius mittendus secundo die; tamen si res urget, (est mittendus) etiam primo (die); uti-

#### TRANSLATION.

disease to ulceration only. A slight fever is of service when the eye bursts internally; if it break externally and protrude, the case admits of no remedy. If any part of the dark covering become white, it remains so a long time, but if it be rough and thick, it leaves some trace, even after the cure.

Hippocrates, our most ancient author, has instructed us in his writings, that the eyes are to be treated by the extraction of blood, by medicines, the bath, and wine. But he is very brief with respect to the times, and their effects; in which the essentials of medicine consist. Neither is there small assistance frequently to be obtained from abstinence and alviduction.

Sometimes the eyes are seized with inflammation: when there are both pain and swelling; and a running of humour follows, sometimes more copious, or more acrid, sometimes more moderate in every respect. In such a case, the principal remedies are rest and abstinence. Therefore on the first day, he ought to lie in a dark chamber, so that he may abstain even from discourse; to take no food; if possible, not even water: but if this cannot be done, certainly as little as possible of it.

But if the pains be severe, it is better to let blood on the second day; if

est; utique si in fronte venæ tument, si firmo corpore materia superest. Si vero minor impetus minus acrem curationem requirit, alvum, sed non nisi secundo tertiove die duci oportet. At modica inflammatio neutrum ex his auxilium desiderat; satisque est, uti quiete et abstinencia.

Neque tamen in lippientibus longum jejunium necessarium est, ne pituita tenuior atque acrior fiat: sed secundo die dari debet id, quod levissimum videri potest ex iis, quæ pituitam faciunt crassiorem; qualia sunt ova sorbilia: si minor vis urget, pulticula quoque, aut panis ex lacte. Insequentibusque diebus, quantum inflammationi detrahetur, tantum adjici cibus poterit; sed generis ejusdem: utique ut nihil salsum, nihil acre, nihil ex iis, quæ extenuant, sumatur; nihil potui præter aquam. Et victus quidem ratio talis maxime necessaria est.

Protinus autem primo die, croci p. ꝥ. i. et farinæ candidæ quam tenuissimæ p. ꝥ. ii. excipere oportet ovi albo, donec mellis crassitudinem habeat: idque in linteolum illinere, et

## ORDO.

que si venæ tument in fronte, si materia superest firmo corpore. Vero si impetus (est) minor, requirit minus acrem curationem, oportet alvum duci, sed non nisi secundo ve tertio die. At modica inflammatio desiderat neutrum auxilium ex his; que satis est, uti quiete et abstinencia.

Tamen neque est longum jejunium necessarium in lippientibus, ne fiat pituita tenuior atque acrior: sed secundo die, id debet dari, quod potest videri levissimum ex iis, quæ faciunt pituitam crassiorem; qualia sunt sorbilia ova: si minor vis urget, quoque pulticula, aut panis ex lacte. Que insequentibus diebus, quantum detrahetur inflammationi, tantum poterit adjici cibus; sed ejusdem generis: utique ut nihil salsum, nihil acre, nihil ex iis quæ extenuant, sumatur; nihil potui præter aquam. Et quidem talis ratio victus est maxime necessaria.

Antem oportet protinus primo die, excipere croci p. ꝥ. i. et quam tenuissimæ candidæ farinæ p. ꝥ. ii. albo ovi, donec habeat crassitudinem mellis: que illinere id in

## TRANSLATION.

indeed the case be urgent, even on the first; especially if the veins of the forehead be swollen, if there be plethora in a strong constitution. But if the *inflammation* be less severe, it will require a less severe treatment; it will be necessary to open the bowels, but not before the second or third day. But a slight inflammation requires neither of these remedies; to enjoin quiet and abstinence, will be sufficient.

Neither is long fasting proper in lippitudo, lest the humour should become thinner and more acrid: but on the second day, such things ought to be given as are most light, selected from the class which has the property of rendering the discharge thicker; such as poached eggs: if the disease be less violent, pottage, or bread sopped in milk. On the following days, in proportion as the inflammation may decrease, an addition can be made to the food; but we should always employ aliments of the same kind; so that nothing salt, or acrid, or any of those things which attenuate, be taken; nothing but water should be given for drink. Such then is the regimen necessary to be followed.

Now on the first day of the disease, we should take of saffron p. ꝥ. i. of the very finest white flour p. ꝥ. ii. with the white of an egg, until it forms the consistence of honey: this is to be spread upon a piece of linen, and applied to the forehead,



fronti agglutinare, ut, compressis venis, pituitæ impetum cohibeat. Si crocum non est, thus idem facit. Linteolo an lana excipiat, nihil interest. Superinungi vero oculi debent, sic, ut croci quantum tribus digitis comprehendere potest, sumatur, myrrhæ ad fabæ, papaveris lacrimæ ad lenticulæ magnitudinem, eaque cum passo conterantur, et specillo super oculum inducantur.

Aliud ad idem: myrrhæ p. ℥. i. mandragoræ succi p. ℥. i. papaveris lacrimæ p. ℥. ii. foliorum rosæ, cicutæ seminis, singulorum p. ℥. iii. acaciæ p. iv. gummi p. ℥. viii. Et hæc quidem interdiu: noctu vero, quo commodior quies veniat, non alienum est, superimponere candidi panis interiorem partem ex vino subactam: nam et pituitam reprimit, et, si quid lacrimæ processit, absorbet, et oculum glutinari non patitur.

Si grave id et durum, propter magnum oculorum dolorem, videtur, ovi et album et vitellus in vas defundendum est, adjiciendumque eo mulsi paulum, idque digito permiscendum:

## ORDO.

lin-teo-lum, et ag-gluti-nare fronti, ut, venis compressis, cohibeat impetum pituitæ. Si non est crocum, thus facit idem. Interest nihil, an excipiat lana (vel) linteolo. Vero oculi debent superinungi, sic, ut quantum potest comprehendere croci (in) tribus digitis, sumatur, myrrhæ ad magnitudinem fabæ, lacrimæ papaveris ad (magnitudinem) lenticulæ, que ea conterantur cum passo, et inducantur super oculum specillo.

(Est) aliud ad idem, myrrhæ p. ℥. i. succi mandragoræ p. ℥. i. lacrimæ papaveris p. ℥. ii. foliorum rosæ, cicutæ seminis, singulorum p. ℥. iii. acaciæ p. iv. gummi p. ℥. viii. Et quidem hæc (inducantur) interdiu: vero noctu, quo commodior quies veniat, non est alienum, superimponere interiorem partem candidi panis subactam ex vino: nam et reprimit pituitam, et, si quid lacrimæ processit, absorbet, et non patitur oculum glutinari.

Si id videtur grave et durum, propter magnum dolorem oculorum, et album et vitellus ovi est defundendum in vas, que paulum mulsi (est) adjiciendum eo, que id (est) permiscendum digito: ubi

## TRANSLATION.

in order to compress the veins, and restrain the violence of the humour. If there be not saffron at hand, frankincense will have the same effect. It is of no consequence whether it be spread on lint or wool. But the eyes ought to be anointed with a mixture containing, of saffron, as much as can be held in three fingers, of myrrh, the size of a bean, of poppy tears, the size of a lentil, these are to be bruised with raisin wine, and applied over the eye with a little brush or pencil.

Another for the same purpose consists of myrrh p. ℥. i. of mandrake-juice p. ℥. i. poppy tears p. ℥. ii. of rose leaves, of hemlock seed, of each p. ℥. iii. of acacia p. =. iv. of gum p. =. viii. These are to be employed only during the day-time; but at night, in order to procure rest, it would not be improper to apply the interior part (*crumb*), of white bread imbued with wine; for this not only represses the humour, but absorbs it, should there be any discharge; and by the same means the eye-lids are prevented from being glued together.

If this should feel hard and uneasy on account of the severity of the pain of the eyes, the white and yolk of an egg is to be poured into a vessel, and a little hydromel added to it, and these thoroughly mixed with the finger:

ubi facta unitas est, demitti debet lana mollis bene carpta, quæ id excipiat, superque oculos imponi. Ea res et levis est, et refrigerando pituitam coercet, et non exarescit, et glutinari oculum non patitur. Farina quoque hordeacea cocta, et cum malo cotoneo cocto mista, commode imponitur.

Neque ab ratione abhorret, etiam penicillo potissimum uti expresso, si levior impetus est, ex aqua; si major, ex posca. Priora fascia deliganda sunt, ne per somnum cadant: at hoc superimponi satis est, quia et reponi ab ipso commode potest; et, cum inaruit, iterum madefaciendum est. Si tantum mali est, ut somnum diu prohibeat, eorum aliquid dandum est, quæ ἀνώδυνα Græci appellant: satisque est puero, quod ervi; viro, quod fabæ magnitudinem impleat.

In ipsum vero oculum primo die, nisi modica inflammatio est, nihil recte conjicitur: sæpe enim potius concitatur eo pituita, quam minuitur. A secundo die, gravi quoque lippitudini per indita medicamenta recte succurri-

## ORDO.

unitas est facta, mollis bene carpta lana, quæ excipiat id, debet demitti, quæ imponi super oculos. Ea res est et levis, et coercet pituitam refrigerando, et non exarescit, et non patitur oculum glutinari. Hordeacea farina cocta, et mista cum cocto cotoneo malo, quoque imponitur commode.

Neque abhorret ab ratione, etiam potissimum uti expresso penicillo, si impetus est levior, ex aqua; si impetus est major, ex posca. Priora fascia sunt deliganda, ne cadant per somnum: at hoc superimponi est satis, quia et potest reponi commode ab ipso; et, cum inaruit, est iterum madefaciendum. Si est tantum mali, ut diu prohibeat somnum, aliquid eorum est dandum, quæ Græci appellant ἀνώδυνα (anodyna): quæ quod impleat magnitudinem ervi, est satis puero; quod (impleat) magnitudinem fabæ, (est satis) viro.

Vero nisi est modica inflammatio (ad) oculum ipsum, in primo die, nihil conjicitur recte: enim sæpe pituita potius concitatur eo, quam minuitur. A secundo die, quoque succurritur recte gravi lippitudini, per indita medica-

## TRANSLATION.

when union has taken place, soft wool, well combed, should be dipped in it, and well saturated with it, and then applied over the eyes. This topical preparation is both light and astringent, by refrigerating the parts, neither does it become dry, nor suffer the cilia to be agglutinated. Barley-flour also, boiled and mixed with a boiled quince, may be advantageously applied.

Neither is it a bad practice to prefer using a pledget squeezed out of water, if the attack be very slight; out of posca, if more severe. The former applications are to be bound on with a bandage, lest they fall off during sleep: but it will be sufficient for this latter to be laid on; both because it can be more conveniently replaced by the patient himself, and because, when it has become dry, it should be moistened again. If the malady be at such a height as to prevent sleep for any considerable time, then, some of those medicines are to be given which the Greeks call anodynes, apportioning to an infant, that which may equal the magnitude of a vetch: to an adult, the size of a bean.

On the first day it is not proper to inject any thing into the eye, unless the inflammation be moderate: for by this the discharge is frequently excited, rather than diminished. But on the second day injections may be had recourse to even

tur, ubi vel jam sanguis missus, vel alvus ducta est, aut neutrum necessarium esse manifestum est.

2. Multa autem multorumque auctorum collyria ad id apta sunt; novisque etiamnum misturis temperari possunt; cum lenia medicamenta, et modice reprimentia, facile et varie misceantur. Ego nobilissima exsequar.

3. Est igitur Philonis, quod habet cerussæ elotæ, spodii, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. i. papaveris lacrimæ combustæ p. ℥. ii. Illud scire oportet, hic quoque omnia medicamenta, singula primum per se teri, deinde mista iterum, adjecta paulatim vel aqua, vel alio humore: gummi cum quasdam alias facultates habeat, hoc maxime præstare, ut, ubi collyria diu facta inaruerent, glutinata sint, neque frientur.

4. Dionysii vero collyrium est: papaveris lacrimæ combustæ, donec tenerescat, p. ℥. i. thuris combusti, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. ii. spodii p. ℥. iv.

5. Cleonis nobile admodum: papaveris lacrimæ frictæ p. ℥. i. croci

#### ORDO.

menta, ubi vel sanguis (est) jam missus, vel alvus est ducta, aut est manifestum neutrum esse necessarium.

2. Autem multa collyria, que multorum auctorum, sunt apta ad id; que possunt etiamnum temperari novis misturis; cum lenia medicamenta, et (medicamenta) reprimentia modice, misceantur facile et varie. Ego exsequar nobilissima.

3. Est igitur collyrium Philonis, quod habet elotæ cerussæ, spodii, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. i. combustæ lacrimæ papaveris p. ℥. ii. Oportet scire illud, quoque hic, omnia medicamenta (debent) teri singula per se primum, deinde iterum mixta, vel aqua, vel alio humore paulatim adjecta: cum gummi habeat quasdam alias facultates, hoc maxime præstare, ut ubi collyria facta diu, inaruerunt, sint glutinata, nequo frientur.

4. Vero est collyrium Dionysii: (constat) lacrimæ combustæ papaveris, donec tenerescat p. ℥. i. combusti thuris, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. ii. spodii p. ℥. iv.

5. (Collyrium) Cleonis (est) admodum nobile: (quod habet) frictæ lacrimæ papaveris p. ℥. i. croci

#### TRANSLATION.

in severe lippitudo, when, either the patient has been previously bled, or the bowels clystered; or it is manifest that neither of these means is necessary.

2. But there are many Collyria, proposed by different authors adapted for lippitudo; and capable of being mixed with new medicines; since mild and moderately repressing medicines may be easily and variously mixed; therefore I shall only follow the most famous of them.

3. There is that of Philo's, containing of washed ceruse, of spodium, of gum, of each p. ℥. i. of burnt poppy tears p. ℥. ii. Be it known here too, all the ingredients ought to be powdered first separately, and afterward, when mixed, occasionally adding either a little water or other liquid gradually: therefore, as gum is known to possess other properties, it has this in particular, that when collyria have been made a long time, they become dry, and continue firmly united, and not friable.

4. There is another collyrium of Dionysius composed of burnt poppy tears until it become soft p. ℥. i. of burnt frankincense, of gum, of each p. ℥. ii. of spodium p. ℥. iv.

5. The Collyrium of Cleon is very noted: it contained of fried poppy tears p. ℥. i.



p.  $\times$ . =. gummi p.  $\times$ . i. quibus, cum teruntur, adjicitur rosæ succus. Aliud ejusdem valentius: squamæ æris, quod *στόμωμα* appellant, p.  $\times$ . i. croci p.  $\times$ . ii. spodii p.  $\times$ . iv. plumbi eloti, et combusti p.  $\times$ . vi. gummi tantumdem. Attalium quoque ad idem est, maxime ubi multa pituita profluit: castorei p.  $\times$ . —. aloes p.  $\times$ . =. croci p.  $\times$ . i. myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . ii. lycii p.  $\times$ . iii. cadmiæ curatæ p.  $\times$ . viii. stibis tantumdem, acaciæ succi p.  $\times$ . xii. Quod gummi hoc non habet, liquidum in pixidicula servatur. Theodotus vero huic compositioni adjecit papaveris lacrimæ combustæ p.  $\times$ . i. æris combusti et eloti p.  $\times$ . ii. nucleos palmarum combustos numero xx. gummi p.  $\times$ . xii.

6. At ipsius Theodoti, quod a quibusdam *ἀχαρίστον* nominatur, ejusmodi est: castorei, nardi Indici, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. lycii p.  $\times$ . =. papaveris lacrimæ tantumdem, myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . ii. croci, cerussæ elotæ, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iii. cadmiæ botryitidis elotæ, æris combusti, singulorum p.  $\times$ . viii. gummi p.  $\times$ . xviii. acaciæ succi p.  $\times$ .

## ORDO.

p.  $\times$ . =. gummi p.  $\times$ . i. quibus, cum teruntur, succus rosæ adjicitur. (Est) aliud ejusdem (generis), (quod est) valentius: (constat.) squamæ æris, quod appellant *στόμωμα* (stomóma) p.  $\times$ . i. croci p.  $\times$ . ii. spodii p.  $\times$ . iv. eloti et combusti plumbi p.  $\times$ . vi. tantumdem gummi. Attalium est quoque (proprium) ad idem, maxime ubi multa pituita profluit: (quod habet), castorei p.  $\times$ . —. aloes p.  $\times$ . =. croci p.  $\times$ . i. myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . ii. lycii p.  $\times$ . iii. curatæ cadmiæ p.  $\times$ . viii. tantumdem stibis, succi acaciæ p.  $\times$ . xii. Quod hoc non habet gummi, servatur liquidum in pixidicula. Vero Theodotus adjecit huic compositioni combustæ lacrimæ papaveris p.  $\times$ . i. combusti et eloti æris p.  $\times$ . ii. combustos nucleos palmarum numero xx. gummi p.  $\times$ . xii.

6. At (Collyrium) Theodoti ipsius, quod nominatur *ἀχαρίστον* (achariston) a quibusdam, est ejusmodi (generis): (quod habet) castorei, Indici nardi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. lycii p.  $\times$ . =. tantumdem lacrimæ papaveris, myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . ii. croci, elotæ cerussæ, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iii. elotæ botryitidis cadmiæ, combusti æris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . viii. gummi p.  $\times$ . xviii. succi acaciæ p.  $\times$ .

## TRANSLATION.

of saffron p.  $\times$ . =. of gum p.  $\times$ . i. to which, while they are being rubbed is added juice of roses. Another more powerful one by the same author *consists* of copper scales, which they call *stomóma*, p.  $\times$ . i. of saffron p.  $\times$ . ii. of spodium p.  $\times$ . iv. of lead washed and calcined p.  $\times$ . vi. with the same quantity of gum. There is also the Attalian for the same complaint, but only employed when there is an excessive discharge of humour, viz. of castor p.  $\times$ . =. of aloe p.  $\times$ . =. of saffron, p.  $\times$ . i. of myrrh p.  $\times$ . ii. of lycium p.  $\times$ . iii. of prepared cadmia p.  $\times$ . viii. of antimony just as much, of acacia juice p.  $\times$ . xii. As this contains no gum, it is to be kept liquid in a small box. But Theodotus added to this composition, of burnt poppy tears p.  $\times$ . i. of copper calcined and washed p.  $\times$ . ii. of date-kernels toasted twenty in number, of gum p.  $\times$ . xii.

6. But that Collyrium claimed by Theodotus himself, which is named by some *achariston*, is of the same kind; viz. of castor, of Indian nard, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of lycium p.  $\times$ . =. of poppy tears the same quantity, of myrrh p.  $\times$ . ii. of saffron, of washed ceruse, of aloe, of each p.  $\times$ . iii. of washed cadmia in grains, of calcined

xx. stibis tantumdem; quibus aqua pluviatilis adjicitur.

7. Præter hæc, ex frequentissimis collyriis est id, quod quidam *κύθιον*, quidam a cinereo colore *τέφριον* appellant. Amyli, tragacanthæ, acaciæ succi, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. papaveris lacrimæ p.  $\times$ . ii. cerussæ elotæ p.  $\times$ . iv. spumæ argenti elotæ p.  $\times$ . viii. quæ æque ex aqua pluviatili conteruntur.

8. Euelpides autem, qui ætate nostra maximus fuit ocularius medicus, utebatur eo, quod ipse composuerat: *τρυνῶδες* nominabat. Castorei p.  $\times$ . =. lycii, nardi, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. croci, myrrhæ, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. æris combusti p.  $\times$ . viii. cadmiæ, et stibis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xii. acaciæ succi p.  $\times$ . xxvi. gummi tantumdem.

Quo gravior vero quæque inflammatio est, eo magis leniri medicamentum debet, adjecto vel albo ovi, vel muliebri lacte. At si neque medicus, neque medicamentum præsto est, sæpius utrumlibet horum in oculos penicillo ad id ipsum facto infusum, id malum

## ORDO.

xx. tantumdem stibis; quibus adjicitur pluviatilis aqua.

7. Præter hæc, id est ex frequentissimis collyriis, quod quidam appellant *κύθιον* (cuthion), quidam (appellant id) a cinereo colore *τέφριον* (tephrion). (Quod habet) amyli, tragacanthæ, succi acaciæ, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. lacrimæ papaveris p.  $\times$ . ii. elotæ cerussæ p.  $\times$ . iv. elotæ spumæ argenti p.  $\times$ . viii, quæ conteruntur æque ex pluviatili aqua.

8. Euelpides autem, qui fuit maximus ocularius medicus nostra ætate, utebatur eo, quod ipse composuerat: nominabat (id) *τρυνῶδες* (trugódes). (Constat ex his,) castorei p.  $\times$ . =. lycii, nardi, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. croci, myrrhæ, aloes, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. combusti æris p.  $\times$ . viii. cadmiæ, et stibis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xii. succi acaciæ p.  $\times$ . xxvi. tantumdem gummi.

Vero quo gravior quæque inflammatio est, eo, medicamentum debet magis leniri, vel albo ovi, vel muliebri lacte adjecto. At si neque medicus, neque medicamentum est præsto, sæpius utrumlibet horum (collyriorum) infusum in oculos, penicillo facto ad id ipsum, lenit id malum. Vero ubi

## TRANSLATION.

copper, of each p.  $\times$ . viii. of gum p.  $\times$ . xxvi. of acacia juice p.  $\times$ . xx. of antimony the like quantity; to which rain-water is to be added.

7. Besides these, one of the most common collyria is that which some call Cythion, others from its cineritious appearance call it Tephron. It contains of starch, tragacanth, acacia-juice, gum, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of poppy tears p.  $\times$ . ii. washed ceruse p.  $\times$ . iv. washed litharge p.  $\times$ . viii. these also are to be bruised with rain-water.

8. But Euelpides, who was the greatest eye-physician in our age, employed one which he had composed himself, and called it Trygódes. It contains castor p.  $\times$ . =. of lycium, of nard, of poppy tears, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of saffron, of myrrh, of aloe, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. calcined copper p.  $\times$ . viii. of cadmia, and of antimony, of each p.  $\times$ . xii. of acacia juice p.  $\times$ . xxvi. of gum, the like quantity.

The more violent any inflammation may be, the more lenient ought the medicines to be, which is effected by adding either the white of an egg, or woman's milk. But if there be neither physician, nor medicine at hand, either of these remedies applied to the eyes with a compress or little brush made for that purpose, frequently alleviates the disease. But when a patient has been relieved, and the

lenit. Ubi vero aliquis relevatus est, jamque cursus pituitæ constitit, reliquias fortasse leviores futuras discutiant balneum et vinum. Igitur lavari debet, leviter ante ex oleo perfricatus, diutiusque in cruribus et feminibus; multaque calida aqua fovere oculos; deinde per caput prius calida, tum egelida perfundi: a balneo cavere ne quo frigore afflatu lædatur: post hæc cibo paulo pleniore, quam ex eorum dierum consuetudine, uti, vitatis tamen omnibus pituitam extenuantibus; vinum bibere leve, subausterum, modice vetus, neque effuse, neque timide; ut neque crudititas ex eo, et tamen somnus fiat, lenianturque intus latentia acria.

Sed si quis in balneo sensit majorem oculorum perturbationem, quam attulerat; quod incidere iis solet, qui manente adhuc pituitæ cursu festinarunt; quamprimum discedere debet; nihil eo die vini assumere, cibi minus etiam, quam pridie: deinde cum primum satis pituita substitit, iterum ad usum balnei redire.

Solet tamen evenire nonnumquam

## ORDO.

aliquis est relevatus, que cursus pituitæ jam constitit, balneum et vinum fortasse discutiant leviores futuras reliquias. Igitur debet lavari, perfricatus ante leviter ex oleo, que diutius in cruribus et feminibus; que (debet) fovere oculos multa calida aqua; deinde (aqua) perfundi per caput, prius calida, tum egelida: cavere a balneo, ne lædatur quo frigore ve afflatu: post hæc, uti paulo pleniore cibo, quam ex consuetudine eorum dierum, tamen omnibus (cibis) extenuantibus pituitam vitatis; bibere leve, subausterum, modice vetus vinum neque effuse, neque timide, ut neque (sit) crudititas ex eo, et tamen fiat somnus, que latentia acria leniantur intus.

Sed si quis sensit majorem perturbationem oculorum in balneo, quam attulerat; quod solet incidere iis, qui festinarunt, cursu pituitæ adhuc manente; debet discedere quamprimum; (debet) assumere nihil vini eo die, etiam (assumere) minus cibi, quam pridie: deinde cum primum pituita substitit satis, iterum redire ad usum balnei.

Tamen nonnumquam solet evenire, sive vitio tempestatum,

## TRANSLATION.

discharge of the humour arrested, the bath and wine may carry off the slight relics which might continue. Therefore the patient ought to bathe, and be gently rubbed, first with oil, but longer on his legs and thighs than the rest of his body; to foment the eyes with plenty of warm water; afterwards to have it poured over the head, at first warm, then tepid: after the bath, let him be aware, lest he be injured by any cold or draught: after these things he should take a little more plentiful diet than formerly; yet all those things which are said to attenuate the discharge ought to be avoided; he should drink wine, but light, rather austere, moderately old, neither in excess, nor too sparingly, so that the former extreme may not produce indigestion, and yet by a just quantity sleep may be induced, and the latent acrid humours rendered more mild.

But if a patient have felt greater perturbation of the eyes in the bath, than he experienced on entering, (which is by no means a rare occurrence to those who have hastened to the bath, while the humour still continued to discharge,) he ought to depart as soon as possible; to take no wine on that day, and also less food than he did the day before: afterwards, as soon as the discharge of humour has sufficiently ceased, he may again resume the use of the bath.

But it sometimes happens, either from the unfavourable state of the atmo-



sive tempestatum vitio, sive corporis, ut pluribus diebus neque dolor, neque inflammatio, et minime pituitæ cursus finiatur. Quod ubi incidit, jamque ipsa vetustate res matura est, ab his eisdem auxilium petendum est, id est balneo ac vino. Hæc enim ut in recentibus malis aliena sunt, quia concitare ea possunt, et accendere; sic in veteribus, quæ nullis aliis auxiliis cesserunt, admodum efficacia esse consuerunt: videlicet hic quoque, ut alibi, cum secunda vana fuerint, contrariis adjuvantibus.

Sed ante tonderi ad cutem convenit: deinde in balneo aqua calida quamplurima caput atque oculos fovere: tum utrumque penicillo detergere, et ungere caput irino unguento; continereque in lectulo se, donec omnis calor, qui conceptus est, finiatur, desinatque sudor, qui necessario in capite collectus est: tum ad idem cibi vinique genus veniendum, sic, uti potiones meracæ sint; obtegendumque caput, et quiescendum.

Sæpe enim post hæc gravis somnus, sæpe sudor, sæpe alvi dejectio pituitæ cursum finit. Si leva-

## ORDO.

sive corporis, ut sit neque dolor, neque inflammatio pluribus diebus, et cursus pituitæ finiatur minime. Quod ubi incidit, que res est jam matura ipsa vetustate, auxilium est petendum ab his eisdem, id est, balneo ac vino. Enim ut hæc sunt aliena in recentibus malis, quia possunt concitare, et accendere ea; sic consuerunt esse admodum efficacia in veteribus (malis), quæ cesserunt nullis aliis auxiliis: videlicet hic quoque, ut alibi, cum secunda fuerint vana, contrariis adjuvantibus.

Sed convenit (caput) tonderi ad cutem ante: deinde fovere caput atque oculos quamplurima calida aqua in balneo: tum detergere utrumque penicillo, et ungere caput irino unguento; que continere se in lectulo, donec omnis calor, qui est conceptus, finiatur, que sudor qui est collectus necessario in capite desinat: tum (est) veniendum ad idem genus cibi que vini, sic uti potiones sint meracæ; que caput (est) obtegendum, et quiescendum.

Enim post hæc sæpe gravis somnus sæpe sudor, sæpe dejectio alvi finit cursum pituitæ. Si malum

## TRANSLATION.

sphere, or a bad habit of body, that for several days neither the pain, nor the inflammation, and least of all the discharge, ceases. When this does happen, and the disease is rendered mature by its age, relief is to be sought from the same remedies, that is, the bath and wine. For although these remedies are hurtful when the disease is recent or acute, inasmuch as they may excite or inflame them; yet in chronic cases, which have yielded to no other treatment, they have been very efficacious; and here too, as in other cases, when reputable remedies have been unsuccessfully tried, those of a contrary nature afforded relief.

First of all, the patient should have his hair cut close to the skin; afterwards foment the head and eyes with plenty of warm water in the bath: then wipe each with a compress, and anoint the head with iris ointment; and keep in bed, until all the heat acquired in the bath is gone off, and the perspiration cease, which was necessarily collected in the head; then the patient may return to the same kind of food and wine as recommended above, so that the latter be undiluted; the head must be covered and kept quiet.

For after these sometimes a sound sleep, or frequently a perspiration, or a purging of the bowels carries off the discharge of humour. If the disease be relieved,

tum malum est; quod aliquanto sæpius fit; per plures dies idem fieri oportet, donec ex toto sanitas restituatur. Si diebus iisdem alvus nihil reddit, ducenda est; quo magis superiores partes leventur.

Nonnumquam autem ingens inflammatio tanto impetu erumpit, ut oculos sua sede propellat: *πρόπτωσιν* id, quoniam oculi procidunt, Græci appellant. His utique, si vires patiuntur, sanguinem mitti; si id fieri non potest, alvum duci, longioremque inediam indici, necessarium est. Opus autem lenissimis medicamentis est: ideoque Cleonis collyrio quidam, quod ex duobus ante positum est, utuntur. Sed optimum est Nilei; neque de ullo magis inter omnes auctores convenit.

9. Id habet nardi Indici, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p. ℥. —. gummi p. ℥. i. croci p. ℥. ii. foliorum rosæ recentium p. ℥. iv. quæ vel aqua pluviali, vel vino levi, subaustero coquuntur. Neque alienum est, malicorium, vel sertulam Campanam ex vino coquere, deinde conterere; aut myrtam nigram cum rosæ foliis miscere;

## ORDO.

est levatum, quod fit aliquanto sæpius, oportet idem fieri per plures dies, donec sanitas restituatur ex toto. Si alvus reddit nihil iisdem diebus, est ducenda; quo superiores partes leventur magis.

Autem nonnumquam ingens inflammatio erumpit tanto impetu, ut propellat oculos sua sede: Græci appellant id *πρόπτωσιν* (proptosis), quoniam oculi procidunt. Est utique necessarium his, sanguinem mitti, si vires patiuntur; si id non potest fieri, (est necessarium,) alvum duci, quæ longiorem inediam indici. Autem est opus lenissimis medicamentis: quæ ideo quidam utuntur collyrio Cleonis, quod est positum ante ex duobus, (de quibus mentio facta est supra). Sed collyrium Nilei est optimum; neque de ullo (collyrium) convenit magis inter omnes auctores.

9. Id (collyrium) habet Indici nardi, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p. ℥. —. gummi p. ℥. i. croci p. ℥. ii. recentium foliorum rosæ p. ℥. iv. quæ vel coguntur (ex) pluviali aqua, vel levi subaustero vino. Neque est alienum, coquere malicorium, vel Campanam sertulam ex vino, deinde conterere; aut miscere nigram myrtam cum foliis rosæ; aut folia

## TRANSLATION.

which is more frequently the case, the same course ought to be pursued for several days, until the health be entirely restored. If on those days the alvine secretions be suppressed, an enema must be given, by which the superior parts may be the more relieved.

But sometimes an inflammation bursts forth of so violent a nature, that the eyes are propelled from their orbits: the Greeks call this Proptosis, because the eyes fall forwards. It is particularly necessary for the patient to lose blood, if the strength permit: if this cannot be done, the bowels must be glystered, and longer fasting enjoined. Now there will be a necessity for the mildest medicines in such a case; and on this account some use the collyrium of Cleon, being the first of the two above stated. But that of Nileus is the best, as all authors have agreed to give it the preference.

9. It consists of Indian nard, of opium, of each p. ℥. —. of gum p. ℥. i. of saffron p. ℥. ii. of fresh rose leaves p. ℥. iv. which are to be incorporated either with rain water, or with light wine somewhat rough. Neither would it be improper to boil pomegranate rind or melilot with wine, then to bruise it: or to mix black myrtle with rose leaves; or henbane leaves with yolk of boiled eggs; or farina

aut hyoseyami folia cum ovi cocti vitello; aut farinam cum acaciæ succo, vel passo, aut mulso: quibus si folia quoque papaveris adjiciuntur, aliquanto valentiora sunt.

Horum aliquo præparato, penicillo fovere oculos oportet, ex aqua calida expresso, in qua ante vel myrti vel rosæ folia decocta sint: deinde, ex illis aliquid imponi. Præter hæc ab occipitio, incisa cute, cucurbitula admovenda est.

Quod si per hæc restitutus oculus in sedem suam non est, eodemque modo prolapsus permanet, scire oportet, lumen esse amissum; deinde futurum, ut aut indurescat is, aut in pus vertatur. Si suppuratio se ostendit, ab eo angulo, qui tempori propior est, incidi oculus debet; ut, effuso pure, inflammatio ac dolor finiatur, et intus tunicæ residant, quo minus fœda postea facies sit: utendum deinde vel iisdem collyriis est ex lacte aut ovo; vel croco, cui album ovi misceatur.

At si induruit, et sic emortuus est, ne in pus verteretur, quatenus fœde prominebit, excidendum erit, sic, ut hamo summa tunica apprehendatur,

#### ORDO.

hyoseyami cum vitello cocti ovi; aut farinam cum succo acaciæ, vel passo, aut mulso: quibus, si quoque folia papaveris adjiciuntur, sunt aliquanto valentiora.

Aliquo horum præparato, oportet fovere oculos penicillo, expresso ex calida aqua, in qua folia vel myrti vel rosæ sint decocta ante: deinde aliquid ex his imponi. Præter hæc, cute incisa ab occipitio, cucurbitula est admovenda.

Quod si oculus non est restitutus per hæc in suam sedem, que prolapsus permanet eodem modo, oportet scire, lumen esse amissum; deinde futurum, ut aut is indurescat, aut vertatur in pus. Si suppuratio ostendit se ab eo angulo, qui est propior tempori, oculus debet incidi; ut pure effuso, inflammatio ac dolor finiatur, et tunicæ residant intus, quo postea facies sit minus fœda: deinde est utendum iisdem collyriis vel ex lacte aut ovo; vel (est utendum) croco, cui album ovi misceatur.

At si (oculus) induruit, et sic est emortuus, quatenus prominebit fœde, erit excidendum, ne verteretur in pus, sic, ut summa tunica

#### TRANSLATION.

with acacia juice, or with raisin wine, or hydromel; to which if poppy leaves be added also, they will render it somewhat more efficacious.

Some of these being prepared, let the eyes be fomented first with a decoction of myrtle or rose leaves, by a dossil of lint squeezed out of it: afterwards the medicine is to be applied. Besides these applications, the skin on the occiput must be incised, and a cupping-instrument be applied.

But if the eye have not been restored to its situation by these means, and still remains protruding in the same manner, we may conclude that the sight is lost; and that the eye will become hard, or be converted into pus. If suppuration manifest itself in the temporal canthus, the eye ought to be incised, that the matter may escape, the inflammation and pain may cease, and the membranous coats of the eye fall inwards, by which the face may be less unseemly afterwards: then the same collyria are to be used with milk or egg; or saffron with which the white of eggs are mixed.

But if the eye have become indurated, and mortified, it will be necessary to remove the foul dead matter as far as it projects, lest it should be converted into pus: thus, the external tunic is to be seized with a hook, (*tenaculum*), and then



infra id deinde scalpellus incidat : tum eadem medicamenta erunt conjicienda, donec omnis dolor finiatur. Iisdem medicamentis in eo quoque oculo utendum est, qui primum procidit, deinde per plura loca fissus est.

10. Solent etiam carbunculi ex inflammatione nasci, nonnumquam in ipsis oculis, nonnumquam in palpebris: et in his ipsis, modo ab interiore, modo ab exteriori parte. In hoc casu alvus ducenda est; cibus minuendus; lac potui dandum, ut acria, quæ læserunt, leniantur. Quod ad cataplasmata et medicamenta pertinet, iis utendum, quæ adversus inflammationes proposita sunt: atque hic quoque Nilei collyrium optimum est. Si tamen carbunculus in exteriori palpebræ parte est, ad cataplasmata aptissimum est lini semen ex mulso coctum; aut, si id non est, tritici farina eodem modo cocta.

11. Pustulæ quoque ex inflammatione interdum oriuntur. Quod si inter initia protinus incidit, magis etiam servanda sunt, quæ de sanguine et quiete supra proposui: sin serius, quam ut sanguis mitti possit, alvus tamen

## ORDO.

apprehendatur hamo, deinde scalpellus incidat id infra: tum eadem medicamenta erunt conjicienda, donec omnis dolor finiatur. Quoque est utendum iisdem medicamentis in eo oculo, qui primum procidit, deinde est fissus per plura loca.

10. Carbunculi etiam solent nasci ex inflammatione, nonnumquam in oculis ipsis, nonnumquam in palpebris: et in his ipsis, modo ab interiore parte, modo ab exteriori (parte). Alvus est ducenda in hoc casu; cibus (est) minuendus; lac (est) dandum potui, ut acria, quæ læserunt, leniantur. Quod pertinet ad cataplasmata et medicamenta, (est) utendum iis, quæ sunt proposita adversus inflammationes: atque hic quoque collyrium Nilei est optimum. Si tamen carbunculus est in exteriori parte palpebræ, semen lini coctum ex mulso, est aptissimum ad cataplasmata; aut si id non est, farina tritici cocta eodem modo.

11. Pustulæ quoque interdum oriuntur ex inflammatione. Quod si incidit protinus inter initia, etiam (ea) sunt servanda magis, quæ proposui supra de sanguine et quiete: sin serius, quam ut sanguis possit mitti, tamen alvus est

## TRANSLATION.

an incision made below with the scalpel; afterwards the same medicines are to be injected till the pain be entirely gone. The same remedies are to be used to an eye that first protrudes, and afterwards bursts in several places.

10. Carbuncles are not unfrequently the result of inflammation. Sometimes in the eyes themselves, sometimes in the eye-lids: *when in the palpebræ*, they are sometimes on the inside, at other times on the outside. In this case, the bowels must be glystered: the food diminished, milk given for drink, that the acrid offending humours may be attenuated. With respect to cataplasms and medicines, we must employ those which have been proposed for inflammations: and here also the collyrium of Nileus is the best. If, however, the carbuncle be on the external part of the eyelid, linseed boiled with hydromel is the most fit for a catapasm, or, if this is not to be had, wheat flour boiled in the same manner.

11. Sometimes pustules also arise from inflammations. Now, if this happen at the earliest stage, those precepts which I have given above, concerning depletion and rest, must be even still more rigidly observed: but if too far advanced to admit of blood-letting, yet the bowels are to be glystered: if any circumstance

ducenda est: si id quoque aliqua res inhibet, utique victus ratio servanda est. Medicamentis autem hic quoque lenibus opus est, quale Nilei, quale Cleonis est.

12. Id quoque, quod Philaethes vocatur, huic aptum est. Myrrhæ, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. plumbi eloti, terræ Samiæ, quæ ἀστὴρ vocatur, tragacanthæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. stibis cocti, amyli, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . vi. spodii eloti, cerussæ elotæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . viii. quæ aqua pluviatili excipiuntur. Usus collyrii, vel ex ovo, vel ex lacte est.

13. Ex pustulis ulcera interdum fiunt; eaque recentia æque lenibus medicamentis nutrienda sunt, et iisdem fere, quæ supra in pustulis posui. Fit quoque proprie ad hæc, quod διὰ λιβάνου vocatur. Habet æris combusti et eloti, papaveris lacrimæ frictæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. spodii eloti, thuris, stibis combusti et eloti, myrrhæ, gummi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii.

14. Evenit etiam, ut oculi, vel ambo, vel singuli, minores fiant, quam esse naturaliter debeant: idque et acer pituitæ cursus in lippitudine efficit, et

#### ORDO.

ducenda: si aliqua res inhibet id quoque, utique ratio victus est servanda. Autem hic quoque est opus lenibus medicamentis, quale (collyrium) Nilei est, quale (collyrium) Cleonis (est).

12. Quoque id, quod vocatur Philaethes, est aptum huic, Myrrhæ, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. eloti plumbi, Samiæ terræ, quæ vocatur ἀστὴρ (aster), tragacanthæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. cocti stibis, amyli, singulorum p. vi. eloti spodii, elotæ cerussæ, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . viii. quæ excipiuntur pluviatili aqua. Est usus collyrii vel ex ovo, vel ex lacte.

13. Ulcera interdum fiunt ex pustulis; que ea recentia sunt æque nutrienda lenibus, et fere iisdem medicamentis, quæ posui supra in pustulis. (Id) quoque fit proprie ad hæc, quod vocatur διὰ λιβάνου (dia libanou). Habet combusti et eloti æris, frictæ lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. eloti spodii, thuris, combusti et eloti stibis, myrrhæ, gummi, singulorum p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii.

14. Evenit etiam, ut oculi vel ambo, vel singuli fiant minores, quam debeant esse naturaliter: que et acer cursus pituitæ in lippitudine

#### TRANSLATION.

prevent this, a strict regimen at least must be observed. Now here also it will be necessary to employ mild applications, such as that of Nileus, or Cleon's.

12. That collyrium which is called Philaethes, is also proper for this malady. Take of myrrh, of opium, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. of washed lead, of Samian earth, which is called Aster, of tragacanth, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. of burnt antimony (1), of starch, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . iv. of washed spodium, of washed ceruse, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . viii. these are to be incorporated with rain-water. This collyrium is to be used mixed either with an egg or milk.

13. Ulcers are sometimes generated from pustules; and these, when recent, ought to be treated with the same mild medicines, those commonly which I have prescribed above for pustules. That which is called Dia Libanou, is made expressly for these. It consists of copper calcined and washed, of fried poppy-tears, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . i. of washed spodium, of frankincense, calcined and washed antimony, of myrrh, of gum, of each p.  $\mathcal{X}$ . ii.

14. It happens also, that either one or both eyes become less than they ought to be naturally: and this may result from an acrid discharge of humour in lippitudo,

continuati fletus, et ictus parum bene curati. In his quoque iisdem lenibus medicamentis ex muliebri lacte utendum est: cibus vero iis, qui maxime corpus alere, et implere consuerunt: vitandaque omni modo causa, quæ lacrimas excitet, curaque domesticorum: quorum etiam si quid tale incidit, ejus notitiæ subtrahendum. Atque acrida quoque medicamenta, et acres cibi non alio magis nomine his nocent, quam quod lacrimas movent.

15. Genus quoque vitii est, qui inter pilos palpebrarum pediculi nascuntur: *φθειρίασιν* Græci nominant. Quod cum ex malo corporis habitu fiat, raro non ultra procedit: sed fere tempore interposito pituitæ cursus acerrimus sequitur; exulceratisque vehementer oculis, aciem quoque ipsam corrumpit.

His alvus ducenda est; caput ad cutem tondendum, diuque quotidie jejunis perfricandum: his ambulationibus aliisque exercitationibus diligenter utendum; gargarizandum ex mulso, in quo nepeta et pinguis ficus decocta sit; sæpe in balneo multa calida aqua fovendum caput; vitandi acres cibi; lacte vinoque pingui utendum; bibendumque

## ORDO.

pituidine, et continuati fletus et ictus parum bene curati efficit id. Est quoque utendum in his, iisdem lenibus medicamentis ex muliebri lacte: vero (est utendum) iis cibis, qui consuerunt maxime alere et implere corpus; quæ causa, quæ excitet lacrimas, quæ cura domesticorum est vitanda omni modo; etiam si quid tale quorum incidit, est subtrahendum notitiæ ejus. Atque quoque acrida medicamenta, et acres cibi non nocent his magis alio nomine, quam quod movent lacrimas.

15. Quoque est genus vitii, quæ pediculi nascuntur inter pilos palpebrarum: Græci nominant (id) *φθειρίασιν* (phtheiriasis). Quod cum fiat ex malo habitu corporis, raro non procedit ultra: sed fere tempore interposito, acerrimus cursus pituitæ sequitur; quæ oculis exulceratis vehementer, quoque corrumpit aciem ipsam.

Alvus est ducenda his; caput est tondendum ad cutem, quæ (est) perfricandum diu quotidie jejunis: his, (est) diligenter utendum ambulationibus, quæ aliis exercitationibus; (est) gargarizandum ex mulso, in quo nepeta et pinguis ficus sit decocta; caput (est) fovendum sæpe in balneo multa calida aqua; acres cibi (sunt) vitandi; (est) utendum lacte quæ pingui vi-

## TRANSLATION.

or from constant weeping, or from blows badly treated. In such cases the same gentle medicines are to be employed, mixed up with woman's milk, and such food as usually nourishes and fills up the body most: any circumstance having a tendency to excite tears, and all domestic anxiety must be carefully avoided; should any such happen, it must be withheld from the patient's knowledge. All acrid things, either in medicine or food, are injurious to these patients, inasmuch as they excite a secretion of the lachrymal fluid.

15. There is also another kind of complaint in which lice are generated amongst the hairs of the eye-lashes. The Greeks have named it Phtheiriasis. As this arises from a bad habit of body, the malady is seldom restricted to that part: but generally, after a certain time, a most acrid running of humour follows; and the eyes being excessively ulcerated, it even destroys the sight itself.

In these cases the bowels must be opened, the head shaved to the skin, the patients must be rubbed fasting, for a long time daily; diligent walking, with other exercises enjoined: a gargle with a decoction of catmint and mellow figs, in hydromel to be used: they should foment the head in the bath with plenty of warm water; acrid food to be avoided; they should live on good milk and generous wine;



liberalius, quam edendum est. Medicamenta vero intus quidem lenia danda sunt; ne quid acrioris pituitæ concitent: super ipsos vero pediculos alia, quæ necare eos, et prohibere, ne similes nascantur, possint. Ad id ipsum spumæ nitri p. ℥. i. sandarachæ p. ℥. i. uvæ taminiae p. ℥. i. simul teruntur, adjiciturque vetus oleum pari portione, atque acetum, donec mellis ei crassitudo sit.

16. Hactenus oculorum morbi lenibus medicamentis nutriuntur. Genera deinde alia sunt, quæ diversam curationem desiderant; fereque ex inflammationibus nata, sed finitis quoque his manentia. Atque inprimis in quibusdam perseverat tenuis pituitæ cursus. Quibus alvus ab inferiore parte evocanda est, demendumque aliquid ex cibo. Neque alienum est, illini frontem compositione Andreæ: quæ habet gummi p. ℥. i. cerussæ, stibis, singulorum p. ℥. ii. spumæ argenti coctæ et elotæ p. ℥. iv. Sed et ea spuma ex aqua pluviatili coquitur, et arida hæc medicamenta ex succo myrti conteruntur.

His illita fronte, cataplasma quoque superinjiciendum est ex farina, quæ

## ORDO.

no; que est bibendum liberalius, quam (est) edendum. Vero quidem lenia medicamenta sunt danda intus; ne concitent quid acrioris pituitæ: vero alia (medicamenta) imponantur super pediculos ipsos, quæ possint necare, et prohibere eos, ne similes nascantur. (Hæc applicentur) ad id ipsum, spumæ nitri p. ℥. i. sandarachæ p. ℥. i. taminiae uvæ p. ℥. i. teruntur simul, que vetus oleum, atque acetum adjicitur pari portione, donec crassitudo mellis sit ei.

16. Hactenus, morbi oculorum nutriuntur lenibus medicamentis. Deinde sunt alia genera, quæ desiderant diversam curationem; fereque nata ex inflammationibus, sed quoque manentia his finitis. Atque inprimis, tenuis cursus pituitæ perseverat in quibusdam. Quibus alvus est evocanda ab inferiore parte, que aliquid (est) demendum ex cibo. Neque est alienum, frontem illini compositione Andreæ; quæ habet gummi p. ℥. i. cerussæ, stibis, singulorum p. ℥. ii. coctæ et elotæ spumæ argenti p. ℥. iv. Sed et ea spuma coquitur ex pluviatili aqua, et hæc arida medicamenta conteruntur ex succo myrti.

Fronte illita his, cataplasma quoque est superinjiciendum ex

## TRANSLATION.

and drink more freely than eat. But gentle medicines are to be given internally also, that they may not generate any acrid humour; but over the vermin other applications will be necessary, which may destroy them, and prevent their further production. For this purpose, take of the spume of nitre p. ℥. i. of sandarach p. ℥. i. of stavesacre p. ℥. i. are powdered together, and then equal portions of old oil and vinegar are added to it, until the whole becomes of the thickness of honey.

16. Thus far the diseases of the eyes are treated by mild applications. There are other kinds which require a different treatment, generally arising from inflammations, but remaining even after these inflammations have terminated. In the first place, a discharge of the humour continues. In such patients, the bowels must be purged by enemata, and their food diminished. Neither is it improper to anoint the forehead with the composition of Andreas; which consists of gum p. ℥. i. of ceruse, of antimony, of each p. ℥. ii. of litharge boiled and washed p. ℥. iv. But the litharge must be boiled in rain water, and dry ingredients bruised with myrtle juice.

These being applied to the forehead, a farinacious cataplasma, made with cold

frigida aqua coacta sit, cuique aut acaciæ succus, aut cupressus adjecta sit. Cucurbitula quoque, inciso vertice, recte accommodatur; aut ex temporibus sanguis emittitur. Inungi vero eo debet, quod habet squamæ æris, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. cervini cornu combusti et eloti, plumbi eloti, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. iv. thuris p. ℥. xii. Hoc collyrium quia cornu habet, διὰ κέρατος nominant. Quotiescumque non adjicio, quod genus humoris adjiciendum sit, aquam intelligi volo.

17. Ad idem Euelpidis, quod μεμιγμένον nominabat. In eo papaveris lacrimæ, et albi piperis, singulæ uncia sunt, gummi libra, æris combusti p. ℥. i. s. Inter has autem curationes, post intermissionem aliquam, prosunt balneum et vinum. Cumque omnibus lippientibus vitandi cibi sint, qui extenuant; tum præcipue, quibus tenuis humor diu fertur. Quod si jam fastidium est eorum, quæ pituitam crassiorrem reddunt, sicut in hoc genere materiæ maxime promptum est; confugiendum est ad ea, quæ, quia ventrem, corpus quoque adstringunt.

## ORDO.

farina, quæ sit coacta frigida aqua, que cui succus aut acaciæ, aut cupressus sit adjecta. Quoque cucurbitula accommodatur recte, vertice inciso; aut sanguis emittitur ex temporibus. Vero debet inungi eo, quod habet squamæ æris, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p. ℥. i. combusti et eloti cervini cornu, eloti plumbi, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. iv. thuris p. ℥. xii. Hoc collyrium, quia habet cornu, nominant διὰ κέρατος (dia keratus). Quotiescumque non adjicio, quod genus humoris sit adjiciendum, volo aquam intelligi.

17. (Collyrium) Euelpidis, quod nominatur μεμιγμένον (memigmenon), (est) ad idem. In eo sunt singulæ uncia lacrimæ papaveris, et albi piperis, libra gummi, combusti æris p. ℥. i. s. Autem inter has curationes, balneum et vinum prosunt post aliquam intermissionem. Que cum cibi qui extenuant, sint vitandi omnibus lippientibus; tum præcipue, quibus tenuis humor fertur diu. Quod si est jam fastidium eorum, quæ reddunt pituitam crassiorem, sicut est maxime promptum in hoc genere materiæ; est confugiendum ad ea, quæ, quia adstringunt ventrem, quoque (adstringunt) corpus.

## TRANSLATION.

water, to which may be added either acacia-juice, or cypress, is to be laid over all. It is also proper to apply the cupping-glass, with incision, to the top of the head; or to take blood from the temples. But the eye ought to be anointed with that composition, which contains of copper scales, of poppy tears, of each p. ℥. i. of calcined and washed hart's-horn, washed lead, of gum, of each p. ℥. iv. of frankincense p. ℥. xii. This collyrium has been called *Diakeratos*, because it contains horn. Every time I omit to mention what kind of fluid is to be added, I would be understood to mean water.

17. For the same purpose is that collyrium of Euelpides which he termed *Memigmenon*. In it there are of poppy tears, and of white pepper, an ounce of each, of gum one pound, of calcined copper p. ℥. i. s. But amongst these treatments, the bath and wine do good at intervals. Now since attenuating food should be avoided by all those afflicted with lippitudo; then so much the more necessary by those who may have a chronic discharge of thin humour. But if they be nauseated with such food as generates a thicker humour, as is most common in this kind of food, we must have recourse to that, which not only astringes the bowels, but braces up the constitution also.

18. At ulcera, si cum inflammatione finita non sunt, aut supercrescentia, aut sordida, aut cava, aut certe vetera esse consuerunt. Ex his supercrescentia collyrio, quod *μεμιγμένον* vocatur, optime reprimuntur. Sordida purgantur et eodem, et eo, quod *σμίλιον* nominatur.

19. Habet æruginis p.  $\times$ . iv. gummi tantundem, ammoniaci, minii Sinopici, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xvi. quæ quidam ex aqua, quidam, quo vehementiora sint, ex aceto terunt.

20. Id quoque Euelpidis, quod Phynona appellabat, huic utile est. Croci p.  $\times$ . i. papaveris lacrimæ, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. æris combusti et eloti, myrrhæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. piperis albi p.  $\times$ . vi. Sed ante lenitum hoc inungendum est.

21. Id quoque ejusdem, quod Sphæ-  
rion nominabat, eodem valet. Lapidis hæmatitis eloti p.  $\times$ . i. =. piperis grana sex, cadmiæ elotæ, myrrhæ, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. croci p.  $\times$ . iv. gummi p.  $\times$ . viii. quæ cum vino Aminæo conteruntur.

22. Liquidum quoque medicamentum ad idem componebat, in quo erant hæc: æruginis p.  $\times$ . =. misy com-

## ORDO.

18. At ulcera, si non sunt finita cum inflammatione, consuerunt esse aut supercrescentia, aut sordida, aut cava, aut certe vetera. Ex his supercrescentia reprimuntur optime collyrio, quod vocatur *μεμιγμένον*. Sordida purgantur et eodem (collyrio), et eo, quod nominatur *σμίλιον* (smilion).

19. (Smilion) habet æruginis p.  $\times$ . iv. tantundem gummi, ammoniaci, Sinopici minii, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xvi. quæ, quidam terunt ex aqua, quidam, quo vehementiora sint, (terunt) ex aceto.

20. Quoque id Euelpidis, quod appellabat Phynona, est utile huic. (Constat) croci p.  $\times$ . i. lacrimæ papaveris, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. combusti et eloti æris, myrrhæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. albi piperis p.  $\times$ . vi. Sed lenitum ante hoc est inungendum.

21. Quoque id ejusdem, quod nominabat Sphæ-  
rion, valet eodem. (Quod habet) eloti hæmatitis lapidis p.  $\times$ . i. =. sex grana piperis, elotæ cadmiæ, myrrhæ, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. croci p.  $\times$ . iv. gummi p.  $\times$ . viii. quæ conteruntur cum Aminæo vino.

22. Componebat quoque liquidum medicamentum ad idem, in quo erant hæc: æruginis p.  $\times$ . =.

## TRANSLATION.

18. But if the ulcers do not disappear with the inflammation, they generally become fungous, or foul, or deep, or at least inveterate. These fungous growths are best repressed by that collyrium which is called *Memigmenon*. The foul ones are cleansed both by the same, and by that which is termed *Smilion*.

19. This consists of verdigris p.  $\times$ . iv. of gum as much, of ammoniacum, of Sino-  
pian vermilion, of each p.  $\times$ . xvi, which some rub up with water; some with vinegar, by which it becomes more energetic.

20. That also of Euelpides, which he called Phynon, is useful in this case: of saffron p.  $\times$ . i. of poppy tears, of gum, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of copper calcined and washed, of myrrh, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. of white pepper p.  $\times$ . vi. But this application must be made more mild before it is used.

21. There is another by the same author which he named Sphæ-  
rion, possessing the same properties: of washed blood-stone p.  $\times$ . i. =. of pepper six grains, of washed cadmia, of myrrh, of poppy tears, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of saffron p.  $\times$ . iv. of gum p.  $\times$ . viii. which are to be bruised with Aminæan wine.

22. He also compounded a liquid medicine for the same purpose, in which were the following ingredients: of verdigris p.  $\times$ . =, of burnt misy, of sulphate of cop-



busti, atramenti sutorii, cinnamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. croci, nardi, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. =. myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . ii. æris combusti p.  $\times$ . iii. cineris ex odoribus p.  $\times$ . iv. piperis grana xv. Hæc ex vino austero teruntur; deinde cum passi tribus heminis decoquantur, donec corpus unum sit: idque medicamentum vetustate efficacius fit.

23. Cava vero ulcera commodissime implent ex iis, quæ supra posita sunt, Sphærian, et id, quod Philalethes vocatur. Idem Sphærian vetustis ulceribus, et vix ad cicatricem venientibus optime succurrit.

24. Est etiam collyrium, quod cum ad plura valeat, plurimum tamen proficere in his ulceribus videtur: refertur ad Hermonem auctorem. Habet piperis longi p.  $\times$ . i. =. albi p.  $\times$ . cinnamomi, costi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. atramenti sutorii, nardi, casia, castorei, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. gallæ p.  $\times$ . v. myrrhæ, croci, thuris, lycii, cerussæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . viii. papaveris lacrimæ p.  $\times$ . xii. aloes, æris combusti, cadmiæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xvi. acaciæ, stibis, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xxv.

## ORDO.

combusti misy, sutorii atramenti, cinnamomi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. croci, nardi, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. =. myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . ii. combusti æris p.  $\times$ . iii. cineris ex odoribus p.  $\times$ . iv. xx grana piperis. Hæc teruntur ex austero vino; deinde decoquantur cum tribus heminis passi, donec sit unum corpus: que id medicamentum fit efficacius vetustate.

23. Vero Sphærian, et id, quod vocatur Philalethes implent cava ulcera commodissime ex iis quæ sunt posita supra. Idem Sphærian succurrit optime vetustis ulceribus, et vix venientibus ad cicatricem.

24. Est etiam collyrium, quod cum valeat ad plura, tamen videtur proficere plurimum in his ulceribus: refertur ad Hermonem auctorem. Habet longi piperis p.  $\times$ . i. =. albi (piperis) p.  $\times$ . cinnamomi, costi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. sutorii atramenti, nardi, casia, castorei, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. gallæ p.  $\times$ . v. myrrhæ, croci, thuris, lycii, cerussæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . viii. lacrimæ papaveris p.  $\times$ . xii. aloes, combusti æris, cadmiæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xvi. acaciæ, stibis, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . xxv.

## TRANSLATION.

per, of cinnamon, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of saffron, of nard, of poppy tears, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of myrrh, p.  $\times$ . ii. of calcined copper, p.  $\times$ . iii. of the ashes of aromatic herbs, p.  $\times$ . iv. of pepper xv grains. These are to be bruised with austere wine, and then boiled with three heminæ of raisin-wine, until they unite in one body, and this medicine becomes more efficacious by keeping.

23. The collyrium of Philalethes, and that which is named Sphærian as above, are the most effectual for incarnating the deep ulcers of the eyes. The same sphærian is best adapted to old ulcers, and those which are difficult to cicatrize.

24. There is a collyrium ascribed to Hermon, which succeeds in many diseases, yet it appears to be most useful in ulcers of the eye. It contains, of long pepper, p.  $\times$ . =. of white pepper p.  $\times$ . of cinnamon, of costum, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of sulphate of copper, of nard, of cassia, of castoreum, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of galls, p.  $\times$ . v. of myrrh, of saffron, of frankincense, of lycium, of ceruse, of each p.  $\times$ . viii. of poppy tears, p.  $\times$ . xii. of aloes, of calcined copper, of cadmia, of each, p.  $\times$ . xvi. of acacia, of antimony, of gum, of each p.  $\times$ . xxv.

25. Factæ vero ex ulceribus cicatrices duobus vitiis periclitantur; ne aut cavæ, aut crassæ sint. Si cavæ sunt, potest eas implere id, quod Sphærion vocari dixi; vel id, quod Asclepios nominatur. Habet papaveris lacrimæ p. ℥. ii. sagapeni, opopanax, singulorum p. ℥. iii. æruginis p. ℥. iv. gummi p. ℥. viii. piperis p. ℥. xii. cadmiæ elotæ, cerussæ, singulorum p. ℥. xvi. At si crassæ cicatrices sunt, extenuat vel Smilion, vel Canopite collyrium; quod habet cinnamomi, acaciæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. cadmiæ elotæ, croci, myrrhæ, papaveris lacrimæ, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. ii. piperis albi, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. iii. æris combusti p. ℥. ix. Vel Euelpidis Pyxinum, quod ex his constat: salis fossilis p. ℥. iv. ammoniaci thymiamatis p. ℥. viii. papaveris lacrimæ p. ℥. xii. cerussæ p. ℥. xv. piperis albi, croci Siculi, singulorum p. ℥. xxxii. gummi p. ℥. xiii. cadmiæ elotæ p. ix. Maxime tamen tollere cicatricem videtur id, quod habet gummi p. ℥. =. æruginis p. ℥. i. crocomagmatis p. ℥. iv.

26. Est etiam genus inflammationis, in qua, si cui tument ac distenduntur

## ORDO.

25. Vero cicatrices factæ ex ulceribus periclitantur duobus vitiis; ne sint aut cavæ, aut crassæ. Si sint cavæ, id quod dixi vocari Sphærion, potest implere eas, vel id, quod nominatur Asclepios. Habet lacrimæ papaveris p. ℥. ii. sagapeni, opopanax, singulorum p. ℥. iii. æruginis p. ℥. iv. gummi p. ℥. viii. piperis p. ℥. xii. elotæ cadmiæ, cerussæ, singulorum p. ℥. xvi. At si cicatrices sunt crassæ, vel Smilion, vel Canopite collyrium extenuat; quod habet cinnamomi, acaciæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. elotæ cadmiæ, croci, myrrhæ, lacrimæ papaveris, gummi, singulorum p. ℥. ii. albi piperis, thuris, singulorum p. ℥. iii. combusti æris p. ℥. ix. Vel Pixinum Euelpidis, quod constat ex his: fossilis salis p. ℥. iv. thymiamatis ammoniaci p. ℥. viii. lacrimæ papaveris p. ℥. xii. cerussæ p. ℥. xv. albi piperis, Siculi croci, singulorum p. ℥. xxxii. gummi p. ℥. xiii. elotæ cadmiæ p. ℥. ix. Tamen id videtur maxime tollere cicatricem, quod habet gummi p. ℥. =. æruginis p. ℥. i. crocomagmatis p. ℥. iv.

26. Est etiam genus inflammationis, in qua, si oculi cui tument ac

## TRANSLATION.

25. The cicatrices formed consequent upon ulcers are liable to two inconveniences; they may be either concave or elevated. If they be concave, that which I have named Sphærion, is capable of filling them up, or that which is named Asclepios. It contains of poppy tears, p. ℥. ii. of sagapenon, of opopanax, of each p. ℥. iii. of verdigris p. ℥. iv. of gum, p. ℥. viii. of pepper, p. ℥. xii. of washed cadmia, of ceruse, of each, p. ℥. xvi. But if the scars be thick, either the smilion or Canopite collyrium attenuates them: containing of cinnamon, of acacia, of each p. ℥. i. of washed cadmia, of saffron, of myrrh, of poppy tears, of gum, of each p. ℥. ii. of white pepper, of frankincense, of each p. ℥. iii. of calcined copper, p. ℥. ix. Or the pyximum of Euelpides, which consists of the following ingredients: of fossil salt p. ℥. iv. of gum ammoniacum p. ℥. viii. of poppy tears p. ℥. xii. of ceruse, p. ℥. xv. of white pepper, of Sicilian saffron, of each p. ℥. xxxii. of gum, p. ℥. xiii. of washed cadmia p. ℥. ix. Yet this composition seems to be the best for removing a cicatrix, viz. of gum p. ℥. =. of verdigris, p. ℥. i. of saffron lees, p. ℥. iv.

26. There is also another kind of inflammation, in which, if the eyes of the pa-

cum dolore oculi, sanguinem ex fronte mitti necessarium est; multaque aqua calida caput atque oculos fovere; gargarizare ex lenticula, vel ex fici cremore; inungi acribus medicamentis, quæ supra comprehensa sunt; maximeque eo, quod Sphæron nominatur, quod lapidem hæmatiten habet. Atque alia quoque utilia sunt, quæ ad extenuandam aspritudinem fiunt; de qua protinus dicam.

27. Hæc autem inflammationem oculorum fere sequitur; interdum major, interdum levior. Nonnumquam etiam ex aspritudine lippitudo fit; ipsam deinde aspritudinem auget, fitque ea in aliis brevis, in aliis longa, et quæ vix unquam finiatur.

In hoc genere valetudinis quidam crassas, durasque palpebras, et ficulneo folio, et asperata specillo, et interdum scalpello eradunt; versasque quotidie medicamentis suffricant. Quæ neque nisi in magna vetustaque aspritudine, neque sæpe facienda sunt: nam melius eodem ratione victus et idoneis medicamentis pervenitur. Ergo exercitationibus utemur, et balneo frequentiore; multaque oculos aqua calida fo-

## ORDO.

distenduntur cum dolore, est necessarium sanguinem mitti ex fronte; que fovere caput atque oculos, (cum) multa calida aqua; gargarizare ex lenticula, vel ex cremore fici: inungi acribus medicamentis, quæ sunt comprehensa supra; que maxime eo, quod nominatur Sphæron, quod habet hæmatiten lapidem. Atque quoque alia sunt utilia, quæ fiunt ad extenuandam aspritudinem; de qua dicam protinus.

27. Hæc (aspritudo) autem fere sequitur inflammationem oculorum; interdum major, interdum levior. Nonnumquam etiam lippitudo fit ex aspritudine; deinde auget aspritudinem ipsam, que fit ea brevis in aliis, longa in aliis, et quæ vix finiatur unquam.

In hoc genere valetudinis, quidam eradunt crassas que duras palpebras, et ficulneo folio, et asperato specillo, et interdum scalpello; que suffricant versas (palpebras), quotidie medicamentis. Quæ sunt neque facienda sæpe, neque nisi in magna que vetusta aspritudine: nam pervenitur melius eodem ratione victus et idoneis medicamentis. Ergo utimur exercitationibus, et (utimur) frequentiore balneo; que fovebimus oculos multa calida aqua: sumemus

## TRANSLATION.

tient be swollen and distended by pain, it will be necessary to take blood from the forehead; and to foment the head and eyes with plenty of warm water; to gargle with lentils, or with the cream of figs: to be anointed with those acrid medicines which were mentioned above: and particularly with that one which is named Sphæron, and which contains blood-stone. There are also others useful in relieving asperities, of which I shall speak presently.

27. Now this asperity is generally the consequence of inflammation of the eyes: sometimes it is greater, at other times more slight. Sometimes it occasions a lippitudo; then the asperity itself is augmented: in some it is brief, in others long, and then scarcely ever to be cured.

Some *Oculists* scrape the thick and indurated palpebræ in this disorder with a fig-leaf, a serrated probe (2), and sometimes with the scalpel: and everting the eye-lids, they apply the medicines daily to their under surfaces. These means are not to be employed, except in extensive and inveterate roughness, and even then, not too often: for the same object is better attained by a regulated diet, and proper medicines. Therefore we should employ exercise, and the bath more frequently; we should also foment the eyes with abundance of warm water, and



vebimus: cibos autem sumemus acres et extenuantes; at medicamentum id, quod Cæsarianum vocatur. Habet atramenti sutorii p.  $\times$ . i. misy p.  $\times$ . =. piperis albi p.  $\times$ . =. papaveris lacrimæ, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. cadmiæ lotæ p.  $\times$ . iii. stibis p.  $\times$ . vi. Satisque constat, hoc collyrium adversus omne genus oculorum valetudinis idoneum esse; exceptis iis, quæ lenibus nutriuntur.

28. Id quoque, quod Hieracis nominatur, ad aspritudinem potest. Habet myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . i. ammoniaci thymiamatis p.  $\times$ . ii. æruginis rasæ p.  $\times$ . iv. Ad idem idoneum est etiam id, quod Canopite, et id quod Smilion vocatur, et id quod Pyxinum, et id quod Sphærion. Si composita medicamenta non adsunt, felle caprino, vel quam optimo melle satis commode aspritudo curatur.

29. Est etiam genus aridæ lippitudinis: *ξηροφθαλμίαν* Græci appellant. Neque tument, neque fluunt oculi, sed rubent tantum, et cum dolore quodam graves sunt, et noctu præ gravi pituita inhærescunt: quantoque minor generi huic impetus, tanto finis minus expe-

## ORDO.

autem acres et extenuantes cibos; at (sumemus) id medicamentum, quod vocatur Cæsarianum. Habet sutorii atramenti p.  $\times$ . i. misy p.  $\times$ . =. albi piperis p.  $\times$ . =. lacrimæ papaveris, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. lotæ cadmiæ p.  $\times$ . iii. stibis p.  $\times$ . vi. Que constat satis, hoc collyrium esse idoneum adversus omne genus valetudinis oculorum; iis exceptis, quæ nutriuntur lenibus.

28. Quoquid (collyrium), quod nominatur Hieracis, potest ad aspritudinem. Habet myrrhæ p.  $\times$ . i. thymiamatis ammoniaci p.  $\times$ . ii. rasæ æruginis p.  $\times$ . iv. Etiam id (collyrium) quod vocatur Canopite, et id quod (vocatur) Smilion, et id quod (vocatur) Pyxinum, et id quod (vocatur) Sphærion est idoneum ad idem. Si composita medicamenta non adsunt, aspritudo curatur satis commode felle caprino, vel quam optimo melle.

29. Est etiam genus aridæ lippitudinis: Græci appellant *ξηροφθαλμίαν* (xerophthalmia). Oculi neque tument, neque fluunt, sed tantum rubent, et sunt graves cum quodam dolore, et inhærescunt noctu præ gravi pituita: que quanto minor (est) impetus huic

## TRANSLATION.

take acrid and attenuating food; and employ that composition which is called the Cæsarian. It consists of copperas p.  $\times$ . i. of misy p.  $\times$ . =. of white pepper p.  $\times$ . =. of the tears of poppy, of gum, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of washed cadmia p.  $\times$ . iii. of antimony p.  $\times$ . vi. This collyrium is admitted to be a proper remedy for all disorders of the eyes, except in those cases which require lenient applications.

28. That also which is named after *Hierax* is a powerful application for rugosities. It consists of myrrh p.  $\times$ . i. of gum ammoniacum p.  $\times$ . ii. of scraped verdigris p.  $\times$ . iv. Those collyria named the Canopite, the Smilion, the Pyxinum, and the Sphærion, are all proper applications for the same effect. If compound applications be not present, asperities of this kind may be easily cured by goat-galls, or with the very best honey.

29. There is also a kind of dry Lippitudo; the Greeks call it Xerophthalmia. In this malady the eyes are neither swollen, nor do they discharge any humour, but are only red, and seem heavy, as it were with pain, and during the night the palpebræ adhere to each other, in consequence of a very severe discharge: and in proportion as this may be less violent, so much the longer will the cure be. In this

ditus est. In hoc vitio multum ambulare, multum exerceri, lavari sæpe, ibique desudare, multaque frictione uti necessarium est. Cibi neque qui implent, neque nimium acres, apti sunt, sed inter hos medii. Mane, ubi concoxisse manifestum est, non est alienum ex sinapi gargarizare; tum deinde caput atque os diutius defricare.

30. Collyrium vero aptissimum est, quod Rhinion vocatur. Habet myrrhæ p. x. =. papaveris lacrimæ, acaciæ succi, piperis, gummi, singulorum p. x. i. lapidis hæmatitis, lapidis Phrygii, lycii, lapidis scissilis, singulorum p. x. ii. æris combusti p. x. iv. Ac Pyxinum quoque eodem accommodatum est.

31. Si vero scabri oculi sunt, quod maxime in angulis esse consuevit, potest prodesse Rhinion, id quod supra positum est; potest similiter id, quod habet æruginis rasæ, piperis longi, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p. x. ii. piperis albi, gummi, singulorum p. x. iv. cadmiæ elotæ, cerussæ, singulorum p. x. vi. Nullum tamen melius est, quam Euelpidis, quod βασιλικὸν nomi-

## ORDO.

generi, tanto finis est minus expeditus. In hoc vitio est necessarium, ambulare multum, exerceri multum, lavari sæpe, que ibi desudare, que uti multa frictione. Neque cibi qui implent, neque nimium acres sunt apti, sed medii inter hos. Mane, ubi est manifestum concoxisse, non est alienum gargarizare ex sinapi; tum deinde defricare caput atque os diutius.

30. Vero collyrium, quod vocatur Rhinion, est aptissimum. Habet myrrhæ p. x. =. lacrimæ papaveris, succi acaciæ, piperis, gummi, singulorum p. x. i. hæmatitis lapidis, Phrygii lapidis, lycii, scissilis lapidis, singulorum p. x. ii. combusti æris p. x. iv. Ac quoque Pyxinum est accommodatum eodem.

31. Si vero oculi sunt scabri, quod maxime consuevit esse in angulis, Rhinion, id quod est positum supra, potest prodesse; id potest similiter, quod habet rasæ æruginis, longi piperis, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p. x. ii. albi piperis gummi, singulorum p. x. iv. elotæ cadmiæ, cerussæ, singulorum p. x. vi. Tamen nullum est melius, quam collyrium Enelpidis, quod nominabat βασιλικὸν (basilicon). Habet

## TRANSLATION.

disease it will be necessary to walk much, to take much exercise, to use the bath frequently, to perspire there, and to use considerable friction. The aliments proper in such cases, should neither be too nourishing, nor too acrid, but the medium between these two qualities. In the morning, when it is evident that the patient has digested well, it may not be improper to gargle with mustard; and after that to rub the head and face for a considerable time.

30. But the best collyrium is that which is called Rhinion. It contains of myrrh p. x. =. of poppy tears, of acacia juice, of pepper, of gum, of each p. x. i. of blood-stone, of Phrygian-stone, of lycium, of scissile stone, of each p. x. ii. of calcined copper p. x. iv. The Pyxinum also is adapted for the same complaint.

31. But if the eyes are scabby, which usually takes place in the corners, the Rhinion mentioned above may do good; so may that composition which consists of scraped verdigris, of long pepper, of poppy tears, of each p. x. ii. of white pepper, of gum, of each p. x. iv. of washed cadmia, of ceruse, of each p. x. iv. Yet none is better than that of Euelpides, which he named Basilicon. It is made of poppy

nabat. Habet papaveris lacrimæ, cerussæ, lapidis Assii, singulorum p. ℥. ii. gummi p. ℥. iii. piperis albi p. ℥. iv. croci p. ℥. vi. psorici p. ℥. xiii. Nulla autem per se materia est, quæ psoricum nominetur; sed chalcitidis aliquid, et cadmiæ dimidio plus ex aceto simul conteruntur, idque in vas fictile additum, et contextum ficulneis foliis, sub terra reponitur, sublatumque post dies viginti rursus teritur, et sic appellatur. Verum in basilico quoque collyrio convenit, ad omnes affectus oculorum id esse idoneum, qui non lenibus medicamentis curantur.

Ubi non sunt autem medicamenta composita, scabros angulos lævant et mel et vinum: succurritque et his et aridæ lippitudini, si quis panem ex vino subactum super oculum imponit. Nam, cum fere sit humor aliquis, qui modo ipsum oculum, modo angulos, aut palpebras exasperat, sic, et si quid prodit humoris, extrahitur, et si quid juxta est, repellitur.

32. Caligare vero oculi nonnumquam ex lippitudine, nonnumquam etiam sine hac, propter senectutem, imbecillitatemve aliam, consuerunt. Si

## ORDO.

lacrimæ papaveris, cerussæ, Assii lapidis singulorum p. ℥. ii. gummi p. ℥. iii. albi piperis p. ℥. iv. croci p. ℥. vi. psorici p. ℥. xiii. Autem est nulla materia per se, quæ nominetur psoricum; sed aliquid chalcitidis, et plus (quam) dimidio cadmiæ conteruntur simul ex aceto, que id additum in fictile vas, et contextum ficulneis foliis, reponitur sub terra, que post viginti dies sublatur, teritur rursus, et sic appellatur. Verum quoque convenit in basilico collyrio, id esse idoneum ad omnes affectus oculorum, qui non curantur lenibus medicamentis.

Autem ubi non sunt composita medicamenta, et mel et vinum lævant scabros angulos: que si quis imponit panem subactum ex vino super oculum, succurrit et his et aridæ lippitudini. Nam cum fere sit aliquis humor, qui modo exasperat oculum ipsum, modo angulos, aut palpebras, sic, et si quid humoris prodit, extrahitur, et si quid est juxta, repellitur.

32. Vero oculi nonnumquam consuerunt caligare ex lippitudine, nonnumquam etiam sine hac, propter senectutem, ve aliam imbecillitatem. Si id vitium est ex

## TRANSLATION.

tears, of ceruse, of Assian stone, of each p. ℥. ii. of gum p. ℥. iii. of white pepper p. ℥. iv. of saffron p. ℥. vi. of psoricum p. ℥. xiii. But there is no substance by itself which is named *Psoricum*; but a little chalcitis, and a little more than half its quantity of cadmia are rubbed together with vinegar, and that being put into an earthen vessel, and covered over with fig-leaves, is deposited under ground, and after twenty days, is taken up and bruised again, and so is named *Psoricum*. The Basilicon Collyrium also is considered to be a proper remedy for all affections of the eyes, which do not require mild medicines.

But when compound medicines are not at hand, both honey and wine relieve the scabby canthi: it also relieves this and dry lippitudo, if the patient apply some bread moistened with wine over the eye. For since there is generally a humour, which exasperates, sometimes the eye itself, sometimes the canthi or the palpebræ, so also, (*by this remedy*,) if any humour be secreted, it is absorbed, and that which is in the vicinity is repelled.

32. But the eyes have been accustomed sometimes to become dim after lippitudo, sometimes even without that, on account of old age, or other debilities. If the com-



ex reliquiis lippitudinis id vitium est, adjuvat collyrium, quod Asclepios nominatur; adjuvat id, quod ex crocomagmate fit.

33. Proprietatem ad id componitur, quod *διὰ κρόκου* vocant. Habet piperis p.  $\times$ . i. croci Cilicii, papaveris lacrimæ, cerussæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. psorici, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv.

34. At si ex senectute, aliave imbecillitate id est, recte inungi potest, et melle quam optimo, et cyprino, et oleo vetere. Commodissimum tamen est, balsami partem unam, et olei veteris, aut cyprini partes duas, mellis quam acerrimi partes tres miscere. Utilia huic quoque medicamenta sunt, quæ ad caliginem proxime, quæque ad extenuandas cicatrices supra comprehensa sunt.

Cuicumque vero oculi caligabunt, huic opus erit multa ambulatione, atque exercitatione, frequenti balneo; ubi totum quidem corpus perfricandum est, præcipue tamen caput, et quidem irino, donec insudet; velandumque postea, nec detergendum, antequam sudor et calor domi conquierint. Tum

## ORDO.

reliquiis lippitudinis, collyrium quod nominatur Asclepios, adjuvat; adjuvat id, quod fit ex crocomagmate.

33. Etiam quod vocant *διὰ κρόκου* (dia crocou), componitur proprie ad id. Habet piperis p.  $\times$ . i. Cilicii croci, lacrimæ papaveris, cerussæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. psorici, gummi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv.

34. At si id ex senectute, vel alia imbecillitate, potest inungi recte, et quam optimo melle, et cyprino, et vetere oleo. Tamen est commodissimum, miscere unam partem balsami, duas partes veteris olei, aut cyprini, et tres partes quam acerrimi mellis. Quoque medicamenta utilia huic sunt, quæ sunt comprehensa supra proxime ad caliginem, quæ quæ (sunt comprehensa supra) ad extenuandos cicatrices.

Vero cuicumque oculi caligabunt, erit opus huic, multa ambulatione, atque exercitatione, frequenti balneo; ubi quidem totum corpus est perfricandum, præcipue tamen caput, et quidem irino; donec insudet; que postea (est) velandum, nec (est) detergendum, antequam sudor et calor conquierint domi. Tum est utendum

## TRANSLATION.

plaint proceed from the sequela of lippitudo, the collyrium which is named Asclepios assists; also that which is made from saffron lees.

33. Also that collyrium which they call Diacrocou is composed particularly for this. It consists of pepper p.  $\times$ . i. of Cilician saffron, of poppy tears, of ceruse, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of psoricum, of gum, of each p.  $\times$ . iv.

34. But if Caligo be the consequence of old age, or of any debility, a proper remedy is, for the eyes to be anointed both with the best honey, and with privet-oil, and with old oil. But it will be most advantageous to mix one part of balsam, and two parts of old oil, or of privet-oil, and three parts of the most pungent honey. The medicines prescribed above for a dimness of sight, and those previously mentioned for attenuating cicatrices, are useful in this case too.

Now, every person affected with caligo should walk much, use exercise, bathe frequently, at which time the whole body should be rubbed, but especially the head, and that too with iris-oil until he perspire; he should then be covered, neither should this covering be removed until the perspiration and heat shall have subsided in his

cibis utendum acribus, et extenuantibus; interpositisque aliquibus diebus, ex sinapi gargarizandum.

35. Suffusio quoque, quam Græci *ὑπόχυσιν* nominant, interdum oculi potentiae, qua cernit, se opponit. Quod, si inveteravit, manu curandum est: inter initia nonnumquam certis observationibus discutitur. Sanguinem ex fronte vel naribus mittere; in temporibus venas adurere; gargarizando pituitam evocare; suffumigare; oculos acribus medicamentis inungere, expedit. Victus optimus est, qui pituitam extenuat.

36. Ac ne resolutio quidem oculorum, quam *παράλυσιν* Græci nominant, alio victus modo, vel aliis medicamentis curanda est. Exposuisse tantum genus vitii satis est. Igitur interdum evenit, modo in altero oculo, modo in utroque, aut ex ictu aliquo, aut ex morbo comitiali, aut ex distentione nervorum, qua vehementer ipse oculus concussus est, ut is neque ququam intendi possit, neque omnino consistat; sed huc illucve sine ratione moveatur, ideoque ne conspectum quidem rerum præstet.

#### ORDO.

acribus et extenuantibus cibis: que aliquibus diebus interpositis, (est) gargarizandum ex sinapi.

35. Suffusio quoque, quam Græci nominant *ὑπόχυσιν* (hypochysin), interdum opponit se potentiae oculi, qua cernit. Quod, si inveteravit, est curandum manu: nonnumquam discutitur inter initia certis observationibus. Expedit, mittere sanguinem ex fronte vel naribus; evocare pituitam gargarizando, suffumigare: inungere oculos acribus medicamentis. (Is) victus est optimus, qui extenuat pituitam.

36. Ac quidem resolutio oculorum, quam Græci nominant *παράλυσιν* (paralysin) ne curanda est alio modo victus, vel aliis medicamentis. Est satis, exposuisse tantum genus vitii. Igitur interdum evenit, modo in altero oculo, modo in utroque, aut ex aliquo ictu, aut ex comitiali morbo, aut ex distentione nervorum, qua oculus ipse est vehementer concussus, ut neque is quoque possit intendi, neque consistat omnino; sed moveatur huc vel illuc sine ratione, ideoque ne quidem præstet conspectum rerum.

#### TRANSLATION.

own house. Then use acrid and attenuating food, and after the interposition of a few days, a mustard gargarism.

35. A suffusion or *Cataract*, which the Greeks call *Hypochysis*, sometimes opposes itself to the pupil of the eye, where vision is performed, which, if it become inveterate, must be removed by an operation. In the incipient stage, it is sometimes dissipated by observing certain remedial rules. It will be expedient to take blood from the forehead, or nostrils, to cauterize the temporal veins, to promote the secretion of pituita by gargling, to fumigate; to anoint the eyes with acrid medicines. The most appropriate diet is that which will attenuate the discharge.

36. Relaxation of the eyes, which the Greeks term *Paralysis*, is not to be cured by any other regimen, or by any other remedial agents. Therefore it will be sufficient if I only explain the nature of the disease. Now it sometimes happens to one eye, at other times to both, either from a blow, or from epilepsy, or from convulsions, by which the eye itself is so vehemently distorted, that it can neither be directed nor fixed to any particular object, but is moved hither and thither involuntarily, without the power of seeing objects.

37. Non multum ab hoc malo distat id, quod *μυδρίασιν* Græci vocant. Pupilla funditur et dilatatur, aciesque ejus hebetescit; ac pene difficillime genus id imbecillitatis eliditur. In utraque vero, id est, paralyti et mydriasi, pugnandum est per eadem omnia, quæ in caligine oculorum præcepta sunt, paucis tantum mutatis: siquidem ad caput irino interdum acetum, interdum nitrum adjiciendum est: melle inungi satis est.

Quidam in posteriore vitio calidis aquis usi, relevatique: quidam sine ulla manifesta causa subito occæcati sunt. Ex quibus nonnulli, cum aliquamdiu nihil vidissent, repentina profusione alvi, lumen receperunt. Quo minus alienum videtur, et recenti re, et interposito tempore, medicamentis quoque moliri dejectiones, quæ omnem noxiam materiam in inferiora depellant.

38. Præter hæc, imbecillitas oculorum est, ex qua quidam interdum satis, noctu nihil cernunt: quod in fœminam bene respondentibus menstruis non cadit. Sed sic laborantes inungi oportet

## ORDO.

37. Id, quod Græci vocant *μυδρίασιν* (mydriasin), non distat multum ab hoc malo. Pupilla funditur et dilatatur, quæ acies ejus hebetescit; ac pene id genus imbecillitatis eliditur difficillime. Vero est pugnandum in utraque, id est, paralyti et mydriasi, per omnia eadem, quæ sunt præcepta in caligine oculorum, paucis tantum mutatis: siquidem interdum acetum irino, interdum nitrum est adjiciendum ad caput: est satis inungi melle.

Quidam usi (sunt) calidis aquis in posteriore vitio, quæ relevati (sunt); quidam sunt occæcati subito sine ulla manifesta causa. Nonnulli ex quibus, cum vidissent nihil aliquamdiu, receperunt lumen, repentina profusione alvi. Quo videtur minus alienum, quoque moliri dejectiones medicamentis, et recenti re et tempore interposito, quæ depellant omnem noxiam materiam in inferiora.

38. Præter hæc est imbecillitas oculorum, ex qua quidam cernunt satis interdum, nihil noctu: quod non cadit in fœminam menstruis bene respondentibus. Sed oportet sic laborantes inungi sanie jocino-

## TRANSLATION.

37. That which the Greeks call *Mydryasis* is not much unlike this latter disease. The pupil is relaxed and dilated, the sight of it becomes dim, and almost dark. This kind of weakness is very difficult to be removed. But in both these diseases, that is, paralysis and mydriasis, we must combat against them by all those remedies which have been prescribed for dimness of the eyes, changing only a few; as, for instance, sometimes vinegar, at another time nitre is to be added to the iris-oil for the head, but it will be sufficient to anoint the eyes with honey.

In the latter disease some have used warm water, and been relieved; others have become blind suddenly, without any manifest cause. Some having been blind for some time, have all at once recovered their sight, by a sudden relaxation of the bowels; by which, it appears not improper, not only in a recent case, but in one of considerable duration, to attempt a revulsion of all the noxious matter downwards by active purgations.

38. Besides these, there is a weakness of the eyes owing to which some can discern very well by day, but nothing by night; which never happens to a woman who menstruates regularly. But persons suffering under this complaint should



sanie jocinoris, maxime hircini; sin minus, caprini, ubi id assum coquitur, excepta: atque edi quoque ipsum jecur debet.

Licet tamen etiam iisdem medicamentis non inutiliter uti, quæ vel cicatrices, vel aspritudinem extenuant. Quidam contrito semine portulacæ mel adjiciunt eatenus, ne id ex specillo destillet, eoque inungunt. Exercitationibus, balneo, frictionibus, gargarizationibus iisdem his quoque utentum est.

39. Et hæc quidem in ipsis corporibus oriuntur. Extrinsecus vero interdum sic ictus oculum lædit, ut sanguis in eo suffundatur. Nihil commodius est, quam sanguine vel columbæ, vel palumbi, vel hirundinis inungere. Neque id sine causa fit; cum horum acies extrinsecus læsa, interposito tempore in antiquum statum redeat, celerrimeque hirundinis. Unde etiam locus fabulæ factus est, per parentes id herba restitui, quod per se sanescit. Eorum ergo sanguis nostros quoque oculos ab externo casu commodissime tuetur, hoc ordine, ut sit hirun-

## ORDO.

ris, maxime hyrcini; (sin minus, caprini,) excepta, ubi id assum coquitur: atque quoque jecur ipsum debet edi.

Tamen licet etiam non inutiliter uti iisdem medicamentis, quæ vel extenuant cicatrices vel aspritudinem. Quidam adjiciunt mel, contrito semine portulacæ, eatenus ne id destillet ex specillo, que inungunt eo. Quoque est utendum his iisdem, exercitationibus, balneo, frictionibus, gargarizationibus.

39. Et quidem hæc oriuntur in corporibus ipsis. Vero interdum ictus extrinsecus sic lædit oculum, ut sanguis suffundatur in eo. Nihil est commodius quam inungere sanguine vel columbæ vel palumbæ, vel hirundinis. Neque id fit sine causa; cum acies horum læsa extrinsecus tempore interposito redeat in antiquum statum que celerrime (sanguine) hirundinis. Unde etiam locus fabulæ, est factus id restitui herba per parentes, quod sanescit per se. Ergo sanguis eorum quoque tuetur nostros oculos commodissime ab externo casu, hoc ordine, ut (sanguis) hi-

## TRANSLATION.

be anointed with the sanies of a liver, (particularly that of a he-goat: but if this cannot be got, of a she-goat,) that drops from it while roasting, and also the liver itself ought to be eaten.

Yet it may not be improper to use some of those medicines which extenuate either cicatrices or asperities; some add honey to the bruised seed of purslane, until the mixture is of such a consistence as not to drop from a probe, and anoint with this. Exercises, bathing, frictions, and gargarisms, as prescribed in the cases above, are equally proper here.

39. The maladies already described arise from internal causes existing in the bodies themselves; but sometimes a blow injures the eye in such a manner as to produce ecchymosis in it. For this nothing is more advantageous than to anoint it with the blood of a pigeon, ring-dove, or swallow. Nor is this practice devoid of some reason; for when the sight of these birds has been injured externally, after some time the sight returns to its original condition, and that of the swallow most quickly. Hence the origin of that fable, in which these birds are said to heal the wounded eyes of their young by means of some herb; but, in reality, it was nothing but the salutary efforts of unaided nature. Therefore their blood is a very appropriate remedy for

dinis optimus, deinde palumbi, minime efficax columbæ, et illi ipsi, et nobis.

Supra percussum vero oculum, ad inflammationem leniendam, non est alienum imponere etiam cataplasmata. Sal ammoniacus, vel quilibet alius quam optime teri debet, sic, ut ei paulatim oleum adjiciatur, donec crassitudo strigmenti fiat: id deinde miscendum est cum hordeacea farina, quæ ex mulso decocta sit.

Facile autem, recognitis omnibus, quæ medici prodiderunt, apparere cuilibet potest, vix ullum ex iis, quæ supra comprehensa sunt, oculi vitium esse, quod non simplicibus quoque, et promptis remediis submoveri possit.

## ORDO.

rundinis sit optimus, deinde (sanguis) palumbi, (sanguis) columbæ (est) minime efficax, et illi ipsi, et nobis.

Vero non est alienum imponere etiam cataplasmata supra, percussum oculum, ad leniendam inflammationem. Sal ammoniacus, vel quilibet alius (sal) debet teri quam optime, sic, ut oleum adjiciatur ei paulatim, donec fiat crassitudo strigmenti: deinde id est miscendum cum hordeacea farina, quæ sit decocta ex mulso.

Autem, omnibus recognitis, quæ medici prodiderunt, potest apparere facile cuilibet, vix esse ullum vitium oculi ex iis, quæ sunt comprehensa supra, quod non quoque possit submoveri simplicibus, et promptis remediis.

## TRANSLATION.

external injuries of our own eyes; in this order, viz. that of the swallow is best, then the ring-dove, and last of all the pigeon, which is least efficacious both to itself and us.

But it is not an inappropriate remedy to apply a cataplasm over an eye that has been struck, in order to allay the inflammation. Now sal ammoniac, or any other *salt*, ought to be very finely powdered, so that oil may be gradually added to it, until it acquire the consistence of strigment. Then this is to be mixed with barley-meal, which has been boiled with hydromel.

Now after reviewing all that physicians have transmitted on the subject, it may be very apparent to any person, that there is scarcely any one of the ophthalmic diseases enumerated above, which might not be removed by simple, and easily obtained remedies.

## CAP. VII.

## DE AURIUM MORBIS, ET CURATIONIBUS.

1. HACTENUS in oculis ea reperiuntur, in quibus medicamenta plurimum possunt: ideoque ad aures transeundum est, quarum usum proximum a luminibus natura nobis dedit. Sed in his aliquanto majus periculum est: nam vitia oculorum intra ipsos nocent; aurium inflammationes doloresque, interdum etiam ad dementiam mortemque præcipitant. Quo magis inter initia protinus succurrendum est, ne majori periculo locus sit.

Ergo ubi primum dolorem aliquis sensit, abstinere et continere se debet. Postero die, si vehementius malum est, caput tondere, idque irino unguento calido perungere, et operire. At magnus cum febre vigiliaque dolor exigit, ut sanguis quoque mittatur. Si id aliquæ causæ prohibent, alvus solvenda est.

## ORDO.

## CAP. VII.

## DE MORBIS ET CURATIONIBUS AURIUM.

1. HACTENUS, (indicavi) ea (vitia) reperiuntur in oculis, in quibus medicamenta possunt plurimum: que ideo est (nunc) transeundum ad aures, usum quarum natura dedit nobis proximum a luminibus. Sed in his periculum est aliquanto majus: nam vitia oculorum nocent intra ipsos; inflammationes que dolores aurium interdum præcipitant (ægrum) etiam ad dementiam que mortem. Quo magis succurrendum est protinus inter initia, ne sit locus majori periculo.

Ergo ubi aliquis sensit primum dolorem, debet abstinere et continere se. Postero die, si malum est vehementius, tondere caput, que perungere id calido irino unguento, et operire. At magnus dolor cum febre que vigilia exigit, ut sanguis mittatur quoque. Si aliquæ causæ prohibent id, alvus solvenda est.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

## THE DISEASES AND TREATMENT OF THE EARS.

1. THUS far we have described those maladies of the eyes, in which medicines are most efficacious; and now we must proceed to the EARS, an organ, which nature has given us next in usefulness to the eyes. In these diseases there is indeed somewhat more of danger; for the maladies affecting the eyes are restricted to those organs alone; but inflammation and pains of the ears sometimes precipitate the sufferer even to madness and death. For this reason it is the more necessary to administer relief immediately, at the commencement, lest the danger be augmented.

Therefore, when a person first perceives a pain in the ear, he ought to abstain from all food, and remain in a state of quietude: on the following day, if the disease be more vehement, the hair must be cut off, and the head anointed with iris-ointment, and covered over. But if the pain be excessive, accompanied with fever, and vigilance, it will be necessary also to draw blood: if any circumstance prevent that, then the bowels must be relaxed.



Cataplasmata quoque calida, subinde mutata, proficiunt; sive fœni Græci, sive lini, sive alia farina ex mulso decocta. Recte etiam subinde admoventur spongiæ, ex aqua calida expressæ. Tum, levato dolore, ceratum circumdari debet ex irino, aut cyprino factum: in quibusdam tamen melius, quod ex rosa est, proficit.

Si vehemens inflammatio somnum ex toto prohibet, adjici cataplasmati debent papaveris cortices fricti atque contriti, sic, ut ex his pars dimidia sit; eaque tum simul ex passo mixto decoquantur. In aurem vero infundere aliquod medicamentum oportet; quod semper ante tepefieri convenit: commodissimeque per strigilem instillatur. Ubi auris repleta est, super lana mollis addenda ea est, quæ humorem intus contineat. Et hæc quidem communia sunt.

Medicamentum vero est et rosa, et radicum arundinis succus, et oleum, in quo lumbrici cocti sunt, et humor ex amaris nucibus, aut ex nucleo mali Persici expressus. Composita vero ad inflammationem doloremque leniendum hæc fere sunt: castorei, papaveris

## ORDO.

Calida cataplasmata quoque, subinde mutata, proficiunt; sive Græci fœni, sive lini, sive alia farina decocta ex mulso. Etiam spongiæ expressæ ex calida aqua subinde, admoventur recte. Tum, dolore levato, ceratum factum ex irino, aut cyprino debet circumdari: tamen (id ceratum) quod est (factum) ex rosa, proficit melius in quibusdam.

Si vehemens inflammatio prohibet somnum ex toto, fricti atque contriti cortices papaveris debent adjici cataplasmati, sic ut sit dimidia pars ex his; que tum ea decoquantur simul ex mixto passo. Vero oportet infundere aliquod medicamentum in aurem; quod semper convenit tepefieri ante; que instillatur commodissime per strigilem. Ubi auris est repleta, mollis lana est addenda super ea, quæ contineat humorem intus. Et quidem hæc sunt communia remedia.

Vero et rosa, et succus radicum arundinis, et oleum, in quo lumbrici sunt cocti, et humor expressus ex amaris nucibus, aut ex nucleo Persici mali, est medicamentum. Vero fere hæc composita sunt ad leniendum inflammationem que dolorem: pares portiones castorei, lacrimæ papaveris conterun-

## TRANSLATION.

Hot cataplasms frequently renewed are serviceable; either the flower of fœnugreek, or linseed, or any other, boiled in hydromel. Also sponges squeezed out of hot water occasionally applied, will be proper. Then the pain being relieved, a cerate made of iris or privet-oil ought to be put around it; yet with some, that which is made of rose-oil succeeds better.

If the violence of the inflammation prevent sleep entirely, half the quantity of poppy-heads, toasted and powdered, ought to be added to the cataplasm, and these are to be boiled together in raisin-wine. But it will be necessary to infuse some medicine into the ear; and this should always be made tepid first: it is most conveniently dropped in by a strigil (3). When the ear is filled, soft wool is to be put over it, to prevent the liquid from escaping. These are general and common remedies.

Now injections are prepared from rose oil, and the roots of reeds, and the decoction of worms in oil, and the liquor pressed from bitter almonds, or from the kernel of the Persian peach. Those generally composed for the alleviation of pain and inflammation are, of castor, an equal portion of bruised poppy tears, then

lacrimæ, pares portiones conteruntur, deinde adjicitur his passum: vel papaveris lacrimæ, croci, myrrhæ par modus sic teritur, ut invicem modo rosa, modo passum instilletur: vel id, quod amarum in Ægyptia faba est, conteritur, rosa adjecta; quibus myrrhæ quoque paulum a quibusdam miscetur, vel papaveris lacrimæ, aut thus cum muliebri lacte, vel amararum nucum cum rosa succus: vel castorei, myrrhæ, papaveris lacrimæ pares portiones cum passo: vel croci p.  $\times$ .  $\equiv$ . myrrhæ, aluminis scissilis, singulorum p.  $\times$ .  $\equiv$ . quibus, dum teruntur, paulatim miscentur passi cyathi tres, mellis minus cyatho; idque ex primis medicamentis est. Vel papaveris lacrima ex aceto.

Licet etiam compositione uti Themisonis; quæ habet castorei, opopanax, papaveris lacrimæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. spumæ lycii p.  $\times$ . iv. quæ contrita passo excipiuntur, donec cerati crassitudinem habeant, atque ita reponuntur. Ubi usus requirit, rursus id medicamentum, adjecto passo, specillo teritur. Illud perpetuum est, quotiescumque crassius medicamentum est,

## ORDO.

tur, deinde passum adjicitur his: vel par modus lacrimæ papaveris croci, myrrhæ, teritur sic, ut invicem modo rosa instilletur, modo passum (instilletur): vel id conteritur, quod est amarum in Ægyptia faba, rosa adjecta; quibus quoque paulum myrrhæ, vel (paulum) lacrimæ papaveris, aut thus cum muliebri lacte, vel succus amararum nucum cum rosa miscetur a quibusdam: vel pares portiones castorei, myrrhæ, lacrimæ papaveris, cum passo: vel croci p.  $\times$ .  $\equiv$ . myrrhæ, scissilis aluminis, singulorum p.  $\times$ .  $\equiv$ . quibus, tres cyathi passi, miscentur minus cyathomellis paulatim, dum teruntur; que id est ex primis medicamentis. Vel lacrima papaveris ex aceto.

Etiam licet uti compositione Themisonis; quæ habet castorei, opopanax, lacrimæ papaveris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. spumæ lycii p.  $\times$ . iv. quæ contrita excipiuntur passo, donec habeant crassitudinem cerati, atque ita reponuntur. Ubi usus requirit, id medicamentum, passo adjecto, teritur rursus specillo. Illud est perpetuum, quotiescumque medicamentum est crassius, quam ut pos-

## TRANSLATION.

these are to be mixed with raisin wine. Or equal quantities of poppy tears, of saffron, of myrrh, all bruised together, alternately dropping in rose-oil and raisin wine. Or the bitter part of the Egyptian bean, bruised, with rose-oil added to it; to which a little myrrh is mixed by some, or poppy tears, or frankincense with woman's milk, or the juice of bitter almonds, with rose-oil. Or castor, myrrh, scissile alum, of each p.  $\times$ .  $\equiv$ . to which, when being rubbed, three cupsful of raisin wine are to be gradually mixed with them, and rather less than a cyathus of honey: and this is one of the principal preparations. Or poppy tears with vinegar. We may also use Themison's composition, which consists of castor, of opopanax, of poppy tears with vinegar, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of the spume of lycium p.  $\times$ . iv. which being bruised, are incorporated with raisin-wine until they acquire the consistence of cerate, and in this state laid by. When this preparation is required for use, it is again rubbed down with a probe, with the addition of some raisin-wine. This is a constant rule, that, whenever a medicine becomes too thick for dropping into the ear, it will be neces-

quam ut in aurem instillari possit, ad-  
jiciendum eum esse humorem, ex quo  
id componi debet, donec satis liquidum  
sit.

2. Si vero pus quoque aures habent,  
recte lycium per se infunditur, aut iri-  
num unguentum; aut porri succus cum  
melle; aut centaurii succus cum pas-  
so; aut dulcis mali Punici succus in  
ipsius cortice tepefactus, adjecta myr-  
rhæ exigua parte. Recte etiam mis-  
centur myrrhæ, quam *στακτὴν* cogno-  
minant, p. ℥. i. croci tantumdem, nu-  
ces amaræ xxv. mellis sesquicyathus:  
quæ contrita, cum utendum est, in cor-  
tice mali Punici tepefiunt.

Ea quoque medicamenta, quæ oris  
exulcerati causa componuntur, æque  
ulcera aurium sanant. Quæ si vetus-  
tiora sunt, et multa sanies fluit, apta  
compositio est, quæ ad auctorem Era-  
sistratum refertur: piperis p. ℥. =.  
croci p. ℥. =. myrrhæ, misy cocti,  
singulorum p. ℥. i. æris combusti p.  
℥. ii. Hæc ex vino teruntur: deinde  
ubi inaruerunt, adjiciuntur passi he-  
minæ tres, et simul incoquantur: cum  
utendum est, adjicitur his mel et vi-  
num.

## ORDO.

sit instillari in aurem, eum humo-  
rem esse adjiciendum, ex quo id  
debet componi, donec sit satis li-  
quidum.

2. Vero si aures habent pus  
quoque, lycium per se infundi-  
tur recte, aut irinum unguen-  
tum; aut succus porri cum mel-  
le; aut succus centaurii cum pas-  
so; aut succus dulcis Punici  
mali, tepefactus in cortice ipsius,  
exigua parte myrrhæ adjecta.  
Etiam myrrhæ, quam cognominant  
*στακτὴν* (stakten), p. ℥. i. tantum-  
dem croci, xxv amaræ nuces, ses-  
qui cyathus mellis miscentur rec-  
te: quæ contrita, tepefiunt in cor-  
tice mali, cum est uten-  
dum.

Ea medicamenta quoque, quæ  
componuntur causa exulcerati  
oris, æque sanant ulcera aurium.  
Quæ si sunt vetustiora, et multa  
sanies fluit, (ea) compositio est  
apta, quæ refertur ad Erasistra-  
tum auctorem: piperis p. ℥. =.  
croci p. ℥. =. myrrhæ, cocti  
misy, singulorum p. ℥. i. com-  
busti æris p. ℥. ii. Hæc terun-  
tur ex vino: deinde ubi inarue-  
runt, tres heminæ passi adjiciun-  
tur, et incoquantur simul: cum  
est utendum, mel et vinum adjici-  
tur his.

## TRANSLATION.

sary to add a portion of the same liquid with which it was originally compounded, until it becomes liquid enough.

2. But if there be pus in the ears, it will be proper to infuse lycium by itself, or iris-ointment, or the juice of leek with honey, or the juice of centaury with raisin-wine, or the juice of sweet pomegranate, made tepid in its own shell, a small portion of myrrh being added. Also the following mixture is proper: of myrrh, which the Greeks surname Staktê, p. ℥. i. of saffron, the like quantity, of bitter almonds twenty-five in number, of honey a cupful and a half, which being bruised together, and when required for use, to be warmed in a pomegranate shell.

Those preparations also which are compounded for ulcerations of the mouth, are equally applicable to ulcers of the ears. If these be very old, and a great flow of sanies, the proper composition is that generally ascribed to Erasistratus as its author: it contains of pepper p. ℥. =, of saffron p. ℥. =, of myrrh, of boiled misy, of each p. ℥. i. of calcined copper p. ℥. ii. These are to be triturated with wine: then, when they become dry, three heminæ of raisin-wine are to be added, and all boiled together: when required for use, honey and wine are to be added to these.



Est etiam Ptolemæi chirurgi medicamentum, quod habet lentisci p.  $\times$ . =. gallæ p.  $\times$ . =. omphacii p.  $\times$ . i. succum Punici mali. Est Menophili validum admodum, quod ex his constat: piperis longi p.  $\times$ . i. castorei p.  $\times$ . ii. myrrhæ, croci, papaveris lacrimæ, nardi Syriaci, thuris, malicorii, ex Ægyptiæ faba partis interioris, nucum amararum, mellis quam optimi, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. quibus, dum teruntur, adjicitur acetum quam acerrimum, donec crassitudo in his passi fiat.

Est Cratonis: cinnamomi, casia, singulorum p.  $\times$ . =. lycii, nardi, myrrhæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. aloes p.  $\times$ . ii. mellis cyathi tres, vini sextarius: ex quibus lycium cum vino decoquitur, deinde his alia miscentur. At si multum puris, malusque odor est, æruginis rasæ, thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. mellis cyathi duo, acetum quatuor simul incoquantur: ubi utendum est, dulce vinum miscetur. Aut aluminis scissilis, papaveris lacrimæ, acaciæ succi par pondus miscetur, hisque adjicitur hyoseyami succi dimidio minor, quam unius ex superioribus, portio;

## ORDO.

Etiam est medicamentum chirurgi Ptolemæi, quod habet lentisci p.  $\times$ . =. gallæ p.  $\times$ . =. omphaci p.  $\times$ . i. succum Punici mali. Est admodum validum Menophili, quod constat ex his: longi piperis p.  $\times$ . i. castorei p.  $\times$ . ii. myrrhæ, croci, lacrimæ papaveris, Syriaci nardi, thuris, malicorii, interioris partis ex Ægyptiæ faba, amararum nucum, quam optimi mellis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. quibus, quam acerrimum acetum adjicitur, dum teruntur, donec fiat crassitudo passi in his.

Est (compositio) Cratonis: (constat) cinnamomi, casia, singulorum p.  $\times$ . =. lycii, nardi, myrrhæ, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. aloes p.  $\times$ . ii. tres cyathi mellis, sextarius vini: ex quibus lycium decoquitur cum vino, deinde alia miscentur his. At si est multum puris, que (est) malus odor, rasæ æruginis, thuris, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. duo cyathi mellis, quatuor (cyathi) acetum incoquantur simul: ubi est utendum, dulce vinum miscetur. Aut par pondus scissilis aluminis, lacrimæ papaveris, succi acaciæ miscetur, que minor (pondus) dimidio, quam portio unius ex superioribus, succi hyoseyami adji-

## TRANSLATION.

There is also the application of Ptolemæus the surgeon, which contains of mastich p.  $\times$ . =. of nut-galls p.  $\times$ . =. of omphacium p.  $\times$ . i. and the juice of a pomegranate. There is also a very powerful application of Menophilus, which consists of these things: of long pepper p.  $\times$ . i. of castor p.  $\times$ . ii. of myrrh, of saffron, of poppy tears, of Syrian nard, of frankincense, of pomegranate rind, the interior part of an Egyptian bean, of bitter almonds, of the very best honey, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. to which, while they are being triturated, the strongest vinegar is to be added, until they acquire the consistence of passum.

There is also a composition of Crato's containing cinnamon, cassia, of each p.  $\times$ . =. of lycium, of nard, of myrrh, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of aloe p.  $\times$ . ii. of honey three cyathi, of wine a sextarius: of which the lycium is boiled with the wine, afterwards mixed with the other ingredients. But if there be much pus, and of a fætid odour, take of scraped verdigris, of frankincense, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. of honey two cyathi, of vinegar four; all these are to be boiled together: when it is to be used, sweet wine should be mixed with it. Or of scissile alum, of poppy tears, of acacia juice, equal parts by weight, and mixed: to these is added the juice of henbane, but in the proportion of one half the weight of either of the

eaque trita ex vino diluuntur. Per se quoque hyoscyami succus satis proficit.

3. Commune vero auxilium adversus omnes aurium casus, jamque usu comprobatum, Asclepiades composuit. In eo sunt cinnamomi, casiae, singulorum p.  $\times$ . I. floris junci rotundi, castorei, albi piperis, longi, amomi, myrobalani, singulorum p.  $\times$ . II. thuris masculi, nardi Syriaci, myrrhæ pinguis, croci, spumæ nitri, singulorum p.  $\times$ . III. quæ separatim contrita, rursus mixta, ex aceto conteruntur; atque ita condita, ubi utendum est, aceto diluuntur. Eodem modo commune auxilium auribus laborantibus est Polybi sphragis ex dulci vino liquata: quæ compositio priori libro continetur.

Quod si et sanies profluit, et tumor est, non alienum est, mixto vino per oricularium clysterem eluere; et tum infundere vinum austereum cum rosa mixtum, cui spodii paulum sit adjectum, aut lycium cum lacte, aut herbæ sanguinalis succum cum rosa, aut mali Punici succum cum exigua myrrhæ parte.

## ORDO.

citur his, quæ ea trita, diluuntur ex vino. Quoque succus hyoscyami proficit satis per se.

3. Asclepiades vero composuit commune auxilium adversus omnes casus aurium, quæ (est) jam comprobatum usu. Sunt in eo cinnamomi, casiae, singulorum p.  $\times$ . I. floris rotundi junci, castorei, albi piperis, longi (piperis), amomi, myrobalani, singulorum p.  $\times$ . II. masculi thuris, Syriaci nardi, pinguis myrrhæ, croci, spumæ nitri, singulorum p.  $\times$ . III. quæ contrita separatim, mixta rursus, conteruntur ex aceto; atque ita condita, ubi est utendum, diluuntur aceto. Eodem modo, sphragis Polybi liquata ex dulci vino, est commune auxilium laborantibus auribus: quæ compositio continetur priori libro.

Quod si et sanies profluit, et est tumor, non est alienum, eluere (auri) mixto vino, per oricularium clysterem; et tum infundere austereum vinum mixtum cum rosa, cui paulum spodii sit adjectum, aut lycium cum lacte, aut succum sanguinalis herbæ cum rosa, aut succum Punici mali cum exigua parte myrrhæ.

## TRANSLATION.

other ingredients above named; these being bruised, are to be diluted with wine. Indeed the expressed juice of Hyoscyamus by itself is of no small advantage.

3. Asclepiades composed a general remedy for all disorders of the ears, and which is now approved of by experience. In it there are of cinnamon, of cassia, of each p.  $\times$ . I. of the round bulrush-flower, of castoreum, of white pepper, of long pepper, of amomum, of myrobalannus, of each p.  $\times$ . II. of male frankincense, of Syrian nard, rich or unctuous myrrh, of saffron, the spume of nitre, of each p.  $\times$ . III. which are to be bruised separately, and then mixed and beat up with vinegar: and being preserved in this state, when required for use, again diluted with vinegar. In the same manner the Sphragis of Polybus being dissolved in sweet wine, is a general remedy for persons suffering under diseases of the ear, which composition is contained in a former book.

But if there be a sanious discharge with a tumour, it will not be improper to wash out the ear with diluted wine, by the assistance of an ear-syringe, and then to infuse austere wine mixed with rose-oil, adding a small quantity of spodium; or lycium with milk, or the juice of the blood-herb with rose-oil, or the juice of pomegranate, with a small portion of myrrh.

4. Si sordida quoque ulcera sunt, melius mulso eluuntur; et tum aliquod ex iis, quæ supra scripta sunt, quod mel habeat, infunditur. Si magis pus profluit, et caput utique tondendum, et multa calida aqua perfundendum, et gargarizandum, et usque ad lassitudinem ambulandum, et cibo modico utendum est. Si cruor quoque ex ulceribus apparuit, lycium cum lacte debet infundi; vel aqua, in qua rosa decocta sit, succo aut herbæ sanguinalis, aut acaciæ adjecto.

Quod si super ulcera caro increvit, eaque mali odoris saniem fundit, aqua tepida elui debet; tum infundi id, quod ex thure et æruginē et aceto et melle fit; aut mel cum æruginē incoctum. Squama quoque æris cum sandaracha contrita per fistulam recte instillatur.

5. Ubi vero vermes orti sunt, si juxta sunt, protrahendi oriculario specillo sunt: si longius, medicamentis enecandi; cavendumque, ne postea nascantur. Ad utrumque proficit album veratrum cum aceto contritum. Elui quoque aurem oportet vino, in

## ORDO.

4. Si quoque ulcera sunt sordida, eluuntur melius mulso; et tum aliquod ex iis, quæ sunt scripta supra, quod habeat mel, infunditur. Si pus profluit magis, et caput utique est tondendum, (est) perfundendum multa calida aqua, et (est) gargarizandum, et (est) ambulandum usque ad lassitudinem, et (est) utendum modico cibo. Si quoque cruor apparuit ex ulceribus, lycium debet infundi cum lacte; vel aqua, in qua rosa sit decocta, succo aut sanguinalis herbæ, aut acaciæ adjecto.

Quod si caro increvit super ulcera, que ea fundit saniem mali odoris, debet elui tepida aqua; tum id (debet) infundi, quod fit ex thure et æruginē et aceto et melle; aut mel incoctum cum æruginē. Quoque squama æris contrita cum sandaracha recte instillatur per fistulam.

5. Vero ubi vermes sunt orti, si sunt juxta, sunt protrahendi oriculario specillo: si (sunt) longius, enecandi medicamentis; que (est) cavendum, ne nascantur postea. Album veratrum contritum cum aceto proficit ad utrumque. Quoque oportet aurem elui vino, in quo marrubium sit

## TRANSLATION.

4. If the ulcers be foul, it will be better to wash out the ear with hydromel, and then, a portion of some one of those compositions, above named, containing honey, may be infused into the ear. If pus flow more copiously, then, indeed, the head should be shaved, and fomented with abundance of warm water: the patient must gargle also, and walk even to lassitude, and use restricted diet. If blood also have appeared from the ulcers, lycium with milk ought to be infused, or a decoction of roses in water, adding, either the juice of blood-herb, or that of acacia.

But if there be proud flesh, *fungus*, overgrowing the ulcers, and from thence a sanious and fætid discharge poured out, it ought to be washed with tepid water; and that composition to be infused into the ear which is made of frankincense, and verdigris, and vinegar, and honey; or honey boiled with verdigris. Also copper scales bruised with sandarach may be dropped in advantageously by means of a tube.

5. But when worms have been generated *in the ears*, if they be within reach, they must be drawn out with an ear-probe (4): if too far in, they must be destroyed by medicines; and we must be on our guard, lest they again occur. White hellebore, bruised with vinegar, will effect both these intentions. The ear should



quo marrubium decoctum sit. Emortui vermes in primam auris partem prolabuntur, unde facillime educi possunt.

6. Sin foramen auris compressum est, et intus crassa sanies subest, mel quam optimum addendum est. Si id parum proficit, mellis cyatho et dimidio, æruginis rasæ p. ℥. ii. adjiciendum est, incoquendumque, et eo utendum. Iris quoque cum melle idem proficit. Item galbani p. ℥. ii. myrrhæ et fellis taurini, singulorum p. ℥. = =. vini quantum satis est ad myrrham diluendam.

7. Ubi vero gravius aliquis audire cœpit (quod maxime post longos capitis dolores evenire consuevit) in primis aures ipsam considerare oportet: apparebit enim aut crusta, qualis super ulcera innascitur, aut sordium coitus. Si crusta est, infundendum est aut oleum calidum, aut cum melle ærugo, vel porri succus, aut cum mulso nitri paulum: atque ubi crusta a corpore jam recedit, eluenda auris aqua tepida est, quo facilius ea per se diducta oriculario specillo protrahatur.

## ORDO.

decoctum. Vermes emortui prolabuntur in primam partem auris, unde possunt educi facillime.

6. Sin foramen auris est compressum, et crassa sanies subest intus, quam optimum mel est addendum. Si id proficit parum, adjiciendum est p. ℥. ii. rasæ æruginis cyatho et dimidio mellis que incoquendum et utendum eo. Quoque iris cum melle proficit idem. Item galbani p. ℥. ii. myrrhæ et taurini fellis, singulorum p. ℥. = =. vini quantum est satis ad diluendam myrrham.

7. Vero ubi aliquis cœpit audire gravius, (quod maxime consuevit evenire post longos dolores capitis) oportet in primis considerare aurem ipsam: enim aut crusta, qualis innascitur super ulcera, aut coitus sordium apparebit. Si est crusta, aut calidum oleum, aut ærugo cum melle, vel succus porri, aut paulum nitri cum mulso est infundendum: atque ubi crusta jam recedit a corpore, auris est eluenda tepida aqua, quo ea, diducta facilius per se, protrahatur oriculario specillo.

## TRANSLATION.

be washed out with a decoction of horehound in wine. The dead worms glide forwards into the external opening, from whence they may be easily withdrawn.

6. But if the meatus externus be compressed, and a thick sanies retained there, the very best honey ought to be put into it. If this does but little good, of scraped verdigris p. ℥. ii. is to be added to a cupful and a half of honey: these are to be boiled together, and used. Also iris with honey has the same effect. Also galbanum p. ℥. ii. myrrh, ox-gall, of each p. ℥. = =; of wine as much as may be sufficient to dilute the myrrh.

7. When a person begins to experience a dulness of hearing, (which is a common consequence of long-continued aches,) in the first place, we ought to inspect the ear itself: for there will appear, either a crust, such as usually covers an ulcer, or a collection of sordes. If there be a crust, either warm oil must be poured in, or verdigris with honey, or leek-juice, or a little nitre with hydromel: and when the crusts have been detached from the cavity, the ear should be washed out with tepid water, by which means, the crust being spontaneously thrown off, may be extracted the more easily by the ear-probe.

Si sordes, eæque molles sunt, eodem specillo eximendæ sunt: at si duræ sunt, acetum et cum eo nitri paulum conjiciendum est; cum que emollitæ sunt, eodem modo elui aures, purgarique oportet. Quod si capitis gravitas manet, attondendum idem, et leniter, sed diu perfricandum est, adjecto vel irino vel laureo oleo, sic, ut utrilibet paulum aceti misceatur; tum diu ambulandum, leniterque post unctionem aqua calida caput fovendum; cibisque utendum ex imbecillissima et media materia; magisque assumendæ dilutæ potiones; nonnumquam gargarizandum est. Infundendum autem in aures castoreum cum aceto et laureo oleo et succo radiculae corticis; aut cucumeris agrestis succus, adjectis contritis rosæ foliis. Immaturæ quoque uvæ succus cum rosa instillatus, adversus surditatem satis proficit.

8. Aliud vitii genus est, ubi aures intra se ipsæ sonant. Atque hoc quoque fit, ne externum sonum accipiant. Levissimum est, ubi id ex gravedine est: pejus, ubi ex morbo, capitisve longis doloribus incidit: pessimum,

## ORDO.

Si sunt sordes, quæ eæ sunt molles, sunt eximendæ eodem specillo: at si sunt duræ, acetum et paulum nitri cum eo est conjiciendum; quæ cum sunt emollitæ, oportet aures elui, quæ purgari eodem modo. Quod si gravitas capitis manet, idem est attondendum, et (est) perfricandum leniter, sed diu, vel irino vel laureo oleo adjecto, sic ut paulum aceti misceatur utrilibet; tum (est) ambulandum diu, quæ caput fovendum leniter calida aqua, post unctionem; quæ (est) utendum cibis ex imbecillissima et media materia; quæ dilutæ potiones sunt assumendæ magis; quæ nonnumquam est gargarizandum. Autem castoreum cum aceto et laureo oleo et succo corticis radiculae (est) infundendum in aures; aut succus agrestis cucumeris, contritis foliis rosæ adjectis. Quoque succus immaturæ uvæ instillatus cum rosa proficit satis adversus surditatem.

8. Est aliud genus vitii, ubi aures ipsæ sonant intra se. Atque hoc quoque fit, ne accipiant externum sonum. Est levissimum, ubi id est ex gravedine: (est) pejus, ubi incidit ex morbo, vel longis doloribus capitis: (est)

## TRANSLATION.

If there be sordes, *cerumen* or *ear-wax*, and that too, soft, it should be removed by the same instrument: but if hard, vinegar and a little nitre with it must be injected; and when it is softened, the ear must be syringed and cleansed in the same manner. But if a sense of heaviness still remain in the head, it must be deprived of the hair, and gently rubbed for a long time, either with iris or laurel-oil, adding a little vinegar to either; then the patient should walk for a considerable time, and after anointing, the head should be fomented gently with warm water; and he should take the food of the weakest, and of the middle class, but more particularly diluted drinks; he should also gargle occasionally. Castor, with vinegar and laurel oil, and the juice of radish-rind, or the juice of wild cucumber, with the addition of powdered rose-leaves, must be infused into the ear. Also, the juice of unripe grapes, with rose-oil chopped in, is a very sufficient remedy for deafness.

8. There is another kind of disease, in which *tinnitus aurium*, or ringing of the ears, is heard within: and this impedes the impression of external sounds. When this arises from coryza, the case is but very slight: when it proceeds from some disease, or long-continued pains of the head, it is more serious: but should it

ubi, magnis morbis venientibus, maximeque comitali, provenit.

Si ex gravedine est, purgare aurem oportet, et spiritum continere, donec inde humor aliquis expumet. Si ex morbo vel capitis dolore, quod ad exercitationem, frictionem, perfusionem, gargarizationemque pertinet, eadem facienda sunt: cibus non utendum nisi extenuantibus: in aurem dandus radiculae succus cum rosa, vel cum succo radicis ex cucumere agresti; vel castoreum cum aceto, et laureo oleo.

Veratrum quoque ex aceto conteritur, deinde melle cocto excipitur, et inde collyrium factum in aurem demittitur. Si sine his coepit, ideoque novo metu terret, in aurem dari debet castoreum cum aceto, vel irino, aut laureo oleo; aut huic mixtum castoreum cum succo nucum amararum; aut myrrha et nitrum cum rosa et aceto.

Plus tamen in hoc quoque proficit victus ratio: eademque facienda sunt, quæ supra comprehendendi, cum majore quoque diligentia; et preterea, donec is sonus finiatur, a vino abstinendum.

## ORDO.

pessimum, ubi provenit, magnis morbis venientibus, quæ maxime comitali.

Si est ex gravedine, oportet purgare aurem, et continere spiritum, donec aliquis humor expumet inde. Si (est) ex morbo vel dolore capitis, quod pertinet ad exercitationem, frictionem, perfusionem, quæ gargarizationem: eadem sunt facienda, non (est) utendum cibus nisi extenuantibus: succus radiculae cum rosa, vel cum succo radicis ex agresti cucumere (est) dandus in aurem; vel castoreum cum aceto, et laureo oleo.

Veratrum quoque conteritur ex aceto, deinde excipitur cocto melle, et collyrium factum inde demittitur in aurem. Si (tinnitus) coepit sine his, quæ ideo terret novo metu, castoreum cum aceto, vel irino, aut laureo oleo debet dari in aurem; aut huic castoreum mixtum cum succo amararum nucum; aut myrrha et nitrum cum rosa et aceto.

Tamen quoque ratio victus proficit plus in hoc: quæ eadem sunt facienda, quæ comprehendendi supra, quoque cum majore diligentia: et preterea, donec is sonus finiatur, (est) abstinendum a vino.

## TRANSLATION.

supervene on the commencement of any severe disease, especially epilepsy, then it is most dangerous.

If it arise from a catarrh, it behoves the patient to cleanse the ear, and to retain his breath, until some frothy fluid escape from thence. If from any disease, or chronic pain in the head, as far as it regards exercise, friction, affusion, and gargling, the same rules must be observed *which are prescribed for dulness of hearing*: all his nourishment must be of an attenuating nature: the juice of radish with rose-oil, or with the root of wild cucumber, to be injected into the ear, or castoreum with vinegar and laurel-oil.

Hellebore is also triturated with vinegar, then incorporated with boiled honey, and a collyrium made, which is to be introduced into the ear. If this *ringing* arose without any of the causes just mentioned, and on that account give reason to dread the approach of a more terrible disease, then, castoreum with vinegar or iris-oil, or laurel-oil, ought to be infused into the ear; or castoreum mixed with the latter and the juice of bitter almonds; or myrrh and nitre with rose-oil and vinegar.

Yet in this malady a strict regimen is also more advantageous; and those remedies stated above, should also be followed with still greater diligence: besides which, the patient must abstain from wine, until the noise shall cease. But



Quod si simul et sonus est, et inflammatio, laureum oleum conjecisse abunde est, aut id, quod ex amaris nucibus exprimitur; quibus quidam vel castoreum, vel myrrham miscent.

9. Solet etiam interdum in aurem aliquid incidere, ut calculus, aliquodve animal. Si pulex intus est, compellendum eo lanæ paululum est; quo ipse is subit, et simul extrahitur. Si non est secutus, aliudve animal est, specillum lana involutum in resinam quam glutinosissimam, maximeque terebinthinam demittendum, idque in aurem conjiciendum, ibique vertendum est: utique enim comprehendet et eximet.

Sin aliquid exanime est, specillo oriculario protrahendum est, aut hamulo retuso paulum recurvato: si ista nihil proficiunt, potest eodem modo resina protrahi. Sternutamenta quoque admota id commode elidunt, aut oriculario clystere aqua vehementer intus compulsa.

Tabula quoque collocatur media inhærens, capitibus utrimque pendentibus, superque eam homo deligatur

#### ORDO.

Quod si est simul et sonus, et inflammatio, est abunde, conjecisse laureum oleum, aut id (oleum) quod exprimitur ex amaris nucibus; quibus quidam miscent vel castoreum, vel myrrham.

9. Interdum etiam aliquid solet incidere in aurem, ut calculus, ve aliquod animal. Si pulex est intus, paululum lanæ est compellendum (in) eo; quo is ipse subit, et extrahitur simul. Si non est secutus, ve est aliud animal, specillum involutum (in) lana (est) demittendum in quam glutinosissimam resinam, que maxime (in) terebinthinam, que id (est) conjiciendum in aurem, que est vertendum ibi: enim utique comprehendet, et eximet.

Sin est aliquid exanime, est protrahendum oriculario specillo, aut retuso hamulo paulum recurvato: si ista proficiunt nihil, potest protrahi resina eodem modo. Sternutamenta quoque admota, aut aqua vehementer compulsa intus oriculario clystere, commode elidunt id.

Quoque tabula collocatur, media inhærens, capitibus pendentibus utrimque, que homo deligatur

#### TRANSLATION.

if *tinnitus aurium* and inflammation exist simultaneously, it will be sufficient to inject laurel-oil, or that which is expressed from bitter almonds; to which some mix either castoreum or myrrh.

9. Sometimes also, a little stone, or some animal, may penetrate into the ear. If a flea have got into it, a little wool is to be introduced; in which it may take shelter, and be withdrawn. If it have not followed the wool, or should it be some other animal, a probe wrapped round with wool, and dipped in the most tenacious resin, particularly that of turpentine, is to be introduced into the ear, and turned round there: for it will assuredly seize and extract the animal.

But if it be some inanimate substance, it must be extracted by an ear-probe, or by a slightly curved blunt hook. If these means should not succeed, then it may be extracted by the resin in the manner above described. Sternutatories or water impelled forcibly into the ear by means of an ear-syringe, are also very proper applications to force such objects outwards.

There is also another method practised in such a case: a plank is to be placed in such a manner, that the middle or centre shall be fixed, the two extremities over-

in id latus versus, cujus auris eo modo laborat, sic, ut extra tabulam non emineat: tum malleo caput tabulæ, quod a pedibus est, feritur: atque ita concussa aure, id quod inest, excidit.

## ORDO.

super eam versus in id latus, auris cujus laborat eo modo, sic, ut non emineat extra tabulam: tum caput tabulæ, quod est a pedibus, feritur malleo: atque ita aure concussa, id quod inest, excidit.

## TRANSLATION.

hanging the centre prop; on this the patient is to be fastened with the affected ear towards the plank, in such a manner that the head may not project beyond the plank; then that end of the plank which is towards the feet is to be struck with a mallet, and thus the foreign body falls out, by the shock communicated to the ear.

## CAP. VIII.

DE NARIUM MORBIS, ET CURATIONIBUS.

## ORDO.

## CAP. VIII.

DE MORBIS NARIUM, ET CURATIONIBUS.

1. NARES vero exulceratas fovere oportet vapore aquæ calidæ. Id et spongia expressa atque admota fit, et subiecto vase oris angusti, calida aqua repleto. Post id fomentum, illinenda ulcera sunt, aut plumbi recremento, aut cerussa, aut argenti spuma; cum quodlibet horum aliquis conterit, eique, dum teritur, invicem vinum et oleum myrteum adjicit, donec mellis crassitudinem fecerit.

1. Oportet vero fovere exulceratas nares vapore calidæ aquæ. Et id fit spongia expressa atque admota, et vase angusti oris subiecto, repleto calida aqua. Post id fomentum, ulcera sunt illinenda, aut recremento plumbi, aut cerussa, aut spuma argenti; cum aliquis conterit quodlibet horum, que, dum teritur, adjicit invicem vinum et myrteum oleum ei, donec fecerit crassitudinem mellis.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

OF THE DISEASES OF THE NOSE, AND THEIR TREATMENT.

1. *ULCERATED* nostrils must be fomented with the vapour of hot water. This may be done either by a sponge squeezed out of hot water, and applied to the nose, or by putting a narrow-mouthed vessel filled with hot water under the nose. After this fomentation, the ulcers are to be dressed with either dross of lead, or with ceruse or litharge: whilst either of these is in the act of trituration, there may be added alternately wine and myrtle-oil, until it acquire the consistence of honey.

Sin autem ea ulcera circa os sunt, pluresque crustas et odorem fœdum habent; quod genus Græci *ὀζαϊνᾶν* appellant; sciri quidem debet, vix ei malo posse succurri: nihilominus tamen hæc tentari possunt; ut caput ad cutem tondeatur, assidueque vehementer perfricetur; multa calida aqua perfundatur; multa eidem ambulatione sit; cibus modicus, neque acer, neque valentissimus. Tum in narem ipsam mel cum exiguo modo resinæ terebinthinæ conjiciatur (quod specillo quoque involuto lana fit) attrahaturque spiritu is succus, donec in ore gustus ejus sentiatur: sub his enim crustæ resolvuntur, quæ tum per sternutamenta elidi debent.

Puris ulceribus vapor aquæ calidæ subjiciendus est: deinde adhibendum aut lycium ex vino dilutum, aut amurca, aut omphacium, aut menthæ, aut marrubii succus; aut atramentum sutorium, quod candefactum, deinde contritum sit; aut interior scillæ pars contrita; sic, ut horum cuilibet mel adjiciatur: cujus in ceteris admodum exigua pars esse debet; in atramento sutorio tanta, ut ea mixtura liquida sit; cum scilla utique pars major.

## ORDO.

Autem sin ea ulcera sunt circa os, que habent plures crustas et fœdum odorem; quod genus Græci appellant *ὀζαϊνᾶν* (ozænæ); quidem debet sciri, vix posse succurri ei malo: tamen nihilominus hæc possunt tentari; ut caput tondeatur ad cutem, perfricetur assidue que vehementer; multa calida aqua perfundatur; multa ambulatione sit eidem; modicus cibus, neque acer, neque valentissimus. Tum mel cum exiguo modo terebinthinæ resinæ conjiciatur in narem ipsam, (quod quoque fit specillo involuto lana) que is succus attrahatur spiritu, donec gustus ejus sentiatur in ore: enim sub his crustæ resolvuntur, quæ tum debent elidi per sternutamenta.

Vapor calidæ aquæ est subjiciendus puris ulceribus: deinde aut lycium dilutum ex vino, aut amurca, aut omphacium, aut succus menthæ, aut marrubii (est) adhibendum; aut sutorium atramentum, quod sit candefactum, deinde contritum; aut interior pars scillæ contrita; sic ut mel adjiciatur cuilibet horum: cujus admodum exigua pars debet esse in ceteris; tanta in sutorio atramento, ut ea mixtura sit liquida; utique cum scilla, (debet esse) pars major.

## TRANSLATION.

But if these ulcers be about the nasal bone, and have several crusts and a fetid smell, which the Greeks call *Ozainæ*, it ought to be known that this disease scarcely admits of a remedy: however, the following things ought to be tried: Let the hair of the head be cut close to the skin: the head itself be diligently and forcibly rubbed, and well fomented with warm water: let the patient walk much, eat sparingly of food, neither acrid, nor too nutritious. Then let honey, with a little turpentine resin be put into the nose itself: (which is done by a probe being wrapped round with some wool,) and this moisture may be drawn in by the breath, until the taste of it be perceived in the mouth: for by these means the crusts are frequently detached, which ought then to be forced out by sneezing.

The ulcers being now freed from their crusts, are to be submitted to the vapour of hot water: afterwards lycium diluted with wine, or the lees of oil, or verjuice, or mint-juice, or that of horehound must be applied; or the sulphate of copper burnt white, and then pulverized, or the inner part of squills bruised; so that to any of these honey may be added: a very small part of which ought to be in the others: of the vitriol, just as much as will make the mixture liquid; of the squills indeed



Involvendumque lana specillum est, et in eo medicamento tingendum, eo-que ulcera implenda sunt: rursusque linamentum involutum et oblongum eodem medicamento illinendum, demittendumque in narem, et ab inferiore parte leniter deligandum. Idque per hiemem et ver bis die; per æstatem et autumnum, ter fieri debet.

2. Interdum vero in naribus etiam carunculæ quædam similes muliebribus mammis nascuntur, æque imis partibus, quæ carnosissimæ sunt, inhærent. Has curare oportet medicamentis adurentibus, sub quibus ex toto consumuntur.

Polypus vero est caruncula, modo alba, modo subrubra, quæ narium ossibus inhæret; ac modo ad labra tendens narem implet, modo retro per id foramen, quo spiritus a naribus ad fauces descendit, adeo increscit, ut post uvam conspici possit; strangulatque hominem, maxime Austro aut Euro flante: fereque mollis est, raro dura; eaque magis spiritum impedit, et nares dilatat; quæ fere καρκινώδης est; itaque attingi non debet.

## ORDO.

Que specillum est involvendum lana, et tingendum in eo medicamento, que ulcera sunt implenda eo: que rursus linamentum involutum et oblongum (est) illinendum eodem medicamento, que (est) demittendum in narem, et deligandum leniter ab inferiore parte. Que id debet fieri bis die, per hiemem et ver; ter (die) per æstatem et autumnum.

2. Vero interdum quædam carunculæ similes muliebribus mammis, nascuntur etiam in naribus, que eæ inhærent imis partibus, quæ sunt carnosissimæ. Oportet curare has adurentibus medicamentis, sub quibus consumuntur ex toto.

Vero Polypus est caruncula, modo alba, modo subrubra, quæ inhæret ossibus narium; ac modo tendens ad labra, implet narem, modo increscit adeo retro, per id foramen, quo spiritus descendit a naribus ad fauces, ut possit conspici post uvam; que strangulat hominem, maxime Austro aut Euro flante: que est fere mollis, raro dura; que ea impedit spiritum magis, et dilatat nares; quæ est fere καρκινώδης (carcinódes); itaque non debet attingi.

## TRANSLATION.

the greater part. Now the extremity of a probe is to be enveloped in wool, and dipped in the medicine with which we are to dress the ulcers: and again, a bit of linen rag rolled up in the form of an oblong tent, and impregnated with the same preparation, is to be introduced into the nostrils, and gently secured at the inferior part. These ought to be renewed twice a day during winter and spring, and thrice during the summer and autumn.

2. Sometimes indeed fleshy excrescences (*Polypi*) arise in the nares, resembling the nipple of the female breast. These carunculæ adhere to the inferior parts of the nostrils, where they are most fleshy. They ought to be treated by caustics, in order that they may be entirely destroyed.

Now a Polypus is a fleshy excrescence, sometimes white, at other times inclining to red, adhering to the nasal bones and sometimes extending towards the lips, it fills up the nostril: sometimes it increases posteriorly, through that aperture by which the breath descends from the nostrils to the fauces, where it may be seen behind the uvula, and almost suffocates the patient, especially while the south or easterly winds blow; it is generally soft, seldom hard; and this latter impedes the breathing more, and dilates the nostrils: it is generally cancerous; therefore it ought not to be touched.

Illud aliud genus fere quidem ferro curatur; interdum tamen inarescit, si addita in narem per linamentum aut penicillum ea compositio est, quæ habet minii Sinopici, chalcitidis, calcis, sandarachæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. atramenti sutorii p. ℥. ii.

## ORDO.

Illud aliud genus quidem fere curatur ferro; tamen interdum inarescit, si ea compositio est addita in narem per linamentum aut specillum, quæ habet Sinopici minii, chalcitidis, calcis, sandarachæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. sutorii atramenti p. ℥. ii.

## TRANSLATION.

The other kind indeed is generally removed by an operation; yet sometimes it is to be dried up, if there be introduced into the nostril a little linen *in form of* a tent, with that composition which contains of Sinopian minium, of chalcitis, of lime, of sandarach, of each p. ℥. i. of vitriol p. ℥. ii.

## CAP. IX.

## DE DENTII DOLORE, ET CURATIONIBUS.

IN dentium autem dolore, qui ipse quoque maximis tormentis annumerari potest, vinum ex toto circumcidendum est: cibo quoque primo abstinendum, deinde eo modico mollique utendum, ne mandentis dentes irriter: tum extrinsecus admoventus per spongiam vapor aquæ calidæ, imponendumque ceratum ex cyprino aut irino factum, lanaque id comprehendendum, caputque velandum est.

## ORDO.

## CAP. IX.

## DE DOLORE DENTII, ET CURATIONIBUS.

AUTEM in dolore dentium, qui quoque ipse possit annumerari maximis tormentis, vinum est circumcidendum ex toto: primo quoque (est) abstinendum cibo, deinde utendum eo modico que molli, ne irriter dentes mandentis: tum vapor calidæ aquæ (est) admoventus extrinsecus per spongiam, que ceratum (est) imponendum, factum ex cyprino aut irino, que id (est) comprehendendum lana, que caput est velandum.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

## OF TOOTH-ACHE, AND ITS TREATMENT.

Now the tooth-ache in itself may be justly admitted to be the greatest of torments, at which time, wine must be strictly avoided: at first even food must be withheld, afterwards it is to be given in moderate portions, and soft, lest it irritate the teeth during mastication; then the steam of hot water is to be applied externally by means of a sponge, and a cerate made of cyprine, or iris-oil spread upon wool and laid on, keeping the head well covered.

Quod si gravior dolor est, utiliter et alvus ducitur, et calida cataplasmata super maxillam injiciuntur, et ore humor calidus cum medicamentis aliquibus continetur, sæpiusque mutatur. Cujus rei causa et quinquefolii radix in vino mixto coquitur; et hyoscyami radix vel in posca, vel in vino mixto coquitur, sic, ut paulum his salis adjiciatur; et papaveris non nimium aridi cortices, et mandragoræ radix, eodem modo.

Sed in his tribus utique vitandum est, ne, quod haustum erit, devoretur. Ex populo quoque alba cortex radicis in hunc usum in vino mixto recte coquitur; et in aceto cornu cervini ramentum; et nepeta cum teda pingui, ac ficu item pingui vel in mulso, vel in aceto et melle; ex quibus cum ficus decocta est, is humor percolatur. Specillum quoque lana involutum in calidum oleum demittitur, eoque ipse dens fovetur.

Quin etiam quædam quasi cataplasmata in dentem ipsum illinuntur: ad quem usum ex malo Punico acido atque arido malicorii pars interior cum pari portione et gallæ et pinei corticis

## ORDO.

Quod si dolor est gravior, et alvus ducitur utiliter, et calida cataplasmata injiciuntur super maxillam, et calidus humor cum aliquibus medicamentis continetur (in) ore, que mutatur sæpius. Causa cujus rei et radix quinquefolii coquitur in mixto vino; et radix hyoscyami coquitur vel in posca, vel in mixto vino, sic, ut paulum salis adjiciatur his; et cortices non nimium aridi papaveris, et radix mandragoræ, eodem modo.

Sed utique in his tribus est vitandum, ne, quod haustum erit, devoretur. Quoque cortex radicis ex alba populo coquitur recte in mixto vino in hunc usum: et ramentum cervini cornu in aceto; et nepeta cum pingui teda, ac item pingui ficu vel in mulso, vel in aceto et melle; ex quibus cum ficus est decocta, is humor percolatur. Quoque specillum involutum lana demittitur in calidum oleum, que dens ipse fovetur eo.

Quin etiam quædam quasi cataplasmata illinuntur in dentem ipsum: ad quem usum interior pars malicorii ex acido atque arido Punico malo conteritur cum pari portione et gallæ et corticis pinei,

## TRANSLATION.

But if the pain be more severe, a clyster will be useful, and hot cataplasms applied over the cheek, also any hot medicinal liquor held in the mouth, and changed frequently. For which purpose a decoction of cinquefoil-root in mixed wine is used: and the henbane root is boiled either in posca, or in diluted wine, provided a little salt be added to either of these; and poppy bark not over-dry, and mandrake root in the same proportion.

But in these three, care must be taken not to swallow what may be in the mouth. The root-bark of white poplar, boiled in diluted wine, answers this purpose very well: or hartshorn-shavings in vinegar, and cat-mint with juicy pine-wood (5) and also a mellow fig, either in hydromel, or in vinegar and honey: from which the fig having been boiled, the liquor is to be strained. Also a probe wrapped with wool is dipped in hot oil, and the tooth itself fomented with it.

But there are some applications having the properties of cataplasms, applied to the tooth itself. For which purpose the inner part of an acid and dry pomegranate rind is bruised with an equal portion both of nut-gall and pine-



conteritur, misceturque his minium; eaque contrita aqua pluviatili coguntur: aut panacis, papaveris lacrimæ, peucedani, uvæ taminæ sine seminibus pares portiones conteruntur: aut galbani partes tres, papaveris lacrimæ pars quarta.

Quidquid dentibus admotum est, nihilominus supra maxillam ceratum, quale supra posui, esse debet, lana obtectum. Quidam etiam myrrhæ, cardamomi, singulorum p. ℥. i. croci, pyrethri, ficorum partes, singulorum p. ℥. iv. sinapis p. ℥. viii. contrita linteolo illinunt, imponuntque in humero partis ejus, qua dens dolet; si is superior est, a scapulis; si inferior, a pectore; idque dolorem levat; et, cum levavit, protinus submovendum est.

Si vero exesus est dens, festinare ad eximendum eum, nisi res coegit, non est necesse: sed tum omnibus fomentis, quæ supra posita sunt, adjiciendæ quædam valentiores compositiones sunt, quæ dolorem levant; qualis fere est. Habet autem papaveris lacrimæ p. ℥. i. piperis p. ℥. ii. soreos p. ℥. x. quæ contrita galbano excipiuntur, id-

## ORDO.

que minium miscetur his; que ea contrita coguntur pluviatili aqua: aut pares portiones panacis, lacrimæ papaveris, peucedani, taminæ uvæ sine seminibus, conteruntur: aut tres partes galbani, quarta pars lacrimæ papaveris.

Quidquid est admotum dentibus, nihilominus ceratum, quale posui supra, obtectum lana, debet esse supra maxillam. Quidam etiam, illinunt (hæc medicamenta) contrita, linteolo, myrrhæ, cardamomi, singulorum p. ℥. i. croci, pyrethri, partes ficorum, singulorum p. ℥. iv. sinapis p. ℥. viii. que imponunt in humero ejus partis, qua dens dolet; si is est superior, a scapulis; si inferior, a pectore; que id levat dolorem; et, cum levavit, est submovendum protinus.

Vero si dens est exesus, non est necesse festinare ad eximendum eum, nisi res coegit: sed tum quædam valentiores compositiones quæ levant dolorem; sunt adjiciendæ omnibus fomentis, quæ sunt posita supra, qualis fere est. Autem habet lacrimæ papaveris p. ℥. i. piperis p. ℥. ii. soreos p. ℥. x. quæ contrita, excipi-

## TRANSLATION.

bark, and minium mixed with them: these being all triturated together, are to be reduced to a proper consistence by rain water: or panaces, poppy tears, peucedanum, stavesacre without the seeds, powdered, in equal proportions: or three parts of galbanum, a fourth part of poppy tears.

Whatever is applied to the teeth, a cerate such as I have described above, covered with wool, ought, nevertheless, to be kept over the cheek. Some also bruise and spread upon linen, of myrrh, of cardamom, of each p. ℥. i. of saffron, of pellitory, of parts of figs, of each p. ℥. iv. of mustard p. ℥. viii. and apply it to the arm of the side affected; if it be on the superior maxillary, to the scapula; in the inferior maxillary, to the breast; and this relieves the pain: and when the pain has been relieved, it should be removed immediately.

Now if the tooth be carious, there is no necessity to hasten its extraction; unless the case be urgent: but then some powerful compositions should be added to all the fomentations, which have been mentioned above in order to relieve the pain. Such as the following. It contains of poppy tears p. ℥. i. of pepper p. ℥. ii. of sory (6) p. ℥. x. which is incorporated with galbanum, and placed round the af-

que circumdatur. Aut Menemachi, maxime ad maxillares dentes; in qua sunt, croci p.  $\times$ . i. cardamomi, thuris fuliginis, ficorum partes, pyrethri, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. sinapis p.  $\times$ . viii.

Quidam autem miscent pyrethri, piperis, elaterii, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. aluminis scissilis, papaveris lacrimæ, uvæ taminæ, sulphuris ignem non experti, bituminis, lauri baccarum, sinapis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. Quod si dolor eximi eum cogit, et piperis semen cortice liberatum, et eodem modo bacca hederæ conjecta in ejus foramen, dentem findit, isque per testas excidet; et plani piscis, quam pastinacam nostri, *τρυνῶνα* Græci vocant, aculeus torretur, deinde conteritur, resinaque excipitur, quæ denti circumdata hunc solvit: et alumen scissile in id foramen conjectum dentem citat.

Sed id tamen involutum lanula demitti commodius est, quia sic, dente servato, dolorem levat. Hæc a medicis accepta sunt. Sed agrestium experimento cognitum est, cum dens dolet, herbam mentastrum cum suis radicibus evelli debere, et in pelvem mitti, supraque aquam infundi, collo-

## ORDO.

untur galbano, que id circumdatur. Aut Menemachi, maxime ad maxillares dentes; in qua sunt croci p.  $\times$ . i. cardamomi, fuliginis thuris, partes ficorum, pyrethri, singulorum p.  $\times$ . iv. sinapis p.  $\times$ . viii.

Autem quidam miscent pyrethri, piperis, elaterii, singulorum p.  $\times$ . i. scissilis aluminis, lacrimæ papaveris, taminæ uvæ, sulphuris non experti ignem, bituminis, baccarum lauri, sinapis, singulorum p.  $\times$ . ii. Quod si dolor cogit eum eximi, et semen piperis liberatum cortice, et bacca hederæ conjecta eodem modo in foramen ejus, findit dentem, que is excidet per testas; et aculeus plani piscis, quam nostri vocant pastinacam, Græci (vocant) *τρυνῶνα* (trygóna), torretur, deinde conteritur, que excipitur resina, quæ circumdata denti, solvit hunc: et scissile alumen conjectum in id foramen, citat dentem.

Sed tamen, est commodius id demitti involutum lanula, quia sic, dente servato, levat dolorem. Hæc sunt accepta a medicis. Sed est cognitum experimento agrestium, cum dens dolet, herbam mentastrum debere evelli cum suis radicibus, et mitti in pelvem, que aquam infundi supra, que collo-

## TRANSLATION.

fected tooth. Or that preparation of Menemachus, which he composed for the molar teeth; in which there are of saffron p.  $\times$ . i. of cardamom, of soot, of frankincense, parts of figs, of pellitory, of each p.  $\times$ . iv. of mustard p.  $\times$ . viii.

Some mix of pellitory, of pepper, of elaterium, of each p.  $\times$ . i. of scissile alum, of poppy tears, of stavesacre, of crude sulphur, of bitumen, of laurel berries, of mustard, of each p.  $\times$ . ii. If the pain render extraction necessary, a pepper corn, or an ivy berry, deprived of its bark, and introduced in the cavity of the tooth, splits it, and it will fall out in scales: also the prickle of that flat fish, which our countrymen call Pastinaca, the Greeks Trygón, is roasted, afterwards bruised and mixed up with resin, which being placed around the tooth, loosens it: also scissile alum being put into the opening excites the detachment of it.

But it will be more convenient that this should be introduced, wrapped in a little wool, because by this means, the tooth may be preserved, and the pain relieved. These are the remedies authorized by physicians. But our rustics have discovered by experience, that when a tooth is painful, the herb wild mint should be torn up by the roots, put into a basin, with water poured over it, and placed beside the pa-

carique juxta sedentem hominem undique veste contactum; tum in pelvem candentes silices demitti, sic, ut aqua tegantur, hominemque eum hiantem ore vaporem excipere, ut supra dictum est, undique inclusum. Nam et sudor plurimus sequitur, et per os continens pituita defluit; idque sæpe longiorem, semper annuam valetudinem bonam præstat.

## ORDO.

cari juxta sedentem hominem contactum undique veste; tum candentes silices demitti in pelvem, sic ut tegantur aqua, que hominem inclusum undique, ut est supra dictum, excipere eum vaporem hiantem ore. Nam et plurimus sudor sequitur, et continens pituita defluit per os; que id semper præstat annuam valetudinem, sæpe longiorem (valetudinem).

## TRANSLATION.

tient, in a sitting posture, covered all round with a garment: then red-hot flints are to be thrown into the basin, so as to be covered with the water, and the patient, closed in as above directed, should inhale the steam with open mouth. For then a copious perspiration follows, and a continuous flow of saliva is poured from the mouth: this remedy always affords good health for one year, frequently longer.

## CAP. X.

## DE TONSILLIS, ET EARUM CURA.

Si vero tonsillæ sine exulceratione per inflammationem intumuerunt, caput velandum est; extrinsecus is locus vapore calido fovendus; multa ambulatione utendum; caput in lecto sublimè habendum; gargarizandumque reprimentibus. Radix quoque ea, quam dulcem appellant, contusa et in passo mulsove decocta, idem præstat.

## ORDO.

## CAP. X.

## DE TONSILLIS, ET CURA EARUM.

VERO si tonsillæ intumuerunt per inflammationem sine exulceratione, caput est velandum; is locus (est) fovendus extrinsecus calida vapore; (est) utendum multa ambulatione; habendum caput sublimè in lecto; que gargarizandum reprimentibus. Quoque ea radix, quam appellant dulcem, contusa, et decocta in passo ve mulso, præstat idem. Que non est alienum eas

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

## THE DISEASES OF THE TONSILS, AND THEIR TREATMENT.

If the tonsils have become swollen through inflammation without ulceration; the head must be covered; external fomentations are to be applied to that part by the vapour of hot water: the patient must walk much: the head must be held high in bed, and a gargle with astringent medicines given. Also that root which they call sweet, *liquorice*, bruised and boiled in passum, or in hydromel will produce the same



Leniterque quibusdam medicamentis eas illini non alienum est; quæ hoc modo fiunt. Ex malo Punico dulci succus exprimitur, et ejus sextarius in leni igne coquitur, donec ei mellis crassitudo sit; tum croci, myrrhæ, aluminis scissilis, singulorum p. ℥. ii. per se conteruntur, paulatimque his adjiciuntur vini lenis cyathi duo, mellis unus; deinde priori succo ista miscentur, et rursus leniter incoquantur: aut ejusdem succi sextarius eodem modo coquitur, atque eadem ratione trita hæc adjiciuntur; nardi p. ℥. —. omphacii p. ℥. i. cinnamomi, myrrhæ, casiae, singulorum p. ℥. i. Eadem autem hæc et auribus et naribus purulentis accommodata sunt. Cibus in hac quoque valetudine lenis esse debet, ne exasperet.

Quod si tanta inflammatio est, ut spiritum impediat, in lecto conquiescendum; cibo abstinendum, neque assumendum quidquam præter aquam calidam est; alvus quoque ducenda est; gargarizandum ex fico et mulso; illinendum mel cum omphacio; extrinsecus admovendus, sed aliquanto di-

## ORDO.

illini leviter quibusdam medicamentis; quæ fiunt hoc modo. Succus exprimitur ex dulci Punico malo, et sextarius ejus coquitur in leni igne, donec sit ei crassitudo mellis; tum croci, myrrhæ, scissilis aluminis, singulorum p. ℥. ii. conteruntur per se, que duo cyathi lenis vini, (et) unus (cyathus) mellis adjiciuntur paulatim his; deinde ista miscentur priori succo, et coquantur leniter rursus: aut sextarius ejusdem succi coquitur eodem modo, atque hæc trita eadem ratione adjiciuntur; nardi p. ℥. —. omphacii p. ℥. i. cinnamomi, myrrhæ, casiae, singulorum p. ℥. i. Autem hæc eadem sunt accommodata et purulentis auribus et naribus. Cibus quoque in hac valetudine debet esse lenis, ne exasperet.

Quod si inflammatio est tanta, ut impediat spiritum, (est) conquiescendum in lecto; est abstinendum cibo, neque (est) assumendum quidquam præter calidam aquam; quoque alvus est ducenda; (est) gargarizandum ex fico et mulso; mel cum omphacio (est) illinendum; calidus vapor (est) admovendus extrinsecus, sed

## TRANSLATION.

effect. It will not be improper to touch *the tonsils* gently with some medicines; which are made in this manner.

The juice of a sweet pomegranate is expressed, and a sextarius of it is boiled on a gentle fire, until it acquires the thickness of honey; then of saffron, of myrrh, of Scissile alum, of each p. ℥. ii. these are powdered separately, and two cyathi of mild wine, and one of honey, gradually added to them: afterwards these ingredients are to be mixed with the former juice and again boiled gently; or a sextarius of the same juice is to be boiled in the same manner; and these articles being triturated in the same manner are to be added: of nard p. ℥. —. of verjuice p. ℥. i. of myrrh, of cassia, of each p. ℥. i. Now the same medicines are employed both for purulent ears and nostrils. Also the food ought to be mild in this malady, lest it may irritate.

But if the inflammation be so great, that it may prevent the breathing, the patient should rest in his bed, abstain from food, nor should he take anything except hot water, his bowels also should be relieved; he should gargarize with figs and mulse,

utius, vapor calidus, donec ea suppurant, et per se aperiantur; si pure substantive non rumpuntur hi tumores, incidendi sunt: deinde ex mulso calido gargarizandum.

At si modicus quidem tumor, sed exulceratio est, furfurum cremori ad gargarizandum paulum mellis adjiciendum est, illinendaque ulcera hoc medicamento: passi quam dulcissimi tres heminæ ad unam coquuntur; tum adjicitur thuris p. Ⅹ. i. croci, myrrhæ, singulorum p. Ⅹ. Ⅰ. leniterque omnia rursus fervescent. Ubi pura ulcera sunt, eodem furfurum cremore, vel lacte gargarizandum est. Atque hic quoque cibus lenibus opus est; quibus adjici dulce vinum potest.

## ORDO.

aliquanto diutius, donec ea suppurant, et aperiantur per se. Si pure substantive, hi tumores non rumpuntur, sunt incidendi: deinde, (est) gargarizandum ex calida mulso.

At si quidem est modicus tumor, sed (est) exulceratio, paulum mellis est adjiciendum cremori furfurum ad gargarizandum, que ulcera (sunt) illinenda hoc medicamento: tres heminæ quam dulcissimi passi coquuntur ad unam; tum adjicitur thuris p. Ⅹ. i. croci, myrrhæ, singulorum p. Ⅹ. Ⅰ. que omnia fervescent leniter rursus. Ubi ulcera sunt pura, est gargarizandum eodem cremore furfurum, vel lacte. Atque hic quoque est opus lenibus cibus; quibus dulce vinum potest adjici.

## TRANSLATION.

and the part should be touched with honey and verjuice; hot vapour should be applied externally, but for a little longer time, until the tumours suppurate and break spontaneously. If pus be contained within, and these humours do not burst, they must be opened. Afterwards the patient must gargle with warm hydromel.

But if the swelling be moderate with ulceration, a little honey must be added to the cream of bran for a gargarism, and the ulcers anointed with the following medicines: three heminæ of the very sweetest raisin wine are to be boiled down to one: then of frankincense p. Ⅹ. i. of saffron, of myrrh, of each p. Ⅹ. Ⅰ. and all gradually warmed again. When the ulcers are clean, he must gargle with the same cream of bran, or with milk. And here also there is a necessity for a mild diet; to which a little sweet wine may be added.

## CAP. XI.

DE ORIS ULCERIBUS, ET CURA-  
TIONIBUS.

ULCERA autem oris, si cum inflammatione sunt, et parum pura ac rubicunda sunt, optime iis medicamentis curantur, quæ supra posita ex malis Punicis fiunt: continendusque sæpe ore reprimens cremor est, cui paulum mellis sit adjectum. Utendum ambulationibus, et non acri cibo.

Simul atque vero pura ulcera esse cœperunt, lenis humor, interdum etiam quam optima aqua ore continenda est: prodestque assumptum purum vinum, pleniorque cibus, dum acribus vacet: inspergigue ulcera debent alumine scissili, cui dimidio plus gallæ immaturæ sit adjectum.

Si jam crustas habent, quales in adustis esse consuerunt, adhibendæ

## ORDO.

## CAP. XI.

DE ULCERIBUS ORIS ET CURA-  
TIONIBUS.

AUTEM ulcera oris, si sunt cum inflammatione, et sunt parum pura ac rubicunda, curantur optime iis medicamentis, posita supra, quæ fiunt ex Punicis malis: que reprimens cremor est continendus sæpe ore, cui paulum mellis sit adjectum. (Est) utendum ambulationibus, et non acri cibo.

Vero simul atque ulcera cœperunt esse pura, lenis humor, etiam interdum quam optima aqua est continenda ore: que purum vinum assumptum, que plenior cibus, dum vacet acribus, prodest: que ulcera debent inspergi scissili alumine, cui plus dimidio immaturæ gallæ sit adjectum.

Si jam habent crustas, quales consuerunt esse in adustis, eæ compositiones sunt adhibendæ,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XI.

## OF ULCERS IN THE MOUTH, AND THEIR TREATMENT.

Now ulcers of the mouth, accompanied by inflammation, and being foul and red, are best treated by the applications prepared from pomegranates, as above mentioned: and an astringent cream should be retained in the mouth frequently, with the addition of a little honey; the patient must walk, and avoid all acrid food.

But as soon as the ulcers have begun to look clean, a mild liquid, sometimes even pure water, is to be held in the mouth; pure wine and a fuller diet being taken, will be serviceable, provided it be free from acrid aliments: the ulcers ought to be sprinkled with scissile alum, to which half the quantity of nut-gall is to be added.

If they have formed crusts, resembling the eschars usually following burns,



sunt eæ compositiones, quas Græci ἀνθηρὰς nominant. Junci quadrati, myrrhæ, sandarachæ, aluminis, pares portiones : aut croci, myrrhæ, singulorum p. ℥. ii. iridis, aluminis scissilis, sandarachæ, singulorum p. ℥. iv. junci quadrati p. ℥. viii. aut gallæ, myrrhæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. aluminis scissilis p. ℥. ii. rosæ foliorum p. ℥. iv. Quidam autem croci p. ℥. ʒ. aluminis scissilis, myrrhæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. sandarachæ p. ℥. ii. junci quadrati p. ℥. iv. miscent. Priora arida insperguntur ; hoc cum melle illinitur ; neque ulceribus tantum, sed etiam tonsillis.

Verum ea longe periculosissima sunt ulcera, quas ἄφθας Græci appellant ; sed in pueris : hos enim sæpe consumunt. In viris et mulieribus idem periculum non est. Hæc ulcera a gingivis incipiunt : deinde palatum, totumque os occupant : tum ad uvam faucesque descendunt ; quibus obsessis, non facile fit, ut puer convalescat. Ac miserius etiam est, si lactens adhuc infans est ; quo minus imperari remedium aliquod potest.

## ORDO.

quas Græci nominant ἀνθηρὰς (antheræ). Pares portiones quadrati junci, myrrhæ, sandarachæ, aluminis : aut croci, myrrhæ, singulorum p. ℥. ii. iridis, scissilis aluminis, sandarachæ, singulorum p. ℥. iv. quadrati junci p. ℥. viii. aut gallæ, myrrhæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. scissilis aluminis p. ℥. ii. foliorum rosæ p. ℥. iv. Autem quidam miscent croci p. ℥. ʒ, scissilis aluminis, myrrhæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. sandarachæ p. ℥. ii. quadrati junci p. ℥. iv. Priora insperguntur arida ; hoc illinitur cum melle ; neque (illinitur) ulceribus tantum, sed etiam tonsillis.

Verum ea ulcera sunt longe periculosissima, quas Græci appellant ἄφθας (aphthæ) ; sed in pueris : enim sæpe consumunt hos. Non est idem periculum in viris et mulieribus. Hæc ulcera incipiunt a gingivis : deinde occupant palatum que totum os : tum descendunt ad uvam que fauces ; quibus obsessis, non fit facile, ut puer convalescat. Ac est etiam miserius, si infans est adhuc lactens ; quo aliquod remedium potest minus imperari.

## TRANSLATION.

those compositions are to be applied which the Greeks call Antheræ. Take of the square bulrush, of myrrh, of sandarach, of alum, equal portions : or of saffron, of myrrh, of each p. ℥. ii. of iris, of scissile alum, of sandarach, of each p. ℥. iv. of round bulrush p. ℥. viii. or of nut-galls, of myrrh, of each p. ℥. i. — of scissile alum, p. ℥. ii. of rose leaves p. ℥. iv. Some mix of saffron p. ℥. ʒ. of scissile alum, of myrrh, of each p. ℥. i. of sandarach p. ℥. ii. of square bulrush p. ℥. iv. The former are to be sprinkled on dry, this latter is to be applied with honey ; and not only for ulcers, but also for the tonsils.

But the most dangerous ulcers by far, are those which the Greeks call Aphthæ ; but only in children, for they often carry them off. In men and women there is not the same danger. These ulcers begin on the gums : afterwards they occupy the palate, and the whole mouth : then they descend to the uvula and fauces, which being attacked, will render it difficult for the child to recover. And it is even more deplorable, if the infant be still sucking, because it is the more difficult to apply a remedy.

Sed in primis nutrix cogenda est exerceri et ambulationibus, et iis operibus, quæ superiores partes movent: mittenda in balneum, jubendaque ibi calida aqua mammas perfundere: tum alenda cibus lenibus, et iis qui non facile corrumpuntur; potione, si febricitat puer, aquæ; si sine febre est, vini diluti; ac si alvus nutrici subsistit, ducenda est. Si pituita in os ejus coit, vomere debet.

Tum ipsa ulcera perungenda sunt melle, cui rhus, quem Syriacum vocant, aut amaræ nuces adjunctæ sunt: vel mixtis inter se rosæ foliis aridis, pineis nucleis, menthæ coliculo, melle: vel eo medicamento, quod ex moris fit; quorum succus eodem modo, quo Punici mali, ad mellis crassitudinem coquitur, eademque ratione ei crocum, myrrha, alumen, vinum, mel miscetur. Neque quidquam dandum, a quo humor evocari possit. Si vero jam firmior puer est, gargarizare debet iis fere, quæ supra comprehensa sunt. Ac, si lenia medicamenta in eo parum proficiunt, adhibenda sunt ea, quæ adurendo crustas ulceribus inducant;

## ORDO.

Sed in primis nutrix est cogenda exerceri et ambulationibus, et iis operibus, quæ movent superiores partes: (est) mittenda in balneum, que ibi (est) jubenda perfundere mammas calida aqua: tum alenda lenibus cibus, et iis (cibus) qui non corrumpuntur facile; potione aquæ, si puer febricitat; si (puer) est sine febre, (potione) diluti vini; ac si alvus subsistit nutrici, est ducenda. Si pituita coit in os ejus, debet vomere.

Tum ulcera ipsa sunt perungenda melle, cui rhus, quem vocant Syriacum, aut amaræ nuces sunt adjunctæ: vel (ulcera sunt perungenda) aridis foliis rosæ, pineis nucleis, coliculo menthæ, melle mixtis inter se: vel eo medicamento, quod fit ex moris; succus quorum coquitur eodem modo, quo succus Punici mali, ad crassitudinem mellis, que crocum, myrrha, alumen, vinum, mel miscetur ei eadem ratione. Neque (est) quidquam dandum, a quo humor possit evocari. Vero si puer est jam firmior, debet fere gargarizare iis, quæ sunt comprehensa supra. Ac, si lenia medicamenta proficiunt parum in eo, ea sunt adhibenda, quæ adurendo inducant crustas ulceribus; quale

## TRANSLATION.

In the first place, the nurse must be forced to use exercise, both by walking and by such employments as may bring the upper extremities into motion: she must enter the bath, and while there, let her foment the breasts with hot water: then be alimeted with mild food, and such as are not easily corrupted, and drink water, if the child have fever: if it be without fever, then she may have diluted wine: and if the bowels be constipated, she must take an enema: if phlegm collect in her mouth, she ought to vomit.

Then, *for the infant*, the ulcers are to be anointed with honey, to which sumach has been added, which they call the Syrian rhus, or bitter almonds; or with a mixture of dry rose leaves, pine kernels, small mint stalks, incorporated with honey; or with that preparation which is made out of mulberries, the juice of which is boiled in the same manner as the pomegranates are, until it acquire the consistence of honey, and in the same proportion saffron, myrrh, alum, wine, and honey are to be mixed with it. Neither is any thing to be given by which the discharge may be increased. If the child be now of sufficient strength, he ought to be gargled with those mixtures which are comprehended above. And if mild applications avail but little on him, those are to be applied, which by their caustic

quale est scissile alumen, vel chalcitis, vel atramentum sutorium. Prodest etiam fames et abstinencia, quanta maxima imperari potest. Cibus esse debet lenis: ad purganda tamen ulcera, interdum caseus ex melle recte datur.

## ORDO.

est scissile alumen, vel chalcitis, vel sutorium atramentum. Etiam fames et abstinencia prodest, quanta maxima potest imperari. Cibus debet esse lenis: tamen interdum caseus ex melle datur recte, ad purganda ulcera.

## TRANSLATION.

properties may induce eschars over the ulcers; such as scissile alum, or chalcitis, or the sulphate of copper. Also hunger and abstinence, to an extent as far as the system can support it. The food ought to be mild; sometimes cheese and honey are given with good effect to cleanse the ulcers.

## CAP. XII.

## DE LINGUÆ ULCERIBUS.

LINGUÆ quoque ulcera non aliis medicamentis egent, quam quæ prima parte superioris capitis exposita sunt. Sed quæ in latere ejus nascuntur, diutissime durant. Videndumque est, num contra dens aliquis acutior sit, qui sanescere sæpe ulcus eo loco non sinit; ideoque limandus est.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XII.

## DE ULCERIBUS LINGUÆ.

QUOQUE ulcera linguæ non egent aliis medicamentis, quam quæ sunt expositæ (in) prima parte superioris capitis. Sed quæ nascuntur in latere ejus, durant diutissime. Que est videndum, num sit aliquis acutior dens contra, qui sæpe non sinit ulcus sanescere eo loco; que ideo est limandus.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XII.

## OF ULCERS OF THE TONGUE.

Now ulcers of the tongue require no other mode of treatment than that which has been explained in the first part of the former chapter. But those which arise on the lateral margins of it, last a very long time. Therefore we should inspect the parts opposite, to ascertain whether there might not be some very sharp tooth, which very frequently prevents the ulcers from healing there, and for this reason requires to be filed.



## CAP. XIII.

DE PARULIDIBUS, GINGIVARUM TUBERCULIS, DEQUE ALIIS ULCERIBUS.

SOLENT etiam interdum juxta dentes in gingivis tubercula quædam oriri dolentia: *παρουλίδας* Græci appellant. Hæc initio leniter sale contrito perfricare oportet; aut inter se mixtis sale fossili combusto, cupresso, nepeta; deinde eluere os cremore lenticulæ, et inter hæc hiare, donec pituitæ satis profluat. In majore vero inflammatione iisdem medicamentis utendum est, quæ ad ulcera oris supra posita sunt: et mollis linamenti paulum involvendum aliqua compositione ex iis, quas *ἀνθηράς* vocari dixi; demittendumque id inter dentem et gingivam.

Quod si durior erit, et id prohibebit, extrinsecus admovendus erit spongia vapor calidus, imponendumque ceratum. Si suppuratio se ostendet, diutius eo vapore utendum erit; et continendum ore calidum mulsum, in quo

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIII.

DE PARULIDIBUS, ET TUBERCULIS GINGIVARUM QUE DE ALIIS ULCERIBUS.

INTERDUM etiam quædam dolentia tubercula solent oriri in gingivis juxta dentes; Græci appellant *παρουλίδας* (paroulidæ). Initio oportet perfricare hæc leniter contrito sale; aut combusto fossili sale, cupresso, nepeta mixtis inter se; deinde eluere os cremore lenticulæ, et hiare inter hæc, donec satis pituitæ profluat. Vero in majore inflammatione, est utendum iisdem medicamentis, quæ sunt posita supra ad ulcera oris: et paulum mollis linamenti (est) involvendum aliqua compositione ex iis, quas dixi vocari *ἀνθηράς* (antheræ); que id (est) demittendum inter dentem et gingivam.

Quod si erit durior, et prohibebit id, calidus vapor erit admovendus extrinsecus spongia, que ceratum (est) imponendum. Si suppuratio ostendet se, erit utendum eo vapore diutius; et calidum mul-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIII.

## OF PARULIDES, TUBERCLES, AND ULCERS OF THE GUMS.

THERE are also sometimes painful tubercles which usually arise in the gums near the teeth. The Greeks call them Parulides. At the commencement it will be proper to rub them with bruised salt; or with a mixture of calcined fossile salt, cypress, and cat-mint; afterward to wash out the mouth with the cream of lentils, and to keep the mouth open during the application of these things, until sufficient phlegm be discharged. But in more violent inflammations, those medicines are employed which have been mentioned already for ulcers in the mouth: and a little soft lint is to be rolled up in one of those compositions which I have said were named Anthera, and that must be placed between the tooth and gum.

But if the tumour be too hard to admit of this, the vapour of hot water should be applied externally by means of a sponge, and a cerate applied. If suppuration manifest itself, it should be treated with the hot vapour for a longer space, and

ficis decocta sit: idque subcrudum incidendum, ne, si diutius ibi pus permanserit, os lædat. Quod si major is tumor est, commodius totus exciditur, sic, ut ex utraque parte dens liberetur. Pure exempto, si levis plaga est, satis est ore calidam aquam continere, et extrinsecus fovere eodem vapore; si major est, lenticulæ cremore uti, iisdemque medicamentis, quibus cetera ulcera oris curantur.

Alia quoque ulcera in gingivis plerumque oriuntur; quibus eadem, quæ in reliquo ore, succurrunt: maxime tamen mandere ligustrum oportet, succumque eum ore continere. Fit etiam interdum, ut ex gingivæ ulcere, sive *παρουλῆς* fuit, sive non fuit, diutius pus feratur; quod aut corrupto dente, aut fracto, vel aliter vitiato osse, maximeque id per fistulam evenire consuevit.

Ubi incidit, locus aperiendus; dens eximendus; testa ossis, si qua abscessit, recipienda est; si quid vitiosi est, radendum. Post quæ, quid fieri debeat, supra in aliorum ulcerum curatione comprehensum est. Si vero a

## ORDO.

sum, in quo ficis sit decocta, (est) continendum (in) ore: quæ id subcrudum (est) incidendum, ne, si pus permanserit ibi diutius, lædat os. Quod si is tumor est major, totus (tumor) exciditur commodius, sic, ut dens liberetur ex utraque parte. Pure exempto, si plaga est levis, est satis continere calidam aquam (in) ore, et fovere extrinsecus eodem vapore; si (plaga) est major, (est necesse) uti cremore lenticulæ, quæ iisdem medicamentis, quibus cetera ulcera oris curantur.

Alia ulcera quoque oriuntur plerumque in gingivis; quibus, (ulceribus) eadem (medicamento adhibeantur) quæ succurrunt in reliquo ore: tamen maxime oportet mandere ligustrum, quæ continere eum succum (in) ore. Interdum etiam fit, ut pus feratur diutius ex ulcere gingivæ, sive fuit *παρουλῆς* (paroulis), sive non fuit: quod consuevit maxime evenire dente aut corrupto, aut fracto, vel osse aliter vitiato quæ id maxime (evenit) per fistulam.

Ubi incidit, locus (est) aperiendus; dens eximendus; testa ossis, si qua abscessit, est recipienda; si est quid vitiosi (generis), (est) radendum. Post quæ, quid debeat fieri, est comprehensum supra in curatione aliorum ulcerum. Vero

## TRANSLATION.

the decoction of figs in hydromel be retained in the mouth: and the tubercle should be opened before it becomes entirely ripe, lest, if pus remain there longer, it might injure the bone. But if the tumour be of some magnitude, the whole may be removed more conveniently, so as to liberate the tooth on each side. The pus being discharged, and the incision slight, it will be sufficient to retain hot water in the mouth, and to foment externally with the same vapour; but if it be greater, to employ the cream of lentils, and to apply the same medicines by which other ulcers of the mouth are cured.

There are other ulcers frequently arising in the gums, to which the same remedies are available, as those in other parts of the mouth: yet it will be highly necessary to chew privet, and to retain its juice in the mouth. It also happens sometimes, that from an ulcer of the gum, whether it be a parulis, or not, pus has been discharged for a long time: which usually happens either from a decayed tooth, a broken one, or the bone otherwise injured: but especially from a fistulous opening.

When this is the case, it should be opened, and the tooth extracted, should there be any spiculæ of bone left, it must be removed, and if there be any vitiated part, it should be filed away. After which the same method must be observed as was prescribed above in the cure of other ulcers. But if the gums

dentibus gingivæ recedunt, eadem antheræ succurrunt. Utile est etiam pira aut mala non permatura mandere, et ore eum humorem continere. Idemque præstare non acre acetum in ore retentum potest.

## ORDO.

si gingivæ recedunt a dentibus, eadem antheræ succurrunt. Est etiam utile, mandere non permatura pira aut mala, et continere eum humorem ore. Que non acre acetum retentum in ore, potest præstare idem.

## TRANSLATION.

recede from the teeth, the same antheræ relieve them. It is also useful to chew unripe pears or apples, and to retain the juice in the mouth. Also mild vinegar held in the mouth may have the same effect.

## CAP. XIV.

## DE MORBO UVÆ, ET CURATIONE.

UVÆ vehemens inflammatio terrere quoque debet. Itaque in hac et abstinencia necessaria est; et sanguis recte mittitur; et, si id aliqua res prohibet, alvus utiliter ducitur: caputque super hæc velandum, et sublimius habendum est: tum aqua gargarizandum, in qua simul rubus et lenticula decocta sit. Illinenda autem ipsa uva vel omphacio, vel galla, vel alumine scissili, sic, et cuilibet eorum mel adjiciatur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIV.

## DE MORBO ET CURATIONE UVÆ.

VEHEMENS inflammatio uvæ debet quoque terrere. Itaque et abstinencia est necessaria in hac; et sanguis mittitur recte: et, si aliqua res prohibet id, alvus ducitur utiliter: que super hæc caput (est) velandum, et est habendum sublimius; tum gargarizandum aqua, in qua simul rubus et lenticula sit decocta. Autem uva ipsa illinenda vel omphacio, vel galla, vel scissili alumine, sic, ut mel adjiciatur cuilibet eorum.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIV.

## THE DISEASE OF THE UVULA AND ITS TREATMENT.

A VIOLENT inflammation of the uvula ought to excite our alarm. Therefore in this case both abstinence and extraction of blood are very necessary, and if any circumstance contra-indicate that, an enema will be useful; and in addition to these things, the head must be covered and kept very high; then the patient must gargle with a decoction of brambles and lentils. The uvula itself must be anointed with verjuice, or with scissile alum, so that a little honey be added to either of them.



Est etiam medicamentum huic aptum, quod Andronium appellatur. Constat ex his: alumine scissili, squama æris rubri, atramento sutorio, galla, myrrha, misy: quæ per se contrita, mixtaque, rursus, paulatim adjecto vino austero, teruntur, donec his mellis crassitudo sit. Chelidoniæ quoque succo per cochlear illita uva maxime prodest. Ubi horum aliquo illita uva est, fere multa pituita decurrit: cumque ea quievit, ex vino calido gargarizandum.

Quod si minor inflammatio est, laser terere, eique adjicere frigidam aquam satis est, eamque aquam cochleari exceptam ipsi uvæ subjicere. Ac mediocriter eam tumentem aqua quoque frigida, eodem modo subjecta, reprimat. Ex eadem autem aqua gargarizandum quoque est, quæ vel cum lasere, vel sine eo hac ratione uvæ subjecta est.

## ORDO.

Medicamentum etiam quod appellatur Andronium est aptum huic. Constat ex his: scissili alumine, squama rubri æris, sutorio atramento, galla, myrrha, misy: quæ contrita per se, quæ mixta, teruntur rursus, paulatim austero vino adjecto, donec crassitudo mellis sit his. Quoque uva illita per cochlear succo chelidoniæ (majoris) prodest maxime. Ubi uva est illita aliquo horum, fere multa pituita decurrit: quæ cum ea quievit, (est) gargarizandum ex calido vino.

Quod si est minor inflammatio, est satis, terere laser, quæ adjicere frigidam aquam ei, quæ subjicere eam aquam exceptam cochleari uvæ ipsi. Ac frigida aqua subjecta eodem modo, quoque reprimat eam mediocriter tumentem. Autem est quoque gargarizandum ex eadem aqua, quæ est subjecta uvæ, hac ratione, vel cum lasere, vel sine eo.

## TRANSLATION.

That medicament also under the name of Andronium is a suitable remedy in this disease. It consists of these: Scissile alum, scales of red copper, sulphate of copper, nut-galls, myrrh, misy; which being bruised separately are mixed, and again rubbed, with the gradual addition of austere wine until the compound acquire the consistence of honey. Also to anoint the uvula by means of a spoon with the juice of chelidony does much good. When the uvula is moistened with any of these, a great discharge of phlegm is the result; and when this ceases, the patient is to be gargled with hot wine.

But if the inflammation be slight, it will be sufficient to bruise laser, and to add cold water to it, and to hold this water under the uvula by means of a spoon. When the tumefaction is moderate, cold water alone, applied in the same manner, represses it. But the patient must use a gargarism of the same water which has been applied to the uvula, either with or without the laser as already described.

## CAP. XV.

## DE CANCRO ORIS ET CURATIONE.

Si quando autem ulcera oris cancer invasit, primum considerandum est, num malus corporis habitus sit, eique occurrendum: deinde ipsa ulcera curanda. Quod si in summa parte id vitium est, satis proficit anthera, humido ulceri arida inspersa; sicciori, cum exigua parte mellis illita: si paulo altius, chartæ combustæ partes duæ, auripigmenti pars una: si penitus malum descendit, chartæ combustæ partes tres, auripigmenti pars quarta; aut pares portiones salis fricti, et iridis frictæ; aut item pares portiones chalcitidis, calcis, auripigmenti.

Necessarium autem est linamentum in rosa tingere, et super adurentia medicamenta imponere; ne vicinum et sanum locum lædant. Quidam etiam in acris aceti heminam frictum salem conjiciunt, donec tabescere desinat; deinde id acetum coquunt, do-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XV.

## DE CANCRO ORIS ET CURATIONE.

AUTEM si quando cancer invasit ulcera oris, est primum considerandum, num sit malus habitus corporis, que (num sit) occurrendum ei: deinde ulcera ipsa (sunt) curanda. Quod si id vitium est in summa parte, anthera inspersa arida humido ulceri, proficit satis; illita sicciori (proficit) cum exigua parte mellis: si paulo altius, duæ partes combustæ chartæ, (et) una pars auripigmenti: si malum descendit penitus, tres partes combustæ chartæ, quarta pars auripigmenti; aut pares portiones fricti salis, et frictæ iridis; aut item pares portiones chalcitidis, calcis, auripigmenti.

Autem est necessarium tingere linamentum in rosa, et imponere (id) super adurentia medicamenta; ne lædant vicinum et sanum locum. Quidam etiam conjiciunt frictum salem in heminam acris aceti, donec desinat tabescere; deinde coquunt id acetum, donec exsicce-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XV.

## OF CANCERS OF THE MOUTH AND THEIR TREATMENT.

BUT if at any time cancer attack the ulcers of the mouth, the first consideration is, whether there be a depraved habit of body, and to remedy it: afterwards we may proceed to treat the ulcers. But if the disease be on the surface, it will be sufficient to sprinkle a dry Anthera upon the ulcer, if moist; on those of a drier appearance, a small portion of honey must be laid with it: if a little more profound, take two parts of burnt paper, and one part of orpiment; if the disease have penetrated inwardly, three parts of burnt paper, and a fourth of orpiment, or equal parts of salt and iris fried: or equal portions of chalcitis, lime, and orpiment.

But it will be necessary to dip a little linen in rose-oil, and apply it over those caustic applications; lest they may injure the contiguous sound parts. Some also throw fried salt into a hemina of strong vinegar until it cease to dissolve:

nec exsiccetur; eumque salem contritum inspergunt. Quoties autem medicamentum injicitur, et ante et post os diluendum est vel cremore lenticulæ, vel aqua, in qua aut ervum, aut oleæ, aut verbenæ decoctæ sint, sic, ut cuilibet eorum paulum mellis misceatur.

Acetum quoque ex scilla, retentum ore, satis adversus hæc ulcera proficit: et ex aceto cocto sali, sicut supra demonstratum est, rursus mixtum acetum. Sed et diu continere utrumlibet, et id bis aut ter die facere, prout vehemens malum est, necessarium est. Quod si puer est, cui id incidit, specillum lana involutum in medicamentum demittendum est, et super ulcus tenendum, ne per imprudentiam adurentia devoret. Si dolor in gingivis est, moventurque aliqui dentes, refigi eos oportet: nam curationem vehementer impediunt. Si nihil medicamenta proficient, ulcera erunt adurenda. Quod tamen in labris ideo non est necessarium, quoniam excidere commodius est.

## ORDO.

tur; que inspergunt eam contritum salem. Autem quoties medicamentum injicitur, os est diluendum et ante et post, vel cremore lenticulæ, vel aqua, in qua aut ervum, aut oleæ, aut verbenæ sint decoctæ, sic, ut paulum mellis misceatur cuilibet eorum.

Quoque acetum ex scilla, retentum (in) ore, proficit satis adversus hæc ulcera: et acetum rursus mixtum sali cocto ex aceto, sicut est demonstratum supra. Sed est necessarium, et continere utrumlibet diu, et facere id bis aut ter die, prout malum est vehemens. Quod si est puer, cui id incidit, specillum involutum lana est demittendum in medicamentum, et tenendum super ulcus, ne (puer) devoret adurentia per imprudentiam. Si est dolor in gingivis, que aliqui dentes moventur, oportet eos refigi: nam vehementer impediunt curationem. Si medicamenta proficient nihil, ulcera erunt adurenda. Quod tamen non est ideo necessarium in labris, quoniam est commodius excidere.

## TRANSLATION.

that vinegar is afterwards boiled until it become dry, the salt is then powdered and sprinkled on the ulcers. Now every time that the medicines are applied, the mouth ought to be rinsed both before and after, with either the cream of lentils, or in a watery decoction of vetches, or olives, or vervains, provided that a little honey be added to either of these.

The vinegar of squills also held in the mouth has a very good effect against these ulcers; and vinegar mixed again with the salt, which had been boiled in vinegar as above directed. But it will be necessary, not only to retain each in the mouth for a long time, but to do that twice or thrice a day, in proportion to the violence of the disease. But if it happen to be a child, a probe must be wrapped round with wool, and dipped into the preparation, and held on the ulcer, lest through some imprudence he swallow this caustic application. But if there be a pain in the gums, and some of the teeth loose, they ought to be extracted, for they are a great impediment to the cure. If such applications prove unavailing, the ulcers must be cauterized. Yet this will not be necessary in the lips, for this reason: that it is more convenient to cut them out.



Et id quidem; æque adustum, atque excisum, sine ea curatione, quæ corpori manu adhibetur, impleri non potest. Gingivarum vero ossa, quæ hebetia sunt, in perpetuum ustione nudantur; neque enim postea caro increscit. Imponenda tamen adustis lenticula est, donec sanitatem, qualis esse potest, recipiant.

## ORDO.

Et quidem id, adustum atque excisum æque, non potest impleri sine ea curatione, quæ adhibetur corpori manu. Vero ossa gingivarum, quæ sunt hebetia, nudantur in perpetuum ustione; enim neque caro increscit postea. Tamen lenticula est imponenda adustis, donec recipiant sanitatem, qualis potest esse.

## TRANSLATION.

Indeed that which has been cauterized, as well as the parts excised, are equally incapable of reproduction, without the aid of a manual operation. But the jaw-bones being very slow in the reproduction of *that fibro-cartilaginous substance*, remain for ever denuded, when once cauterized; for the flesh never grows on that part afterwards. However, lentils should be applied over the cauterized parts, until they take on, at least as healthy an appearance as possible.

## CAP. XVI.

DE PAROTIDIBUS, QUÆ SUB AURIBUS  
ORIUNTUR.

HÆC in capite fere medicamentis egent. Sub ipsis vero auribus oriri *παρωτίδες* solent; modo in secunda valetudine, ibi inflammatione orta; modo post longas febres, illuc impetu morbi converso. Id abscessus genus est: itaque nullam novam curationem desiderat. Animadversionem tantum-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVI.

DE PAROTIDIBUS QUÆ ORIUNTUR  
SUB AURIBUS.

HÆC (vitia) in capite fere egent medicamentis. Vero *παρωτίδες* (parotides) solent oriri sub auribus ipsis; modo (solent oriri) in secunda valetudine, inflammatione orta ibi; modo post longas febres, impetu morbi converso illuc. Id est genus abscessus; itaque desiderat nullam novam curationem. Tantummodo habet hanc animad-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVI.

PAROTID SWELLINGS WHICH ARISE UNDER THE EAR, AND THEIR  
TREATMENT.

THESE are the diseases of the head, which generally require the assistance of medicine. But parotid tumours generally arise under the ears; sometimes even in good health, in consequence of inflammation having supervened on that part; sometimes after long fevers, the violence of the disease being directed thither. This is a kind of abscess, and requires no new mode of treatment. One observation, however, is

modo hanc habet necessariam ; quia si sine morbo id intumuit, primum reprimendum experimentum est ; si ex adversa valetudine, illud inimicum est, maturarique et quam primum aperiri commodius est.

## ORDO.

versionem necessariam ; quia si id intumuit sine morbo, primum experimentum est reprimendum, si illud est inimicum, ex adversa valetudine, est commodius maturari, et aperiri quam primum.

## TRANSLATION.

necessary ; that is, if the intumescence came without any preceding disease, we should first try repellents ; if it supervened another disease, this treatment would be inimical, therefore it would be more consistent to *favour the formation of matter*, that it might be opened as soon as possible.

## CAP. XVII.

## DE UMBILICI PROMINENTIS CURATIONE.

Ad umbilicos vero prominentes, ne manu ferroque utendum sit, ante tentandum est, ut abstineant ; alvus his ducatur ; imponatur super umbilicum id, quod ex his constat : cicutæ et fuliginis, singulorum p. ℥. i. cerussæ elotæ p. ℥. iv. plumbi eloti p. ℥. viii. ovis duobus ; quibus etiam solani succus adjicitur. Hoc diutius impositum esse oportet ; et interim conquiescere hominem ; cibo modico uti, sic, ut vitentur omnia infantia.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVII.

## DE CURATIONE PROMINENTIS UMBILICI.

VERO ad prominentes umbilicos, ne sit utendum manu que ferro, est tentandum ante, ut abstineant ; alvus ducatur his ; id imponatur super umbilicum, quod constat ex his : cicutæ et fuliginis, singulorum p. ℥. i. elotæ cerussæ p. ℥. iv. eloti plumbi p. ℥. viii. duobus ovis ; quibus etiam succus solani adjicitur. Oportet hoc esse impositum diutius ; et interim (oportet) hominem conquiescere ; uti modico cibo, sic, ut omnia infantia vitentur.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVII.

## THE TREATMENT OF A PROMINENT UMBILICUS.

IN the event of a protuberant umbilicus, lest there may be a necessity for a manual operation, a trial of abstinence must first be had recourse to: the bowels unloaded by enemata : over the navel may be applied a composition, which consists of hemlock and soot, of each p. ℥. i. of washed ceruse p. ℥. iv. of washed lead p. ℥. viii. with two eggs: to which also the juice of nightshade is added. This ought to be kept on for a very considerable time ; and the patient to be kept quiet ; to take moderate food, and to avoid every thing of a flatulent nature.

## CAP. XVIII.

DE OBSCENARUM PARTIUM VITIIS,  
ET CURATIONIBUS.

1. PROXIMA sunt ea, quæ ad partes obscenas pertinet: quarum apud Græcos vocabula et tolerabilius se habent, et accepta jam usu sunt; cum in omni fere medicorum volumine atque sermone jactentur: apud nos fœdiora verba, ne consuetudine quidem aliqua verecundius loquentium commendata sunt: ut difficilis hæc explanatio sit, simul et pudorem, et artis præcepta servantibus. Neque tamen ea res a scribendo deterrire me debuit: primum, ut omnia, quæ salutaria accepi, comprehenderem: dein, quia in vulgus eorum curatio etiam præcipue cognoscenda est, quæ invittissimus quisque alteri ostendit.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVIII.

DE VITIIS OBSCENARUM PARTIUM,  
ET CURATIONIBUS.

1. EA (vitia) quæ pertinent ad obscenas partes, sunt proxima: vocabula quarum apud Græcos, et habent se tolerabilius, et sunt jam accepta usu; cum fere jactentur in omni volumine atque sermone medicorum: apud nos verba sunt fœdiora, ne (sunt) commendata aliqua consuetudine loquentium verecundius: ut hæc explanatio sit difficilis servantibus simul et pudorem, et præcepta artis. Neque tamen debuit ea res terrere me a scribendo: primum, ut comprehenderem omnia, quæ accepi salutaria; dein, quia curatio eorum (vitiis) est etiam præcipue cognoscenda in vulgus, quæ (vitia), quisque invittissimus ostendit alteri.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVIII.

THE DISEASES INCIDENT TO THE PARTS OF GENERATION, AND  
THEIR TREATMENT.

1. THE next diseases are those that affect the private parts; the nomenclature of which among the Greeks is not only tolerable, but now fully sanctioned by practice; for they are freely employed in almost every volume, work, or treatise of the physicians: but with us Romans, these terms are certainly filthy, and never employed by any one who has a proper regard for modesty in language: therefore it is evident from this explanation, that there is no small difficulty in maintaining at the same time a delicacy of expression while delivering the precepts of the art. Not that this circumstance ought to deter me from treating on them: first, because it is my intention to comprehend every thing in this work which I have found to be conducive to health; in the next place, because every person ought to know the treatment of those maladies which we so reluctantly expose to the view of another.



2. Igitur si ex inflammatione coles intumuit, reduci summa cutis, aut rursus induci non potest, multa calida aqua fovendus locus est: ubi vero glans contacta est, oriculario quoque clystere inter eam cutemque aqua calida inserenda est. Si mollita sic et extenuata cutis ducenti paruit, expeditior reliqua curatio est: si tumor vicit, imponenda est vel lenticula, vel marrubium, vel oleæ folia ex vino cocta, sic, ut cuilibet eorum, dum teritur, mellis paulum adjiciatur: sursumque coles ad ventrem deligandus est, quod in omni curatione ejus necessarium est: isque homo continere se, et abstinere a cibo debet, et potionem aquæ tantum a siti vindicari.

Postero die rursus adhibendum iisdem rationibus aquæ fomentum est, et cum vi quoque experiendum, an cutis sequatur: eaque, si non parebit, leviter summa scalpello concidenda erit: nam, cum sanies profluxerit, extenuabitur is locus, et facilius cutis ducetur.

## ORDO.

2. Igitur, si coles intumuit ex inflammatione, que summa cutis non potest reduci, aut rursus induci, locus est fovendus multa calida aqua: vero ubi glans est contacta, quoque calida aqua est inserenda inter eam que cutem oriculario clystere. Si cutis, sic mollita et extenuata, paruit ducenti, reliqua curatio est expeditior: si tumor vicit, vel lenticula, vel marrubium, vel folia oleæ cocta ex vino, sic ut, paulum mellis adjiciatur cuilibet horum, dum teritur, est imponenda: que coles est deligandus sursum ad ventrem, quod est necessarium in omni curatione ejus: que is homo debet continere se, et abstinere a cibo, et vindicari a siti, tantum potionem aquæ.

Postero die fomentum aquæ est rursus adhibendum iisdem rationibus, et quoque (est) experiendum cum vi, an cutis sequatur: que, si ea non parebit, erit concidenda leviter summa (parte) scalpello: nam, cum sanies profluxerit, is locus extenuabitur, et cutis ducetur facilius.

## TRANSLATION.

2. Therefore, if the penis be swollen from inflammation, and the prepuce cannot be drawn backward (*there be phymosis*) nor forward over the glans (*there be paraphymosis*), the part must be freely fomented with warm water; but when the glans penis is concealed, warm water must be injected between it and the prepuce by means of an ear-syringe. If the foreskin, mollified and attenuated by these means, yield to the manipulation of retraction, the remaining part of the treatment will be more expeditious: if the swelling still prevail against our efforts, let lentils be applied, or horehound, or olive-leaves boiled in wine, provided a little honey be added to either of the above while they are being bruised: and the penis must be suspended towards the abdomen, a precaution which is uniformly necessary in every affection of that organ: the patient ought to confine himself to a strict regimen; to abstain from food, and to allay his thirst by drinking water alone.

On the following day a fomentation of water is to be applied in the same manner, and we should try, even with some degree of force, whether the foreskin can be reduced, and if this cannot be effected, the superior surface must be divided gently with the scalpel; for when the sanious discharge shall take place, that part will be attenuated, and the foreskin will be the more easily reflected (7).

Sive autem hoc modo victa erit, sive nunquam repugnauerit; ulcera vel in cutis ulteriore parte, vel in glande, ultrave eam in cole reperientur: quæ necesse est, aut pura siccaque sint, aut humida et purulenta. Si sicca sunt, primum aqua calida fovenda sunt: deinde imponendum lycium ex vino est, aut amurca cocta cum eodem, aut cum rosa butyrum.

Si levis iis humor inest, vino eluenda sunt: tum butyro et rosæ mellis paulum, et resinæ terebinthinæ pars quarta adjicienda est, eoque utendum. At si pus ex iis profluit, ante omnia elui mulso calido debent: tum imponi piperis p. ℥. i. myrrhæ p. ℥. ʒ. croci, misy cocti, singulorum p. ℥. ii. quæ ex vino austero coquantur, donec mellis crassitudinem habeant. Eadem autem compositio tonsillis, uvæ madenti, oris nariumque ulceribus accommodata est.

Aliud ad eadem: piperis p. ℥. ʒ. myrrhæ p. ℥. ʒ. croci p. ℥. ʒ. misy cocti p. ℥. i. æris combusti p. ℥. ii. quæ primum ex vino austero conteruntur; deinde, ubi inaruerunt,

## ORDO.

Antem sive erit victa hoc modo, sive repugnauerit nunquam; ulcera reperientur vel in ulteriore parte cutis, vel in glande, ve ultra eam in cole: quæ est necesse, sint aut pura que sicca, aut humida et purulenta. Si sunt sicca, aut foveunda primum calida aqua: deinde lycium ex vino, aut amurca cocta cum eodem, aut butyrum cum rosa est imponendum.

Si levis humor inest iis, sunt eluenda vino: tum paulum mellis, et quarta pars terebinthinæ resinæ est adjicienda butyro et rosæ, que utendum eo. At si pus profluit ex iis, ante omnia debent elui calido mulso: tum piperis p. ℥. i. myrrhæ p. ℥. ʒ. croci, cocti misy, singulorum p. ℥. ii. quæ coquantur ex austero vino, donec habeant crassitudinem mellis, (debent) imponi. Autem eadem compositio est accommodata tonsillis, madenti uvæ, ulceribus oris que narium.

(Est) aliud ad eadem: piperis p. ℥. ʒ. myrrhæ p. ℥. ʒ. croci p. ℥. ʒ. cocti misy p. ℥. i. combusti æris p. ℥. ii. quæ conteruntur primum ex austero vino; deinde, ubi ina-

## TRANSLATION.

Now whether the intumescence has been overcome by the latter method, or whether it never did resist, ulcers will be found within the posterior part of the prepuce, or on the glans penis, or on the penis itself beyond the glans: these ulcers will necessarily be either clean and dry, or moist and purulent. If they be dry, they must be first fomented with hot water; afterwards lycium with wine is to be laid on, or oil-lees boiled with the same, or butter with rose-oil.

If there be a thin humour in them, they should be washed out with wine: then a little honey, and a fourth part of turpentine resin, should be added to the butter and rose-oil, and so used. But if pus be discharged from these, first of all the sores ought to be washed out with hot hydromel; then take of pepper p. ℥. i. of myrrh p. ℥. ʒ. of saffron, of boiled misy, of each p. ℥. ii. these are to be boiled in austere wine until they acquire the consistence of honey, and so applied. But the same composition is adapted for ulcers on the tonsils, a moist uvula, and for ulcers of the mouth and nostrils.

There is another for the same purpose: take of pepper p. ℥. ʒ. myrrh p. ℥. ʒ. of saffron p. ℥. ʒ. of boiled misy p. ℥. i. of calcined copper p. ℥. ii. these to

iterum teruntur ex passi tribus cyathis, et incoquantur, donec visci crassitudinem habeant. Ærugo quoque cum cocto melle, et ea, quæ ad oris ulcera supra comprehensa sunt, curant.

Aut Erasistrati compositio, aut Cratonis, recte super purulenta naturalia imponitur. Folia quoque oleæ ex novem cyathis vini coquantur; his adjicitur aluminis scissilis p. ʒ. iv. lycii p. ʒ. viii. mellis sesquicyathus: ac, si plus puris est, id medicamentum ex melle; si minus, ex vino diluitur. Illud perpetuum est, post curationem, dum inflammatio manet, quale supra positum est, cataplasma super dare, et quotidie ulcera eadem ratione curare.

Quod si pus et multum, et cum malo odore cœpit profluere, elui cremore lenticulæ debet, sic, ut ei mellis paulum adjiciatur: aut oleæ, vel lentisci folia, vel marrubium decoquendum est, eoque humore eodem modo cum melle utendum: imponendaque eadem; aut etiam omphacium cum melle; aut id, quod ex ærugine et

## ORDO.

ruerunt, teruntur iterum ex tribus cyathis passi, et incoquantur, donec habeant crassitudinem visci. Quoque ærugo cum cocto melle, et ea (medicamenta), quæ sunt comprehensa supra ad ulcera oris, curant.

Compositio aut Erasistrati, aut Cratonis, imponitur recte super purulenta naturalia. Folia oleæ quoque coquantur ex novem cyathis vini; scissilis aluminis p. ʒ. iv. lycii p. ʒ. viii. sesquicyathus mellis adjicitur his: ac si est plus puris, id medicamentum diluitur ex melle; si (est) minus (puris), diluitur ex vino. Illud est perpetuum (præceptum), dare cataplasma super, quale est positum supra, post curationem, (et) dum inflammatio manet, et quotidie curare ulcera eadem ratione.

Quod si pus cœpit profluere et multum, et cum malo odore, debet elui cremore lenticulæ, sic, ut paulum mellis adjiciatur ei: aut folia oleæ, vel lentisci, vel marrubium est decoquendum, que (est) utendum eo humore eodem modo cum melle: que eadem (sunt) imponenda; aut etiam omphacium cum melle; aut id, quod fit ad aures, ex ærugine et melle; aut compositio

## TRANSLATION.

be bruised first with austere wine, afterwards, when they become dry, they are again to be triturated with three cyathi of raisin-wine, and boiled until they acquire the consistence of viscum, *bird-lime*. Also verdigris with boiled honey, and those things above mentioned for ulcers of the mouth, cure these genital sores.

The composition of Erasistratus or of Crato, is a very proper application to be laid over purulent ulcers of the private parts. Olive leaves are also to be boiled in nine cyathi of wine; and to these are added of scissile alum p. ʒ. iv. of lycium p. ʒ. viii. of honey a cyath and a half; and if the purulent discharge be copious, this application is to be diluted with honey; if scanty, with wine. This is a constant rule, after reducing the enlargement of the prepuce, while the inflammation continues, to apply a cataplasm over it, such as I have directed above, and to dress the ulcers daily in the same manner.

But if the pus have commenced to flow copiously, and its odour be offensive, it ought to be washed out with the cream of lentils, provided that a little honey be added to it: or olive leaves, or those of mastich, or horehound, should be boiled down, and that liquid be used in the same manner with honey: the same dressings are to be applied; or else verjuice with honey; or that composition for the ears



melle ad aures fit ; aut compositio Andronis ; aut anthera, sic, ut ei paulum mellis adjiciatur. Quidam ulcera omnia, de quibus adhuc dictum est, lycio ex vino curant.

Si vero ulcus latius atque altius serpit, eodem modo elui debet : imponi vero, aut ærugo, aut omphacium cum melle ; aut Andronis compositio ; aut marrubii, myrrhæ, croci, aluminis scissilis cocti, rosæ foliorum aridorum, gallæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. minii Sinopici p. ℥. ii. quæ per se singula primum teruntur, deinde juncta iterum, melle adjecto, donec liquidi cerati crassitudinem habeant ; tum in æneo vase leniter coquuntur, ne superfluant ; cum jam guttæ indurescunt, vas ab igne removetur : idque medicamentum, prout opus est, aut ex melle aut ex vino liquatur. Idem autem per se etiam ad fistulas utile est.

Solet etiam interdum ad nervos ulcus descendere ; profluitque pituita multa, sanies tenuis malique odoris, non coacta, at aquæ similis, in qua caro recens lota est ; doloresque is

## ORDO.

Andronis ; aut anthera, sic, ut paulum mellis adjiciatur ei. Quidam curant omnia ulcera, de quibus est adhuc dictum, lycio ex vino.

Vero si ulcus serpit latius atque altius, debet elui eodem modo : vero aut ærugo, aut omphacium cum melle (debet) imponi ; aut compositio Andronis ; aut marrubii, myrrhæ, croci, cocti scissilis aluminis, aridorum foliorum rosæ, gallæ, singulorum p. ℥. i. Sinopici minii p. ℥. ii. quæ primum teruntur singula per se, deinde juncta iterum, melle adjecto, donec habeant crassitudinem liquidi cerati ; tum coquuntur leniter in æneo vase, ne superfluant ; cum jam guttæ indurescunt, vas removetur ab igne : que, prout est opus, id medicamentum liquatur aut ex melle, aut ex vino. Autem idem est etiam utile per se ad fistulas.

Interdum etiam ulcus solet descendere ad nervos ; que multa pituita profluit, sanies (est) tenuis que mali odoris, non (est) coacta, at (est) similis aquæ, in qua recens caro est lota ; que is locus habet

## TRANSLATION.

made from verdigris and honey ; or the composition of Andro ; or an anthera, provided a little honey be added to it. Some physicians dress all these ulcers which we have hitherto mentioned, with lycium and wine.

But if the ulcer extend in breadth and depth, it ought to be washed in the same manner, and either verdigris, or verjuice with honey applied ; or the composition of Andro ; or of horehound, of myrrh, of saffron, of calcined scissile alum, of dry rose-leaves, of nut-galls, of each p. ℥. i. of Sinopian minium p. ℥. ii. which are first triturated separately, then mixed and rubbed together with honey, until they acquire the consistence of liquid cerate ; afterwards they are to be boiled slowly in a copper vessel, lest the contents overflow ; when a drop of this fluid becomes hard on cooling, the vessel may be removed from the fire ; and this medicine is to be dissolved either with honey or wine, as circumstances may require. The same composition might be usefully employed by itself in fistulæ.

Sometimes these ulcers penetrate to the nerves (8) ; and a great discharge takes place, of a thin sanies, and foetid odour, of no consistence, but more like water in which fresh meat has been washed : and that part is attended with pain and

locus, et punctiones habet. Id genus quamvis inter purulenta est, tamen lenibus medicamentis curandum est; quale est emplastrum τετραφάρμακον ex rosa liquatum, sic, ut thuris quoque paulum ei misceatur; aut id, quod ex butyro, rosa, resina, melle fit; supra vero a me positum est. Præcipueque id ulcus multa calida aqua fovendum est, velandumque, neque frigori committendum.

Interdum autem per ipsa ulcera coles sub cute exesus est, sic, ut glans excidat. Sub quo casu cutis ipsa circumcidenda est. Perpetuumque est, quoties glans, aut ex cole aliquid, vel excidit, vel abscinditur, hanc non esse servandam, ne considat, ulcerique agglutinetur, ac neque reduci possit postea, et fortasse fistulam quoque urinæ claudat.

Tubercula etiam, quæ φύματα Græci vocant, circa glandem oriuntur: quæ vel medicamentis, vel ferro aduruntur; et cum crustæ exciderunt, squama æris inspergitur, ne quid ibi rursus increseat.

## ORDO.

dolores et punctiones. Quamvis id genus est inter purulenta, tamen est curandum lenibus medicamentis; quale est τετραφάρμακον (tetrpharmacum) emplastrum liquatum ex rosa, sic, ut quoque paulum thuris misceatur ei; aut id, quod fit ex butyro, rosa, resina, melle; vero est positum supra a me. Que id ulcus est præcipue fovendum multa calida aqua, que (est) velandum, neque (est) committendum frigori.

Autem interdum coles est exesus per ipsa ulcera sub cute, sic, ut glans excidat. Sub quo casu, cutis ipsa est circumcidenda. Que est perpetuum (præceptum), quoties glans, aut aliquid ex cole, vel excidit, vel abscinditur, hanc non esse servandam ne considat, que agglutinetur ulceri, ac neque possit reduci postea, et fortasse quoque claudat fistulam urinæ.

Etiam tubercula, quæ Græci vocant φύματα (phymata), oriuntur circa glandem: quæ aduruntur vel medicamentis, vel ferro; et cum crustæ exciderunt, squama æris inspergitur, ne quid increseat ibi rursus.

## TRANSLATION.

pricking. Now although this is among the purulent kind of ulcers, yet it must be treated with mild applications, such as the tetrpharmacum plaster, dissolved in rose-oil, provided that a little frankincense be added to it; or that which is made from butter, rose-oil, resin, and honey: but this I have stated above. But above all things, these ulcers require to be fomented with abundance of warm water, and to be covered over, lest they be exposed to the cold.

Not unfrequently has the penis been destroyed to that degree under the prepuce, by those very ulcers, that the glans has fallen off. In this case the prepuce itself must be removed by circumcision. Therefore it is an invariable rule, whenever the glans, or any part of the penis, has sloughed off, or has been cut away, the surrounding portion of prepuce is not to be retained, lest it come in contact with the ulcer, and there become united with it, so that its reflection would become impracticable afterward, or it might even close the urinary passage.

Tubercles, or warts, also, which the Greeks call phymata, arise about the glans: these are to be burnt, either by caustics or the actual cautery; and when the eschars have fallen off, copper scales are to be sprinkled on to prevent the reproduction of them.

3. Hæc citra cancrum sunt; qui cum in reliquis partibus, tum in his quoque vel præcipue ulcera infestat. Incipit a nigritie: quæ si cutem occupavit, protinus specillum subjiciendum, eaque incidenda est; deinde oræ vulsellaprehendendæ, tum, quidquid corruptum est, excidendum, sic, ut ex integro quoque paulum dematur, idque adurendum. Quoties quid ustum est, id quoque sequitur, ut imponenda lenticula sit; deinde, ubi crustæ exciderunt, ulcera sicut alia curentur.

At si cancer ipsum colem occupavit, inspergenda aliqua sunt ex adurentibus, maximeque id, quod ex calce, chalcitide, auripigmento componitur. Si medicamenta vincuntur, hic quoque scalpello, quidquid corruptum est, sic, ut aliquid etiam integri trahat, præcidi debet. Illud quoque æque perpetuum est; exciso cancro, vulnus esse adurendum. Sed sive medicamentis, sive ex ferro crustæ occaluerunt, magnum periculum est, ne his decidentibus, ex cole profusio sanguinis insequatur. Ergo longa quiete et

## ORDO.

3. Hæc sunt citra cancrum; qui, cum infestat in reliquis partibus, tum quoque in his, vel præcipue ulcera. Incipit a nigritie: quæ si occupavit cutem, specillum est protinus subjiciendum, quæ ea est incidenda; deinde oræ (sunt)prehendendæ vulsella, tum quidquid est corruptum, (est) excidendum, quæ id (est) adurendum, sic, ut quoque paulum dematur ex integro. Id quoque sequitur, ut, quoties quid est ustum, lenticula sit imponenda; deinde, ubi crustæ exciderunt, ulcera curentur sicut alia.

At si cancer occupavit colem ipsum, aliqua ex adurentibus sunt inspergenda, quæ maxime id, quod componitur ex calce, chalcitide, auripigmento. Si medicamenta vincuntur, hic quoque, quidquid est corruptum, debet præcidi scalpello, sic, ut etiam trahat aliquid integri. Quoque illud est æque perpetuum; cancro exciso, vulnus esse adurendum. Sed sive crustæ occaluerunt medicamentis, sive ex ferro, est magnum periculum, ne profusio sanguinis ex cole insequatur, his decidentibus. Est opus ergo, longa quiete, et pæne

## TRANSLATION.

3. In the preceding affections there is no chancre described; to which all parts of the body are liable, but more particularly ulcers of the genitals. The disease begins with a blackness; and if this seize the prepuce, a probe must be passed immediately under it, and an incision made: afterwards the edges are to be seized by the forceps, and then, whatever is diseased must be cut away, so that even a small portion of the sound part may be taken away, and the place cauterized. Whenever a part is burnt, it follows as a matter of course that lentils are to be applied; afterward, when the eschars have fallen off, they may be dressed as other ulcers.

But if cancer or chancre (9) have seized the penis itself, some of the caustics are to be sprinkled on, and especially that which is composed of lime, chalcitis, and orpiment. If the applications are unavailing, here also, whatever is diseased ought to be cut away, so that even some portion of the healthy part may be taken. This is also an invariable rule, that when a chancre is excised, the wound must be canterized. But if these eschars have become indurated, either by the application of caustics, or by the cauter, there will be great danger of hæmorrhage from the penis, after they have sloughed off. Therefore it will be necessary to rest,



immobili pene corpore opus est, donec ex ipso crustæ puræ leniter resolvantur.

At si vel volens aliquis, vel imprudens, dum ingreditur immature, crustas diduxit, et fluit sanguis, frigida aqua adhibenda est: si hæc parum valet, decurrendum est ad medicamenta, quæ sanguinem supprimunt: si ne hæc quidem succurrunt, aduri diligenter et timide debet: neque ullo postea motu dandus eidem periculo locus est.

4. Nonnumquam etiam id genus ibi cancri, quod *φαιγάδαινα* a Græcis nominatur, oriri solet. In quo minime differendum, sed protinus iisdem medicamentis, et, si parum valent, ferro adurendum. Quædam etiam nigrities est, quæ non sentitur, sed serpit, ac, si sustinimus, usque ad vesicam tendit; neque succurri postea potest. Si id in summa glande circa fistulam urinæ est, prius in eam tenue specillum demittendum est, ne claudatur; deinde id ferro adurendum: si vero alte penetravit, quidquid occupatum est, præ-

#### ORDO.

immobili corpore, donec puræ crustæ resolvantur leniter ex ipso.

At si aliquis vel volens, vel imprudens diduxit crustas, dum ingreditur immature, et sanguis fluit, frigida aqua est adhibenda: si hæc valet parum, est decurrendum ad medicamenta, quæ supprimunt sanguinem: si ne quidem hæc succurrunt, debet aduri diligenter et timide: neque est locus dandus eidem periculo postea ullo motu.

4. Nonnumquam etiam id genus cancri, quod nominatur *φαιγάδαινα* (phagedaina) a Græcis, solet oriri ibi. In quo (est) differendum minime, sed (est) protinus (id) adurendum iisdem medicamentis; et si valent parum, ferro. Est etiam quædam nigrities, quæ non sentitur, sed serpit, ac, si sustinimus, tendit usque ad vesicam; neque potest succurri postea. Si id est in summa glande circa fistulam urinæ, tenue specillum est prius demittendum in eam, ne claudatur; deinde id adurendum ferro: vero si penetravit alte, quidquid est occupatum, est præcidendum.

#### TRANSLATION.

and to keep the body almost immovable, until the healthy crusts become gradually detached from it.

But if a patient either designedly or imprudently have detached the eschars in walking out too soon, and a hæmorrhage result, then cold water must be applied: if this avail little, recourse must be had to those applications which will arrest the flow of blood: if these do not succeed, the part must be cauterized carefully and cautiously: and every precaution should be taken that he be not exposed to the same danger afterwards by any motion whatsoever.

4. There is also a species of ulcer formed there sometimes which the Greeks term Phagedæna. Here no time must be lost, but the same caustic remedies must be immediately applied, and if they avail not, the part must be burnt by the actual cautery. There is also a certain blackness (*nigrities*), not attended with any pain, but which creeps onward, and if we do not arrest it, extends to the bladder, when it becomes incurable afterwards. If this take place on the glans near the urethra, a small probe should be passed into it first, lest it may be closed, and then the actual cautery is to be applied; but if it have penetrated deeply, whatever portion may be involved,

cidendum est. Cetera eadem, quæ in aliis cancris, facienda sunt.

5. Occallescit etiam in cole interdum aliquid; idque omni pene sensu caret: quod ipsum quoque excidi debet. Carbunculus autem ibi natus, ut primum apparet, per oricularium clysterem eluendus est: deinde ipse quoque medicamentis urendus, maximeque chalcitide cum melle, aut æruginæ cum cocto melle, aut ovillo stercore fricto et contrito cum eodem melle. Ubi is excidit, liquidis medicamentis utendum est, quæ ad oris ulcera componuntur.

6. In testiculis vero, si qua inflammatio sine ictu orta est, sanguis ex talo mittendus est: a cibo abstinendum: imponenda ex faba farina ex mulso cocta cum cumino contrito et ex melle cocto; aut contritum cuminum cum cerato ex rosa facto; aut lini semen frictum, contritum, et in mulso coctum; aut tritici farina ex mulso cocta cum cupresso; aut lili radix contrita.

At si iidem induruerunt, imponi debet lini vel fœni Græci semen ex mulso coctum; aut ex cyprino ceratum; aut similia ex vino contrita, cui

## ORDO.

Cetera sunt eadem, quæ (sunt) facienda in aliis cancris.

5. Aliquid interdum etiam occallescit in cole; que id caret pene omni sensu: quod ipsum debet quoque excidi. Autem carbunculus natus ibi, ut apparet primum, est eluendus per oricularium clysterem: quoque ipse (est) deinde urendus medicamentis, que maxime chalcitide cum melle, aut æruginæ cum cocto melle, aut ovillo stercore fricto et contrito cum eodem melle. Ubi is excidit, est utendum liquidis medicamentis, quæ componuntur ad ulcera oris.

6. Vero, si qua inflammatio est orta in testiculis sine ictu, sanguis est mittendus ex talo: (est) abstinendum a cibo: farina ex faba cocta ex mulso, cum contrito cumino et ex cocto melle, (est) imponenda; aut cuminum contritum cum cerato facto ex rosa; aut semen lini frictum, contritum, et coctum in mulso; aut farina tritici cocta cum cupresso ex mulso; aut contrita radix lili.

At si iidem induruerunt, semen lini vel Græci fœni coctum ex mulso debet imponi; aut ceratum ex cyprino; aut similia contrita ex

## TRANSLATION.

must be removed by the knife. The subsequent treatment will be similar to that applied to other chancres.

5. There is sometimes an indurated excrescence takes place on the penis, which is almost devoid of all sensation; this also ought to be excised. But a carbuncle ought to be washed with an ear-syringe as soon as it appears there, and afterwards that too should be dressed with escharotics, especially chalcitis with honey, or with verdigris and boiled honey, or with fried sheep's dung bruised with honey. When (it) the carbuncle falls off, we must employ the liquid applications composed for ulcers of the mouth.

6. But if any inflammation have arisen in the testicles, without a blow, blood must be taken from the ankle: the patient must abstain from food: the farina of beans boiled with hydromel, and bruised cumin boiled with honey must be applied as a poultice; or cumin beat up with the cerate of roses; or linseed bruised and boiled in hydromel; or the farina of wheat boiled with cypress in hydromel; or bruised lily-root.

But if the testicles have become indurated, linseed, or the seed of fœnugreek boiled with hydromel, ought to be applied; or the cerate of privet oil; or fine wheat flour rubbed with wine, and the addition of a little saffron. If this induration have

paulum croci sit adjectum. Si vetustior jam durities est, maxime proficit cucumeris agrestis radix ex mulso cocta, deinde contrita.

Si ex ictu tument, sanguinem mitti necessarium est; magisque, si etiam livent. Imponendum vero utrumlibet ex iis, quæ cum cumino componuntur, supraque posita sunt; aut ea compositio, quæ habet nitri cocti p. ℞. i. resinæ pineæ, cumini, singulorum p. ℞. ii. uvæ taminiae sine seminibus p. ℞. iv. mellis quantum satis sit ad ea cogenda. Quod si ex ictu testiculis aliquid desit, fere pus quoque increscit; neque aliter succurri potest, quam si, inciso scroto, et pus emissum, et ipse testiculus excisus est.

7. Anus quoque multa tædii que plena mala recipit, nec inter se multum abhorrentes curationes habet. Ac primum in eo sæpe, et quidem pluribus locis, cutis scinditur: *ῥαγάδια* Græci vocant. Id si recens est, quiescere homo debet, et in aqua calida desiderare. Columbina quoque ova coquenda sunt, et, ubi induruerunt, purganda: deinde alterum jacere in aqua

#### ORDO.

vino, cui paulum croci sit adjectum. Si durities est jam vetustior, radix agrestis cucumeris cocta ex mulso, deinde contrita, proficit maxime.

Si tument ex ictu, est necessarium sanguinem mitti; que magis, si etiam (testiculi) livent. Vero utrumlibet ex iis, quæ componuntur cum cumino, que sunt posita supra, imponendum; aut ea compositio, quæ habet cocti nitri p. ℞. i. pineæ resinæ, cumini, singulorum p. ℞. ii. taminiae uvæ sine seminibus p. ℞. iv. quantum sit satis mellis ad cogenda ea. Quod si aliquid testiculis desit ex ictu, pus quoque fere increscit; neque potest succurri aliter, quam si, scroto inciso, et pus emissum, et testiculus ipse est excisus.

7. Anus quoque recipit multa que plena tædii mala, nec habet curationes multum, abhorrentes inter se. Ac primum cutis scinditur sæpe in eo (loco) et quidem pluribus locis; Græci vocant *ῥαγάδια* (rhagadia). Si id est recens, homo debet quiescere, et desiderare in calida aqua. Columbina ova sunt quoque coquenda, et purganda, ubi induruerunt: deinde alterum (ovum) debet jacere in aqua bene calida, lo-

#### TRANSLATION.

assumed a chronic character, the root of wild cucumber boiled with hydromel, and then bruised, will be most effectual.

If the testicles swell from external violence, blood must necessarily be taken, especially if they be livid. But either of those compositions made with cumin above-mentioned must be laid on the part; or that composition which contains of baked nitre p. ℞. i. of pure resin, of cumin, of each p. ℞. ii. of stavesacre without the seeds p. ℞. iv. of honey as much as may be sufficient for these to be incorporated. But if from any violence the testicle cease to derive nourishment, there is generally an accumulation of matter; nor is there any other remedy, than by making an incision into the scrotum to evacuate the pus, and extirpate the testicle itself.

7. The anus is also subject to many maladies of a very tedious nature; and which are to be treated by methods not very different from one another. At first it frequently happens that the cuticle becomes cracked in several places: the Greeks call it Rhagadia. If the affection be recent, the patient ought to rest, and to sit down in warm water. Pigeons' eggs are to be boiled hard, and deprived of their



bene calida debet, altero calido foveri locus, sic, ut invicem utroque aliquis utatur.

Tum tetrapharmacum, aut rhy-podes rosa diluendum est; aut œsypum recens miscendum cum cerato liquido ex rosa facto; aut eidem cerato liquido plumbum elotum adjiciendum; aut resinæ terebinthinæ myrrha; aut spumæ argenti vetus oleum; et quolibet ex his id perungendum.

Si quidquid læsum est, extra est, neque intus reconditum, eodem medicamento tinctum linamentum superdandum est, et quidquid ante adhibuimus, cerato contegendum. In hoc autem casu, neque acribus cibis utendum, neque asperis, nec alvum comprimentibus: ne aridum quidem quidquam satis utile est, nisi admodum paulum. Liquida, lenia, pingua, glutinosa, meliora sunt. Vino leni uti nihil prohibet.

8. Condyloma autem est tuberculum, quod ex quadam inflammatione nasci solet. Id ubi ortum est, quod ad quietem, cibos, potionesque pertinet, eadem servari debent, quæ proximè scripta sunt. Iisdem etiam ovis

## ORDO.

cus foveri altero calido, sic ut aliquis utatur utroque invicem.

Tum tetrapharmacum, aut rhy-podes est diluendum rosa; aut recens œsypum (est) miscendum cum liquido cerato facto ex rosa; aut elotum plumbum (est) adjiciendum eidem liquido cerato; aut myrrha terebinthinæ resinæ; aut vetus oleum spumæ argenti; et id (est) perungendum quolibet ex his.

Si quidquid est læsum, est extra, neque (est) reconditum intus, linamentum tinctum eodem medicamento est superdandum, et quidquid adhibuimus ante, (est) contegendum cerato. Autem in hoc casu, (est) neque utendum acribus cibis, neque asperis (cibis), nec comprimentibus alvum: nequidem est quidquam aridum satis utile, nisi admodum paulum. Liquida, lenia, pingua, glutinosa, sunt meliora. Nihil prohibet uti leni vino.

8. Condyloma autem est tuberculum, quod solet nasci ex quadam inflammatione. Ubi id est ortum, quod pertinet ad quietem, cibos, quæ potiones, eadem debent servari, quæ sunt scripta proximè. Etiam id tuberculum fovetur recte

## TRANSLATION.

shells, then one egg should be allowed to remain in very hot water, while the part is fomented with the other; so that each of them may be used alternately.

Then the Tetrapharmacum, or the Rhypodes, is to be diluted with rose-oil; or recent Œsypum (10), *wool grease*, to be mixed with liquid cerate of rose-oil; or washed lead is to be added to the same liquid cerate; or myrrh to turpentine resin, or old oil to litharge; and the part to be anointed with any of these.

If any part be injured externally, and not hidden within, a piece of lint dipped in the same preparation should be placed over it, and whatever we have first applied must be covered with cerate. But in this case we should neither use acrid, nor austere aliments, nor such as constipate the bowels; not even dry food is proper, unless it be in small quantities. Liquid, mild, fat, and glutinous aliments are the best. There is nothing to prevent the use of mild wine.

8. A condyloma (11) is a tubercle commonly supervening an inflammation. When this appears, the same means must be employed with regard to rest, diet, and drinks, which are just given above. The tubercle is to be well fomented also with eggs

recte tuberculum id fovetur: sed desidere ante homo in aqua debet, in qua verbenæ decoctæ sunt ex reprimentibus. Tum recte imponitur et lenticula cum exigua mellis parte; et sertula Campana ex vino cocta; et rubi folia contrita cum cerato ex rosa facto; et cum eodem cerato contritum vel cotoneum malum, vel malicorii ex vino cocti pars interior; et chalcitis cocta atque contrita, deinde œsypo ac rosa excepta; et ex ea compositione, quæ habet thuris p. x. i. aluminis scissilis p. x. ii. cerussæ p. x. iii. spumæ argenti p. x. v. quibus, dum teruntur, invicem rosa et vinum instillatur.

Vinculum autem ei loco linteolum aut panniculus quadratus est, qui ad duo capita duas ansas, ad altera duo totidem fascias habet; cumque subjectus est, ansis ad ventrem datis, a posteriore parte in eas adductæ fasciæ conjiciuntur, atque, ubi arctatæ sunt, dexterio sinistra, sinisterio dextra procedit, circumdatæque circa alvum inter se novissime deligantur.

Sed si vetus condyloma jam induit, neque sub his curationibus desit, aduri medicamento potest, quod

## ORDO.

iisdem ovis: sed homo debet desidere ante in aqua, in qua verbenæ ex reprimentibus sunt decoctæ. Tum et lenticula cum exigua parte mellis; et Campana sertula cocta ex vino; et contrita folia rubi cum cerato facto ex rosa imponitur recte; et cum eodem cerato, vel contritum cotoneum malum, vel interior pars malicorii cocti ex vino; et chalcitis cocta atque contrita, deinde excepto œsypo ac rosa; et ex ea compositione, quæ habet thuris p. x. i. scissilis aluminis p. x. ii. cerussæ p. x. iii. spumæ argenti p. x. v. quibus, dum teruntur, rosa et vinum instillatur invicem.

Antem linteolum aut quadratus panniculus est ei loco, qui habet duas ansas ad duo capita, totidem fascias ad duo altera; que cum est subjectus, ansis datis ad ventrem, fasciæ adductæ a posteriore parte conjiciuntur in eas, atque ubi sunt arctatæ, dexterio procedit sinistra, sinisterio (procedit) dextra, que circumdatæ circa alvum novissime deligantur inter se.

Sed si vetus condyloma jam induit, neque desit sub his curationibus, potest aduri medica-

## TRANSLATION.

as in the other case: but the patient should first sit down in a decoction of astringent vervains: then he may apply lentils with a small portion of honey, and melilot boiled in wine, and bramble leaves bruised with cerate made of rose-oil; and either a quince bruised with the same cerate, or the inner part of the pomegranate rind boiled with wine: also chalcitis baked and powdered, then mixed with (Esypum and rose-oil; and some of that composition which contains frankincense p. x. i. of scissile alum p. x. ii. of ceruse p. x. iii. of litharge p. x. v. to which, while they are being bruised, rose-oil and wine are to be dropped in alternately.

Now the bandage for that part is a square piece of linen or woollen cloth, which should have two loops at the two corners, and at the other end as many fillets: and when this is placed under the patient, and the loops are placed toward the abdomen, the fillets are brought forward and passed through them, and when they have been tightened, the one on the right is to be passed to the left, and that on the left toward the right, and being thus made to circumscribe the abdomen, they are at last tied together.

But if the condyloma be inveterate, neither will it yield to these means, it should be cauterized with an application which consists of these articles: of verdigris

ex his constat; æruginis p. ꝥ. II. myrrhæ p. ꝥ. IV. gummi p. ꝥ. VIII. thuris p. ꝥ. XII. stibis, papaveris lacrimæ, acaciæ, singulorum p. ꝥ. XVI. Quo medicamento quidam etiam ulcera, de quibus proxime dixi, renovant. Si hoc parum in condylomate proficit, adhiberi possunt etiam vehementius adurentia. Ubi consumptus est tumor, ad medicamenta lenia transeundum est.

9. Tertium vitium est, ora venarum tamquam capitulis quibusdam turgentia, quæ sæpe sanguinem fundunt: *αιμορροΐδας* Græci vocant. Idque etiam in ore vulvæ fœminarum incidere consuevit. Atque in quibusdam parum tuto suppressitur; qui sanguinis profluvio imbecilliores non fiunt: habent enim purgationem hanc, non morbum. Ideoque curati quidam, cum sanguis exitum non haberet, inclinata in præcordia ac viscera materia, subitis et gravissimis morbis correpti sunt.

Si cui vero id nocet, is desiderare in aqua ex verbenis debet: imponere maxime malicorium, cum aridis rosæ

## ORDO.

mento, quod constat ex his: æruginis p. ꝥ. II. myrrhæ p. ꝥ. IV. gummi p. ꝥ. VIII. thuris p. ꝥ. XII. stibis, lacrimæ papaveris, acaciæ, singulorum p. ꝥ. XVI. Quo medicamento quidam etiam renovant ulcera, de quibus dixi proxime. Si hoc proficit parum in condylomate, etiam vehementius adurentia possunt adhiberi. Ubi tumor est consumptus, est transeundum ad lenia medicamenta.

9. Est tertium vitium, ora venarum turgentia tamquam quibusdam capitulis, quæ sæpe fundunt sanguinem; Græci vocant *αιμορροΐδας* (aimorrhoidas). Queid consuevit incidere etiam in ore vulvæ fœminarum. Atque suppressitur parum tuto in quibusdam; qui non fiunt imbecilliores profluvio sanguinis: enim habent hanc purgationem, non morbum. Ideoque quidam curati, cum sanguis non haberet exitum, materia inclinata in viscera ac præcordia, (ægri) sunt correpti subitis et gravissimis morbis.

Vero si id nocet cni, is debet desiderare in aqua ex verbenis: (debet) maxime imponere malicorium, contritum cum aridis foliis rosæ;

## TRANSLATION.

p. ꝥ. II. of myrrh p. ꝥ. IV. of gum p. ꝥ. VIII. of frankincense p. ꝥ. XII. of antimony, of poppy tears, of acacia, of each p. ꝥ. XVI. By which medicine some surgeons even renew the ulcers, which I last described. If this have no effect on the condyloma, some very powerful escharotics must be applied. When the swelling has been removed, we must have recourse to mild applications.

9. The third malady peculiar to the anus, is, a turgescence of the hemorrhoidal veins resembling little heads, which frequently pour out blood: the Greeks call them hæmorrhoides. Females are subject to a similar discharge from the veins which are situated about the mouth of the womb. In some persons, who are not debilitated by the flow of blood, it is not safe to stop this discharge entirely, for this may be considered a salutary evacuation, rather than a disease. Therefore, some persons cured of this disease, the blood being diverted from its accustomed outlet, and reverted on the præcordia and viscera, have been seized with the most sudden and dangerous complaints.

If a person feel inconvenience from this complaint, let him sit down in a watery decoction of vervains; and especially apply pomegranate rind bruised with dry



foliis contritum; aut ex iis aliqua, quæ sanguinem supprimunt. Solet autem oriri inflammatio, maxime ubi dura alvus eum locum læsit. Tum in aqua dulci desidendum est, et id fovendum ovis: imponendi vitelli cum rosæ foliis ex passo subactis; idque, si intus est, digito illinendum; si extra, superillitum panniculo imponendum est.

Ea quoque medicamenta, quæ recentibus scissuris posita sunt, hic idonea sunt. Cibis vero in hoc casu iisdem, quibus in prioribus, utendum est. Si ista parum juvant, solent imposita medicamenta adurentia ea capitula absumere. Ac si jam vetustiora sunt, sub auctore Dionysio inspergenda sandaracha est: deinde imponendum, quod ex his constat: squamæ æris, auripigmenti, singulorum p. ℥. v. saxi calcis p. ℥. viii. postero die acu compungendum. Adustis capitulis fit cicatrix, quæ sanguinem fundi prohibet. Sed quoties is suppressus est, ne quid periculi afferat, multa exercitatione digerenda materia est: prætereaque et viris, et foeminis,

## ORDO.

aut aliqua ex iis, quæ supprimunt sanguinem. Autem inflammatio solet oriri, maxime ubi dura alvus læsit eum locum. Tum est desidendum in dulci aqua, et (est) fovendum id ovis: vitelli (sunt) imponendi cum foliis rosæ subactis ex passo; que id (est) illinendum digito, si est intus; si (est) extra, est imponendum superillitum panniculo.

Ea medicamenta quoque quæ sunt posita recentibus scissuris, sunt quoque idonea hic. Vero in hoc casu est utendum iisdem cibis, quibus in prioribus. Si ista juvant parum, adurentia medicamenta imposita, solent absumere ea capitula. Ac si sunt jam vetustiora, sandaracha est inspergenda sub auctore Dionysio: deinde (est) imponendum quod constat ex his: squamæ æris, auripigmenti, singulorum p. ℥. v. saxi calcis p. ℥. viii. compungendum postero die acu. Capitulis adustis, cicatrix fit, quæ prohibet sanguinem fundi. Sed quoties is est suppressus, ne afferat quid periculi, materia est digerenda multa exercitatione; que præterea san-

## TRANSLATION.

rose-leaves: or some of those remedies for stopping the flow of blood. Now, inflammation frequently supervenes, especially when, by indurated fæces, those parts have been irritated. Then the patient must sit down in soft water, and that part must be fomented with eggs; the yolks are to be applied with rose leaves beat up with passum; and if the complaint be within, the medicine must be introduced by the finger; if externally, it must be applied spread upon a woollen cloth.

Those medicines also which are applied to recent fissures, are equally applicable here. The same attention to diet must be observed here as in the former cases. If those remedies afford but little relief, it is usual to employ caustics to destroy these small heads. But if these condylomata be of long standing, Dionysius prescribes sandarach to be sprinkled on them: and afterward the following composition must be applied: of copper scales, of orpiment, of each p. ℥. v. of lime stone p. ℥. viii. on the day following they must be punctured with a needle. Those little heads being cauterized, form an eschar, which impedes future hæmorrhage. But as often as this discharge is suppressed, that it may not be attended with any danger, the matter must be dissipated with much exercise; and besides these means,

quibus menstrua non proveniunt, interdum ex brachio sanguis mittendus est.

10. At si anus ipse, vel os vulvæ procidit (nam id quoque interdum fit) considerari debet, purum ne id sit, quod provolutum est, an humore mucoso circumdatum. Si purum est, in aqua desidere homo debet, aut salsa, aut cum verbenis vel malicorio incocata: si humidum, vino austero subluendum est, illinendumque fæce vini combusta. Ubi utrolibet modo curatum est, intus reponendum est; imponendaque plantago contrita, vel folia salicis in aceto cocta; tum linteolum et super lana; eaque deliganda sunt, cruribus inter se devinctis.

11. Fungo quoque simile ulcus in eadem sede nasci solet. Id, si hiems est, egelida; si aliud tempus, frigida aqua fovendum est: dein squama æris inspergenda, supraque ceratum ex myrteo factum, cui paulum squamæ, fuliginis, calcis sit adjectum. Si hac ratione non tollitur, vel medicamentis vehementioribus, vel ferro adurendum est.

## ORDO.

guis est interdum mittendus ex brachio viris, et feminis quibus menstrua non proveniunt.

10. At si anus ipse, vel os vulvæ procidit, (nam id quoque fit interdum), debet considerari, ne id sit purum, quod est provolutum, an (sit) circumdatum mucoso humore. Si est purum, homo debet desidere in aqua, aut salsa, aut incocata cum verbenis vel malicorio: si (est) humidum, est subluendum austero vino, que illinendum combusta fæce vini. Ubi est curatum utrolibet modo, est reponendum intus; que contrita plantago, vel folia salicis cocta in aceto, imponenda; tum linteolum, et lana super; que ea sunt deliganda, cruribus devinctis inter se.

11. Ulcus quoque simile fungo, solet nasci in eadem sede. Id est fovendum egelida aqua, si est hiems; si est aliud tempus, frigida (aqua): dein squama æris (est) inspergenda, que supra id ceratum factum ex myrteo, cui paulum squamæ, fuliginis, calcis, sit adjectum. Si non tollitur hac ratione, vel est adurendum vehementioribus medicamentis, vel ferro.

## TRANSLATION.

we must occasionally take blood from the arm, not only of men, but also from females whose catamenia have been obstructed.

10. But if the anus itself, or the mouth of the womb slip down, (for this also happens sometimes,) we should examine whether the protruded part be healthy, or surrounded with a mucous discharge. If it be clean and healthy, the patient ought to sit down in water, either salt, or in a decoction of vervains, or pomegranate rind; if the part be moist, it must be washed with austere wine, and be covered with burnt wine-lees. When dressed, in either way, it must be replaced within, and bruised plantation, or willow-leaves boiled in vinegar applied; then linen, and over that wool, and these are to be secured by a bandage, the legs being bound together.

11. Sometimes also an alcer, resembling a fungus, forms in the same situation. This must be fomented with warm water, if it be in winter, but with cold water at any other season: afterwards copper scales are to be sprinkled on it, and over that a cerate prepared of myrtle-oil, with the addition of a little scales, of soot, and of lime. If it be not removed by this method, it must be burnt either by stronger caustics, or by the actual cautery.

## CAP. XIX.

DE DIGITORUM ULCERIBUS ET QUOMODO CURANDA SINT.

DIGITORUM autem vetera ulcera commodissime curantur, aut lycio, aut amurca cocta, cum utrilibet vinum adjectum est. In iisdem recedere ab ungue caruncula cum magno dolore consuevit: πτερύγιον Græci appellant. Oportet alumen Melinum rotundum in aqua liquare, donec mellis crassitudinem habeat: tum, quantum ejus aridi fuit, tantumdem mellis infundere, et rudicula miscere, donec similis croco color fiat, eoque illinere.

Quidam ad eundem usum decoquere simul malunt, cum paria pondera aluminis aridi et mellis miscuerunt. Si hac ratione ea non exciderunt, excidenda sunt: deinde digiti fovendi aqua ex verbenis, imponendumque super medicamentum ita factum: chalcitis, malicorium, squama æris excipiuntur fico pingui leniter cocta ex melle; aut chartæ combustæ,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIX.

DE ULCERIBUS DIGITORUM ET QUOMODO SINT CURANDA.

AUTEM vetera ulcera digitorum curantur commodissime, aut lycio, aut cocta amurca, cum vinum est adjectum utrilibet. In iisdem caruncula consuevit recedere ab ungue cum magno dolore: Græci appellant πτερύγιον (pterygion). Oportet liquare rotundum Melinum alumen in aqua, donec habeat crassitudinem mellis: tum, infundere tantumdem mellis, quantum fuit ejus aridi, et miscere rudicula, donec color fiat similis croco, quoque illinere eo.

Quidam, cum miscuerant paria pondera aridi aluminis et mellis, malunt decoquere simul ad eundem usum. Si ea non exciderunt hac ratione, sunt excidenda: deinde digiti (sunt) fovendi aqua ex verbenis, quoque medicamentum ita factum imponendum supra: chalcitis, malicorium, squama æris excipiuntur pingui fico leniter cocta ex melle; aut par modus combustæ chartæ, auripigmenti, sulphuris

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIX.

## OF ULCERS IN THE FINGERS AND THEIR CURE.

OLD ulcers of the fingers are very advantageously treated, either with lycium, or oil-lees boiled, by adding a little wine to either. A carbuncle sometimes arises from the nail in the same way, accompanied with great pain: the Greeks call it pterygion (12). It will be necessary to dissolve as much round Melinum alum in water, until it shall have the consistence of honey; then to pour in just as much honey as there was of it in the dry state, and mix it with a spatula until it assume the colour of saffron, and to anoint with it.

Some would rather boil together for the same use equal quantities of dry alum and honey. If the excrescence be not destroyed by these means, it must be cut off: then the finger must be fomented with a decoction of vervain; and the following application laid over them: chalcitis, pomegranate-bark, copper scales, incorporated with a mellow fig, and slowly boiled with honey: or of burnt paper, of



auripigmenti, sulphuris ignem non experti par modus cerato miscetur ex myrteo facto: aut æruginis rasæ p. ℥. i. squamæ æris p. ℥. ii. mellis cyathocoguntur: aut pares portiones miscentur, saxi calcis, chalcitidis, auripigmenti. Quidquid horum impositum est, tegendum linteolo aqua madefacto est. Tertio die digitus resolvendus, et, si quid aridi est, iterum excidendum, similisque adhibenda curatio est. Si non vincitur, purgandum est scapello; tenuibusque ferramentis adurendum, et, sicut reliqua usta, curandum est.

At ubi scabri ungues sunt, circum aperiri debent, qua corpus contingunt: tum super eos ex hac compositione æque imponi: sandarachæ, sulphuris, singulorum p. ℥. ii. nitri, auripigmenti, singulorum p. ℥. iv. resinæ liquidæ p. ℥. viii. tertioque id die resolvendum est. Sub quo medicamento vitiosi ungues cadunt, et in eorum locum meliores renascuntur.

## ORDO.

non experti ignem miscetur cerato facto ex myrteo; aut rasæ æruginis p. ℥. i. squamæ æris p. ℥. ii. coguntur cyathocoguntur: aut pares portiones saxi calcis, chalcitidis, auripigmenti miscentur. Quidquid horum est impositum, est tegendum linteolo madefacto aqua. Tertio die, digitus est resolvendus, et si est quid aridi, (est) iterum excidendum, que similis curatio est adhibenda. Si non vincitur, est purgandum scapello, que adurendum tenuibus ferramentis, et, est curandum, sicut reliqua usta.

At ubi ungues sunt scabri, debent aperiri circum, qua contingunt corpus: tum (portio) ex hac compositione imponi æque super eos: sandarachæ, sulphuris, singulorum p. ℥. ii. nitri, auripigmenti, singulorum p. ℥. iv. liquidæ resinæ p. ℥. viii. que id est resolvendum tertio die. Sub quo medicamento, vitiosi ungues cadunt, et meliores renascuntur in locum eorum.

## TRANSLATION.

orpiment, of crude sulphur equal quantities, these are mixed with cerate of myrtle-oil: or of scraped verdigris p. ℥. i. of copper scales, beat up with a cupful of honey: or equal portions of lime-stone, of chalcitis, of orpiment, are mixed together. Whichever of these has been employed, the part must be covered with a piece of linen moistened in water. On the third day, the dressings are to be removed from the finger, and if there be any portion having an arid appearance, that must be removed by excision as before, and the same treatment pursued. If the disease be not overcome by such means, it must be pared with a scalpel, and cauterised with small irons: the subsequent dressings are to be the same as in other burns.

But when the nails are scabrous, they ought to be opened around their margins where they are inserted by their roots: then some of the following composition applied over them: of sandarach, of sulphur, of each p. ℥. ii. of nitre, of orpiment, of each p. ℥. iv. of liquid resin p. ℥. viii. and this is to be removed on the third day. Under this application the diseased nails will be detached, and others more healthy arise in their places.

## A. CORN. CELSI

DE MEDICINA

LIBER SEPTIMUS.

ORDO.

LIBER SEPTIMUS

A. COR. CELSI

DE MEDICINA.

## PRÆFATIO.

DE CHIRURGICA, ET QUI IN EA CLARUERUNT, ET QUALIS ESSE CHIRURGICUS DEBEAT.

TERTIAM esse medicinæ partem, quæ manu curet, et vulgo notum, et a me propositum est. Ea non quidem medicamenta atque victus rationem omittit; sed manu tamen plurimum præstat: estque ejus effectus inter omnes medicinæ partes evidentissimus. Si quidem in morbis cum multum fortuna conferat, eademque sæpe salutaria,

## PRÆFATIO.

DE CHIRURGICA, ET QUI CLARUERUNT IN EA, ET QUALIS CHIRURGICUS DEBEAT ESSE.

Est et vulgo notum, et propositum a me, tertiam partem medicinæ esse, quæ curet manu. Ea quidem omittit non medicamenta atque rationem victus; sed tamen præstat plurimum manu: que effectus ejus est evidentissimus inter omnes partes medicinæ. Si quidem cum fortuna conferat multum in morbis, que eadem sint sæpe salutaria, sæpe vana; potest du-

## TRANSLATION.

## THE SEVENTH BOOK

OF

## AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS

ON MEDICINE.

## PREFACE.

ON SURGERY AND THOSE WHO HAVE EXCELLED IN THAT ART:  
THE NECESSARY QUALIFICATIONS OF A SURGEON.

It is generally known, as I have before observed, that surgery constitutes one third part of medicine. This does not indeed reject medicine and a strict attention to diet: but yet it effects most by manual operation; and the success of this is the most evident of all the other branches of medicine. For, since chance contributes much to the cure of diseases, and the same medicines may be often salu-

sæpe vana sint; potest dubitari, secunda valetudo medicinæ, an corporis beneficio contigerit. In iis quoque, in quibus medicamentis maxime nitimur, quamvis profectus evidentior est, tamen sanitatem et per hæc frustra quæri, et sine his reddi sæpe, manifestum est: sicut in oculis quoque deprehendi potest; qui a medicis diu vexati, sine his interdum sanescunt.

At in ea parte, quæ manu curat, evidens est, omnem profectum, ut aliquid ab aliis adjuvetur, hinc tamen plurimum trahere. Hæc autem pars, cum sit vetustissima, magis tamen ab illo parente omnis medicinæ Hippocrate, quam a prioribus exulta est: deinde, posteaquam diducta ab aliis, habere professores suos cœpit, in Ægypto quoque increvit, Philoxeno maxime auctore, qui pluribus voluminibus hanc partem diligentissime comprehendit. Gorgias quoque et Sostratus, et Heron, et Apollonii duo, et Ammonius Alexandrinus, multique alii celebres viri, singuli quædam repererunt.

## ORDO.

bitari, secunda valetudo contigerit medicinæ, an beneficio corporis. Quoque in iis, in quibus nitimur maxime medicamentis, quamvis profectus est evidentior, tamen est manifestum et sanitatem quæri per hæc frustra, et sæpe reddi sine his: sicut quoque potest deprehendi in oculis; qui, vexati diu a medicis, interdum sanescunt sine his.

At in ea parte quæ curat manu, est evidens, omnem profectum, ut aliquid adjuvetur ab aliis, tamen trahere plurimum hinc. Autem cum hæc pars sit vetustissima, tamen exulta est magis ab illo parente omnis medicinæ Hippocrate, quam a prioribus: deinde, posteaquam diducta ab aliis, cœpit habere suos professores, quoque increvit in Ægypto, maxime Philoxeno auctore, qui comprehendit hanc partem diligentissime pluribus voluminibus. Quoque Gorgias, et Sostratus, et Heron, et duo Apollonii, et Ammonius Alexandrinus, que multi alii celebres viri, singuli repererunt quædam.

## TRANSLATION.

tary, often useless; therefore it may be doubted whether the restoration can be attributed to the medicine, or to the sanatory power of the constitution. In those cases also in which we chiefly rely on medicine, although the advantage may be more evident, yet it is manifest, that health is frequently sought for in vain by these means, and as frequently restored without them; as may be exemplified in diseases of the eyes; which, after being long harassed by physicians, sometimes become healthy of their own accord without these medicines.

But in that branch of medicine, which treats of manual operations, it is evident, that all the advantage, (although assistance may be derived from other means,) is to be effected by these. Now although this part is the most ancient, yet it was cultivated more by Hippocrates, the father of all medicine, than by his predecessors: afterwards, being separated from the other branches of the healing art, it commenced to have its own distinct professors, and received considerable improvements in Egypt, principally by the authority of Philoxenes, who had treated of surgery most carefully in several volumes. Gorgias also, and Sostratus, Heron, and the two Apollonii, and Ammonius of Alexandria, and many other celebrated men, all contributed by their researches to surgery.



Ac Romæ quoque non mediocres professores, maximeque nuper Tryphon pater, et Euelpistus, et, ut ex scriptis ejus intelligi potest, horum eruditissimus Meges, quibusdam in melius mutatis, aliquantum ei disciplinæ adjecerunt.

Esse autem chirurgus debet adolescens, aut certe adolescentiæ propior; manu strenua, stabili, nec umquam intremiscente, eaque non minus sinistra, quam dextra promptus; acie oculorum acri, claraque; animo intrepidus, misericors sic, ut sanari velit eum, quem accepit, non ut clamore ejus motus, vel magis, quam res desiderat, properet, vel minus, quam necesse est, secet; sed perinde faciat omnia, ac si nullus ex vagitibus alterius affectus oriatur.

Potest autem requiri, quid huic parti proprie vindicandum sit: quia vulnorum quoque ulcerumque multorum curationes, quas alibi exsecutus sum, chirurgi sibi vindicant. EGO EUMDEM QUIDEM HOMINEM POSSE OMNIO ISTA PRÆSTARE CONCIPIO; ATQUE, UBI SE DIVISERUNT, EUM LAUDO, QUI QUAMPLURIMUM PERCIPIT. Ipse autem huic

## ORDO.

Ac quoque non mediocres professores Romæ, que maxime nuper Tryphon pater, et Euelpistus, et, ut potest intelligi ex scriptis ejus, eruditissimus horum Meges, quibusdam mutatis in melius, adjecerunt aliquantum ei disciplinæ.

Autem chirurgus debet esse adolescens, aut certe propior adolescentiæ; manu strenua, stabili, nec unquam intremiscente, que promptus ea non minus sinistra quam dextra; acri que clara acie oculorum, intrepidus animo, misericors, sic ut velit eum sanari quem accepit, non ut motus clamore ejus, vel properet magis quam res desiderat, vel secet minus quam est necesse; sed faciat omnia perinde ac si nullus affectus oriatur ex vagitibus alterius.

Autem potest requiri, quid sit vindicandum proprie huic parti; quia chirurgi vindicant sibi curationes quoque vulnorum que multorum ulcerum quas exsecutus sum alibi. Ego concipio eundem hominem quidem posse præstare omnia ista: atque, ubi diviserunt se, laudo eum qui percipit quamplurimum. Autem ipse reliqui

## TRANSLATION.

At Rome also, professors of no mean talent, and particularly of late, Tryphon the elder, and Euelpistus, and Meges the most learned of them all, as it would appear by his writings, he, having changed several things for the better, also contributed considerably to the art.

A surgeon ought to be young, or at least not far advanced in years; to have a firm, steady hand, and never liable to tremble; to be no less dexterous with the left than with the right; to have an acute and penetrating sight; an intrepidity of mind sufficient to bear up against the shrieks of his patient, yet compassionate to him whom he has undertaken to cure; he should neither hasten more than the case requires, nor cut less than is necessary; but to effect his purpose in every case, as if he were immovable by the importunities of his patient.

Now it may be asked, what is it that properly appertains to this branch of the profession; because surgeons claim to themselves the treatment both of wounds and of many ulcers, which I have mentioned elsewhere. INDEED I CONCEIVE THE SAME MAN IS CAPABLE OF PERFORMING ALL THESE; AND SINCE THEY ARE DIVIDED, I ESTEEM HIM MOST WHOSE SKILL IS MOST EXTENSIVE. There-

parti ea reliqui, in quibus vulnus facit medicus, non accipit; et in quibus vulneribus ulceribusve plus profici manu, quam medicamento, credo: tum, quidquid ad ossa pertinet. Quæ deinceps exsequi aggrediar; dilatisque in aliud volumen ossibus, in hoc cetera explicabo; præpositisque iis, quæ in qualibet parte corporis fiunt, ad ea, quæ proprias sedes habent, transibo.

## ORDO.

huic parti ea, in quibus medicus facit vulnus, non accipit; et in quibus vulneribus ve ulceribus credo plus profici manu quam medicamento; tum, quidquid pertinet ad ossa. Quæ deinceps aggrediar exsequi; quæ ossibus dilatis in aliud volumen, explicabo cetera in hoc; quæ iis præpositis, quæ fiunt in qualibet parte corporis, transibo ad ea quæ habent proprias sedes.

## TRANSLATION.

fore, I have, for my own part, left to this branch of medicine those cases where the physician makes the wound which did not previously exist; and those wounds or ulcers for which I believe manual operations to be more useful than medicines; and lastly, whatever relates to the bones. These subjects I shall endeavour to explain afterwards; and the bones being deferred to another book, I shall treat of the other matters in this; then, those being first discussed which arise in any part of the body, I shall proceed to those which are peculiar to certain parts.

## CAP. I.

DE LUXATIS ET QUOMODO CURANDA  
SUNT.

LUXATA igitur in quacumque parte corporis sunt, quamprimum sic curari debent, ut, qua dolor est, ea scalpello cutis crebro incidatur, detergeaturque eodem averso profluens sanguis. Quod si paulo tardius subvenitur, jamque

## ORDO.

## CAP. I.

DE LUXATIS, ET QUOMODO SUNT  
CURANDA.

IGITUR luxata, in quacunque parte corporis sunt, debent curari quamprimum, sic ut qua dolor est, ea cutis incidatur crebro scalpello, quæ sanguis profluens detergeatur eodem averso. Quod si subvenitur paulo tardius, quæ jam est etiam

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. I.

## OF CONTUSIONS.

Now contusions (1) or sprains, in whatever part of the body they may be, ought to be attended to as soon as possible; so that wherever the pain may be, there the skin should be incised in several places with the scalpel, and the blood issuing hence may be wiped away with the back of the instrument. But if it be not taken

etiam rubor est, qua rubet corpus; si tumor quoque accessit, quacumque is est, idem optimum auxilium est. Tum superdanda reprimentia sunt; maximeque lana succida ex aceto et oleo. Quod si levior is casus est, possunt, etiam sine scalpello, imposita eadem mederi: et, si nihil aliud est, cinis quoque, maxime ex sarmentis; si is non est, quilibet alius ex aceto, vel etiam ex aqua coactus.

## ORDO.

rubor, qua corpus rubet; si tumor quoque accessit, quacumque is est, idem auxilium est optimum. Tum reprimentia sunt superdanda; que maxime succida lana ex aceto et oleo. Quod si is casus est levior, eadem imposita possunt mederi, etiam sine scalpello: et, si est nihil aliud, quoque cinis, maxime ex sarmentis; si is non est, quilibet alius coactus ex aceto, vel etiam ex aqua.

## TRANSLATION.

in time, and the part has become red, then that part *must be scarified*; if there be a swelling too, wherever that may be, the same remedy will be the most successful. Then astringents should be laid over it; and especially greasy wool, moistened with vinegar and oil. But if the case be very slight, these applications may cure, even without the incisions; and, if nothing else be at hand, even ashes, especially those of the vine-twigs: if these are not to be had, any other incorporated with vinegar, or even water.

## CAP. II.

## ORDO.

DE HIS, QUÆ PER SE INTUMESCENT, QUOMODO EXCIDENDA ET CURANDA SINT.

## CAP. II.

DE HIS, QUÆ INTUMESCENT PER SE, QUOMODO SINT EXCIDENDA ET CURANDA.

VERUM hoc quidem promptum est. In iis autem negotium majus est, quæ per se, vitio intus orto, intumescunt, et ad suppurationem spectant. Ea om-

VERUM hoc quidem est promptum. Autem est majus negotium in iis quæ intumescunt per se, et spectant ad suppurationem, vitio orto intus. Proposui alias omnia ea

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

OF THOSE TUMOURS WHICH ARISE SPONTANEOUSLY, AND THE NECESSARY MODE OF TREATMENT.

THE case mentioned above is easily treated. But there will be more trouble with those which spontaneously arise from some internal cause, and tend to suppuration.



nia genera abscessuum esse alias proposui, medicamentaque his idonea exsecutus sum : nunc superest, ut dicam, in iisdem quæ manu fieri debeant. Ergo, priusquam indurescant, cutem incidere, et cucurbitulam accommodare oportet, quæ quidquid illuc malæ corruptæque materiæ coit, extrahat : idque iterum, tertioque recte fit, donec omne indicium inflammationis excedat. Neque tamen fas non est, nihil cucurbitulam agere.

Interdum enim fit, sed raro, ut quidquid abscedit, velamento suo includatur. Id antiqui tunicam nominabant. Meges, quia tunica omnis nervosa est, dixit, non nasci sub eo vitio nervum, quo caro consumeretur, sed, subjecto jam vetustiore pure, callum circumdari. Quod ad curationis rationem nullo loco pertinet ; quia quidquid, si tunica est, idem, si callus est, fieri debet. Neque ulla res prohibet, etiamsi callus est, tamen, quia cingit, tunicam nominari.

Tum pure quoque maturius hæc interdum esse consuevit : ideoque, quod

## ORDO.

esse genera abscessuum, quæ exsecutus sum medicamenta idonea his : nunc superest, ut dicam, quæ debeant fieri manu in iisdem. Ergo, priusquam indurescant, oportet incidere cutem, et accommodare cucurbitulam, quæ extrahat quidquid malæ que corruptæ materiæ coit illuc : que id fit iterum, que tertio recte, donec omne indicium inflammationis excedat. Neque tamen est non fas, cucurbitulam agere nihil.

Enim interdum fit, sed raro, ut quidquid abscedit, includatur suo velamento. Antiqui nominabant id tunicam. Meges dixit, quia omnis tunica est nervosa, nervum nasci non sub eo vitio quo caro consumeretur, sed, vetustiore pure jam subjecto, callum circumdari. Quod pertinet ad rationem curationis nullo loco ; quia quidquid debet fieri, si est tunica, idem (debet fieri) si est callus. Neque ulla res prohibet, etiamsi est callus, tamen, quia cingit, nominari tunicam.

Tum quoque hæc consuevit interdum esse maturius (quam) pure ;

## TRANSLATION.

I have already explained in another place that these are certain species of abscesses, and also the proper applications for them : it now remains for me to say what ought to be done for them by the hand. Therefore, before they become hard, it will be necessary to incise the skin, and to apply the cupping-glasses, in order to extract any bad and corrupt matter which may have collected there ; and this may be repeated a second and a third time with advantage, until every symptom of inflammation shall have disappeared. Yet it may happen, that the cupping-glasses will effect no good.

Sometimes it is also the case, though seldom, that a collection of matter is inclosed in a covering of its own. The ancients termed this cyst a tunic. Meges has maintained, that as every cyst is membranous, a membrane could not be generated in a disease which destroyed the flesh, but rather a species of circumscribed callus, produced by the long retention of matter underneath. But this has nothing to do with the mode of treatment ; for the course that ought to be pursued, if it be a cyst, is also necessary if it be a callus. Neither is there any reason for not calling it a tunic, since it envelopes something, even although it should be a callus.

Then again, this cyst has been known to exist, even before the formation of

sub ea est, extrahi per cucurbitulam non potest. Sed facile id intelligitur, ubi nihil admota illa mutavit. Ergo, sive id incidit, sive jam durities est, in hac auxilii nihil est; sed, ut alias scripsi, vel avertenda concurrens eo materia, vel digerenda, vel ad maturitatem perducenda est. Si priora contigerunt, nihil præterea necessarium est. Si pus maturuit, in alis quidem et inguinibus raro secandum est; item ubicumque mediocris abscessus est; item quoties in summa cute, vel etiam carne vitium est: nisi festinare cubantis imbecillitas cogit: satisque est cataplasmatibus efficere, ut per se pus aperiatur. Nam fere sine cicatrice potest esse is locus, qui expertus ferrum non est.

Si autem altius malum est, considerari debet, nervosusne is locus sit, an non sit. Nam, si sine nervis est, candenti ferramento aperiri debet: cujus hæc gratia est, quod exigua plaga diutius ad pus evocandum patet, parvaque postea cicatrix fit. At si nervi juxta sunt, ignis alienus est; ne vel disten-

## ORDO.

que ideo, quod est sub ea, potest non extrahi per cucurbitulam. Sed intelligitur facile, ubi illa admota mutavit nihil. Ergo, sive id incidit, sive est jam durities, est nihil auxilii in hac; sed, ut scripsi alias, materia concurrens eo est vel avertenda vel digerenda, vel perducenda ad maturitatem. Si priora contigerunt, nihil præterea est necessarium. Si pus maturuit, est raro secandum quidem in alis et inguinibus: item ubicumque abscessus est mediocris: item quoties vitium est in summa cute, vel etiam carne; nisi imbecillitas cubantis cogit festinare; que est satis efficere cataplasmatibus, ut pus aperiatur per se. Nam fere is locus potest esse sine cicatrice qui non expertus est ferrum.

Autem si malum est altius, debet considerari, ne is locus sit nervosus, an sit non. Nam si est sine nervis, debet aperire candenti ferramento; gratia cujus est hæc, quod exigua plaga patet diutius ad pus evocandum, que postea parva cicatrix fit. At si nervi sunt juxta, ignis est alienus; ne vel dis-

## TRANSLATION.

matter had taken place, and for this reason cannot be extracted by the cupping instruments, because it lies underneath. But this is easily discovered when the application of that instrument has produced no change. Therefore, whether that happens, or when there is already an induration, there will be no assistance *from the cupping glasses*; but, as I have already stated in another place, the matter collected there must be diverted, dispersed, or brought to a perfect suppuration. If *either of the former* have taken place, nothing further will be necessary. If pus have been matured, in the arm-pits, or in the groins, an opening should rarely be made there: also wherever the abscess is small, or on the surface of the skin, or even in the flesh: unless debility of the patient compel us to accelerate the discharge; and it will be sufficient *in such a case* to effect an opening by itself, with the aid of cataplasms. For it generally happens, that the part which has never been opened with the lancet is free from a scar.

If the abscess be deeply seated, it ought to be considered whether the part is nervous or not. For if it be without nerves, it should be opened with the actual cautery: the advantage of which is this, that a small wound may be kept open for a longer space, in order to evacuate the pus, and afterwards a small cicatrix may be formed. But if there be nerves near, then the actual cautery would be

dantur, vel membrum debilitent: necessaria vero opera scalpelli est. Sed cetera etiam subcruda aperiri possunt: inter nervos ultima expectanda maturitas est, quæ cutem extenuet, eique pus jungat, quo propius reperiatur.

Jamque alia rectam plagam desiderant: in pane, quia fere vehementer cutem extenuat, tota ea super pus excidenda est. Semper autem, ubi scalpellus admovetur, id agendum est, ut et quam minimæ et quam paucissimæ plagæ sint: cum eo tamen, ut necessitati succurramus, et in modo, et in numero. Nam majores sinus, latius; interdum etiam duabus, aut tribus lineis incidendi sunt. Dandaque opera, ut imus sinus exitum habeat; ne quis humor intus subsidat, qui proxima et adhuc sana rodendo sinuet.

Est etiam in rerum natura, ut cutis latius excidenda sit. Nam, ubi post longos morbos totius corporis habitus vitiatum est, lateque se sinus suffudit, et in eo jam cutis pallet; scire licet, eam jam emortuam esse, et inutilem

## ORDO.

tendantur, vel debilitent membrum; vero opera scalpelli est necessaria. Sed etiam cetera possunt aperiri subcruda: inter nervos ultima maturitas est expectanda, quæ extenuet cutem, que jungat pus ei, quo reperiatur propius.

Que jam alia desiderant rectam plagam: in pane, quia fere extenuat cutem vehementer, tota ea super pus est excidenda. Autem semper, ubi scalpellus admovetur, id est agendum, ut sint et quam minimæ, et quam paucissimæ plagæ: tamen cum eo, ut succurramus necessitati, et in modo, et in numero. Nam majores sinus, sunt incidendi latius; interdum etiam duabus aut tribus lineis. Que opera danda, ut imus sinus habeat exitum; ne quis humor subsidat intus, qui sinuet rodendo proxima et adhuc sana.

Est etiam in natura rerum, ut cutis sit excidenda latius. Nam, ubi post longos morbos habitus totius corporis est vitiatum, que sinus suffudit se late, et jam cutis pallet in eo; licet scire eam esse jam emortuam, et futuram inutilem:

## TRANSLATION.

improper, because it might bring on convulsions, or debilitate the limb: but the aid of the scalpel will be necessary. The others may be opened before they are quite mature; but amongst tendons the utmost maturity is to be waited for, that the skin may be attenuated, and the pus brought nearer to the surface, by which it may be the more easily discovered.

There are others again which require to be opened in a straight direction: in that kind denominated Panis, all that part over the pus should be removed, because it renders the skin extremely thin. But whenever the scalpel is used, that is to be done *in such a way*, that the wounds may be as small and as few as possible: but with this precaution, however, that we may administer to the necessity of the case, either in the extent, or number of incisions. For the larger sinuses require the incisions to be more extended, and sometimes even in two or three directions. It should be our care to open the abscess at the lowest or most depending part, that the matter may have a free exit; lest any humour should subside there, by which it might form a sinus, by corroding the adjacent healthy parts.

Cases occur in the progress of events, where the cutis must be removed for a considerable extent. For, when, after long diseases, the habit of the whole body becomes vitiated, and the abscess occupies a considerable space, and the skin over it becomes



futuram : ideoque excidere commodius est ; maxime, si circa articulos majores id evenit, cubantemque ægrum fluens alvus exhaurit, neque per alimenta quidquam corpori accedit. Sed excidi ita debet, ut plaga ad similitudinem myrtei folii fiat, quo facilius sanescat : idque perpetuum est, ubicumque medicus et quacumque de causa cutem excidit. Pure effuso, in alis vel inguinibus linamento opus non est : spongia ex vino imponenda est.

In ceteris partibus, si æque linamenta supervacua sunt, purgationis causa paulum mellis infundendum ; dein glutinantia superdanda : si illa necessaria sunt, super ea quoque similiter dari spongia eodem modo ex vino expressa debet. Quando autem linamentis opus sit, quando non sit, alias dictum est. Cetera eadem, incisa suppuratione, facienda sunt, quæ, ubi per medicamenta rupta est, facienda esse proposui.

## ORDO.

que ideo est commodius excidere ; maxime, si id evenit circa majores articulos, que fluens alves exhaurit ægrum cubantem, neque quidquam accedit corpori per alimenta. Sed debet excidi ita, ut plaga fiat ad similitudinem myrtei folii, quo sanescat facilius : que id est perpetuum, ubicumque et de quacumque causa medicus excidit cutem. Pure effuso, non est opus linamento in alis vel inguinibus : spongia ex vino est imponenda.

In ceteris partibus, si linamenta sunt æque supervacua, paulum mellis infundendum causa purgationis ; dein glutinantia (sunt) superdanda : si illa sunt necessaria, super ea quoque similiter spongia expressa ex vino eodem modo debet dari. Autem quando sit opus linamentis, quando non sit, dictum est alias. Suppuratione incisa, cetera eadem sunt facienda, quæ proposui esse facienda ubi rupta est per medicamenta.

## TRANSLATION.

pale, we may conclude that it is mortified, and therefore useless : and for this reason it would be better removed ; especially if the abscess should happen about the larger joints ; or, if the patient be debilitated by a relaxation of the bowels during his confinement ; and the body derive no nourishment from the food taken. Therefore it ought to be opened in such a manner, that the wound may resemble the form of a myrtle leaf, that it may heal the more easily : and this should be observed as a constant rule, wherever and from whatever cause the physician has to remove the skin. The pus being discharged, there will be no need of lint in the arm-pits or groin : a sponge may be applied squeezed out of wine.

In the other parts, if lint be equally unnecessary, a little honey is to be poured in as a detergent ; then agglutinants are to be applied : but if lint be necessary, a sponge moistened with wine should be applied over it in the same way. But when lint is necessary, or unnecessary, has been already determined in another place. The subsequent dressings of an abscess opened by incision, are to be the same which I prescribed for one opened by means of medicine.

## CAP. III.

## DE BONIS MALISVE SIGNIS EXULCERATORUM.

PROTINUS autem, quantum curatio efficiat, quantumque aut sperari aut timeri debeat, ex quibusdam signis intelligi potest; fereque iisdem, quæ in vulneribus exposita sunt. Nam bona signa sunt, somnum capere; facile spirare; siti non confici; cibum non fastidire; si febricula fuit, ea vacare; itemque habere pus album, læve, non fœdi odoris. Mala sunt, vigilia, spiritus gravitas, sitis, cibi fastidium, febris, pus nigrum, aut fœculentum, et fœdi odoris; item procedente curatione eruptio sanguinis; aut si, antequam sinus carne impleatur, oræ carnosæ fiunt, illa quoque ipsa carne hebetæ, nec firma. Deficere tamen animam, vel in ipsa curatione, vel postea, pessimum omnium est. Quin etiam morbus ipse, sive subito solutus est, dein suppuratio exorta est; sive effuso

## ORDO.

## CAP. III.

## DE BONIS VE MALIS SIGNIS EXULCERATORUM.

AUTEM quantum curatio efficiat, que quantum debeat aut sperari aut timeri, potest intelligi protinus, ex quibusdam signis; que fere iisdem, quæ exposita sunt in vulneribus. Nam bona signa sunt, capere somnum; spirare facile; non confici siti; non fastidire cibum; si fuit febricula, vacare ea; que item habere album pus, læve, non fœdi odoris. Mala sunt, vigilia, gravitas spiritus, sitis, fastidium cibi, febris, pus nigrum, aut fœculentum, et fœdi odoris; item curatione procedente eruptio sanguinis; aut si antequam sinus impleatur carne, oræ fiunt carnosæ, illa carne ipsa quoque hebetæ, nec firma. Tamen pessimum omnium est animam deficere, vel in curatione ipsa vel postea. Quin etiam morbus ipse, sive solutus est subito, dein suppuratio exorta est; sive pure effuso permanet, non injuste terret,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

## THE GOOD OR BAD SYMPTOMS OF SUPPURATIONS.

THERE are certain signs by which we can immediately ascertain what effect the treatment may have, and what cause we have to hope or fear; and these are mostly the same which I have explained in wounds. For the good signs are, to sleep, to breathe easily, not to be tormented with thirst, not to loathe food; if there has been a slight fever, and that be gone; and also to discharge bland pus; smooth, and not of a fœtid odour. The bad signs are, vigilance, heaviness of breathing, thirst, loathing of food, fever, black or feculent pus, and of a fœtid odour; also a hæmorrhage occurring during the progress of the cure; or if, before the cavity be filled up with granulations, the lips become callous, whilst that same flesh is devoid of sensibility, and flabby. Yet the worst sign of all is for the patient to faint, either in the dressing or afterwards. Besides, if the disease disappear suddenly, and a suppuration ensue, or if it remain after the

pure permanet, non injuste terret. Est-que inter causas timoris, si sensus in vulnere rodentium non est. Sed ut hæc ipsa fortuna huc illucve discernit; sic medici partium est, eniti ad reperiendam sanitatem. Ergo, quoties ulcus resolverit, eluere id, si reprimendus humor videbitur, vino ex aqua pluviali misto, vel aqua, in qua lenticula cocta sit, debet: si purgandum erit, mulso; rursusque imponere eadem.

Ubi jam repressus videbitur humor, ulcusque purum erit, produci carnem conveniet, et foveri vulnus pari portione vini ac mellis, superque imponi spongiam ex vino et rosa tinctam. Per quæ cum caro producat, plus tamen, ut alias quoque dixi, victus ratio eo confert; id est, solutis jam febribus et cibi cupiditate reddita, balneum rarum; quotidiana, sed lenis gestatio; cibi potionesque corpori faciendo aptæ. Quæ omnia, per medicamenta quoque suppuratione rupta, sequuntur: sed, quia magno malo vix sine ferro mederi licet, in hunc locum reservata sunt.

## ORDO.

Que est inter causas timoris, si est non sensus rodentium in vulnere. Sed ut fortuna discernit hæc ipsa huc ve illuc; sic est partium medici, eniti ad reperiendam sanitatem. Ergo, quoties resolverit ulcus, debet eluere id, si humor videbitur reprimendus, vino misto ex pluviali aqua, vel aqua in qua lenticula cocta sit: si erit purgandum, mulso; que rursus imponere eadem.

Ubi humor videbitur jam repressus, que ulcus erit purum, conveniet carnem produci, et vulnus foveri pari portione vini ac mellis, que spongiam tinctam ex vino et rosa imponi super. Per quæ cum caro producat, tamen ut dixi quoque alias, ratio victus confert plus eo; id est, febribus jam solutis, et cupiditate cibi reddita, rarum balneum; quotidiana, sed lenis gestatio; cibi que potiones aptæ faciendo corpori. Omnia quæ sequuntur quoque suppuratione rupta per medicamenta; sed quia licet vix mederi magno malo sine ferro, reservata sunt in hunc locum.

## TRANSLATION.

matter is discharged, there is just cause for apprehension. There is also another ground for fear if there be an insensibility in the wound to the action of corroding medicines. But as chance frequently determines these incidents; so it is the duty of a physician to employ all the means in his power for the recovery of his patient. Therefore, as often as he removes the dressings from an ulcer, he ought to wash it (if it seem necessary to repress the discharge) with a mixture of wine and rain-water, or with a decoction of lentils; if it shall require to be cleansed, with hydromel; and afterwards to renew the dressings.

When the discharge shall appear at last to be suppressed, and the ulcer clean, it may be proper to promote the granulations, and to foment the wound with equal portions of wine and honey, and to apply a sponge dipt in wine and rose-oil over it. Although by these means flesh is reproduced, yet, as I have observed in another place, the regulation of the diet conduces more to that effect; for instance, when the fever is removed, and the desire of food restored, an occasional bath, easy gestation daily; and such food and drink as contribute to nourish the body. All these precepts apply also to those abscesses which have been broken by medicines. But, as it is scarcely possible to cure a large abscess, without the aid of the lancet, they have been reserved for this place.



## CAP. IV.

## DE FISTULIS ET EORUM CURATIONE.

I. ADVERSUS fistulas quoque, si altius penetrant, ut ad ultimas demitti collyrium non possit, si tortuosæ sunt, si multiplices, majus in manu, quam in medicamentis præsidium est: minusque operæ est, si sub cute transversæ feruntur, quam si rectæ intus tendunt. Igitur, si sub cute transversa fistula est, demitti specillum debet, supraque id ea incidi. Si flexus reperiuntur, hi quoque simul specillo et ferro persequendi sunt: idemque faciendum, si plures, se quasi ramuli ostendunt.

Ubi ad fines fistulæ ventum est, excidendus ex ea totus callus est, superque fibulæ dandæ, et medicamentum, quo glutinetur. At si recta subter tendit, ubi, quo maxime ferat, specillo exploratum est, excidi is sinus debet: dein fibula oris cutis injicienda est, et æque glutinantia medicamenta super-

## ORDO.

## CAP. IV.

## DEFISTULIS ET CURATIONE EORUM.

Quoque adversus fistulas, si penetrant altius, ut collyrium non possit demitti ad ultimas, si sunt tortuosæ, si multiplices, est majus præsidium in manu, quam in medicamentis: que est minus operæ, si feruntur transversæ sub cute, quam si tendunt rectæ intus. Igitur, si fistula est transversa sub cute, specillum debet demitti, que ea incidi supra id. Si flexus reperiuntur, hi quoque sunt persequendi simul specillo et ferro: que idem faciendum si plures, quasi ramuli ostendunt se.

Ubi est ventum ad fines fistulæ, totus callus est excidendus ex ea, que fibulæ dandæ super, et medicamentum quo glutinetur. At si tendit recta subter, ubi est exploratum specillo, quo maxime ferat, is sinus debet excidi; dein fibula est injicienda oris cutis, et æque glutinantia medicamenta

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

## ON FISTULAS.

1. WHEN fistulas penetrate pretty deep, so that a tent cannot reach to the bottom, if they be tortuous, or multiplex, an operation will be more useful than medicines; and those which take a transverse direction under the skin are less troublesome than those which tend directly inward. Therefore, if the fistula be in a transverse direction under the skin, a probe should be introduced, and an incision made on that. If it be tortuous, these sinuosities are to be followed at the same time by the probe and knife: and the same treatment should be employed, if several of them appear as if uniting their branches.

When we have come to the end of the fistula, the whole of the callus must be excised, the edges brought together by buckles, and agglutinants applied. But if it point directly inwards, as indicated by an examination with the probe, that sinus must be cut out; then a buckle applied over the lips of the wound, and aggluti-

danda sunt; aut, si corruptius ulcus est (quod interdum osse vitiato fit) ubi id quoque curatum est, pus moventia.

2. Solent autem inter costas fistulæ subter exire. Quod ubi incidit, eo loco costa ab utraque parte præcidenda et eximenda est, ne quid intus corruptum relinquatur. Solent, ubi costas transierunt, septum id, quod transversum a superioribus visceribus intestina discernit, violare. Quod intelligi et ex loco, et ex magnitudine doloris, potest; et quia nonnumquam spiritus ea cum humore quasi bullante prorumpit, maximeque, si hunc ore ille continuit. In eo medicinæ locus nullus est. In ceteris vero, quæ circa costas sanabilia sunt, pingua medicamenta inimica sunt; ceteris, quæ ad vulnera accommodantur, uti licet: optime tamen sicca linamenta, vel, si purgandum aliquid videtur, in melle tincta imponuntur.

3. Ventri nullum os subest; sed ibi perniciosæ admodum fistulæ fiunt: adeo ut Sostratus insanabiles esse credide-

## ORDO.

sunt superdanda; aut, si ulcus est corruptius, (quod interdum fit osse vitiato) ubi id quoque est curatum, moventia, pus.

2. Autem fistulæ solent exire subter inter costas. Ubi quod incidit, costa est præcidenda, et eximenda eo loco ab utraque parte, ne quid corruptum relinquatur intus. Solent, ubi transierunt costas, violare id septum, quod transversum discernit intestina a superioribus visceribus. Quod potest intelligi et ex loco, et ex magnitudine doloris; et quia nonnumquam spiritus prorumpit ea cum quasi bullante humore, que maxime si ille continuit hunc ore. In eo est nullus locus medicinæ. Vero in ceteris, quæ sunt sanabilia circa costas, pingua medicamenta sunt inimica; licet uti ceteris, quæ accommodantur ad vulnera: tamen sicca linamenta imponuntur optime, vel si aliquid videtur purgandum, tincta in melle.

3. Nullum os subest ventri; sed admodum perniciosæ fistulæ fiunt ibi: adeo ut Sostratus crediderit

## TRANSLATION.

nating medicines laid on it; or, if the ulcer be very foul, (which sometimes happens from a diseased bone,) when that also is cured, suppuratives may be employed.

2. Now fistulæ are accustomed to extend beneath the ribs. When this happens, that portion of the rib must be cut through on each side of the fistula, lest any diseased portion be left within. It is usual for them also, when they have gone beyond the ribs, to penetrate the transverse septum, (*the diaphragm*,) which divides the intestines from the superior viscera. This may be known, both from the situation and the excess of the pain; and because the air sometimes escapes in that part, accompanied with matter, and especially if the patient have retained his breath. This case admits of no remedy. But in the other kinds about the ribs, which are curable, greasy applications are injurious; therefore we should employ such as are adapted for wounds; but the best application is dry lint; or, if it appear necessary to be cleansed, this dipped in honey.

3. There is no bone under the abdominal integuments; but fistulæ in that region are highly dangerous: so much so, that Sostratus pronounced them incurable.

rit. Id non ex toto ita se habere usus ostendit: et quidem, quod maxime mirum videri potest, tutior fistula est contra jecur, et lienem, et ventriculum, quam contra intestina: non quo perniciosior ibi sit, sed quo alteri periculo locum faciat. Cujus experimento moti, quidam auctores parum modum rei cognoverunt. Nam venter sæpe etiam telo perforatur, prolapsaque intestina conduntur, et oras vulneris suturæ comprehendunt: quod quemadmodum fiat, mox indicabo.

Itaque, etiam ubi tenuis fistula abdomen perrupit, excidere eam licet, suturaque oras conjungere. Si vero ea fistula intus patuit, excisa necesse est latius foramen relinquat: quod nisi permagna vi, utique ab interiore parte, sui non potest, qua quasi membrana quædam finit abdomen, quam *περιτόναιον* Græci vocant. Ergo, ubi aliquis ingredi ac moveri cœpit, rumpitur illa sutura, atque intestina evolvuntur: quo fit, ut pereundum homini sit. Sed non omni modo res ea desperationem habet: ideoque tenuioribus fistulis adhibenda curatio est.

## ORDO.

esse insanabiles. Usus ostendit ut non habere se ex toto ita: et quidem, quod potest videri maxime mirum, fistula contra jecur, et lienem, et ventriculum, est tutior quam contra intestina: non quo sit perniciosior ibi, sed quo faciat locum alteri periculo. Mori experimento cujus, quidam auctores cognoverunt parum modum rei. Nam sæpe venter etiam perforatur telo, que intestina prolapsa conduntur, et suturæ comprehendunt oras vulneris: quod quemadmodum fiat, indicabo mox.

Itaque, etiam ubi tenuis fistula perrupit abdomen, licet excidere eam, que conjungere oras sutura. Vero si ea fistula patuit intus, excisa est necesse relinquat latius foramen: quod non potest sui, nisi permagna vi, utique ab interiore parte, qua quasi quædam membrana, quam Græci vocant *περιτόναιον* (peritonæum) finit abdomen. Ergo, ubi aliquis cœpit ingredi ac moveri, illa sutura rumpitur, atque intestina evolvuntur: quo fit, ut sit pereundum homini. Sed ea res non habet desperationem omni modo: que ideo curatio est adhibenda tenuioribus fistulis.

## TRANSLATION.

Experience, however, has proved that this is not always the case: and indeed, however wonderful it may appear, a fistula opposite to the liver, spleen, and stomach, is more safe than one opposite to the intestine; not that it is by its own nature more pernicious there, but because it renders that part more liable to danger of another kind. This fact has excited the attention of some authors, although they knew little of the cause. For the abdomen itself is often perforated with a weapon, and the intestines which had been prolapsed, replaced, and the edges of the wound brought together by sutures; the mode of doing which I shall point out presently.

Therefore, even when a small fistula has penetrated the abdomen, it may be cut out, and the edges united by sutures. But if that fistula extend inwardly, excision will necessarily leave a very wide opening, which cannot be sewed, without considerable violence, especially on the inside, where there is a certain membrane lining the abdomen, which the Greeks call Peritonæum. Therefore, when a person has begun to walk or move, the suture breaks, and the intestines are protruded, so that the man must perish. But the case is not always desperate; and for this reason we should endeavour to effect a cure in the smaller fistulæ.



4. Propriam etiamnum animadversionem desiderant eæ, quæ in ano sunt. In has demisso specillo, ad ultimum ejus caput incidi cutis debet: dein novo foramine specillum educi lino sequente, quod in aliam ejus partem, ob id ipsum perforatam, conjectum sit. Ibi linum prehendendum vinciendumque cum altero capite est, ut laxè cutem, quæ super fistulam est, teneat: idque linum debet esse crudum, et duplex triplexve, sic tortum, ut unitas facta sit. Interim autem licet negotia agere, ambulare, lavari, cibum capere, perinde atque sanissimo. Tantummodo id linum bis die, salvo nodo, ducendum est, sic, ut subeat fistulam pars, quæ superior fuit. Neque committendum est, ut id linum putrescat: sed tertio quoque die nodus resolvendus est, et ad caput alterum recens linum alligandum, eductoque vetere, id in fistula cum simili nodo relinquendum. Sic enim id paulatim cutem, quæ supra fistulam est, incidit: simulque et id sanescit, quod a lino relictum est; et id, quod ab eo mordetur, inciditur. Hæc ratio curationis longa, sed sine dolore est.

## ORDO.

4. Eæ quæ sunt in ano, etiamnum desiderant propriam animadversionem. Specillo demisso in has, cutis debet incidi ad ultimum caput ejus: dein specillum educi novo foramine, lino sequente, quod sit conjectum in aliam partem ejus, perforatam ob id ipsum. Ibi linum est prehendendum, quæ vinciendum cum altero capite, ut teneat laxè cutem, quæ est super fistulam: quæ id linum debet esse crudum, et duplex ve triplex, sic tortum, ut unitas facta sit. Autem interim licet agere negotia, ambulare, lavari, capere cibum, perinde atque sanissimo. Tantummodo id linum est ducendum bis die, nodo salvo, sic, ut pars quæ fuit superior subeat fistulam. Neque est committendum, ut id linum putrescat: sed nodus est resolvendus quoque tertio die, et recens linum alligandum ad alterum caput, quæ vetere educto, id relinquendum in fistula cum simili nodo. Enim sic id paulatim incidit cutem, quæ est supra fistulam: quæ simul et id sanescit, quod est relictum a lino; et id quod mordetur ab eo, inciditur. Hæc ratio curationis est longa, sed sine dolore.

## TRANSLATION.

4. Fistulæ in ano require a still more particular plan of treatment. A probe being introduced, an incision through the skin is to be made on the farthest point of it; then the probe is to be drawn through this new aperture, armed with a thread following it, through an eye perforated at the further end for that purpose. There the thread is to be taken hold of, and tied to the other end, so as to embrace the skin loosely which is over the fistula; the thread should be made of new (2) lint, of double or triple folds, and so twisted as to form one ligature. In the mean time the patient may go about his business, walk, bathe, and take his food, just as if he were in the most perfect health. The ligature, however, must be moved twice a day, without untying the knot, so that the part which was above may then be within the fistula. Neither is the thread to be left until it become putrid; but the knot is to be untied every third day, and a fresh ligature attached to one of the ends, the old being withdrawn, the new one is to be left in the fistula with a similar knot as before. For in this manner it gradually divides the skin over the fistula; at the same time that part which is left by the ligature becomes healthy, while the part embraced by it is divided. This mode of treatment is long, but without pain.

Qui festinant; adstringere cutem lino debent, quo celerius secent; noctuque ex penicillo tenuia quædam intus demittere, ut cutis hoc ipso extenuetur, quo extenditur. Sed hæc dolorem movent. Adjicitur celeritati, sicut tormento quoque, si et linum, et id, quod ex penicillo est, aliquo medicamento illinitur ex iis, quibus callum exedi proposui. Potest tamen fieri, ut ad scalpelli curationem etiam illo loco veniendum sit, si intus fistula fert, si multiplex est. Igitur in hæc genera demisso specillo, duabus lineis incidenda cutis est; ut media inter eas habenula tenuis admodum ejiciatur, ne protinus oræ coeant; sitque locus aliquis linamentis, quæ quam paucissima superinjicienda sunt: omniaque eodem modo facienda, quæ in abscessibus posita sunt.

Si vero ab uno ore plures sinus erunt, recta fistula scalpello erit incidenda: ab eo ceteræ, quæ jam patebunt, lino excipiendæ. Si intus aliqua procedet, quo ferrum tuto pervenire non poterit, collyrium demittendum erit. Cibus autem in omnibus ejusmodi casibus,

## ORDO.

Qui festinant, debent adstringere cutem lino, quo secent celerius; quæ demittere intus noctu quædam tenuia ex penicillo, ut cutis extenuetur hoc ipso, quo extenditur. Sed hæc movent dolorem. Adjicitur celeritati, sicut quoque tormento, si et linum et id quod est ex penicillo, illinitur aliquo medicamento ex iis quibus proposui callum exedi. Tamen potest fieri, ut sit veniendum ad curationem scalpelli etiam illo loco, si fistula fert intus, si est multiplex. Igitur specillo demisso in hæc genera, cutis est incidenda duabus lineis; ut media admodum tenuis habenula inter eas ejiciatur, ne oræ coeant protinus; quæ sit aliquis locus linamentis, quæ quam paucissima sunt superinjicienda; quæ omnia facienda eodem modo quæ posita sunt in abscessibus.

Vero si erunt plures sinus ab uno ore, recta fistula erit incidenda scalpello; ceteræ, quæ jam patebunt ab eo, excipiendæ lino. Si aliqua procedet intus, quo ferrum non poterit pervenire tuto, collyrium erit demittendum. Autem humidus cibus debet dari in

## TRANSLATION.

Those who are in a hurry, ought to tighten the ligature, by which they may divide the skin with greater dispatch; and to introduce some small tents at night, that the skin may be attenuated and distended. But these means cause pain. The cure is accelerated, and also the pain augmented, if the ligature and tents be anointed with some of those preparations which I have directed for destroying a callus. Yet it may happen, however, that the scalpel must be employed, even here, if the fistula point inwards, or if it consist of several sinuses. Therefore in such cases, the probe should be introduced, and two lineal incisions made on it through the skin, in order that a very small slip between these two incisions may be removed, lest the edges unite too soon; also, to allow small pledgets of lint to be applied, of which there must be very few; all that remains to be done will be the same as I have directed for the treatment of abscesses.

If there should be several sinuses terminating in one orifice, the straight sinus must be opened by the knife; the others, which will then appear, are to be taken up by the ligature. If the sinus extend so far inwardly, that the scalpel cannot reach it with safety, a tent must be introduced.

Now in all cases of this nature, the food ought to be moist, whether the treatment

sive manu, sive medicamentis agetur, dari debet humidus; potio liberalis, diuque aqua. Ubi jam caro increscit, tum demum et balneis raris utendum erit, et cibus corpus implentibus.

ORDO.  
omnibus casibus ejusmodi, sive agetur manu, sive medicamentis; potio liberalis; que aqua diu. Ubi jam caro increscit, tum demum erit utendum raris balneis, et cibus implentibus corpus.

## TRANSLATION.

be by an operation, or by medicines, the drink copious, and for a considerable time restricted to water. When the parts have granulated, then the bath may be used occasionally, with the most nutritive diet.

## CAP. V.

## DE TELIS, E CORPORE EXTRAHENDIS.

1. TELA quoque, quæ illata corporibus intus hæserunt, magno negotio sæpe ejiciuntur. Suntque quædam difficultates ex generibus eorum; quædam ex iis sedibus, in quas illa penetrarunt. Omne autem telum extrahitur, aut ab ea parte, qua venit, aut ab ea, in quam tetendit: illic viam, qua redeat, ipsum sibi fecit; hic, a scalpello accipit. Nam contra mucronem caro inciditur. Sed si non alte telum in-

## ORDO.

## CAP. V.

## DE EXTRAHENDIS TELIS E CORPORE.

1. QUOQUE tela, quæ illata hæserunt corporibus intus, ejiciuntur sæpe magno negotio. Que sunt quædam difficultates ex generibus eorum; quædam ex iis sedibus in quas illa penetrarunt. Autem omne telum extrahitur, aut ab ea parte qua venit, aut ab ea in quam tetendit: illic ipsum fecit sibi viam qua redeat; hic accipit a scalpello. Nam caro inciditur contra mucronem. Sed si telum

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

## ON THE EXTRACTION OF WEAPONS OUT OF THE BODY.

1. WHEN foreign substances, such as weapons, have penetrated the body, their extraction is frequently attended with great trouble. There is some difficulty arising from the different kinds of them, and sometimes from the nature of the parts they have penetrated. Now every weapon is extracted, either in the direction by which it entered, or in the point to which it tends: in the first case it returns by the same passage itself has made; in the latter it must receive its exit from the scalpel. For the flesh must be incised over the weapon's point. But if the



sedit, et in summa carne est, aut certe magnas venas et loca nervosa non transiit; nihil melius est, quam, qua venit, id evellere. Si vero plus est, per quod telo revertendum, quam quod perrumpendum est; jamque venas nervosque id transiit, commodius est aperire quod superest, eaque extrahere. Nam et propius petitur, et tutius evellitur: et in majore membro, si medium mucro transiit, facilius sanescit, quod pervium est; quia utrimque medicamento fovetur.

Sed, si retro telum recipiendum, amplianda scalpello plaga est; quo facilius id sequatur, quoque minor oritur inflammatio: quæ major fit, si ab illo ipso telo, dum redit, corpus laniatur. Item, si ex alia parte vulnus aperitur, laxius esse debet, quam ut telo postea transeunte ampliatur. Summa autem utraque parte habenda cura est, ne nervus, ne vena major, ne arteria incidatur.

Quorum ubi aliquid detectum est, excipiendum hamo retuso est, abdu-

## ORDO.

non insedit alte, et est in summa carne, aut certe non transiit magnas venas et nervosa loca; nihil est melius quam evellere id qua venit. Verò si est plus, per quod est revertendum telo, quam quod est perrumpendum, que jam id transiit venas que nervos, est commodius aperire quod superest, que extrahere ea. Nam et petitur propius, et evellitur tutius: et in majore membro, si mucro transiit medium, quod est pervium sanescit facilius; quia fovetur utrimque medicamento.

Sed, si telum (est) recipiendum retro, plaga est amplianda scalpello: quo id sequatur facilius, que quo minor inflammatio oritur: quæ fit major si corpus laniatur ab illo telo ipso dum redit. Item, si vulnus aperitur ex alia parte, debet esse laxius quam ut ampliatur telo postea transeunte. Antem summa cura est habenda utraque parte, ne nervus, ne major vena, ne arteria incidatur.

Ubi aliquid quorum detectum est est excipiendum retuso hamo,

## TRANSLATION.

weapon have not pierced far, and is only under the surface of the flesh, or at least have not passed through large veins and nervous parts, the best plan is to remove it by the way it entered.

But if the space through which the weapon has to return be more than that which is to be laid open, and it has already passed through veins and nerves, it will be more advisable to open what remains, and to extract it in that direction; for it will be found nearer, and drawn out with greater safety: and when the weapon has passed beyond the middle of one of the larger limbs, it will heal the sooner for being pervious, as the wound may be dressed at both extremities.

But if the weapon is to be withdrawn by the same way it entered, the wound must be enlarged by the scalpel, in order that it may pass the more easily, and produce less inflammation, which will be greater if the flesh be lacerated in withdrawing the weapon. Again, if a counter-opening is to be made in any part, it ought to be so large, that the weapon may not increase it in transitu. In either case, the utmost care should be employed, lest a tendon, or large vein, or artery be divided.

When any of these are exposed, it must be seized by the blunt hook, and held

cendumque a scalpello. Ubi autem satis incisum est, telum eximendum est: tunc quoque eodem modo, et eadem cura habita, ne sub eo, quod eximitur, aliquid eorum lædatur, quæ tuenda esse proposui.

2. Hæc communia. Sunt propria quædam in singulis telorum generibus, quæ protinus subjiciam. Nihil tam facile in corpus, quam sagitta, conditur, eademque altissime insidit. Hæc autem eveniunt, et quia magna vi fertur illa, et quia ipsa in angusto est. Sæpius itaque ab altera parte, quam ex qua venit, recipienda est; præcipueque, quia fere spiculis cingitur; quæ magis laniant, si retro, quam si contra trahuntur. Sed inde aperta via, caro diduci debet, ferramento facto ad similitudinem Græcæ litteræ  $\Delta$ : deinde, ubi apparuit mucro, si arundo inhæret, propellenda est, donec ab altera parte apprehendi et extrahi possit: si jam illa decedit, solumque intus ferrum est, mucro vel digitis apprehendi, vel forfice, atque ita educi debet.

## ORDO.

que abducendum a scalpello. Autem ubi incisum est satis, telum est eximendum: tunc quoque eodem modo, et eadem cura habita, ne sub eo quod eximitur, aliquid eorum lædatur, quæ proposui esse tuenda.

2. Hæc communia. Sunt quædam propria in singulis generibus telorum, quæ subjiciam protinus. Nihil conditur in corpus, tam facile quam sagitta, que eadem insidit altissime. Autem hæc eveniunt, et quia illa fertur magna vi, et quia ipsa est in angusto. Itaque est recipienda sæpius ab altera parte quam ex qua venit; que præcipue, quia fere cingitur spiculis; quæ laniant magis, si trahuntur retro, quam si contra. Sed via aperta inde, caro debet diduci ferramento facto ad similitudinem Græcæ litteræ  $\Delta$ : deinde, ubi mucro apparuit, si arundo inhæret, est propellenda donec possit apprehendi ab altera parte, et extrahi: si illa jam decedit, que ferrum solum est intus, mucro debet apprehendi vel digitis vel forfice, atque ita educi.

## TRANSLATION.

aside from the knife. But when the incision has been made sufficiently large, then the weapon must be taken out by the same means, and the same circumspection is to be used, lest any of those parts which I have already mentioned be injured whilst the weapon is being taken out.

2. The preceding observations are general; but there are certain peculiarities in the several kinds of weapons which I shall subjoin immediately. Nothing penetrates the body with greater facility than an arrow; and it also lodges at the greatest depth. Now this happens, both because it is propelled with great force, and because it is in itself of a narrow slender form. Therefore it must be withdrawn more frequently from the opposite part, than from the one on which it entered; and that especially since it is mostly surrounded with barbs, which lacerate more by a retrograde motion, than when extracted in the opposite direction. A counter-opening being made, the flesh ought to be drawn apart by an iron instrument made in the form of the Greek letter  $\Delta$ : then, when the point has appeared, if the shaft adhere, it must be propelled forward until it can be seized on the opposite side and extracted; but if the shaft have been detached, and only the iron head remain within, the part must be grasped either by the fingers or by the forceps, and so drawn out.

Neque alia ratio extrahendi est, ubi ab ea parte, qua venit, evelli magis placuit. Nam, ampliatio magis vulnere, aut arundo, si inest, evellenda est; aut, si ea non est, ferrum ipsum. Quod si spicula apparuerunt, eaque breviter et tenuia sunt, forfice ibi comminui debent, vacuumque ab his telum educi: si ea majora valentioraque sunt, fissis scriptoriis calamis contegenda, ac, ne quid lacerent, sic evellenda sunt. Et in sagittis quidem hæc observatio est.

3. Latum vero telum, si conditum est, ab altera parte educi non expedit; ne ingenti vulnere ipsi quoque ingens vulnus adjiciamus. Evellendum est ergo genere quodam ferramenti, quod *Διοκλεῖον κυαθίσκον* Græci vocant; quoniam auctorem Dioclem habet: quem inter priscos maximosque medicos fuisse, jam posui. Lamina vel ferrea, vel etiam ænea, ab altero capite duos utrumque deorsum conversos uncus habet; ab altero duplicata lateribus, leviterque extrema in eam partem inclinata, quæ sinuata est, insuper ibi etiam perforata est. Hæc juxta

## ORDO.

Neque est alia ratio extrahendi, ubi placuit magis evelli ab ea parte, qua venit. Nam vulnere ampliatio magis, aut arundo, si inest, est evellenda; aut si est non, ferrum ipsum. Quod si spicula apparuerunt, quæ ea sunt breviter et tenuia, debent comminui ibi forfice, quæ telum vacuum ab his educi: si ea sunt majora quæ valentiora, sunt contegenda fissis scriptoriis calamis, ac, ne lacerent quid, sunt sic evellenda. Et hæc observatio est quidem in sagittis.

3. Vero si latum telum conditum est, non expedit educi ab altera parte, ne adjiciamus quoque ingens vulnus vulnere ipsi ingenti. Ergo est evellendum quodam genere ferramenti, quod Græci vocant *Διοκλεῖον κυαθίσκον* (Diocleion Kyathiskos); quoniam habet Dioclem auctorem: quem posui jam fuisse inter priscos quæ maximos medicos. Lamina vel ferrea, vel etiam ænea, habet ab altero capite duos uncus conversos deorsum utrumque; ab altero duplicata lateribus, quæ extrema leviter inclinata in eam partem, quæ est sinuata, insuper est etiam perforata ibi. Hæc demittitur

## TRANSLATION.

Neither is there any other method of extracting it, when it is considered advisable to remove it by the orifice it came. For the wound being enlarged, either the shaft, if there, is to be extracted, or, if not there, the iron head itself. But if the barbs are discovered, and they appear to be short and small, they ought to be broken there by the forceps, and the weapon freed from these to be drawn out: but if these barbs be large and very strong, they are to be covered by split writing-reeds, and so extracted, lest they should lacerate any part. These observations are to be followed in extracting arrows.

3. But if a broad weapon were lodged in the body, it is improper to dislodge it by a counter-opening, lest we add another large wound to the one already made by the weapon itself. Therefore it is to be extracted by a certain kind of iron instrument which the Greeks denominate the Kyathiskos of Diocles (3), because Diocles was the inventor of it, whom I have already noticed as the greatest among the ancient physicians. Namely, a plate of iron, or even of brass, at one end having two hooks turned downwards on each side: the other end is folded or turned up on each side, and the extremity slightly curved towards that part which is bent, and it is also perforated there. This is introduced transversely near the



telum transversa demittitur: deinde, ubi ad imum mucronem ventum est, paulum torquetur, ut telum foramine suo excipiat: cum in cavo mucro est, duo digiti, subjecti partis alterius uncis, simul et ferramentum id extrahunt, et telum.

4. Tertium genus telorum est, quod interdum evelli debet, plumbea glans, aut lapis, aut simile aliquid, quod, perrupta cute, integrum intus insedit. In omnibus his latius vulnus aperiendum, idque, quod inest, ea, qua venit, forcice extrahendum est.

Accedit vero aliquid difficultati sub omni ictu, si telum vel ossi inhæsit, vel in articulo se inter duo ossa demersit. In osse usque eo movendum est, donec laxetur is locus, qui mucronem momordet; et tunc vel manu vel forcice telum extrahendum est: quæ ratio in dentibus quoque ejiciendis est. Vix umquam ita telum non sequitur: sed, si morabitur, excuti quoque, ictum aliquo ferramento, poterit. Ultimum est, ubi non evellitur, terebra juxta forare, ab eoque foramine, ad speciem litteræ V, contra telum os excidere,

## ORDO.

transversa juxta telum: deinde ubi ventum est ad imum mucronem, torquetur paulum, ut excipiat telum suo foramine: cum mucro est in cavo, duo digiti, subjecti uncis alterius partis, simul et extrahunt id ferramentum et telum.

4. Tertium genus telorum quod interdum debet evelli, est plumbea glans, aut lapis, aut aliquid simile, quod, cute perrupta, insedit integrum intus. In omnibus his, vulnus aperiendum latius, quæ id, quod inest, est extrahendum forcice, ea (via), qua venit.

Vero aliquid accedit difficultati sub omni ictu, si telum vel inhæsit ossi, vel demersit se in articulo inter duo ossa. In osse est movendum usque eo, donec is locus laxetur, qui momordet mucronem; et tunc telum est extrahendum vel manu vel forcice: quæ est ratio quoque in ejiciendis dentibus. Vix umquam telum non sequitur ita: sed si morabitur, poterit quoque excuti, ictum aliquo ferramento. Ultimum est, ubi non evellitur, forare juxta terebra, quæ ab eo foramine, excidere os contra telum, ad speciem litteræ V, sic, ut lineæ, quæ diducuntur,

## TRANSLATION.

weapon; and then, when it has reached the farthest point of it, it is to be turned a little, so that it may receive the weapon in its opening. When the point is in the perforation, two fingers are to be applied to the hooks at the other end, when the instrument and weapon are to be extracted at the same time.

4. The third kind of weapon which ought to be extracted sometimes is a leaden bullet, or stone, or something similar, which having perforated the skin, becomes entirely concealed there. In all such cases, the wound must be enlarged, and the foreign body must be withdrawn with the forceps by the way it entered.

The operation is more difficult in every wound, if the foreign body has either fixed in a bone, or has plunged itself in a joint between two bones. In the bone, the weapon must be moved to and fro till it becomes detached where it was grasped at the point; and then the weapon may be extracted either with the hand or forceps, as in drawing a tooth. By this method it scarcely ever happens that the weapon is not brought away: but if it still remain, it may be dislodged by striking it with some iron instrument. The last resource, when we have failed to remove it, is to perforate the bone near the part with a trephine, and from that opening to excise the bone in the form of the letter V, so that the lines may converge towards

sic, ut lineæ, quæ diducuntur, ad telum spectent: eo facto, id necesse est labet, et facile auferatur.

Inter duo vero ossa si per ipsum articulum perruperit, circa vulnus duo membra fasciis habenisve deliganda, et per has in diversas partes diducenda sunt, ut nervos distendant: quibus extensis, laxius inter ossa spatium est, ut sine difficultate telum recipiatur. Illud videndum est, sicut in aliis locis posui, ne quis nervus, aut vena, aut arteria a telo lædatur, dum id extrahitur: eadem scilicet ratione, quæ supra posita est.

5. At si venenato quoque telo quis ictus est, iisdem omnibus, si fieri potest, etiam festinantius actis, adjicienda curatio est, quæ vel epoto veneno, vel a serpente ictis adhibetur. Vulneris autem ipsius, extracto telo, medicina non alia est, quam quæ esset, si corpore icto nihil inhæsisset: de qua satis alio loco dictum est.

## ORDO.

spectent ad telum: eo facto, est necesse id labet, et facile auferatur.

Vero si perruperit per articulum ipsum inter duo ossa, duo membra circa vulnus deliganda fasciis ve habenis, et sunt diducenda per has in diversas partes, ut distendant nervos: quibus extensis, spatium inter ossa est laxius, ut telum recipiatur sine difficultate. Illud est videndum, sicut posui in aliis locis, ne quis nervus, aut vena, aut arteria lædatur a telo, dum id extrahitur: scilicet eadem ratione, quæ posita est supra.

5. At si quis ictus est quoque venenato telo, omnibus iisdem actis etiam festinantius, si potest fieri, curatio est adjicienda, quæ adhibetur, vel veneno epoto, vel ictis a serpente. Autem telo extracto, non est alia medicina vulneris ipsius, quam quæ esset, si nihil inhæsisset icto corpore: de qua satis dictum est alio loco.

## TRANSLATION.

the point of the weapon; this being done, it must necessarily give way, and be easily extracted.

But if it has penetrated the articulation between two bones, the two limbs are to be bound up with bandages or straps, in the vicinity of the wound; these are to be drawn in contrary directions, in order to put the tendons on the stretch; which being done, the space between the bones is enlarged, so that the weapon may be withdrawn without difficulty. Care must be taken, as I have observed in other places, that no nerve, vein, or artery, be wounded by the weapon in the act of extracting it; and this may be prevented by the same means which I have already mentioned.

5. But if any person has been wounded by a poisoned weapon, the same means must be employed in every respect, and with all possible celerity, as if poison had been drunk, or as if stung by a serpent. When the weapon is extracted, the wound itself requires no other dressing than that which would be necessary if nothing had lodged there; concerning which I have said enough in another place.

## CAP. VI.

DE GANGLIIS, ET MELICERIDE, ET  
ATHEROMATE, ET STEATOMATE, CA-  
PITIS TUBERCULIS.

HÆC evenire in qualibet parte corpo-  
ris possunt: reliqua certas sedes ha-  
bent. De quibus dicam, orsus a ca-  
pite. In hoc multa variaque tuber-  
cula oriuntur; γάγγλια, μελικηρίδας,  
ἀθερώματα nominant; aliisque etiam-  
num vocabulis quædam alii discer-  
nunt: quibus ego στεατώματα quoque  
adjiciam. Quæ quamvis et in cer-  
vice, et in alis, et in lateribus oriri  
solent; per se tamen non posui; cum  
omnia ista mediocres differentias ha-  
beant, ac neque periculo terreant, ne-  
que diverso genere curentur.

Omnia autem ista et ex parvulo  
incipiunt, et diu paulatimque incre-  
scunt, et tunica sua includuntur. Quæ-  
dam ex his dura ac renitentia, quæ-  
dam mollia cedentiaque sunt: quædam

## ORDO.

## CAP. VI.

DE GANGLIIS, ET MELICERIDE,  
ET ATHEROMATE, ET STEATO-  
MATE, TUBERCULIS CAPITIS.

HÆC possunt evenire in qualibet  
parte corporis: reliqua habent  
certas sedes. De quibus dicam,  
orsus a capite. In hoc multa que  
varia tubercula oriuntur: (quæ)  
nominant γάγγλια (ganglia), μελι-  
κηρίδας (melikeridas), ἀθερώματα  
(atheromata), que alii discernunt  
quædam etiamnum aliis vocabulis:  
quibus ego adjiciam quoque στεα-  
τώματα (steatomata). Quæ quam-  
vis solent oriri et in cervice, et in  
alis, et in lateribus; tamen posui  
non per se; cum omnia ista ha-  
beant mediocres differentias, ac  
neque terreant periculo, neque  
curentur diverso genere.

Autem omnia ista et incipiunt  
ex parvulo, et increscunt diu que  
paulatim, et includuntur sua tu-  
nica. Quædam ex his sunt dura  
ac renitentia, quædam mollia que  
cedentia: quædam nudantur spa-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

OF GANGLIONS, MELICERIS, ATHEROMA, STEATOMA, AND OTHER  
TUBERCLES OF THE HEAD.

THESE cases *already described*, may take place in every part of the body; what re-  
mains for me to treat of, have particular situations. I shall commence with those  
arising on the head. This part is liable to be the seat of many and various kinds of  
tubercles; termed Ganglia, Melicerides, Atheromata; and there are some others  
to which authors assign different names: I shall also add Steatomata. Of which,  
although they are accustomed to arise in the neck, arm-pits, and sides, I have not  
treated separately; since they differ but slightly from each other, neither are they  
accompanied by danger, nor do they require a different mode of treatment.

Now all these tumours arise from a very small origin, and gradually increase  
for a long time, each being inclosed within its own tunic. Some of these are hard



spatio nudantur, quædam tecta capillo suo permanent: fereque sine dolore sunt. Quid intus habeant, ut conjectura præ sagiri potest; sic ex toto cognosci, nisi cum ejecta sunt, non potest. Maxime tamen in iis, quæ renituntur, aut lapillis quædam similia, aut concreti confertique pili reperiuntur: in iis vero, quæ cedunt, aut melli simile aliquid, aut tenui pulticulæ, aut quasi rasæ cartilagini, aut carni hebeti et cruentæ; quibus alii alique colores esse consuerunt.

Fereque ganglia renituntur: atheromati subest quasi tenuis pulticula: meliceridi liquidior humor; ideoque pressus circumfluit: steatomati pingue quiddam; idque latissime patere consuevit, resolvitque totam cutem superpositam, sic, ut ea labet; cum in ceteris sit adstrictior.

Omnia, derasa ante, si capillis conteguntur, per medium oportet incidere. Sed steatomatis tunica quoque secunda est, ut effundatur quidquid intus coit; quia non facile a cute et subjecta carne ea separatur: (in ceteris ipsa tunica inviolata servanda est).

## ORDO.

tio, quædam permanent tecta suo capillo: que fere sunt sine dolore. Quid habeant intus, ut potest præ sagiri conjectura, sic potest non cognosci ex toto, nisi cum ejecta sunt. Tamen maxime aut quædam similia lapillis, aut concreti que conferti pili reperiuntur in iis, quæ renituntur: vero in iis, quæ cedunt, aut aliquid simile melli, aut tenui pulticulæ, aut quasi rasæ cartilagini, aut hebeti et cruentæ carni; quibus alii que alii colores consuerunt esse.

Que fere ganglia renituntur: quasi tenuis pulticula subest atheromati: liquidior humor meliceridi; que ideo pressus circumfluit; quiddam pingue steatomati; que id consuevit patere latissime, que resolvit totam cutem superpositam, sic ut ea, labet; cum sit adstrictior in ceteris.

Oportet incidere per medium omnia, derasa ante, si conteguntur capillis. Sed tunica quoque steatomatis est secunda, ut quidquid coit intus effundatur; quia ea non separatur facile a cute et carne subjecta; (in ceteris tunica

## TRANSLATION.

and resisting; some are soft and yielding; some are denuded partially, others remain covered with hair: they are generally free from pain. What their contents may be, is only to be arrived at by conjecture, as that cannot be ascertained until they have been taken out. Yet, generally, there have been found in those which resist, something resembling little stones, or a collection of matted hair; but in those of a yielding nature, something like honey, or thin pottage, or the scrapings of cartilage, or some fleshy substance of an insensible and bloody character; and these are frequently of divers colours.

GANGLIA for the most part present an unyielding character: *Atheroma feels* as if it contained thin pottage: the *MELICERIS* is a more liquid humour; and on that account fluctuates on being pressed: the *STEATOMA* consists of a fatty substance, generally extends to a very considerable size, and so relaxes the circumjacent cuticle as to render it flaccid and loose; whereas in the other species it is more tense.

The hair being removed by which they may be covered, it will be necessary to make an incision through the middle of each. But the cyst also of the steatoma must be divided, in order that its contents may be evacuated; for it is not easy to separate that from the surrounding integuments and subjacent parts: in the

Protinus autem alba et intenta se ostendit. Tum scalpelli manubriolo diducenda a cute et carne est, ejiciendaque cum eo, quod intus tenet. Si quando tamen ab inferiore parte tunicæ musculus inhæsit, ne is lædatur, superior pars illius decidenda, alia ibidem relinquenda est. Ubi tota exempta est, committendæ oræ, fibulaque his injicienda, et super medicamentum glutinans dandum est. Ubi vel tota tunica, vel aliquid ex ea relictum est, pus moventia adhibenda sunt.

## ORDO.

ipsa est servanda inviolata). Autem protinus alba et intenta ostendit se. Tum est diducenda a cute et carne manubriolo scalpelli, que ejicienda cum eo, quod tenet intus. Tamen si quando musculus inhæsit ab inferiore parte tunicæ, ne is lædatur, superior pars illius est decidenda, alia relinquenda ibidem. Ubi tota exempta est, oræ committendæ, que fibula injicienda his, et glutinans medicamentum est dandum super. Ubi vel tota tunica, vel aliquid ex ea relictum est, moventia pus sunt adhibenda.

## TRANSLATION.

other species the tunics may remain entire. It will soon discover itself by being white and tense. Then it is to be separated from the skin and flesh by the handle of the knife, and so removed with its contents. Yet, however, if it should happen at any time, that the inferior surface of the cyst adhere to a muscle, to prevent this being injured, the upper part must be cut away, and the lower allowed to remain. When the whole has been dissected out, the edges of the wound must be brought together by the application of a clasp, or buckle, and over that an agglutinating dressing. When either the whole cyst, or any part of it has been left behind, suppuratives must be applied.

## CAP. VII.

DE OCULORUM VITIIS, QUÆ SCALPELLO ET MANU CURANTUR.

1. SED ut hæc neque genere vitii, neque ratione curationis inter se multum distant; sic in oculis, quæ manum postulant, et ipsa diversa sunt, et aliter aliterque curantur.

Igitur in superioribus palpebris vesicæ nasci solent, pingues gravesque; quæ vix attollere oculos sinunt, levesque pituitæ cursus, sed assiduos, in oculis movent. Fere vero in pueris nascuntur. Oportet, compresso digitis duobus oculo, atque ita cute intenta, scalpello transversam lineam incidere, suspensa leviter manu, ne vesica ipsa vulneretur: et, ut locus ei patefactus est, ipsa prorumpit. Tum digitis eam apprehendere, et evellere: facile autem sequitur. Dein superinungi collyrio debet ex iis aliquo,

## ORDO.

## CAP. VII.

DE VITIIS OCULORUM, QUÆ CURANTUR SCALPELLO ET MANU.

1. SED ut hæc distant multum inter se, neque genere vitii, neque ratione curationis; sic in oculis, quæ postulant manum, sunt et ipsa diversa, et curantur aliter que aliter.

Igitur pingues quæ graves vesicæ solent nasci in superioribus palpebris; quæ vix sinunt attollere oculos, quæ movent leves sed assiduos cursus pituitæ in oculis. Vero fere nascuntur in pueris. Oculo compresso duobus digitis, atque ita cute intenta, oportet incidere transversam lineam scalpello, manu suspensa leviter, ne vesica ipsa vulneretur: et, ut locus patefactus est ei, ipsa prorumpit. Tum apprehendere digitis, et evellere eam. Autem sequitur facile. Dein debet superinungi aliquo collyrio ex iis, quo lippien-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

OF THE DISEASES OF THE EYES, AND THOSE WHICH ARE CURED BY MANUAL OPERATIONS.

1. Now as those diseases *already described* do not differ much, either in their nature or mode of treatment; so in the eyes, those which require the aid of the hand, are both different in their species, and are treated variously.

In the upper eyelids, then, it is common for fat and heavy vesicles to arise, which scarcely permit the patient to raise the eye, and excite slight, but constant running of humour in the eyes. But this happens most frequently in children. *The operation* is to compress the eye by two fingers, and by this to extend the skin; then it will be necessary to make an incision in a transverse direction, bearing the scalpel very lightly, lest the vesicle itself be wounded; and thus to afford an outlet for it. Then it is to be seized with the fingers and pulled out, for it easily follows. The part should afterwards be anointed with any of those collyria



quo lippientes oculi superinunguntur : paucissimisque diebus cicatricula inducitur. Molestius est, ubi incisa vesica est : effundit enim humorem ; neque postea, quia tenuis admodum est, potest colligi. Si forte id incidit, eorum aliquid imponendum est, quæ puri movendo sunt.

2. In eadem palpebra super pilorum locum tuberculum parvulum nascitur, quod a similitudine hordei, a Græcis κριθή nominatur. Tunica quiddam, quod difficulter maturescit, comprehensum est. Id vel calido pane, vel cera subinde calefacta foveri oportet, sic, ne nimius is calor sit, sed facile ea parte sustineatur : hac enim ratione sæpe discutitur, interdum concoquitur. Si pus se ostendit, scalpello dividi debet, et, quidquid intus humoris est, exprimi : eodem deinde vapore postea quoque foveri, et superinungi, donec ad sanitatem perveniat.

3. Alia quoque quædam in palpebris huic non dissimilia nascuntur ; sed neque utique figuræ ejusdem, et mobilia, simul atque digito huc vel

#### ORDO.

tes oculi superinunguntur : que paucissimis diebus cicatricula inducitur. Est molestius, ubi vesica incisa est : enim effundit humorem ; neque potest colligi postea, quia est admodum tenuis. Si forte id incidit, aliquid eorum est imponendum, quæ sunt puri movendo.

2. In eadem palpebra parvulum tuberculum nascitur super locum pilorum, quod, a similitudine hordei, nominatur a Græcis κριθή (Crithé). Quiddam, quod maturescit difficulter, est comprehensum tunica. Oportet id foveri vel calido pane, vel cera subinde calefacta, sic ne is calor sit nimius, sed sustineatur facile ea parte : enim hac ratione sæpe discutitur, interdum concoquitur. Si pus ostendit se, debet dividi scalpello, et quidquid humoris est intus, exprimi : deinde foveri quoque postea eodem vapore, et superinungi donec perveniat ad sanitatem.

3. Quoque quædam alia non dissimilia huic nascuntur in palpebris ; sed neque utique ejusdem figuræ, et mobilia, simul atque impelluntur huc vel illuc digito :

#### TRANSLATION.

prescribed for lippitudes ; and in a very few days a cicatrix will be formed. It is more troublesome when the vesicle has been cut, for then it discharges the humour ; neither can it betaken hold of afterwards, because it is so very thin. If by chance that should happen, some one of those applications should be laid on which are calculated to promote pus.

2. The eyelid is likewise subject to the formation of a small tubercle above the cilia, termed Crithé by the Greeks, from its similitude to a barleycorn. *It consists of something in a cyst which suppurates with difficulty. It should be fomented with hot bread, or wax heated occasionally to that degree that the part may tolerate it with facility : for by such means it is frequently discussed, sometimes matured. If pus have been formed, it should be opened with the lancet, and the humour contained in it squeezed out : it is then to be fomented with the same vapour, and anointed until it becomes perfectly sound.*

3. There are also other tubercles arising in the eyelids, not unlike this just described ; but not exactly of the same form, and movable in any direction under the impression of the finger : and on that account the Greeks call them

illuc impelluntur : ideoque ea *χαλάζια* Græci vocant. Hæc incidi debent, si sub cute sunt, ab exteriori parte ; si sub cartilagine, ab interiori : dein scalpelli manubriolo diducenda ab integris partibus sunt. Ac, si intus plaga est, inungendum primo lenibus, deinde acrioribus : si extra, superdandum emplastrum, quo id glutinetur.

4. Unguis vero, quod *πτέρυγιον* Græci vocant, est membranula nervoso oriens ab angulo, quæ nonnunquam ad pupillam quoque pervenit, eique officit. Sæpius a narium, interdum etiam a temporum parte nascitur. Hunc recentem non difficile est discutere medicamentis, quibus cicatrices in oculis extenuantur : si inveteravit, jamque ei crassitudo quoque accessit, excidi debet.

Post abstinentiam vero unius diei, vel adversus in sedili contra medicum is homo collocandus est, vel sic aversus, ut in gremium ejus caput resupinus effundat. Quidam, si in sinistro oculo vitium est, adversum : si in dextro, resupinum collocari volunt.

## ORDO.

que ideo Græci vocant ea *χαλάζια* (chalazia). Hæc debent incidi, si sunt sub cute, ab exteriori parte ; si sub cartilagine, ab interiori : dein sunt diducenda ab integris partibus manubriolo scalpelli. Ac si plaga est intus, inungendum primo lenibus, deinde acrioribus : si extra, emplastrum superdandum quo id glutinetur.

4. Vero unguis, quod Græci vocant *πτέρυγιον* (pterygion) est nervosa membranula oriens ab angulo, quæ nonnunquam pervenit quoque ad pupillam, quæ officit ei. Nascitur sæpius a parte narium, interdum etiam a (parte) temporum. Non est difficile discutere hunc, recentem, medicamentis, quibus cicatrices in oculis extenuantur : si inveteravit, quæ crassitudo jam accessit quoque ei, debet excidi.

Vero post abstinentiam unius diei, is homo est collocandus vel adversus in sedili contra medicum, vel sic aversus, ut resupinus effundat caput in gremium ejus. Quidam volunt collocari adversum, si vitium est in sinistro oculo ; resupinum si in dextro. An-

## TRANSLATION.

Chalazia. These ought to be incised on the external side, if they be immediately under the skin ; if under the cartilage, on the internal side : then they are to be detached from the sound parts by the handle of the scalpel. But if the wound be internal, it should be anointed, at first with mild, afterwards with more acrid applications : if externally, a plaster is to be laid over it, by which it may be agglutinated.

4. The Unguis, which the Greeks call Pterygium, is a small nervous membrane arising from the corner of the eye, and sometimes extending to the pupil, so as to obstruct the sight. It arises more frequently in the nasal canthus, sometimes in the temporal also. When recent, it is not difficult to remove it by those applications which are employed for attenuating cicatrices in the eyes. If it be of long standing, and have become thickened, it ought to be cut out.

After an abstinence of one day, the patient must be placed in a seat, either directly facing the physician, or turned in such a manner, that he may recline his head upon his breast. Some prefer the patient to be placed opposite, if the disease be in the left eye ; but in the reclining posture, if in the right. Now it will be necessary for

Alteram autem palpebram a ministro diduci oportet, alteram a medico: sed ab hoc, si ille adversus est, inferiorem; si supinus, superiorem. Tum idem medicus hamulum acutum, paulum mucrone intus recurvato, subjicere extremo ungui debet, eumque infigere; atque eam quoque palpebram tradere alteri: ipse, hamulo apprehenso, levare unguem, eumque acutius trajicere linum trahente: deinde acum ponere, lini duo capita apprehendere, et per ea erecto ungue, si qua parte oculo inhæret, manubriolo scalpelli diducere, donec ad angulum veniat: deinde invicem modo remittere, modo attrahere, ut sic et initium ejus, et finis anguli reperiatur. Duplex enim periculum est; ne vel ex ungue aliquid relinquatur, quod exulceratum vix ullam recipiat curationem; vel ex angulo quoque caruncula abscindatur, quæ, si vehementius unguis ducitur, sequitur; ideoque decipit. Abscissa, patefit foramen, per quod postea semper humor descendit: *ῥυάδα* Græci vocant.

Verus ergo anguli finis utique noscendus est; qui ubi satis constitit, non

## ORDO.

tem oportet alteram palpebram diduci a ministro, alteram a medico: sed inferiorem ab hoc, si ille est adversus; superiorem, si supinus. Tum idem medicus debet subjicere extremo ungui acutum hamulum, mucrone recurvato paulum intus, que infigere eum; atque tradere quoque eam palpebram alteri; ipse, hamulo apprehenso, levare unguem, que trajicere eum acutius trahente linum; deinde ponere acum, apprehendere duo capita lini, et ungue erecto per ea, si inhæret oculo qua parte, diducere manubriolo scalpelli, donec veniat ad angulum: deinde invicem modo remittere, modo attrahere, ut sic et initium ejus et finis anguli reperiatur. Enim est duplex periculum, ne vel aliquid ex ungue relinquatur, quod exulceratum vix recipiat ullam curationem; vel quoque caruncula abscindatur ex angulo, quæ sequitur, si unguis ducitur vehementius; que ideo decipit. Abscissa, foramen patefit, per quod semper postea humor descendit. Græci vocant *ῥυάδα* (Rhyada).

Ergo verus finis anguli utique est noscendus: ubi qui constitit

## TRANSLATION.

one eyelid to be held apart by an assistant, and the other by the physician; but the operator must take hold of the lower one if placed opposite, and of the superior, if in the reclined position. Then the physician is to fix a small sharp hook under the extremity of the unguis, with its point turned a little inwards, and to fix it there: he is then to commit that eye-lid to his assistant, while he himself is to take hold of the hook, raise the unguis, and pierce it with a needle armed with a thread: then to lay aside the needle, and take hold of both ends of the thread, elevate the unguis by these, if it adhere to the eye in any part, and separate it by the handle of the scalpel, until he arrive at the angle: afterwards he should alternately raise and depress it, so that he discover its origin, and the extremity of the angle. For there is a twofold danger attending it, lest any portion of the unguis be left, which being ulcerated, seldom admits of any cure; or lest the caruncle be cut away from the angle, which may follow, if the unguis be drawn too violently; and on that account deceives the operator. If cut away, an opening is made, through which a humour constantly descends, which the Greeks term Rhyas.

Hence the exact termination of the angle must be ascertained: and when this is



nimum adducto ungue, scalpellus adhibendus est; deinde sic excidenda ea membranula, ne quid ex angulo lædatur. Eo deinde ex melle linamentum superdandum est, supraque linteolum, et aut spongia aut lana succida: proximisque diebus diducendus quotidie oculus est, ne cicatrice inter se palpebræ glutinentur; siquidem id quoque tertium periculum accedit: eodemque modo linamentum imponendum, ac novissime inungendum collyrio, quo ulcera ad cicatricem perducuntur.

Sed ea curatio vere esse debet, aut certe ante hiemem: de qua re, ad plura loca pertinente, semel dixisse satis erit. Nam duo genera curationum sunt: alia, in quibus eligere tempus non licet, sed utendum est eo, quod incidit; sicut in vulneribus, et in fistulis: alia, in quibus nullus dies urget, et expectare tutissimum et facile est; sicut evenit in iis, quæ et tarde increscunt, et dolore non cruciant. In his ver expectandum est: aut, si quid magis pressit, melior tamen autumnus

## ORDO.

satis, scalpellus est adhibendus, ungue non adducto nimum; deinde ea membranula excidenda sic, ne quid ex angulo lædatur. Deinde linamentum ex melle est superdandum eo, que linteolum supra, et aut spongia aut succida lana: que proximis diebus oculus est diducendus quotidie, ne palpebræ glutinentur inter se cicatrice; siquidem id quoque accedit tertium periculum: que eodem modo linamentum imponendum; ac novissime, inungendum collyrio, quo ulcera perducuntur ad cicatricem.

Sed ea curatio debet esse vere, aut certe ante hiemem: de qua re, pertinente ad plura loca, erit satis dixisse semel. Num sunt duo genera curationum: alia, in quibus non licet eligere tempus, sed est utendum eo quod incidit; sicut in vulneribus, et in fistulis: alia, in quibus nullus dies urget, et est tutissimum et facile expectare; sicut evenit in iis, quæ et increscunt tarde, et non cruciant dolore. In his ver est expectandum: aut, si quid pressit magis, tamen autumnus est melior quam æstas vel hiems; atque is ipse medius, æsti-

## TRANSLATION.

sufficiently evident, the unguis must be extended a little, and the knife applied in such a manner as not to wound any part in the angle of the eye. Afterwards, the dressing should be honey spread on lint, and applied on it, and over that a bit of lint, and either a sponge, or some rancid wool: on the subsequent days the eye-lids must be separated daily, lest the palpebræ become adherent by a cicatrix, and this indeed constitutes a third danger: but it is to be applied in the same way; and lastly it is to be anointed with a collyrium which is calculated to promote the cicatrization of ulcers.

Now this mode of treatment ought to be adopted in the spring, or certainly before the winter come on: which circumstance, as it relates to a variety of cases, needs only to be mentioned but once. For there are two modes of treatment; one in which the surgeon is not at liberty to select a time, but to employ that at which it happens; the same as in wounds and fistulæ: another, in which time is not so urgent, consequently the most convenient time may be safely waited for, as in those diseases which increase slowly, and are not excessively painful. In these it is proper to wait for the spring, or if any circumstance urge, the autumn itself is

est, quam æstas, vel hiems; atque is ipse medius, jam fractis æstibus, nondum ortis frigoribus. Quo magis autem necessaria pars erit, quæ tractabitur, hoc quoque majori periculo subiecta est: et sæpe, quo major plaga facienda, eo magis hæc temporis ratio servabitur.

5. Ex curatione vero unguis, ut dixi, vitia nascuntur, quæ ipsa aliis quoque de causis oriri solent. Interdum enim fit in angulo, parum ungue exciso, vel aliter, tuberculum, quod palpebras parum diduci patitur: *ἐγκανθίς*, Græce nominatur.

Excipi hamulo, et circumcidi debet; hic quoque diligenter temperata manu, ne quid ex ipso angulo abscindatur. Tum exiguum linamentum respergendum est vel cadmia, vel atramento sutorio; inque eum angulum, diductis palpebris, inserendum, supraque eodem modo deligandum: proximisque diebus similiter nutriendum; tantum ut primis aqua egelida, vel etiam frigida foveatur.

#### ORDO.

bus jam fractis, frigoribus nondum ortis. Autem quo magis necessaria pars erit quæ tractabitur, hoc quoque est subjecta majori periculo: et sæpe, quo major plaga facienda, eo magis hæc ratio temporis servabitur.

5. Vero ex curatione unguis, ut dixi, vitia nascuntur, quæ ipsa solent oriri quoque de aliis causis. Enim interdum tuberculum fit in angulo, ungue exciso parum, vel aliter, quod patitur palpebras parum diduci: nominatur Græce *ἐγκανθίς* (encanthis).

Debet excipi hamulo, et circumcidi; hic quoque manu temperata diligenter, ne quid ex angulo ipso abscindatur. Tum exiguum linamentum est respergendum vel cadmia, vel atramento sutorio; que inserendum in eum angulum, palpebris diductis, que deligandum supra eodem modo: que proximis diebus nutriendum similiter; tantum ut primis foveatur egelida vel etiam frigida aqua.

#### TRANSLATION.

better than summer or winter; and of that, the middle, when the excessive heats are diminished, and the cold season not yet set in. Now the danger attendant on an operation will always be in proportion to the importance of that organ which is operated on; and generally, in proportion to the magnitude of the wound, (*operation*), so will it be the more necessary that the season should be observed.

5. But after the treatment of an unguis, as I have stated, disorders arise, which sometimes proceed also from other causes. For sometimes a tubercle takes place in the angle of the eye, from the imperfect excision of the unguis, or otherwise, impeding the free separation of the eye-lids: this is termed in the Greek *Encanthis*.

It should be taken up by a small hook, and incised circularly; and here also the hand must be carefully directed, lest any portion be cut away from the angle itself. Then a small piece of lint must be sprinkled either with cadmia, or with copperas; the palpebræ being drawn apart, it is to be introduced into the angle of the eye, and bound over in the same manner as before; and on the following days it is to be dressed similarly; with this exception, that it must be bathed at first with tepid, or even with cold water.

6. Interdum inter se palpebræ coalescunt, aperiri non potest oculus. Cui malo solet etiam illud accedere, ut palpebra cum albo oculi cohærescat; scilicet, cum in utrovis fuit ulcus negligenter curatum. Sanescendo enim, quod diduci potuit et debuit, glutinavit.

Ἀγκυλοβλεφάρους sub utroque vitio Græci vocant. Palpebræ tantum inter se cohærentes, non difficulter diducuntur; sed interdum frustra: nam rursus glutinantur. Experiri tamen oportet; quia bene res sæpius cedit. Igitur aversum specillum inserendum, diducendæque eo palpebræ sunt: deinde exigua penicilla interponenda, donec exulceratio ejus loci finiatur. At ubi albo ipsius oculi palpebra inhæsit, Heraclides Tarentinus auctor est, adverso scalpello subsecare, magna cum moderatione, ut neque ex oculo, neque ex palpebra quidquam abscindatur; ac, si necesse est, ex palpebra potius.

Post hæc, inungatur oculus medicamentis, quibus aspritudo curatur: quotidieque palpebra vertatur, non solum

## ORDO.

6. Interdum palpebræ coalescunt inter se, que oculus non potest aperiri. Cui malo illud quoque solet accedere, ut palpebra cohærescat cum albo oculi; scilicet, cum ulcus in utrovis fuit curatum negligenter. Enim sanescendo, quod potuit et debuit diduci, glutinavit.

Græci vocant sub utroque vitio Ἀγκυλοβλεφάρους (ankuloblepharous). Palpebræ tantum cohærentes inter se, non diducuntur difficulter; sed interdum frustra; nam glutinantur rursus. Tamen oportet experiri, quia res sæpius cedit bene. Igitur aversum specillum inserendum, que palpebræ sunt diducendæ eo: deinde exigua penicilla interponenda, donec exulceratio ejus loci finiatur. At ubi palpebra inhæsit albo oculi ipsius, Heraclides Tarentinus est auctor, subsecare adverso scalpello cum magna moderatione, ut neque quidquam ex oculo, neque ex palpebra abscindatur; ac, si est necesse, potius ex palpebra.

Post hæc, oculus inungatur medicamentis, quibus aspritudo curatur: que palpebra vertatur quotidie, non solum ut medicamen-

## TRANSLATION.

6. Sometimes the palpebræ adhere together, and the eye cannot be opened. To which another evil frequently accedes, and that is, the palpebræ unite with the conjunctiva, especially when an ulcer in either of them has been treated carelessly. For by healing, those parts which might and ought to have been kept apart, will adhere.

The Greeks call such patients under either of these maladies Anchyloblepharous. When the eye-lids only adhere, they are separated without difficulty; but sometimes without effect, for they unite again. However it ought to be tried, because the case frequently succeeds well. Therefore the broad end of the probe must be introduced between them, and the palpebræ separated by that, afterwards small compresses are to be placed between them, until the ulceration of that part be healed. But when the palpebræ have adhered to the conjunctiva itself, Heraclides, the Tarentine, proposed to divide the parts by the back of the scalpel, and enjoined great care, lest any part of the eye-lid or conjunctiva be cut away; and if that be unavoidable, rather to take it from the palpebræ.

After these, let the eye be anointed with such medicines as are applied to an asperity: and let the eye-lid be everted daily, not only that the medicine may be



ut ulceri medicamentum inducatur, sed etiam ne rursus inhæreat: ipsique etiam præcipiatur, ut sæpe eam duobus digitis attollat. Ego sic restitutum esse neminem memini. Meges se quoque multa tentasse, neque umquam profuisse, quia semper iterum oculo palpebra inhæserit, memoriæ prodidit.

7. Etiamnum in angulo, qui naribus propior est, ex aliquo vitio quasi parva fistula aperitur, per quam pituita assidue destillat: αἰγίλωπα Græci vocant. Idque assidue male habet oculum: nonnumquam etiam exeso osse, usque ad nares penetrat. Atque interdum naturam carcinomatis habet; ubi intentæ venæ et recurvatæ sunt, color pallet, cutis dura est, et levi tactu irritatur, inflammationemque in eas partes, quæ conjunctæ sunt, evocat. Ex his eos, qui quasi carcinoma habent, curare periculosum est: nam mortem quoque ea res maturat. Eos vero, quibus ad nares tendit, supervacuum: neque enim sanescunt. At, quibus id in angulo est, potest adhi-

## ORDO.

tum inducatur ulceri, sed etiam ne inhæreat rursus: que etiam præcipiatur ipsi ut attollat eam sæpe duobus digitis. Ego memini neminem restitutum esse sic. Meges prodidit memoriæ se quoque tentasse multa, neque unquam profuisse, quia palpebra inhæserit semper iterum oculo.

7. Etiamnum in angulo qui est propior naribus, ex aliquo vitio quasi parva fistula aperitur, per quam pituita destillat assidue: Græce vocant αἰγίλωπα (aigilōpa). Que id habet male assidue oculum: nonnumquam etiam osse exoso, penetrat usque ad nares. Atque interdum habet naturam carcinomatis: ubi venæ sunt intentæ et recurvatæ, color pallet, cutis est dura, et irritatur levi tactu, que evocat inflammationem in eas partes quæ sunt conjunctæ. Ex his est periculosum curare eos qui habent quasi carcinoma: nam ea res quoque maturat mortem. Vero supervacuum (curare) eos quibus tendit ad nares; enim neque sanescunt. At curatio potest adhiberi quibus id est in an-

## TRANSLATION.

applied, but also to prevent adhesion: the patient also must be directed to raise it frequently with his two fingers. I do not remember one case cured in this manner. Meges has recorded, that he also tried various expedients without success; because secondary adhesion always took place between the eye and the palpebræ.

7. Again, in the nasal angle, a small fistulous opening is effected by some disease, through which a humour constantly distils: the Greeks term it *ÆGILOPS*. This produces a constant uneasiness of the eye; and even corroding the bone, it extends into the nostrils. Sometimes it is cancerous; when the veins are tense and tortuous, the colour pale, the skin hard, irritability to the touch excessive, and the surrounding parts in a state of inflammation. It is dangerous to attempt the treatment of that species which is of a carcinomatous nature: for that only accelerates the patient's death. It is also superfluous to meddle with those which extend to the nares; for they are incurable. But a cure may be tried on those in the angle; provided, that it be known however, that it is difficult; and in proportion as that opening may approximate the corner of the eye, so much more difficult will it be; because there is a very narrow space for

beri curatio; cum eo, ne ignotum sit, esse difficilem: quantoque angulo propius id foramen est, tanto difficilior est; quoniam perangustum est, in quo versari manus possit. Recenti tamen re mederi facilius est. Sed hamulo summum ejus foraminis excipiendum; deinde totum id cavum, sicut in fistulis dixi, usque ad os excidendum; oculoque et ceteris junctis partibus bene obtectis, os ferramento adurendum est; vehementiusque, si jam caries est, quo crassior squama abscedat. Quidam adurentia imponunt, ut atramentum sutorium, vel chalcitidem, vel æruginem rasam: quod et tardius et non idem facit. Osse adusto, curatio sequitur eadem, quæ in ceteris ustis.

8. Pili vero, qui in palpebris sunt, duabus de causis oculum irritare consuerunt. Nam modo palpebræ summa cutis relaxatur, et procidit; quo fit, ut ejus pili ad ipsum oculum convertantur, quia non simul cartilago quoque se remisit: modo sub ordine naturali pilorum alius ordo suberescit, qui protinus intus ad oculum tendit.

## ORDO.

gulo; cum eo, ne sit ignotum esse difficilem: quæ quanto id foramen est propius angulo, tanto difficilior est; quoniam est perangustum in quo manus possit versari. Tamen est facilius mederi recenti re. Sed summum foraminis ejus est excipiendum hamulo; deinde totum id cavum, sicut dixi in fistulis, excidendum usque ad os; quæ oculo et ceteris partibus junctis obtectis bene, os est adurendum ferramento; quæ vehementius si est jam caries, quo crassior squama abscedat. Quidam imponunt adurentia, ut atramentum sutorium, vel chalcitidem, vel rasam æruginem; quod et facit tardius et non idem. Osse adusto, eadem curatio sequitur quæ in ceteris ustis.

8. Vero pili qui sunt in palpebris consuerunt irritare oculum de duobus causis. Nam modo summa cutis palpebræ relaxata, et procidit; quo fit ut pili ejus convertantur ad oculum ipsum, quia cartilago non remisit se quoque simul; modo alius ordo suberescit sub naturali ordine pilorum, qui tendit protinus intus ad oculum.

## TRANSLATION.

the movement of the hand. Yet a recent case is easy to be cured. The summit of the orifice must be seized with a small hook; then the entire sinus must be excised as far as the bone, in the manner I have directed in fistulæ; the eye and the other adjoining parts being well protected, the actual cautery must be applied to the bone; and that too more potently, if caries has taken place, in order that a thicker scale may be detached. Some apply caustics; such as copperas, or chalcitis, or rasile verdigris; which is a slower and ineffectual method. The bone being canterized, the subsequent treatment will be the same as in other burns.

8. Now the hairs of the eyelid are sometimes accustomed to irritate the eye; and that from two causes. For sometimes the superficial skin of the eyelid becomes relaxed and drops; by which it happens that the hairs are turned in upon the eye itself; because there is no consentaneous relaxation in the cartilage: at other times a second line of hairs springs up under the first natural order, which tends directly inwards on the eye.

Curationes hæ sunt. Si pili nati sunt, qui non debuerunt, tenuis acus ferrea ad similitudinem spathæ lata, in ignem conjicienda est: deinde candens, sublata palpebra, sic, ut ejus perniciosi pili in conspectum curantis veniant, sub ipsis pilorum radicibus ab angulo immittenda est, ut ea tertiam partem palpebræ transuat; deinde iterum, tertioque usque ad alterum angulum: quo fit, ut omnes pilorum radices adustæ emoriantur. Tum superimponendum medicamentum est, quod inflammationem prohibeat: atque ubi crustæ exciderunt, ad cicatricem perducendum. Facillime autem id genus sanescit.

Quidam aiunt, acu transui juxta pilos exteriorem partem palpebræ oportere, eamque transmitti duplicem capillum muliebrem ducentem; atque ubi acus transiit, in ipsius capilli sinum, qua duplicatur, pilum esse conjiciendum, et per eum in superiorem palpebræ partem attrahendum, ibique corpori agglutinandum, et imponendum medicamentum, quo foramen glutinetur: sic enim fore, ut is pilus in exteriorem partem postea spectet.

## ORDO.

Hæ sunt curationes. Si pili nati sunt, qui debuerunt non, tenuis ferrea acus, lata ad similitudinem spathæ, est conjicienda in ignem: deinde, palpebra sublata, sic ut perniciosi pili ejus veniant in conspectum curantis, est immittenda candens, ab angulo sub radicibus ipsis pilorum, ut ea transuat tertiam partem palpebræ; deinde iterum, que tertio usque ad alterum angulum; quo fit, ut omnes radices pilorum adustæ, emoriantur. Tum medicamentum est superimponendum, quod prohibeat inflammationem: atque ubi crustæ exciderunt, perducendum ad cicatricem. Autem id genus sanescit facillime.

Quidam aiunt oportere exteriorem partem palpebræ transui acu juxta pilos, que eam transmitti ducentem duplicem muliebrem capillum; atque ubi acus transiit, pilum esse conjiciendum in sinum capilli ipsius, qua duplicatur, et attrahendum per eum in superiorem partem palpebræ que ibi agglutinandum corpori, et medicamentum imponendum, quo foramen glutinetur: enim sic fore ut is pilus spectet postea in exte-

## TRANSLATION.

They are to be treated in this manner. If hairs have sprung up, which ought not; then a thin iron needle, resembling a spatula must be put into the fire, and when red-hot, the eyelid must be raised in such a manner, that the offending hairs may be brought under the view of the operator: it must be applied with a white heat close to the roots of the hairs, beginning at the angle and proceeding as far as one third of the eyelid; then it must be applied a second and a third time, till it reach the opposite angle; and by this means all the roots of the hairs being cauterized, die away. Then some medicine must be laid on the part, to prevent inflammation; and when the eschars have been detached, the parts must be cicatrised. But this kind heals very easily.

Some maintain that the external part of the palpebræ should be pierced with a needle charged with a female's hair doubled; and when the needle has passed through, that the inverted hairs may be brought into this hair-loop, and by it raised to the upper part of the eyelid; attaching it there, and applying some medicament to close up the opening: for by this method the hairs will be directed



Id primum fieri non potest, nisi in pilo longiore; cum fere breves eo loco nascantur. Deinde, si plures pili sunt, necesse est longum tormentum, toties acu trajecta, magnam inflammationem moveat.

Novissime, cum humor aliquis ibi subsit, oculo et ante per pilos et tum per palpebræ foramina affecto, vix fieri potest, ut gluten, quo vinctus est pilus, non resolvatur: eoque fit, ut is eo, unde vi abductus est, redeat.

Ea vero curatio, quæ palpebræ laxioris ab omnibus frequentatur, nihil habet dubii. Siquidem oportet contacto oculo mediam palpebræ cutem, sive ea superior, sive inferior est, apprehendere digitis, ac levare: tum considerare, quantulo detracto futurum sit, ut naturaliter se habeat. Siquidem hic quoque duo pericula circumstant: si nimium fuerit excisum, ne contegi oculus non possit; si parum, ne nihil actum sit, et frustra sectus aliquis sit.

Qua deinde incidendum videbitur, per duas lineas atramento notandum

## ORDO.

riorem partem. Primum id potest non fieri, nisi in longiori pilo; cum fere nascantur breves eo loco. Deinde, si sunt plures pili, est necesse longum tormentum, acu trajecta toties, moveat magnam inflammationem.

Novissime, cum aliquis humor subsit ibi, oculo et affecto ante per pilos et tum per foramina palpebræ, potest vix fieri, ut gluten quo pilus vinctus non est resolvatur: que eo fit, ut is redeat eo, unde abductus est vi.

Vero ea curatio laxioris palpebræ quæ frequentatur ab omnibus, habet nihil dubii. Siquidem, oculo contacto, oportet apprehendere digitis mediam cutem palpebræ, sive ea est superior, sive inferior, ac levare: tum considerare quantulo detracto sit futurum, ut habeat se naturaliter. Siquidem hic quoque duo pericula circumstant: ne, si nimium fuerit excisum, oculus non possit contegi; si parum, ne nihil actum sit, et aliquis sectus sit frustra.

Deinde qua videbitur incidendum, est notandum atramento per

## TRANSLATION.

outwards. In the first place, this plan cannot be effected, unless the hairs be very long; whereas in that part they are generally short. In the next place, should there be several hairs, the patient must necessarily suffer a protracted torment, by passing the needle so often as to excite considerable inflammation.

Lastly, when any humour has settled there, the eye being irritated previously, both by the hairs, and then by the perforations of the eyelid, it is scarcely possible to prevent the adhesive matter from being dissolved; and then it follows, that the hair returns to that place from whence it had been forcibly withdrawn.

The method of treatment for a relaxed eyelid, which is universally practised, never fails of success. The eye being closed, the operator must take hold of the middle portion of the palpebræ with two fingers, whether it be the superior or inferior, and raise it: then consider how much must be taken away in order to reduce it to its natural condition. Even here, there is a twofold danger: if there be too much cut out, it cannot cover the eye; if too little, the end will not be answered, and the patient will have suffered to no purpose.

The part which may appear most proper to remove must be marked by two ink lines, in such a manner that betwixt the range of hairs and the line nearest to it,

est, sic, ut inter oram, quæ pilos continet, et propiorem ei lineam, aliquid relinquatur, quod apprehendere acus postea possit. His constitutis, scalpellus adhibendus est: et, si superior palpebra est, ante; si inferior, postea propius ipsis pilis incidendum: initiumque faciendum in sinistro oculo, ab eo angulo, qui tempori; in dextro, ab eo, qui naribus propior est: idque, quod inter duas lineas est, excidendum. Deinde oræ vulneris inter se simplici sutura committendæ, operiendusque oculus est; et, si parum palpebra descendet, laxanda sutura; si nimium, aut adstringenda, aut etiam rursus tenuis habenula ab ulteriore ora excidenda: ubi secta est, aliæ suturæ adjiciendæ, quæ supra tres esse non debent.

Præter hæc, in superiore palpebra sub pilis ipsis incidenda linea est, ut ab inferiore parte diducti pili sursum spectent: idque, si levis inclinatio est, etiam solum satis tuetur. Inferior palpebra eo non eget. His factis, spongia, ex aqua frigida expressa, super deliganda est; postero die glu-

## ORDO.

duas lineas, sic, ut inter oram, quæ continet pilos, et lineam propiorem ei, aliquid relinquatur, quod acus possit postea apprehendere. His constitutis, scalpellus est adhibendus: et si est superior palpebra, incidendum propius pilis ipsis, ante; si inferior, postea: quæ initium faciendum in sinistro oculo, ab eo angulo qui est propior tempori; in dextra, ab eo qui naribus: quæ id quod est inter duas lineas excidendum. Deinde oræ vulneris committendæ inter se simplici sutura, quæ oculus est operiendus; et, si palpebra descendet parum, sutura laxanda; si nimium, aut adstringenda, aut etiam rursus tenuis habenula excidenda ab ulteriore ora: ubi secta est, aliæ suturæ adjiciendæ, quæ non debent esse supra tres.

Præter hæc, linea est incidenda sub pilis ipsis in superiore palpebra, ut pili diducti ab inferiore parte spectent sursum: quæ id etiam solum tuetur satis, si inclinatio est levis. Inferior palpebra non eget eo. His factis, spongia, expressa ex frigida aqua, est deliganda super; postero die glutinans emplastrum injiciendum;

## TRANSLATION.

some space may be left for the needle to lay hold of. These arrangements being made, the knife must be applied; and if it be the superior palpebra, the first incision ought to be next to the eyelash; and if the inferior one, it must be made last; commencing the incision in the left eye from the temporal angle; in the right from the nasal angle; and that which is between the two lines must be removed. Afterwards the edges of the wound are to be united by a single stitch, and the eye must be covered; and if the eyelid does not descend sufficiently, the suture should be relaxed; if too far, it should be either tightened, or a second small slip excised from the upper edge: after the excision, other stitches are to be added, which ought not to exceed three.

Besides the above methods, a linear incision is to be made under the roots of the hairs in the superior palpebra, that being raised from the inferior part they may point upwards: even this alone might be sufficient to effect a cure, if the inclination be but slight. The lower eyelid does not require this process. These things being done, a sponge expressed out of cold water is to be bound over the

tinans emplastrum injiciendum: quarto suturæ tollendæ, et collyrio, quod inflammationes reprimat, superinungendum.

9. Nonnumquam autem, nimium sub hac curatione excisa cute, evenit, ut oculus non contegatur: idque interdum etiam alia de causa fit. Λαγωφθάλμους Græci appellant. In quo si nimium palpebræ deest, nulla id restituere curatio potest: si exiguum, mederi licet. Paulum infra supercilium cutis incidenda est lunata figura, cornibus ejus deorsum spectantibus. Altitudo esse plagæ usque ad cartilaginem debet, ipsa illa nihil læsa: nam, si ea incisa est, palpebra concidit, neque attolli postea potest. Cute igitur tantum diducta fit, ut paulum in ima oculi ora descendat; hiante scilicet super plaga; in quam linamentum conjiciendum est, quod et conjungi diductam cutem prohibeat, et in medio carunculam citet: quæ ubi eum locum implevit, postea recte oculus operitur.

10. Ut superioris autem palpebræ vitium est, quo parum descendit, ide-

## ORDO.

quarto, suturæ tollendæ, et superinungendum collyrio quod reprimat inflammationes.

9. Autem nonnumquam, cute excisa nimium sub hac curatione, evenit, ut oculus non contegatur: que id interdum fit etiam de alia causa. Græci appellant Λαγωφθάλμους (lagophthalmous). In quo si nimium palpebræ deest, nulla curatio potest restituere id: si exiguum, licet mederi. Cutis est incidenda paulum infra supercilium lunata figura, cornibus ejus spectantibus deorsum. Altitudo plagæ debet esse usque ad cartilaginem, illa ipsa læsa nihil: nam si ea incisa est, palpebra concidit, neque potest postea attolli. Igitur cute tantum diducta fit, ut descendat paulum in ima ora oculi; scilicet, plaga hiante super; in quam linamentum est conjiciendum, quod et prohibeat diductam cutem conjungi, et citet carunculam in medio; quæ ubi implevit eum locum, postea oculus operitur recte.

10. Autem ut est vitium superioris palpebræ, quo descendit pa-

## TRANSLATION.

eye: the day following an adhesive plaster is to be applied, and on the fourth the sutures may be removed, and the part anointed with an antiphlogistic collyrium.

9. But sometimes, when too much of the skin is cut away in this operation, it happens that the eye cannot be covered; and sometimes it may arise from some other cause. The Greeks term such patients Lagophthalmous, or Hare-eyed. In which case, if too much of the palpebræ be wanting, no treatment could restore it; if but a small part of it, it may be cured. The skin is to be incised a little below the eyebrow in the form of a crescent, with its horns pointing downwards. The incision ought to extend as far as the cartilage without injuring it; for if that be cut, the eyelid falls down, neither can it be raised afterwards. Therefore let the skin be only divided, so as to allow it only to descend a little on the lower edge of the eye, the wound forming an hiatus above; into which lint is to be introduced, to prevent the union of the teguments, and to promote granulations in the interspace; and when it has filled this part, the eye will be covered afterwards as it ought.

10. As the superior palpebra is liable to be deficient in not coming down far



oque oculum non contegit; sic inferioris, quo parum sursum attollitur, sed pendet et hiat, neque potest cum superiore committi. Atque id quoque evenit interdum ex simili vitio curationis, interdum etiam senectute. Ἐκτρόπιον Græci vocant.

Si ex mala curatione est, eadem ratio medicinæ est, quæ supra posita est: plagæ tantum cornua ad maxillas, non ad oculum convertenda sunt. Si ex senectute est, tenui ferramento id totum extrinsecus adurendum est, deinde melle inungendum: a quarto die vapore aquæ calidæ fovendum, inungendumque medicamentis ad cicatricem perducentibus.

11. Hæc fere circa oculum in angulis palpebrisque incidere consuerunt. In ipso autem oculo nonnumquam summa attollitur tunica, sive ruptis intus membranis aliquibus, sive laxatis; et similis figura acino fit: unde id σταφύλωμα Græci vocant.

Curatio duplex est: altera, ad ipsas radices per medium transuere acu, duo lina ducente; deinde alterius lini

## ORDO.

rum, que ideo non contegit oculum; sic inferioris, quo attollitur sursum parum, sed pendet et hiat, neque potest committi cum superiore. Atque id quoque evenit interdum ex simili vitio curationis, interdum etiam senectute. Græci vocant Ἐκτρόπιον (Ectropion).

Si est ex mala curatione, ratio medicinæ est eadem, quæ posita est supra: tantum cornua plagæ sunt convertenda ad maxillas, non ad oculum. Si est ex senectute, totum id est adurendum extrinsecus tenui ferramento, deinde inungendum melle: a quarto die fovendum vapore calidæ aquæ, que inungendum medicamentis perducentibus ad cicatricem.

11. Hæc fere consuerunt incidere circa oculum in angulis que palpebris. Autem in oculo ipso nonnumquam summa tunica attollitur, sive aliquibus membranarum ruptis intus, sive laxatis; et figura fit similis acino: unde Græci vocant σταφύλωμα (staphylōma).

Curatio est duplex: altera, transuere per medium ad radices ipsas acu, ducente duo lina; dein-

## TRANSLATION.

enough, and on that account does not cover the eye, so there is also a disease of the lower, in which it is not sufficiently elevated, but remains pendulous, leaving an opening, and cannot be joined to the superior. This also proceeds from improper treatment, sometimes even from old age. The Greeks call it Ectropium.

If it arise from mal-treatment, the mode of proceeding will be the same as stated above: only that the horns of the lunated incision are to point towards the maxillary, not towards the eye. If it be from old age, the whole should be cauterized externally with a thin iron instrument, and afterwards anointed with honey; after the fourth day, it is to be fomented with the vapour of hot water, and anointed with those medicines having the property of promoting cicatrization.

11. These then are the diseases which generally occur in the corners of the eye and palpebræ. In the eye itself, sometimes the outer tunic is raised, either from the rupture or relaxation of some internal membranes, resembling a grapestone in shape; whence the Greeks term this Staphyloma.

There are two methods of treatment: one consists in passing a needle through the centre of it, with a double thread close to the base, then to tie the two ends

duo capita ex superiore parte, alterius, ex inferiore adstringere inter se; quæ paulatim secando id excidunt: altera, in summa parte ejus ad lenticulæ magnitudinem excidere; deinde spodium aut cadmiam infriare. Utrolibet autem facto, album ovi lana excipiendum et imponendum; posteaque vapore aquæ calidæ fovendus oculus, et lenibus medicamentis inungendus est.

12. Clavi autem vocantur callosa in albo oculi tubercula; quibus nomen a figuræ similitudine est. Hos ad imam radicem perforare acu commodissimum est, infraque eam excidere, deinde lenibus medicamentis inungere.

13. Suffusionis jam alias feci mentionem; quia cum recens incidit, medicamentis quoque sæpe discutitur: sed, ubi vetustior facta est, manus curationem desiderat: quæ inter subtilissimas haberi potest.

De qua antequam dico, paucis ipsius oculi natura indicanda est: cujus cognitio, cum ad plura loca pertineat, tum vel præcipue ad hunc pertinet.

## ORDO.

de adstringere duo capita alterius lini ex superiore parte, alterius ex inferiore inter se; quæ paulatim secando excidunt id: altera, excidere in summa parte ejus ad magnitudinem lenticulæ; deinde infriare spodium aut cadmiam. Autem utrolibet facto, album ovi excipiendum lana et imponendum, que postea oculus est fovendus vapore calidæ aquæ, et inungendus lenibus medicamentis.

12. Autem callosa tubercula in albo oculi vocantur clavi; quibus nomen est a similitudine figuræ. Est commodissimum perforare hos acu ad imam radicem, que excidere in fra eam, deinde inungere lenibus medicamentis.

13. Feci mentionem jam alias suffusionis, quia cum incidit recens, quoque discutitur sæpe medicamentis; sed, ubi facta est vetustior, desiderat curationem manus; quæ potest haberi inter subtilissimas.

De qua antequam dico, natura oculi ipsius est indicanda paucis; cognitio cujus, cum pertineat ad plura loca, tum vel præcipue pertinet ad hunc.

## TRANSLATION.

of one thread above, and those of the other below; which by degrees cuts it out: the other *method* is to excise from its surface a portion of the size of a lentil; afterwards to apply spodium or cadmia. But in either mode of treatment, the white of an egg is to be spread on wool and laid upon the eye; and afterwards it should be fomented with hot water vapour, and anointed with mild applications.

12. Callous tubercles on the white of the eye are called clavi; because they resemble a *button* in shape. The most advantageous method will be to transfix it at the base with a needle, and to excise it underneath, then to anoint it with mild applications.

13. I have already made mention of CATARACT in another place, which when recent, is also frequently removed by medicines; but when it has become chronic, it requires a manual operation; which may be among the most delicate in surgery.

Before I treat of this operation, it is necessary that I should give a short description of the nature of the EYE itself; the knowledge of which, as it is of importance in several other parts, has an especial reference to this.

Is igitur summas habet duas tunicas: ex quibus superior a Græcis κερατοειδής vocatur. Ea, qua parte alba est, satis crassa, pupillæ loco extenuatur. Huic interior adjuncta est, media parte, qua pupilla est, modico foramine concava, circa tenuis, ulterioribus partibus ipsa quoque plenior: quæ χοριοειδής a Græcis nominatur. Hæ duæ tunicæ, cum interiora oculi cingant, rursus sub his coeunt; extenuatæque et in unum coactæ per foramen, quod inter ossa est, ad membranam cerebri perveniunt, eique inhærescunt. Sub his autem, qua parte pupilla est, locus vacuus est: deinde infra rursus tenuissima tunica, quam Herophilus ἀραχνοειδῆ nominavit. Ea media subsidit; eoque cavo continet quiddam, quod a vitri similitudine υαλοειδές Græci vocant. Id neque liquidum, neque aridum est, sed quasi concretus humor: ex cujus colore pupillæ color vel niger est, vel cæsius; cum summa tunica tota alba sit. Id autem superveniens ab interiore parte membranula includit. Sub his gutta

## ORDO.

Igitur is habet duas summas tunicas: ex quibus superior vocatur a Græcis κερατοειδής (keratoeidēs). Ea, qua parte est alba, satis crassa, extenuatur loco pupillæ. Interior est adjuncta huic media parte, qua pupilla est, concava modico foramine, tenuis circa, ipsa quoque plenior ulterioribus partibus: quæ nominatur a Græcis χοριοειδής (chorioeidēs). Hæ duæ tunicæ, cum cingant interiora oculi, rursus coeunt sub his; que extenuatæ et coactæ in unum, perveniunt per foramen, quod est inter ossa, ad membranam cerebri, que inhærescunt ei. Autem sub his, qua parte pupilla est, est vacuus locus: deinde infra rursus tenuissima tunica, quam Herophilus nominavit ἀραχνοειδῆ (arachnoeidē). Ea media subsidit; que continet eo cavo quiddam, quod a similitudine vitri, Græci vocant υαλοειδές (hyaloeidēs). Id est neque liquidum, neque aridum, sed quasi concretus humor: ex colore cujus color pupillæ est vel niger, vel cæsius; cum summa tunica sit tota alba. Autem membranula superveniens ab interiore parte includit id. Sub his est gutta humoris,

## TRANSLATION.

Now the eye has two external coats, the exterior of which is called by the Greeks Keratoeidēs. This coat, where it forms the white of the eye, is pretty thick, near the pupil it becomes thinner. The interior tunic is united to this in the centre where the pupil is; it is concave, with a small aperture; round the pupil it is thin, but this coat is thicker at a little distance from it: and this is named by the Greeks Chorioeidēs. These two tunics surround the internal part of the eye, and unite again posteriorly, where they become thinner, pass through a foramen which is between the bones, to a membrane of the brain, and are there united to it. Directly under these, opposite to the pupil, there is an empty space; then below that again a very fine membrane, which Herophilus named Arachnoidēs. The middle part of this is hollow, and in that cavity a substance is contained, which, from its resemblance to glass, the Greeks call Hyaloeidēs. This substance is neither liquid, nor solid, but a concrete fluid; from the colour of which, that of the pupil is either black, or grey, although the external coat be entirely white. This is inclosed by a small membrane, which proceeds from the internal part of the eye. Immediately under



humoris est, ovi albo similis; a qua videndi facultas proficiscitur: *κρυσταλλοειδής* a Græcis nominatur.

14. Igitur vel ex morbo, vel ex ictu concrescit humor sub duabus tunicis, qua locum vacuum esse proposui; isque paulatim indurescens, interiori potentiae se opponit. Vitiique ejus plures species sunt; quædam sanabiles, quædam quæ curationem non admittunt. Nam si exigua suffusio est, si immobilis, colorem vero habet marinæ aquæ, vel ferri nitentis, et a latere sensum aliquem fulgoris relinquit, spes superest. Si magna est, si nigra pars oculi, amissa naturali figura, in aliam vertit, si suffusioni color cæruleus est, aut auro similis, si labat et hac atque illac movetur, vix umquam succurritur.

Fere vero pejor est, quo ex graviore morbo, majoribusve capitis doloribus, vel ictu vehementiore orta est. Neque idonea curationi senilis ætas est; quæ sine novo vitio, tamen aciem hebetem habet: ac ne puerilis quidem; sed inter has media. Oculus quoque curationi neque exiguus, neque con-

## ORDO.

similis albo ovi; a qua facultas videndi proficiscitur: nominatur a Græcis *κρυσταλλοειδής* (krystallo-eidēs).

14. Igitur humor sub duabus tunicis, qua proposui vacuum locum esse, concrescit vel ex morbo, vel ex ictu: que is paulatim indurescens, opponit se interiori potentiae. Que sunt plures species ejus vitii: quædam sanabiles, quædam quæ non admittunt curationem. Nam si suffusio est exigua, si immobilis, vero habet colorem marinæ aquæ, vel nitentis ferri, et relinquit aliquem sensum fulgoris a latere, spes superest. Si est magna, si nigra pars oculi, naturali figura amissa, vertit in aliam, si color suffusioni est cæruleus, aut similis auro, si labat, et movetur hac atque illac, vix unquam succurritur.

Vero fere est pejor, quo orta est ex graviore morbo, ve majoribus doloribus capitis, vel vehementiore ictu. Neque est senilis ætas idonea curationi; quæ sine novo vitio, tamen habet hebetem aciem: ac ne quidem puerilis; sed media inter has. Quoque neque exiguus, neque concavus oculus est

## TRANSLATION.

these is a drop of humour resembling the white of an egg, from which the faculty of vision proceeds: it is termed by the Greeks *Chrystalloides*.

14. Now the humour beneath the two tunics, where I have described the vacuum to be, becomes concrete, or opaque, either by disease, or from a blow; this gradually becomes indurated, and opposes the interior faculty of vision. There are several species of this disease; some are curable, and others resist every remedy. For if the cataract be small, immovable, of the colour of sea-water, or of polished iron, and admit of some sensation of light at its side, there is hope. If it be large, if the black part of the eye be altered from its natural configuration to any other, if the colour of the cataract be azure, or like gold, if it glide backwards and forwards, it is scarcely ever cured.

It is generally worse in proportion to the severity of the disease from which it has arisen, or from severe head-ache, or from a violent blow. Neither is old age favourable for a cure; for, independent of any new disease, the vision is then dull: nor is infancy; but the middle age between these. Neither is a small nor concave eye fit for the operation. There is also a state of maturity at which the cata-

cavus, satis opportunus est. Atque ipsius suffusionis quædam maturitas est. Exspectandum igitur est, donec jam non fluere, sed duritie quadam concrevisse videatur.

Ante curationem autem modico cibo uti, bibere aquam triduo debet; pridie, ab omnibus abstinere. Post hæc in adverso sedili collocandus est loco lucido, lumine adverso, sic, ut contra medicus paulo altius sedeat: a posteriore autem parte caput ejus, qui curabitur, minister contineat, ut immobile id præstet: nam levi motu eripi acies in perpetuum potest. Quin etiam ipse oculus, qui curabitur, immobilior faciendus est, super alterum lana imposita et deligata.

Curari vero sinister oculus dextra manu, dexter sinistra debet. Tum acus admovenda est, aut acuta, aut forte non nimium tenuis, eaque demittenda, sed recta, est per summas duas tunicas medio loco inter oculi nigrum et angulum temporis propiorem, e regione mediæ suffusionis, sic, ne qua vena lædatur. Neque tamen timide demittenda est, quia inani loco exci-

## ORDO.

satis opportunus curationi. Atque est quædam maturitas suffusionis ipsius. Igitur est exspectandum, donec videatur jam non fluere, sed concrevisse quadam duritie.

Autem ante curationem debet uti modico cibo, bibere aquam triduo; pridie abstinere ab omnibus. Post hæc est collocandus in adverso sedili lucido loco, adverso lumine, sic, ut medicus sedeat contra paulo altius: autem minister contineat caput ejus qui curabitur a posteriore parte, ut præstet id immobile: nam levi motu acies potest eripi in perpetuum. Quin etiam oculus ipse, qui curabitur, est faciendus immobilior; lana imposita et deligata super alterum.

Vero sinister oculus debet curari dextra manu, dexter sinistra. Tum acus est admovenda, aut acuta, aut forte non nimium tenuis, que ea est demittenda sed recta, per duas summas tunicas medio loco inter nigrum oculi et angulum propiorem temporis, e regione mediæ suffusionis, sic, ne qua vena lædatur. Neque tamen est demittenda timide, quia exci-

## TRANSLATION.

ract itself arrives. Therefore we must wait until it appear to be no longer fluid, but to have acquired a certain degree of consistence.

Previous to the operation, the patient ought to be put on a spare diet, to drink nothing but water for three days, and the day previous, to abstain from every thing. After these preparations, he is to be seated in a light place, with his face towards the light, in such a manner that the physician may sit opposite to him, a little more elevated: but an assistant should stand behind the patient, that he may hold his head immovable: for by a slight motion the sight may be lost for ever. Besides, the eye to be operated on must be held more steady, by applying wool on the other eye, and binding it on.

Now the left eye must be operated on by the right hand, and the right eye with the left hand. Then a sharp-pointed needle, perhaps not too slender, is to be directed straight through the two external tunics, at the intermediate point between the pupil and the temporal canthus of the eye, opposite the centre of the cataract, that no vessel may be injured. It should not be introduced with timidity, because it enters a void space. For a person but moderately skilled can hardly be deceived,

pitur. Ad quem cum ventum est, ne mediocriter quidem peritus falli potest; quia prementi nihil renititur. Ubi eo ventum est, inclinanda acus ad ipsam suffusionem est, leniterque ibi verti, et paulatim eam deducere infra regionem pupillæ debet; ubi deinde eam transiit, vehementius imprimi, ut inferiori parti insadat. Si hæsit, curatio expleta est: si subinde redit, eadem acu concidenda, et in plures partes dissipanda est; quæ singulæ et facilius conduntur, et minus late efficiunt. Post hæc educenda acus recta est, imponendumque lana molli exceptum ovi album, et supra, quod inflammationem coerceat, atque ita devinciendum.

Post hæc opus est quiete, abstinentia, lenium medicamentorum inunctionibus, cibo (qui postero die satis mature datur) primum liquido, ne maxillæ laborent; deinde, inflammatione finita, tali, qualis in vulneribus propositus est. Quibus, ut aqua quoque diutius bibatur, necessario accedit.

## ORDO.

pitur inani loco. Ad quem cum ventum est, nè quidem mediocriter peritus potest falli; quia nihil renititur prementi. Ubi ventum est eo, acus est inclinanda ad suffusionem ipsam, quæ debet verti ibi leniter, et deducere eam paulatim infra regionem pupillæ; deinde ubi transiit eam, imprimi vehementius, ut insadat inferiori parti. Si hæsit, curatio expleta est: si redit subinde, est concidenda eadem acu, et dissipanda in plures partes; quæ singulæ et conduntur facilius, et efficiunt minus late. Post hæc acus est educenda recta, quæ album ovi exceptum molli lana imponendum, et supra, quod coerceat inflammationem, atque ita devinciendum.

Post hæc est opus quiete, abstinentia, inunctionibus lenium medicamentorum, cibo (qui datur satis mature postero die) primum liquido, ne maxillæ laborent; deinde, inflammatione finita, tali qualis propositus est in vulneribus. Quibus accedit necessario ut aqua quoque bibatur diutius.

## TRANSLATION.

when he has touched it, as there is no longer any resistance to the instrument. When it has reached the part, the needle is to be inclined towards the cataract itself, which ought to be gently rotated there, and the operator ought to depress gradually below the region of the pupil; when it has passed the pupil, it should be pressed a little more forcibly, that it may sink to the inferior part. If it remain there, the operation is complete: if it return occasionally, it must be divided with the same needle, and broken up in several pieces; which being in separate portions are not only more easily concealed, but obstruct vision less. After this, the operator must withdraw his needle in a straight direction, and the white of an egg spread upon wool laid on it, and over that something to restrain inflammation, and so bound up.

Afterwards there is necessity for rest, abstinence, and the application of mild ointments, and food (which will be given sufficiently soon the following day) at first liquid, lest the jaws be too much occupied: when the inflammation has subsided, he may take such food as I have ordered in wounds. To which it must be added, that the patient's drink must necessarily be water for a considerable time.



15. De pituitæ quoque tenuis cursu, qui oculos infestat, quatenus medicamentis agendum est, jam explicui. Nunc ad ea veniam, quæ curationem manus postulant. Animadvertimus autem quibusdam numquam siccescere oculos, sed semper humore tenui madere: quæ res aspritudinem continuat, et ex levibus momentis inflammationes et lippitudines excitat, totam denique vitam hominis infestat. Idque in quibusdam nulla ope adjuvari potest, in quibusdam sanabile est. Quod primum discrimen nosse oportet, ut alteris succurratur, alteris manus non injiciatur.

Ac primum supervacua curatio est in iis, qui ab infantibus id vitium habent; quia necessario mansurum est usque mortis diem. Deinde non necessaria etiam in iis, quibus non multa, sed acris pituita est: siquidem manu nihil adjuvantur; medicamentis, et victus ratione, quæ crassiorem pituitam reddit, ad sanitatem perveniunt.

Lata etiam capita vix medicinæ patient. Tum interest, venæ pituitam

## ORDO.

15. Quoque de cursu tenuis pituitæ, qui infestat oculos, quatenus est agendum medicamentis, explicui jam. Nunc veniam ad ea, quæ postulant curationem manus. Autem animadvertimus oculos numquam siccescere quibusdam, sed semper madere tenui humore: quæ res continuat aspritudinem, et ex levibus momentis excitat inflammationes et lippitudines, denique infestat totam vitam hominis. Que id potest adjuvari in quibusdam nulla ope, in quibusdam est sanabile. Quod discrimen oportet nosse primum, ut succurratur alteris, manus non injiciatur alteris.

Ac primum curatio est supervacua in iis qui habent id vitium ab infantibus; quia est necessario mansurum usque diem mortis. Deinde non necessaria etiam in iis quibus est non multa, sed acris pituita: siquidem adjuvantur nihil manu: perveniunt ad sanitatem medicamentis, et ratione victus, quæ reddit pituitam crassiorem.

Etiam lata capita vix patient medicinæ. Tum interest (an) venæ,

## TRANSLATION.

15. I have already spoken of a running of thin humour, which attacks the eyes, as far as the treatment of it with medicines. I shall now advert to such cases as require the aid of a manual operation. We perceive that the eyes of some persons are never dry; but are always moistened with a thin humour, which continues to exasperate, and from a slight cause excites inflammation and lippitudo, and, in short, it annoys the patient all his life. Now this may be relieved in some, in others it is incurable. And this distinction is of primary importance, that we may relieve the one, and not meddle with the other.

In the first place, it would be superfluous to treat those who have had the disease from their infancy; because it must necessarily remain with them until the day of their death. Again, it is unnecessary in those cases where the discharge is not copious, but acrid: since these are not assisted by a surgical operation: but by medicines and a regimen which renders the humour thicker, they are brought to a sound state of health.

It is also very difficult to cure this disease in persons who have broad foreheads. Then it is of importance to know whether the veins which are between the calvarium

emittant, quæ inter calvariam et cutem sunt, an quæ inter membranam cerebri et calvariam. Superiores fere per tempora oculos rigant; inferiores, per eas membranas, quæ ab oculis ad cerebrum tendunt. Potest autem adhiberi remedium iis, quæ supra os fluunt; non potest iis, quæ sub osse. Ac ne iis quidem succurritur, quibus pituita utrimque descendit: quia levata altera parte, nihilominus altera infestat.

Quid sit autem, hac ratione cognoscitur. Raso capite ea medicamenta, quibus in lippitudine pituita suspenditur, a superciliis usque ad verticem illini debent: si sicci oculi esse cœperunt, apparet per eas venas, quæ sub cute sunt, irrigari: si nihilominus madent, manifestum est sub osse descendere: si est humor, sed levior, duplex vitium est.

Plurimi tamen ex laborantibus reperiuntur, quos superiores venæ exerceant; ideoque pluribus etiam opitulari licet. Idque non in Græcia

## ORDO.

quæ sunt inter calvariam et cutem emittant pituitam; an quæ inter membranam cerebri et calvariam. Fere superiores rigant oculos per tempora; inferiores per eas membranas quæ tendunt ab oculis ad cerebrum. Autem remedium potest adhiberi iis quæ fluunt supra os; non potest iis quæ sub osse. Ac succurritur ne quidem iis quibus pituita descendit utrinque; quia altera parte levata, nihilominus altera infestat.

Autem cognoscitur quid sit hac ratione. Capite raso, ea medicamenta, quibus pituita suspenditur in lippitudine, debent illini a superciliis usque ad verticem: si oculi cœperunt esse sicci, apparet irrigari per eas venas, quæ sunt sub cute: si nihilominus madent, est manifestum descendere sub osse: si est humor, sed levior, est duplex vitium.

Tamen plurimi ex laborantibus reperiuntur, quos superiores venæ exerceant; que ideo etiam licet opitulari pluribus: que id est celeberrime non in Græcia tantummodo,

## TRANSLATION.

and the skin emit the humour; or those which are between the membrane of the brain and the calvarium. The former or superior veins moisten the eyes by the temples; the deep-seated take their course through those membranes which proceed from the eyes to the brain. Now it is possible to apply a remedy to those veins which discharge above the bone; but not to those below the bone. Neither can relief be given to those persons, when the discharge comes from both places; because, although one part may be relieved, the other, nevertheless, remains diseased.

Now the source of the disease is to be discovered by this method. The head being shaved, those medicines *calculated* to arrest the humour in lippitudo, ought to be applied, extending from the eye-brows as far as the crown of the head: if the eyes begin to be dry, it will be manifest that they are irrigated by the subcutaneous veins: if they still remain moist, it will be evident that the humour descends from vessels under the bone: if the humour still continue to flow, but in a diminished quantity, the malady proceeds from both sets of vessels.

In most cases, however, the disease is found to be derived from the superior veins; and on that account the greater number may be relieved. This fact is well

tantummodo, sed in aliis quoque gentibus celebre est: adeo ut nulla medicinæ pars magis per nationes quasque exposita sit.

Reperti in Græcia sunt, qui novem lineis cutem capitis inciderent: duabus in occipitio rectis, una super eas transversa: dein duabus super aures, una inter eas item transversa: tribus inter verticem et frontem rectis. Reperti sunt, qui a vertice rectas lineas ad tempora deducerent; cognitisque, ex motu maxillarum, musculorum initiis, leviter super eos cutem inciderent, diductisque per retusos hamos oris, insererent linamenta, ut neque inter se cutis antiqui fines committerentur, et in medio caro cresceret, quæ venas, ex quibus humor ad oculos transiret, adstringeret.

Quidam etiam atramento duas lineas duxerunt, a media aure ad mediam alteram aurem, deinde a naribus ad verticem: tum ubi lineæ committerebantur, scalpello inciderunt; et post, sanguine effuso, os ibidem adusserunt. Nihilominus autem et in temporibus,

## ORDO.

sed quoque in aliis gentibus: adeo ut nulla pars medicinæ exposita sit magis per quasque nationes.

Reperti sunt in Græcia qui inciderent cutem capitis novem lineis: duabus rectis in occipitio, una transversa super eas: dein duabus super aures, una transversa item inter eas; tribus rectis inter verticem et frontem. Reperti sunt qui deducerent rectas lineas a vertice ad tempora; que initiis musculorum cognitisque, ex motu maxillarum, inciderent leviter cutem super eos, que oris diductis per retusos hamos, insererent linamenta, ut neque antiqui fines cutis committerentur inter se, et caro cresceret in medio, quæ adstringeret venas ex quibus tumor transiret ad oculos.

Etiam quidam duxerunt duas lineas atramento, a media aure ad mediam alteram aurem, deinde a naribus ad verticem: tum ubi lineæ committerebantur inciderunt scalpello; et post, sanguine effuso, adusserunt os ibidem. Autem nihilominus admoverunt idem can-

## TRANSLATION.

known, not only in Greece, but amongst other nations also: so that no department of medicine has been more cultivated in any country.

Physicians have been found in Greece who made nine linear incisions in the integuments of the head; in the occiput were two straight lines, with one transverse above these; then two above the ears, with a transverse incision also betwixt them, and three straight ones between the top of the head and forehead. Others have been known to make these incisions in a direct line from the top of the head to the temples; and, having ascertained the origin of the muscles by the motion of the jaws, made the incisions slighter over them; and the edges being drawn apart by blunt hooks, they inserted lint in such a manner, so as to prevent the edges of the skin from uniting, and to promote an intermediate granulation, which might bind those veins, from whence the humour was passing to the eyes.

Others again marked out two lines with ink, from the middle of one ear to that of the other, and then from the nostrils to the top of the head: then just where these lines bisect each other, they made an incision with the scalpel, and after the effusion of some blood, they cauterized the bone there. Notwithstanding this,



et inter frontem atque verticem eminentibus venis idem candens ferrum admoventur.

Frequens curatio est, venas in temporibus adurere: quæ fere quidem in ejusmodi malo tument; sed tamen, ut inflentur magisque se ostendant, cervix ante modice deliganda est: tenuibusque ferramentis, et retusis venæ adurendæ; donec in oculis pituitæ cursus conquiescat. Id enim signum est quasi excæcatorum itinerum, per quæ humor ferebatur.

Valentior tamen medicina est, ubi tenues conditæque venæ sunt, ideoque legi non possunt, eodem modo cervicæ deligata, retentoque ab ipso spiritu, quo magis venæ prodeant, atramento notare eas contra tempora, et inter verticem ac frontem: deinde cervicæ resoluta, qua notæ sunt, venas incidere, et sanguinem mittere: ubi satis fluxit, tenuibus ferramentis adurere: contra tempora quidem, timide; ne subjecti musculi, qui maxillas tenent, sentiant: inter frontem vero et verticem, vehementer, ut squama ab osse secedat.

## ORDO.

dens ferrum eminentibus venis, et in temporibus et inter frontem atque verticem.

Est frequens curatio adurere venas in temporibus: quæ fere quidem tument in malo ejusmodi: sed tamen, cervix est deliganda modice ante, ut inflentur, que ostendant se magis: que venæ sunt adurendæ tenuibus et retusis ferramentis; donec cursus pituitæ in oculis conquiescat. Enim id est signum quasi itinerum excæcatorum, per quæ humor ferebatur.

Tamen medicina est valentior, ubi venæ sunt tenues que conditæque ideo non possunt legi, cervicæ deligata eodem modo, que spiritu retento ab ipso, quo venæ prodeant magis, notare eas atramento contra tempora, et inter verticem ac frontem: deinde cervicæ resoluta, incidere venas, qua notæ sunt, et mittere sanguinem: ubi fluxit satis, adurere tenuibus ferramentis: contra tempora quidem timide; ne musculi subjecti, que tenent maxillas sentiant: vero inter frontem et verticem vehementer, ut squama secedat ab osse.

## TRANSLATION.

they also applied the actual cantery to the turgid veins, both on the temples and between the forehead and top of the head.

It is a common practice to cauterize the veins on the temples; which are generally tumefied in this kind of disease; but that they may be more inflated, and develope themselves more, the neck must first be tied moderately tight; and the veins are to be cauterized by small and blunt irons; until the running of humour in the eyes cease. This will be a sign that the passage by which the humour was conveyed is stopped up.

Yet it is a more effectual practice, when the veins are small and lie deep, and on that account cannot be discovered, to pass a ligature round the neck in the same manner as before, and the breathing being restrained by the patient, by which the veins may become more turgid, to mark them with ink on the temples, and between the top of the head and forehead: then, after removing the ligature from the neck, to incise those veins where they are marked, and allow the blood to flow: when a sufficient quantity has escaped, cauterize them with the small irons; on the temples rather cautiously; lest the subjacent muscles be injured, which maintain the jaw: but between the front and vertex so effectually that a scale may be detached from the bone.

Efficacior tamen etiamnum est Afrorum curatio, qui verticem usque ad os adurunt, sic, ut squamam remittat. Sed nihil melius est, quam quod in Gallia quoque Comata fit, ubi venas in temporibus et in superiore capitis parte legunt. Adusta quo modo curanda sint, jam explicui. Nunc illud adjicio; neque ut crustæ decidant, neque ut ulcus impleatur, adustis venis, esse properandum; ne vel sanguis erumpat, vel cito pus supprimatur: cum per hoc siccescere eas partes opus sit; per illud exhauriri opus non sit. Si quando tamen sanguis eruperit, infrianda medicamenta esse, quæ sic sanguinem supprimant, ne adurant. Quemadmodum autem venæ deligendæ sint, quidque lectis his faciendum sit, cum venero ad crurum varices, dicam.

## ORDO.

Tamen curatio Afrorum est etiamnum efficacior, qui adurunt verticem usque ad os, sic ut remittat squamam. Sed nihil est melius quam quod fit quoque in Gallia Comata, ubi legunt venas in temporibus et in superiore parte capitis. Explicui jam quomodo adusta sint curanda. Nunc adjicio illud: venis adustis, neque esse properandum ut crustæ decidant, neque ut ulcus impleatur; ne vel sanguis erumpat, vel pus cito supprimatur: cum per hoc sit opus eas partes siccescere, non sit opus exhauriri per illud. Tamen si quando sanguis eruperit, medicamenta esse infrianda quæ supprimant sanguinem sic, ne adurant. Autem quemadmodum venæ sint deligendæ, que quid sit faciendum his lectis, dicam, cum venero ad varices crurum.

## TRANSLATION.

But the treatment of the Africans is still more efficacious, who cauterize the crown of the head even to the bone, so as to make it detach a crust. But nothing is better than that practised in Transalpine Gaul, where they select the veins on the temples, and the upper part of the head. I have explained already how burnt wounds may be treated. At present I shall add that, when veins are cauterized, we should not hasten the separation of the eschar, nor the granulations of the ulcers; lest hæmorrhage ensue, or the pus be too suddenly suppressed; for while this is necessary to promote the desiccation of the part, the former may not exhaust it. If however a hæmorrhage should at any time come on, medicines for arresting blood must be rubbed on, but not such as possess caustic properties. Now the method of taking up the veins, and what is to be done, when they are taken up, I shall explain when I come to the treatment of varices of the leg.

## CAP. VIII.

DE AURIUM MORBIS, QUI MANU ET  
SCALPELLO CURANTUR.

VERUM ut oculi multiplicem curationem, etiam manus exigunt; sic in auribus admodum pauca sunt, quæ in hac medicinæ parte tractentur. Solet tamen evenire vel a primo natali die protinus, vel postea facta exulceratione, deinde per cicatricem aure repleta, ut foramen in ea nullum fit, ideoque audiendi usu careat.

Quod ubi incidit, specillo tentandum est, alte ne id repletum, an in summo tantum glutinatum sit. Nam si alte est, prementi non cedit: si in summo, specillum protinus recipit. Illud attingi non oportet; ne sine effectus spe distentio oriatur nervorum, et ex ea mortis periculum sit: hoc facile curatur. Nam qua cavum

ORDO.

## CAP. VIII.

DE MORBIS AURIUM, QUI CURAN-  
TUR MANU ET SCALPELLO.

VERUM ut oculi exigunt multiplicem curationem, etiam manus; sic in auribus sunt admodum pauca quæ tractentur in hac parte medicinæ. Tamen solet evenire vel protinus a primo natali die, vel postea, exulceratione facta, deinde aure repleta per cicatricem, ut sit nullum foramen in ea, quæ ideo careat usu audiendi.

Ubi quod incidit, est tentandum specillo ne id sit repletum alte, an tantum glutinatum in summo. Nam si est alte, non cedit prementi: si est in summo, recipit protinus specillum. Oportet illud non attingi; ne distentio nervorum oriatur sine spe effectus, et ex ea sit periculum mortis: hoc curatur facile. Nam qua cavum

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

THE DISEASES OF THE EAR, AND THOSE WHICH REQUIRE SUR-  
GICAL AID.

WHILE the eyes require many manual operations, there are very few in the ear which require the aid of this branch of medicine. But sometimes it happens, either at the birth, or at some subsequent period, from ulceration, when the ear becomes filled by the cicatrix, that there is no opening in it, and on that account rendered incapable of hearing.

When such a case occurs, it should be examined with a probe, to ascertain whether it be filled up to any extent, or only agglutinated superficially. For if deep, it will not yield to the pressure, if superficial, it will readily admit the probe. In the first affection nothing is to be done, lest convulsion and death follow without the hope of success: the latter is easily cured. For where the foramen



esse debet, vel medicamentum aliquod imponendum est ex adurentibus, vel candente ferro aperiendum, vel etiam scalpello incidendum.

Cumque id patefactum, et jam ulcus purum est, conjicienda eo pinna est, illita medicamento cicatricem inducente; circaque idem medicamentum dandum, ut cutis circa pinnam sanescat: quo fit, ut ea remota, postea facultas audiendi sit.

At ubi aures, in viro puta, perforatæ sunt, et offendunt, trajicere id cavum celeriter candente acu satis est, ut leviter ejus oræ exulcerentur; aut etiam adurente medicamento idem exulcerare: postea deinde imponere id quod purget; tum quod eum locum repleat, et cicatricem inducat. Quod si magnum id foramen est, sicut solet esse in iis, qui majora pondera auribus gesserunt, incidere, quod superest, ad extremum oportet: supra deinde oras scalpello exulcerare, et postea suere, ac medicamentum, quo id glutinetur, imponere. Tertium est, si quid ibi curti est, sarcire: quæ res cum in labris quoque et naribus fieri possit,

#### ORDO.

debet esse, vel aliquod medicamentum ex adurentibus est imponendum, vel aperiendum candente ferro, vel etiam incidendum scalpello.

Que cum patefactum est et ulcus jam purum, pinna est conjicienda eo, illita medicamento inducente cicatricem; que idem medicamentum dandum circa, ut cutis circa pinnam sanescat: quo fit, ut ea remota, postea sit facultas audiendi.

At ubi aures, puta in viro, perforatæ sunt, et offendunt, est satis trajicere id cavum celeriter candente acu, ut oræ ejus exulcerentur leviter; aut etiam exulcerare idem adurente medicamento: deinde postea imponere id quod purget: tum quod repleat eum locum, et inducat cicatricem. Quod si id foramen est magnum, sicut solet esse in iis qui gesserunt majora pondera auribus, oportet incidere quod superest ad extremum: deinde exulcerare supra oras scalpello, et postea suere, ac imponere medicamentum quo id glutinetur. Tertium est, si est quid curti ibi, sarcire: cum quæ res possit fieri in labris quoque et na-

#### TRANSLATION.

ought to be, either some caustic medicine should be applied, or it must be opened by the actual cantery, or even divided with the scalpel.

When it has been opened, and the ulcer is clean, a tent is to be introduced there, anointed with a cicatrizing medicine; and the same application laid around the tent, in order to heal it: this being done, the result is, that when the lint is withdrawn, *the patient* will possess the faculty of hearing.

But when the ears, suppose for instance those of a man, have been perforated, and become offensive (4), it will be sufficient to pass a hot needle through the perforation very quickly, that its edges may be slightly ulcerated, or even ulcerate it with a caustic application: then to apply something to cleanse it, and lastly, that which may heal the part, and induce a cicatrix. But if this foramen be large, as it usually happens in those who have worn heavy ear-rings, it will be necessary to divide the remaining portion of the pendent lobe: then above that to scarify the edges of the foramen with a scalpel; afterwards to sew it, and apply a healing dressing on it. The third operation consists of repairing the mutilated part, if there

eandem etiam rationem habeat, simul explicanda est.

## ORDO.

ribus, etiam habeat eandem rationem, est explicanda simul.

## TRANSLATION.

should be any : but as this mode of treatment is also applicable to the lips and nostrils, it will be explained when treating of them.

## CAP. IX.

## ORDO.

CURTA IN AURIBUS, LABRISQUE AC NARIBUS, QUOMODO SARCIRI ET CURARI POSSUNT.

## CAP. IX.

QUOMODO CURTA IN AURIBUS, QUE LABRIS, AC NARIBUS POSSINT CURARI ET SARCIRI.

CURTA igitur in his tribus, ac si qua parva paria sunt, curari possunt : si qua majora sunt, aut non recipiunt curationem, aut ita per hanc ipsam deformantur, ut minus indecora ante fuerint. Atque in aure quidem et naribus deformitas sola timeri potest : in labris vero, si nimium contracta sunt, usus quoque necessario jactura fit ; quia minus facile et cibus assumitur, et sermo explicatur.

IGITUR curta in his tribus, ac si qua paria sunt parva, possunt curari : si qua sunt majora, aut recipiunt non curationem, aut deformantur ita per hanc ipsam ut fuerint minus indecora ante. Atque in aure quidem et naribus deformitas sola potest timeri : vero in labris, si sunt contracta nimium, jactura usus quoque fit necessario ; quia et cibus assumitur, et sermo explicatur minus facile.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

THE MODE OF REPAIRING DEFECTS IN THE EARS, LIPS, AND NOSE.

Now, mutilations in these three parts, or any similar, may be cured, if they be small : if considerable, they either do not admit of reparation, or are so deformed by it, that they were less unseemly before. Indeed, deformity is the only thing to be feared in the ear and nose : but in the lips, if they be over-contracted, the loss of their use also must follow as a necessary consequence ; because there is a difficulty of admitting the food, and imperfect articulation.

Neque enim creatur ibi corpus, sed ex vicino adducitur: quod in levi mutatione, et nihil eripere, et fallere oculum potest; in magna, non potest. Neque senile autem corpus, neque quod mali habitus est, neque in quo difficulter ulcera sanescunt, huic medicinæ idoneum est; quia nusquam celerius cancer occupat, aut difficilior tollitur.

Ratio curationis ejusmodi est: id quod curtum est, in quadratum redigere; ab interioribus ejus angulis lineas transversas incidere, quæ citiorem partem ab ulteriore ex toto diducant; deinde ea, quæ sic resolvimus, in unum adducere. Si non satis junguntur, ultra lineas, quas ante fecimus, alias duas lunatas, et ad plagam conversas immittere, quibus summa tantum cutis diducatur: sic enim fit, ut facilius quod adducitur, sequi possit. Quod non vi cogendum est; sed ita adducendum, ut ex facili subsequatur, et dimissum non multum recedat.

Interdum tamen ab altera parte cutis omnino adducta deformem, quem reliquit locum, reddit. Hujus-

#### ORDO.

Enim neque corpus creatur ibi, sed adducitur ex vicino: quod in levi mutatione, et potest eripere nihil, et fallere oculum; in magna potest non. Autem neque senile corpus neque quod est mali habitus, neque in quo ulcera sanescunt difficulter est idoneum huic medicinæ; quia nusquam cancer occupat celerius, aut tollitur difficilior.

Ratio curationis est ejusmodi: redigere id quod est curtum in quadratum: incidere transversas lineas ab interioribus angulis ejus, quæ diducant ex toto citiorem partem ab ulteriore; deinde adducere ea, quæ resolvimus sic, in unum. Si non junguntur satis, immittere duas alias lunatas, et conversas ad plagam, ultra lineas quas fecimus ante, quibus tantum summa cutis diducatur; enim sic fit ut quod adducitur, sequitur facilius. Quod est non cogendum vi, sed ita adducendum, ut subsequatur ex facili, et dimissum non recedat multum.

Tamen interdum cutis adducta omnino ab altera parte reddit locum quem reliquit defor-

#### TRANSLATION.

Now, new materials are not to be produced there, but to be brought from a neighbouring part; because in a slight mutilation, it may take away little or nothing, and yet escape observation: this cannot be done when it is considerable. Neither is an aged person a fit subject for this mode of treatment, nor one of a bad habit of body, nor one in whom ulcers heal with difficulty; because there is no part more liable to gangrene, or removed with greater difficulty.

The method of treatment is this: reduce the multiplied part to a square; after which we make parallel incisions to the interior angles, so as to divide the part that lies within these lines from that beyond them; then to approximate the parts we have thus divided into one. If they do not unite properly, then we are to make two incisions of a lunated form, so as to divide the skin beyond the lines we made before, with the horns turned towards the wound; for so it happens, that what is drawn gently will approximate more easily. But this is not to be forced by violence, but by gradual means, so that it may adapt itself the more easily, neither will it recede much, when the restraint is taken off.

Sometimes, however, the skin being drawn altogether from the one side, renders the part which it has left deformed. In such a place, an incision must



modi loci altera pars incidenda, altera intacta habenda est. Ergo neque ex imis auribus, neque ex medio naso imisve narium partibus, neque ex angulis labrorum quidquam attrahere tentabimus. Utrunque autem petemus, si quid summis auribus, siquid imis, si quid aut medio naso, aut mediis naribus, aut mediis labris deerit. Quæ tamen interdum etiam duobus locis curta esse consuerunt: sed eadem ratio curandi est.

Si cartilago in eo, quod incisum est, eminet, excidenda est: neque enim aut glutinatur, aut acu tuto trajicitur. Neque longe tamen excidi debet, ne inter duas oras liberæ cutis utrimque coitus puris fieri possit. Tum junctæ oræ inter se suendæ sunt, utrimque cute apprehensa; et qua priores lineæ sunt, ea quoque suturæ injiciendæ sunt. Siccis locis, uti naribus, illita spuma argenti, satis proficit.

In superiores vero, lunatasque plagas, linamentum dandum est; ut caro

## ORDO.

mem. Alter apars loci hujusmodi est incidenda, altera habenda intacta. Ergo tentabimus attrahere neque quidquam ex imis auribus, neque ex medio naso, ve imis partibus narium, neque ex angulis labrorum. Autem petemus utrimque, si quid deerit imis, si quid aut medio naso, aut mediis naribus, aut mediis labris. Quæ tamen interdum consuerunt esse curta etiam duobus locis: sed ratio curandi est eadem.

Si cartilago eminet in eo quod incisum est, est excidenda; enim neque aut glutinatur, aut trajicitur acu tuto. Tamen neque debet excidi longe, ne coitus puris possit fieri utrimque inter duas oras liberæ cutis. Tum oræ junctæ inter se sunt suendæ; cute apprehensa utrimque; et qua priores lineæ sunt, ea quoque suturæ sunt injiciendæ. Siccis locis, uti naribus, spuma argenti illita, proficit satis.

Vero linamentum est dandum in superiores que lunatas plagas,

## TRANSLATION.

be made only on one side, and the other kept untouched. Therefore we should not attempt to draw any part, either from the lower part of the ears, or the middle of the nose, or the inferior part of the nostrils, or from the angles of the lips. But we may take from each side, when there is any defect in the upper part of the ear, or the lower part of the middle of the nostrils, or the centre of the lips; which however are sometimes mutilated in two places; but the plan of restoration is the same.

If the cartilage protrude in the part where the incision is made, it must be pared off; for it neither admits of union, nor is it to be pierced by the needle with safety. Yet it ought not to be cut too far neither, lest a collection of pus take place on each side, between the edges of the loose skin. Then the edges of the wound being brought in apposition, are to be sewed together, the skin being taken up on both sides; and where the above-mentioned lines are, there also must the sutures be employed. It will be sufficient to apply a liniment composed of litharge, to dry parts, such as the nostrils.

But lint is to be put into the superior lunated incisions, that flesh may be pro-

increscens vulnus impleat. Summaque cura, quod ita sutum est, tuendum esse, apparere ex eo potest, quod de cancro supra posui. Ergo etiam tertio quoque die fovendum erit vapore aquæ calidæ; rursusque idem medicamentum injiciendum: fereque septimo die glutinatum est. Tum suturæ eximi, et ulcus ad sanitatem perducitur debet.

## ORDO.

ut caro increscens impleat vulnus. Que quod sutum est ita, esse tuendum summa cura, potest apparere ex eo quod posui supra de cancro. Ergo etiam quoque tertio die erit fovendum vapore calidæ aquæ; que rursus idem medicamentum injiciendum: que fere est glutinatum septimo die. Tum suturæ eximi, et ulcus debet perducitur ad sanitatem.

## TRANSLATION.

moted to fill up the wound. Now that which has been sewed, must be watched with the greatest care, as may appear from what I have stated above concerning gangrene. Therefore every third day it must be fomented with the steam of hot water, and the same medicine applied again; and generally on the seventh day union takes place. Then the sutures ought to be withdrawn, and the ulcer healed up.

## CAP. X.

## ORDO.

## DE POLYPI CURATIONE.

## CAP. X.

## DE CURATIONE POLYPI.

POLYPUM vero, qui in naribus nascitur, ferro præcipue curari jam alias posui. Ergo etiam hunc ferramento acuto, in modum spathæ facto, resolvere ab osse oportet: adhibita dili-

Vero posui jam alias polypum, qui nascitur in naribus, præcipue curari ferro. Ergo oportet resolvere hunc etiam ab osse acuto ferramento, facto in modum spathæ: diligentia adhibita, ne car-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

## THE TREATMENT OF POLYPI.

I HAVE previously stated elsewhere, that the principal remedy for a polypus growing in the nose is the knife. Therefore it will be necessary to detach it from the bone with a sharp iron instrument made in the form of a spatula; care being taken not

gentia, ne infra cartilago lædatur; in qua difficilis curatio est. Ubi abscissus est, unco ferramento extrahendus est. Tum implicitum linamentum, vel aliquid ex penicillo respergendum est medicamento, quo sanguis supprimitur, eoque naris leviter implenda. Sanguine suppresso, linamento ulcus purgandum est. Ubi purum est, eo pinna, eodem modo, quo in aure supra positum est, medicamento illita, quo cicatrix inducitur, intus demittenda, donec ex toto id sanescat.

## ORDO.

tilago infra lædatur; in qua curatio est difficilis. Ubi abscissus est, est extrahendus unco ferramento. Tum implicitum linamentum, vel aliquid ex penicillo, est respergendum medicamento, quo sanguis supprimitur, que naris implenda leviter eo. Sanguine suppresso, ulcus est purgandum linamento. Ubi est purum, pinna illita medicamento, quo cicatrix inducitur, demittenda intus eo, eodem modo quo positum est supra in aure, donec id sanescat ex toto.

## TRANSLATION.

to injure the cartilage below, which is difficult to cure. When it is detached, it must be extracted with an iron hook. Then a piece of lint twisted, or something in the shape of a compress, is to be sprinkled with a styptic liquid, and with this the nostrils are to be gently plugged. The hæmorrhage being arrested, the ulcer must be deterged with lint. When it is clean, a tent, anointed with a cicatrizing medicine, must be introduced in the same manner as was prescribed in the ear, until it becomes entirely healed.

## CAP. XI.

## DE OZÆNA ET EJUS CURATIONE.

Id autem vitium, quod ὀζαῖνα a Græcis vocatur, si medicamentis non cederet, quemadmodum manu curandum esset, apud magnos Chirurgos non reperi: credo, quia res raro ad sani-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XI.

## DE OZÆNA, ET CURATIONE EJUS.

AUTEM quemadmodum, id vitium quod vocatur a Græcis ὀζαῖνα (ozæna), esset curandum manu, si cederet non medicamentis, reperi non apud magnos chirurgos: credo, quia res raro proficit satis ad

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XI.

## THE TREATMENT OF OZÆNA.

I HAVE not been able to discover in the works of eminent surgeons the mode of curing that disease, which by the Greeks is termed OZÆNA, by an operation, when it does not yield to the application of medicines; I suppose, because



tatem satis proficit, cum aliquod in ipsa curatione tormentum habeat. Apud quosdam tamen positum est, vel subtilem fistulam, vel enodem scriptorium calamum in narem esse conjiciendum, donec sursum ad os perveniat: tum per id tenue ferramentum candens dandum esse ad ipsum os: deinde adustum locum purgandum esse ærugine et melle: ubi purus est, lycio ad sanitatem perducendum. Vel narem incidendam esse ab ima parte ad os, ut et conspici locus possit, et facilius candens ferramentum admoveri. Tum sui narem debere; et adustum quidem ulcus eadem ratione curari: suturam vero illini vel spuma argenti, vel alio glutinante.

## ORDO.

sanitatem, cum habeat aliquod tormentum in curatione ipsa. Tamen positum est apud quosdam, vel subtilem fistulam, vel scriptorium calamum enodem esse conjiciendum in narem, donec perveniat sursum ad os: tum tenue candens ferramentum esse dandum per id ad os ipsum: deinde adustum locum esse purgandum ærugine et melle: ubi est purus, perducendum ad sanitatem lycio. Vel narem esse incidendam ab ima parte ad os, ut et locus possit conspici, et candens ferramentum admoveri facilius. Tum narem debere sui; et adustum ulcus curari quidem eadem ratione: vero suturam illini vel spuma argenti, vel alio glutinante.

## TRANSLATION.

the operation rarely effects a cure, and is nevertheless excessively painful in itself. However, some have directed either a small canula to be introduced, or a writing-reed into the nostril, till it reach the bone; then through this to pass a small hot iron to the bone itself: afterwards to cleanse the cauterized part with verdigris and honey: when clean, it is to be healed up with lycium. Or the nostril to be slit up from its lower extremity to the bone, so that the part may be seen better, and the iron instrument more easily applied. Then the nostril ought to be sewed, and the cauterized part treated just in the same way as the other; but litharge, or some agglutinating application, should be applied to the sutures.

## CAP. XII.

DE ORIS VITIIS, QUÆ MANU ET FERRO  
CURANTUR.

1. IN ore quoque quædam manu curantur. Ubi in primis dentes nonnunquam moventur, modo propter radicum imbecillitatem, modo propter gingivarum arescentium vitium. Oportet in utrolibet candens ferramentum gingivis admovere, ut attingat leviter, non insidat. Adustæ gingivæ melle illinendæ, et mulso eluendæ sunt. Ut pura ulcera esse cœperunt, arida medicamenta infrianda sunt ex iis, quæ reprimunt.

Si vero dens dolores movet, eximique eum, quia medicamenta nihil adjuvant, placuit, circumradi debet, ut gingiva ab eo resolvatur; tum is concutiendus est: eaque facienda, donec bene moveatur: nam dens hærens cum summo periculo evellitur, ac nonnumquam maxilla loco movetur.

ORDO.

## CAP. XII.

DE VITIIS ORIS, QUÆ CURANTUR  
MANU ET FERRO.

1. QUOQUE quædam in ore curantur manu. Ubi imprimis dentes nonnunquam moventur, modo propter imbecillitatem radicum, modo propter vitium gingivarum arescentium. In utrolibet oportet admovere candens ferramentum gingivis, ut attingat leviter, non insidat. Adustæ gingivæ sunt illinendæ melle, et eluendæ mulso. Ut ulcera cœperunt esse pura, arida medicamenta ex iis quæ reprimunt sunt infrianda.

Vero si dens movet dolores, quæ placuit enim eximi, quia medicamenta adjuvant nihil, debet circumradi, ut gingiva resolvatur ab eo; tum is est concutiendus: quæ ea facienda, donec moveatur bene: nam dens hærens evellitur cum summo periculo, ac nonnunquam maxilla movetur loco. Quæ

TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XII.

THE OPERATIONS REQUISITE FOR DISEASES OF THE MOUTH.

1. THERE are certain complaints in the mouth also cured by manual operation. In the first place, the teeth are liable to become loose, either by a debility of their fangs, or from a decay of the gums. In either case, it will be proper to apply a hot iron to the gums, that it may touch them lightly, but not to make a forcible impression. The cauterized gums are then to be anointed with honey, and washed out with hydromel. When the ulcers begin to appear clean, some dry astringents are to be sprinkled on them.

But if a tooth excite pain, and the patient be willing to have it extracted, because he has experienced no relief from *local* applications, it ought to be freed all round, in order to detach it from the gum: then it is to be moved, and that too, repeatedly, until it become thoroughly loosened; for the extraction of a fast tooth is attended with the greatest danger, and sometimes the jaw is dislocated.

Idque etiam majore periculo in superioribus dentibus fit; quia potest tempora oculosve concutere. Tum, si fieri potest, manu; si minus, forcice dens excipiendus est.

Ac si exesus est, ante id foramen vel linamento, vel bene accommodato plumbo replendum est, ne sub forcice confringatur. Recta vero forfex ducenda est, ne inflexis radicibus os rarum, cui dens inhæret, parte aliqua frangatur. Neque ideo nullum ejus rei periculum est; utique in dentibus brevibus, qui fere longiores radices habent: sæpe enim forfex, cum dentem comprehendere non possit, aut frustra comprehendat, os gingivæ prehendit et frangit.

Protinus autem, ubi plus sanguinis profluit, scire licet, aliquid ex osse fractum esse. Ergo specillo conquirenda est testa, quæ recessit, et vulsella protrahenda est: si non sequitur, incidi gingiva debet, donec labans testæ ossis recipiatur. Quod si factum statim non est, indurescit extrinsecus maxilla, ut is hiare non possit. Sed imponendum calidum ex farina et fico

## ORDO.

id fit etiam majore periculo in superioribus dentibus; quia potest concutere tempora ve oculos. Tum est excipiendus manu, si potest fieri; si minus, forcice.

Ac si exesus est, id foramen est replendum ante vel linamento, vel plumbo bene accommodato, ne confringatur sub forcice. Vero forfex est ducenda recta, ne radicibus inflexis rarum os, cui dens inhæret frangatur aliqua parte. Neque ideo est nullum periculum ejus rei; utique in brevibus dentibus, qui fere habent longiores radices: enim sæpe forfex, cum non possit comprehendere dentem, aut comprehendat frustra, prehendit et frangit os gingivæ.

Antem protinus, ubi plus sanguinis profluit, licet scire, aliquid ex osse esse fractum. Ergo testa, quæ recessit, est conquirenda specillo, et est protrahenda vulsella: si non sequitur, gingiva debet incidi, donec labans testæ ossis recipiatur. Quod si factum non est statim, maxilla indurescit extrinsecus, ut is non possit hiare. Sed calidum cataplasma ex farina et fico est imponendum,

## TRANSLATION.

There is even more danger in the superior maxillary, because it may communicate a shock to the temples or eyes. Then the tooth is to be taken out by the hand if possible, or at all events by the forceps.

But if the tooth be carious, the cavity must be previously filled up, either with lint or lead well adapted to it, lest it break under the forceps. Now the forceps must be drawn perpendicularly, lest the thin bone, *the alveoli*, to which the bent fangs adhere, be broken in any part. Neither is this without danger, especially in short teeth, which generally have very long roots; for it frequently happens, that where the forceps cannot lay hold of the tooth, or does it unsuccessfully, it seizes on the jaw-bone, and fractures it.

We may soon discover, when there is a large effusion of blood, that some portion of the bone is fractured. Therefore the detached splinter must be searched for by a probe, and taken out with a small pincers; if it does not come away, the gum must be incised until the shattered fragment of bone be removed. But if this be not done immediately, the jaw becomes hardened externally, so that *the patient* cannot open his mouth. Then a warm poultice made of meal and



cataplasma est, donec ibi pus moveatur: tum incidi gingiva debet. Pus quoque multum profluens, ossis fracti nota est. Itaque etiam tum id extrahi convenit. Nonnumquam etiam, eo læso, fistula fit, quæ eradi debet.

Dens autem scaber, qua parte niger est, radendus est, illinendusque rosæ flore contrito, cui gallæ quarta pars et altera myrrhæ sit adjecta: continendumque ore crebro vinum meracum. Atque in eo casu velandum caput, ambulatione multa, frictione capitis, cibo non acri utendum est.

At si ex ictu vel alio casu aliqui labant dentes, auro cum iis, qui bene hærent, vinciendi sunt; continendaque ore reprimentia; ut vinum, in quo malicorium decoctum, aut in quod galla candens coniecta sit. Si quando etiam in pueris ante alter dens nascitur, quam prior excidat, is, qui cadere debuit, circumpurgandus et evellendus est; is, qui natus est, in locum prioris quotidie digito adurgendus, donec ad justam magnitudinem perveniat. Quotiescumque dente exempto radix relicta est, protinus ea

## ORDO.

donec pus moveatur ibi: tum gingiva debet incidi. Quoque pus profluens multum est nota ossis fracti. Itaque etiam tum convenit id extrahi. Nonnumquam etiam, eo læso, fistula fit, quæ debet eradi.

Autem scaber dens est radendus qua parte est niger, que illinendus contrito flore rosæ, cui quarta pars gallæ et altera myrrhæ sit adjecta: que meracum vinum continendum crebro ore. Atque in eo casu caput velandum, est utendum multa ambulatione, frictione capitis, non acri cibo.

At si aliqui dentes labant ex ictu, vel alio casu, sunt vinciendi auro cum iis, qui hærent bene; que reprimentia continenda ore, ut vinum in quo malicorium decoctum sit, aut in quod candens galla coniecta (sit). Si quando etiam alter dens nascitur in pueris ante quam prior excidat, is qui debuit cadere est circumpurgandus, et evellendus: is qui natus est, adurgendus quotidie digito in locum prioris, donec perveniat ad justam magnitudinem. Quotiescumque dente exempto radix relicta est, protinus ea quo-

## TRANSLATION.

figs is to be applied, until matter be promoted there: and the gum should be lanced. A copious flow of pus is also a sign of a fractured bone. Therefore, even in this case, it is proper to extract the splinter. Sometimes also, when there is a lesion of the bone, a fistula is formed, which requires to be erased.

Now a furred tooth should be scraped where it is black, and rubbed with bruised rose-petals, to which a fourth part of nut-gall, and another of myrrh have been added; and pure wine frequently retained in the mouth. In this case the head must be covered, the patient must walk much, apply friction to the head, and avoid acrid food.

But if any of the teeth be loose from a blow, or any other accident, they must be fastened with gold to those that are firm; and astringents are to be held in the mouth; such as wine, in which pomegranate bark has been boiled, or, in which hot nut-galls have been infused. If a second tooth should happen to grow in children, before the first has fallen out, that which ought to be shed is to be drawn out, and the new one daily pushed toward its place by means of the finger, until it arrive at its just proportion. Whenever a tooth has been extracted, and

quoque ad id facta forfice, quam *ρίζά-  
γρην* Græci vocant, eximenda est.

2. Tonsillas autem, quæ post inflammationes induruerunt, *αντιάδες* autem a Græcis appellantur, cum sub levi tunica sint, oportet digito circumradere et evellere: si ne sic quidem resolvuntur, hamulo excipere, et scalpello excidere: tum ulcus aceto eluere, et illinere vulnus medicamento, quo sanguis suppressitur.

3. Uva, si cum inflammatione descendit, dolorique est, et rubicundi coloris, præcidi sine periculo non potest: solet enim multum sanguinem effundere: itaque melius est iis uti, quæ alias proposita sunt. Si vero inflammatio quidem nulla est, nihilominus autem ea ultra justum modum a pituita deducta est, et tenuis, acuta, alba est, præcidi debet: itemque, si ima, livida et crassa; summa, tenuis est.

Neque quidquam commodius est, quam vulsellaprehendere, sub eaque, quod volumus, excidere. Neque enim ullum periculum est, ne plus minusve

#### ORDO.

que est eximenda forfice facta ad id, quam Græci vocant *ρίζά-  
γρην* (rizagran).

2. Autem oportet circumradere digito et evellere tonsillas quæ induruerunt post inflammationes, autem appellantur a Græcis *αντιάδες* (antiadēs), cum sint sub levi tunica: si resolvuntur ne quidem sic, excipere hamulo, et excidere scalpello: tum eluere ulcus aceto, et illinere vulnus medicamento quo sanguis suppressitur.

3. Uva, si descendit cum inflammatione, que est dolori, et rubicundi coloris, non potest præcidi sine periculo: enim solet effundere multum sanguinem: itaque est melius uti iis quæ proposita sunt alias. Vero si quidem est nulla inflammatio, autem nihilominus ea deducta est a pituita ultra justum modum, et est tenuis, acuta, alba, debet præcidi: que item, si ima livida et crassa; summa est tenuis.

Neque est quidquam commodius quamprehendere vulsella, que excidere sub ea quod volumus. Enim neque est ullum periculum, ne plus ve minus præ-

#### TRANSLATION.

the fang still remains, that also must be taken out by a forceps made for the purpose, which the Greeks call Rizagra.

2. The tonsil glands having become indurated after inflammations, which the Greeks term Antiades, and covered by a slight tunic, they ought to be disengaged all round by the finger, and removed; if they are not separated by this method, it will be necessary to take them up with a blunt hook, and separate them with the scalpel; then to wash the ulcer with vinegar, and anoint the wound with a styptic application.

3. If the uvula descend, accompanied with inflammation, pain, and redness, it cannot be excised without danger; for it is likely to discharge a large quantity of blood: therefore it is better to employ such medicines as I have mentioned elsewhere. But if there be no inflammation, and yet nevertheless, it is considerably elongated by being gorged with humour, and is pointed, acute, and white, a portion of it ought to be excised; and also if the extremity of it be livid and gorged, and the superior part small.

There is, indeed, no better method than to seize it with a small pincers, or forceps, and under that, to remove what we wish: for there is no danger that

præcidatur: cum liceat tantum infra vulsellam relinquere, quantum inutile esse manifestum est; idque præcidere, quo longior uva est, quam esse naturaliter debet. Post curationem eadem facienda sunt, quæ in tonsillis proxime posui.

4. Lingua vero quibusdam cum subjecta parte a primo natali die juncta est; qui ob id ne loqui quidem possunt. Horum extrema lingua vulsellaprehendenda est; sub eaque membrana incidenda: magna cura habita, ne venæ, quæ juxta sunt, violentur, et profusione sanguinis noceant. Reliqua curatio vulneris in prioribus posita est.

Et plerique quidem, ubi consanuerunt, loquuntur. Ego autem cognovi, qui, succisa lingua, cum abunde super dentes eam promeret, non tamen loquendi facultatem consecutus est. Adeo in medicina, etiam ubi perpetuum est, quod fieri debet, non tamen perpetuum est id, quod sequi convenit.

## ORDO.

cidatur: cum liceat relinquere tantum infra vulsellam, quantum est manifestum esse inutile: que præcidere id quo uva est longior quam debet esse naturaliter. Post curationem eadem sunt facienda, quæ posui proxime in tonsillis.

4. Vero lingua quibusdam junctæ est cum parte subjecta a primo natali die; qui ob id possunt ne quidem loqui. Extrema lingua horum estprehendenda vulsella, que membrana sub ea incidenda, magna cura habita, ne venæ quæ sunt juxta violentur, et noceant profusione sanguinis. Reliqua curatio vulneris posita est in prioribus.

Et plerique quidem loquuntur, ubi consanuerunt. Autem ego cognovi, qui, lingua succisa, cum promeret eam abunde super dentes, tamen consecutus non est facultatem loquendi. Adeo in medicina, etiam ubi est perpetuum, quod debet fieri, tamen id quod convenit sequi non est perpetuum.

## TRANSLATION.

either too much or too little be cut off; as we have it in our power to leave no more below the forceps, than appears useless, and to cut off so much as shall reduce the uvula to its natural magnitude. After the operation, the same applications will be proper, which were prescribed above for the tonsils.

4. In some persons, even from their birth, the tongue is not unfrequently bound down to the part below it; and they are, for this reason, deprived of the faculty of speech. The extremity of the tongue of such persons must be taken hold of by a pincers, and the membrane underneath termed *frænum linguæ*, is to be divided; great care being taken lest the contiguous veins be wounded, and a dangerous effusion of blood produced. The remaining treatment of the wound is already described in the former cases.

Indeed most persons speak after the operation. But I have known an instance where, after the membrane had been divided, although the person could extend it far enough beyond his teeth, yet he did not acquire the faculty of speech. Yet this is too often the case in the practice of medicine; that that which ought to be held as an unchangeable principle, is not always to be followed with success.



5. Sub lingua quoque interdum aliquid abscedit; quod fere consistit in tunica, doloresque magnos movet. Quod, si exiguum est, incidi semel satis est: si majus, summa cutis usque ad tunicam excidenda est, deinde utrimque oræ hamulis excipiendæ, et tunica, undique circumdata, liberanda est: magna diligentia per hanc curationem habita, ne qua major vena incidatur.

6. Labra autem sæpe finduntur; eaque res habet cum dolore etiam hanc molestiam, quod sermo prohibetur; qui subinde eas rimas cum dolore diducendo sanguinem citat. Sed has, si in summo sunt, medicamentis curare commodius est, quæ ad ulcera oris fiunt: si vero altius descenderunt, necessarium est tenui ferramento adurere, quod spathæ simile, quasi transcurrere, non imprimi debet. Postea facienda eadem sunt, quæ in auribus adustis exposita sunt.

## ORDO.

5. Quoque interdum aliquid abscedit sub lingua: quod fere consistit in tunica, que movet magnos dolores. Quod, si est exiguum, est satis incidi semel: si majus, summa cutis usque ad tunicam est excidenda, deinde oræ excipiendæ utrinque hamulis, et tunica, undique circumdata, est liberanda: magna diligentia habita per omnem curationem, ne qua major vena incidatur.

6. Autem labra sæpe finduntur; que ea res habet cum dolore etiam hanc molestiam, quod sermo prohibetur; qui subinde diducendo eas rimas cum dolore citat sanguinem. Sed est commodius curare has medicamentis quæ fiunt ad ulcera oris, si sunt in summo: si vero descenderunt altius, est necessarium adurere tenui ferramento, quod simile spathæ, debet quasi transcurrere, non imprimi. Postea eadem sunt facienda quæ exposita sunt in auribus adustis.

## TRANSLATION.

5. Sometimes an abscess will form under the tongue; which is generally encysted, and extremely painful. If this be small, it will be sufficient to make one incision into it; if large, the surface of the skin must be removed close to the tunic; afterwards, the edges are to be taken up all round with small tenaculums, and the membrane freed from its attachments on each side: great care being taken during this operation, that no large vein be wounded.

6. The lips are frequently fissured: and this affection, independent of the pain, is attended with this inconvenience, that speech is impeded: and by that motion the fissures are opened, accompanied with pain, and a discharge of blood. If they be superficial, the best plan will be, to treat them with those medicines which are prescribed for ulcers of the mouth: but if they have penetrated deeply, it will be necessary to cauterize them with a thin iron instrument, made in the form of a spatula; this ought to glide over them as it were, without pressure. Afterwards the same treatment is to be employed, as that which I have laid down in cauterized ulcers of the ears.

## CAP. XIII.

DE CERVICIS VITIIS, ET CURATIONE  
EORUM.

AT in cervice, inter cutem et asperam arteriam, tumor increscit (*βρογχοκήλην* Græci vocant) quo, modo caro hebes, modo humor aliquis, melli aquæve similis, includitur; interdum etiam minutis ossibus pili immisti. Ex quibus quidquid est, tunica continetur, potest autem adurentibus medicamentis curari: quibus summa cutis cum subjecta tunica exeditur. Quo facto, sive humor est, profluit; sive quid densius, educitur digitis: tum ulcus sub linamentis sanescit.

Sed scalpelli curatio brevior est. Medio tumore una linea inciditur usque ad tunicam: deinde vitiosus sinus ab integro corpore digito separatur, totusque cum velamento suo

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIII.

## DE VITIIS CERVICIS, ET CURATIONE EORUM.

AT in cervice, inter cutem et asperam arteriam, tumor increscit (Græci vocant *βρογχοκήλην*, bronchocèle,) quo, modo hebes caro, modo aliquis humor similis melli ve aquæ, includitur; interdum etiam pili immisti minutis ossibus. Ex quibus quidquid est, continetur tunica, autem potest curari adurentibus medicamentis: quibus summa cutis cum subjecta tunica exeditur. Quo facto, sive est humor, profluit; sive quid densius, educitur digitis: tum ulcus sanescit sub linamentis.

Sed curatio scalpelli est brevior. Medio tumore una linea inciditur usque ad tunicam: deinde vitiosus sinus separatur ab integro corpore digito, que totus eximitur cum suo velamento: tum

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIII.

## THE DISEASES OF THE NECK, AND THEIR TREATMENT.

Now in the neck, between the integument and trachea, a tumour forms, which the Greeks term Bronchocele, consisting at times of an insensible mass of flesh, at other times containing a humour resembling honey, or water, and occasionally hairs mixed with small bones. Whatever that be which is contained in the cyst, it may be cured by caustic applications; which destroy the surface of the skin, and the tunic below it. Which being done, it will escape, if fluid; but if more dense, it must be drawn out with the fingers: then the ulcer is to be dressed with lint.

But the knife effects the most expeditious cure. A longitudinal incision is to be made in the middle of the tumour down to the cyst; afterwards the diseased structure is to be separated from the sound by the finger, and the whole removed

eximitur; tum aceto, cui vel salem vel nitrum aliquis adjecit, eluitur; oræque una sutura junguntur; ceteraque eadem, quæ in aliis suturis, superinjiciuntur: leniter deinde, ne fauces urgeat, deligatur. Si quando autem tunica eximi non potuerit, intus inspergenda adurentia, linamentisque id curandum est, et ceteris pus moventibus.

## ORDO.

eluitur aceto, cui aliquis adjecit vel salem vel nitrum; que oræ junguntur una sutura, que eadem cetera superinjiciuntur, quæ in aliis suturis: deinde deligatur leniter, ne urgeat fauces. Autem si quando tunica non potuerit eximi, adurentia inspergenda intus, que id est curandum linamentis, et ceteris moventibus pus.

## TRANSLATION.

with its covering; then washed with vinegar, to which either salt or nitre has been added, and the edges approximated by one suture; the same dressings are to be applied as in other sutures; afterwards it is to be bandaged up loosely, lest it press on the fauces. In the event of its being impracticable to remove the cyst, caustic applications are to be sprinkled into it, and it is to be dressed with lint, and such medicaments as will promote suppuration.

## CAP. XIV.

## ORDO.

## DE UMBILICI VITIIS ET CURATIONE EORUM.

## CAP. XIV.

## DE VITIIS UMBILICI, ET CURATIONE EORUM.

SUNT etiam circa umbilicum plura vitia; de quibus, propter raritatem, inter auctores parum constat. Verisimile est autem, id a quoque prætermissum, quod ipse non cognoverat: a nullo id, quod non viderat, fictum.

ETIAM sunt plura vitia circa umbilicum; de quibus, propter raritatem, constat parum inter auctores. Autem est verisimile, id prætermissum (esse) a quoque, quod ipse non cognoverat: id fictum (esse) a nullo, quod non viderat.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIV.

## ON DISEASES OF THE NAVEL AND THEIR TREATMENT.

THERE are several diseases about the umbilicus, concerning which, on account of their rarity, authors are not agreed. But it is very probable that each one omitted what he had not met with in his own experience; and that none de-



Commune omnibus est, umbilicum indecore prominere : causæ requiruntur. Meges tres has posuit : modo intestinum eo irrumperere, modo omentum, modo humorem. Sostratus nihil de omento dixit : duobus iisdem adjecit, carnem ibi interdum increescere ; eamque modo integram esse, modo carcinomati similem. Gorgias ipse quoque omenti mentionem omisit : sed eadem tria causatus, spiritum quoque interdum eo dixit irrumperere. Heron, omnibus his quatuor positus, et omenti mentionem habuit, et ejus, quod simul et omentum et intestinum habuerit.

Quid autem horum sit, his indiciiis cognoscitur. Ubi intestinum prolapsum est, tumor neque durus, neque mollis est ; omni frigore minuitur ; non solum sub omni calore, sed etiam retento spiritu crescit ; sonat interdum ; atque, ubi resupinatus est aliquis, delapso intestino, ipse desidit. Ubi vero omentum est, cetera similia sunt ; tumor mollior, et ab ima parte latus, extenuatus in verticem est ; si quis apprehendit, elabitur. Ubi

## ORDO.

rat. Est commune omnibus, (his vitiis,) umbilicum prominere indecore : causæ requiruntur. Meges posuit has tres : modo intestinum irrumperere eo, modo omentum, modo humorem. Sostratus dixit nihil de omento : adjecit duobus iisdem, carnem interdum increescere ibi ; que eam modo esse integram, modo similem carcinomati. Gorgias ipse quoque omisit mentionem omenti : sed causatus eadem tria, quoque dixit spiritum irrumperere eo. Heron, omnibus his quatuor positus, et habuit mentionem omenti, et ejus quod habuerit simul et omentum et intestinum.

Antem quid horum sit, cognoscitur his indiciiis. Ubi intestinum prolapsum est, tumor est neque durus neque mollis ; minuitur omni frigore ; crescit non solum sub omni calore, sed etiam spiritu retento ; interdum sonat ; atque, ubi aliquis est resupinatus, intestino delapso, ipse desidit. Vero ubi est omentum, cetera sunt similia, tumor est mollior, et latus ab ima parte, extenuatus in verticem ; si quis apprehendit, elabitur. Ubi est utrumque, in-

## TRANSLATION.

scribed a disease which he had not seen. An unseemly prominence of the navel is common to them all : the causes of these are required. Meges has assigned three : sometimes the intestine protrudes into that part, sometimes the omentum, at other times a fluid. Sostratus has said nothing about the omentum. To the two above mentioned, he has added, that a fleshy *excrescence* grows there, which is sometimes sound, at other times resembling carcinoma. Gorgias also has omitted the omentum : but having admitted the other three, says, that air also forces its way to this part. Heron not only admits these four, but has also mentioned the omentum, and that species which contains both omentum and intestine.

Now, of which species these may be, the diagnosis can be formed from the following symptoms. When the intestine is protruded, the tumour is neither hard nor soft ; it is diminished by cold ; it increases not only by heat, but even by retaining the breath ; sometimes it sounds, and where a person lies on his back, the intestine glides downwards, and the tumour itself subsides. But when it is the omentum, the other symptoms are similar, the tumour is softer, broad at the base, and tapering towards the summit ; if any person take hold of it, it slips

utrumque est, indicia quoque mista sunt, et inter utrumque mollities.

At caro durior est, semperque etiam resupinato corpore tumet, prementique non cedit, prioribus facile cedentibus. Si vitiosa est, easdem notas habet, quas in carcinomate exposui. Humor autem, si premitur, circumfluit. At spiritus pressus cedit, sed protinus redit: resupinato quoque corpore tumorem in eadem figura tenet.

Ex his id, quod ex spiritu vitium est, medicinam non admittit. Caro quoque, carcinomati similis, cum periculo tractatur: itaque omittenda est. Sana excidi debet; idque vulnus linamentis curari. Humorem quidam vel inciso summo tumore effundunt, et vulnus iisdem linamentis curant. In reliquis variæ sententiæ sunt. Ac resupinandum quidem corpus esse, res ipsa testatur; ut in uterum, sive intestinum, sive omentum est, delabatur.

Sinus vero umbilici, tum vacuus, a quibusdam duabus regulis exceptus

#### ORDO.

dicia quoque sunt mista, et mollities inter utrumque.

At caro est durior, que etiam semper tumet corpore resupinato, que non cedit prementi, prioribus facile cedentibus. Si est vitiosa, habet easdem notas quas exposui in carcinomate. Autem humor, si premitur, circumfluit. At spiritus pressus cedit, sed protinus redit: quoque corpore resupinato, tenet tumorem, in eadem figura.

Ex his, id vitium quod est ex spiritu admittit non medicinam. Quoque caro similis carcinomati tractatur cum periculo: itaque est omittenda. Sana debet excidi; que id vulnus curari linamentis. Quidam effundunt humorem, summo tumore inciso, et curant vulnus iisdem linamentis. In reliquis, sententiæ sunt variæ. Ac quidem res ipsa testatur, corpus esse resupinandum; ut sive est intestinum, sive omentum, delabatur in uterum.

Vero sinus umbilici, tum vacuus, est exceptus a quibusdam

#### TRANSLATION.

away. When both are present, the symptoms are also complicated, and the degree of softness is intermediate.

Now a fleshy *protrusion* is hard, and always maintains a tumefaction, even although the patient lies supine, nor does it yield to pressure, whereas the former easily does. If the tumour be diseased, it will have the same symptoms which I described in cancer. When a fluid is contained, it is known by its fluctuation under pressure. Air yields to pressure, but soon regains its former figure, although the body be in a supine posture.

Of all these tumours, that which proceeds from air is incurable. It is also dangerous to meddle with the fleshy species resembling cancer; therefore it must be let alone. Where it is sound, it ought to be excised, and the wound dressed with lint. Some surgeons discharge the humour by making an incision on the top of the tumour, and dress the wound in the same way with lint. With respect to the others, the opinions of authors are various. However, it is evident that the body must be laid in a supine posture; so, that whether it be intestine or omentum, it may glide into the abdomen.

The cavity of the navel being now empty, some surgeons embrace it between

est, vehementerque earum capitibus deligatis, ibi emoritur: a quibusdam, ad imum acu trajecta, duo lina ducente, deinde utriusque lini duobus capitibus diversæ partes adstrictæ; quod in uva quoque oculi fit: nam sic id, quod supra vinculum est, moritur. Adjecerunt quidam, ut, antequam vincirent, summum una linea inciderent; quo facilius digito demisso, quod illuc irrupisset, depellerent: tum deinde vinxerunt.

Sed abunde est, jubere spiritum continere, ut tumor, quantus maximus esse potest, se ostendat: tum imam basim ejus atramento notare; resupinatoque homine, digitis tumorem eum premere, ut, si quid delapsum non est, manu cogatur: post hæc, umbilicum adtrahere, et, qua nota atramenti est, lino vehementer adstringere: deinde partem superiorem aut medicamentis, aut ferro adurere, donec emoriatur: atque, ut cetera usta, ulcus nutrire. Idque non solum ubi intestinum, vel omentum, vel utrumque est; sed etiam, ubi humor

## ORDO.

duabus regulis, que capitibus earum deligatis vehementer, emoritur ibi: a quibusdam acu trajecta ad imum ducente duo lina, deinde partes adstrictæ diversæ duobus capitibus utriusque lini; quod quoque fit in uva oculi: nam sic id quod est supra vinculum, moritur. Quidam adjecerunt, ut, antequam vincirent, inciderent summum una linea; quo digito demisso facilius, depellerent, quod irrupisset illuc: tum deinde vinxerunt.

Sed est abunde jubere continere spiritum, ut tumor ostendat se quantus maximus potest esse: tum notare imam basim ejus atramento; que homine resupinato, premere eum tumorem digitis, ut, si quid delapsum est non, cogatur manu: post hæc, attrahere umbilicum, et qua nota atramenti est, adstringere vehementer lino: deinde adurere superiorem partem aut medicamentis aut ferro, donec emoriatur: atque nutrire ulcus ut cetera usta. Que id non solum ubi est intestinum, vel omentum, vel utrumque; sed etiam proficit optime ubi est humor.

## TRANSLATION.

two splints (5) the extremities of which being firmly tied together, produce a mortification of the part there: others transfix it at the base by a needle armed with a double thread: then the ends of these threads are to be drawn in different directions, and made fast to each other, as is done in Staphyloma of the eye, for by this means, that which is above the ligature is destroyed. Some have added, that before making fast the ligatures, they made a straight incision through the *hernial sac*, by which the finger being introduced more easily, reduced whatever might have protruded there: afterwards they tied the ligatures.

But it will be quite sufficient to cause the patient to retain his breath, that the tumour may acquire its utmost magnitude: then to mark its base with ink; and the patient being laid on his back, to press down the tumour with the fingers; so that if any portion of it be unreturned, it may be forced in by the hand: afterwards the parts are to be drawn up tight, and a ligature applied on the part marked by the ink line: then the part above the ligature is to be cauterized either with medicines or with the actual cautery, until it become mortified; and it is to be dressed like other burns. This method is very successful, not only when the intestine, or the omentum, or both are contained in it, but even when there is a fluid.



Sed ante quædam visenda sunt, ne quod ex vinculo periculum sit. Nam curationi neque infans, neque aut robustus annis, aut senex aptus est; sed a septimo fere anno ad quartumdecimum. Deinde ei corpus idoneum est id, quod integrum est: at quod mali habitus est, quodque papulas, impetigines, similiaque habet, idoneum non est. Levibus quoque tumoribus facile subvenitur: at in eorum, qui nimis magni sunt, curatione periculum est. Tempus autem anni et autumnale, et hiernum vitandum est: ver idoneum maxime est: ac prima æstas non aliena est. Præter hæc, abstinere pridie debet. Neque id satis est: sed alvus quoque ei ducenda est; quo facilius omnia quæ excesserunt, intra uterum considant.

## ORDO.

Sed quædam sunt visenda ante, ne sit quod periculum ex vinculo. Nam neque infans, neque aut robustus annis, aut senex est aptus curationi; sed fere a septimo anno ad quartum decimum. Deinde id corpus est idoneum ei quod est integrum: at quod est mali habitus, que quod habet papulas, impetigines, que similia, est non idoneum. Quoque subvenitur facile levibus tumoribus: at est periculum in curatione eorum qui sunt nimis magni. Autem et autumnale et hiernum tempus anni est vitandum: ver est maxime idoneum, ac prima æstas est non aliena. Præter hæc, debet abstinere pridie. Neque est id satis: sed alvus quoque est ducenda ei; quo omnia quæ excesserunt, considant facilius intra uterum.

## TRANSLATION.

But there are certain circumstances to be considered before proceeding to the operation, lest any danger arise from the ligature. For neither an infant, nor an adult, nor an old person, is a proper subject for the treatment: but generally, from the seventh to the fourteenth year. Then that body is fit for it which is in a sound state: but one who is in a bad state, and affected with papulæ, impetigines, and similar eruptions, is not a proper subject. Slight tumours are also easily removed: but there is danger in the treatment of those that are too large. Now the autumnal and winter seasons of the year must be avoided; spring is most suitable; and the beginning of summer is not improper. Besides these precautions, it is necessary that the patient should refrain from food the day previous. Nor is that sufficient: his bowels should be opened by a clyster, that all the protruded parts may the more easily subside within the abdomen.

## CAP. XV.

## QUOMODO AQUA HYDROPICIS EMITTATUR.

AQUAM iis, qui hydropici sunt, emitti oportere, alias dixi. Nunc, quemadmodum id fiat, dicendum est. Quidam autem sub umbilico, fere quatuor interpositis digitis a sinistra parte: quidam, ipso umbilico perforato, id facere consuerunt: quidam, cute primum adusta, deinde interiore abdomine inciso; quia, quod per ignem divisum est, minus celeriter coit.

Ferramentum autem demittitur magna cura habita, ne qua vena incidatur. Id tale esse debet, ut fere tertiam digiti partem latitudo mucronis impleat; demittendumque ita est, ut membranam quoque transeat, qua caro ab interiore parte finitur: eo tum plumbea aut ænea fistula conjicienda est, vel recurvatis in exteriori-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XV.

## QUOMODO AQUA EMITTATUR HYDROPICIS.

DIXI alias, oportere aquam emitti iis, qui sunt hydropici. Est nunc dicendum quemadmodum id fiat. Autem quidam consuerunt facere id sub umbilico, fere quatuor digitis interpositis a sinistra parte; quidam umbilico ipso perforato: quidam, cute primum adusta, deinde interiore abdomine inciso; quia, quod divisum est per ignem, coit minus celeriter.

Autem ferramentum demittitur magna cura habita, ne qua vena incidatur. Id debet esse tale, ut latitudo mucronis impleat fere tertiam partem digiti; que est ita demittendum, ut quoque transeat membranam, qua caro finitur ab interiore parte: tum plumbea aut ænea fistula est conjicienda eo, vel labris recurvatis in exteriorem

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XV.

## THE METHOD OF PERFORMING PARACENTESIS ABDOMINIS IN DROPSICAL PERSONS.

I HAVE already stated elsewhere, that it is necessary to draw off the water from dropsical persons. I must now describe the manner of doing it. Some have been accustomed to make *the puncture* under the umbilicus, generally about four fingers' breadth to the left: some have perforated the navel itself: some have cauterized the skin first: and afterwards made an incision through the integuments of the abdomen below; for this reason, that that which was divided by fire (*actual cautery*) united more slowly.

Now the instrument is to be introduced with great care, lest a vein (*artery*) be divided. It ought to be of such a form, that the breadth of its point should be about the third part of a finger's breadth: and it is to be passed through the membrane also, which bounds the interior part, *i. e. abdominal cavity*: then a leaden or brazen pipe is to be inserted into it, with its lips either curved out-

rem partem labris, vel in media circum-surgente quadam mora; ne tota intus delabi possit. Hujus ea pars, quæ intra, paulo longior esse debet, quam quæ extra; ut ultra interiorem membranam procedat. Per hanc effundendus humor est: atque ubi major pars ejus evocata est, claudenda demisso linteolo fistula est; et in vulnere, si id ustum non est, relinquenda. Deinde per insequentes dies circa singulas heminas emittendum, donec nullum aquæ vestigium appareat. Quidam tamen etiam non usta cute, protinus fistulam recipiunt, et super vulnus spongiam expressam deligant: deinde postero die rursus fistulam demittunt (quod recens vulnus paulum diductum patitur) ut, si quid humoris superest, emittatur: idque bis ita fecisse contenti sunt.

## ORDO.

partem, vel quadam mora circum-surgente in media; ne tota possit delabi intus. Ea pars hujus, quæ intra, debet esse paulo longior quam quæ extra; ut procedat ultra interiorem membranam. Per hanc humor est effundendus: atque ubi major pars ejus evocata est, fistula est claudenda linteolo demisso; et relinquenda in vulnere, si id non est ustum. Deinde per insequentes dies emittendum circa singulas heminas, donec nullum vestigium aquæ appareat. Tamen quidam, etiam cute non usta, protinus recipiunt fistulam, et deligant expressam spongiam super vulnus: deinde postero die demittunt rursus fistulam, (quod recens vulnus diductum paulum patitur) ut si quid humoris superest, emittatur; que sunt contenti fecisse id ita bis.

## TRANSLATION

ward, or surrounded with a ring about the centre, to prevent its slipping into the abdominal cavity. The portion to be introduced should be a little longer than that without, in order that it may pass beyond the inner membrane. By this the fluid is to be drawn off: and when the major part of it has been discharged, the canula is to be closed with a bit of linen: and this is to be left in the wound, if the opening had not been previously cauterized. Then on the subsequent days about a hemina should be drawn off each time, whilst any trace of water remains. Some even withdraw the canula, although the wound had not been previously cauterized, and bind a wet sponge over the wound: next day they introduce the pipe again, which the recent wound will permit, by being drawn a little apart; so that if any fluid remain, it may be discharged: they are satisfied when this is done twice.



## CAP. XVI.

DE INTESTINORUM VULNERATORUM  
CURATIONIBUS.

NONNUNQUAM autem venter ictu aliquo perforatur; sequiturque, ut intestina evolvantur. Quod ubi incidit, protinus considerandum est, an integra ea sint; deinde, an iis color suus maneat. Si tenuius intestinum perforatum est, nihil profici posse, jam retuli. Latius intestinum sui potest: non quod certa fiducia sit; sed quod dubia spes, certa desperatione sit potior: interdum enim glutinatur.

Tum, si utrumlibet intestinum lividum, aut pallidum, aut nigrum est, quibus illud quoque necessario accedit, ut sensu careat, medicina omnis inanis est. Si vero adhuc ea sui coloris sunt, cum magna festinatione succurrendum est: momento enim alienantur externo et insueto spiritu

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVI.

## DE CURATIONIBUS VULNERATORUM INTESTINORUM.

AUTEM nonnunquam venter perforatur aliquo ictu; que sequitur, ut intestina evolvantur. Ubi quod incidit, est protinus considerandum, an ea sint integra; deinde an suus color maneat iis. Si tenuius intestinum perforatum est, retuli jam, posse profici nihil. Latius intestinum potest sui: non quod sit certa fiducia; sed quod dubia spes sit potior (quam) certa desperatione: enim interdum glutinatur.

Tum, si utrumlibet intestinum est lividum, aut pallidum, aut nigrum, quibus illud quoque necessario accedit, ut careat sensu, omnis medicina est inanis. Vero si ea sunt adhuc sui coloris, est succurrendum cum magna festinatione: enim alienantur momento circumdata externo et insueto

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVI.

## OF WOUNDS OF THE INTESTINES AND THEIR TREATMENT.

SOMETIMES the abdomen is perforated by a wound, by which the intestines are permitted to escape. When this happens, it must first of all be considered, whether they be uninjured, and whether they have retained their natural colour. If the smaller intestine be wounded, I have already stated, that nothing can be done. The larger intestine may be sewed; not with a certain confidence of a cure, but because a doubtful hope is preferable to certain despair, for sometimes reunion is effected.

If, however, either of the intestines be livid, or pallid, or black, which symptoms are also necessarily attended with the loss of sensation, all remedies will be unavailing. But if they still retain their natural colour, we should not lose a moment in replacing them; for they are changed in an instant, when they are

circumdata. Resupinandus autem homo est, coxis erectioribus; et, si angustius vulnus est, quam ut intestina commode refundantur, incidendum est, donec satis pateat: ac, si jam sicciora intestina sunt, perluenda aqua sunt, cui paulum admodum olei sit adjectum. Tum minister oras vulneris leniter diducere manibus suis, vel etiam duobus hamis, interiori membranæ injectis, debet: medicus priora semper intestina, quæ posteriora prolapsa sunt, condere, sic, ut orbium singulorum locum servet.

Repositis omnibus, leniter homo concutiendus est: quo fit, ut per se singula intestina in suas sedes diducantur, et in his considant. His conditis, omentum quoque considerandum est: ex quo, si quid jam nigri et emortui est, forfice excidi debet: si quid integrum est, leniter super intestina deduci. Sutura autem, neque summæ cutis, neque interioris membranæ per se, satis proficit; sed utriusque: et quidem duobus linis injicienda est, spissior quam alibi; quia et

## ORDO.

spiritu. Autem homo est resupinandus, coxis erectioribus; et, si vulnus est angustius quam ut intestina refundantur commode, est incidendum donec pateat satis; ac, si intestina sunt jam sicciora, sunt perluenda aqua, cui paulum olei adjectum sit. Tum minister debet diducere oras vulneris leniter suis manibus, vel etiam duobus hamis, injectis interiori membranæ: medicus condere semper intestina priora, quæ prolapsa sunt posteriora, sic, ut servet locum singulorum orbium.

Omnibus repositis, homo est concutiendus leniter: quo fit, ut singula intestina diducantur per se in suas sedes, et considant in his. His conditis, omentum quoque est considerandum: ex quo, si est jam quid nigri et emortui, debet excidi forfice: si est quid integrum deduci leniter super intestina. Autem sutura neque summæ cutis, neque interioris membranæ, proficit satis per se, sed utriusque: et quidem est injicienda duobus linis, spissior quam alibi; et quia potest rumpi

## TRANSLATION.

exposed to the external air, to which they are unaccustomed. The patient must be laid on his back, the hips being a little elevated, and if the wound be rather too small to admit of the intestine being returned easily, a sufficient opening must be made by incision; and if that *portion* of the intestine have become dry, it should be washed with water, to which a little oil has been added. Then the assistant should cautiously separate the lips of the wound with his hands, or by two hooks fixed to the peritoneum, whilst the physician should always replace that portion of intestine first which came out last, in order that their several convolutions may be restored.

When the intestines are all replaced, the patient ought to be gently shaken, that they may resume their several localities and settle there. These being replaced, the omentum also must be examined; and if a portion of it be at this time dark, or mortified, it must be removed by the scissars, and what remains sound is to be laid gently over the intestines. Now the sutures which would only include the external integuments, or the internal membrane (*peritoneum*) alone, would not be sufficient, but of both, and that also with double thread, and sewed closer than in

rumpi facilius motu ventris potest; et non æque magnis inflammationibus pars ea exposita est.

Igitur in duas acus fila conjicienda, eæque duabus manibus tenendæ; et prius interiori membranæ sutura injicienda est, sic, ut sinistra manus in dexteriore ora, dextra in sinisteriore a principio vulneris orsa, ab interiori parte in exteriorem acum immittat: quo fit, ut ab intestinis ea pars semper acuum sit, quæ retusa est. Semel utraque parte trajecta, permutandæ acus inter manus sunt, ut ea sit in dextra, quæ fuit in sinistra, ea veniat in sinistram, quam dextra continuit: iterumque eodem modo per oras immittendæ sunt: atque ita tertio et quarto, deincepsque permutatis inter manus acubus plaça includenda.

Post hæc, eadem fila, eademque acus ad cutem transferendæ, similique ratione ei quoque parti sutura injicienda; semper ab interiori parte acubus venientibus, semper inter manus trajectis: dein glutinantia injicienda.

#### ORDO.

facilius motu ventris, et ea pars est non æquæ exposita magnis inflammationibus.

Igitur fila conjicienda in duas acus, quæ eæ tenendæ duabus manibus; et sutura est injicienda prius interiori membranæ, sic ut sinistra manus orsa a principio vulneris in dexteriore ora; dextra in sinisteriore, immittat acum ab interiori parte in exteriorem; quo fit, ut ea pars acuum quæ est retusa, sit semper ab intestinis. Utraque parte trajecta semel, acus sunt permutandæ inter manus, ut ea sit in dextra quæ fuit in sinistra, ea veniat in sinistram quam dextra continuit: quæ iterum sunt immittendæ per oras eodem modo: atque ita tertio et quarto, quæ deinceps acubus permutatis inter manus, plaça includenda.

Post hæc, eadem fila, quæ eadem acus transferendæ ad cutem, quæ simili ratione sutura injicienda quoque ei parti; acubus semper venientibus ab interiori parte, trajectis semper inter manus: dein glutinantia injicienda. Qui-

#### TRANSLATION.

any other case, because they may be more easily ruptured by the motion of the bowels, and because also this part is less liable to violent inflammation.

Therefore threads are to be introduced into two needles, and one of these held in each hand, and the first stitch is to be taken from the inner membrane, so that the left hand having commenced from the extremity of the wound on the right side in such a manner that the needle may pass from the internal towards the external part, the left hand passes it through the right edge; by which means that part of the needles which is blunted may be always turned from the intestines. When each side has been pierced once, the needles are to be interchanged between the hands, so that the needle which was in the left may be in the right, and that which was in the right may come into the left, and so continued in the same manner through the lips of the wound, for three or four times, the hands interchanging the needles each time *until* the wound is closed.

Then the same threads and needles must be brought to the integuments, and that part sewed in the same manner; the needles always coming from the interior part are to change hands: afterwards agglutinants must be applied. To



Quibus aut spongiam, aut succidam lanam ex aceto expressam accedere debere, manifestius est, quam ut semper dicendum sit. Impositis his, leniter deligari venter debet.

## ORDO.

bus aut spongiam, aut succidam lanam expressam ex aceto, debere accedere est manifestius quam ut sit semper dicendum. His impositis, venter debet deligari leniter.

## TRANSLATION.

which, either a sponge or rancid wool squeezed out of vinegar is to be applied; this is manifest, and need not be always repeated. These being applied, the abdomen is to be bandaged gently.

## CAP. XVII.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVII.

DE INTERIORE PARTE ABDOMINIS RUPTA, ET QUA RATIONE CURANDA SIT.

DE INTERIORE PARTE ABDOMINIS RUPTA, ET RATIONE QUA SIT CURANDA.

1. INTERDUM tamen vel ex ictu aliquo, vel retento diutius spiritu, vel sub gravi fasce, interior abdominis membrana, superiore cute integra, rumpitur. Quod fœminis quoque ex utero sæpe evenire consuevit: fitque

1. TAMEN interdum vel ex aliquo ictu, vel spiritu retento diutius, vel sub gravi fasce, interior membrana abdominis rumpitur, superiore cute integra. Quod consuevit evenire sæpe quoque feminis ex utero: que fit præcipue circa

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVII.

OF A RUPTURE OF THE INTERIOR PART OF THE ABDOMEN AND ITS TREATMENT.

SOMETIMES the internal membrane of the abdomen is ruptured, either from the effects of a blow, or retaining the breath too long, or under the pressure of a heavy burthen, while the external covering is uninjured. Females in a state of pregnancy are frequently liable to such an accident; and it generally occurs in

præcipue circa ilia. Sequitur autem, cum superior caro mollis sit, ut non satis intestina contineat, hisque intenta cutis indecore intumescat.

Atque id quoque aliter ab aliis curatur. Quidam enim per acum duobus linis ad imam basim immissis sic utrimque devinciunt, quemadmodum et in umbilico, et in uva positum est, ut, quidquid super vinculum est, emoriatur. Quidam medium tumorem excidunt, ad similitudinem myrtacei folii; quod semper eodem modo servandum esse jam posui; et tum oras sutura jungunt. Commodissimum est autem, resupinato corpore, experiri manu, qua parte is tumor maxime cedat, quia necesse est, ea parte rupta membrana sit; quaque integra est, ea magis obnitatur: tum, qua rupta videbitur, immittendæ scalpello duæ lineæ sunt, ut, exciso medio, interior membrana utrimque recentem plagam habeat; quia, quod vetus est, sutura non coit. Loco patefacto, si qua parte membrana

## ORDO.

ilia. Autem sequitur, cum superior caro sit mollis, ut non contineat satis intestina, que cutis intenta his intumescat indecore.

Atque id quoque curatur aliter ab aliis. Enim quidam sic devinciunt utrimque duobus linis immissis per acum ad imam basim, quemadmodum positum est et in umbilico et in uva, ut quidquid est super vinculum emoriatur. Quidam excidunt medium tumorem, ad similitudinem folii myrtacei, quod posui jam esse semper servandum eodem modo; et tum jungunt oras sutura. Autem est commodissimum, corpore resupinato, experiri manu qua parte si tumor cedat maxime, quia est necesse, membrana sit rupta ea parte; que qua est integra, ea obnitatur magis: tum, qua videbitur rupta, duæ lineæ sunt immittendæ scalpello, ut medio exciso, interior membrana utrimque habeat recentem plagam; quia, quod est vetus coit non sutura. Loco patefacto, si qua parte membrana

## TRANSLATION.

the region of the ilia. Therefore it follows, that the superior integuments being soft, do not sufficiently maintain the intestines, and the skin being distended over it, forms an unseemly tumour.

This disease is also treated variously by different *physicians*. For some pass a needle with a double thread through the base of the tumour, in the same manner as described in the cases of umbilical hernia and staphyloma, so that the portion above the ligature may mortify. Others excise the middle portion of it in the form of a myrtle leaf, according to the method already described for all cases of a similar nature; and then they approximate the edges with a suture. But it will be most advantageous to place the patient on his back, and to try with the hand in what part the tumour may yield most, because the membrane must necessarily be ruptured there, and that part which is entire will resist the more: then in that part which appears to be ruptured two linear incisions are to be made with a scalpel, so that the portion between them being cut out, the internal membrane may have a recent wound on both sides; because parts which have been long disunited do not unite by a suture. The part being laid open, if the membrane in

non novam plagam, sed veterem habet, tenuis excidenda habena est, quæ tantum oras ejus exulceret. Cetera, quæ ad suturam, reliquamque curationem pertinent, supra comprehensa sunt.

2. Præter hæc evenit, ut in quorundam ventribus varices sint, quarum quia nulla alia curatio est, quam quæ in cruribus esse consuevit, tum eam partem explanaturus, hanc quoque eo differo.

## ORDO.

habet non novam plagam, sed veterem, tenuis habena est excidenda, quæ tantum exulceret oras ejus. Cetera quæ pertinent ad suturam, quæ reliquam curationem, comprehensa sunt supra.

2. Præter hæc, evenit ut varices sint in ventribus quorundam, quarum quia est nulla alia curatio quam quæ consuevit esse in cruribus, explanaturus eam partem tum, quoque differo hanc eo.

## TRANSLATION.

any part have not the appearance of a recent wound, a small slip must be cut off, but only to ulcerate its edges. All that is necessary with respect to the suture, and the subsequent dressings, have been described above.

2. Besides these diseases, it happens that some persons have varices on their abdomen; but as the mode of treatment here does not differ from that which is employed on the legs, and being about to treat of it presently, I shall refer this also to that part.

## CAP. XVIII.

DE TESTICULORUM NATURA, ET  
MORBIS EORUM.

VENIO autem ad ea, quæ in naturalibus partibus circa testiculos oriri solent: quæ quo facilius explicem, prius ipsius loci natura paucis proponenda est. Igitur testiculi simile

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVIII.

DE NATURA TESTICULORUM, ET  
MORBIS EORUM.

AUTEM venio ad ea quæ solent oriri in naturalibus partibus circa testiculos; quo explicem quæ facilius, natura loci ipsius est proponenda paucis prius. Igitur

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## A DESCRIPTION OF THE TESTICLES AND THEIR DISEASES.

I NOW come to those diseases which arise in the private parts about the testicles; in order, however, the more easily to explain which, I will just premise a few words on the nature of the parts themselves. The testicles then have some



quiddam medullis habent: nam sanguinem non emittunt, et omni sensu carent: dolent autem in ictibus et inflammationibus tunicae, quibus ii continentur. Dependent vero ab inguinibus per singulos nervos, quos κρεμαστήρας Græci nominant: cum quorum utroque binæ descendunt et venæ et arteriæ. Hæc autem tunica conteguntur tenui, nervosa, sine sanguine, alba, quæ ἐλυτροειδής a Græcis nominatur. Super eam valentior tunica est, quæ interiori vehementer ima parte inhæret: δαρτὸν Græci vocant.

Multæ deinde membranulæ venas et arterias, eosque nervos comprehendunt; atque inter duas quoque tunicas superioribus partibus leves parvulæque sunt. Hactenus propria utrique testiculo et velamenta et auxilia sunt. Communis deinde utrique, omnibusque interioribus sinus est, qui etiam conspicitur a nobis: ὄσχεον Græci, scrotum nostri vocant. Isque ab ima parte mediis tunicis leviter innexus, a superiore tantum circumdatus est.

## ORDO.

testiculi habent quiddam simile medullis; nam non emittunt sanguinem, et carent omni sensu; autem tunicae quibus ii continentur, dolent in ictibus et inflammationibus. Vero dependent ab inguinibus per singulos nervos, quos Græci nominant κρεμαστήρας (kremastêras): cum utroque quorum binæ et venæ et arteriæ descendunt. Autem hæc conteguntur tenui tunica, nervosa, sine sanguine, alba, quæ nominatur a Græcis ἐλυτροειδής (elutroeidēs). Super eam est valentior tunica quæ inhæret vehementer interiori ima parte: Græci vocant δαρτὸν (darton).

Deinde multæ membranulæ comprehendunt venas et arterias, que eos nervos; atque quoque sunt leves que parvulæ inter duas tunicas superioribus partibus. Hactenus et velamenta et auxilia sunt propria utrique testiculo. Deinde est sinus communis utrique, que omnibus interioribus qui etiam conspicitur a nobis: Græci vocant ὄσχεον (oscheon), nostri scrotum. Que is innexus leviter mediis tunicis ab ima parte, est tantum circumdatus a superiore.

## TRANSLATION.

resemblance to medullary matter: for they do not discharge blood; and are devoid of all sensation; but the tunics in which they are contained become painful from a blow, or during inflammation. Now each of them is suspended from the groin by a nerve, the *vas deferens*, which the Greeks call Cremaster; and with each of them descend also two veins and two arteries. These are covered by a thin tunic, nervous, exsanguineous and white, which is named by the Greeks Elytroeidēs. Over that there is a stronger coat, which adheres strongly, inferiorly to the interior one, termed by the Greeks the Dartos.

Besides these, many small membranes enclose the veins, arteries, and nerves, and also there are delicate and very small ones in those parts between the two superior tunics. Thus far then the coverings and appendages are peculiar to each testicle. But there is a sinus common to each, and to all the interior parts, which is also manifest to us: the Greeks term it Oscheon; our countrymen Scrotum. This in the lower part is slightly connected with the middle coats, at the upper part it only envelopes them.

Sub hoc igitur plura vitia esse consuerunt: quæ modo ruptis tunicis, quas ab inguinibus incipere proposui, modo his integris fiunt. Siquidem interdum vel ex morbo primum inflammatur, deinde postea pondere abrumpitur; vel ex ictu aliquo protinus rumpitur tunica, quæ diducere ab inferioribus partibus intestina debuit: tum pondere eo devolvitur, aut omentum, aut etiam intestinum: idque ibi reperta via, paulatim ab inguinibus in inferiores quoque partes nisum, subinde nervosas tunicas, et ob id ejus rei patientes, diducit. *Ἐντεροκήλην* et *ἐπιπλοκήλην* Græci vocant: apud nos indecorum, sed commune his, herniæ nomen est.

Deinde si descendit omentum, numquam in scroto tumor tollitur, sive inedia fuit, sive corpus huc illuc conversum, aut aliquo modo collocatum: itemque, si retentus est spiritus, non magnopere increscit, tactu vero inæqualis est, et mollis, et lubricus.

At si intestinum quoque descendit, tumor is sine inflammatione modo

## ORDO.

Igitur sub hoc plura vitia consuerunt esse: quæ modo fiunt, tunicis ruptis, quas proposui incipere ab inguinibus, modo his integris. Siquidem interdum vel inflammatur primum ex morbo, deinde postea abrumpitur pondere; vel tunica, quæ debuit diducere intestina ab inferioribus partibus, rumpitur protinus ex aliquo ictu; tum aut omentum, aut etiam intestinum, devolvitur pondere eo: que id, via reperta ibi nisum quoque paulatim ab inguinibus in inferiores partes, subinde diducit tunicas nervosas, et ob id patientes ejus rei. Græci vocant *Ἐντεροκήλην* (enterocelē) et *ἐπιπλοκήλην* (epiplocelē): apud nos indecorum, sed commune nomen herniæ est his.

Deinde, si omentum descendit, tumor in scroto numquam tollitur, sive fuit inedia, sive corpus conversum huc ve illuc, aut collocatum aliquo modo; que item, si spiritus est retentus, non increscit magnopere, vero tactu est inæqualis, et mollis, et lubricus.

At si intestinum quoque descendit, is tumor sine inflammatione

## TRANSLATION.

Now under this several diseases occur: sometimes arising from a rupture of the tunics, which I have stated to take their origin from the groins; and sometimes happening while these remain entire. Indeed, sometimes inflammation takes place from disease, and then a rupture from a weight of the parts; or that tunic, *peritoneum*, which is designed to separate the intestines from the lower parts, *the genitals*, is ruptured at once by some violence: then either the omentum alone, or that and the intestine together, protrude into that part by their own weight, and by this a passage being formed, they press down gradually from the groin into the inferior parts, and by degrees separate the nervous—*membranous*—coats, which naturally yield to this dilatation. The Greeks term a descent of the intestines *ENTEROCELE*, *the omentum* *EPIPLOCELE*: with us the term *HERNIA* is unbecoming, but common to them both.

Now if the omentum descend, the tumour in the scrotum is never removed, either by fasting or turning the body from one position to another, or by placing it in any particular posture whatever, and even if the breath be retained, it does not much increase, but the tumour feels unequal to the touch, and soft and slippery.

When indeed the intestine has also descended, the tumour without any inflam-

minuitur, modo increscit; estque fere sine dolore, et, cum conquiescit aliquis aut jacet, interdum ex toto desidit, interdum sic dividitur, ut in scroto exiguæ reliquæ maneat: at clamore, et satietate, et si sub aliquo pondere is homo nisus est, crescit: frigore omni contrahitur, calore diffunditur; estque tum scrotum et rotundum, et tactu læve: idque, quod subest, lubricum est; si pressum est, ad inguen revertitur; dimissumque, iterum cum quodam quasi murmure devolvitur. Et id quidem in levioribus malis evenit.

Nonnumquam autem stercore accepto vastius tumet, retroque compelli non potest: adfertque tum dolorem et scroto, et inguinibus, et abdomini: nonnumquam stomachus quoque affectus primum rufam bilem per os reddit, deinde viridem, quibusdam etiam nigram.

Integris vero membranis interdum eam partem humor dstringit. Atque ejus quoque species duæ sunt. Nam vel inter tunicas is increscit, vel in membranis, quæ ibi circa venas et

## ORDO.

modo minuitur, modo increscit; que est fere sine dolore, et cum aliquis conquiescit aut jacet, interdum desidit ex toto, interdum dividitur sic ut exiguæ reliquæ maneat in scroto: at crescit clamore et satietate, et si is homo nisus est sub aliquo pondere: contrahitur omni frigore, diffunditur calore; que scrotum est tum et rotundum et læve tactu: que id quod subest est lubricum; si pressum est, revertitur ad inguen; que dimissum, iterum devolvitur quasi cum quodam murmure. Et id quidem evenit in levioribus malis.

Autem nonnumquam stercore accepto tumet vastius, que potest non compelli retro: que adfert tum dolorem et scroto, et inguinibus, et abdomini: nonnumquam stomachus quoque affectus primum reddit per os rufam bilem. deinde viridem, quibusdam etiam nigram.

Vero membranis integris, interdum humor dstringit eam partem. Atque quoque sunt duæ species ejus. Nam vel is increscit inter tunicas, vel in membranis, quæ sunt ibi circa venas et arte-

## TRANSLATION.

mation sometimes diminishes, at other times increases, and it is generally without pain; and when the person remains quiet, or lies down, it sometimes subsides entirely, at other times it is so far reduced, that a very small portion of it remains in the scrotum; but it increases by shouting, and by satiety, and by any violent exertion of the patient in bearing a heavy weight: it is contracted by cold, and dilated by heat; and in each case the scrotum becomes round and smooth to the touch, while its contents readily slip from the grasp; when pressed, it glides into the groin, and when the pressure is removed, it returns again with a gurgling noise. This takes place in the slighter cases.

But sometimes, when it becomes the receptacle of the fæces, the tumour increases excessively, and resists the means of reducing it; and then it brings on pain, both in the scrotum, the groins, and the abdomen. Sometimes the stomach is also affected, and the patient first vomits yellowish bile, afterwards green, and in some cases even black.

Sometimes the membranes being entire, a fluid distends this part. There are two species of this disease. For sometimes the fluid collects either in the tunica vaginalis testis; or at other times within the membranes which envelope the



arterias sunt, ubi *æ* gravatæ occalluerunt. Ac ne ei quidem humori, qui inter tunicas est, una sedes est. Nam modo inter summam et mediam, modo inter mediam et imam consistit. Græci communi nomine, quidquid est, *ὕδρoκῆλην* appellant: nostri, ut scilicet nullis discriminibus satis cognititis, hæc quoque sub eodem nomine, quo priora, habent.

Signa autem quædam communia sunt, quædam propria: communia, quibus humor deprehenditur; propria, quibus locus. Humorem subesse discimus, si tumor est, numquam ex toto se remittens, sed interdum levior, aut propter famem, aut propter febriculam, maximeque in pueris: isque mollis est, si non nimius humor subest; at si is vehementer increvit, renititur sicut uter repletus et arcte adstrictus: venæ quoque in scroto inflantur; et, si digito pressimus, cedit humor, circumfluensque id, quod non premitur, attollit, et tamquam in vitro cornuve per scrotum apparet; isque, quantum in ipso est, sine dolore est.

## ORDO.

rias, ubi *æ* gravatæ occalluerunt. Ac est ne quidem una sedes ei humori, qui est inter tunicas. Nam modo consistit inter summam et mediam, modo inter mediam et imam. Græci appellant, quidquid est, communi nomine *ὕδρoκῆλην* (hydrocèle): nostri, scilicet ut nullis discriminibus cognititis satis, habent hæc quoque sub eodem nomine, quo priora.

Antem sunt quædam communia signa, quædam propria: communia, quibus humor deprehenditur; propria quibus locus. Discimus humorem subesse si est tumor; nunquam remittens se ex toto, sed interdum levior, aut propter famem, aut propter febriculam, que maxime in pueris: que is est mollis, si nimius humor non subest; at si is increvit vehementer, renititur sicut uter repletus et adstrictus arcte: quoque venæ in scroto inflantur; et, si pressimus digito, humor cedit, que circumfluens attollit id quod non premitur et apparet tanquam in vitro ve cornu per scrotum; que is, quantum est in ipso, est sine dolore.

## TRANSLATION.

*spermatic* veins and arteries, which become callous there from the effect of pressure. Neither has that fluid which collects in the tunica vaginalis always the same seat (6). For sometimes it lodges between the outer and middle coverings, at other times between the middle and inner coats. The Greeks term this by the general name of Hydrocele, of whatever species it may be. Our countrymen, not being sufficiently acquainted with any distinction, include this also under the same name as the former diseases.

Now in these there are symptoms which are common to both, and some that are peculiar to each particular species. The common are such as indicate the collection of a fluid; the peculiar its seat. We ascertain the presence of a fluid, if there be a tumour, which never disappears entirely, but is sometimes diminished, either by abstinence or a slight fever, and particularly in children; and this is soft if there, when the quantity of fluid is small; but if the accumulation be excessive, it resists like a full bladder tightly tied; also the veins in the scrotum become inflated; and if we press upon it with our finger, the fluid yields and fluctuates, and elevating that part which is not pressed on, appears semi-transparent through the scrotum, as if in a glass or horn: the tumour in itself is without pain.

Sedes autem ejus sicprehenditur. Si inter summam mediamque tunicam est, cum digitis duobus pressimus, paulatim humor inter eos revertens subit: scrotum ipsius albidius est; si ducitur, aut nihil, aut parvulum intenditur: testiculus ea parte neque visu, neque tactu sentitur. At si sub media tunica est, intentum scrotum magis se attollit, adeo ut superior coles sub tumore eo delitescat.

Præter hæc æque integris tunicis ramex innascitur: *κισσοκήλην* Græci appellant. Venæ intumescunt; eæque intortæ, conglomeratæque a superiore parte, vel ipsum scrotum implent, vel mediam tunicam, vel imam: interdum etiam sub ima tunica, circa ipsum testiculum nervumque ejus, increscunt. Ex his eæ, quæ in ipso scroto sunt, oculis patent: eæ vero, quæ mediæ imæve tunicæ insident, ut magis conditæ non æque quidem cernuntur, sed tamen etiam visui subjectæ sunt: præterquam quod et tumoris aliquid est, pro venarum magnitudine et modo, et id prementi magis renititur, ac per ipsos venarum

## ORDO.

Autem sedes ejusprehenditur sic. Si est inter summam que mediam tunicam, cum pressimus duobus digitis, humor revertens paulatim subit inter eos; scrotum ipsius est albidius; si ducitur, intenditur aut nihil, aut parvulum: testiculus sentitur ea parte, neque visu, neque tactu. At si est sub media tunica, scrotum intentum, attollit se magis, adeo ut superior coles delitescat sub eo tumore.

Præter hæc, tunicis æque integris, ramex innascitur: Græci appellant *κισσοκήλην* (kirsocèle). Venæ intumescunt; que eæ intortæ, que conglomeratæ a superiore parte, vel implent scrotum ipsum, vel mediam, vel imam tunicam: interdum etiam increscunt sub ima tunica, circa testiculum ipsum que nervum ejus. Ex his, eæ quæ sunt in scroto ipso, patent oculis: vero eæ quæ insident mediæ ve imæ tunicæ, ut magis conditæ, cernuntur quidem non æque, sed tamen etiam sunt subjectæ visui: præterquam quod et est aliquid tumoris, pro magnitudine et modo venarum, et id renititur magis prementi, ac est inæquale per toros ipsos ve-

## TRANSLATION.

The situation of the disease is thus detected. If the fluid be between the external and middle tunic, when we press with two fingers, it gradually returns between them; the scrotum itself is whiter; if you attempt to distend it, it yields little or nothing: the testicle can be neither seen nor felt at that part. But when the fluid is under the middle tunic, the scrotum being stretched, yields itself more, so that the penis above it may become enveloped in the tumour.

Besides these, when the tunics are equally sound, a ramex—*varicocele*—arises there: the Greeks term it *Circocèle*. The veins become swollen or varicose; and these being twisted or tortuous, become conglomerated at the upper part, either fill up the scrotum itself, or the middle coat, or the lower one: sometimes they enlarge below the inner coat, about the testicle and its nerve—the *cremaster*. Those only which are in the scrotum are exposed to view: but those which take place in the middle, or innermost coat, as being deeper, are not indeed equally evident, but yet are visible; besides that, there is some tumefaction, proportioned to the magnitude and capacity of the veins, which resists

toros inæquale est; et, qua parte id est, testiculus magis justo dependet.

Cum vero etiam super ipsum testiculum nervumque ejus id malum increvit, aliquanto longius testiculus ipse descendit, minorque altero fit, utpote alimento amisso. Raro, sed aliquando caro quoque inter tunicas increscit: *σαρκοκήλην* Græci vocant.

Interdum etiam ex inflammatione tumet ipse testiculus, ac febres quoque affert; et, nisi celeriter ea inflammatio conquievit, dolor ad inguina atque ilia pervenit, partesque eæ intumescunt; nervus, ex quo testiculus dependet, plenior fit, simulque indurescit. Super hæc, inguen quoque nonnunquam ramices implent: *βουβωνοκήλην* appellant.

#### ORDO.

narum; et, qua parte id est, testiculus dependet magis (quam) justo.

Vero cum id malum increvit etiam super testiculum ipsum que nervum ejus, testiculus ipse descendit aliquanto longius, que fit minor altero, utpote alimento amisso. Raro, sed aliquando caro quoque inter tunicas increscit: Græci vocant *σαρκοκήλην* (sarcocele).

Interdum etiam testiculus ipse tumet ex inflammatione, ac quoque affert febres; et, nisi ea inflammatio conquievit celeriter, dolor pervenit ad inguina atque ilia, que eæ partes intumescunt; nervus, ex quo testiculus dependet, fit plenior, que simul indurescit. Super hæc, nonnunquam ramices quoque implent inguen: appellant *βουβωνοκήλην*. (Bubonocèle.)

#### TRANSLATION.

pressure more, and is unequal on account of the varicose dilatation of the veins; and the testicle descends lower than usual on that side where it is.

If these varices take place on the testicle itself, or on its cord, the testicle will hang still lower than it ought, and wastes smaller than the other, for want of nourishment. It happens but rarely, yet sometimes there is a fleshy excrescence takes place between the tunics: the Greeks term this Sarcocèle.

Sometimes the testicle itself becomes swollen from inflammation, and even brings on fever; and unless the inflammation be quickly subdued, the pain extends to the groins and ilia, and those parts become swollen; the nerve or cord by which the testicle is suspended becoming fuller, and at the same time indurated. Besides these, sometimes, the groin is also the seat of hernia termed ramices; by the Greeks Bubonocèle.



## CAP. XIX.

DE TESTICULORUM CURATIONIBUS COMMUNIBUS, ET PRIMO DE INCISIONE ET CURATIONE INGUINIS VEL SCROTI.

HIS cognitis, de curatione dicendum est: in qua quædam communia omnium sunt, quædam propria singulorum. Prius de communibus dicam. Loquar autem nunc de iis, quæ scalpellum desiderant: nam quæ vel sanari non possint, vel aliter nutriri debeant, dicendum erit, simul ad species singulas venero.

Inciditur autem interdum inguen, interdum scrotum. In utraque curatione homo ante triduum bibere aquam; pridie abstinere etiam a cibo debet: ipso autem die collocari supinus; deinde, si inguen incidendum est, idque jam pube contegitur, ante radendum est; et tum, extento scroto,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIX.

DE COMMUNIBUS CURATIONIBUS TESTICULORUM, ET PRIMO DE INCISIONE ET CURATIONE INGUINIS VEL SCROTI.

HIS cognitis, est dicendum de curatione: in qua quædam sunt communia omnium, quædam propria singulorum. Dicam prius de communibus. Autem nunc loquar de iis quæ desiderant scalpellum; nam erit dicendum, quæ vel possint non sanari, vel debeant nutriri aliter, simul venero ad singulas species.

Autem interdum inguen inciditur, interdum scrotum. In utraque curatione homo debet bibere aquam per triduum ante, abstinere etiam a cibo pridie: autem die ipso collocari supinus; deinde, si inguen est incidendum, que id jam contegitur pube, est radendum ante, et tum scroto extento, ut cutis inguinis

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIX.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS FOR THE TREATMENT OF DISEASED TESTICLES, AND FIRST OF THE INCISION IN THE GROIN OR SCROTUM, AND SUBSEQUENT TREATMENT.

THESE diseases being described, something must be said on their treatment: in which some of the symptoms are common to all of them; some peculiar to each. I shall first speak of the common. But at present I will treat of those which require the aid of the scalpel: for I shall take notice of those which may be either incurable, or ought to be treated differently, when I come to the particular species.

Now the incision is made sometimes in the groin, at other times in the scrotum. In either case the patient ought to drink nothing but water for three days preceding; and to abstain from food the day previous: the day of the operation he must be laid on his back: then if the groin is to be incised, and that is covered with hair, it must first be shaved: then the scrotum being extended, that the inte-

ut cutis inguinis intenta sit, id incidendum sub imo ventre, qua cum abdomine tunicae inferiores committuntur. Aperiendum autem audacter est, donec summa tunica, quæ ipsius scroti est, incidatur, perveniaturque ad eam, quæ media est. Plaga facta, foramen deorsum versus subest. In id demittendus est sinistrae manus digitus index, ut diductis intervenientibus membranulis, sinum laxet. Minister autem, sinistra manu comprehenso scroto, sursum versus eum debet extendere, et quam maxime ab inguinibus abducere; primum cum ipso testiculo, dum medicus omnes membranulas, quæ super mediam tunicam sunt, si digito diducere non potest, scalpello abscindat: deinde sine eo, ut is delapsus ipsi plagæ jungatur, digitoque inde promatur, et super ventrem cum duabus suis tunicis collocetur. Inde, si quæ vitiosa sunt, circumcidenda sunt. In quibus cum multæ venæ discurrant, tenuiores quidem præcidi protinus possunt: majores vero ante longiore lino deligandæ sunt; ne periculose sanguinem fundant.

## ORDO.

sit intenta, id incidendum sub imo ventre, qua inferiores tunicae committuntur cum abdomine. Autem est aperiendum audacter, donec summa tunica, quæ est scroti ipsius incidatur, quæ perveniatur ad eam quæ est media. Plaga facta, foramen subest versus deorsum. Index digitus sinistrae manus est demittendus in id, ut membranulis intervenientibus diductis, laxet sinum. Autem minister, scroto comprehenso sinistra manu debet extendere id versus sursum, et abducere quam maxime ab inguinibus, primum cum testiculo, ipso, dum medicus abscindat scalpello omnes membranulas quæ sunt supra mediam tunicam, si non potest diducere digito: deinde sine eo, ut is delapsus jungatur plagæ ipsi, quæ promatur inde digito, et collocetur super ventrem cum suis duabus tunicis. Si sunt quæ vitiosa, sunt circumcidenda inde: in quibus quum multæ venæ discurrant, tenuiores quidem possunt præcidi protinus: vero majores sunt deligandæ ante longiore lino, ne fundant sanguinem periculose.

## TRANSLATION.

guments of the groin may be stretched, the incision must be made at the lowest part of the belly, where the inferior coats are united to the abdomen. It must be opened boldly until the superior tunic, which is that of the scrotum itself, be divided, and bring into view the middle coat. This incision being made, an opening is found towards the inferior parts. Into this the index finger of the left hand must be introduced, that by separating the intervening membranes it may enlarge the sinus. An assistant should now take hold of the scrotum with his left hand, extend it upwards, and as much as possible from the groins; first with the testicle itself, while the physician may divide with the scalpel all the small membranes which are above the middle tunic, if he cannot separate them with his finger: then letting go the testicle, that it may slip down, come into the opening, be brought from thence by the finger, and laid on the abdomen with its two coats. If there appear any vitiated parts, they must be removed; in which, as many veins may appear to run in every direction, the smaller ones may be cut off at once, but previous to this, the larger ones are to be tied with a long thread, lest a dangerous hæmorrhage ensue.

Sin media tunica vexata erit, aut sub ea malum increverit, excidenda erit, sic, ut alte ad ipsum inguen præcidatur. Infra tamen non tota demenda est: nam quod ad basim testiculi vehementer cum ima tunica connexum est, excidi sine summo periculo non potest: itaque ibi relinquendum est.

Idem in ima quoque tunica, si læsa est, faciendum est. Sed non a summa inguinis plaga, verum infra paulum ea abscindenda; ne læsa abdominis membrana inflammationes moveat. Neque tamen nimium ex ea rursum relinquendum est; ne postea sinuetur, et sedem eidem malo præstet.

Purgatus ita testiculus per ipsam plagam cum venis, et arteriis, et nervo suo leniter demittendus est; videndumque, ne sanguis in scrotum descendat, neve concretus aliquo loco maneat. Quæ ita fient, si venis vinciendo medicus prospexerit. Lina, quibus capita earum continebuntur, extra plagam dependere debebunt: quæ, pure orto, sine ullo dolore ex-

## ORDO.

Sin media tunica vexata erit, aut malum increverit sub ea, (ea) erit excidenda sic, ut præcidatur alte ad inguen ipsum. Tamen tota est non demenda infra: nam quod est connexum vehementer cum ima tunica ad basim testiculi non potest excidi sine summo periculo; itaque est relinquendum ibi.

Idem est quoque faciendum in ima tunica, si ea læsa est. Sed ea non abscindenda a summa plaga inguinis, verum paulum infra, ne membrana abdominis læsa, moveat inflammationes. Neque tamen nimium ex ea est relinquendum rursum, ne sinuetur postea, et præstet sedem eidem malo.

Ita testiculus purgatus est demittendus leniter per plagam ipsam, cum venis et arteriis, et suo nervo; que videndum ne sanguis descendat in scrotum, neve concretus, maneat aliquo loco. Quæ fient ita, si medicus prospexerit venis vinciendo, lina quibus capita earum continebuntur, debebunt dependere extra plagam; quæ, pure orto, excident sine ullo dolore. Autem duæ fi-

## TRANSLATION.

But if the middle tunic be diseased, or the malady have extended under it, then it must be cut out in such a manner, that the excisions may reach the groin itself. Yet the whole is not to be taken away beneath: for that which is so firmly united with the inferior coat at the base of the testicle, cannot be removed without great danger; therefore it must be left there.

The same method is to be employed with the inferior tunic also, if that be injured. But it must not be cut off at the top of the incision in the groin, but a little below it, lest by injuring the abdominal membrane, inflammation may ensue. Neither must there be left too much of it above, lest it should form a sinus afterwards, and furnish a seat for the same disease.

The testicle being now disengaged, is to be brought down gently through the wound itself with its veins, arteries, and spermatic cord: and care must be taken that no blood descend into the scrotum, lest it should coagulate in any part there. This will be prevented, if the physician shall have provided ligatures for tying the veins, and the ends by which their extremities are secured must hang out of the wound: and when suppuration comes on, they will fall out without any pain.



cident. Ipsi autem plagæ injiciendæ duæ fibulæ sunt ; et insuper medicamentum, quo glutinetur.

Solet autem interdum ab altera ora necessarium esse aliquid excidi, ut cicatrix major et latior fiat. Quod ubi incidit, linamenta super, non fulcienda, sed leviter tantum ponenda sunt; supraque ea, quæ inflammationem repellant, id est, ex aceto vel lana succida, vel spongia: cetera eadem, quæ, ubi pus moveri debet, adhibenda sunt. At cum infra incidi oportet, resupinato homine, subjicienda sub scroto sinistra manus est; deinde id vehementer apprehendendum, et incidendum; si parvulum est, quod nocet, modice, ut tertia pars integra, ad sustinendum testiculum, infra relinquatur: si majus est, etiam amplius, ut paulum tantummodo ad imum, cui testiculus insidere possit, integrum maneat.

Sed primo rectus scalpellus quam levissima manu teneri debet, donec scrotum ipsum diducat: tum inclinandus mucro est, ut transversas membranas secet, quæ inter summam me-

## ORDO.

bulæ sunt injiciendæ plagæ ipsi, et medicamentum insuper quo glutinetur.

Interdum solet esse necessarium aliquid excidi ab altera ora, ut cicatrix fiat major et latior. Ubi quod incidit, linamenta sunt non fulcienda super, sed tantum ponenda leviter, quæ supra ea quæ repellant inflammationem, id est vel succida lana vel spongia ex aceto: cetera eadem sunt adhibenda quæ ubi pus debet moveri. At quum oportet incidi infra, homine resupinato, sinistra manus est subjicienda sub scroto, deinde id apprehendendum vehementer et incidendum. Si est parvulum quod nocet, modice, ut tertia pars relinquatur infra integra ad testiculum sustinendum: si est majus; etiam amplius, ut tantummodo paulum maneat integrum ad imum cui testiculus, possit insidere.

Sed primo scalpellus debet teneri rectus manu quam levissima, donec diducat scrotum ipsum; tum mucro est inclinandus, ut secet transversas membranas, quæ

## TRANSLATION.

Then two buckles are to be fastened over the wound itself, and over them some agglutinating applications.

Sometimes it is usual to cut off a portion from one of the edges, that a longer and broader cicatrix may be formed. When this is the case, the lint must not be pressed down upon it, but laid on lightly, and over such applications as may subdue inflammation; that is, either rancid wool, or a sponge dipped in vinegar: every other application must be employed as when a suppuration is to be promoted. But when it is necessary to make the incision beneath, the patient being laid on his back, the left hand is to be placed below the scrotum, and held firmly, and the incision made: if the extent of the disease be limited, the incision must be moderate, so that one-third part of the scrotum may be left entire to support the testicle: if the disease be more extensive, then the incision must be so in proportion, so that only a small portion may remain entire below, on which the testicle may rest.

Now at first, the scalpel ought to be held straight, and with a very light hand, until it divide the scrotum itself; then the point of it is to be inclined, in order to cut the transverse membranes, which are situated between the external and

diamque tunicam sunt. Ac, si vitium in proximo est, mediam tunicam attingi non oportet: si sub illa quoque conditur, etiam illa incidenda est; sicut tertia quoque, si illa vitium tegit.

Ubi cumque autem repertum malum est, ministrum ab inferiore parte exprimere moderate scrotum oportet: medicum, digito manubriolove scalpelli diductam inferiore parte tunicam extra collocare; deinde eam ferramento, quod a similitudine corvum vocant, incidere, sic, ut intrare duo digiti, index et medius possint: his deinde coniectis, excipienda reliqua pars tunicae, et inter digitos scalpellus immittendus est, eximendumque aut effundendum quidquid est noxium.

Quamcumque autem tunicam quis violavit, illam quoque debet excidere; ac mediam quidem, ut supra dixi, quam altissime ad inguen; imam autem, paulo infra. Ceterum antequam excidentur, hæ quoque vinciri lino summæ debent; et ejus lini capita extra plagam relinquenda sunt, sicut in aliis quoque venis, quæ id requisierint.

## ORDO.

sunt inter summam que mediam tunicam. Ac, si vitium est in proximo, oportet mediam tunicam non attingi: si conditur quoque sub illa, illa etiam est incidenda, sicut quoque tertia, si illa tegit vitium.

Autem ubi cumque malum repertum est, oportet ministrum exprimere scrotum moderate ab inferiore parte, medicum collocare extra inferiore parte tunicae diductam digito ve manubriolo scalpelli; deinde incidere eam ferramento, quod, a similitudine vocant corvum, sic ut duo digiti, index et medius, possint intrare in (eandem.) Deinde his coniectis, reliqua pars tunicae excipienda, et scalpellus est immittendus inter digitos, que quidquid est noxium eximendum aut effundendum.

Autem quamcumque tunicam quis violavit, debet quoque excidere illam, ac mediam quidem, ut dixi supra, quam altissime ad inguen, autem imam paulo infra. Ceterum, antequam excidentur, hæ summæ debent vinciri quoque lino, et capita ejus lini sunt relinquenda extra plagam, sicut quoque in illis venis quæ requisierint id.

## TRANSLATION.

middle coat. But if the disease be in the superior tunic, the middle ought not to be touched; but if it lie below the middle coat, that also must be incised, and likewise the third coat, if that too cover the disease. But wherever the disease is found, it behoves the assistant to press the scrotum moderately inferiorly; and the physician having separated the inferior part with his finger, or the handle of the knife, should bring the tunic out of the wound; afterwards incise with an instrument, which from its figure is called *Corvus*, so that the two fore-fingers may be introduced into it. Then having the fingers in the wound, the remaining part of the tunic is to be extracted, and the scalpel is made to pass between the two fingers, and whatever is noxious must be taken out, or allowed to run out.

Whatever coat has been injured by the operation must be cut off, and even the middle one, as I have observed above, as high as possible in the groin, but the inferior one a little lower. But before they are cut off, the vessels ought to be secured by a ligature; and the ends of these ligatures ought to be left out of the wound, the same as in other veins requiring ligatures.

Eo facto, testiculus intus reponendus est: oræque scroti suturis inter se committendæ; neque paucis, ne parum glutinentur, et longior fiat curatio; neque multis, ne inflammationem augeant. Atque hic quoque videndum est, ne quid in scroto sanguinis maneat: tum imponenda glutinantia sunt.

Si quando autem in scrotum sanguis defluxit, aliquidve concretum ex eo decidit, incidi subter id debet; purgatoque eo, spongia, acri aceto madens, circumdari. Deligatum autem vulnus omne, quod ex his causis factum est, si dolor nullus est, quinque primis diebus non est resolvendum, sed bis die tantum aceto irroranda lana vel spongia: si dolor est, tertio die resolvendum; et, ubi fibulæ sunt, hæ incidendæ; ubi linamentum, id immutandum est; rosæque et vino madefaciendum id, quod imponitur.

Si inflammatio increscit, adjiciendum prioribus cataplasma ex lenticula et melle; vel ex malicorio, quod in austero vino coctum sit; vel ex his mistis. Si sub his inflammatio non

## ORDO.

Eo facto, testiculus est reponendus intus, que oræ scroti committendæ inter se suturis, neque (iis) paucis, ne glutinentur parum, et curatio fiat longior; neque multis, ne augeant inflammationem. Atque hic quoque est videndum, ne quid sanguinis maneat in scroto; tum glutinantia sunt imponenda.

Autem si quando sanguis defluxit in scrotum, ve aliquid concretum decidit ex eo, debet incidi subter id; que eo purgato, spongia madens acri aceto circumdari. Autem omne vulnus quod factum est ex his causis deligatum, non est resolvendum primis quinque diebus si nullus est dolor, sed tantum lana vel spongia irroranda aceto bis die: si est dolor, resolvendum tertio die; et ubi sunt fibulæ, hæ incidendæ; ubi linamentum, id est immutandum: que id quod imponitur madefaciendum rosa et vino.

Si inflammatio increscit, cataplasma ex lenticula et melle adjiciendum prioribus, vel ex malicorio, quod coctum sit in austero vino, vel ex his mixtis. Si inflammatio non conquirit sub his,

## TRANSLATION.

This being done, the testicle is to be replaced, and the divided edges of the scrotum are to be united by sutures; neither ought these to be few, lest the adhesion be incomplete (?) and the cure prove tedious; nor too many, lest they increase the inflammation. And here too we must guard against any blood being left in the scrotum: afterwards glutinating applications are to be applied.

If, however, blood have found its way into the scrotum, or any coagulated blood have fallen down upon it, an incision should be made below it: and that being cleared away, a sponge moistened with strong vinegar must be applied round it. Now every incision made for such purposes, after being bound up, ought not to be loosened for the first five days, if there be no pain: but only the wool or sponge to be sprinkled with vinegar twice a day: if there be pain, it is to be loosened on the third day, and where there are clasps, they must be cut; and where lint that must be changed; and that which is put on must be moistened with rose-oil and wine.

If inflammation increase, a cataplasm made of lentils and honey is to be added to the former, or one of pomegranate-rind, boiled in austere wine, or a mixture of these two. If the inflammation do not subside under these applications,



conquierit, post diem quintum multa calida aqua vulnus fovendum, donec scrotum ipsum et extenuetur, et rugosius fiat: tum imponendum cataplasma ex triticea farina, cui resina pinea adjecta sit: quæ ipsa, si robustus curatur, ex aceto; si tener, ex melle coquenda sunt. Neque dubium est, quodcumque vitium fuit, si magna inflammatio est, quin ea, quæ pus movent, imponenda sint.

Quod si pus in ipso scroto ortum est, paulum id incidi debet, ut exitus detur; linamentumque eatenus imponendum est, ut foramen tegat. Inflammatione finita, propter nervos propiore cataplasmate, dein cerato utendum est. Hæc proprie ad ejusmodi vulnera pertinent: cetera, et in curatione, et in victu, similia iis esse debent, quæ in alio quoque vulnerum genere præcepimus.

## ORDO.

post quintum diem, (vulnus) fovendum multa calida aqua, donec scrotum ipsum et extenuetur et fiat rugosius: tum cataplasma ex farina triticea, cui resina pinea adjecta sit, imponendum: quæ ipsa sunt coquenda ex aceto, si robustus curatur; si tener, ex melle. Neque est dubium, quodcumque fuit vitium, si est magna inflammatio, quin ea quæ movent pus, sint imponenda.

Quod si pus ortum est in scroto ipso, id debet incidi paulum, ut exitus detur; que linamentum est imponendum eatenus, ut tegat foramen. Inflammatione finita, est utendum propter nervos propiore cataplasmate, dein cerato. Hæc proprie pertinent ad vulnera ejusmodi: cetera, et in curatione et in victu, debent esse similia iis quæ præcepimus in quoque alio genere vulnerum.

## TRANSLATION.

after the fifth day, the wound is to be fomented freely with warm water, until the scrotum itself be both attenuated and become more corrugated: then a cataplasm of wheat flour is to be applied, with the addition of pine resin: and if the patient be a robust man, these *ingredients* must be boiled up with vinegar; if more delicate, with honey. Nor is there a doubt, whatever may have been the nature of the disease, if the inflammation be considerable, but that those medicines which promote suppuration may be applied.

But if pus be secreted in the scrotum itself, a small incision ought to be made, and an outlet given to it, and as much lint laid over it as will cover the opening. The inflammation having subsided, we must employ the last-mentioned cataplasm, on account of the nerves, and then cerate. *So far*, these instructions particularly belong to wounds of this kind. The whole of the subsequent treatment, whether curative or dietetic, ought to be conformable with those which we have given in all other kinds of wounds.

## CAP. XX.

## DE CURATIONE HERNIÆ.

HIS propositis ad singulas species veniendum est. Ac si cui parvulo puero intestinum descendit, ante scalpellum experienda vinctura est. Fascia ejus rei causa fit, cui imo loco pila assuta est ex panniculis facta, quæ ad repellendum intestinum ipsi illi subjicitur: deinde reliqua fasciæ pars arcte circumdatur. Sub quo sæpe et intus compellitur intestinum, et inter se tunicæ glutinantur.

Rursus, si ætas processit, multumque intestini descendisse ex tumore magno patet, adjiciunturque dolor et vomitus; quæ ex stercore, ex cruditate eo delapso, fere accidunt; scalpellum adhiberi sine perniciæ non posse, manifestum est: levandum tantummodo malum, et per alias curationes extrahendum est.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XX.

## DE CURATIONE INTESTINI.

HIS propositis est veniendum ad singulas species. Ac si intestinum descendit cui parvulo puero, ante scalpellum vinctura est experienda. Fascia fit causa ejus rei, cui imo loco pila facta ex panniculis est assuta, quæ subjicitur illi ipsi ad intestinum repellendum: deinde reliqua pars fasciæ circumdatur arcte. Sub quo sæpe et intestinum compellitur intus, et tunicæ glutinantur inter se.

Rursus, si ætas processit, que patet ex magno tumore multum intestini descendisse, que dolor et vomitus adjiciuntur; quæ fere accidunt ex stercore delapso eo ex cruditate, est manifestum scalpellum non posse adhiberi sine perniciæ, malum tantummodo levandum, et extrahendum per alias curationes.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XX.

## THE TREATMENT OF HERNIA.

THESE preliminaries having been explained, we shall now proceed to each particular species. If the intestine prolapse in an infant, a bandage ought to be tried before the scalpel is employed: for this purpose, a bandage is to be made furnished at one end with a pad composed of rags sewed together, which is to be applied underneath the intestine, in order to repress it inwards; then the other part of the bandage is to be brought closely round the body. Under this treatment the prolapsed intestine is frequently reduced, and the tunics united.

On the other hand, if the person be advanced in years, and it be evident from the size of the tumour that a large portion of intestine has descended, accompanied by pain and vomiting, which generally happens from the fæces passing down in that part from crudity, it is evident that the knife cannot be employed without imminent danger; the malady is therefore only to be alleviated, and the intestine liberated by some other means.

Sanguis mitti ex brachio debet: deinde, si vires patiuntur, imperanda tridui abstinencia est; si minus, certe prout corporis qualitas longissima. Eodem vero tempore superhabendum cataplasma ex lini semine, quod ante aliquis ex mulso decoxerit. Post hæc, et farina hordeacea cum resina injicienda; et is demittendus in solium aquæ calidæ, cui oleum quoque adjectum sit; dandumque aliquid cibi levis, calidi. Quidam etiam alvum ducunt. Id deducere aliquid in scrotum potest, educere ex eo non potest. Per ea vero, quæ supra scripta sunt, levato malo, si quando alias dolor reverterit, eadem erunt facienda.

Sine dolore quoque si multa intestina prolapsa sunt, secari supervacuum est: non quo non excludi a scroto possint; nisi tamen id inflammatio prohibuit; sed quo repulsa inguinibus immorentur, ibique tumorem excitent, atque ita fiat mali non finis, sed mutatio.

At in eo, quem scalpello curari oportebit, simul atque ad mediam tu-

## ORDO.

Sanguis debet mitti ex brachio: deinde, si vires patiuntur, abstinencia tridui est imperanda; si minus, certe quam longissima prout qualitas corporis. Vero eodem tempore cataplasma ex semine lini superhabendum, quod aliquis decoxerit ante ex mulso. Post hæc, et farina hordeacea cum resina, injicienda, et is demittendus in solium calidæ aquæ, cui oleum quoque adjectum sit; que aliquid levis calidi cibi dandum. Etiam quidam ducunt alvum. Id potest deducere aliquid in scrotum, non potest educere ex eo. Vero malo levato per ea quæ scripta sunt supra, si quando dolor reverterit, eadem erunt facienda.

Si multa intestina prolapsa sunt quoque sine dolore, est supervacuum secari; non quo non possint excludi a scroto; nisi tamen inflammatio prohibuit id; sed quo repulsa immorentur inguinibus, qui excitent tumorem ibi, atque ita non finis sed mutatio mali fiat.

At in eo quem oportebit curari scalpello, simul atque vulnus fac-

## TRANSLATION.

Blood should be taken from the arm: and then if the strength of the patient will permit of it, abstinence must be enjoined for three days; if otherwise, certainly as long as possible, according to the strength of the body. But, at the same time, a cataplasm of linseed meal is to be applied besides, which some persons boil with hydromel. After these both barley meal with resin must be applied, and the patient put into a warm bath, to which oil may be added, and some light warm food given to him. Some also open the bowels by enema. These means may carry something into the scrotum, but cannot bring any from thence. Now the malady having been mitigated by these means above detailed; if the pain return at any time, the same course must be repeated.

If a large portion of intestine descend unaccompanied by pain, it will be superfluous to make an incision; not but that it may be removed from the scrotum; unless however an inflammation prevent it; but being propelled thence, it remains in the groin, and forms a tumour there; and by this means only a change and not a termination of the malady.

But in a case where it will be proper to employ the knife, as soon as the



nicam, vulnus in inguine factum pervenerit, duobus hamulis ea juxta ipsas oras apprehendi debebit, dum diductis omnibus membranulis medicus eam liberet. Neque enim cum periculo lædatur, quæ excidenda est; cum intestinum esse, nisi sub ea, non possit. Ubi diducta autem erit, ab inguine usque ad testiculum incidi debebit, sic, ne is ipse lædatur; tum excidi. Fere tamen hanc curationem puerilis ætas, et modicum malum recipit.

Si vir robustus est, majusque id vitium est, extrahi testiculus non debet, sed in sua sede permanere. Id hoc modo fit. Inguen eadem ratione usque ad mediam tunicam scalpello aperitur; eaque tunica eodem modo duobus hamis excipitur, sic, ut a ministro testiculus eatenus contineatur, ne per vulnus exeat: tum ea tunica deorsum versus scalpello inciditur; sub eaque index digitus sinistræ manus ad imum testiculum demittitur, eumque ad plagam compellit: deinde dextræ manus duo digiti, pollex atque index, venam et arteriam et ner-

## ORDO.

tum in inguine pervenerit ad mediam tunicam, ea debebit apprehendi juxta oras ipsas duobus hamulis, dum medicus liberet eam, omnibus membranulis diductis. Enim neque quæ est excidenda lædatur cum periculo; cum intestinum non possit esse, nisi sub ea. Autem ubi diducta erit debebit incidi ab inguine usque ad testiculum, sic, ne is ipse lædatur; tum excidi. Tamen fere puerilis ætas, et modicum malum recipit hanc curationem.

Si vir est robustus, quæ id vitium est majus, testiculus debet non extrahi, sed permanere in sua sede. Id fit hoc modo. Inguen aperitur scalpello eadem ratione usque ad mediam tunicam; quæ ea tunica excipitur eodem modo duobus hamis, sic, ut testiculus contineatur a ministro eatenus, ne exeat per vulnus: tum ea tunica inciditur scalpello versus deorsum; quæ index digitus sinistræ manus demittitur sub ea ad imum testiculum, quæ compellit eum ad plagam: deinde duo digiti dextræ manus, pollex atque index, diducunt venam, et arteriam, et

## TRANSLATION.

incision in the groin shall have reached the middle coat, this must be seized near the edges with two little hooks, while the physician disengages it from all the small membranes, by drawing them apart. Nor is there any danger attendant on that which is to be cut, since the intestine cannot be injured, unless it lie below it. When it shall be separated, an incision ought to be made from the groin to the testicle, care being taken lest this itself be wounded, then it ought to be cut out. Yet for the most part, this operation is only practicable in children, and in cases where the disease is not far advanced.

But if it be a robust person, and the malady more extensive, the testicle ought not to be drawn from its natural situation, but to remain in its place. The operation is performed in this manner. The groin is to be opened in the same way by a scalpel, as far as the middle tunic, and this tunic secured in the same way with two hooks, and the testicle held by an assistant, lest it should escape by the wound; this tunic then must be incised in a direction downwards with a scalpel; then the index finger of the left hand is to be introduced below it, to raise it towards the wound: afterwards, the thumb and forefinger of

vum tunicamque eorum a superiore tunica diducunt. Quod si aliquæ membranulæ prohibent, scalpello resolvuntur, donec ante oculos tota jam tunica sit. Excisis, quæ excidenda sunt, repositoque testiculo, ab ora quoque ejus vulneris, quod in inguine est, demenda habenula paulo latior est; quo major plaga sit, et plus creare carnis possit.

## ORDO.

nervum, quæ tunicam eorum a superiore tunica. Quod si aliquæ membranulæ prohibent, resolvuntur scalpello, donec tota tunica sit jam ante oculos. Excisis, quæ sunt excidenda, quæ testiculo reposito, habenula paulo latior est demenda quoque ab ora ejus vulneris quod est in inguine, quo plaga sit major, et possit creare plus carnis.

## TRANSLATION.

the right hand, separate the vein, artery, and cord, together with their tunic, from the superior tunic. But if any small membranes make this an obstacle, they must be disengaged by the scalpel, until the entire tunic be brought into view. Having excised all that is necessary to be excised, and the testicle being replaced, a pretty broad slip is to be taken from the edges of the wound which is in the groin, in order to enlarge the opening, and that it may generate more flesh.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE OMENTI CURATIONE.

1. At si omentum descendit, eodem quidem modo, quo supra scriptum est, aperiendum inguen, diducendæque tunicæ sunt: considerandum autem est, majorne is modus, an exiguus sit. Nam quod parvulum est, super inguen in alvum vel digito vel averso specillo repellendum est: si

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE CURATIONE OMENTI.

1. At si omentum descendit, inguen aperiendum quidem eodem modo quo scriptum est supra, quæ tunicæ sunt diducendæ: autem est considerandum, ne is modus sit major, an exiguus. Nam quod est parvulum est repellendum vel digito vel averso specillo super inguen in alvum: si est plus,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXI.

## THE TREATMENT OF EPIPLOCELE.

1. BUT if the OMENTUM have prolapsed, the groin must be opened, and the tunics separated in the same manner as directed above; but it must be considered whether it be a large or small portion of it. For when it is small, it must be forced back into the abdomen, either with the finger, or by the handle of the probe

plus est, sinere oportet dependere, quantum ex utero prolapsum est; idque adurentibus medicamentis illinere, donec emoriatur et excidat.

Quidam hic quoque duo lina acu trajiciunt, binisque singulorum capitibus diversas partes adstringunt; sub quo æque, sed tardius emoriatur. Adjicitur tamen hic quoque celeritati, si omentum super vinculum illinitur medicamentis, quæ sic exedunt, ne erodant: *σηπτά* Græci vocant. Fuerunt etiam, qui omentum forfice præciderent: quod in parvulo non est necessarium: si majus est, potest profusionem sanguinis facere; siquidem omentum quoque venis quibusdam, etiam majoribus illigatum est.

Neque vero, si discisso ventre id prolapsum forfice præciditur, cum et emortuum sit, et aliter tutius avelli non possit, inde huc exemplum transferendum est. Vulnus autem curari, si relictum omentum est, sutura debet: si id amplius fuit, et extra emortuum est, excisis oris, sicut supra propositum est.

#### ORDO.

oportet sinere quantum prolapsum est ex utero dependere; que illinere id adurentibus medicamentis, donec emoriatur et excidat.

Hic quoque quidam trajiciunt duo lina acu, que adstringunt diversas partes binis capitibus singulorum; sub quo emoriatur æque sed tardius. Tamen adjicitur quoque celeritati hic si omentum illinitur super vinculum medicamentis quæ exedunt sic, ne erodant: Græci vocant *σηπτά*. Etiam fuerunt, qui præciderent omentum forfice: quod est non necessarium in parvulo: si est majus, potest facere profusionem sanguinis: siquidem omentum quoque est illigatum quibusdam etiam majoribus venis.

Vero neque si ventre discisso id prolapsum præciditur forfice, cum et emortuum sit, et possit non avelli tutius aliter; est exemplum transferendum inde huc. Autem vulnus debet curari sutura, si omentum relictum est: si id fuit amplius, et emortuum est extra, oris excisis, sicut propositum est supra.

#### TRANSLATION.

over the groin: if it be more considerable, it will be necessary to suffer that portion which has prolapsed out of the abdomen to remain so, and to anoint it with caustic applications, till it mortify and slough away.

Some persons pass a needle in this case armed with a double thread, and tie the two ends of each the contrary way, by which it mortifies with equal certainty, but more slowly. We may accelerate this process, by applying such medicaments on the omentum above the ligature as shall waste the parts without corroding them: the Greeks term these Septics. There have been others who have cut away the omentum with the scissors; which is unnecessary when the portion is small, and if very great, it may occasion a profuse hæmorrhage; since the omentum is connected to some even of the largest veins.

But this method cannot be justified by cases drawn from such accidents as the abdomen being wounded, when that part of the omentum is cut away by the scissors, because it may have become dead, and could not be removed more safely in any other way. But if the omentum be returned, the wound ought to be cured with sutures: if that be greater, and has become mortified externally, the edges of the wound must be excised, as has been proposed above.



2. Si vero humor intus est, incidendum est, in pueris quidem, inguen; nisi in his quoque id liquoris ejus major modus prohibet: in viris vero, et ubicumque multus humor subest, scrotum. Deinde, si inguen incisum est, eo protractis tunicis, humor effundi debet: si scrotum, et sub hoc protinus vitium est, nihil aliud quam humor effundendus, abscindendæque membranæ sunt, si quæ eum continuerunt; deinde eluendum id ex aqua, quæ vel salem adjectum, vel nitrum habeat: si sub media, imave tunica, totæ eæ extra scrotum collocandæ, excidendæque sunt.

## ORDO.

2. Vero si humor est intus inguen, est incidendum in pueris quidem; nisi in his quoque major modus ejus liquoris prohibet id: vero in viris, et ubicumque multus humor subest, scrotum. Deinde in inguen incisum est, tunicis protractis eo, humor debet effundi: si scrotum, et vitium est protinus sub hoc, nihil aliud quam humor effundendus, quæ membranæ sunt abscindendæ, si quæ continuerunt eum; deinde id eluendum ex aqua, quæ habeat vel salem vel nitrum adjectum: si sub media ve ima tunica, totæ eæ sunt collocandæ extra scrotum, quæ excidendæ.

## TRANSLATION.

2. But if the hernia be produced by a fluid within the membranes in the groin, an incision must be made in children; unless too large a quantity of this fluid prove an obstacle to the operation in that place: but in men, and wherever there is a large quantity, the scrotum must be incised. Then, if the incision be made in the groin, the tunics must be drawn out at that part, and the fluid evacuated: if at the scrotum, and the disease be immediately under that tunic, nothing should be done but to evacuate the fluid, and to cut away any of the membranes that may have contained it: then it must be washed with water, and an addition either of salt or nitre: if the disease be within the middle or interior tunic, the whole of these are to be taken entirely out of the scrotum, and cut off.

## CAP. XXII.

## DE RAMICIS CURATIONE.

RAMEX autem, si super ipsum scrotum est, adurendus est tenuibus et acutis ferramentis, quæ ipsis venis infigantur; cum eo, ne amplius quam has urant; maximeque, ubi inter se implicatæ glomerantur, eo ferrum id admovendum est; tum super farina ex aqua frigida subacta injicienda est; utendumque eo vinculo, quod idoneum esse ani curationibus posui: tertio die lenticula cum melle imponenda est: post, ejectis crustis, ulcera melle purganda, rosa implenda, ad cicatricem aridis linamentis perducenda sunt. Quibus vero super mediam tunicam venæ tument, incidendum inguen est, atque tunica promenda, ab eaque venæ digito vel manubriolo scalpelli separandæ. Qua parte vero inhærebunt, et ab superiore et

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXII.

## DE CURATIONE RAMICIS.

AUTEM ralex, si est super scrotum ipsum, est adurendus tenuibus et acutis ferramentis, quæ infigantur venis ipsis; cum eo, ne urant amplius quam has; que ubi implicatæ inter se glomerantur, id ferrum est maxime admovendum eo, tum farina subacta ex frigida aqua est injicienda super; que utendum eo vinculo quod posui esse idoneum curationibus ani; tertio die lenticula cum melle est imponenda: post, crustis ejectis, ulcera sunt purganda melle, implenda rosa, perducendum ad cicatricem aridis linamentis. Vero quibus venæ tument super mediam tunicam, inguen est incidendum, atque tunica promenda, que venæ seperandæ ab eo digito vel manubriolo scalpelli. Vero qua parte inhærebunt, et ab superiore et

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXII.

## THE TREATMENT OF A RAMEX OR VARICOCELE.

Now varicocele situated on the scrotum itself, must be cauterized with small sharp irons, which should be thrust into the veins themselves, provided they burn nothing else; and it is particularly necessary to apply the cautery where they are contorted and rolled together: then flour mixed up with cold water is to be laid on the part, and such a bandage applied as I have recommended for the anus: on the third day lentils with honey are to be put on: then when the crusts have been detached, the ulcers must be cleansed with honey, incarnated with rose-oil, and cicatrized with dry lint. But in those cases where the veins tumify above the middle coat, the groin must be incised, and the tunic brought out, the vessels being separated from it by the finger, or by the handle of the

ab inferiore parte lino vinciendæ, tum sub ipsis vinculis præcidendæ, reponendusque testiculus est.

At ubi supra tertiam tunicam ramex insedit, mediam excidi necesse est. Deinde, si duæ tresve venæ tument, et ita pars aliqua obsidetur, ut major eo vitio vacet, idem faciendum, quod supra scriptum est; ut et ab inguine, et a testiculo deligatæ venæ præcidantur, isque condatur. Sin totum id ramex obsederit, per plagam demittendus digitus index erit, subjiciendusque venis, sic, ut paulatim eas protrahat; eæque adducendæ, donec is testiculus par alteri fiat: tum fibulæ oris sic injiciendæ, ut simul eas quoque venas comprehendant.

Id hoc modo fit. Acus ab exteriori parte oram vulneris perforat: tum non per ipsam venam, sed per membranam ejus immittitur, per eamque in alteram oram compellitur. Venæ vulnerari non debent, ne sanguinem fundant. Membrana semper inter has venas est, ac neque periculum affert, et filo comprehensa illas

## ORDO.

et ab inferiore parte vinciendæ lino; tum præcidendæ sub vinculis ipsis, quæ testiculus est reponendus.

At ubi ramex insedit supra tertiam tunicam, est necesse mediam excidi. Deinde, si duæ vel tres venæ tument, et aliqua pars obsidetur ita ut major vacet eo vitio, idem faciendum quod scriptum est supra; ut venæ deligatæ et ab inguine et a testiculo, præcidantur, quæ is condatur. Sin ramex obsederit totum id, index digitus erit demittendus per plagam, quæ subjiciendus venis, sic ut protrahat eas paulatim; quæ eæ adducendæ, donec is testiculus fiat par alteri: tum fibulæ sic injiciendæ oris, ut comprehendant simul eas venas quoque.

Id fit hoc modo. Acus perforat oram vulneris ab exteriori parte, tum immittitur non per venam ipsam, sed per membranam ejus, quæ compellitur per eam in alteram oram. Venæ debent non vulnerari, ne fundant sanguinem. Membrana est semper inter has venas, ac neque affert periculum, et comprehensa filo, tenet illas

## TRANSLATION.

knife. Where they adhere, a ligature is to be applied both above and below: then they must be cut through close to the ligatures, and the testicle replaced.

If the ramex be situated on the third tunic, the middle must necessarily be cut through. Then, if two or three veins swell, and the greater part be free from the disease, we must pursue the same course as has been described above, dividing the veins, previously tied both at the groin and at the testicle, and the latter replaced. But should the ramex involve the whole of it, the forefinger must be introduced through the wound, put under the veins, and draw them out gradually and uniformly until the one testicle be equal with the other: then clasps are to be put on the lips of the wound, in such a manner as shall embrace at the same time those veins also.

It is effected in this manner: a needle passes through the edge of the wound from the exterior part, then it is not sent through the vein itself, but its membrane, and from thence is forced into the other lip. The veins ought not to be wounded, lest they pour out blood. There is always a membrane between those veins, and prevents any danger, and being included by the threads, holds them



abunde tenet. Itaque etiam satis est, duas fibulas esse. Tum venæ, quæcumque protractæ sunt, in ipsum inguen averso specillo compelli debent. Solvendi fibulas tempus, inflammatione finita, et purgato vulnere, est; ut una simul et oras et venas cicatrix devinciatur.

Ubi vero inter imam tunicam et ipsum testiculum nervumque ejus ramex ortus est, una curatio est, quæ totum testiculum abscindit. Nam neque ad generationem quidquam is confert, et omnibus indecore, quibusdam etiam cum dolore dependet. Sed tum quoque inguen incidendum; media tunica promenda, atque excidenda est; idem in ima faciendum; nervusque, ex quo testiculus dependet, præcidendus: post id venæ et arteriæ ad inguen lino deligandæ, et infra vinculum abscindendæ sunt.

## ORDO.

abunde. Itaque etiam est satis esse duas fibulas. Tum quæcumque venæ protractæ sunt, debent compelli in inguen ipsum averso specillo. Tempus solvendi fibulas est, inflammatione finita, et vulnere purgato, ut cicatrix devinciatur una simul et oras et venas.

Vero ubi ramex ortus est inter imam tunicam et testiculum ipsumque nervum ejus, una curatio est, quæ abscindit totum testiculum. Nam is neque confert quidquam ad generationem, et dependet omnibus indecore, quibusdam etiam cum dolore. Sed tum quoque inguen incidendum; media tunica est promenda, atque excidenda, idem faciendum in ima; que nervus, ex quo testiculus dependet præcidendus: post id venæ et arteriæ deligandæ lino ad inguen, et sunt abscindendæ infra vinculum.

## TRANSLATION.

safe enough. Therefore two clasps will be sufficient. Then whatever veins have been brought out should be returned into the groin with the *round* end of the probe. The time for removing the clasps is, when the inflammation has terminated, and the ulcer cleansed, that a cicatrix may at once unite both the edges and the veins.

When the ramex (*varicocele* or *circocoele*) has taken place between the lower coat of the testicle itself and its cord, the only remedy is to remove the whole of the testicle. For it is entirely useless in the act of procreation, and hangs down in a dangling unseemly manner withal, in some even with pain. Even in this case, the groin must be incised, and the middle coat drawn out and cut away: the same must be done with the lowest tunic, and the nerve (*cord*) by which the testicle depends to be cut off: after this the veins and arteries must be secured by a ligature at the groin, and then to be cut off below it.

## CAP. XXIII.

DE CARNE, QUÆ INTER TUNICAS  
TESTICULORUM CONCREVIT, ET DE  
NERVO INDURATO.

CARO quoque, si quando inter tunicas  
increvit, nihil dubii est, quin exi-  
menda sit: sed id, ipso scroto inciso,  
fieri commodius est.

At si nervus induruit, curari res  
neque manu, neque medicamento po-  
test. Urgent enim febres ardentes,  
et aut virides, aut nigri vomitus:  
præter hæc, ingens sitis, et linguæ  
aspritudo; fereque a die tertio spu-  
mans bilis alvo cum rosione redditur:  
ac neque assumi facile cibus, neque  
contineri potest: neque multo post  
extremæ partes frigescunt, tremor ori-  
tur, manus sine ratione extenduntur;  
deinde in fronte frigidus sudor, eumque  
mors sequitur.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIII.

DE CARNE, QUÆ CONCREVIT IN-  
TER TUNICAS TESTICULORUM, ET  
DE INDURATO NERVO.

QUOQUE si quando caro increvit  
inter tunicas, est nihil dubii quin  
sit eximenda: sed est commodius  
id fieri, scroto ipso inciso.

At si nervus induruit, res po-  
test ~~carari~~ neque manu, neque me-  
dicamento. Enim ardentes febres,  
et aut virides aut nigri vomitus ur-  
gent; præter hæc, ingens sitis et  
aspritudo linguæ; que fere a tertio  
die spumans bilis redditur alvo  
cum rosione: ac cibus potest ne-  
que assumi facile, neque contineri:  
neque multo post extremæ partes  
frigescunt, tremor oritur, manus  
extenduntur sine ratione; deinde  
frigidus sudor in fronte, que mors  
sequitur eum.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIII.

FLESHY TUMOURS (TERMED SARCOCELE) GROWING BETWEEN THE  
COATS OF THE TESTICLE AND THE SPERMATIC CORD.

IF a fleshy tumour grow at any time between the tunics, without doubt it  
must be removed; and the most proper method of effecting this, is by an incision  
in the scrotum.

But if the nerve (*cord*) be indurated, the case neither admits of being cured  
by an operation, nor by medicine. For the patient is oppressed with ardent  
fever, and either green or black vomiting, besides a violent thirst, and furred  
state of the tongue; and generally about the third day frothy bile is voided by  
stool, producing excoriation, and food can neither be easily taken, nor retained:  
soon afterward the extremities become cold; a tremor comes on; the hands are  
extended involuntarily, then a cold sweat on the forehead, which is followed by  
death.

## CAP. XXIV.

## DE RAMICE INGUINIS.

UBI vero in ipso inguine ramex est, si tumor modicus est, semel incidi; si major, duabus lineis debet, ut medium excidatur: deinde, non extracto testiculo, sicut intestinis quoque prolapsis interdum fieri docui, colligendæ venæ, vinciendæque, ubi tunicis inhærebunt, et sub his nodis præcidendæ sunt. Neque quidquam novi curatio vulneris ejus requirit.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIV.

## DE RAMICE INGUINIS.

VERO ubi ramex est in inguine ipso, si tumor est modicus, debet incidi semel; si major, duabus lineis, ut mediam excidatur: deinde, testiculo non extracto, sicut docui interdum fieri quoque, intestinis prolapsis, venæ colligendæ, que vinciendæ ubi inhærebunt tunicis, et sunt præcidendæ sub his nodis. Neque curatio ejus vulneris requirit quidquam novi.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIV.

## OF A RAMEX OR CIRCOCELE IN THE GROIN.

WHEN there is a ramex in the groin, if the tumour be small, one incision ought to be sufficient; if considerable, two will be requisite, in order that the space between the two may be excised: afterwards, without drawing out the testicle, as I have above shown to be practised in a rupture of the intestines, the veins must be taken up and tied, where they adhere to the coats, and be divided below these ligatures. The treatment of this wound is in no way different from others.



## CAP. XXV.

AD TEGENDAM GLANDEM COLIS SI  
NUDA EST.

1. AB his ad ea transeundum est, quæ in cole ipso fiunt. In quo si glans nuda est, vultque aliquis eam decoris causa tegere, fieri potest: sed expeditius in puero, quam in viro; in eo, cui id naturale est, quam in eo, qui quarumdam gentium more circumciscus est; in eo, cui glans parva juxtaque eam cutis spatiosior, brevis ipse coles est, quam in quo contraria his sunt.

Curatio autem eorum, quibus id naturale est, ejusmodi est. Cutis circa glandemprehenditur et extenditur, donec illam ipsam condatur; ibique deligatur: deinde, juxta pubem, in orbem tergus inciditur, donec coles nudetur; magnaue cura cavetur, ne vel urinæ iter, vel venæ, quæ ibi sunt, incidantur. Eo facto, cutis ad vin-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXV.

AD TEGENDAM GLANDEM COLIS,  
SI EST NUDA.

1. Est transeundum ab his ad ea quæ fiunt in cole ipso. In quo si glans est nuda, quæ aliquis vult tegere eam causa decoris, potest fieri: sed expeditius in puero quam in viro; in eo cui id est naturale, quam in eo qui circumciscus est more quarumdam gentium; in eo cui glans est parva quæ citus juxta eam spatiosior, coles ipse brevis, quam in quo sunt contraria his.

Autem curatio eorum quibus id est naturale est ejusmodi. Cutis circa glandemprehenditur et extenditur, donec condatur illam ipsam; quæ deligatur ibi: deinde, tergus inciditur in orbem juxta pubem, donec coles nudetur; quæ cavetur magna cura, ne vel iter urinæ, vel venæ, quæ sunt ibi, incidantur. Eo facto, cutis incli-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXV.

## TO COVER THE GLANS PENIS WHEN EXPOSED.

1. FROM these we must proceed to the operations upon the penis itself. If the glans be bare, and the person is desirous, for the sake of appearance, to have it covered, it may be done, but more expeditiously in a boy than in an adult; and more easily in one to whom it is congenital, than in him who, according to the custom of some nations, has been circumcised: and also where the glans is small, and the prepuce about it more ample, the penis itself short, than in him where there is the reverse of these circumstances.

The cure of those in whom it is congenital, is thus performed. The skin about the glans is to be taken hold of, and extended until it cover it, and tied there: then a circular incision is made near the pubes until the penis is laid bare: and great care will be necessary, lest the passage for the urine, or the veins there, be divided. This being done, the skin is drawn towards the ligature, so that a

culum inclinatur, nudaturque circa pubem velut circulus; eoque linamenta dantur, ut caro increseat, et id impleat: satisque velamenti supra latitudo plagæ præstat. Sed, donec cicatrix sit, vinctum esse id debet; in medio tantum relicto exiguo urinæ itinere.

At in eo, qui circumcisis est, sub circulo glandis scalpello diducenda cutis ab interiore cole est. Non ita dolet, quia, summo soluto, diduci deorsum usque ad pubem manu potest; neque ideo sanguis profluit. Resoluta autem cutis rursus extenditur ultra glandem: tum multa frigida aqua fovetur; emplastrumque circa datur, quod valenter inflammationem reprimat; proximisque diebus, et prope a fame victus est, ne forte eam partem satietas excitet. Ubi jam sine inflammatione est, deligari debet a pube usque circulum: super glandem autem, adverso emplastro imposito, induci. Sic enim fit, ut inferior pars glutinetur; superior ita sanescat, ne inhæreat.

2. Contra, si glans ita contexta est, ut nudari non possit (quod vitium

## ORDO.

natur ad vinculum, que velut circulus nudatur circa pubem; que linamenta dantur eo ut caro increseat, et impleat id: que latitudo plagæ supra præstat satis velamenti. Sed donec sit cicatrix, id debet esse vinctum; tantum exiguo itinere urinæ relicto in medio.

At in eo qui circumcisis est cutis est diducenda ab interiore cole scalpello sub circulo glandis. Non dolet ita quia, summo soluto, potest diduci deorsum usque ad pubem manu; neque ideo sanguis profluit. Antem cutis resoluta, extenditur rursus ultra glandem: tum fovetur multa frigida aqua; que emplastrum datur circa, quod reprimat valenter inflammationem; que proximis diebus et victus est prope a fame, ne forte satietas excitet eam partem. Ubi est jam sine inflammatione, debet deligari a pube usque circulum: autem induci super glandem, emplastro imposito adverso. Enim fit sic, ut inferior pars glutinetur; superior sanescat, ita ne inhæreat.

2. Contra, si glans est contexta ita, ut non possit nudari, quod

## TRANSLATION.

denuded circle appears near the pubes: over this lint must be applied, that the flesh may grow and fill it up, and the breadth of the wound may afford a sufficient covering to the glans. But the ligature must be continued till a cicatrix be formed, leaving in the middle a small space for the passage of the urine.

But in a person who has been circumcised, an incision is to be made round the glans, detaching the skin from the body of the penis beneath with a knife. This is not very painful, because the extremity being loosened, it may be drawn backwards by the hand as far as the pubes, and no hæmorrhage ensues. The skin being freed, is extended again over the glans: then it should be bathed with plenty of cold water, and a plaster applied round it sufficiently efficacious to repress inflammation: on the subsequent days, the most rigid abstinence must be enjoined, lest by chance a full diet might excite an erection of that part. When the inflammation has terminated, it ought to be bound from the pubes to the *corona glandis*: a plaster being first put on, then the skin is to be brought over it. For it so happens that the lower part may be united, and the upper heal without adhesion.

2. On the contrary, if the glans be covered in such a manner, that the pre-

Græci φίμωσιν appellant) aperienda est: quod hoc modo fit. Subter a summa ora, cutis inciditur recta linea usque ad frenum; atque ita superius tergitur relaxatum, cedere retro potest. Quod si parum sic profectum est, aut propter angustias, aut propter duri-  
 tiem tergoris, protinus triangula forma cutis ab inferiore parte excidenda est, sic, ut vertex ejus ad frenum, basis in tergo extremo sit. Tum superdanda linamenta sunt, aliaque medicamenta quæ ad sanitatem perducant. Necesse-  
 sarium autem est, donec cicatrix sit, conquiescere: nam ambulatio, at-  
 tendo ulcus sordidum reddit.

3. Infibulare quoque adolescentu-  
 los interdum vocis, interdum valetu-  
 dinis causa quidam consueverunt: ejus-  
 que hæc ratio est. Cutis, quæ super  
 glandem est, extenditur, notaturque  
 utrimque a lateribus atramento, qua  
 perforetur; deinde remittitur. Si su-  
 per glandem notæ revertuntur, nimis  
 apprehensum est, et ultra notari de-  
 bet: si glans ab his libera est, is lo-  
 cus idoneus fibulæ est. Tum, qua

## ORDO.

vitium Græci appellant φίμωσιν  
 (phymosis), est aperienda: quod  
 fit hoc modo. Cutis inciditur sub-  
 ter a summa ora recta linea usque  
 ad frenum; atque superius tergitur  
 ita relaxatum, potest cedere retro.  
 Quod si profectum est parum sic,  
 aut propter angustias, aut propter  
 duri-  
 tiem tergoris, protinus entis est  
 excidenda ab inferiore parte trian-  
 gula forma, sic, ut vertex ejus sit  
 ad frenum, basis in extremo tergo.  
 Tum linamenta sunt superdanda,  
 que alia medicamenta quæ perdu-  
 cant ad sanitatem. Autem est ne-  
 cessarium conquiescere donec sit  
 cicatrix: nam ambulatio, atterendo,  
 reddit ulcus sordidum.

3. Quidam consueverunt quoque  
 infibulare adolescentulos, inter-  
 dum causa vocis, interdum valetu-  
 dinis; que hæc est ratio ejus.  
 Cutis quæ est super glandem ex-  
 tenditur, que notatur utrinque, a  
 lateribus, atramento, qua perfo-  
 retur; deinde remittitur. Si notæ  
 revertuntur super glandem, nimis  
 apprehensum est, et debet notari  
 ultra: si glans est libera ab his, is  
 locus est idoneus fibulæ. Tum, qua

## TRANSLATION.

puce cannot be drawn back (which malady the Greeks term PHYMOSIS) it must be opened; which is done in this manner. An incision is to be made underneath in a direct line from the extremity of the prepuce as far as the frenum: and the upper part being thus relaxed, may be drawn back. But if this method avail little, either on account of the contraction, or from the hardness of the prepuce, a piece of the cuticle must be cut out from below, in the form of a triangle, with its vertex towards the frenum, the base forming the extremity of the prepuce. Then lint is to be applied over it, and other dressings tending to heal it. But it will be necessary to enjoin rest until there be a cicatrix formed: for walking induces a foul ulcer from the friction.

Some surgeons had a practice of infibulating (*clasp*ing) boys, sometimes for pre-  
 serving their voices, sometimes for the sake of their health: it was done in this man-  
 ner. The prepuce which covers the glans is extended on both sides, and marked  
 with ink at the part where it is to be performed, and then released. If these marks  
 return over the glans, too much has been taken up, and it ought to be marked  
 nearer the extremity: if the glans be free from these, that part will be proper for  
 applying the clasp. Then where the marks are, the skin is to be pierced with a



notæ sunt, cutis acu filum ducente transuitur, ejusque fili capita inter se deligantur, quotidieque id movetur, donec circa foramina cicatriculæ fiant. Ubi eæ confirmatæ sunt, exempto filo fibula additur, quæ, quo levior, eo melior est. Sed hoc quidem sæpius inter supervacua, quam inter necessaria est.

## ORDO.

notæ sunt, cutis transuitur acu ducente filum, que capita ejus fili deligantur inter se, que id movetur quotidie, donec cicatriculæ fiant circa foramina. Ubi eæ confirmatæ sunt, filo exempto fibula additur, quæ, quo levior, eo melior est. Sed hoc, quidem, est sæpius inter supervacua quam inter necessaria.

## TRANSLATION.

needle and thread, and the two ends of this thread are to be tied together, and moved every day until small cicatrices are formed around the foramina. When these have been confirmed, the thread may be withdrawn and a clasp applied, and the lighter it is, so much the better. But indeed this operation is oftener superfluous than necessary.

## CAP. XXVI.

DE DIFFICULTATE URINÆ REDDENDÆ, ET DE CALCULO, CURATIONIBUSQUE EORUM.

1. RES vero interdum cogit emoliri manu urinam, cum illa non redditur, aut quia senectute iter ejus collapsum est, aut quia calculus, vel concretum aliquid ex sanguine intus se opposuit:

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVI.

DE DIFFICULTATE REDDENDÆ URINÆ, ET DE CALCULO, CURATIONIBUSQUE EORUM.

1. VERO res interdum cogit emoliri urinam manu, cum illa redditur non, aut, quia iter ejus collapsum est, aut quia calculus, vel aliquid ex sanguine concretum opposuit se intus: ac quoque me-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVI.

ON THE DIFFICULTY OF PASSING URINE, OF STONE IN THE BLADDER, AND THE METHOD OF EXTRACTION.

1. A CASE may occur sometimes that will require the assistance of art to draw off the urine, when it is obstructed; either because the urethra has collapsed from old age, or because a stone, or some other concretion from the blood, has opposed

ac mediocris quoque inflammatio sæpe eam reddi naturaliter prohibet. Idque non in viris tantummodo, sed in fœminis quoque interdum necessarium est.

Ergo æneæ fistulæ fiunt; quæ, ut omni corpori, ampliori minorique sufficiant, ad mares, tres; ad fœminas, duæ medico habendæ sunt: ex virilibus maxima, decem et quinque digitorum; media, duodecim; minima, novem: ex muliebribus major, novem; minor, sex. Incurvas vero esse eas paulum, sed magis viriles oportet, lævesque admodum; ac neque nimis plenas, neque nimis tenues.

Homo tum resupinus eo modo, quo in curatione ani figuratur, super subsellium aut lectum collocandus est. Medicus autem a dextro latere, sinistra quidem manu colem masculi continere, dextra vero fistulam demittere in iter urinæ debet: atque ubi ad cervicem vesicæ ventum est, simul cum cole fistulam inclinatam in ipsam vesicam compellere, eamque, urina reddita, recipere. Fœmina brevius

## ORDO.

diocris inflammatio sæpe prohibet eam reddi naturaliter. Que id est necessarium, non in viris tantummodo, sed interdum quoque in feminis.

Ergo æneæ fistulæ fiunt; quæ, ut sufficiant omni corpori, ampliori que minori, tres sunt habendæ medico, ad mares; duæ ad feminas: maxima ex virilibus, decem et quinque digitorum; media duodecim, minima novem; major ex muliebribus novem, minor sex. Vero oportet eas esse paulum incurvas, sed viriles magis, que admodum læves, ac neque nimis plenas neque nimis tenues.

Tum homo est collocandus resupinus super subsellium aut lectum, eo modo quo figuratur in curatione ani. Autem medicus a dextro latere debet continere colem masculi quidem sinistra manu, vero demittere fistulam dextra in iter urinæ: atque ubi ventum est ad cervicem vesicæ, compellere fistulam inclinatam simul cum cole in vesicam ipsam, que urina reddita, recipere eam. Femina ha-

## TRANSLATION.

itself internally; even a slight inflammation frequently prevents that from being discharged naturally. And this is requisite not only in men, but sometimes also in women.

For this purpose then, brazen catheters are made: and that they may serve in all cases, both large and small, the surgeon should keep by him three for males and two for females. The largest male catheter should be fifteen fingers' breadth in length; the next, twelve; and the smallest, nine: the largest female catheter should be nine fingers' breadth in length; and the smallest, six. Now these ought to be slightly curved, but the male catheters more particularly so, and very smooth, and neither too stout nor too slender.

The patient then is to be laid on his back in the same manner as is described for the operation in the anus, either on a couch or on a bed. The physician being placed on the right side, ought to take hold of the penis with his left hand if it be a male, and with his right to introduce the catheter into the urinary passage, and when it has reached the neck of the bladder, he is to incline the instrument, together with the penis, slightly downwards, and push it into the bladder itself, and when the urine is evacuated to withdraw it again. In a female,

urinæ iter, simul et rectius habet; quod mammulæ simile, inter imas oras super naturale positum, non minus sæpe auxilio eget, aliquanto minus difficultatis exigit.

Nonnumquam etiam prolapsus in ipsam fistulam calculus, quia subinde ea extenuatur, non longe ab exitu inhærescit. Eum, si fieri potest, oportet evellere, vel oriculario specillo, vel eo ferramento, quo in sectione calculus protrahitur. Si id fieri non potuit, cutis extrema quamplurimum attrahenda, et, condita glande, lino vincienda est: deinde a latere recta plaga coles incidendus, et calculus eximendus est: tum cutis remittenda. Sic enim fit, ut incisum colem integra pars cutis contegat, et urina naturaliter profluat.

2. Cum vesicæ vero, calculique facta mentio sit; locus ipse exigere videtur, ut subjiciam, quæ curatio calculosis, cum aliter succurri non potest, adhibeatur. Ad quam festinare, cum præceps sit, nullo modo convenit. Ac neque omni tempore,

#### ORDO.

bet iter urinæ brevius, et simul rectius; quod simile mammulæ, positum inter imas oras super naturale, eget sæpe non minus auxilio, exigit aliquanto minus difficultatis.

Nonnumquam etiam calculus prolapsus in fistulam ipsam, quia ea subinde extenuatur, inhærescit non longe ab exitu. Oportet evellere eum, si potest fieri, vel specillo oriculario, vel eo ferramento quo calculus protrahitur in sectione. Si id non potuit fieri, extrema cutis est attrahenda quamplurimum, et glande condita, vincienda lino: deinde coles est incidendus recta plaga a latere, et calculus eximendus: tum cutis remittenda. Enim sic fit, ut integra pars cutis contegat incisum colem, et urina profluat naturaliter.

2. Vero cum mentio facta sit vesicæ, quæ calculi, locus ipse videtur exigere, ut subjiciam quæ curatio adhibeatur calculosis, cum non potest succurri aliter. Festinare ad quam convenit nullo modo, cum sit præceps. Ac neque est id experiendum omni

#### TRANSLATION.

the urethra is both shorter and straighter than in the male, and its nipple-like orifice being situated between the labia pudenda and above the vagina; and it as frequently requires assistance, but it is attended with less difficulty.

Sometimes also a stone slips into the urethra itself, and as it becomes narrower, lodges not far from the orifice. It will be necessary to extract it if possible, either with an ear-probe, or with the instrument with which they extract the stone in lithotomy. If that cannot be done, the end of the prepuce is to be extended as far as possible, and the glans being covered, it must be made fast by a ligature: then a straight incision is to be made on the side of the penis, and the calculus extracted: afterwards the prepuce is to be liberated; for by this means the sound part of the skin covers the incision in the penis, and the urine will flow naturally.

2. Now since mention has been made of the bladder and stone, this circumstance seems to require of me the treatment applicable to calculous patients, when they cannot be relieved in any other way. Precipitation in this operation would be incompatible with the danger inseparable from it. Neither is it to be tried at



neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit; et si tantum mali subest, ut neque medicamentis vinci possit, neque etiam trahi posse videatur, quominus interposito aliquo spatio interimat. Non quo non interdum etiam temeraria medicina proficiat; sed quo sæpius utique in hoc fallat, in quo plura et genera et tempora periculi sunt. Quæ simul cum ipsa curatione proponam.

Igitur, ubi ultima experiri statutum est, ante aliquot diebus victu corpus præparandum est: ut modicos, ut salubres cibos, ut minime glutinosos assumat, ut aquam bibat. Ambulandi vero inter hæc exercitatione utatur, quo magis calculus ad vesicæ cervicem descendat. Quod an inciderit, digitis quoque, sicut in curatione docebo, demissis cognoscitur. Ubi ejus rei fides est, pridie is puer in jejunio continendus est; et tum loco calido curatio adhibenda, quæ hoc modo ordinatur.

Homo prævalens et peritus in sedi-

## ORDO.

tempore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio, sed vere solo; in eo corpore, quod jam excessit novem annos, nondum quatuordecim; et si tantum mali subest, ut possit neque vinci medicamentis, neque videatur etiam posse trahi, quo minus interimat aliquo spatio interposito. Non quo etiam temeraria medicina non proficiat interdum; sed quo sæpius utique fallat in hoc, in quo sunt et plura genera et tempora periculi. Quæ proponam simul cum curatione ipsa.

Igitur, ubi statutum est experiri ultima, corpus est præparandum aliquot diebus ante victu: ut assumat modicos, ut salubres, ut minime glutinosos cibos, ut bibat aquam. Vero inter hæc utatur exercitatione ambulandi, quo calculus descendat magis ad cervicem vesicæ. An quod inciderit cognoscitur, digitis quoque demissis, sicut docebo in curatione. Ubi est fides ejus rei, is puer continendus in jejunio pridie; et tum curatio adhibenda calido loco quæ ordinatur hoc modo.

Homo prævalens et peritus,

## TRANSLATION.

all seasons, nor in every age, nor in every case, but in spring alone; and only between the ages of nine and fourteen; and also when the case is so urgent, that it can neither be overcome by medicines, nor protracted, and that the patient must die if the operation is prolonged. Not but a rash operation now and then succeeds, but because it more frequently fails in this, because there are more kinds and seasons of danger. This I shall mention, together with the operation itself.

Now, when it has been determined on to try the last remedy, the body should be prepared by a proper regimen for some days previous; that is, food in moderation, salubrious, and by no means glutinous; and he must drink nothing but water. In the mean time the patient must take exercise by walking, in order to facilitate the descent of the stone to the neck of the bladder. Whether this has taken place may be known by introducing the fingers, as I shall explain in the operation. When that is certain, the boy must be kept the previous day without food: and then the operation is to be performed in a warm room in the following manner.

A strong and intelligent person being seated on a high stool, lays hold of the

li alto consedit, supinumque eum et aversum, super genua sua coxis ejus collocatis, comprehendit; reductisque ejus cruribus, ipsum quoque jubet, manibus ad suos poplites datis, eos, quam maxime possit, attrahere; simulque ipse sic eos continet. Quod si robustius corpus ejus est, qui curatur, duobus sedilibus junctis, duo valentes insidunt; quorum et sedilia et interiora crura inter se deligantur, ne diduci possint: tum is super duorum genua eodem modo collocatur; atque alter, prout consedit, sinistrum crus ejus, alter dextrum, simulque ipse poplites suos attrahit.

Sive autem unus, sive duo continent, super humeros ejus suis pectoribus incumbunt. Ex quibus evenit, ut inter ilia sinus super pubem sine ullis rugis sit extensus, et, in angustum compulsa vesica, facilius calculus capi possit. Præter hæc, etiamnum a lateribus duo valentes objiciuntur, qui circumstantes, labare vel unum vel duos, qui puerum continent, non sinunt.

Medicus deinde, diligenter ungui-

#### ORDO.

consedit in alto sedili; que comprehendit eum supinum et aversum, coxis ejus collocatis super sua genua; que cruribus ejus reductis, jubet ipsum quoque, manibus datis ad suos poplites, attrahere eos quam maxime possit; que simul ipse continet eos sic. Quod si corpus ejus qui curatur est robustius, duobus sedilibus junctis, duo valentes insidunt; et sedilia et interiora crura quorum deligantur inter se, ne possint diduci: tum is collocatur super genua duorum eodem modo; atque alter, prout consedit, attrahit sinistrum crus ejus, alter dextrum que simul ipse suos poplites.

Autem sive unus sive duo continent, incumbunt suis pectoribus super humeros ejus. Ex quibus evenit, ut sinus inter ilia super pubem sit extensus sine ullis rugis, et, vesica compulsa in angustum, calculus possit capi facilius. Præter hæc, etiamnum duo valentes objiciuntur a lateribus, qui circumstantes, non sinunt vel unum vel duos, qui continent puerum, labare.

Deinde medicus, unguibus cir-

#### TRANSLATION.

patient in a supine posture, with his back towards him, and his hips being placed on his knees, with his legs drawn backwards; he orders the patient to seize his own hams with his hands, and to draw them towards his body with all his power, and at the same time he secures them in that position. But if the patient be rather powerful, two able men must sit behind him on two contiguous seats; and both their seats and their legs next each other must be tied together to prevent their being drawn apart. Then he is placed on the knees of the two in the same manner, and the one, according as he sits, lays hold of his left leg, and the other of his right, and at the same time the patient himself draws up his hams.

But whether one or two persons hold him, they are to lean with their breasts over his shoulders. Whence it happens that the sinus above the pubes, between the ilia, is rendered free from any wrinkles, and the bladder being compressed into a small space, the stone may be seized more easily. Besides these, two strong persons should be placed, one on each side of the assistants who hold the boy, to prevent either the one or both from giving way.

Then the physician, having carefully pared his nails, introduces his index and

bus circumcisis, atque sinistra manu, duos ejus digitos, indicem et medium, leniter prius unum, deinde alterum in anum ejus demittit; dextræque digitos super imum abdomen leniter imponit; ne, si utrimque digiti circa calculum vehementer concurrerint, vesicam lædant. Neque vero festinanter in hac re, ut in plerisque, agendum est; sed ita, ut quam maxime id tuto fiat: nam læsa vesica nervorum distentiones cum periculo mortis excitat.

Ac primum circa cervicem quæritur calculus: ubi repertus, minore negotio expellitur. Et ideo dixi, ne curandum quidem, nisi cum hoc indicibus suis cognitum est. Si vero aut ibi non fuit, aut recessit retro, digiti ad ultimam vesicam dantur; paulatimque dextra quoque manus ejus ultra translata subsequitur.

Atque ubi repertus est calculus; qui necesse est in manus incidat; eo curiosius deducitur, quo minor læviorque est; ne effugiat, id est, ne sæpius agitanda vesica sit. Ergo ultra calculum dextra semper manus ejus

## ORDO.

cumcisis diligenter, atque sinistra manu demittit duos digitos ejus, indicem et medium, prius unum leniter, deinde alterum in anum ejus, que imponit leniter digitos dextræ super imum abdomen; ne, si digiti concurrerint utrimque vehementer circa calculum, lædant vesicam. Vero neque est agendum festinanter in hac re, ut in plerisque; sed ita ut id fiat quam maxime tuto: nam vesica læsa, excitat distentiones nervorum cum periculo mortis.

Ac primum calculus quæritur circa cervicem; ubi repertus, expellitur minore negotio. Et ideo dixi ne quidem curandum, nisi cum hoc cognitum est suis indicibus. Vero si aut non fuit ibi, aut recessit retro, digiti dantur ad ultimam vesicam; que paulatim dextra manus quoque ejus translata ultra subsequitur.

Atque ubi calculus repertus est, qui est necesse incidat in manus, deducitur eo curiosius, quo minor que lævior est, ne effugiat, id est, ne vesica sit agitanda sæpius. Ergo dextra manus ejus semper

## TRANSLATION.

middle fingers of the left hand, first the one gently, afterwards the other into the anus, and places the finger of his right hand lightly on the lower part of the abdomen; lest his fingers on each side at once should press too much on the stone, and injure the bladder. And this must not be done rashly, as in most cases; but so that it may be done with as much safety as possible; for an injury of the bladder produces convulsion, and endangers life.

First of all the stone must be sought for about the neck of the bladder; and when found there, is expelled with very little trouble. For this reason I have already stated, that the operation should not be undertaken, unless this were ascertained by its peculiar symptoms. But if it be not there, or if it have receded, the fingers are to be extended to the fundus of the bladder; and the right hand gradually advanced beyond it.

When the stone is found, as it must necessarily fall into the surgeon's hand, it should be drawn out the more cautiously, lest, it being small and smooth, it might escape, that is, to avoid irritating the bladder too often. Therefore the right



opponitur; sinistræ digiti deorsum eum compellunt, donec ad cervicem pervenitur. In quam, si oblongus est, sic compellendus est, ut pronus exeat; si planus, sic, ut transversus sit; si quadratus, ut duobus angulis sedeat; si altera parte plenior, sic, ut prius ea, qua tenuior sit, evadat. In rotundo nihil interesse, ex ipsa figura patet; nisi, si lævior altera parte est, ut ea antecedit.

Cum jam eo venit, incidi super vesicæ cervicem juxta anum cutis plaga lunata usque ad cervicem vesicæ debet, cornibus ad coxas spectantibus paulum; deinde ea parte, qua resima plaga est, etiamnum sub cute altera transversa plaga facienda est, qua cervix aperiatur, donec urinæ iter pateat, sic, ut plaga paulo major, quam calculus sit. Nam, qui metu fistulæ (quam illo loco *κορυάδα* Græci vocant) parum patefaciunt, cum majore periculo eodem revolvuntur: quia calculus iter, cum vi promitur, facit, nisi accipit: idque etiam perniciosius est, si figura quoque calculi, vel aspritudo

#### ORDO.

opponitur ultra calculum, digiti sinistræ compellunt eum deorsum, donec pervenitur ad cervicem. In quam, si est oblongus, est compellendus sic ut exeat pronus; si planus, sic ut sit transversus; si quadratus, ut sedeat duobus angulis; si plenior altera parte, sic ut evadat prius ea qua sit tenuior. Interesse nihil in rotundo, patet ex figura ipsa, nisi, si est lævior altera parte, ut ea antecedit.

Cum jam venit eo, cutis debet incidi super cervicem vesicæ juxta anum lunata plaga usque ad cervicem vesicæ, cornibus spectantibus paulum ad coxas; deinde, ea parte qua plaga est resima, transversa plaga est etiamnum facienda sub altera cute, qua cervix aperiatur; donec iter urinæ pateat, sic ut plaga sit paulo major, quam calculus. Nam qui metu fistulæ, (quam illo loco Græci vocant *κορυάδα* (coryada)) patefaciunt parum, revolvuntur eodem cum majore periculo; quia calculus facit iter cum promitur vi, nisi accipit: que id est etiam perniciosius, si quoque figura vel aspritudo calculi contulit aliquid

#### TRANSLATION.

hand is always to be kept beyond the calculus, and the fingers of the left force it downwards, till it come to the neck. Into which, if it be oblong, it must be forced so as to come out endwise; if flat, it must come out in a transverse direction; if square, so as to rest on two angles: if it be larger at one end, so that the smaller may pass first. In a round one, it is evident from its figure that it is of no consequence, unless it be smoother in one part than in another, then the smooth part should advance first.

When it has been brought into that *position just described*, a lunated incision must be made through the integuments immediately over and extending to the neck of the bladder near the anus, with the horns a little inclined towards the ischia (8): then a second incision is to be made in a transverse form in the convex part of the wound, so as to open the neck of the bladder, freely, that the urethra may be laid open, and the wound should be a little larger than the calculus. For those who dread a fistula, which is termed in this part, *KORUADA* by the Greeks, make too small an opening, and are afterwards reduced to the same inconvenience, with still greater danger; because the calculus, when forced, will make a passage, unless it find one: and this is even still more injurious, if the form and

aliquid eo contulit. Ex quo et sanguinis profusio, et distentio nervorum fieri potest: quæ si quis evasit, multo tamen patentiorem fistulam habiturus est rupta cervice, quam habuisset, incisa.

Cum vero ea patefacta est, in conspectum calculus venit: in cujus colore nullum discrimen est. Ipse, si exiguus est, digitis ab altera parte propelli, ab altera protrahi potest: si major, injiciendus a superiore ei parte uncus est, ejus rei causa factus. Is est ad extremum tenuis, in semicirculi speciem retusæ latitudinis; ab exteriori parte lævis, qua corpori jungitur; ab interiori asper, qua calculum attingit.

Isque longior potius esse debet: nam brevis extrahendi vim non habet. Ubi injectus est, in utrumque latus inclinandus est, ut appareat, an calculus teneatur; quia, si apprehensus est, ille simul inclinatur. Idque eo nomine opus est, ne, cum adduci uncus cœperit, calculus intus effugiat, hic in oram vulneris incidat,

## ORDO.

eo. Ex quo et profusio sanguinis, et distentio nervorum potest fieri: quæ, si quis evasit, tamen est habiturus fistulam multo patentiorem, cervice rupta, quam habuisset, incisa.

Vero cum ea patefacta est, calculus venit in conspectum: in colore cujus est nullum discrimen. Ipse, si est exiguus, potest propelli digitis ab altera parte, protrahi ab altera: si major, uncus, factus causa ejus rei, est injiciendus ei a superiore parte. Is est tenuis ad extremum, latitudinis retusæ in speciem semicirculi; lævis ab exteriori parte, qua jungitur corpori; asper ab interiori, qua attingit calculum.

Que is debet esse potius longior: nam brevis non habet vim extrahendi. Ubi injectus est, est inclinandus in utrumque latus, ut appareat an calculus teneatur; quia, si apprehensus est, ille inclinatur simul. Que id est opus eo nomine, ne, cum uncus cœperit adduci, calculus effugiat intus, hic incidat in oram vulneris,

## TRANSLATION.

inequalities of surface have contributed in any way to this effect. This might produce both hæmorrhage and convulsions: which, although a person may have escaped, yet he will have a larger fistula, by this laceration, than he would have had by incision.

The incision being now made, the calculus comes into view; the colour of which is not of any consequence. The stone, if small, may be propelled forward from one part, and taken by the fingers from another: if of considerable dimensions, a crotchet (9) made expressly for this purpose, is to be introduced to it, and applied to its upper surface. This *instrument* is thin at the extremity, and beat out in the form of a semicircle; smooth exteriorly, where it comes in contact with the body; rough on the inside, where it touches the stone.

This crotchet should be of a moderate length: for when short, it has not the power of extracting the stone. When it has been introduced, and the stone seized, it should be inclined to each side, that it may appear certain whether the stone be held fast; if it has been grasped, it moves simultaneously with it. And there is a necessity for this, because when the crotchet is being withdrawn, the stone

eamque convulneret. In qua re, quod periculum esset, jam supra posui.

Ubi satis teneri calculum patet, eodem pene momento triplex motus adhibendus est: in utrumque latus; deinde extra, sic tamen, ut leniter id fiat, paulumque primo calculus attrahatur: quo facto, attollendus uncus extremus est, uti intus magis maneat, faciliusque illum producat. Quod si quando a superiore parte calculus parum commode comprehendetur, a latere erit apprehendendus.

Hæc est simplicissima curatio. Sed varietas rerum quasdam etiamnum animadversiones desiderat. Sunt enim quidam non asperi tantummodo, sed spinosi quoque calculi, qui per se quidem delapsi in cervicem, sine ullo periculo eximuntur: in vesica vero, non tuto vel hi conquiruntur, vel attrahuntur; quoniam, ubi illam convulnerant, ex distentione nervorum mortem maturant; multoque magis, si spina aliqua vesicæ inhæret, eamque, cum duceretur, duplicavit.

#### ORDO.

que convulneret eam. Quod periculum esset in qua re posui jam supra.

Ubi patet calculum teneri satis, triplex motus est adhibendus pene eodem momento; in utrumque latus; deinde extra, tamen, sic ut id fiat leniter, que calculus attrahatur paulum primo: quo facto, extremus uncus est attollendus uti maneat magis intus, que producat illum facilius. Quod si quando calculus comprehendetur parum commode a superiore parte, erit apprehendendus a latere.

Hæc est simplicissima curatio. Sed varietas rerum desiderat etiamnum quasdam animadversiones. Enim sunt quidam calculi non asperi tantummodo, sed quoque spinosi, qui quidem delapsi per se in cervicem, (que) eximuntur sine ullo periculo: vero hi non tuto vel conquiruntur, vel attrahuntur in vesica; quoniam, ubi convulnerant illam, maturant mortem ex distentione nervorum; que multo magis si aliqua spina inhæret vesicæ, que duplicavit eam, cum duceretur.

#### TRANSLATION.

may escape inwards, and then the crotchet might seize on the edges of the wound, and lacerate it. The danger incident to this I have just stated above.

When it is evident that the stone is safely grasped, a triple motion is to be employed almost at the same moment; from side to side, and then outwards, yet so that it may be done gently, and the stone drawn a little at first: this being done, the end of the crotchet (*the handle*) is to be elevated, that it may be further within the bladder, and bring out the stone with greater facility. But if, by chance, the stone should be seized partially superiorly, it should be grasped laterally:

This then is the most simple method of treatment. But the variety of circumstances require some further observations. For there are some calculi not only rough, but also prickly, which indeed glide into the neck of the bladder, and are extracted without danger: but these are neither to be searched for, nor extracted with safety from the bladder: because, when they have wounded it, death is accelerated by the convulsions which ensue; and more especially if any point adhere to the bladder, and throw it into *spasmodic* wrinkles, in the act of extraction.



Colligitur autem eo, quod difficilior urina redditur, in cervice calculum esse; eo, quod cruenta destillat, illum esse spinosum: maximeque id sub digitis quoque experiundum est, neque adhibenda manus, nisi id constitit. Ac tum quoque leniter intus digiti objiciendi, ne violenter promovendo convulnerent: tum incidendum. Multi hic quoque scalpello uti sunt. Meges (quoniam is infirmior est, potestque in aliqua prominentia incidere, incisoque super illam corpore, qua cavum subest, non secare, sed relinquere, quod iterum incidi necesse sit) ferramentum fecit rectum, in summa parte labrosum, in ima semicirculatum acutumque.

Id receptum inter duos digitos, indicem ac medium, super pollice imposito sic deprimebat, ut simul cum carne, si quid ex calculo prominebat, incideret: quo consequebatur, ut semel, quantum satis esset, aperiret. Quocumque autem modo cervix patefacta est, leniter extrahi, quod asperum est, debet; nulla, propter festinationem, vi admota.

## ORDO.

Autem colligitur eo, quod urina redditur difficilior, calculum esse in cervice; eo, quod destillat cruenta, illum esse spinosum: que id maxime est quoque experiundum sub digitis, neque manus adhibenda, nisi id constitit. Ac tum quoque digiti objiciendi intus leniter, ne convulnerent promovendo violenter: tum incidendum: hic quoque multi uti sunt scalpello. Meges quoniam is est infirmior, que potest incidere in aliqua prominentia, que corpore inciso super illam, non secare, sed relinquere qua cavum subest, quod sit necesse incidi iterum, fecit rectum ferramentum, labrosum in summa parte, semicirculatum que acutum in ima.

Deprimebat sic id receptum inter duos digitos, indicem ac medium, pollice imposito super, ut simul cum carne, si quid ex calculo prominebat, incideret: quo consequebatur, ut aperiret semel quantum esset satis. Autem quocumque modo cervix patefacta est, quod est asperum debet extrahi leniter; nulla vi admota propter festinationem.

## TRANSLATION.

Now a stone is discovered to be in the neck of the bladder, by the difficulty of voiding the urine, and that is spinous when the urine is rendered bloody; and this is particularly to be ascertained by the fingers; neither is the operation to be attempted until this be confirmed. Even then, the fingers must be introduced very gently, lest they may wound the bladder by moving it forward violently: then the incision must be made. In this operation many surgeons have made use of the knife. Meges maintains that this instrument is inconvenient, because it is too weak, and might encounter some prominence of the stone, and after having divided the flesh above it, would not cut where it was concave, which would render a second incision necessary. For this reason he invented a straight instrument, rounded at its upper, and semicircular and sharp at its lower extremity.

This instrument being held between his fore and middle fingers, and his thumb being placed on it, he pressed it so, that he cut whatever part of the stone might be prominent together with the flesh; by which means he succeeded in making a sufficient opening at once. But by whatever method the incision has been effected in the neck, a rough stone ought to be extracted gently; no force ought to be applied for the sake of expedition.

3. At calculus arenosus, et ante manifestus est; quoniam urina quoque redditur arenosa: et in ipsa curatione; quoniam inter subjectos digitos neque æque leniter renititur, et insuper dilabatur. Item molles calculos, et ex pluribus minutisque, sed inter se parum adstrictis, compositos indicat urina, trahens quasdam quasi squamulas. Hos omnes, leniter permutatis subinde digitorum vicibus, sic oportet adducere, ne vesicam lædant, neve intus aliquæ dissipatæ reliquæ maneant, quæ postmodum curationi difficultatem faciant. Quidquid autem ex his in conspectum venit, vel digitis, vel unco eximendum est.

At si plures calculi sunt, singuli protrahi debent; sic tamen, ut, si quis exiguus supererit, potius relinquatur: siquidem in vesica difficulter invenitur, inventusque celeriter effugit. Ita longa inquisitione vesica læditur, excitatque inflammationes mortiferas; adeo ut quidam non secti, cum diu frustra per digitos vesica esset agitata, decesserint. Quibus accedit

## ORDO.

3. At arenosus calculus est et manifestus ante, quoniam urina quoque redditur arenosa, et in curatione ipsa; quoniam neque renititur æque leniter inter subjectos digitos, et insuper dilabatur. Item urina trahens quasdam quasi squamulas indicat calculos molles, et compositos ex pluribus que minutis, sed parum adstrictis inter se. Vicibus digitorum subinde permutatis leniter, oportet adducere omnes hos, sic ne lædant vesicam, neve aliquæ reliquæ dissipatæ maneant intus, quæ postmodum faciant difficultatem curationi. Autem quidquid ex his venit in conspectum, est eximendum vel digitis vel unco.

At si sunt plures calculi, debent protrahi singuli; tamen sic, ut si quis exiguus supererit, relinquatur potius: siquidem invenitur difficulter in vesica, que inventus celeriter effugit. Ita vesica læditur longa inquisitione, que excitat mortiferas inflammationes; adeo ut quidam non secti, cum vesica esset agitata per digitos diu que frustra, decesserint. Qui-

## TRANSLATION.

3. Now a sandy stone may be detected, both before the operation, from the urine being gravelly, and in the operation itself: because it does not resist the contact, and slips easily from the fingers, and that not equally. Besides, urine that brings off with it something resembling small scales, indicates the stone to be soft, and that it is composed of several small ones, loosely held together. All these are to be brought away by alternating the position of the fingers gently, so that they may not injure the bladder, leaving no residuary fragments to impede the subsequent cure. Any of these that come into view, they must be extracted with the fingers, or by the crotchet.

But if there be several calculi, they ought to be extracted separately; with this exception, that if any very minute stone remain, it may be better to leave it: for it is difficult to find it in the bladder, and when found, it quickly escapes. Thus the bladder becomes injured by a long search, and it excites mortal inflammations: insomuch that persons who have not been cut, have died from a long

etiam, quod exiguus calculus ad plagam urina postea promovetur, et excidit.

Si quando autem is major non videtur, nisi rupta cervicē, extrahi posse, findendus est: cujus repertor Ammonius, ob id λιθοτόμος cognominatus est. Id hoc modo fit. Uncus injicitur calculo, sic, ut facile eum concussum quoque teneat, ne is retro revolvatur: tum ferramentum adhibetur crassitudinis modicæ, prima parte tenui, sed retusa, quod admotum calculo, et ex altera parte ictum, eum findit; magna cura habita, ne aut ad ipsam vesicam ferramentum perveniat, aut calculi fractura ne quid incidat.

4. Hæ vero curationes in fœminis quoque similes sunt; de quibus tamen parum proprie quædam dicenda sunt. Siquidem in his, ubi parvulus calculus est, scalpellus supervacuus est; quia is urina in cervicem compellitur; quæ et brevior, quam in maribus, et laxior est. Ergo et per se sæpe excidit, et, si in primo, quod est angustius, inhæret, eodem tamen

## ORDO.

bus accedit etiam, quod exiguus calculus promovetur postea urinā ad plagam, et excidit.

Autem si quando is major videtur non posse extrahi, nisi cervicē rupta, est findendus: repertor cujus Ammonius, ob id, cognominatus est λιθοτόμος (lithotomos). Id fit hoc modo. Uncus injicitur calculo, sic ut teneat facile eum quoque concussum, ne is revolvatur retro: tum ferramentum modicæ crassitudinis adhibetur, prima parte tenui, sed retusa, quod admotum calculo, et ictum ex altera parte, findit eum; magna cura habita, ne aut ferramentum perveniat ad vesicam ipsam, aut ne fractura calculi incidat quid.

4. Vero hæ curationes sunt similes quoque in feminis; de quibus tamen quædam sunt dicenda parum proprie. Siquidem, in his scalpellus est supervacuus, ubi calculus est parvulus; quia is compellitur urina in cervicem, quæ est et brevior et laxior quam in maribus. Ergo et excidit sæpe per se, et, si inhæret in primo quod est angustius, tamen educi-

## TRANSLATION.

and fruitless irritation of the bladder by the fingers. Add to this, that a small stone is subsequently moved forwards by the urine, and then drops out.

But if at any time the stone is so large that it cannot be extracted, without lacerating the neck of the bladder, it must be split: the author of this invention was Ammonius, who on that account obtained the cognomen of Lithotomus, the stone cutter. It is done in this manner. A crotchet is introduced to the calculus so as to hold it fast while being struck, lest it should recoil backwards; then an iron instrument, of moderate thickness, is to be employed, the one extremity of which is thin, but blunt, and being applied to the stone, and struck at the other extremity, splits it, great care being taken that neither the instrument itself, nor any fragment of the stone should injure any part.

4. Now these operations are performed in the same manner on females; concerning which a few peculiarities must be mentioned. For in them the scalpel would be superfluous, where the calculus is small; because it is forced by the urine into the neck of the bladder, which is both shorter and more elastic than in the male. Therefore it frequently drops out of itself; but even if it adhere at the further extremity, which is more contracted, yet it may be extracted by the



unco sine ulla noxa educitur. At in majoribus calculis necessaria eadem curatio est.

Sed virgini subjici digiti tamquam masculo; mulieri per naturale ejus debent. Tum, virgini quidem, sub ima sinisteriore ora; mulieri vero, inter urinæ iter et os pubis, incidendum est, sic, ut utroque loco plaga transversa sit. Neque terreri convenit, si plus ex muliebri corpore sanguinis profluit.

5. Calculo evulso, si valens corpus est, neque magnopere vexatum, sinere oportet sanguinem fluere, quo minor inflammatio oriatur: atque, ingredi quoque eum paulum, non alienum est, ut excidat, si quid intus concreti sanguinis mansit. Quod si per se non destitit, rursus, ne vis omnis intereat, suppressi debet: idque protinus, in imbecillioribus, ab ipsa curatione faciendum est: siquidem, ut distensione nervorum periclitatur aliquis, dum vesica ejus agitur; sic alter metus excipit, remotis medicaminibus, ne tantum sanguinis profluat, ut occidat. Quod ne incidat, de-

#### ORDO.

tur eodem unco sine ulla noxa. At in majoribus calculis eadem curatio est necessaria.

Sed digiti debent subjici virgini tamquam masculo, mulieri per naturale ejus. Tum virgini quidem est incidendum sub ima sinisteriore ora, vero mulieri, inter iter urinæ et os pubis, sic ut plaga sit transversa utroque loco. Neque convenit terreri si plus sanguinis profluit ex corpore muliebri.

5. Calculo evulso, si corpus est valens, neque magnopere vexatum, oportet sinere sanguinem fluere, quo minor inflammatio oriatur, atque non est alienum, eum quoque ingredi paulum, ut, si quid concreti sanguinis mansit intus, excidat. Quod si destitit non per se, debet suppressi rursus, ne omnis vis intereat: que id est faciendum in imbecillioribus, protinus ab curatione ipsa: siquidem, ut aliquis periclitatur distensione nervorum, dum vesica ejus agitur, sic alter metus excipit medicaminibus remotis, ne tantum sanguinis profluat, ut occidat. Ne quod incidat, is debet de-

#### TRANSLATION.

same crotchet without any injury. But in larger calculi the same method of treatment will be necessary.

But in a virgin, the fingers must be introduced *per anum* as in a male; in a woman *per vaginam*. Again, in a virgin, the incision must be made below the left lip of the labia pudendum, in a woman between the meatus urinarius and the os pubis, and the incision must be in a transverse direction in both cases. Neither need we be alarmed at a considerable hæmorrhage in a female.

5. When the stone is extracted, if the patient be strong and not much affected, we may permit the hæmorrhage, in order that the inflammation may be less; and it is not improper for the patient even to walk a little, that any coagulated blood which might have remained within would fall out. But if it should not cease spontaneously, it must be suppressed, lest the strength be entirely exhausted: and this must be attended to in very weak patients immediately after the operation: since a patient is in danger of convulsions when the bladder is agitated, so there is another fear of hæmorrhage, when the dressings are removed, that would prove fatal. To obviate either of these accidents, he should sit down in strong

sidere is debet in acre acetum, cui aliquantum salis sit adjectum: sub quo et sanguis fere conquiescit, et adstringitur vesica, ideoque minus inflammatur. Quod si parum proficit, agglutinanda cucurbitula est, et inguinibus, et coxis, et super pubem.

Ubi jam satis vel evocatus est sanguis, vel prohibitus, resupinus collocandus est, sic, ut caput humile sit, coxæ paulum excitentur: ac super vulnus imponendum est duplex aut triplex linteolum, aceto madens. Deinde, interpositis duabus horis, in solium is aquæ calidæ resupinus demittendus est, sic, ut a genibus ad umbilicum aqua teneat, cetera vestimentis circumdata sint; manibus tantummodo pedibusque nudatis, ut et minus digeratur, et ibi diutius maneat. Ex quo sudor multus oriri solet; qui spongia subinde in facie detergendus est: finisque ejus fomenti est, donec infirmando offendat.

Tum multo is oleo perungendus, induendusque hapsus lanæ mollis, tepido oleo repletus, qui pubem, et coxas, et inguina, et plagam ipsam,

## ORDO.

sidere in acre acetum, cui aliquantum salis adjectum sit: sub quo et sanguis fere conquiescit, et vesica adstringitur, que ideo inflammatur minus. Quod si proficit parum, cucurbitula est agglutinanda, et inguinibus et coxis, et super pubem.

Ubi sanguis vel evocatus est jam satis, vel prohibitus (est), et, collocandus resupinus, sic ut caput sit humile, coxæ excitentur paulum: ac duplex aut triplex linteolum madens aceto est imponendum super vulnus. Deinde, duabus horis interpositis, is resupinus est demittendus in solium calidæ aquæ, sic, ut aqua teneat a genibus ad umbilicum, cetera sint circumdata vestimentis; tantummodo manibus que pedibus nudatis, ut et digeratur minus, et maneat ibi diutius. Ex quo multus sudor solet oriri; qui est detergendus in facie subinde spongia: que finis ejus fomenti est, donec offendat infirmando.

Tum is perungendus multo oleo, que hapsus mollis lanæ induendus, repletus tepido oleo, qui protegat pubem, et coxas, et inguina, et plagam ipsam con-

## TRANSLATION.

vinegar, to which a little salt has been added; by which means both the hemorrhage is arrested, and the bladder contracted, and the inflammation abated. But if this avail little, let the cupping glasses be applied on the groins, hips, and above the pubes.

When a sufficient portion of blood has been taken away, or when the hæmorrhage has been repressed, the patient must be placed in a supine position, with his head low, and the pelvis slightly elevated; and over the wound a double or triple linen cloth applied, moistened with vinegar. Then, after the space of two hours, he is to be immersed in a warm bath, so that the warm water may extend from the knees to the navel, while the other parts may be surrounded with clothing; with the exception of his hands and feet being bare, so that he may remain there the longer, yet be less exhausted. This generally excites a copious perspiration; which may be wiped off from the face occasionally with a sponge, and when he is fatigued by weakness, the fomentation should terminate.

Then he is to be anointed freely with plenty of oil, and a handful of soft wool saturated with warm oil laid on, which may protect the pubes, the hips, the

contactam eodem ante linteolo, protegat: isque subinde oleo tepido madafaciendus est; ut neque frigus ad vesicam admittat, et nervos leniter molliat. Quidam cataplasmatibus calefacientibus utuntur. Ea plus pondere nocent, quo vesicam urgendo vulnus irritant, quam calore proficiunt. Ergo ne vinculum quidem ullum necessarium est.

Proximo die, si spiritus difficiliter redditur, si urina non excedit, si locus circa pubem mature intumuit, scire licet, in vesica sanguinem concretum remansisse. Igitur, demissis eodem modo digitis, leniter pertractanda vesica est, et discutienda, si qua coierunt: quo fit, ut per vulnus postea procedant.

Non alienum etiam est, oriculario clystere acetum nitro mistum per plagam in vesicam compellere: nam sic quoque discutiuntur, si qua cruenta coierunt. Eaque facere etiam primo die convenit, si timemus, ne quid intus sit: maximeque, ubi ambulando id elicere imbecillitas prohibuit. Ce-

## ORDO.

tectam ante eodem linteolo: que is est subinde madafaciendus tepido oleo; ut neque admittat frigus ad vesicam; et molliat leniter nervos. Quidam utuntur calefacientibus cataplasmatibus. Ea nocent plus pondere, quo irritant vulnus urgendo vesicam, quam proficiunt calore. Ergo ne quidem ullum vinculum est necessarium.

Proximo die, si spiritus redditur difficiliter, si urina non excedit, si locus circa pubem intumuit mature, licet scire sanguinem remansisse concretum in vesica. Igitur, digitis demissis eodem modo, vesica est pertractanda leniter, et si qua coierunt, discutienda; quo fit, ut procedant postea per vulnus.

Etiam est non alienum compellere oriculario clystere acetum mixtum nitro per plagam in vesicam: nam sic quoque si qua cruenta coierunt, discutiuntur. Que convenit facere ea etiam primo die, si timemus ne quid sit intus: que maxime ubi imbecillitas prohibuit elicere id ambulando. Ea-

## TRANSLATION.

groins, and the wound itself, being previously covered with the said linen; and this is to be moistened from time to time with warm oil, that it may prevent the admission of cold to the bladder, and tend gently to mollify the nerves. Some surgeons employ warm cataplasms. These injure more by their weight, by pressing on the bladder, and irritating the wound, than they benefit by their heat. Therefore, not even a bandage is necessary.

On the following day, if there be a difficulty of breathing, if no urine be voided, if the parts about the pubes have become prematurely swollen, then we may conclude that coagulated blood has been retained in the bladder. Therefore the fingers being introduced in the same manner as before, pressing the bladder gently, and if any thing have collected, by this manipulation, it will be dislodged, and afterwards pass through the wound.

Neither is it improper to inject a mixture of vinegar and nitre through the wound into the bladder by an ear-syringe; for by this means, if any bloody concretions have collected, they will be dispersed. And this may be done even the first day, if we have any fear of a collection within the bladder: and especially when debility has prevented the ejection of that by walking. The rest of the treat-



tera eadem faciendâ sunt: ut demittatur in solium, ut eodem modo panniculus, eodem lana superinjiciatur.

Sed neque sæpe, neque tamdiu in aqua calida puer habendus, quam adolescens est; infirmus, quam valens; levi, quam graviore inflammatione affectus; is, cujus corpus digeritur, quam is, cujus adstrictum est. Inter hæc vero, si somnus est, et æqualis spiritus, et madens lingua, et sitis modica, et venter imus sedet, et mediocris est cum febre modica dolor, scire licet, recte curationem procedere.

Atque in his inflammatio fere quinto vel septimo die finitur: qua levata, solium supervacuum est: supini tantummodo vulnus aqua calida fovendum est, ut, si quid urinæ rodit, eluatur: Imponenda autem medicamenta sunt pus moventia; et, si purgandum ulcus videbitur, melle linendum. Id si rodet, rosa temperabitur.

## ORDO.

dem cetera sunt faciendâ: ut demittatur in solium, ut panniculus superinjiciatur eodem modo, lana eodem.

Sed puer est habendus in calida aqua, neque sæpe, neque tamdiu quam adolescens; infirmus, quam valens; affectus levi, quam graviore inflammatione; is corpus cujus digeritur, quam is cujus est adstrictum. Vero inter hæc si est somnus, et spiritus æqualis, et lingua madens, et sitis modica, et imus venter sedet, et dolor est mediocris cum modica febre, licet scire curationem procedere recte.

Atque in his inflammatio fere finitur quinto vel septimo die: qua levata, solium est supervacuum: tantummodo vulnus supini est fovendum calida aqua, ut si quid urinæ rodit, eluatur. Autem medicamenta moventia pus sunt imponenda; et si ulcus videbitur purgandum, linendum melle. Si id rodet, temperabitur rosa. Em-

## TRANSLATION.

ment is to be attended to as I have already described: such as immersing him in a bath, applying linen cloths and wool in the same manner.

But a boy is neither to be put so often, nor kept so long, in the warm water as a youth; nor a feeble subject so long as a strong person; nor one affected with slight inflammation, as one in whom it is more violent; nor one of a relaxed habit of body so long as him of a firmer frame. But in the mean time, if the patient sleep, if the respiration be free and regular, the tongue moist, thirst moderate, the pubic region natural, the pain tolerable, and the fever moderate, it may be taken for granted that the case goes on favourably.

In such cases the inflammation generally ceases on the fifth or seventh day: this having taken place, the warm bath would be superfluous: the patient being laid in a supine position, his wound is to be fomented with warm water, in order to wash away any thing that might arise from the irritation of the urine. But medicines which promote pus must be applied; and if the ulcer appear to require cleansing, let a little honey be smeared over it. If that irritate, it should be mixed with rose-oil. The Enneapharmacum plaster

Huic curationi aptissimum videtur enneapharmacum emplastrum: nam et sebum habet ad pus movendum, et mel ad ulcus repurgandum; medullam etiam, maximeque vitulinam; quod in id, ne fistula relinquatur, præcipue proficit. Linamenta vero tum super ulcus non sunt necessaria; super medicamentum, ad id continendum, recte imponuntur. At ubi ulcus purgatum est, puro linamento ad cicatricem perducendum est.

Quibus temporibus tamen, si felix curatio non fuit, varia pericula oriuntur. Quæ præagire protinus licet, si continua vigilia est, si spiritus difficultas, si lingua arida est, si sitis vehemens, si venter imus tumet, si vulnus hiat, si transfluens urina id non rodit, si similiter ante tertium diem quædam livida excidunt, si is aut nihil aut tarde respondet, si vehementes dolores sunt, si post diem quintum magnæ febres urgent, et fastidium cibi permanet, si cubare in ventrem jucundius est. Nihil tamen pejus est distentione nervorum, et,

## ORDO.

plastrum enneapharmacum videtur aptissimum huic curationi: nam habet et sebum ad pus movendum, et mel ad ulcus repurgandum; etiam medullam, quæ maxime vitulinam; quod præcipue proficit in id, ne fistula relinquatur. Vero tum linamenta sunt non necessaria super ulcus; imponuntur recte super medicamentum, ad id continendum. At ubi ulcus purgatum est, est perducendum ad cicatricem puro linamento.

Quibus temporibus tamen, si curatio non fuit felix, varia pericula oriuntur. Quæ licet protinus præagire, si est continua vigilia, si difficultas spiritus, si lingua est arida, si sitis vehemens, si imus venter tumet, si vulnus hiat, si urina transfluens non rodit id, si quædam livida excidunt similiter ante tertium diem, si is respondet nihil aut tarde, si dolores sunt vehementes, si magnæ febres urgent post quintum diem, et, fastidium cibi permanet, si est jucundius cubare in ventrem. Tamen nihil est pejus (quam) disten-

## TRANSLATION.

appears the best adapted for this purpose: for it contains suet to promote pus, and honey to cleanse the wound: also marrow, especially that of veal, which is particularly efficacious in preventing a fistula remaining. At that time lint will not be necessary over the wound, but may be applied over the medicine to keep that on. When the wound has been cleansed, lint only is to be applied until a cicatrix be formed.

At this period, however, if the treatment has not proceeded favourably, various dangers arise. This may be prognosticated immediately, if there be continual vigilance, difficulty of breathing, dry tongue, violent thirst, tumefaction about the region of the pubes, if the wound gape, the urine passed without irritation, if sloughing take place before the third day, if the patient do not respond to any questions, or slowly, if the pains be violent, if ardent fever ensue after the fifth day, and loathing of food remain, and if he be more inclined to lie on the abdomen. There is, however, no symptom so dangerous as convulsions and bilious

ante nonum diem, vomitu bilis. Sed cum inflammationis sit metus, succurri abstinencia, modicis et tempestivis cibis; inter hæc, fomentis, et quibus supra scripsimus, oportet.

## ORDO.

tione nervorum, et vomitu bilis, ante nonum diem. Sed cum sit metus inflammationis, oportet succurri abstinencia, modicis et tempestivis cibis; inter hæc, fomentis, et quibus scripsimus supra.

## TRANSLATION.

vomitings coming on before the ninth day. But when we have reason to dread an inflammation, it ought to be obviated by abstinence, and moderate and seasonable food, at the same time employing fomentations and the other means prescribed above.

## CAP. XXVII.

DE CANCRO, QUI INCISA VESICA NASCITUR, ET QUA CURATIONE UTI DECEAT.

PROXIMUS cancri metus est. Is cognoscitur, si, et per vulnus, et per ipsum colem, fluit sanies mali odoris, cumque ea quædam a concreto sanguine non abhorrentia, tenuesque carunculæ lanulis similes: præter hæc, si oræ vulneris aridæ sunt, si dolent inguina, si febris non desinit, eaque in noctem augetur, si inordinati hor-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXVII.

DE CANCRO, QUI NASCITUR VESICA INCISA, ET QUA CURATIONE DECEAT UTI.

PROXIMUS metus est cancri. Is cognoscitur, si sanies mali odoris fluit, et per vulnus, et per colem ipsum, que cum ea quædam non abhorrentia a concreto sanguine, que tenues carunculæ similes lanulis: præter hæc, si oræ vulneris sunt aridæ, si inguina dolent, si febris non desinit, que ea augetur in noctem, si inordinati hor-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXVII.

GANGRENE AFTER LITHOTOMY, AND THE MODE OF TREATMENT.

THE next danger is that of gangrene. This is known by a discharge of fetid sanies, both from the wound and through the penis (*urethra*) itself, and together with that, something not very different from coagulated blood, with small particles of flesh, resembling bits of wool: besides these, if the edges of the wound be dry, if there be pain in the groins, if fever still continue, and that increased towards



rores accedunt. Considerandum autem est, in quam partem cancer is tendat. Si ad colem, indurescit is locus, et rubet, et tactu dolorem excitat, testiculique intumescunt: si in ipsam vesicam, ani dolor sequitur, coxæ duræ sunt, non facile crura extendi possunt: at si in alterutrum latus, oculis id expositum est, paresque utrimque easdem notas, sed minores, habet.

Primum autem ad rem pertinet corpus recte jacere, ut superior pars eadem semper sit, in quam vitium fertur. Ita, si ad colem, supinus is collocari debet; si ad vesicam, in ventrem; si in latus, in id, quod integrius est.

Deinde, ubi ventum fuerit ad curationem, homo in aquam demittetur, in qua marrubium decoctum sit, aut cupressus, aut myrtus; idemque humor clystere intus adigetur: tum superponetur lenticula cum malicorio mista; quæ utraque ex vino decocta sint; vel rubus, aut oleæ folia, eodem modo decocta; aliave medicamenta, quæ ad cohibendos purgandosque can-

## ORDO.

rores accedunt. Autem est considerandum, in quam partem is cancer tendat. Si ad colem, is locus indurescit, et rubet, et excitat dolorem tactu, que testiculi intumescunt: si in vesicam ipsam, dolor ani sequitur, coxæ sunt duræ, crura possunt non facile extendi: at si in alterutrum latus, id est expositum oculis, que habet easdem pares notas utrimque, sed minores.

Autem primum pertinet ad rem (nt) corpus jacere recte, ut eadem pars, in quam vitium fertur, sit semper superior. Ita, si ad colem, is debet collocari supinus; si ad vesicam, in ventrem; si in latus, in id, quod est integrins.

Deinde, ubi ventum fuerit ad curationem, homo demittetur in aquam, in qua marrubium decoctum sit, aut cupressus, aut myrtus; que idem humor adigetur intus clystere: tum lenticula mixta cum malicorio superponetur; utraque quæ decocta sint ex vino; vel rubus, aut folia oleæ, decocta eodem modo; ve alia medicamenta, quæ proponimus ad caneros cohibendos que purgandos. Ex

## TRANSLATION.

evening, and irregular rigors accede. Now it must be considered to what part the gangrene directs its attack. If to the penis, that becomes hard and red, and the touch excites pain, and the testicles become swollen: if in the bladder itself, pain in the anus follows, the hips are hard, and the legs not easily extended: but if it tend to either side of the wound, it will be evident to the sight, and have the same diagnostic marks, only in a minor degree.

The first step of importance is to place the patient in a proper position, that the diseased part be always laid highest. Thus, if it attack the penis, the patient should lie supine; if the bladder, he should lie on his abdomen; if to the side of the wound, he should lie on that side which is sound.

Then, when we come to the mode of treatment, the patient should be put into a bath of the decoction of horehound, or cypress, or myrtle; and the same liquid should be injected into the wound by a syringe; then lentils mixed with pomegranate rind should be applied over it, and each of these boiled in wine: or bramble or olive leaves boiled in the same manner: or those other remedies which we have previously mentioned for restraining and cleansing gangrenes. If

cros proposuimus. Ex quibus, si qua erunt arida, per scriptorium calamum inspirabuntur.

Ubi stare cœperit cancer, mulso vulnus eluetur: vitabiturque eo tempore ceratum, quod, ad recipiendum id malum, corpus emollit: potius plumbum elotum cum vino inungetur; superque idem linteolo illitum imponetur. Sub quibus perveniri ad sanitatem potest: cum eo tamen, quod non ignoremus, orto cancro sæpe affici stomachum, cui cum vesica quædam consortio est: exque eo fieri, ut neque retineatur cibus, neque, si quis retentus est, concoquatur, neque corpus alatur; ideoque ne vulnus quidem aut purgari, aut ali possit: quæ necessario mortem maturant.

Sed ut his succurri nullo modo potest, sic a primo tamen die tenenda ratio curationis est. In qua quædam observatio, ad cibum quoque potionemque pertinens, necessaria est. Nam cibus inter principia, non nisi humidus dari debet; ubi ulcus purgatum est, ex media materia: olera et salsamenta semper aliena sunt. Potione opus est, modica. Nam, si

## ORDO.

quibus, si qua erunt arida, inspirabuntur per scriptorium calamum.

Ubi cancer cœperit stare, vulnus eluetur mulso: que ceratum vitabitur eo tempore, quod emollit corpus, ad id malum recipiendum: potius elotum plumbum cum vino inungetur; que idem illitum linteolo imponetur super. Sub quibus potest perveniri ad sanitatem: tamen cum eo, ut non ignoremus, cancro orto, stomachum sæpe affici, cui est quædam consortio cum vesica: que fieri ex eo, ut neque cibus retineatur, neque, si quis retentus est, concoquatur, neque corpus alatur; que ideo vulnus possit ne quidem aut purgari aut ali: quæ necessario maturant mortem.

Sed ut potest succurri his nullo modo, sic tamen a primo die ratio curationis est tenenda; in qua quædam observatio, pertinens quoque ad cibum que potionem, est necessaria. Nam cibus debet non dari nisi humidus inter principia; ubi ulcus purgatum est, ex media materia: olera et salsamenta sunt semper aliena. Est opus modica potione. Nam si

## TRANSLATION.

any of these medicines be in a dry form, they should be blown in by the assistance of a writing-reed.

When the gangrene is arrested, the wound is to be washed out with hydromel, and cerate should be avoided at that time, because it softens the flesh, and renders it obnoxious to that infection: rather anoint it with washed lead and wine, and the same spread on lint and applied over it. Under which a cure may be accomplished; nevertheless we should not be ignorant, that when gangrene has taken place, the stomach, which maintains a certain sympathy with the bladder, is often affected; whence it happens, that the food can neither be retained, nor if any be retained, can it be digested, nor the body nourished: therefore, the wound can neither be cleansed nor healed; which must of necessity hasten death.

But as it is not possible to save patients by any means under such circumstances, yet a strict method of treatment should be maintained from the first day; in which some observations pertaining both to food and drink is necessary. For at the commencement none but moist food ought to be given: when the wound is clean, food of the middle class: pot herbs and salt provisions are always improper. A moderate

parum bibitur, accenditur vulnus, et vigilia urget, et vis corporis minuitur: si plus æquo assumitur, subinde vesica impletur, eoque irritatur. Non nisi aquam autem bibendam esse, manifestius est, quam ut subinde dicendum sit.

Solet vero sub ejusmodi victu evenire, ut alvus non reddatur. Hæc aqua ducenda est, in qua vel fœnum Græcum, vel malva decocta sit. Idem humor rosa mistus in ipsum vulnus oriculario clystere agendus est, ubi id rodit urina, neque purgari patitur. Fere vero primo per vulnus exit hæc: deinde, eo sanescente, dividitur, et pars per colem descendere incipit, donec ex toto plaga claudatur. Quod interdum tertio mense, interdum non ante sextum, nonnumquam exacto quoque anno fit.

Neque desperari debet solida glutinatio vulneris, nisi ubi aut vehementer rupta cervix est, aut ex cancro multæ magnæque carunculæ, simulque nervosa aliqua exciderunt. Sed,

## ORDO.

bibitur parum, vulnus accenditur; et vigilia urget, et vis corporis minuitur: si plus (quam) æquo assumitur, subinde vesica impletur, que irritatur eo. Autem non nisi aquam esse bibendam est manifestius quam ut sit subinde dicendum.

Vero solet evenire sub victu ejusmodi, ut alvus non reddatur. Hæc est ducenda aqua in qua vel Græcum fœnum vel malva decocta sit. Idem humor mixtus rosa est agendus in vulnus ipsum oriculario clystere; ubi urina rodit id, neque patitur purgari. Vero fere hæc exit per vulnus primo: deinde eo sanescente, dividitur, et pars incipit descendere per colem, donec plaga claudatur ex toto: quod interdum fit tertio mense, interdum non ante sextum, nonnumquam quoque anno exacto.

Neque solida glutinatio vulneris debet desperari, nisi ubi aut cervix rupta est vehementer, aut multæ que magnæ carunculæ, que simul aliqua nervosa exciderunt

## TRANSLATION.

portion of drink will be requisite; for if too little be drunk, the wound becomes inflamed, the patient is oppressed for want of sleep, and the powers of the body are diminished: if too much be taken, the bladder is frequently filled, and is irritated by that. It must be very evident, and therefore unnecessary to repeat, that nothing but water must be drunk.

But it frequently happens from diet of this kind, that the bowels are costive. In this case an enema must be given, made of a decoction of fœnugreek, or mallows. The same liquor, mixed with rose-oil, is to be injected into the wound itself with an ear-syringe, when the urine irritates and impedes it from taking on a healthy appearance. But, at the commencement, the urine is generally discharged by the wound; afterwards, this becoming healthy, it is divided, and part begins to descend through the penis until the wound becomes entirely closed; which sometimes takes place in the third month; sometimes not before the sixth; and in some cases not before a year hath elapsed.

Neither should we despair of a solid union of the wound, unless where the neck of the bladder has been severely injured, or many large portions of flesh, together with some of the nervous structure, have sloughed away, from the effects of gan-



ut vel nulla ibi fistula, vel exigua admodum relinquatur, summa cura providendum est. Ergo, cum jam ad cicatricem vulnus intendit, extentis jacere feminibus et cruribus oportet: nisi tamen molles arenosive calculi fuerunt. Sub his enim tardius vesica purgatur: ideoque diutius plagam patere necessarium est; et tum demum, ubi jam nihil tale extra fertur, ad cicatricem perducere.

Quod si, antequam vesica purgata est, oræ se glutinarunt, dolorque et inflammatio redierunt, vulnus digitis vel averso specillo diducendum est; ut torquentibus exitus detur: hisque effusis, cum diutius pura urina descendit, tum demum, quæ cicatricem inducant, imponenda sunt; extendendique, ut supra docui, pedes, quam maxime juncti.

Quod si fistulæ metus ex his causis, quas proposui, subesse videbitur, quo facilius claudatur ea, vel certe coangustetur, in anum quoque danda

## ORDO.

ex cancro. Sed est providendum summa cura, ut vel nulla fistula, vel admodum exigua, relinquatur ibi. Ergo, cum vulnus jam intendit ad cicatricem, oportet jacere feminibus et cruribus extentis; nisi, tamen, calculi fuerunt molles ve arenosi. Enim sub his vesica purgatur tardius: que ideo est necessarium plagam patere diutius; et tum demum, ubi jam nihil tale fertur extra, perducere ad cicatricem.

Quod si oræ glutinarunt se antequam vesica purgata est, que dolor et inflammatio redierunt, vulnus est diducendum digitis, vel averso specillo, ut exitus detur torquentibus; que his effusis cum urina descendit pura diutius, tum demum, quæ inducant cicatricem, sunt imponenda; que pedes, quam maxime juncti, extendendi, ut docui supra.

Quod si metus fistulæ videbitur subesse ex his causis, quas proposui, quo ea claudatur facilius, vel certe coangustetur, plumbea fistu-

## TRANSLATION.

grene. But the greatest precaution must be used that no fistula, or at least only a very small one, remain there. Therefore, when the wound now tends to cicatrize, the patient should lie with his thighs and legs extended; unless the stones have been soft or sandy; for under these circumstances the bladder is cleansed more slowly; and on that account it is necessary for the wound to remain longer open: and then, when every thing of this nature ceases to be discharged, it may be healed up.

But if the edges of the wound have united before the bladder was cleansed, accompanied with pain and inflammation, the wound must be re-opened with the fingers, or the blunt end of a probe, that an outlet may be given to the offending matter; and these matters being washed away by the urine coming off clear for a considerable time, then such applications as may induce a cicatrix are to be laid on; and the feet extended, as I have directed above, as close to each other as possible.

But if there should be the appearance of a fistula from those causes which I have detailed, in order to close it more easily, or at least to contract it more, a leaden

plumbea fistula est, extentisque cruribus femina talique inter se deligandi sunt, donec, qualis futura est, cicatrix sit.

ORDO.

la quoque est danda in anum, que cruribus extensis, femina que tali sunt deligandi inter se, donec cicatrix sit qualis est futura.

TRANSLATION.

pipe is to be introduced into the anus, and the legs being extended, the thighs and ancles are to be bound together, until a cicatrix be fully confirmed.

CAP. XXVIII.

ORDO.

SI NATURALIA FÆMINARUM CONCUBITUM NON ADMITTUNT, QUOMODO CURARI CONVENIAT.

CAP. XXVIII.

SI NATURALIA FÆMINARUM NON ADMITTUNT CONCUBITUM, QUOMODO CONVENIAT CURARI.

ET hoc quidem commune esse maribus et fœminis potest. Proprie vero quædam ad fœminas pertinent: ut in primis, quod earum naturalia nonnunquam, inter se glutinatis oris, concubitus non admittunt. Idque interdum evenit protinus in utero matris: interdum exulceratione in his partibus facta, et per malam curationem his oris sanescendo junctis.

ET hoc quidem potest esse commune maribus et fœminis. Vero quædam pertinent proprie ad fœminas: ut in primis, quod naturalia earum nonnunquam non admittunt concubitus, oris glutinatis inter se. Que id evenit interdum protinus in utero matris: interdum ulceratione facta in his partibus, et his oris junctis sanescendo per ma-

TRANSLATION.

CHAP. XXVIII.

THE OPERATION NECESSARY FOR IMPERFORATE VAGINA.

THE preceding diseases are common both to males and females. But some are peculiar to females; as in the first place, their sexual organs do not admit of coition, the labiæ being preternaturally united. This takes place sometimes in the mother's womb; at other times from ulceration in those parts, and their edges coming in contact during the healing process, through bad management, become

Si ex utero est, membrana ori vulvæ opposita est: si ex ulcere, caro id replevit.

Oportet autem membranam duabus lineis, inter se transversis, incidere ad similitudinem litteræ X, magna cura habita, ne urinæ iter violetur: deinde undique eam membranam excidere. At si caro increvit, necessarium est recta linea patefacere: tum ab ora vel vulsella vel hamo apprehensa, tamquam habenulam excidere; et intus implicitum in longitudinem linamentum (λημνίσκον Græci vocant) in aceto tinctum demittere, supraque succidam lanam aceto madentem deligare: tertio die solvere ulcus, et, si cut alia ulcera, curare. Cumque jam ad sanitatem tendet, plumbeam fistulam medicamento cicatricem inducente illinere, eamque intus dare: supraque idem medicamentum injicere, donec ad cicatricem plaga perveniat.

## ORDO.

lam curationem. Si est ex utero, membrana est opposita ori vulvæ; si ex ulcere, caro replevit id.

Autem oportet incidere membranam duabus lineis, transversis inter se, ad similitudinem litteræ X, magna cura habita, ne iter urinæ violetur; deinde excidere eam membranam undique. At si caro increvit, est necessarium patefacere recta linea: tum apprehensa ab ora vel vulsella vel hamo, excidere tamquam habenulam; et demittere intus linamentum implicitum in longitudinem, Græci vocant λημνίσκον (lemniscus), tinctum in acetum, que deligare supra succidam lanam madentem aceto; tertio die solvere ulcus, et curare sicut alia ulcera. Que cum tendet jam ad sanitatem, illinere plumbeam fistulam medicamento inducente cicatricem, que dare eam intus: que injicere idem medicamentum supra, donec plaga perveniat ad cicatricem.

## TRANSLATION.

united. If it be congenital, a membrane is interposed at the orifice of the vagina: when it proceeds from ulceration, the obstruction is made up of flesh.

It will be necessary to divide the membrane in two lines, intersecting each other, in form of the letter X, being particularly careful not to wound the urethra, and then to dissect it out. But if the labiæ have adhered by flesh, it will be necessary to divide them by a rectilineal incision: then seizing it by the edge with a forceps or hook, to cut away a small slip of it; afterwards a roll of lint twisted lengthwise, termed lemniscus by the Greeks, first moistened in vinegar, is to be introduced, and over this rancid wool dipped in vinegar, bound on it: on the third day the dressings are to be removed, and treated afterwards like any other wound. When it begins to heal, a leaden pipe, rubbed over with a cicatrizing ointment, is to be introduced. The same medicine is to be applied externally until the wound be cicatrized.



## CAP. XXIX.

QUA CURATIONE PARTUS EMORTUUS,  
EX UTERO EXCUTIATUR.

UBI concepit autem aliqua, si jam prope maturus partus intus emortuus est, neque excidere per se potest, adhibenda curatio est: quæ numerari inter difficillimas potest. Nam et summam prudentiam moderationemque desiderat, et maximum periculum affert. Sed ante omnia vulvæ natura mirabilis, cum in multis aliis, tum in hac re quoque facile cognoscitur. Oportet autem ante omnia resupinam mulierem transverso lecto sic collocare, ut feminibus ejus ipsius ilia comprimantur: quo fit, ut et imus venter in conspectu medici sit, et infans ad os vulvæ compellatur; quæ, emortuo partu, id comprimit: ex intervallo vero paulum dehiscit. Hac occasione usus medicus, unctæ manus indicem digitum primum debet inserere, atque ibi continere, donec iterum id os ape-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIX.

QUA RATIONE PARTUS EMORTUUS  
EXCUTIATUR EX UTERO.

AUTEM ubi aliqua concepit, si partus jam prope maturus emortuus est intus, neque potest excidere per se, curatio est adhibenda; quæ potest numerari inter difficillimas. Nam et desiderat summam prudentiam que moderationem, et affert maximum periculum. Sed ante omnia mirabilis natura vulvæ cognoscitur facile cum in multis aliis, tum quoque in hac re. Autem ante omnia oportet collocare mulierem resupinam transverso lecto sic, ut ilia comprimantur feminibus ejus ipsius; quo fit, ut et imus venter sit in conspectu medici, et infans compellatur ad os vulvæ; quæ, partu emortuo, comprimit id: vero ex intervallo dehiscit paulum. Medicus usus hac occasione debet primum inserere indicem digitum manus, unctæ, atque ibi continere

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIX.

THE METHOD OF EXTRACTING A DEAD FŒTUS FROM THE WOMB.

WHEN a woman has conceived, if the fœtus die in the womb near the time of delivery, and cannot come away of itself, an operation will be necessary; which may be classed amongst the most difficult. For it is one which requires the utmost prudence and tenderness, and is attended with the greatest danger. The wonderful properties of the womb in this, as in many other instances, are admirably developed. In the first place it will be requisite to place the woman across a bed, in such a posture that her ilia may be compressed by her thighs: this being done, the lower part of the abdomen will be presented to the physician, and the child forced to the os uteri; which is closed, whilst the fœtus is dead; but opens a little at intervals. The physician seizes the opportunity, and introduces first the fore finger of his right hand, being previously anointed, and holds it there until

riatur, rursusque alterum digitum demittere debet, et per easdem occasiones alios, donec tota esse intus manus possit. Ad cuius rei facultatem multum confert et magnitudo vulvæ, et vis nervorum ejus, et corporis totius habitus, et mentis etiam robur: cum præsertim intus nonnumquam etiam duæ manus dari debeant.

Pertinet etiam ad rem, quam calidissimum esse imum ventrem, et extrema corporis; neque dum inflammationem cœpisse, sed recenti re protinus adhiberi medicamina. Nam, si corpus jam intumuit, neque demitti manus, neque educi infans, nisi æger rime potest: sequiturque sæpe cum vomitu, et cum tremore, mortifera nervorum distentio. Verum intus emortuo corpori manus injecta protinus habitum ejus sentit: nam aut in caput, aut in pedes conversum est; aut transversum jacet; fere tamen sic, ut vel manus ejus, vel pes in propinquo sit.

Medici vero propositum est, ut eum manu dirigat vel in caput, vel etiam

## ORDO.

donec id os aperiatur iterum, que rursus debet demittere alterum digitum, et per easdem occasiones alios, donec tota manus possit esse intus. Ad facultatem cuius rei et magnitudo vulvæ confert multum, et vis nervorum ejus, et habitus totius corporis, et etiam robur mentis; præsertim cum nonnumquam etiam duæ manus debeant dari intus.

Etiam pertinet ad rem imum ventrem esse quam calidissimum, et extrema corporis, neque dum inflammationem cœpisse, sed medicamina adhiberi protinus, re recenti. Nam, si corpus jam intumuit, neque manus potest demitti, neque infans educi nisi æger rime: quæ motifera distentio nervorum sequitur sæpe cum vomitu, et cum tremore. Verum manus injecta emortuo corpori protinus sentit habitum ejus: nam aut est conversum in caput, aut in pedes; aut jacet transversum; tamen fere sic, ut vel manus ejus, vel pes, sit in propinquo.

Vero est propositum medici, ut dirigat eum manu vel in caput, vel

## TRANSLATION.

the os uteri be dilated again, then he must introduce another finger, and at every dilatation the rest of the fingers, until the whole hand be within the uterus. The capacity of the womb, and the muscular contractility of its nerves, together with the whole habit of body, and even the fortitude of the mind, contribute much to the facility of doing this; especially as it is necessary in some cases to introduce both hands into the womb.

It is of importance that the lower region of the abdomen, and the extremities of the body be as warm as possible; nor should this be done if the inflammation has commenced, but immediate assistance must be employed while the case is recent. For if the body be already swollen, neither the introduction of the hand, nor the extraction of the fœtus can be effected without the greatest difficulty: and this is frequently accompanied with vomiting, tremor, and fatal convulsions. When the hand is introduced to the dead fœtus, it immediately discovers its position; for it is either turned upon its head, or its feet, or it lies transversely, but commonly in such a manner, that either its hand or foot is near the os uteri.

The duty of the physician by the introduction of his hand, is to turn the child

in pedes, si forte aliter compositus est. Ac, si nihil aliud est, manus vel pes apprehensus, corpus rectius reddit: nam manus in caput, pes in pedes eum convertit. Tum, si caput proximum est, demitti debet uncus, undique lævis, acuminis brevis, qui vel oculo, vel auri, vel ori, interdum etiam fronti recte injicitur; deinde attractus educit infantem.

Neque tamen quolibet is tempore extrahi debet. Nam, si compresso vulvæ ore id tentatum est, non emittente eo, infans abrumpitur, et unci acumen in ipsum os vulvæ delabatur; sequiturque nervorum distentio, et ingens periculum mortis. Igitur, compressa vulva, conquiescere; hianti, leniter trahere oportet; et per has occasiones educere eum paulatim. Trahere autem dextra manus uncum; sinistra, intus posita, infantem ipsum, simulque dirigere eum debet.

Solet etiam evenire, ut is infans humore distendatur, exque eo profluat fœdi odoris sanies. Quod si tale est, indice digito corpus illud forandum est, ut,

## ORDO.

etiam in pedes, si forte est compositus aliter. Ac si est nihil aliud, manus vel pes apprehensus, reddit corpus rectius: nam manus convertit eum in caput, pes in pedes. Tum, si caput est proximum, uncus debet demitti lævis undique, brevis acuminis, qui injicitur recte vel oculo, vel auri, vel ori, interdum etiam fronti: deinde attractus educit infantem.

Neque tamen debet is extrahi quolibet tempore. Nam si id tentatum est, ore vulvæ compresso, eo non emittente, infans abrumpitur, et acumen unci delabatur in os ipsum vulvæ, que distentio nervorum sequitur, et ingens periculum mortis. Igitur, vulva compressa, oportet conquiescere; hianti, trahere lente, et per has occasiones educere eum paulatim. Autem dextra manus debet trahere uncum; sinistra posita intus, infantem ipsum, que simul dirigere eum.

Etiam solet evenire, ut is infans distendatur humore, que sanies fœdi odoris profluat ex eo. Quod

## TRANSLATION.

either upon its head, or on its feet, if it were placed otherwise. And if there be no other impediment, he lays hold of the hand or foot, and places it in a straighter position: for the hand being laid hold of, turns it upon its head, and the foot, upon its feet. Then if the head present the nearest, a crotchet should be introduced, polished in every part, with a short beak, which must be properly fixed in either the eye, or the ear, or the mouth, and sometimes even the forehead; which being drawn outwards, brings away the child.

Yet it ought not to be extracted at any moment of time indiscriminately. For if this attempt be made while the os uteri is contracted, *during the absence of a pain*, there being no outlet, the infant is lacerated, and the beak of the hook catches on the os uteri itself, and hence ensue convulsions, and very probably death. Therefore, while the mouth of the womb is closed, we should desist; and when it dilates to pull gently: and in this manner extract the fœtus gradually, as these dilatations present themselves. Now the right hand should draw the crotchet, while the left is within to pull the child, and to direct the hook.

It sometimes happens, that the child is distended with fluid, and a fœtid sanies flows from it. If this be the case, the body must be perforated with



effuso humore, extenuetur: tum id leniter per ipsas manus recipiendum est. Nam uncus injectus facile hebeti corpusculo elabitur: in quo quid periculi sit, supra positum est.

In pedes quoque conversus infans non difficulter extrahitur; quibus apprehensis per ipsas manus commode educitur. Si vero transversus est, neque dirigi potuit, uncus alæ injiciendus, paulatimque attrahendus est. Sub quo fere cervix replicatur, retroque caput ad reliquum corpus spectat.

Remedio est, cervix præcisa; ut separatim utraque pars auferatur. Id unco fit, qui, priori similis, in interiore tantum parte per totam aciem exacuitur. Tum id agendum est, ut ante caput, deinde reliqua pars auferatur: quia fere, majore parte extracta, caput in vacuum vulvam prolabitur, extrahique sine summo periculo non potest.

Si tamen id incidit, super ventrem mulieris duplici panniculo injecto, valens homo, non imperitus, a sinistro latere ejus debet assistere, et super

## ORDO.

si est tale, illud corpus est forandum indice digito, ut humore effuso, extenuetur: tum id est recipiendum leniter per manus ipsas. Nam uncus injectus hebeti corpusculo facile elabitur: in quo quid sit periculi positum est supra.

Quoque infans conversus in pedes non extrahitur difficulter; quibus apprehensis; educitur commode per manus ipsas. Vero si est transversus, neque potuit dirigi, uncus est injiciendus alæ, que paulatim attrahendus. Sub quo cervix fere replicatur, que caput spectat retro ad reliquum corpus.

Cervix præcisa est remedio; ut utraque pars auferatur separatim. Id fit unco, qui, similis priori, tantum in interiore parte exacuitur per totam aciem. Tum id est agendum, ut caput auferatur ante, deinde reliqua pars: quia fere, majore parte extracta, caput prolabitur in vacuum vulvam, que potest non extrahi sine summo periculo.

Tamen si id incidit, duplici panniculo injecto super ventrem mulieris, valens homo, non imperitus, debet assistere a sinistro la-

## TRANSLATION.

the fore-finger, that its volume may be reduced by the discharge of the fluid: then it must be extracted gently by the hands only. For the hook being applied to a lifeless and putrid body, easily slips away: the danger of which I have already pointed out above.

But a child turned on its feet is easily extracted: for these being laid hold of, it is easily brought away by the hands alone. But if it be placed transversely, and cannot be reduced to a straight position, a crotchet must be fixed in the arm-pit, and gradually brought down. In this case, the neck is commonly folded, and the head turns back upon the body.

The only remedy for this is to divide the neck, and to bring away each part separately. This is done by a crotchet, similar to the other, only that its inner edge is sharp throughout its entire length. Then we must endeavour to bring away the head first, afterwards the rest of the body; because generally, when the larger portion is extracted, the head glides into the uterine cavity, and cannot be brought away without the greatest danger.

However, if this should happen, a double cloth is to be laid on the woman's abdomen, and a strong intelligent person ought to stand at her left side, with

imum ventrem ejus duas manus imponere, alteraque alteram premere: quo fit, ut illud caput ad os vulvæ compellatur; idque eadem ratione, quæ supra posita est, unco extrahitur.

At si pes alter juxta repertus est, alter retro cum corpore est, quidquid protractum est, paulatim abscindendum est: et, si clunes os vulvæ urgere cœperunt, iterum retro repellendæ sunt, conquisitusque pes ejus adducendus. Aliæque etiamnum difficultates faciunt, ut, qui solidus non exit, concisus eximi debeat.

Quoties autem infans protractus est, tradendus ministro est, is eum supinis manibus sustinere; medicus deinde sinistra manu leniter trahere umbilicum debet, ita, ne abrumpat, dextraque eum sequi usque ad eas, quas secundas vocant, quod velamentum infantis intus fuit; hisque ultimis apprehensis, venulas membranulasque omnes eadem ratione manu diducere a vulva, totumque illud extrahere, et si quid intus præterea concreti san-

## ORDO.

tere ejus, et imponere duas manus super imum ventrem ejus, que premere alteram altera: quo fit ut illud caput compellatur ad os vulvæ: que id extrahitur unco eadem ratione, quæ posita est supra.

At si alter pes repertus est juxta, alter est retro cum corpore, quidquid protractum est, est abscindendum paulatim: et si clunes cœperunt urgere os vulvæ, sunt repellendæ retro iterum, que pes ejus conquisitus adducendus. Que etiamnum aliæ difficultates faciunt ut, qui non exit solidus, debeat eximi concisus.

Autem quoties infans protractum est, est tradendus ministro. Is debet sustinere eum supinis manibus, deinde medicus trahere umbilicum leniter sinistra manu, ita ne abrumpat, que sequi eum dextra, usque ad eas quas vocant secundas, quod fuit velamentum infantis intus; que his ultimis apprehensis, diducere manu eadem ratione, omnes venulas que membranulas a vulva, que extrahere totum illud, et si quid præterea concreti sanguinis remanet intus.

## TRANSLATION.

both his hands applied to the pubic region, and press with one hand upon the other; by which means the head is forced down towards the mouth of the womb, and then extracted by the crotchet, in the same way as I have previously directed.

But if one foot be found near the mouth of the womb, the other is turned backwards on the body, the protruded portion, whatever it may be, is to be cut off gradually: and if the nates of the child begin to press against the mouth of the womb, they must be thrust back again, and the other foot sought for and brought down. There are as yet some other difficulties, which render it necessary to remove the fœtus by divided portions, when it cannot be brought away entire.

Whenever a fœtus is brought away, it must be delivered to an attendant; whose duty it is to receive it with extended arms, and then the physician ought to trace the umbilical chord with his left hand gently, lest it should break, and with the right to follow it as far as the secundines as they are called, which were the coverings of the fœtus in utero: these being grasped in the hand, are to be brought out by the same means, and all its small vessels and membranes, besides all concretions of blood which might happen to remain in the uterus, are to be

guinis remanet. Tum compressis in unum feminibus, illa conclavi collocanda est, modicum calorem, sine ullo perflatu, habente: et super imum ventrem ejus imponenda lana succida, in aceto et rosa tincta. Reliqua curatio talis esse debet, qualis in inflammationibus, et in iis vulneribus, quæ in nervosis locis sunt, adhibetur.

## ORDO.

Tum feminibus compressis in unum, illa collocanda conclavi habente modicum calorem, sine ullo perflatu: succida lana, tincta in aceto et rosa, imponenda super imum ventrem ejus. Reliqua curatio debet esse talis qualis adhibetur in inflammationibus, et in iis vulneribus, quæ sunt in nervosis locis.

## TRANSLATION.

entirely removed by the hand. Then the thighs being brought close to each other, and the woman laid in a room moderately warm, without any draught in it: the pubic region is to be covered with rancid wool dipped in vinegar and rose-oil. The remainder of the treatment ought to be the same as that adopted in inflammations, and in those wounds which are in nervous parts.

## CAP. XXX.

DE ANI VITIIS, ET EORUM CURATIONE.

1. ANI quoque vitia, ubi medicamentis non vincuntur, manus auxilium desiderant. Ergo, si qua scissa in eo vetustate induruerunt, jamque callum habent, commodissimum est, ducere alvum; tum spongiam calidam admove, ut relaxentur illa, et foras prodeant: ubi in conspectu sunt, scalpello singula excidere, et ulcera

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXX.

DE VITIIS ANI, ET CURATIONE EORUM.

1. QUOQUE vitia ani, ubi vincuntur non medicamentis, desiderant auxilium manus. Ergo, si qua scissa induruerunt, in eo vetustate, que jam habent callum, est commodissimum ducere alvum; tum admove calidam spongiam, ut illa relaxentur et prodeant foras: ubi sunt in conspectu, excidere singula scalpello, et renovare ulcera;

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXX.

THE DISEASES OF THE RECTUM, AND TREATMENT.

1. WHEN diseases of the anus are not cured by medicines, they also require the aid of a manual operation. Therefore, if any fissures in that part have become indurated by age, and now callous, it will be the proper method to give an enema, then to apply a warm sponge in order to relax them and bring them out: when they are in sight, let them be excised one by one, and renew the ulcers:



renovare; deinde imponere linamentum molle, et super linteolum illitum melle; locumque eum molli lana implere, et ita vincire: altero die, deincepsque ceteris, lenibus medicamentis uti, quæ ad recentia eadem vitia necessaria esse, alias proposui: et utique per primos dies sorbitionibus eum sustinere; paulatim deinde cibis adjicere aliquid, generis tamen ejus, quod eodem loco præceptum est.

Si quando autem ex inflammatione pus in his oritur, ubi primum id apparuit, incidendum est; ne anus ipse suppuret. Neque tamen ante properandum est: nam, si crudum incisum est, inflammationi multum accedit, et puris aliquanto amplius concitatur. His quoque vulneribus, lenibus cibis, iisdemque medicamentis opus est.

2. At tubercula, quæ κονδυλώματα appellantur, ubi induruerunt, hac ratione curantur. Alvus ante omnia ducitur: tum vulsella tuberculum apprehensum, juxta radices exciditur. Quod ubi factum est, eadem sequuntur, quæ supra post curationem adhibenda esse proposui: tantummo-

## ORDO.

deinde imponere molle linamentum, et super linteolum illitum melle; que implere eum locum molli lana, et ita vincire: altero die, que deinceps ceteris, uti lenibus medicamentis, quæ proposui alias esse necessaria ad eadem vitia recentia: et utique per primos dies sustinere eum sorbitionibus: deinde paulatim adjicere aliquid cibis, tamen ejus generis quod præceptum est eodem loco.

Autem si quando pus oritur ex inflammatione in his, ubi primum id apparuit, est incidendum, ne anus ipse suppuret. Neque tamen est properandum ante: nam, si incisum est crudum, multum accedit inflammationi, et aliquanto amplius puris concitatur. His vulneribus quoque, est opus lenibus cibis, que iisdem medicamentis.

2. At tubercula, que appellantur κονδυλώματα (condylomata), ubi induruerunt, curantur hac ratione. Ante omnia alvus ducitur: tum tuberculum apprehensum vulsella, exciditur juxta radices. Ubi quod factum est, eadem sequuntur quæ proposui supra esse adhibenda post curationem: tan-

## TRANSLATION.

afterwards to put a little soft lint, and over that a little linen spread over with honey: and to fill up the part with soft wool, and so bind it up: on the next and subsequent days to use mild applications, which I have prescribed elsewhere for the same disorders when recent: and especially during the first few days, to sustain the patient on gruels; afterward to increase the food gradually, yet of that kind which has been already advised in the same place.

But if matter should be collected at any time after the inflammation, it must be excised, as soon as it has appeared, lest the anus itself should suppurate. Yet this should not be done prematurely, for, if opened while immature, the inflammation will be aggravated, and the quantity of pus increased. For these wounds also, there is a necessity for mild food, and similar dressings.

2. But the tubercles, which are called Condylomata, warty excrescences, when they have become indurated, are treated in this manner. First of all, let an enema be administered: then the tubercle be seized with a forceps, and cut off near its root. When this is done, the same means must be employed which I have prescribed after the preceding operation; with this exception, that if there be

do, si quid increseat, squama æris coercendum est.

3. Ora etiam venarum, fundentia sanguinem, sic tolluntur. Ubi sanguini, qui effluit, sanies adjicitur, alvus acribus ducitur, quo magis ora promoveantur: eoque fit, ut omnia venarum quasi capitula conspicua sint. Tum, si capitulum exiguum est, basimque tenuem habet, adstringendum lino paulum supra est, quam ubi cum ano committitur: imponenda spongia ex aqua calida est, donec id liveat: deinde aut ungue, aut scalpello, supra nodum id exulcerandum est. Quod nisi factum est, magni dolores subsequuntur: interdum etiam urinæ difficultas.

Si id majus est, et basis latior, hamulo uno aut altero excipiendum est, paulumque supra basim incidendum: neque relinquendum quidquam ex eo capitulo, neque quidquam ex ano demendum est: quod consequitur is, qui neque nimium, neque parum hamos ducit. Qua incisum est, acus debet immitti, infraque eam lino id capitulum alligari.

## ORDO.

tummodo, si quid increseat, est coercendum squama æris.

3. Etiam, ora venarum fundentia sanguinem tolluntur sic. Ubi sanies adjicitur sanguini, qui effluit, alvus ducitur acribus, quo ora promoveantur magis: que eo fit ut omnia capitula, quasi venarum, sint conspicua. Tum, si capitulum est exiguum, que habet tenuem basim, est adstringendum lino paulum supra quam ubi committitur cum ano: spongia ex calida aqua est imponenda donec id liveat: deinde, id est exulcerandum supra nodum, aut ungue, aut scalpello. Nisi quod factum est magni dolores subsequuntur: etiam, interdum, difficultas urinæ.

Si id est majus, et basis latior, est excipiendum uno hamulo aut altero, que incidendum paulum supra basim; neque quidquam ex eo capitulo est relinquendum, neque quidquam ex ano demendum: quod is consequitur qui ducit hamos neque nimium neque parum. Qua incisum est, acus debet immitti, que infra eam id capitulum alligari lino.

## TRANSLATION.

any remaining excrescence, it must be kept under by copper scales: *peroxydum cupri*.

3. The mouths of the hæmorrhoidal veins discharging blood are to be removed in this manner. When there is a sanious discharge in addition to the blood which escapes, an acrid lavement must be given, by which the mouths of the veins may be made more prominent; and by this means all the heads of the small veins will be more conspicuous. Then if the head be small, and have a slender base, it is to be tied with a thread, a little above the part where it is joined to the anus, and a sponge squeezed out of warm water laid over it until it become livid; afterwards this is to be scarified above the knot, either with the nail or scalpel. Unless this be done, great pains ensue, and even a difficulty of micturition.

If the pile be very large, with a broad base, it must be taken hold of by one or two small hooks, and incised a little above the base; neither must any part of the head be left, nor any part of the anus be taken away; which may be accomplished by not drawing the hooks either too much or too little. Where the incision has been made, a needle is to be passed *through the orifice of the vein*, and below this a ligature applied.

Si duo triave sunt, imum quodque primum curandum est: si plura, non omnia simul; ne tempore eodem undique teneræ cicatrices sint. Si sanguis profluit, excipiendus est spongia: deinde linamentum imponendum, ungenda femina, et inguina, et quidquid juxta ulcus est, ceratumque superdandum, et farina hordeacea calida implendus is locus, et sic deligandus est.

Postero die is desiderare in aqua calida debet, eodemque cataplasmate foveri. Ac bis die, et ante curationem, et post eam, coxæ ac femina liquido cerato perungenda sunt; tepidoque is loco continendus.

Interpositis quinque aut sex diebus, oriculario specillo linamenta educenda: si capitula simul non exciderunt, digito promovenda: tum lenibus medicamentis, iisdemque, quæ alibi posui, ulcera ad sanitatem perducenda. Finito vitio, quemadmodum agendum esset, jam alias superius exposui.

## ORDO.

Si sunt duo ve tria, quodque imum est curandum primum: si plura, non omnia simul; ne sint teneræ cicatrices undique eodem tempore. Si sanguis profluit, est excipiendus spongia: deinde linamentum imponendum, femina et inguina, et quidquid est juxta ulcus ungendum, que ceratum superdandum, et is locus est implendus calida hordeacea farina, et sic deligandus.

Postero die is debet desiderare in calida aqua, que foveri eodem cataplasmate. Ac bis die, et ante curationem et post eam, coxæ ac femina sunt perungenda liquido cerato, que is continendus tepido loco.

Quinque aut sex diebus interpositis, linamenta educenda oriculario specillo: si capitula non exciderunt simul, promovenda digito: tum ulcera perducenda ad sanitatem lenibus medicamentis, que iisdem quæ posui alibi. Exposui jam alias superius, quemadmodum esset agendum, vitio finito.

## TRANSLATION.

If there be two or three, the innermost must be cured first; if there be many, not all at once, lest there be tender scars around the part at the same time. If there be hæmorrhage, it must be taken up with a sponge: afterwards lint is to be laid on the part, the thighs and groins, and parts contiguous to the ulcers anointed, and a cerate laid over it, and the part filled with warm barley meal, and so bandaged.

On the following day the patient ought to sit down in warm water, and be dressed with the same cataplasm. And twice a day, both before and after the dressing, the hips (10) and thighs must be anointed with liquid cerate, and the patient kept in a warm place.

After the space of five or six days, the lint is to be withdrawn by the aid of an ear probe; and if those little heads have not dropped off at the same time, they must be detached by the finger. Then the ulcers are to be healed with mild applications, the same as I have elsewhere mentioned. I have already pointed out the mode of treatment when the disease has terminated.



## CAP. XXXI.

## DE VARICIBUS.

AB his ad crura proximus transitus est. In quibus orti varices non difficili ratione tolluntur. Huc autem et earum venularum, quæ in capite nocent; et eorum varicum, qui in ventre sunt, curationem distuli: quoniam ubique eadem est. Igitur vena omnis, quæ noxia est, aut adusta tabescit, aut manu eximitur. Si recta; si, quamvis transversa, tamen simplex; si modica est, melius aduritur. Si curva est, et velut in orbes quosdam implicatur, pluresque inter se involvuntur, utilius eximere est.

Adurendi ratio hæc est. Cutis superinciditur: tum patefacta vena, tenui et retuso ferramento candente modice premitur; vitaturque, ne plagæ ipsius oræ adurantur: quas reducere hamulis facile est. Id interpositis

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXXI.

## DE VARICIBUS.

PROXIMUS transitus est ab his ad crura. In quibus varices orti tolluntur ratione non difficili. Autem distuli huc et curationem earum venularum quæ nocent in capite, et eorum varicum, qui sunt in ventre; quoniam est ubique eadem. Igitur omnis vena quæ est noxia, aut tabescit adusta, aut eximitur manu. Si recta; si, quamvis transversa, tamen simplex; si est modica, aduritur melius. Si est curva, et implicatur velut in quosdam orbes, que plures involvuntur inter se, est utilius eximere.

Ratio adurendi est hæc. Cutis superinciditur: tum, vena patefacta premitur modice tenui et retuso candente ferramento; que vitatur ne oræ plagæ ipsius adurantur; reducere quas hamulis est facile. Id fit per totum varicem, fere

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXXI.

## ON VARICES IN THE LEGS.

THE next transition is from these to the legs. In which varices are removed with no great difficulty. I deferred hitherto the treatment of those little varicose veins which injure the head, and also those which form on the abdomen, because the treatment is every where the same. Therefore every vein which is troublesome, either becomes obliterated by being burnt, or is removed by an operation. If it be straight, or even tortuous, provided it be isolated and of a moderate size, the best application will be the actual cantery. If much convoluted, and disposed into circles as it were, with a number of them interlacing each other, the better plan will be to excise them.

The method of burning is this. An incision is made on the skin over it: then the vein, being laid bare, is pressed moderately by a small blunt iron instrument made red hot: and care must be taken that the edges of the wounds be not burnt; which may be easily retracted by *blunt* hooks. This is to be done over the whole ex-

fere quaternis digitis per totum varicem fit: et tum superimponitur medicamentum, quo adusta sanantur.

At exciditur hoc modo. Cute eadem ratione super venam incisa, hamulo oræ excipiuntur; scalpelloque undique a corpore vena diducitur; caveturque, ne inter hæc ipsa lædatur; eique retusus hamulus subjicitur; interpositoque eodem fere spatio, quod supra positum est, in eadem vena idem fit: quæ, quo tendat, facile hamulo extento cognoscitur. Ubi jam idem, quacumque varices sunt, factum est, uno loco adducta per hamulum vena præciditur: deinde, qua proximus hamus est, attrahitur et evellitur; ibique rursus abscinditur. Ac sic undique varicibus crure liberato, tum plagarum oræ committuntur, et super emplastrum glutinans injicitur.

#### ORDO.

quaternis digitis interpositis: et tum medicamentum superimponitur, quo adusta sanantur.

At exciditur hoc modo. Cute super venam incisa eadem ratione, oræ excipiuntur hamulo; que vena diducitur undique a corpore scalpello: que cavetur, ne inter hæc ipsa lædatur; que retusus hamulus subjicitur ei; que fere eodem spatio interposito, quod positum est supra, idem fit in eadem vena: quæ, quo tendat, cognoscitur facile, hamulo extento. Ubi idem jam factum est, quacumque varices sunt, vena adducta uno loco per hamulum præciditur: deinde qua proximus hamus est, attrahitur et evellitur; que ibi rursus abscinditur. Ac sic undique crure liberato varicibus, tum oræ plagarum committuntur, et glutinans emplastrum injicitur super.

#### TRANSLATION.

tent of the varix, leaving an interspace of about four fingers' breadth between: after this, such medicines as are calculated to heal burns are to be laid on.

But a varix is cut out in this manner. The skin over the vein being incised in the same way as before, the edges of the wound are to be held apart by a small hook, and the vein completely detached on all sides from the surrounding flesh: and great care will be necessary during the dissection that the vein itself be not wounded; a blunt hook is to be put under it; and the same space being interposed between the incisions as above, the same is to be done on the same vein through its whole course, which may be known by raising it up with the little hook; when this is done, the vein is to be raised by the hook and cut off; then where the next hook is fixed, it is to be drawn up, and excised again. In this manner the leg being freed from the varicose veins entirely, then the edges of the wounds are brought together, and adhesive plaster applied over them.

## CAP. XXXII.

DE CURVATIS DIGITIS ET COHÆ-  
RENTIBUS.

AT, si digiti vel in utero protinus, vel propter communem exulcerationem postea cohæserunt, scalpello diducuntur: dein separatim uterque non pingui emplastro circumdatur: atque ita per se uterque sanescit.

Si vero fuit ulcus in digito, posteaque male inducta cicatrix curvum eum reddidit; primum malagma tentandum est: dein, si id nihil prodest (quod et in veteri cicatrice, et, ubi nervi læsi sunt, evenire consuevit) videre oportet, nervine id vitium, an cutis sit. Si nervi est, attingi non debet: neque enim sanabile est. Si cutis, tota cicatrix excidenda; quæ fere callosa extendi digitum minus patiebatur: tum rectus sic ad novam cicatricem perducendus est.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXXII.

DE COHÆRENTIBUS ET CURVATIS  
DIGITIS.

AT, si digiti vel protinus in utero, vel propter communem exulcerationem postea cohæserunt, diducuntur scalpello; deinde uterque circumdatur separatim emplastro non pingui: atque ita uterque sanescit per se.

Vero si fuit ulcus in digito, quæ cicatrix postea inducta male reddidit eum curvum; primum malagma est tentandum: dein, si id prodest nihil, quod consuevit evenire et in veteri cicatrice, et ubi nervi læsi sunt, oportet videre ne id sit vitium nervi, an cutis. Si est nervi, debet non attingi: enim neque est sanabile. Si cutis, tota cicatrix excidenda; quæ fere callosa patiebatur digitum minus extendi: tum rectus sic, est perducendus ad novam cicatricem.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXXII.

## ON THE MALFORMATION AND ADHESION OF THE FINGERS.

Now if the fingers, either immediately from the birth, or from the effect of common ulceration afterwards, adhere together, they are to be separated by the scalpel: then each finger is to be surrounded with a plaster, destitute of all fat: and in this manner each finger will heal separately.

But if the incurvation of the finger has been the effect of an ulcer injudiciously cicatrized, we should first try a malagma—*poultice*: then if that avail but little, (which not unfrequently happens in an old scar, and when the tendons have been injured) we ought to ascertain whether the defect be in the tendon, or in the skin. If in the tendon, it ought not to be touched, for it is incurable. If in the skin, the whole cicatrix must be removed; which being mostly callous, offered the greater resistance to the extension of the fingers: then being made straight, a new cicatrix must be formed.



## CAP. XXXIII.

## DE GANGRÆNÆ CURATIONE.

GANGRÆNAM inter ungues alasque, aut inguina nasci; et, si quando medicamenta vincuntur, membrum præcidi oportere, alio loco mihi dictum est.

Sed id quoque cum periculo summo fit: nam sæpe in ipso opere, vel profusione sanguinis vel animæ defectione moriuntur. Verum hic quoque nihil interest, an satis tutum præsidium sit, quod unicum est. Igitur inter sanam vitiatamque partem incidenda scalpello caro usque ad os est, sic, ut neque contra ipsum articulum id fiat, et potius ex sana parte aliquid excidatur, quam ex ægra relinquatur. Ubi ad os ventum est, reducenda ab eo sana caro, et circa os subsecanda est, ut ea quoque parte aliquid os nudetur: dein id serrula præcidendum

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXXIII.

## DE CURATIONE GANGRÆNÆ.

Dictum est mihi alio loco, gangrænam nasci inter ungues que alas, aut inguina, et si quando medicamenta vincuntur, oportere membrum præcidi.

Sed id quoque fit cum summo periculo: nam moriuntur sæpe in opere ipso, vel profusione sanguinis, vel defectione animæ. Verum hic quoque interest nihil an præsidium, quod est unicum, sit satis tutum. Igitur caro inter sanam que vitiatam partem est incidenda scalpello usque ad os, sic ut id fiat neque contra articulum ipsum, et aliquid ex sana parte excidatur potius quam ex ægra relinquatur. Ubi ventum est ad os, sana caro est reducenda ab eo, et subsecanda circa os, ut ea parte quoque os nudetur aliquid: dein id est præcidendum serrula,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

## THE TREATMENT OF GANGRENE.

It has been said by me in another part, that gangrene takes place between the nails, arm-pits, or in the groins, and if it should resist the efficacy of medicines at any time, then the limb ought to be removed.

But even this is attended with very great danger: for patients frequently die during the operation itself, either from syncope, or from hæmorrhage. But in this as well as in some other cases, it is of very little importance, whether the remedy be safe,—it is our only one. Therefore the incision is to be made with a scalpel through the flesh as far as the bone, between the healthy and diseased portion; but not over a joint, and it should rather comprehend a portion of the sound limb, than leave any part of it diseased. When we come to the bone, the sound flesh must be retracted from it, and the section continued round it, so as to lay that part of the bone bare; then that is to be cut off with a small saw, as near as

est, quam proxime sanæ carni etiam inhærenti: ac tum frons ossis, quam serrula exasperavit, lævanda est, supraque inducenda cutis; quæ sub ejusmodi curatione laxa esse debet, ut quam maxime undique os contegat. Quo cutis inducta non fuerit, id linamentis erit contegendum, et super id spongia ex aceto deliganda. Cetera postea sic facienda, ut in vulneribus, in quibus pus moveri debet, præceptum est.

## ORDO.

quam-proxime sanæ carni etiam inhærenti; ac tum frons ossis, quam serrula exasperavit, est lævanda, que cutis inducenda; quæ sub curatione ejusmodi debet esse laxa, ut contegat os undique quam maxime. Quo cutis inducta non fuerit, id erit contegendum linamentis, et spongia ex aceto deliganda super id. Postea cetera facienda sic, ut præceptum est in vulneribus in quibus pus debet moveri.

## TRANSLATION.

possible to the sound adherent flesh: and the asperities of the bone produced by the saw being smoothed, the skin is to be brought over it; which in an operation of this kind, ought to be very free, in order to cover the bone in every direction as much as possible. The part which has not been sufficiently covered with skin, must be dressed with lint, and a sponge moistened with vinegar bound over it. The subsequent dressings must be the same as have been prescribed for wounds in which it is requisite to promote pus.

## A. CORN. CELSI

DE MEDICINA

LIBER OCTAVUS.

ORDO.

LIBER OCTAVUS

A. COR. CELSI

DE MEDICINA.

## CAP. I.

DE POSITU ET FIGURA OSSIIUM  
TOTIUS HUMANI CORPORIS.

SUPEREST ea pars, quæ ad ossa pertinet: quæ quo facilius accipi possit, prius positus figurasque eorum indicabo. Igitur calvaria incipit ex interiore parte concava, extrinsecus gibba, utrimque lævis, et qua cerebri membranam contegit, et qua cute capillorum, contegitur: eaque simplex, ab occipitio et temporibus; duplex, usque in verticem a fronte, est: ossaque ejus, ab exterioribus partibus,

## CAP. I.

DE POSITU ET FIGURA OSSUM  
TOTIUS HUMANI CORPORIS.

EA pars superest quæ pertinet ad ossa; quo quæ possit accipi facilius, indicabo prius positus que figuras. Igitur calvaria incipit concava ex interiore parte, extrinsecus gibba, utrimque lævis, et qua contegit membranam cerebri, et qua contegitur cute capillorum: que ea simplex ab occipitio et temporibus: est duplex a fronte usque in verticem: que ossa ejus dura ab exterioribus

TRANSLATION.

THE EIGHTH BOOK

OF

AURELIUS CORNELIUS CELSUS

ON MEDICINE.

## CHAP. I.

THE FORM AND SITUATION OF THE HUMAN BONES.

THAT part which now remains relates to the bones; and in order to render this subject the more easily understood, I shall first point out their relative positions and forms. In the first place then, the skull is concave internally, externally convex. Smooth on each side, both where it covers the membrane of the brain, and where it is covered by the hairy scalp. It is simple from the occiput to the temples: from the os frontis to the vertex it is double. The external surfaces of its



dura; ab interioribus, quibus inter se connectuntur, molliora sunt: interque ea venæ discurrent, quas his alimentum subministrare, credibile est.

Raro autem calvaria solida, sine suturis est: locis tamen æstuosis facilius invenitur; et id caput firmissimum, atque a dolore tutissimum est. Ex ceteris, quo suturæ pauciores sunt, eo capitis valetudo commodior est. Neque enim certus earum numerus est, sicut ne locus quidem. Fere tamen duæ, super aures, tempora a superiore capitis parte discernunt: tertia, ad aures per verticem tendens, occipitium a summo capite diducit: quarta, ab eodem vertice per medium caput ad frontem procedit; eaque modo sub imo capillo desinit, modo frontem ipsam secans inter supercilia finitur.

Ex his ceteræ quidem suturæ in unguem committuntur: æ vero, quæ super aures transversæ sunt, totis oris paulatim extenuantur; atque ita inferiora ossa superioribus leniter insidunt. Crassissimum vero in capite

## ORDO.

partibus; sunt molliora ab interioribus, quibus connectuntur inter se: que inter ea venæ discurrent quas est credibile sub ministrare alimentum his.

Autem calvaria est raro solida sine suturis: tamen invenitur facilius æstuosis locis; et id caput est firmissimum atque tutissimum ab dolore. Ex ceteris, quo pauciores suturæ sunt, eo valetudo capitis est commodior. Enim neque numerus earum, sicut neque locus est certus. Tamen fere duæ, super aures, discernunt tempora a superiore parte capitis: tertia, tendens per verticem ad aures, diducit occipitium a summo capite; quarta procedit ab eodem vertice per medium caput ad frontem; que ea desinit modo sub imo capillo, modo secans frontem ipsam finitur inter supercilia.

Ex his ceteræ suturæ quidem committuntur in unguem: vero eæ quæ sunt transversæ super aures, extenuantur paulatim totis oris; atque ita inferiora ossa leniter insidunt superioribus. Vero crassissimum os in capite est post

## TRANSLATION.

bones are hard: internally, where they are connected with each other, softer. Between these bones, veins—*arteries*—run in different directions, which are supposed to supply them with nourishment.

The skull is rarely found solid—*ossified*—without sutures; but it is more easily found in hot climates; and such a head is the strongest and most free from pain. Compared with others, that head which has fewer sutures is less liable to cephalic ailments or accidents. Neither is their number or their situation always certain. Yet commonly, however, the two sutures above the ears separate the temporal from the superior part of the head—the *parietal*: a third, extending across the vertex to the ears, divides the occiput from the top of the head: a fourth extends from the vertex along the middle of the head to the forehead: and this suture sometimes terminates at the extremity of the hairy scalp, sometimes it advances through the os frontis itself and ends between the supercilia.

The other sutures are exactly adapted to each other by indentation: but those which are transverse over the ears become gradually thinner towards their margins, and thus the inferior bones slightly overlap the superior ones. The thickest

os post aurem est; qua capillus, ut verisimile est, ob id ipsum non gignitur. Sub his quoque musculis, qui tempora connectunt, os medium, in exteriorem partem inclinatum, positum est. At facies suturam habet maximam; quæ a tempore incipiens, per medios oculos, naresque transversa pervenit ad alterum tempus. A qua breves duæ sub interioribus angulis deorsum spectant. Et malæ quoque in summa parte singulas transversas suturas habent. A mediisque naribus, aut superiorum dentium gingivis, per medium palatum una procedit; aliaque transversa idem palatum secatur. Et suturæ quidem in plurimis hæ sunt.

Foramina autem, intra caput, maxima oculorum sunt; deinde narium; tum quæ in auribus habemus. Ex his, quæ oculorum sunt, recta simpliciaque ad cerebrum tendunt. Narium duo foramina osse medio discernuntur: siquidem hæ primum a superciliis, angulisque oculorum, osse inchoantur ad tertiam fere partem: deinde in cartilaginem versæ, quo propius ori descendunt, eo magis ca-

## ORDO.

aurem; qua capillus non gignitur, ut est verisimile ob id ipsum. Quoque sub his musculis, qui connectunt tempora, medium os est positum, inclinatum in exteriorem partem. At facies habet maximam suturam, quæ, incipiens a tempore, pervenit transversa per medios oculos que nares ad alterum tempus. A qua duæ breves spectant deorsum sub interioribus angulis. Et malæ quoque habent singulas transversas suturas in summa parte. Quæ a mediis naribus, aut gingivis superiorem dentium una procedit per medium palatum, quæ alia transversa secatur idem palatum. Et hæ suturæ, quidem, sunt in plurimis.

Autem maxima foramina intra caput sunt oculorum; deinde narium; tum quæ habemus in auribus. Ex his quæ sunt oculorum, tendunt recta que simplicia ad cerebrum. Duo foramina narium discernuntur medio osse; siquidem, hæ primum inchoantur a superciliis, que angulis oculorum osse fere ad tertiam partem: deinde, versæ in cartilaginem, quo propius ori descendunt, eo magis ca-

## TRANSLATION.

bone in the head is behind the ear; and very probably for this reason the hair does not grow there. Just below those, muscles also which connect the temples, the middle bone is situated, inclined a little outward. But the face has the largest suture, which beginning at one temple runs transversely through the middle of the eyes and nostrils to the other temple; from which two short ones point downward under their internal angles. The cheek bones also have a transverse suture in the superior part: and from the middle of the nose, or from the alveolar process of the superior teeth, one proceeds through the middle of the palate, and another divides the palate transversely. These, then, are the sutures commonly found in most people.

Now the largest openings of the head are those of the eyes: the next, those of the nostrils: then those which we have in the ears. The optic foramina tend direct and undivided to the brain. The two openings of the nostrils are separated by the middle septum—*vomer*: these becoming osseous from the superciliary ridge and internal angles of the eyes, run to one third of its extent, afterwards become cartilaginous, as they approach the mouth, where they become more soft and

runcula quoque molliuntur. Sed ea foramina, quæ a summis ad imas nares simplicia sunt, ibi rursus in bina itinera dividuntur: aliaque ex his, ad fauces pervia, spiritum et reddunt et accipiunt; alia, ad cerebrum tendentia, ultima parte in multa et tenuia foramina dissipantur, per quæ sensus odoris nobis datur.

In aure quoque primo rectum et simplex iter, procedendo flexuosum, juxta cerebrum in multa et tenuia foramina diducitur, per quæ facultas audiendi est. Juxtaque ea duo parvuli quasi sinus sunt; superque eos finitur os, quod transversum a genis tendens, ab inferioribus ossibus sustinetur. Jugale appellari potest ab eadem similitudine, a qua id Græci ζυγῶδες appellant. Maxilla vero est mobile os, eaque una est: cujus eadem et media, et etiam ima pars, mentum est: a quo utrimque procedit ad tempora; solaque ea movetur. Nam maxillæ cum toto osse, quod superiores dentes exigit, immobiles sunt. Verum ipsius maxillæ partes extremæ quasi bicornes sunt. Alter processus, infra

## ORDO.

quoque molliuntur caruncula. Sed ea foramina quæ a summis ad imas nares sunt simplicia, dividuntur ibi rursus in bina itinera: que ex his, alia pervia ad fauces, et reddunt et accipiunt spiritum; alia, tendentia ad cerebrum, dissipantur ultima parte in multa et tenuia foramina, per quæ sensus odoris datur nobis.

In aure quoque, primo iter rectum et simplex procedendo flexuosum, juxta cerebrum diducitur in multa et tenuia foramina, per quæ est facultas audiendi. Que juxta ea sunt duo quasi parvuli sinus; que super eos os finitur, quod tendens transversum a genis, sustinetur ab inferioribus. Potest appellari jugale ab eadem similitudine a qua Græci appellant ζυγῶδες (zygodes). Vero maxilla est mobile os, que ea est una: cujus et eadem media, et etiam ima pars, est mentum: a quo procedit utrimque ad tempora; que ea sola movetur. Nam maxillæ cum toto osse quod exigit superiores dentes, sunt immobiles. Verum extremæ partes maxillæ ipsius sunt quasi bicornes. Alter pro-

## TRANSLATION.

fleshy. Now these openings are simple from the external to the internal extremity, are there again separated into two passages; and these ending in the fauces serve for expiration and inspiration; the others directing their course to the brain, terminate in very minute openings through the *os cribriforma*, by which we possess the sense of smelling.

In the ear, also, the passage at first is straight and simple; as it advances, it becomes tortuous; near the brain, it is divided into a number of small openings, by which we possess the faculty of hearing. Near these there are as it were two small sinuses; and over them is the termination of that bone which extending from the cheeks—the *zygoma*, is supported by the lower ones. It may be called jugale, from the same resemblance which gave it the Greek term of *zygodes*, or *zygoma*. The maxilla inferior is moveable (1) and single; of which the middle and lowest, constitute the chin; from whence it proceeds on both sides to the temples; and is the only one capable of motion; for the cheek bones, with the whole bone which contains the upper teeth, are immoveable. But the extremities of the maxilla branch out, as it were, into two horns. One of these processes is



latur, vertice ipso tenuatur, longiusque procedens sub osse jugali subit, et super id temporum musculis illigatur. Alter brevior et rotundior, et in eo sinu, qui juxta foramina auris est, cardinis modo fit; ibique huc et illuc se inclinans maxillæ facultatem motus præstat.

Duriores osse dentes sunt: quorum pars maxillæ, pars superiori ossi malarum hæret. Ex his quaterni primi, quia secant, *τομικοὶ* a Græcis nominantur. Hi deinde quatuor caninis dentibus ex omni parte cinguntur. Ultra quos utrimque fere maxillares quini sunt, præterquam in iis, in quibus ultimi, qui sero gigni solent, non increverunt.

Ex his priores singulis radicibus; maxillares utique binis, quidam etiam ternis, quaternisve nituntur. Fereque longior radix brevior dentem edit; rectique dentis recta etiam radix, curvi flexa est. Exque eadem radice in pueris novus dens subit, qui multo sæpius priorem expellit: interdum tamen supra infrave eum se ostendit.

Caput autem spina excipit. Ea constat ex vertebra quatuor et viginti.

#### ORDO.

cessus, latior infra, tennatur vertice ipso, que procedens longius subit sub jugale osse, et super id illigatur musculis temporum. Alter brevior et rotundior, et fit modo cardinis in eo sinu qui est juxta foramina auris; que ibi inclinans se huc et illuc præstat facultatem motus maxillæ.

Dentes sunt duriores (quam) osse: pars quorum hæret maxillæ, pars superiori ossi malarum. Ex his primi quaterni, quia secant, nominantur a Græcis *τομικοὶ* (*tomikoi*). Deinde hi quatuor cinguntur ex omni parte caninis dentibus. Ultra quos utrimque fere sunt quini maxillares, præterquam in iis in quibus ultimi, qui solent gigni sero, non increverunt.

Ex his priores nituntur singulis radicibus; maxillares utique binis, quidam etiam ternis ve quaternis. Que, fere, longior radix edit brevior dentem; que radix recti dentis est etiam recta, curvi flexa. Que in pueris novus dens subit ex eadem radice, qui multo sæpius expellit priorem; tamen interdum ostendit se supra ve infra eum.

Autem spina excipit caput. Ea constat ex quatuor et viginti ver-

#### TRANSLATION.

broader below, thinner above, and passes under the zygomatic arch, where it gives attachment to the temporal muscles. The other is shorter and rounder, and is formed like a hinge in that cavity which is near the external opening of the ear, and there it permits the various movements of which the jawbone is capable.

The teeth are harder than bone: part of them are fixed in the lower maxillary, and part in the upper. The four first anterior are termed by the Greeks *Tomicoi*, *incisores*, from their cutting edges. On each side of these,—above and below,—are the four canine teeth. Beyond these, on each side, are generally five maxillary or molar teeth, except in those persons in whom the last, or *dentes sapientiæ*, are accustomed to come out late in life.

The fore teeth adhere by single fangs: the molares by two, and some by three or four. And it may be observed, the shorter tooth has the longer root; and the root of a straight tooth is straight, that of a crooked one curved. In children, a new tooth springs from this root, which most frequently forces out the former. Sometimes, however, it shews itself above.

The spine is a continuation from the head. It is composed of twenty-four ver-

Septem in cervice sunt, duodecim ad costas, reliquæ quinque sunt proximæ costis. Eæ teretes brevesque, ab utroque latere, processus duos exigunt: mediæ perforatæ, qua spinæ medulla cerebro commissa descendit: circa quæ per duos processus tenuibus cavis perviæ, per quæ a membrana cerebri similes membranulæ deducuntur.

Omnesque vertebræ, exceptis tribus summis, a superiore parte in ipsis processibus parum desidentes sinus habent: ab inferiore alios deorsum versus processus exigunt. Summa igitur protinus caput sustinet, per duos sinus receptis exiguis ejus processibus. Quo fit, ut caput sursum deorsum versum tuberibus exasperetur. Secunda superiori parti inferiore. Quod ad circuitum pertinet, pars summa angustiore orbe finitur: ita superior ei summæ circumdata in latera quoque caput moveri sinit. Tertia eodem modo secundam excipit. Ex quo facilis cervici mobilitas est. Ac, ne sustinere quidem caput posset,

## ORDO.

tebris. Septem sunt in cervice, duodecim ad costas, reliquæ quinque sunt proximæ costis. Eæ teretes que breves exigunt duos processus ab utroque latere: mediæ perforatæ, qua medulla spinæ commissa cerebro, descendit: quoque circa perviæ per duos processus tenuibus cavis, per quæ, similes membranulæ deducuntur a membrana cerebri.

Quæ omnes vertebræ, tribus summis exceptis, habent sinus desidentes parum a superiore parte in processibus ipsis: ab inferiore exigunt alios processus versus deorsum. Igitur summa protinus sustinet caput, exiguis processibus receptis per duos sinus ejus. Quo fit, ut caput exasperetur tuberibus, versum sursum, deorsum. Secunda inferiore superiori parti. Quod pertinet ad circuitum, summa pars finitur angustiore orbe: ita superior circumdata ei summæ, sinit caput moveri quoque in latera. Tertia excipit secundam eodem modo. Ex quo mobilitas est facilis cervici. Ac posset ne quidam sustinere caput, nisi recti

## TRANSLATION.

tebræ. Seven are termed cervical, twelve dorsal, and the remaining five are named the lumbar. These are round and short, and send off two processes on each side: the middle is perforated for the transmission of the spinal marrow, which descends from the brain: there are besides two small openings in each transverse process, through which small membranes—*filaments*,—as it were, proceed from the spinal marrow.

All these vertebræ, except the first three, have small depressions on the superior part of their processes, with slight inclinations, and inferiorly send off processes which incline downwards. The first vertebra of the neck sustains the head with which it is articulated, the two condyles of the occiput being received in corresponding depressions of the atlas. For this reason, the base of the skull is made uneven by two prominences (2) capable of a slight inclination of the head forwards or backwards. The second vertebra is articulated with the inferior surface of the first. Its circumference is more contracted at its superior surface: thus, the first vertebra, or atlas, surrounding the dentatus of the second, permits a rotatory motion of the head from side to side. The third receives the second in the same manner; by which means the neck has great facility of motion. Neither could it sustain the head, were it not for straight and powerful ligaments on each side of

nisi utrimque recti valentesque nervi collum continerent, quos *τένοντας* Græci appellant: siquidem horum inter omnes flexus alter semper intentus ultra prolabi superiora non patitur.

Jamque vertebra tertia tubercula, quæ inferiori inserantur, exigit. Ceteræ processibus deorsum spectantibus in inferiores insinuantur, ac per sinus, quos utrimque habent, superiores accipiunt; multisque nervis et multa cartilagine continentur. Ac sic, uno flexu modico in promptum dato, ceteris negatis, homo erectus insistit, et aliquid ad necessaria opera curvatur.

Infra cervicem vero summa costa contra humerum sita est. Inde sex inferiores usque ad imum pectus perveniunt: eæque, primis partibus rotundæ, et leniter quasi capitulatæ, vertebrarum transversis processibus, ibi quoque paulum sinuatis, inhaerent: inde latescunt, et in exteriorem partem recurvatæ paulatim in cartilaginem degenerant; eaque parte rursus in interiora leniter flexæ commit-

## ORDO.

que valentes nervi continerent collum utrimque, quos Græci appellant *τένοντας*: siquidem alter horum semper intentus inter omnes flexus, patitur non superiora prolabi ultra.

Que jam tertia vertebra exigit tubercula quæ inserantur inferiori. Ceteræ insinuantur in inferiores processibus spectantibus deorsum, ac accipiunt superiores per sinus, quos habent utrimque; que continentur multis nervis et multa cartilagine. Ac sic, uno modico flexu dato in promptum, ceteris negatis, homo insistit erectus, et curvatur aliquid ad necessaria opera.

Vero summa costa est sita infra cervicem contra humerum. Inde sex inferiores preveniunt usque ad imum pectus: que eæ rotundæ primis partibus, et quasi leniter capitulatæ, inhaerent transversis processibus vertebrarum, ibi quoque sinuatis paulum: inde latescunt, et recurvatæ in exteriorem partem, paulatim degenerant in cartilaginem; que ea parte flexæ rursus leniter in interi-

## TRANSLATION.

the neck to strengthen it, which the Greeks term *Tenontes*: for by these means, every flexion of the head is protected by one of these ligaments being on the stretch, and prevents the superior ones from being displaced.

The third vertebra has eminences by which it is connected with the next inferior one. All the others are articulated with those below by processes inclining downwards, and by corresponding depressions which they have on each side they receive the superior ones, and are secured by many ligaments on each side, and an abundance of inter-articular cartilage. And thus, a moderate degree of flexion is readily given to a man as he stands erect, and is as readily counteracted when the necessity of his operations require him to bend.

The first rib is situated below the cervix, and opposite to the shoulder. Thence the six (3) lower ones extend to the lower margin of the chest; and these being round at their origin, and furnished with something like small heads, adhere to the transverse processes of the vertebræ, at which part they are depressed a little: then they grow broader, and bending outwards and forwards, gradually degenerate into cartilage; and in that part, being again turned slightly inwards, are



tuntur cum osse pectoris. Quod valens et durum a faucibus incipit, ab utroque latere lunatum, et a præcordiis, jam ipsum quoque cartilagine mollium, terminatur.

Sub costis vero prioribus quinque, quas *νόθας* Græci nominant, breves tenuioresque, atque ipsæ quoque paulatim in cartilagine versæ, extremis abdominis partibus inhærescunt; imaque ex his, majore jam parte nihil, nisi cartilago est.

Rursus a cervice duo lata ossa utrimque ad scapulas tendunt: nostri scutula operta, *ὀμοπλάτας* Græci nominant. Ea in summis verticibus sinuata, ab his triangula, paulatimque latescentia ad spinam tendunt; et quo latiora quaque parte sunt, hoc hebetiora. Atque ipsa quoque, in imo cartilaginosa, posteriore parte velut innatant; quoniam, nisi in summo, nulli ossi inhærescunt. Ibi vero validis musculis nervisque constricta sunt.

At a summa costa paulo interius, quam ubi ea media est, os excrescit, ibi quidem tenue, procedens vero, quo

## ORDO.

ora committuntur cum osse pectoris. Quod valens et durum, incipit a faucibus, lunatum ab utroque latere, et terminatur a præcordiis, jam ipsum quoque mollium cartilagine.

Vero sub prioribus costis, quinque breves que tenuiores, quas Græci nominant *νόθας* (nothas) atque ipsæ quoque versæ paulatim in cartilagine, inhærescunt extremis partibus abdominis; que ima ex his, jam majore parte, est nihil nisi cartilago.

Rursus duo lata ossa tendunt utrimque a cervice ad scapulas: nostri nominant "operta scutula," Græci *ὀμοπλάτας* (omoplatas). Ea sinuata in summis verticibus, ab his triangula, que paulatim latescentia tendunt ad spinam; et quo latiora sunt quaque parte, hoc hebetiora. Atque ipsa quoque, in imo cartilaginosa, posteriore parte velut innatant; quoniam, inhærescunt nulli ossi nisi in summo. Vero ibi sunt constricta validis musculis que nervis.

At a summa costa paulo interius, quam ubi ea est media, os excrescit, ibi quidem tenue, vero pro-

## TRANSLATION.

united to the breast-bone—*sternum*. This bone, which commences at the fauces, is strong and hard, somewhat curved on each side, and terminating at the præcordia, where it is softened into cartilage.

Now, under these superior ribs are five shorter and thinner ones, which the Greeks denominate Nothæ, or *false ribs*; they also gradually become cartilaginous, and adhere to the abdominal parietes; and the lowest of these, for the greater part, is nothing more than cartilage.

From the neck again two broad bones on each side form the shoulders, which we call Scutula operta, the Greeks Omoplatæ, or *scapulæ*. These are concave at the humeral extremity; from these they become triangular, and gradually expand in breadth towards the spine; and in proportion as they advance in breadth, the thinner they become. They are also cartilaginous at their inferior margins, and posteriorly appear to be floating as it were; because they are fixed to no bone except at the humeral extremity. But there they are braced together by strong muscles and ligaments.

At the top of the first rib, a little inclined internally from its middle part, a bone (4) grows out, in that part indeed slender, but as it proceeds nearer to the

propius lato scapularum ossi fit, eo plenius latiusque, et paulum in exteriora curvatum, quod altera verticis parte modice intumescens, sustinet jugulum. Id autem ipsum recurvum, ac neque inter durissima ossa numerandum, altero capite in eo, quod posui, altero in exiguo sinu pectoralis ossis insidit, paulumque motu brachii movetur, et cum lato osse scapularum, infra caput ejus, nervis et cartilagine connectitur.

Hinc humerus incipit, extremis utrimque capitibus tumidus, mollis, sine medulla, cartilagenosus: medius teres, durus, medullosus: leniter gibbus et in priorem et in posteriorem partem. Prior autem pars est, quæ a pectore est; posterior, quæ ab scapulis; interior, quæ ad latus tendit; exterior, quæ ab eo recedit: quod ad omnes articulos pertinere, in ulterioribus patebit.

Superius autem humeri caput rotundius, quam cetera ossa, de quibus adhuc dixi, parvo excessu vertici lati scapularum ossis inseritur, ac majore parte extra situm nervis deligatur. At

## ORDO.

cedens, quo propius fit lato ossi scapularum, eo plenius que latius, et curvatum paulum in exteriora, quod intumescens modice altera parte verticis, sustinet jugulum. Autem id ipsum recurvum, neque numerandum inter durissima ossa, insidit altero capite in eo quod posui, altero in exiguo sinu pectoralis ossis; que movetur paulum motu brachii, et connectitur cum lato osse scapularum, infra caput ejus, nervis et cartilagine.

Hinc humerus incipit extremis capitibus utrinque tumidus, mollis, sine medulla, cartilagenosus: medius teres, durus, medullosus: leniter gibbus, et in priorem et in posteriorem partem. Autem prior pars est, quæ est a pectore; posterior, quæ ab scapulis; interior, quæ tendit ad latus; exterior, quæ recedit ab eo: quod pertinere ad omnes articulos, patebit in ulterioribus.

Autem superius caput humeri rotundius quam cetera ossa, de quibus dixi adhuc, inseritur parvo excessu vertici lati ossis scapularum, ac deligatur nervis majore parte extra situm. At inferius

## TRANSLATION.

scapulæ the fuller and broader it becomes, bending slightly outwards at the extremity to support the clavicle. But this latter bone itself is curved, and not to be enumerated amongst the hardest bones: the one end is articulated with the bone last described; the other end is fixed in a small depression of the *sternum*, or pectoral bone: it is moved a little by the motion of the arm, and is connected with the broad bone of the shoulders, just below its head, to the *acromian process*, by ligaments and cartilage.

Here the humerus begins, which is protuberant at each extremity, without marrow, cartilagenous: the middle is round, hard, and containing marrow: slightly prominent anteriorly and exteriorly. Now the anterior is that part next to the chest: the posterior is that which is next to the scapula: the interior is next to the side; the exterior that which recedes from it: that this relates to all the joints, will be evident in the subsequent descriptions.

Now the upper head of the humerus is rounder than the other bones which I have hitherto spoken of: it is articulated by a little round head to the vertex of the broad bone of the shoulders, into the *glenoid cavity of the scapula*, and is in a great measure external to it, but secured to it by ligaments. But the inferior ex-

inferius duos processus habet; inter quos, quod medium est, magis etiam extremis partibus sinuatur. Quæ res sedem brachio præstat: quod constat ex ossibus duobus.

Radius, quem *κερκίδα* Græci appellant, superior breviorque, et primo tenuior, rotundo et leniter cavo capite exiguum humeri tuberculum recipit; atque ibi nervis et cartilagine continetur. Cubitus inferior longiorque, et primo plenior, in summo capite duobus quasi verticibus extantibus in sinum humeri, quem inter duos processus ejus esse proposui, se inserit. Primo vero duo brachii ossa juncta paulatim dirimuntur, rursusque ad manum coeunt, modo crassitudinis mutato: siquidem ibi radius plenior, cubitus admodum tenuis est. Dein radius, in caput cartilagosum consurgens, in vertice ejus sinuatur: cubitus rotundus in extremo, parte altera paulum procedit. Ac, ne sæpius dicendum sit, illud ignorari non oportet, plurima ossa in cartilagine desinere, nullum articulum non sic finiri.

#### ORDO.

habet duos processus; inter quos, quod est medium sinuatur etiam magis extremis partibus. Quæ res præstat sedem brachio: quod constat ex duobus ossibus.

Radius, quem Græci appellant *κερκίδα* (kerkida), superior que brevior, et primo tenuior, recipit exiguum tuberculum humeri rotundo et leniter cavo capite; atque ibi continetur nervis et cartilagine. Cubitus (est) inferior que longior, et primo plenior, inserit se quasi duobus verticibus, exstantibus in summo capite, in sinum humeri, quem proposui esse inter duos processus ejus. Vero duo ossa brachii juncta primo, paulatim dirimuntur, que rursus coeunt ad manum, modo crassitudinis mutato: siquidem ibi radius est plenior, cubitis admodum tenuis. Dein radius, consurgens in cartilagosum caput, sinuatur in vertice ejus: cubitus rotundus in extremo, procedit paulum altera parte. Ac ne sit dicendum sæpius, oportet non ignorari illud, plurima ossa desinere in cartilagine, nullum articulum non finiri sic. Enim ne-

#### TRANSLATION.

tremity has two processes—*condyles*—the intermediate space between which is even more concave than the extremities. This depression affords a reception to the fore-arm; which consists of two bones.

The radius, which the Greeks call Kerkis, being the superior and shorter, and at its origin more slender, receives the lesser condyle of the humerus in its round and slightly concave head, which is secured there by ligaments and cartilage. The cubitus or ulna, being inferior and longer, and larger at its upper extremity, where it commences, projects by two necks, and is fixed into the sinus of the humerus, betwixt the two processes of it which I have mentioned. The two bones of the arm are joined together at their origin, and afterwards gradually separate and again unite at the hand—*wrist*, where the relative thicknesses of the two bones are reversed; for there the radius is pretty large, and the cubitus very small. Then the radius rising to a cartilaginous head, has a depression at its vertex: and the cubitus being round at its extremity, projects a little in the other part. To save frequent repetition, however, this ought to be known, that almost all bones end with cartilage, and that every articulation is terminated in this way.



Neque enim aut moveri posset, nisi lævi inniteretur; aut cum carne nervisque conjungi, nisi ea media quædam materia committeret.

In manu vero prima palmæ pars ex multis minutisque ossibus constat, quorum numerus incertus est. Sed oblonga omnia, et triangula, structura quadam inter se connectuntur, cum invicem superior alterius angulus alterius planities sit: eoque fit ex his unius ossis paulum in interiora concavi species. Verum ex manu duo exigui processus in sinum radii conjiciuntur. Tum ex altera parte recta quinque ossa, ad digitos tendentia, palmam explent. A quibus ipsi digiti oriuntur; qui ex ossibus ternis constant: omniumque eadem ratio est. Interius os in vertice sinuatur, recipitque exterioris exiguum tuberculum; nervique ea continent. A quibus orti ungues indurescunt: ideoque non ossi, sed carni magis radicibus suis inhærent. Ac superiores quidem partes sic ordinatæ sunt.

## ORDO.

que aut posset moveri, nisi inniteretur lævi: aut conjungi cum carne que nervis, nisi quædam media materia committeret ea.

Verò in manu prima pars palmæ constat ex multis que minutis ossibus, numerus quorum est incertus. Sed omnia oblonga, et triangula connectuntur inter se quadam structura, cum invicem superior angulus alterius, sit planities (quam) alterius: que eo fit ex his species unius ossis paulum concavi in interiora. Verum ex manu duo exigui processus conjiciuntur in sinum radii. Tum ex altera parte quinque recta ossa, tendentia ad digitos, explent palmam. A quibus digiti ipsi oriuntur; qui constant ex ternis ossibus: que ratio omnium est eadem. Interius os sinuatur in vertice, que recipit exiguum tuberculum exterioris; que nervi continent ea. A quibus ungues orti, indurescunt: que ideo inhærent suis radicibus non ossi, sed magis carni. Ac superiores partes quidem sunt ordinatæ sic.

## TRANSLATION.

For it could neither be moved, unless it rested on a smooth substance, nor could it be connected with flesh and ligaments, unless some intermediate material united it.

In the hand, the first part of the palm is composed of many small bones, the number of which is uncertain. They are all oblong, triangular, and connected together by a peculiar structure, the plane of one being alternately higher than another: and by this arrangement they present the appearance of one bone, with a slight concavity on its internal surface. But there are two small processes proceeding from the hand—*carpus*,—inserted into the cavity of the radius. Then anteriorly to the carpal bones, five straight bones proceeding to the fingers, complete the palm. From these the fingers themselves have their origin, which consist of three bones: and the conformation of them all is the same. The interior bone has a depression in its neck, and receives the small protuberance of the external one, and these are secured by ligaments. From these ligaments the nails have their origin, and are hard *externally*: and for this reason they adhere, by their roots, not to the bone, but rather to the flesh. Such then is the mode of the articulation of the bones of the superior part of the body.

Ima vero spina in coxarum osse desidit; quod transversum longeque valentissimum, vulvam, vesicam, rectum intestinum tuetur. Idque ab exteriori parte gibbum; ad spinam, resupinatum; a lateribus, id est in ipsis coxis, sinus rotundos habet. A quibus oritur os, quod pectinem vocant; idque, super intestina sub pube transversum, ventrem firmat: rectius in viris, recurvatum magis in exteriora in fœminis, ne partum prohibeat.

Inde femora ordiuntur. Quorum capita rotundiora etiam, quam humerorum sunt; cum illa ex ceteris rotundissima sint. Infra vero duos processus a priore et a posteriore parte habent. Dein dura, et medullosa, et ab exteriori parte gibba, rursus ab inferioribus quoque capitibus intumescunt. Superiora in sinus coxæ, sicut humeri in ea ossa, quæ scapularum sunt, conjiciuntur: tum infra introrsus leniter intendunt, quo æqualius superiora membra sustineant. Atque in eo inferiora quoque capita me-

## ORDO.

Vero ima spina desidit in osse coxarum; quod transversum, que longe valentissimum, tuetur vulvam, vesicam, (et) rectum intestinum. Que id gibbum ab exteriori parte; resupinatum ad spinam; a lateribus, id est, in coxis ipsis, habet rotundos sinus. A quibus os oritur, quod vocant pectinem: que id transversum super intestina sub pube, firmat ventrem; rectius in viris, recurvatum magis in exteriora in feminis, ne prohibeat partum.

Inde ordiuntur femora. Capita quorum sunt etiam rotundiora quam humerorum; cum illa sint rotundissima ex ceteris. Vero infra habent duos processus a priore et a posteriore parte. Dein dura, et medullosa, et gibba ab exteriori parte, rursus intumescunt quoque ab inferioribus capitibus. Superiora conjiciuntur in sinus coxæ, sicut humeri in ea ossa quæ sunt scapularum: tum infra intendunt leniter introrsus, quo sustineant superiora membra æqualius. Atque inferiora capita quoque

## TRANSLATION.

The lower part of the spine terminates between the hip bones; and being transverse, and by far the strongest, defends the womb, the bladder, and the rectum. This bone is convex externally, turned backwards at the spine: on the sides, that is, at the hips themselves, it has round cavities. From these a bone arises which they call pecten, or *os pubis*: and this being transverse above the intestines, and under the pubes, strengthens the abdomen: it is straighter in males, but curved more externally in females, lest it might impede parturition.

Thence arise the thighs. The heads of these are even rounder than those of the humeri: although the latter may be rounder than any of the others. Below these heads are two processes—*trochanters*; one situated anteriorly, the other posteriorly. These being hard, and full of marrow, and convex externally, are enlarged again as they descend inferiorly. The superior heads are inserted into the acetabulum of the pelvis, as those of the humerus are into the bones of the shoulder: then below they incline a little inwards: in order that they may support the upper limbs more equally.

The inferior extremities of the thigh bones have also depressions between

dia sinuantur, quo facilius excipi a cruribus possint. Quæ commissura osse parvo, molli, cartilaginosa tegitur: patellam vocant. Hæc super innatans, nec ulli ossi inhærens, sed carne et nervis deligata, pauloque magis ad femoris os tendens, inter omnes crurum flexus juncturam tuetur.

Ipsum autem crus est ex ossibus duobus. Etenim per omnia femur humero, crus vero brachio simile est: adeo ut habitus quoque et decor alterius ex altero cognoscatur: quod ab ossibus incipiens, etiam in carne respondet. Verum alterum os ab exteriori parte suræ positum est; quod ipsum quoque sura recte nominatur. Id brevius, supraque tenuius, ad ipsos talos intumescit. Alterum a priori parte positum, cui tibiæ nomen est, longius et in superiore parte plenius, solum cum femoris inferiore capite committitur; sicut cum humero cubitus. Atque ea quoque ossa, infra supraque conjuncta, media, ut in brachio, dehiscunt.

## ORDO.

media sinuantur in eo, quo possint excipi facilius a cruribus. Quæ commissura tegitur parvo, molli, cartilaginosa osse: vocant patellam. Hæc innatans super, nec inhærens ulli ossi, sed deligata carne et nervis, que tendens paulo magis ad os femoris, tuetur juncturam inter omnes flexus crurum.

Antem crus ipsum est ex duobus ossibus. Etenim per omnia femur est simile humero, vero crus brachio: adeo ut habitus quoque et decor alterius cognoscatur ex altero: quod incipiens ab ossibus, respondet etiam in carne. Verum alterum os est positum ab exteriori parte suræ: quod ipsum quoque nominatur recte sura. Id brevius, que tenuius supra, intumescit ad talos ipsos. Alterum positum a priori parte, cui est nomen tibiæ, longius, et plenius in superiore parte, solum committitur cum inferiore capite femoris; sicut cubitus cum humero. Atque ea ossa quoque conjuncta infra que supra, media dehiscunt, ut in brachio.

## TRANSLATION.

their condyles, in order to facilitate their articulation with the bones of the leg. Which articulation is covered by a small soft cartilaginous bone: they call it the patella. This is a loose floating bone, not adhering to any other, but held down by flesh and ligaments, and inclining a little more to the thigh bone, defends the joint in every flexion of the leg.

Now the leg itself consists of two bones. For in every particular the thigh bone resembles the arm, but the leg the fore-arm: so that the symmetry and elegance of the one may be known by comparing it with the other: which resemblance, beginning with the bones, is maintained in the muscles. One of these bones is placed on the external part of the calf; which, for this reason, is properly termed *sura*, or *fibula*. This is shorter and more slender above, but is enlarged at the ankles. The other, which is placed anteriorly, is also articulated with the inferior head of the thigh bone, in the same manner as the ulna is with the humerus; and these bones also being connected both below and above, diverge in the middle, as those of the fore-arm.



Excipitur autem crus infra osse transverso talorum; idque ipsum super os calcis situm est, quod quadam parte sinuatur, quadam excessus habet, et procedentia ex talo recipit, et in sinum ejus inseritur. Idque sine medulla durum, magisque in posteriorem partem projectum, teretem ibi figuram repræsentat. Cetera pedis ossa ad eorum, quæ in manu sunt, similitudinem instructa sunt, planta palmæ, digiti digitis, ungues unguibus respondent.

## ORDO.

Autem crus excipitur infra transverso osse talorum: que id ipsum est situm super os calcis, quod quadam parte sinuatur, quadam habet excessus, et recipit procedentia ex talo, et inseritur in sinum ejus. Que id durum sine medulla, que projectum magis in posteriorem partem, ibi repræsentat teretem figuram. Cetera ossa pedis sunt instructa ad similitudinem eorum quæ sunt in manu: planta palmæ, digiti digitis, ungues respondent unguibus.

## TRANSLATION.

The leg bone is connected inferiorly with the transverse bone of the ankle, which is situated above the os calcis: this at one part is concave, at the other prominent, and receives the projecting processes from the *astragalus* or ankle bone, and is again inserted into its cavity. It is hard and without marrow; and projecting more posteriorly, forms a round figure. The other bones of the foot are constructed in a similar manner to those of the hand. The sole resembling the palm, the toes the fingers, and the nails the nails.

## CAP. II.

OSSA VITIATA ET CORRUPTA QUIBUS SIGNIS COGNOSCANTUR, ET QUA RATIONE CURENTUR.

OMNE autem os, ubi injuria accessit, aut vitiatur, aut finditur, aut frangitur, aut foratur, aut colliditur, aut loco movetur. Id, quod vitiatum est,

## ORDO.

## CAP. II.

QUIBUS SIGNIS, VITIATA ET CORRUPTA OSSA COGNOSCANTUR, ET QUA RATIONE CURENTUR.

AUTEM omne os, ubi injuria accessit, aut vitiatur, aut finditur, aut frangitur, aut foratur, aut colliditur, aut movetur loco. Id quod

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. II.

THE SYMPTOMS OF DISEASED BONES POINTED OUT, AND THE MODE OF TREATMENT.

Now every bone, when it has received an injury, either becomes carious, or is split, or broken, or perforated, or contused, or dislocated. A vitiated bone first

primo fere pingue fit ; deinde vel nigrum, vel cariosum : quæ, supernatis gravibus ulceribus aut fistulis, hisque vel longa vetustate, vel etiam cancro occupatis, eveniunt. Oportet autem ante omnia os nudare, ulcere exciso : et, si latius est ejus vitium, quam ulcus fuit, carnem subsecare, donec undique os integrum pateat : tum id, quod pingue est, semel iterumve satis est admoto ferramento adurere, ut ex eo squama secedat ; aut radere, donec jam aliquid cruoris ostendatur, quæ integri ossis nota est. Nam necesse est aridum sit id, quod vitiatum est. Idem in cartilagine quoque læsa faciendum est : siquidem ea quoque scalpello radenda est, donec integrum id sit, quod relinquitur. Deinde, sive os sive cartilago rasa est, nitro bene trito respergendum est.

Neque alia facienda sunt, ubi caries, nigritiesve in summo osse est : siquidem id vel paulo diutius eodem ferramento adurendum, vel radendum est. Qui radet hæc, audacter imprimere ferramentum debet, ut et agat aliquid, et maturius desinat. Finis

## ORDO.

est vitiatum primo fere fit pingue ; deinde vel nigrum, vel cariosum : quæ eveniunt, vel gravibus ulceribus aut fistulis supernatis, que his occupatis vel longa vetustate, vel etiam cancro. Autem oportet ante omnia nudare os, ulcere exciso ; et, si vitium ejus est latius, quam ulcus fuit, subsecare carnem, donec integrum os pateat undique tum est satis adurere id quod est pingue semel ve iterum, ferramento admoto, ut squama secedat ex eo ; aut radere donec jam aliquid cruoris ostendatur, quæ est nota integri ossis. Nam est necesse id sit aridum quod est vitiatum. Idem est faciendum quoque in cartilagine læsa : siquidem ea quoque est radenda scalpello donec id quod relinquitur sit integrum. Deinde sive os sive cartilago rasa est, est respergendum nitro bene trito.

Neque sunt alia facienda ubi caries ve nigrities est in summo osse : siquidem id est vel adurendum eodem ferramento, vel radendum paulo diutius. Qui radet hæc debet imprimere ferramentum audacter, ut et agat aliquid, et desinat maturius. Finis est,

## TRANSLATION.

becomes oily ; afterwards either black or carious ; and these cases happen either from extensive ulcers, or fistulas over them which have become chronic from old age, or are attacked with gangrene.

The first step is to lay bare the bone, by cutting out the ulcer, and if the disease has extended beyond the ulcer, to pare away the flesh below it, until the sound part of the bone be exposed all round : then it will be sufficient to cauterize that part which is oily, once or twice, by the application of an iron instrument, that exfoliation may take place from it : or to rasp it till some blood appear, which is the mark of a sound bone, for that which is vitiated must necessarily be dry—*bloodless*. The same method is applicable to diseased cartilage ; that is, paring with a knife, till all that is left be sound. Afterwards, whether it be bone or cartilage that has been scraped, it must be sprinkled with well-powdered nitre.

Nothing else is to be done where a caries or blackness is on the surface of the bone ; for in that case, the cantery or the scraping only must be continued a little longer. A person who scrapes these ought to press the instrument boldly, that he may do it the more effectually, and that it may be accomplished the sooner. The termination of the operation will be when we arrive at the white or solid

est, cum vel ad album os, vel ad solidum ventum est. Albo finiri ex nigritie vitium, soliditate quadam ex carie, manifestum est. Accedere etiam cruoris aliquid integro, supra dictum est. Si quando autem, an altius descenderit utrumlibet, dubium est, in carie quidem expedita cognitio est.

Specillum tenue in foramina demittitur; quod magis minusve intrando, vel in summo cariem esse, vel altius descendisse, testatur. Nigrities colligi quidem potest etiam ex dolore, et ex febre, quæ ubi mediocria sunt, illa alte descendisse non potest. Manifestior tamen adacta terebra fit: nam finis vitii est, ubi scobis nigra esse desiit. Igitur, si caries alte descendit, per terebram urgenda crebris foraminibus est, quæ altitudine vitium æquent: tum in ea foramina demittenda candentia ferramenta sunt, donec siccum os ex toto fiat. Simul enim post hæc et resolvetur ab inferiore osse, quodcumque vitiatum est; et is sinus carne replebitur; et humor aut nullus postea feretur, aut mediocris.

## ORDO.

cum ventum est vel ad album os, vel ad solidum. Est manifestum vitium ex nigritie finiri albo, ex carie quadam soliditate. Etiam dictum est supra aliquid cruoris accedere integro. Autem si quando est dubium an utrumlibet descenderit altius, in carie quidem cognitio est expedita.

Tenne specillum demittitur in foramina; quod intrando magis ve minus testatur esse vel in summo, vel descendisse altius. Nigrities quidem potest colligi etiam ex dolore, et ex febre, ubi quæ sunt mediocria illa non potest descendisse alte. Tamen fit manifestior, terebra adacta: nam finis vitii est ubi scobis desiit esse nigra. Igitur, si caries descendit alte, est urgenda per terebram crebris foraminibus, quæ æquent vitium altitudine; tum candentia ferramenta sunt demittenda in ea foramina, donec os fiat ex toto siccum. Enim simul post hæc et quodcumque est vitiatum resolvetur ab inferiore osse; et is sinus replebitur carne; et aut nullus aut mediocris humor feretur postea.

## TRANSLATION.

bone; as it will be manifest, that when the vitiated structure is black it ends in the white, and that when there is a certain degree of solidity, there the caries terminates. We have already observed, that there is also some blood in a sound bone. But though there may sometimes be a doubt whether blackness or caries may have penetrated pretty deeply, yet in caries indeed this knowledge is easily attained.

A small probe is to be introduced into the foramina, which by entering more or less into the sinus, shews that the caries is either in the surface or more profound. Nigrities indeed may also be discovered from the pain and the fever; for when these are moderate, it cannot have penetrated deeply. Yet it will be more manifest by the application of a trephine; for the extent of the disease will be when the dust of the bone ceases to be black. Therefore, if the disease have entered deeply, it must be perforated by the trephine in several places, in extent equal to the depth of the disease: then searing irons are to be introduced into these foramina, until the bone become entirely dry. For the result of these operations will be, that whatever is diseased will be detached from the inferior bone, and this sinus will be replenished with flesh; and after this, either no humour at all, or a very small quantity will be discharged.



Sin autem nigrities est, aut si caries ad alteram quoque partem ossis transit, oportet excidi. Atque idem quoque in carie, ad alteram partem carnis penetrante, fieri potest. Sed, quod totum vitiatum, totum eximendum est: si inferior pars integra est, eatenus, quod corruptum est, excidi debet. Item sive capitis, sive pectoris os, sive costa cariosa est, inutilis ustio est, et excidenda necessitas est. Neque audiendi sunt, qui, osse nudato, diem tertium expectant, ut tunc excidant: ante inflammationem enim tutius omnia tractantur. Itaque, quantum fieri potest, eodem momento et cutis incidenda est, et os detegendum, et omni vitio liberandum est. Longeque perniciosissimum est, quod in osse pectoris est: quia vix, etiamsi recte cessit curatio, veram sanitatem reddit.

## ORDO.

Si autem est nigrities, aut si caries transit quoque ad alteram partem ossis, oportet excidi. Atque quoque idem potest fieri in carie penetrante ad alteram partem carnis. Sed quod totum vitiatum, est totum eximendum; si inferior pars est integra, quod est corruptum debet excidi eatenus. Item sive os capitis, sive pectoris, sive costa est cariosa, ustio est inutilis, et est necessitas excidendi. Neque sunt audiendi qui, osse nudato, expectant tertium diem, ut tunc excidant: enim omnia tractantur tutius ante inflammationem. Itaque quantum potest fieri, eodem momento et cutis est incidenda, et os est detegendum, et liberandum omni vitio. Que est longe perniciosissimum, quod est in osse pectoris: quia, etiamsi curatio cessit recte, vix reddit veram sanitatem.

## TRANSLATION.

But if there be nigrities, or if caries pervade the whole of the bone, it ought to be cut out. The same may be done in caries when it proceeds to the other side of the flesh. But that which is wholly diseased, is to be removed entirely: if the inferior part be sound, only so far as it is vitiated is to be removed. Therefore, if the cranium, or the sternum, or the costa, be carious, searing would be injurious, but excision absolutely necessary. Neither are those surgeons to be listened to, who defer the excision of the bone to the third day after it has been laid bare; for in all cases it is safer to perform an operation before an inflammation come on. Therefore, as soon as it can be done, the incision should be made through the skin, and the bone be denuded and freed from all disease, at the same moment. A disease in the pectoral bone, is by far the most pernicious; because, if even the treatment have proved favourable, it scarcely ever restores perfect health.

## CAP. III.

## ORDO.

QUOMODO OS EXCIDATUR; ET DE  
MODIOLA, ET TEREBRA; FERRA-  
MENTIS AD ID PARATIS.

## CAP. III.

QUOMODO OS EXCIDATUR, ET DE  
MODIOLA, ET TEREBRA, FERRA-  
MENTIS PARATIS AD ID.

EXCIDITUR vero os duobus modis. Si parvulum est, quod læsum est, modiololo, quam *χοινικίδα* Græci vocant: si spatiosius, terebris. Utriusque rationem proponam. Modiolus ferramentum concavum, teres, est, imis oris serratum; per quod medium clavus, ipse quoque interiore orbe cinctus, demittitur. Terebrarum autem duo genera sunt: alterum simile ei, quo fabri utuntur: alterum capituli longioris, quod ab acuto mucrone incipit, deinde subito latius fit; atque iterum ab alio principio paulo minus quam æqualiter sursum procedit.

VERO os exciditur duobus modis. Si quod læsum est, est parvulum, modiololo, quam Græci vocant *χοινικίδα* (choinikida): si spatiosius, terebris. Proponam rationem utriusque. Modiolus est concavum teres ferramentum, serratum imis oris; per quod medium clavus demittitur, ipse quoque cinctus interiore orbe. Autem sunt duo genera terebrarum: alterum simile ei quo fabri utuntur; alterum longioris capituli, quod incipit ab acuto mucrone, deinde fit subito latius, atque iterum procedit ab alio principio sursum paulo minus quam æqualiter.

Si vitium est in angusto, quod comprehendere modiolus possit, ille potius

Si vitium est in angusto, quod modiolus possit comprehendere, ille potius aptatur: et si caries

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. III.

METHOD OF EXCISING A BONE, THE MODIOLUS AND PERFORATOR,  
WITH THE INSTRUMENTS NECESSARY FOR THAT OPERATION.

Now a bone is to be excised in two ways: if the injured part be very small, by the modiolus or small trephine (5), which the Greeks call Choinikis: if more extensive, by the perforator (6). I shall explain the method of each. The modiolus is a hollow cylindrical instrument, the lower edge serrated, through the middle of which a *centre* pin is introduced, which is also surrounded by an inner circle. But there are two kinds of perforators: one is similar to that which is used by carpenters; the other with a longer head, which begins from a sharp point, then suddenly becomes broader, and then again proceeds from another point gradually smaller as it ascends.

If the disease be confined to a narrow space, so that the modiolus can comprehend it, this will be the more preferable instrument: and if a caries appear below,

aptatur: et, si caries subest, medius clavus in foramen demittitur; si nigrities, angulo scalpri sinus exiguus fit, qui clavum recipiat, ut, eo insistente, circumactus modiolus delabi non possit: deinde is habena, quasi terebra, convertitur.

Estque quidam premendi modus, ut et foret, et circumagatur: quia, si leviter imprimitur, parum proficit; si graviter, non movetur. Neque alienum est, instillare paulum rosæ, vel lactis, quo magis lubrico circumagatur: quod ipsum tamen, si copiosius est, aciem ferramenti hebetat. Ubi jam iter modiole pressum est, medius clavus educitur, et ille per se agitur: deinde, cum sanitas inferioris partis scobe cognita est, modiolus removetur.

At si latius vitium est, quam ut illo comprehendatur, terebra res agenda est. Ea foramen fit in ipso fine vitiosi ossis atque integri; deinde alterum non ita longe, tertiumque, donec totus is locus, qui excidendus est, his cavis cinctus sit. Atque ibi quoque, quatenus terebra agenda sit, scobis

## ORDO.

subest, medius clavus demittitur in foramen; si nigrities, exiguus sinus fit angulo scalpri, qui recipiat clavum, ut eo insistente, modiolus circumactus, non possit delabi: deinde is convertitur habena, quasi terebra.

Que est quidam modus premendi, ut et foret, et circumagatur: quia si imprimitur leviter, proficit parum: si graviter, non movetur. Neque est alienum instillare paulum rosæ, vel lactis, quo circumagatur magis lubrico: quod ipsum, tamen, si est copiosius, hebetat aciem ferramenti. Ubi iter jam pressum est modiole, medius clavus educitur, et ille agitur per se: deinde, cum sanitas inferioris partis cognita est scobe, modiolus removetur.

At si vitium est latius quam ut comprehendatur illo, res est agenda terebra. Foramen fit ea in fine ipso vitiosi atque integri ossis: deinde alterum non ita longe, que tertium, donec totus is locus, qui est excidendus, sit cinctus his cavis. Atque ibi quoque, quatenus terebra sit agenda, scobis

## TRANSLATION.

the centre pin must be put into the sinus. If there be nigrities, a small entrance must be made by the corner of a chisel, which may receive the centre pin, so that it may not slip in pressing upon it, when the trephine is made to revolve: afterwards it is turned by a strap like the perforator.

Now there is a certain degree of pressure necessary, in order that the instrument may perforate, yet revolve with facility; because if it be pressed lightly, it avails little; if heavily, there will be no motion. Neither is it improper to drop in a little rose-oil, or milk, that the rotatory motion may be facilitated; but even this, if too abundant, clogs the edge of the instrument. When the modiolus has marked out a passage for itself, then the centre pin must be withdrawn, and the instrument turned by itself: afterwards, when the soundness of the part has been ascertained by the dust, the trephine is to be removed.

But if the disease be more extensive than the instrument can cover, then the operation must be effected by the perforator. An opening is made by this in the boundary line which divides the diseased from the sound part of the bone: then another not very far from the first, and a third, until the whole of that place which is to be removed be surrounded with these perforations. And here too, the dust must indicate how far the perforator is to go. Then a cutting chisel, pro-



significat. Tum excisorius scalper ab altero foramine ad alterum malleolo adactus id, quod inter utrumque medium est, excidit; ac sic ambitus similis ei fit, qui in angustiore orbem modiolus imprimitur. Utro modo vero id circumductum est, idem excisorius scalper in osse corrupto planus summam quamque testam lævet, donec integrum os relinquatur.

Vix umquam nigrities integrum; caries per totum os perrumpit, maximeque ubi vitiata calvaria est. Id quoque signi specillo significatur: quod depressum in id foramen, quod infra solidam sedem habet, et ob id renitens aliquid invenit, et madens exit: si pervium invenit, altius descendens inter os et membranam, nihil oppositum invenit, educiturque siccum: non quo non subsit aliqua vitiata sanies; sed quoniam ibi, ut in latiore sede, diffusa sit.

Sive autem nigrities, quam terebra detexit, sive caries, quam specillum ostendit, os transit, modioli quidem usus fere supervacuus est; quia latius pateat necesse est, quod tam alte processit. Terebra vero ea, quam se-

## ORDO.

significat. Tum excisorius scalper, adactus malleolo ab altero foramine ad alterum, excidit id quod est medium inter utrumque: ac sic ambitus fit similis ei, qui imprimitur modiolus in angustiore orbem. Vero utro modo id circumductum est, idem excisorius scalper planus in corrupto osse lævant quamque summam testam, donec os relinquatur integrum.

Vix umquam nigrities perrumpit integrum; caries per totum os, que maxime ubi calvaria est vitiata. Id signi quoque significatur specillo; quod depressum in id foramen, quod habet solidam sedem infra, et ob id invenit aliquid renitens, et exit madens: si invenit pervium, descendens altius inter os et membranam, invenit nihil oppositum, que educitur siccum; non quo aliqua vitiata sanies non subsit, sed quoniam sit diffusa ibi, ut in latiore sede.

Autem sive nigrities, quam terebra detexit, sive caries, quam specillum ostendit, transit os, usus modioli quidem est fere supervacuus; quia est necesse pateat latius, quod processit tam alte. Vero utendum ea terebra, quam

## TRANSLATION.

pelled by a mallet from one opening to another excises that which is intermediate in each: and in this way a circumference is formed, similar to that which is made by the modiolus in a narrower circle. But in whichever way the circle has been formed, let the same excising chisel be laid flat on the vitiated bone, and smooth away each projecting spicula, until the bone be left sound.

A nigrities scarcely ever pervades the entire bone: caries penetrates through it, and especially where the skull is diseased. The same diagnosis also is to be obtained by the probe, which being introduced into the sinus, which has a solid base below, meets with resistance, and comes out moist. If it prove pervious, the probe passing in deeper between the cranium and membrane—*pericranium*,—finds nothing opposed to it, and comes out dry: not because some diseased sanies is not there, but because it may be more diffused, as being in a larger cavity.

Now whether a nigrities which the perforator has discovered, or a caries which the probe has indicated, pass through the bone, the application of the modiolus is generally superfluous; because that which has penetrated so deep, must necessarily occupy a considerable extent. Here we must employ the perforator which

cundo loco posui, utendum; eaque, ne nimis incalescat, subinde in aquam frigidam demittenda est.

Sed tum majore cura agendum est, cum jam aut simplex os dimidium perforatum est; aut in duplici superius: illud spatium ipsum; hoc sanguis significat. Ergo tum lentius ducenda habena, suspendendaque magis sinistra manus est, et sæpius attollenda, et foraminis altitudo consideranda; ut, quodcumque os perurritur, sentiamus, neque periclitemur, ne mucrone cerebri membrana lædatur: ex quo graves inflammationes, cum periculo mortis oriuntur.

Factis foraminibus, eodem modo media septa, sed multo circumspectius, excidenda sunt; ne forte angulus scalpri eandem membranam violet; donec fiat aditus, per quem membranæ custos immittatur: *μηνιγγοφύλακα* Græci vocant. Lamina ænea est, firma, paulum resima, ab exteriori parte lævis; quæ demissa, sic, ut exterior pars ejus cerebro propior sit, subinde ei subjicitur, quod scalpro discutendum est: ac, si excipit ejus angulum, ultra transire non patitur: eoque et

ORDO.

posui secundo loco; quæ ea est demittenda subinde in frigidam aquam, ne incalescat nimis.

Sed est agendum majore cura tum, cum jam aut simplex os perforatum est dimidium, aut superius in duplici: spatium ipsum significat illud: sanguis hoc. Ergo, tum, habena est ducenda lentius, quæ sinistra manus suspendenda magis, et sæpius attollenda, et altitudo foraminis consideranda; ut sentiamus quodcumque os perurritur, neque periclitemur ne membrana cerebri lædatur mucrone: ex quo graves inflammationes oriuntur cum periculo mortis.

Foraminibus factis, media septa sunt excidenda eodem modo, sed multo circumspectius, ne forte angulus scalpri violet eandem membranam; donec aditus fiat, per quem custos membranæ immittatur: Græci vocant *μηνιγγοφύλακα* (meningophylax). Est ænea lamina, firma, resima paulum, lævis ab exteriori parte; quæ demissa sic ut exterior pars ejus sit propior cerebro, subinde subjicitur ei quod est discutendum scalpro; ac, si excipit angulum ejus, non patitur transire

#### TRANSLATION.

I have mentioned in the second place: and it should be dipped in cold water occasionally, lest it may become too hot.

But here we must proceed with the greatest care, when we have perforated either, half through a simple bone, or the superior lamina in a double one: the space itself indicates the former, and the blood the latter. Therefore, the strap must be drawn more slowly than, the left hand should bear more gently, and be frequently removed, and the depth of the opening examined; that we may perceive whether the bone be pierced, lest we run the risk of wounding the dura mater by the point: by which violent inflammation would ensue, with danger of death.

The openings being made, the middle septa are to be excised in the same manner, but with greater circumspection, lest the angle of the chisel by chance injure the same membrane, until a passage be made, through which the guard of the membrane must be passed: the Greeks call it meningo-phylax (7). It is a strong brass plate turned up a little at one end, smooth externally, which is to be introduced in such a manner that its external surface be next to the brain, and placed under that part which is to be removed by the chisel: if it receive the corner of it, it prevents it from passing further. The physician then strikes the chisel occasion-

audacius, et tutius, scalprum malleolo subinde medicus ferit, donec excisum undique os, eadem lamina levetur, tollique sine ulla noxa cerebri possit.

Ubi totum os ejectum est, circumradendæ lævandæque sunt oræ, et, si quid scobis membranæ insedit, colligendum. Ubi, superiore parte sublata, inferior relicta est, non oræ tantum, sed os quoque totum lævandum est; ut sine noxa postea cutis increscat, quæ aspero ossi innascens protinus non sanitatem, sed novos dolores movet.

Patefacto cerebro, qua ratione agendum sit, dicam, cum ad fracta ossa venero. Si basis aliqua servata est, superimponenda sunt medicamenta non pingua, quæ recentibus vulneribus accommodantur; supraque imponenda lana succida, oleo atque aceto madens. Ubi tempus processit, ab ipso osse caro increscit, eaque factum manu sinum complet. Si quod etiam os adustum est, a parte sana recedit; subitque inter integram atque emortuam partem caruncula, quæ, quod absces-

## ORDO.

ultra, que eo medicus ferit scalprum subinde malleolo et audacius et tutius, donec os, excisum undique, levetur eadem lamina, que possit tolli sine ulla noxa cerebri.

Ubi totum os ejectum est, oræ sunt circumradendæ que lævandæ, et si quid scobis insedit membranæ, colligendum. Ubi, superiore parte sublata, inferior relicta est, non tantum oræ, sed quoque totum os est lævandum, ut cutis increscat postea sine noxa, quæ innascens aspero ossi, protinus non movet sanitatem, sed novos dolores.

Dicam qua ratione sit agendum cerebro patefacto, cum venero ad fracta ossa. Si aliqua basis servata est, medicamenta non pingua sunt superimponenda, quæ accommodantur recentibus vulneribus; que succida lana, madens oleo atque aceto, imponenda supra. Ubi tempus processit, caro increscit ab osse ipso, que ea complet sinum factum manu. Etiam si quod os adustum est, recedit a sana parte; que caruncula subit inter integram atque emortuam partem, quæ expellat quod

## TRANSLATION.

ally with the mallet, both more boldly and more safely, until the bone, being excised all round, may be elevated by this plate, and taken away without any injury to the brain.

When the whole of the bone has been removed, the edges are to be pared round and smoothed, and if any particles of dust have fallen on the membrane, they are to be collected. When the upper part has been withdrawn, and the inferior part left, not only the edges, but also the whole of the bone is to be smoothed, that the skin may grow on afterwards without injury: which growth upon a rough bone, does not immediately promote health, but produces new pains.

I shall describe the method of treatment proper to be pursued in cases where the brain has been exposed, when I come to treat of fractures. If any base has been preserved, non-unctuous medicines, which are calculated for recent wounds, must be applied, and over that rancid wool moistened with oil and vinegar. In the course of time the flesh will grow on the bone itself, and fill up the cavity made by the operation. And when a bone is cauterized, it is detached from the sound part, and granulations spring up between the sound and dead part, which throw



sit, expellat. Eaque fere, quia testa tenuis et angusta est, λεπίς, id est squama, a Græcis nominatur.

Potest etiam evenire, ut ex ictu neque findatur os, neque perfringatur; sed summum tamen collidatur, exaspereturque. Quod ubi incidit, radi et lævari satis est. Hæc quamvis maxime fiunt in capite, tamen ceteris quoque ossibus communia sunt: ut, ubicumque idem incidit, eodem remedio sit utendum. At quæ fracta, fissa, forata, collisa sunt, quasdam proprias in singulis generibus, quasdam communes in pluribus curationes requirunt: de quibus protinus dicam, initio ab eadem calvaria accepto.

## ORDO.

abscessit. Que ea fere nominatur a Græcis λεπίς (lepis), id est, squama, quia est tenuis et angusta testa.

Etiam potest evenire, ut os neque findatur neque perfringatur ex ictu; sed tamen summum collidatur, que exasperetur. Ubi quod incidit, est satis radi et lævari. Quamvis hæc fiunt maxime in capite, tamen sunt communia quoque ceteris ossibus: ut ubicumque idem incidit, sit utendum eodem remedio. At quæ sunt fracta, fissa, forata, collisa, requirunt quasdam proprias curationes in singulis generibus, quasdam communes in pluribus: de quibus dicam protinus, initio accepto ab eadem calvaria.

## TRANSLATION.

off the diseased portion. This is generally called Lepis by the Greeks, that is, a scale, because it is a thin, narrow shell.

It may happen also, that a bone may neither be splintered, nor broken through from the effect of a blow, but the surface of it only contused, and rendered rough. In this case, it will be sufficient to pare, and smooth it. Although these accidents generally occur on the head, yet they are common also to other bones: so that wherever this may happen, the same remedy must be used. But such parts as are broken, split, perforated, or bruised, require some peculiar treatment in their several kinds: the same treatment, nevertheless, is common to many: on these I shall treat immediately, and begin with the head.

## CAP. IV.

## DE CALVARIA FRACTA.

IGITUR, ubi ea percussa, protinus requirendum est, num bilem is homo vomuerit; num oculi ejus obcæcati sint; num obmutuerit; num per nares auresve sanguis ei effluxerit; num conciderit; num sine sensu quasi dormiens jacuerit. Hæc enim non nisi osse fracto eveniunt: atque, ubi inciderunt, scire licet, necessariam, sed difficilem curationem esse. Si vero etiam torpor accessit; si mens non constat; si nervorum vel resolutio vel distentio secuta est; verisimile est, etiam cerebri membranam esse violatam: eoque in angusto magis spes est. At si nihil horum secutum est, potest etiam dubitari, an os fractum sit: et protinus considerandum est, lapide, an ligno, an ferro, an alio telo percussum sit, et hoc ipso lævi an aspero, mediocri an vastiore, vehementer an leviter;

## ORDO.

## CAP. IV.

## DE FRACTA CALVARIA.

IGITUR, ubi ea percussa (est), protinus est requirendum, num is homo vomuerit bilem; num oculi ejus obcæcati sint, num obmutuerit; num sanguis effluxerit ei per nares ve aures; num conciderit; num jacuerit quasi dormiens sine sensu. Enim hæc non eveniunt nisi osse fracto: atque, ubi inciderunt, licet scire curationem esse necessariam, sed difficilem. Vero si etiam torpor accessit; si mens constat non; si vel resolutio vel distentio nervorum secuta est; est verisimile membranam cerebri etiam esse violatam: que eo magis spes est in angusto. At si nihil horum secutum est, potest etiam dubitari an os fractum sit, et protinus est considerandum, an percussus sit lapide, an ligno, an ferro, an alio telo, et hoc ipso lævi an aspero, mediocri an vastiore, vehementer an leviter;

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IV.

## OF A FRACTURED SKULL.

WHEN a blow has been received on the skull, it should be inquired into immediately, whether the person has vomited bile, or lost his sight, or become dumb: whether blood have issued from his nostrils, or ears: whether he fell down from the blow: whether he lay insensible and comatose. For these symptoms are never developed without a fracture of the bone: and when they do occur, it may be conclusive that an operation is indispensable, but difficult. If besides these a torpor supervene, if there be incoherency of speech, if paralysis or convulsions have ensued, it is probable that the membrane of the brain has been injured: consequently, there is still less hope. But if none of these symptoms have occurred, it may be doubted whether the bone be fractured: then it should be immediately considered whether the blow had been inflicted with a stone or a stick, or an iron instrument, or with any other weapon; whether the *instrument* was smooth, or rough, small or large, whether *propelled* with violence or lightly; because the

menter an leviter; quia quo mitior ictus fuit, eo facilius os ei restitisse credibile est. Sed nihil tamen melius est, quam certiore id nota explorare.

Ergo, quaplagæ est, demittispecillum oportet, neque nimis tenue, neque acutum; ne, cum in quosdam naturales sinus inciderit, opinionem fracti ossis frustra faciat: neque nimis plenum; ne parvulæ rimulæ fallant. Ubi specillum ad os venit, si nihil nisi læve et lubricum occurrit, integrum id videri potest: si quid asperi est, utique qua suturæ non sint, fractum os esse testatur.

A suturis se deceptum esse, Hippocrates memoriæ prodidit; MORE SCILICET MAGNORUM VIRO-  
RUM, ET HABENTIUM FIDUCIAM MAGNARUM RERUM. NAM LEVIA INGENIA, QUIA NIHIL HABENT, NIHIL SIBI DETRAHUNT: MAGNO INGENIO, MULTAQUE NIHILOMINUS HABITURO, CONVENIT ETIAM SIMPLEX VERI ERRORIS CONFESSIO; PRÆCIPUEQUE IN EO MINISTERIO, QUOD UTILITATIS CAUSA POSTERIS TRADITUR; NE QUI DECI-

## ORDO.

quia quo mitior ictus fuit, eo facilius est credibile os restitisse ei. Sed tamen nihil est melius quam explorare id certiore nota.

Ergo, qua plaga est, oportet specillum demitti, neque nimis tenue, neque acutum; ne cum inciderit in quosdam naturales sinus, faciat frustra opinionem fracti ossis: neque nimis plenum; ne parvulæ rimulæ fallunt. Ubi specillum venit ad os, si nihil nisi læve et lubricum occurrit, id potest videri integrum: si est quid asperi, utique qua sint non suturæ, testatur os esse fractum.

Hippocrates prodidit memoriæ se deceptum esse a suturis; SCILICET, MORE MAGNORUM VIRO-  
RUM, ET HABENTIUM FIDUCIAM MAGNARUM RERUM. NAM LEVIA INGENIA, QUIA HABENT NIHIL, DETRAHUNT NIHIL SIBI: ETIAM SIMPLEX CONFESSIO VERI ERRORIS CONVENIT MAGNO INGENIO, QUE HABITURO MULTA NIHILOMINUS; QUE PRÆCIPUE IN EO MINISTERIO QUOD TRADITUR POSTERIS CAUSA UTILITATIS; NE QUI

## TRANSLATION.

less violent the blow, the greater is the probability that the skull may have resisted it. But yet nothing is better than to find that out by a more certain sign.

Therefore a probe, but it must be neither too thin nor too acute, is to be introduced into the wound wherever it is, lest it should pass into some natural cavities, and induce us to form an erroneous opinion of a fractured bone: neither should it be too large, lest small fissures escape detection. When the probe reaches the bone, if the resistance be smooth and slippery, this may be considered sound: if there be any asperity, especially where there are no sutures, then it is evident that there is fracture.

Hippocrates has recorded that he was himself deceived by the sutures; THIS CANDID ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF ERROR IS TRULY NOBLE IN THE CHARACTERS OF GREAT MEN, WHO HAVE A JUST ESTIMATE OF THEIR OWN SUPERIOR ABILITY: FOR LITTLE MINDS NEVER ABSTRACT ANY THING FROM THEMSELVES, BECAUSE THEY HAVE NOTHING TO SPARE: WHILE THE INGENUOUS ADMISSION OF AN ERROR, IS CONGENIAL TO A GREAT MIND, WHICH WILL STILL HAVE ENOUGH FOR US TO ADMIRE, ESPECIALLY IN THE DISCHARGE OF A DUTY WHICH IS



PIANTUR EADEM RATIONE, QUA QUIS ANTE DECEPTUS EST. Sed hæc quidem alioquin memoria magni professoris, uti interponeremus, effecit.

Potest autem sutura eo nomine fallere, quia æque aspera est; ut aliquis hanc esse, etiamsi rima est, existimet eo loco, quo subesse hanc verisimile est. Ergo eo nomine decipi non oportet: sed os aperire tutissimum est. Nam neque utique certa sedes, ut supra posui, suturarum est; et potest idem et naturaliter commissum et ictu fissum esse, juxtave aliquid fissum habere.

Quin aliquando etiam, ubi ictus fuit vehementior, quamvis specillo nihil invenitur, tamen aperire commodius. At si ne tum quidem rima manifesta est, inducendum super os atramentum scriptorium est, deinde scalpro id deradendum: nigritiem enim continet, si quid fissum est.

Solet etiam evenire, ut altera parte fuerit ictus, et os altera fiderit. Itaque, si graviter aliquis percussus est, si mala indicia subsecuta sunt, neque ea parte, qua cutis discissa est, rima

## ORDO.

DECIPIANTUR EADEM RATIONE QUA QUIS EST DECEPTUS ANTE. Sed quidem alioquin memoria magni professoris effecit uti interponeremus hæc.

Autem sutura potest fallere eo nomine, quia est æque aspera; ut aliquis existimet hanc esse, etiamsi est rima eo loco, quo est verisimile hanc subesse. Ergo non oportet decipi eo nomine: sed est tutissimum aperire os. Nam, ut posui supra, est utique neque certa sedes suturarum; et idem potest et esse commissum naturaliter et fissum ictu, ve habere aliquid fissum juxta.

Quin aliquando etiam ubi ictus fuit vehementior, quamvis nihil invenitur specillo, tamen est commodius aperire. At si ne quidem tum rima est manifesta, scriptorium atramentum est inducendum super os, deinde id deradendum scalpro: enim si quid fissum, continet nigritiem.

Etiam solet evenire, ut ictus fuerit altera parte, et os fiderit altera. Itaque, si aliquis percussus est graviter, si mala indicia subsecuta sunt, neque rima reperitur ea parte qua cutis discissa

## TRANSLATION.

HANDED DOWN TO POSTERITY FOR THEIR BENEFIT: THAT THEY MAY NOT BE DECEIVED IN THE SAME WAY ANOTHER WAS DECEIVED BEFORE THEM. Nothing but the merits of this eminent professor, could have led us into such a digression.

Now a suture may deceive us for this reason, because it is equally rough. So that a person may confound a fissure with a suture, in a place where it is probable for one to be. Therefore it is not proper that we should be thus deceived: but the safest method is to lay bare the bone: for as I observed before, the relative positions of the sutures are by no means certain: so that the same part may be naturally united by suture, and split by a blow, or it may have a fissure near it.

But sometimes also when the blow has been very violent, although nothing be found by the probe, yet it is more advantageous to open the part. And if then the fissure be not evident, writing ink must be drawn over the bone, and afterwards scraped off with the chisel, for if there be any fissure, the opening will retain it.

It sometimes happen that when the blow has been given on one side, the fracture will appear opposite—the *contre coup* of the French. Therefore, if the person has been struck violently, and bad symptoms have supervened without our being able to discover a fissure in the part where the integuments have been lacerated,

reperitur; non incommodum est, parte altera considerare, num quis locus mollior sit, et tumeat; eumque aperire: siquidem ibi fissum os reperietur. Nec tamen magno negotio cutis sanescit, etiamsi frustra secta est. Os fractum, nisi si succursum est, gravibus inflammationibus afficit, difficilisque postea tractatur.

Raro, sed aliquando tamen, evenit, ut os quidem totum integrum maneat, intus vero ex ictu vena aliqua in cerebri membrana rupta aliquid sanguinis mittat; isque ibi concretus magnos dolores moveat, et oculos quibusdam obcæcet. Sed fere contra id dolor est, et, eo loco cute incisa, pallidum os reperitur: ideoque id quoque os excidendum est.

Quacumque autem de causa curatio hæc necessaria est, si nondum satis cutis patefacta est, latius aperienda est, donec, quidquid læsum est, in conspectu sit. In quo ipso videndum est, ne quid ex ipsa membranula, quæ sub cute calvariam cingit, super os relinquatur: siquidem hæc scalpro terebrisve lacerata vehementes febres cum

## ORDO.

est; non est incommodum considerare altera parte, num quis locus sit mollior, et tumeat, que aperire eum: siquidem os reperietur fissum ibi. Nec tamen cutis sanescit magno negotio, etiamsi secta est frustra. Fractum os, nisi si succursum est, afficit gravibus inflammationibus, que tractatur postea difficilisque.

Raro, sed tamen aliquando, evenit ut totum os quidem maneat integrum, vero aliqua vena rupta intus ex ictu, in membrana cerebri mittat aliquid sanguinis; que is concretus ibi moveat magnos dolores, et obcæcet oculos quibusdam. Sed fere dolor est contra id, et cute incisa eo loco, os reperitur pallidum: que ideo id os quoque est excidendum.

Autem de quacunque causa hæc curatio est necessaria, si cutis est patefacta nondum satis, est aperienda latius, donec quicquid læsum est sit in conspectu. In quo ipso est videndum, ne quid ex membranula ipsa, quæ cingit calvariam sub cute, relinquatur super os: siquidem hæc lacerata scalpro ve terebris, excitat vehementes febres cum inflammatio-

## TRANSLATION.

it will be proper to examine the opposite side, and see whether any part be very soft, and tumified, and to open it: for then the bone will be found fractured. Nor will there be much trouble in healing the wound, even though the incision prove superfluous. A fractured bone, unless assistance be administered, brings severe inflammations, and is afterwards treated with greater difficulty.

Sometimes it happens, although rarely, that the whole bone may remain sound: but some internal vein in the membrane of the brain is ruptured from the blow, and extravasation takes place, which being coagulated there, excites violent pains, and deprives some persons of their sight. But there is pain generally in the part which covers it, and an incision being made in the integuments over it, the bone is found to be pale; therefore that too must be removed.

But from whatever cause this operation may be necessary, if the integuments have not been sufficiently opened, the wound must be enlarged, until whatever has been injured be brought in view. In which, it must be seen that no part of that delicate membrane, the *pericranium*, which surrounds the skull under the skin, be left over the bone: since, the laceration of this with the chisel or perforator would

inflammationibus excitat. Itaque eam commodius est ex toto ab osse diduci. Plagam, si ex vulnere est, talem necesse est habeamus, qualem acceperimus: si manu facienda est, ea fere commodissima est, quæ duabus transversis lineis litteræ X figuram accipit: tum deinde a singulis procedentibus lingulis cutis subsecatur.

Inter quæ, si sanguis fertur, spongia subinde in aceto tincta cohibendus est, occupandusque objectis linamentis, et caput altius excitandum. Neque id vitium ullum metum, nisi inter musculos, qui tempora continent, adfert: sed ibi quoque nihil tutius fit. In omni vero fisso fractove osse, protinus antiquiores medici ad ferramenta veniebant, quibus id exciderent. Sed multo melius est, ante emplastra experiri, quæ calvariæ causa componuntur: eorumque aliquod oportet ex aceto mollitum per se super fissum fractumve os imponere: deinde super id, aliquanto latius, quam vulnus est, eodem medicamento illitum linteolum, et præterea succidam lanam aceto tinctam: tum vulnus deligare, et

## ORDO.

nibus. Itaque est commodius eam diduci ex toto ab osse. Est necesse habeamus plagam talem qualem acceperimus, si est ex vulnere; si est facienda manu, ea est fere commodissima, quæ duabus transversis lineis accipit figuram litteræ X: tum deinde cutis subsecatur a singulis procedentibus lingulis.

Inter quæ, si sanguis fertur, est cohibendus spongia subinde tincta in aceto, que occupandus linamentis objectis, et caput excitandum altius. Neque id vitium affert ullum metum, nisi inter musculos qui continent tempora: sed ibi quoque nihil fit tutius. Vero in omni fisso ve fracto osse, antiquiores medici veniebant protinus ad ferramenta quibus exciderent id. Sed est multo melius, ante experiri emplastra quæ componuntur causa calvariæ; que oportet imponere aliquod eorum per se, mollitum ex aceto super fissum ve fractum os; deinde, super id, linteolum illitum eodem medicamento, aliquanto latius quam vulnus est; et, præterea, succidam lanam tinctam aceto; tum deligare

## TRANSLATION.

excite violent fever with inflammations. It will be more advantageous therefore for it to be separated entirely from the bone. When the wound is produced by a blow, we must necessarily take it as we find it: if the incision is to be made by the hand, the most advantageous is by two transverse lines in the form of the letter X: then these tongue-shaped flaps are to be dissected from that point *where the lines bisect each other*.

If during this time blood be discharged, it is to be checked with a sponge dipped in vinegar, and taken up with lints being applied, and the head raised up. Neither is there any fear from this complaint, unless among the temporal muscles: but even there, nothing can be done better. Now in every splintered or fractured bone, the more ancient physicians had immediate recourse to the instruments for its removal. But it is much better, first to try plasters which are composed for the skull. Some one of these softened with vinegar it will be proper to apply by itself over the split or broken bone: then over that a little linen charged with the same medicine a little larger than is necessary to cover the wound: and in addition, some rancid wool dipped in vinegar: to bind and unbind the wound daily, in



quotidie resolvere; similiterque curare usque ad diem quintum. A sexto die etiam vapore aquæ calidæ per spongiam fovere: cetera eadem facere.

Quod si caruncula increscere cœperit, et febricula aut soluta erit, aut levior, et cupiditas cibi reverterit, satisque somni accedet, in eodem medicamento erit perseverandum. Procedente deinde tempore emolliendum id emplastrum, adjecto cerato ex rosa facto; quo facilius carnem producat: nam per se reprimendi vim habet. Hac ratione sæpe rimæ callo quodam implentur; estque ea ossis velut cicatrix: et latius fracta ossa, si qua inter se non cohærebant, eodem callo glutinantur; estque id aliquanto melius velamentum cerebro, quam caro, quæ exciso osse increscit.

Si vero sub prima curatione febris intenditur, brevesque somni, et iidem per somnia tumultuosi sunt, ulcus madet, neque alitur, et in cervicibus glandulæ oriuntur, magni dolores sunt, cibique super hæc fastidium increscit; tum demum ad manum scalprumque veniendum est.

#### ORDO.

vulnus, et resolvere quotidie, que curare similiter usque ad quintum diem. A sexto die fovere etiam per spongiam vapore calidæ aquæ: facere eadem cetera.

Quod si caruncula cœperit increscere, et febricula erit aut soluta aut levior, et cupiditas cibi reverterit, que satis somni accedet, erit perseverandum in eodem medicamento. Deinde, tempore procedente, id emplastrum emolliendum, cerato facto ex rosa adjecto, quo producat carnem facilius: nam, per se, habet vim reprimendi. Hac ratione rimæ sæpe implentur quodam callo; que ea est cicatrix ossis: et ossa fracta latius, si qua velut non cohærebant inter se, glutinantur eodem callo; que id est aliquanto melius velamentum cerebro, quam caro, quæ increscit osse exciso.

Vero si sub prima curatione febris intenditur, quæ somni sunt breves, et iidem tumultuosi per somnia, ulcus madet, neque alitur, et glandulæ oriuntur in cervicibus, sunt magni dolores, que fastidium cibi super hæc increscit; tum, demum est veniendum ad manum que scalprum.

#### TRANSLATION.

order to dress it in like manner for five days. From the sixth day to foment it also with a sponge and the steam of hot water: continuing all the other measures.

But if granulations begin to spring up, and the slight fever be either subsided or alleviated, and an appetite for food returned, and the patient be in the enjoyment of sufficient sleep, we must continue the same dressings. Some time afterwards the plaster must be softened, and the rose-oil cerate added to it, in order to facilitate the growth of new matter; for by itself it possesses a repressing property. By this method the fissures are frequently filled up with a certain callus, which resembles the cicatrix of a bone: and in more extensive fractures of bones, if they do not unite together in any part, they are brought into contact by the same callus: and this is rather a better covering to the brain than the flesh which grows on the excised bone.

But if the fever be augmented under the first treatment, if there be short portions of sleep, with turbulent dreams, the wound moist, but not filling up; the cervical glands engorged with considerable pains; and in addition to all these, the loathing of food increase; then it will be evident that recourse must be had to the hand and chisel.

Duo vero sub ictu calvariae pericula sunt; ne vel findatur, vel medium desidat. Si fissum est, possunt orae esse compressae: vel quia altera super alteram excessit; vel etiam, quia vehementer rursus se commiserunt. Ex quo evenit, ut humor ad membranam quidem descendat, exitum vero non habeat; ac sic eam irritet, et graves inflammationes moveat.

At ubi medium desedit, eandem cerebri membranam os urget: interdum etiam ex fractura quibusdam velut aculeis pungentibus. His ita succurrendum est, ut tamen quam minimum ex osse dematur. Ergo, si ora alteri insedit, satis est id, quod eminet, plano scalpro excidere, quo sublato, jam rima hiat quantum curationi satis est. At si orae inter se comprimuntur, a latere ejus, interposito digiti spatio, terebra foramen faciendum est: ab eoque scalper duabus lineis ad rimam agendus, ad similitudinem litterae V, sic, ut vertex ejus a foramine, basis a rima sit.

Quod si rima longius patet, ab altero foramine rursus similis sinus fieri de-

## ORDO.

Vero sunt duo pericula calvariae sub ictu: ne vel findatur, vel medium desidat. Si est fissum, orae possunt esse compressae; vel quia altera excessit super alteram; vel, etiam, quia commiserunt se rursus vehementer. Ex quo evenit, ut humor quidem descendat ad membranam, vero non habeat exitum; ac sic irritet eam, et moveat graves inflammationes.

At ubi medium desedit, os urget eandem membranam cerebri; interdum etiam quibusdam velut aculeis ex fractura pungentibus. Est succurrendum his ita ut tamen quam minimum dematur ex osse. Ergo, si ora insedit alteri, est satis excidere id quod eminet plano scalpro: quo sublato, jam rima hiat quantum est satis curationi. At si orae comprimuntur inter se, a latere ejus, spatio digiti interposito, foramen est faciendum terebra: quae ab eo scalper agendus duabus lineis ad rimam ad similitudinem litterae V, sic ut vertex ejus sit a foramine, basis a rima.

Quod si rima patet longius, similis sinus debet fieri rursus ab

## TRANSLATION.

Now there are two dangers arising from a blow on the skull, it may be either fractured, or depressed in the middle. If it be fissured, the edges may be compressed: either because one of them overlaps the other: or even because they have been driven against each other with violence. By which accident, a humour would descend upon the membrane—the *dura mater*,—and having no outlet, would excite it so, that violent inflammation would ensue.

But when the bone has been depressed in the middle, it presses upon that same membrane of the brain: and sometimes also some sharp spiculae of the fracture puncture it. This must be remedied in such a way, that as little as possible must be taken off the bone. Therefore if one edge have overlapped the other, it will be sufficient to pare off that which projects with the flat side of the chisel, which being removed, the hiatus in the fissure will be sufficient to effect a cure. But if the edges are compressed together, an opening must be made with the perforator, at the distance of one finger's breadth from its side, and from that the chisel must be carried in two lines towards the fissure in the form of the letter V: so that the apex of it may be at the opening, and the base at the fissure.

But if the fissure extend to a considerable length, a similar perforation ought

bet: et ita nihil latens in eo osse concavo est, abundeque exitus datur intus lædentibus. Ne si fractum quidem os desedit, totum excidi necesse est: sed, sive totum perfractum est, et ab alio ex toto recessit, sive circumpositæ calvariæ inhæret exigua parte, ab eo, quod naturaliter se habet, scalpro dividendum est. Deinde in eo, quod desedit, juxta rimam, quam fecimus, foramina addenda sunt, si in angusto noxa est, duo; si latius patet, tria; septaque eorum excidenda: et tum scalper utrimque ad rimam agendus, sic, ut lunatum sinum faciat, imaque pars ejus intus ad fracturam, cornua ad os integrum spectent. Deinde, si qua labant, et ex facili removeri possunt, forfice ad id facta colligenda sunt, maximeque ea, quæ acuta membranam infestant: si id ex facili fieri non potest, subjicienda lamina est, quam custodem ejus membranæ esse, proposui; et super eam, quidquid spinosum est, et intus eminent, excidendum est: eademque lamina, quidquid deorsum insedit, attollendum.

## ORDO.

altero foramine: et ita nihil est latens in eo concavo osse, que exitus datur abunde lædentibus intus. Ne quidem si fractum os desedit, est necesse totum excidi; sed, sive totum perfractum est, et recessit ex toto ab alio, sive inhæret exigua parte circumpositæ calvariæ, est dividendum ab eo quod habet se naturaliter, scalpro. Deinde in eo quod desedit juxta rimam, quam fecimus foramina sunt addenda; si noxa est in angusto, duo; si patet latius, tria; que septa eorum excidenda: et tum scalper agendus utrimque ad rimam, sic ut faciat lunatum sinum, que ima pars ejus intus ad fracturam, cornua spectent ad integrum os. Deinde, si qua labant, et possunt removeri ex facili, sunt colligenda forfice facta ad id, que maxime ea quæ acuta infestant membranam: si id non potest fieri ex facili, lamina quam proposui esse custodem ejus membranæ est subjicienda; et quidquid est spinosum et eminent intus, est excidendum super eam: que quidquid insedit deorsum attollendum eadem lamina.

## TRANSLATION.

to be made again from the other foramen, and in this way nothing is left hid under the concave surface of the bone, and a free exit is given for any offending matter within. Not even if the broken bone has been depressed, is it necessary for the whole to be excised: but, whether the whole has been broken through and entirely detached from the other part, or it adhere by a small attachment to the surrounding skull, it must be divided from the sound bone by means of the chisel. Then near the depressed part where we have made the fissure, openings are to be added: if the injury be in a narrow compass, two: if it be more extensive, three: and the intermediate spaces between these foramina cut out: and then the chisel is to be driven on both sides to the fissure, so as to form a crescent-shaped sinus: the lowest part of it may tend towards the fracture, and the horns point to the sound bone. Then if there be any detached pieces, and they can be removed easily, they are to be collected with a forceps made for this purpose, especially those spiculæ, which being sharp, irritate the membrane: if this cannot be done easily, the plate which I have previously spoken of—the *meningo-phylax*—must be introduced to shield the membrane; and whatever asperities may protrude inwards, must be excised on this plate: and whatever has been depressed must be raised by the same plate.



Hoc genus curationis efficit, ut, qua parte fracta ossa tamen inhærent, solidentur: qua parte abrupta sunt, sine ullo tormento sub medicamentis tempore excidant, spatiumque inter hæc satis illis magnum ad extrahendam saniem relinquatur; plusque in osse propugnaculi cerebrum habeat, quam habiturum fuit, eo exciso.

His factis, ea membrana acri aceto respergenda est; ut, sive aliquid sanguinis ex ea profluit, cohibeatur, sive intus concretus cruor remanet, discutiatur: tum idem medicamentum eodem modo, qui supra positus est, mollitum, ipsi membranæ imponendum est: ceteraque eodem modo facienda sunt, quæ ad linteolum illitum, et lanam succidam pertinent: collocandusque is loco in tepido: et curandum quotidie vulnus; bis etiam, æstate.

Quod si membrana per inflammationem intumuerit, infundenda erit rosa tepida. Si usque eo tumebit, ut super ossa quoque emineat, coercebit eam bene trita lenticula, vel folia vitis contrita, et cum recenti vel butyro,

## ORDO.

Hoc genus curationis efficit ut qua parte ossa fracta tamen inhærent, solidentur: qua parte sunt abrupta, excidant tempore sub medicamentis sine ullo tormento, que spatium reliquatur inter hæc satis magnum ad saniem extrahendam; que cerebrum habeat plus propugnaculi in osse quam fuit habiturum, eo exciso.

His factis, ea membrana est respergenda acri aceto; ut sive aliquid sanguinis profluit ex ea, cohibeatur, sive concretus cruor remanet intus, discutiatur; tum idem medicamentum mollitum eodem modo qui positus est supra, est imponendum membranæ ipsi: que cetera quæ pertinent ad illitum linteolum, et succidam lanam, sunt facienda eodem modo: que is collocandus in tepido loco: et vulnus curandum quotidie; etiam bis æstate.

Quod si membrana intumuerit per inflammationem, tepida rosa erit infundenda. Si tumebit usque eo, ut emineat quoque super ossa, lenticula bene trita coercebit eam, vel contrita folia vitis, et mixta vel cum recenti butyro vel

## TRANSLATION.

The result of this is, that the fractured bones, if they adhere in any part, may be consolidated; and wherever they are detached, in time they may be thrown off by medicines without any pain, and a space may be left between them sufficiently large to permit the escape of the sanies; and the brain may have a better protection from the bone than it would have had if that were cut out.

These things being done, the membrane must be sprinkled with strong vinegar; so that if there be a hæmorrhage from it, it may be restrained; or if any coagulated blood should have been retained within, it may be dispersed: then the same application, softened in the same manner as has been above directed, is to be laid on the membrane itself: the remainder of the dressing, as regards the anointed lint, and rancid wool, are to be done in the same manner; and the patient to be laid in a cool place, and the wound to be dressed daily, and even twice in summer.

But if the membrane have swollen through inflammation, tepid rose-oil must be applied on it. If the swelling be so great as to rise above the bones, lentils well bruised will restrain it, or bruised vine-leaves, mixed with either

vel adipe anserino mista: cervixque molliri debebit liquido cerato, ex irino facto.

At si parum pura membrana videbitur, par modus ejus emplastri et mellis miscendus erit; idque superinfundendum; ejusque continendi causa unum aut alterum linamentum injiciendum, et super linteolo, cui emplastrum illitum sit, contegendum. Ubi satis pura membrana est, eadem ratione adjiciendum emplastro ceratum, ut carnem producat.

Quod ad abstinentiam vero, et primos ulterioresque cibos potionesque pertinet, eadem, quæ in vulneribus præcepi, servanda sunt, eo magis, quo periculosius hæc pars afficitur. Quin etiam, cum jam non solum sustineri, sed ali his quoque oportebit, tamen erunt vitanda, quæcumque mandenda sunt: item fumus, et quidquid excitat sternutamentum.

Spem vero certam faciunt, membrana mobilis ac sui coloris, caro increscens rubicunda, facilis motus maxillæ atque cervicis. Mala signa sunt, membrana immobilis, nigra, vel

#### ORDO.

adipe anserino: que cervix debebit molliri liquido cerato facto ex irino.

At si membrana videbitur parum pura, par modus ejus emplastri et mellis erit miscendus: que id superinfundendum; que causa ejus continendi unum aut alterum linamentum injiciendum, et contegendum super linteolo, cui emplastrum sit illitum. Ubi membrana est satis pura, ceratum adjiciendum emplastro eadem ratione, ut producat carnem.

Vero quod pertinet ad abstinentiam, et primos que ulteriores cibos que potiones, eadem sunt servanda quæ præcepi in vulneribus, eo magis, quo periculosius hæc pars afficitur. Quin etiam, cum jam oportebit, non solum sustineri, sed quoque ali his, tamen, quæcumque sunt mandenda erunt vitanda: item fumus, et quidquid excitat sternutamentum.

Vero membrana mobilis, ac sui coloris, increscens caro rubicunda, motus maxillæ atque cervicis facilis, faciunt spem certam. Mala signa sunt, membrana immobilis, nigra vel livida, vel coloris

#### TRANSLATION.

fresh butter or goose-grease, and the neck will require to be softened with liquid cerate made of orris oil.

But if the membrane seem rather foul, equal quantities of the plaster and of honey must be mixed; and this poured over it; and in order to retain it there, one or two pieces of lint is to be applied, and to be covered over with a strip of linen spread with plaster. When the membrane is sufficiently clean, cerate is to be added in the same way to the plaster, to promote the granulations.

Now with regard to abstinence, and the food and drink; in the first and more advanced stage of the treatment, the same rules are to be observed which I have prescribed in wounds, and more particularly, in proportion to the extent of the danger with which this part is affected. Even when it may be necessary not only to support, but to nourish such patients, every thing that requires mastication must be avoided; also smoke and whatever excites sneezing.

The membrane being moveable and of its natural colour, the granulations florid, the motions of the jaw and neck easy, renders the hope certain. The unfavourable symptoms are the membrane being immoveable, black or livid, or of any other

livida, vel aliter coloris corrupti, dementia, acris vomitus, nervorum vel resolutio vel distentio, caro livida, maxillarum rigor, atque cervicis. Cetera, quæ ad somnum, cibi desiderium, febrem, puris colorem attinent, eadem, quæ in ceteris vulneribus, vel salutaria, vel mortifera sunt.

Ubi bene res cedit, incipit ab ipsa membrana; vel, si os eo loco duplex est, inde quoque caro increscere; eaque id, quod inter ossa vacuum est, replet: nonnunquam etiam super calvariam excrescit. Quod si incidit, inspergenda squama æris est, ut id reprimat cohibeatque: ea carni superdanda, quæ ad cicatricem perducant. Omnibusque ea locis commode inducitur, excepta frontis ea parte, quæ paulum super id est, quod inter supercilia est. Ibi enim vix fieri potest, ut non per omnem ætatem sit exulceratio: quæ linteolo medicamentum habente, contengenda sit. Illa utique, capite fracto, servanda sunt, ut, donec jam valida cicatrix sit, vitentur sol, ventus, frequens balneum, major vini modus.

## ORDO.

aliter corrupti, dementia, acris vomitus, vel resolutio vel distentio nervorum, livida caro, rigor maxillarum, atque cervicis. Cetera quæ attinent ad somnum, desiderium cibi, febrem, colorem puris, eadem sunt vel salutaria, vel mortifera, quæ in ceteris vulneribus.

Ubi res cedit bene, caro incipit increscere ab membrana ipsa; vel si os est duplex eo loco, inde quoque; quæ ea replet id quod est vacuum inter ossa: nonnunquam etiam excrescit super calvariam. Si quod incidit, squama æris est inspergenda, ut reprimat quæ cohibeat id; ea superdanda carni quæ perducant ad cicatricem. Quæ ea inducitur commode omnibus locis, ea parte frontis excepta, quæ est paulum super id quod est inter supercilia. Enim ibi potest vix fieri, ut non sit exulceratio per omnem ætatem: quæ sit contengenda linteolo habente medicamentum. Illa utique sunt servanda, capite fracto, ut donec cicatrix sit jam valida, sol, ventus, frequens balneum, major modus vini vitentur.

## TRANSLATION.

unnatural colour; delirium, acrid vomiting, paralysis, or convulsions; livid flesh, stiffness of the jaws and neck. The other symptoms which relate to sleep, appetite, fever, the colour of the pus, are either salutary or fatal, as in other wounds.

When the case goes on favourably, granulations rise from the membrane itself, or if the bone have a diploe there, it shoots from thence too, and those granulations replenish the vacant interspaces between the bones: sometimes it rises above the cranium. If this happen, it must be sprinkled with copper scales, that it may repress and check it, and medicines applied to promote a cicatrix over it. This is easily effected on all parts, with the exception of that space a little above and between the frontal sinuses. For there it may so happen, that an ulceration may remain during the whole life, which may be covered with a little medicated lint. These rules are to be particularly observed, until the scar acquire sufficient strength: the sun, wind, frequent bathing, and too much wine, are to be avoided.



## CAP. V.

## DE NASO FRACTO.

IN naribus vero, et os, et cartilago frangi solet, et quidem modo adversa, modo a latere. Si adversa fracta sunt, alterumve ex his, nares desidunt, difficulter spiritus trahitur. Si a latere os fractum est, is locus cavus est: si cartilago, in alteram partem nares declinantur.

Quidquid in cartilagine incidit, excitanda ea leniter est, aut subjecto specillo, aut duobus digitis utrimque compressis: deinde in longitudinem implicata linamenta, et molli pellicula cincta circumsutaeque, intus adigenda sunt; aut eodem modo compositum aliquid ex arido penicillo; aut grandis pinna, gummi, vel fabrilis glutine illita, et molli pellicula circumdata, quæ desiderare cartilaginem non sinat.

## ORDO.

## CAP. V.

## DE FRACTO NASO.

VERO in naribus, et os et cartilago solet frangi, et quidem modo adverso, modo a latere. Si sunt fracta, ve alterum ex his, adversa, nares desidunt, spiritus trahitur difficulter. Si os fractum est a latere, is locus est cavus: si cartilago, nares declinantur in alteram partem.

Quidquid incidit in cartilagine, ea est excitanda leniter, aut specillo subjecto, aut duobus digitis compressis utrimque: deinde linamenta implicata in longitudinem, et cincta que circumsuta molli pellicula, sunt adigenda intus; aut aliquid ex arido penicillo compositum eodem modo; aut grandis pinna illita gummi, vel glutine fabrilis, et circumdata molli pellicula, quæ non sinat cartilaginem desiderare.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. V.

## FRACTURE OF THE NOSE.

NOW in the nostrils both the bone and the cartilage are liable to be broken, and indeed sometimes in the front part, at other times on the side. If either one or both be broken anteriorly, the nostrils collapse, and respiration becomes difficult. If the bone has been broken on one side, that part will be concave; if the cartilage, the nostrils are twisted to the opposite side,

Whatever may happen to the cartilage, it is to be gently raised, either by a probe being introduced, or by compressing it on each side by the two fingers; afterwards, lint formed into a proper length, surrounded and sewed up in soft leather, is to be introduced; or some dry lint formed in the same manner; or a large quill dipped in gum, or carpenter's glue, and surrounded with soft leather, which will prevent a depression of the cartilage.

Sed, si adversa ea fracta est, æqualiter utraque naris implenda est: si a latere, crassius esse debet ab ea parte, in quam nasus jacet, ab altera tenuius id, quod inseritur. Extrinsecus autem circumdanda habena est mollis, media illita mistis inter se simila et thuris fuligine: eaque ultra aures ducenda, et fronti duobus capitibus agglutinanda est. Id enim corpori quasi gluten inhærescit, et, cum induruit, nares commode continet. Sin, quod intus inditum est, lædit, sicut maxime fit, ubi interior cartilago perfracta est, excitatæ nares eadem tantummodo habena continendæ sunt: deinde, post quatuordecim dies id ipsum demendum est.

Resolvitur autem aqua calida; eaque tum is locus quotidie fovendus est. Sin os fractum est, id quoque digitis in suam sedem reponendum est: atque ubi adversum id ictum est, utraque naris implenda est; ubi a latere, ea, in quam os impulsus est: imponendumque ceratum, et paulo vehementius deligandum est; quia callus eo loco non ad sanitatem tan-

## ORDO.

Sed, si ea fracta est adversa, utraque naris est æqualiter implenda; si a latere, id quod inseritur debet esse crassius ab ea parte in quam nasus jacet, ab altera tenuius. Autem extrinsecus mollis habena est circumdanda, media illita simila et fuligine thuris mixtis inter se: que ea est ducenda ultra aures, et agglutinanda fronti duobus capitibus. Enim id inhærescit corpori quasi gluten, et cum induruit, continet nares commode. Sin quod inditum est intus lædit, sicut maxime fit, ubi interior cartilago perfracta est, nares, excitatæ sunt continendæ tantummodo eadem habena; deinde, post quatuordecim dies, id ipsum est demendum.

Autem resolvitur calida aqua; que tum is locus est fovendus quotidie ea. Sin os fractum est, id quoque est reponendum in suam sedem digitis: atque ubi id ictum est adversum, utraque naris est implenda; ubi a latere, ea in quam os est impulsus: que ceratum est imponendum, et deligandum paulo vehementius; quia callus increscit eo loco non tan-

## TRANSLATION.

But if the fracture be in the fore part, each nostril is to be equally plugged; if on one side, that which is put in ought to be thicker in that part where the nose is depressed, and smaller in the other. But externally a soft strap is to be applied, the middle of which is to be sprinkled with fine flour and the soot of frankincense mixed together: and this must be passed behind the ears, and the two ends *being crossed and returned*, are to be made fast to the forehead. For this adheres to the body like glue, and when it becomes hard, it effectually retains the nostrils. But if that which has been introduced gives pain, as most generally happens, when the interior cartilage has been broken through, the nostrils being raised *in the same manner*, are to be retained only by the same strap: lastly, after fourteen days, that is to be removed.

But it must be loosened with warm water; and then that part is to be fomented daily with it. But if the bone be fractured, it must also be reduced to its situation by the fingers; and when the fracture is anteriorly, both nostrils are to be filled: when on the side, that to which the bone has been driven: a cerate must be applied, and bound on a little more firmly; because a callus grows in that

tummodo, sed etiam ad tumorem increscit: a tertio die fovendum id aqua calida est; tantoque magis, quanto propius esse sanitati debet.

Quod si plura erunt fragmenta, nihilominus extrinsecus singula in suas sedes digitis erunt compellenda; imponendaque extrinsecus eadem habena, et super eam ceratum; neque ultra fascia adhibenda est. At si quod fragmentum undique resolutum cum ceteris non glutinabitur, intelligetur quidem ex humore, qui multus ex vulnere feretur; vulsella vero extrahetur: finitisque inflammationibus, imponetur aliquod medicamentum ex iis, quæ leniter reprimunt.

Pejus est, ubi aut ossi aut cartilagini fractæ cutis quoque vulnus accessit. Id admodum raro fit. Si incidit, illa quidem nihilominus eadem ratione in suas sedes excitanda sunt: cuti vero superimponendum emplastrum aliquod ex iis, quæ recentibus vulneribus accommodata sunt: sed insuper nullo vinculo deligandum est.

#### ORDO.

tummodo ad sanitatem, sed etiam ad tumorem: id est fovendum a tertio die calida aqua: que tanto magis, quanto debet esse propius sanitati.

Quod si erunt plura fragmenta, nihilominus singula erunt compellenda extrinsecus digitis in suas sedes; que eadem habena imponenda extrinsecus, et ceratum super eam; neque est fascia ultra adhibenda. At si quod fragmentum resolutum undique glutinabitur non cum ceteris, intelligetur quidem ex humore, qui multus feretur ex vulnere; vero extrahetur vulsella; que inflammationibus finitis, aliquod medicamentum, ex iis quæ leniter reprimunt, imponetur.

Est pejus ubi vulnus cutis quoque accessit ossi aut cartilagini fractæ. Id fit admodum raro. Si incidit, illa quidem sunt nihilominus excitanda eadem ratione in suas sedes: vero aliquod emplastrum ex iis quæ sunt accommodata recentibus vulneribus superimponendum cuti: sed est deligandum insuper nullo vinculo.

#### TRANSLATION.

part, not only sufficient to restore health, but even to form a tumour; this is to be fomented after the third day with warm water; and the more so, the nearer it approaches to the healthy state.

But if there be many fragments, nevertheless, the several pieces must be pressed externally with the fingers into their proper situations; the same strap to be applied externally and cerate over it; nor is any further bandage necessary. But if there be any detached fragment, that does not unite with the rest, it may be detected by the pus, which will be discharged in great quantity from the wound, this must be extracted by the forceps; and the inflammation having subsided, some mild astringent is to be applied.

It is still worse, when a fracture of the bone or cartilage is accompanied with a laceration of the skin. This happens very seldom. If it should occur, they are, however, to be raised and adjusted in their proper situations in the manner already alluded to: some of those plasters, which are adapted to recent wounds, are to be applied over the skin: but no bandage is to be placed over it.



## CAP. VI.

## DE AURIBUS FRACTIS.

## ORDO.

## CAP. VI.

## DE FRACTIS AURIBUS.

IN aure quoque interdum rumpitur cartilago. Quod si incidit, antequam pus oriatur, imponendum glutinans medicamentum est: sæpe enim supurationem prohibet, et aurem confirmat. Illud et in hac et in naribus ignorari non oportet; non quidem cartilaginem ipsam glutinari, circa tamen carnem increscere, solidarique eum locum. Itaque, si cum cute cartilago rupta est, cutis utrimque suitur. Nunc autem de ea dico, quæ, cute integra, frangitur.

In ea vero si jam pus natum est, aperienda altera parte cutis, et ipsa cartilago contra lunata plaga excidenda est: deinde utendum est medicamento leniter supprimente, quale lycium est dilutum, donec sanguis fluere

QUOQUE cartilago rumpitur interdum in aure. Si quod incidit antequam pus oriatur, glutinans medicamentum est imponendum: enim sæpe prohibet suppurationem, et confirmat aurem. Oportet illud non ignorari et in hac et in naribus, non cartilaginem ipsam quidem glutinari, tamen carnem increscere circa, que eum locum solidari. Itaque, si cartilago rupta est cum cute, cutis suitur utrimque. Autem nunc dico de ea, quæ frangitur, cute integra.

Vero si pus jam natum est in ea, cutis est aperienda altera parte, et cartilago ipsa excidenda contra lunata plaga: deinde est utendum medicamento leniter supprimente, quale lycium est dilutum aqua, donec sanguis desinat fluere:

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VI.

## LACERATIONS OF THE EARS.

SOMETIMES the cartilage of the ear is torn. In such a case, a glutinating application is to be laid on, before the suppurative process begin: for that will often prevent this process, and heal the ear *by the first intention, or adhesive process*. But it ought to be known, not only in this part, but in the nostrils, that it is not the cartilage which unites, but the flesh growing around it consolidates the part. Therefore, if there be a solution of continuity of both skin and cartilage, the skin must be sewed on each side. But I am now speaking of the separation of the cartilage when the skin is entire.

If pus then be already formed, the skin must be opened on one side, and the cartilage itself must be cut in a lunated form on the opposite: then a mild styptic must be applied; such as lycium diluted with water, until the blood cease

desinat: tum imponendum linteolum cum emplastro, sic, ut pingue omne vitetur; et a parte posteriore lana mollis auri subjienda est, quæ, quod est inter hanc et caput, compleat: tum ea leniter deliganda est; et a tertio die, vapore, ut in naribus posui, fovenda. Atque in his quoque generibus abstinencia primi temporis necessaria est, donec inflammatio finiatur.

## ORDO.

tum linteolum imponendum cum emplastro, sic ut omne pingue vitetur; et mollis lana est subjienda auri a posteriore parte, quæ compleat, quod est inter hanc et caput: tum ea est deliganda leniter: et a tertio die, fovenda vapore, ut posui in naribus. Atque in his generibus quoque abstinencia primi temporis est necessaria, donec inflammatio finiatur.

## TRANSLATION.

to flow: then some lint spread with plaster, devoid of grease, must be laid on: and soft wool placed behind the ear, to fill up the space between that and the head; then it must be fastened with a gentle bandage; and after the third day fomented with the steam of warm water, as I have directed for the nostrils. In these kinds of accidents also, abstinence is necessary at first, until the inflammation shall have ceased.

## CAP. VII.

DE MAXILLA FRACTA, ET QUIBUSDAM AD OMNIA OSSA PERTINENTIBUS.

AB his ad maxillam venturus indicanda quædam puto communiter ad omnia ossa pertinentia, ne sæpius eadem dicenda sint. Omne igitur os, modo rectum, ut lignum in longitu-

## ORDO.

## CAP. VII.

DE FRACTA MAXILLA, ET DE QUIBUSDAM PERTINENTIBUS AD OMNIA OSSA.

VENTURUS ab his ad maxillam, puto quædam indicanda pertinentia communiter ad omnia ossa, ne eadem sint dicenda sæpius. Igitur omne os finditur modo rectum in longitudinem, ut lignum; modo

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VII.

FRACTURES OF THE MAXILLA, WITH SOME OBSERVATIONS ON THE BONES IN GENERAL.

As I am now about to proceed from these parts to the lower jaw, I think it incumbent on me to make some observations relative to the bones in general, to prevent a frequent repetition of them. Every bone then is sometimes split

dinem finditur; modo frangitur transversum; interdum obliquum; atque id ipsum nonnumquam retusa habet capita, nonnumquam acuta; quod genus pessimum est; quia neque facile committuntur, quæ nulli retuso innituntur; et carnem vulnerant, interdum nervum quoque aut musculum.

Quin etiam aliquando plura fragmenta fiunt. Sed in aliis quidem ossibus ex toto sæpe fragmentum a fragmento recedit: maxillæ vero semper aliqua parte, etiam vexata ossa inter se cohærent. Igitur in primis digitis duobus utrimque prementibus, et ab ore, et ab cute, omnia ossa in suam sedem compellenda sunt. Deinde, si maxilla transversa fracta est; sub quo casu fere dens super proximum dentem excedit; ubi ea in suam sedem collocata est, duo proximi dentes, aut, si hi labant posteriores inter sese deliganda sunt.

Id in alio genere fracturæ supervacuum est: cetera eadem facienda sunt. Nam linteolum duplex, madens vino et oleo, superinjiciendum

## ORDO.

frangitur transversum; interdum obliquum; atque id ipsum nonnumquam habet capita retusa, nonnumquam acuta; quod genus est pessimum; quia quæ innituntur nulli retuso, neque facile committuntur; et vulnerant carnem, interdum quoque nervum aut musculum.

Quin etiam aliquando plura fragmenta fiunt. Sed in aliis ossibus quidem sæpe fragmentum recedit ex toto a fragmento: verò etiam vexata ossa maxillæ semper cohærent aliqua parte inter se. Igitur, in primis, omnia ossa sunt compellenda in suam sedem duobus digitis prementibus utrimque, et ab ore, et ab cute. Deinde, si maxilla est fracta transversa; sub quo casu fere dens excedit super proximum dentem; ubi ea collocata est in suam sedem, duo proximi dentes, aut, si hi labant, posteriores sunt deligandi inter sese.

Id est supervacuum in alio genere fracturæ: eadem cetera sunt facienda. Nam duplex linteolum, madens vino et oleo, est superin-

## TRANSLATION.

longitudinally, like a piece of wood, sometimes fractured transversely, sometimes obliquely: and in this last species the ends are at times obtuse, at other times acute: and this is the worst kind; because, where they do not rest on something obtuse, they do not readily unite: besides, they wound the flesh, sometimes also a nerve or muscle.

But there are also many fragments at times. In fractures of the other bones, one end often recedes entirely from the other; but in a fracture of the inferior maxillary, some part of the bone always remains in contact. Therefore, first of all, the bones are to be replaced in their proper positions, by two fingers pressing on each side, both from within the mouth, and on the skin externally. Then, if the jaw-bone has been broken transversely; in which case one tooth generally projects above the one next to it: when it has been reduced, the two contiguous teeth, or, if these be loose, those further on, are to be fastened together.

In any other kind of fracture this would be superfluous; the subsequent dressings are to be precisely the same as *I have already described*. For a little lint doubled, and moistened with wine and oil is to be applied over it, with fine flour and



cum eadem simila et eadem thuris fuligine est: deinde aut fascia, aut mollis habena, media in longitudinem incisa, ut utrimque mentum complectatur, et inde capita ejus supra caput adducta ibi deligentur.

Illud quoque ad omnia ossa perti-  
nens dictum erit; famem primum esse  
necessariam: deinde, a die tertio, hu-  
midum cibum: sublata inflammatione,  
paulo plenior, eumque, qui carnem  
alat: vinum per omne tempus esse  
alienum. Deinde tertio die resolvi  
debere; foveri per spongiam vapore  
aquæ calidæ, eademque, quæ primo  
fuerunt, superdari: idem die quinto  
fieri, et donec inflammatio finiatur;  
quæ vel nono die, vel septimo fere  
solvitur. Ea sublata, rursus ossa  
esse tractanda, ut, si quod fragmen-  
tum loco suo non est, reponatur: ne-  
que id esse solvendum, nisi duæ par-  
tes ejus temporis, intra quod quæque  
ossa confervent, transierint.

Fere vero inter quartumdecimum  
et unum et vicesimum diem sanescunt,  
maxilla, malæ, jugulum, pectus, la-  
tum os scapularum, costæ, spina,  
coxarum os, tali, calx, manus, planta:

## ORDO.

jiciendum cum eadem simila et  
eadem fuligine thuris: deinde aut  
fascia, aut mollis habena, media  
incisa in longitudinem, ut com-  
plectatur mentum utrimque, et  
capita ejus adducta inde supra  
caput deligentur ibi.

Illud quoque erit dictum perti-  
nens ad omnia ossa, famem esse  
primum necessariam: deinde, a  
tertio die, humidum cibum: in-  
flammatione sublata, paulo ple-  
nior, que enim qui alat carnem:  
vinum esse alienum per omne tem-  
pus. Deinde debere resolvi tertio  
die; foveri per spongiam vapore  
calidæ aquæ, que eadem super-  
dari, quæ fuerunt primo: idem  
fieri quinto die, et donec inflam-  
matio finiatur; quæ fere solvitur  
vel nono vel septimo die. Ea sub-  
lata, ossa esse tractanda rursus,  
ut, si quod fragmentum non est  
suo loco, reponatur: neque id  
esse solvendum, nisi duæ partes  
ejus temporis intra quod quæque  
ossa confervent transierint.

Vero fere maxilla, malæ, jugu-  
lum, pectus, latum os scapularum,  
costæ, spina, os coxarum, tali,  
calx, manus, planta sanescunt in-  
ter quartumdecimum et unum et

## TRANSLATION.

the soot of frankincense: then a bandage, or soft strap, having a longitudinal slit in the middle of it, that it may embrace the chin both above and below: from thence the two ends must be brought over the head and fastened there.

This also may be said on the fracture of bones in general, that abstinence at first is strictly necessary: then moist food after the third day: and when the inflammation is removed, a little fuller diet, and *especially* that which will favour the granulations: wine is inadmissible all the time. Then they ought to be opened on the third day; to be fomented with the steam of hot water by means of a sponge; and the same dressings as at first laid over it: this is to be renewed on the fifth day, and continued until the inflammation has subsided: which is generally dissipated either on the ninth or seventh day. When this has disappeared, the bones must be examined again, in order that any dislocated fragment may be replaced, and the bandage must not be removed, until two thirds of the time have elapsed, in which the several bones unite.

Now the maxillary bone, the malæ, clavicle, sternum, scapulæ, costæ, the lumbar vertebræ, the ilia, the ankle bones, the os calcis, and the bones of the hands

inter vicesimum et tricesimum diem, crura, brachiaque: inter septimum et vicesimum et quadragesimum, humeri et femora.

Sed in maxilla illud quoque adjiciendum est, quod humidus cibus diu assumendus sit: atque etiam, cum tempus processit, in lagano similibusque aliis perseverandum est, donec ex toto maxillam callus firmarit. Itemque, utique primis diebus, habendum silentium.

## ORDO.

vicesimum diem; crura que brachia inter vicesimum et tricesimum diem; humeri et femora inter septimum et vicesimum et quadragesimum.

Sed illud quoque est adjiciendum in maxilla, quod humidus cibus sit assumendus diu: atque etiam cum tempus processit, est perseverandum in lagano que aliis similibus, donec callus firmarit maxillam ex toto. Que item silentium habendum, utique primis diebus.

## TRANSLATION.

and feet generally unite between the fourteenth and twenty-first days; the legs and forearm between the twentieth and thirtieth days: the arm and thigh-bones between the twenty-seventh and fortieth days.

But with respect to the lower maxillary, I must add also, that moist food must be taken for a longer time; and for a considerable time sponge cakes and similar food continued, until the callus become entirely sound. Silence must be strictly enjoined, especially on the first days.

## CAP. VIII.

## DE JUGULO FRACTO.

1. JUGULUM vero, si transversum fractum est, nonnumquam perse rursus recte coit, et, nisi movetur, sanari sine vinctura potest: nonnumquam vero, maximeque ubi motum est, elabitur; fereque id, quod a pectore est, super id, quod ab humero est, in pos-

## ORDO.

## CAP. VIII.

## DE FRACTO JUGULO.

1. VERO jugulum, si fractum est transversum, nonnumquam coit rursus recte perse, et, nisi movetur, potest sanari sine vinctura: vero nonnumquam, que maxime ubi motum est, elabitur; que fere id quod est a pectore, inclinatur in poste-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. VIII.

## FRACTURE OF THE CLAVICLE.

1. Now when the clavicle is fractured transversely, sometimes it unites very well of itself, and unless it be moved, it may be cured without a bandage; but sometimes, and especially when it has been moved, it slips away, and generally the sternal portion lies over and behind the scapular portion which is attached to

teriolem partem inclinatur. Cujus ea ratio est, quod per se non movetur, sed cum humeri motu consentit: itaque, eo subsistente, subit humerus agitatus. Raro vero admodum in priorem partem jugulum inclinatur; adeo ut magni professores numquam se vidisse memoriæ mandarint. Sed locuples tamen ejus rei auctor Hippocrates est.

Verum, ut dissimilis uterque casus est, sic quædam dissimilia requirit. Ubi ad scapulas jugulum tendit, simul dextra manu plana propellendus in posteriorem partem humerus est; et illud in priorem attrahendum. Ubi ad pectus conversum est, ipsum quidem retro dandum, humerus autem in priorem partem adducendus est: ac, si is inferior est, non id, quod a pectore est, deprimendum est, quia immobile est; sed humerus ipse attollendus: si casu superior est, id quod a pectore est, implendum lana, et humerus ad pectus deligandus est.

Si acuta fragmenta sunt, incidi contra cutis debet; ex ossibus ea, quæ carnem vulnerant, præcidenda; tum

## ORDO.

riorem partem, super id quod est ab humero. Ratio cujus est ea, quod movetur non per se, sed consentit cum motu humeri; itaque, eo subsistente, humerus agitatus subit. Vero admodum raro jugulum inclinatur in priorem partem, adeo ut magni professores mandarint memoriæ se nunquam vidisse. Sed tamen Hippocrates est locuples auctor ejus rei.

Verum, ut uterque casus est dissimilis, sic requirit quædam dissimilia. Ubi jugulum tendit ad scapulas, humerus est propellendus in posteriorem partem dextra manu plana, et simul illud attrahendum in priorem. Ubi conversum est ad pectus ipsum quidem est dandum retro, autem humerus est adducendus in priorem partem: ac, si is est inferior, id quod est a pectore est non deprimendum, quia est immobile: sed humerus ipse attollendus: si casu est superior, id quod est a pectore est implendum lana, et humerus (est) deligandus ad pectus.

Si sunt acuta fragmenta, cutis debet incidi contra; ea ex ossibus quæ vulnerant carnem præciden-

## TRANSLATION.

the shoulder. The reason of which is, that it does not move by itself, but complies with the motion of the humerus; therefore the pectoral portion being fixed, the humeral portion is moved upon it. The sternal portion of the clavicle, very seldom rides in front of the other, and in support of this many eminent professors have stated that they have never seen it. Yet Hippocrates, whose authority is unquestionable, speaks frequently of it.

Now as these accidents are dissimilar, so each case requires a treatment somewhat different from the other. When the clavicle tends towards the scapulæ, the humerus must be pushed back with the palm of the right hand, and at the same time the clavicle should be brought forward. When turned to the breast, this must be forced back, while the humerus is brought forward: and if the humerus fall below the other, that portion of the bone next the sternum must not be depressed, because it is immovable; but the humerus itself must be raised: if by chance it be superior, the part next the sternum must be padded with wool, and the humerus bound down to the chest.

If there should be any spiculæ of bone, the skin ought to be incised over it, and the ragged portions which wound the flesh must be removed; then the



retusa ossa committenda sunt; si quod ab aliqua parte eminet, opponendum ei triplex linteolum est, in vino et oleo tinctum. Si plura fragmenta sunt, excipienda sunt ex ferula facto canaliculo, eodemque intus incerato, ne fascia diducatur; quæ jugulo composito circumdanda est sæpius potius, quam valentius: quod ipsum quoque in omnibus ossibus fractis perpetuum est.

A dextro vero jugulo, si id fractum est, ad alam sinistram; a sinistro, ad dextram, rursusque sub ala sua fascia dari debet: post hæc, si jugulum ad scapulas inclinatum est, brachium ad latus; si in partem priorem, ad cervicem deligandum est: supinusque homo collocandus. Cetera eadem faciendi, quæ supra comprehensa sunt.

2. Sunt vero plura ossa fere immobilia, vel dura, vel cartilaginosa, quæ vel franguntur, vel forantur, vel colliduntur, vel finduntur; ut malæ, pectus, latum os scapularum, costæ, spina, coxarum os, tali, calx, manus, planta. Horum omnium eadem curatio est.

## ORDO.

da: tum retusa ossa sunt committenda; si quod eminet ab aliqua parte, triplex linteolum est opponendum ei, tinctum in vino et oleo. Si sunt plura fragmenta, sunt excipienda canaliculo facto ex ferula, quæ eodem incerato intus, ne fascia diducatur; quæ est circumdanda jugulo composito sæpius potius quam valentius: quod ipsum quoque est perpetuum in omnibus fractis ossibus.

Vero fascia debet dari a dextro jugulo, si id fractum est, ad sinistram alam; a sinistro ad dextram, quæ rursus sub sua ala: post hæc, si jugulum inclinatum est ad scapulas, brachium est deligandum ad latus: si in priorem partem, ad cervicem, quæ homo (est) collocandus supinus. Eadem cetera faciendi, quæ sunt comprehensa supra.

2. Vero sunt plura ossa fere immobilia, vel dura, vel cartilaginosa; quæ vel franguntur, vel forantur, vel colliduntur, vel finduntur; ut malæ, pectus, latum os scapularum, costæ, spina, os coxarum, tali, calx, manus, planta. Curatio omnium horum est eadem.

## TRANSLATION.

obtuse ends of the bone are brought together: and if there be a prominence in any part, it must be repressed, and a triple fold of linen cloth dipped in wine and oil is to be placed over it. If there be several fragments, they are to be covered with a little concave splint made of ferula wood, and this smeared with wax internally, lest the bandage should slip on one side: which ought to be passed more frequently round the clavicle, than too tight; which of itself is a general rule in all fractures of the bones.

In a fracture of the right clavicle, the bandage ought to pass from it to the left arm-pit; in that of the left clavicle, to the right, and again under the arm-pit of the fractured bone: this being done, if the clavicle be inclined towards the scapula, the fore-arm must be secured to the side; if forward, to the neck, and the patient laid on his back. All the other directions above mentioned must be observed.

2. Now there are a great number, both of the hard and cartilaginous bones, which have very little motion, and are liable to be fractured, perforated, bruised, or splintered, such as the malæ, the sternum, the scapulæ, the ribs, the spine, the ilia, the ankles, the heel bone, the hands, and the foot. The treatment of all these is the same.

Si supra vulnus est, id suis medicamentis nutriendum est; quo sanescente, rimas quoque ossis, aut, si quod foramen est, callus implet. Si cutis integra est, et os læsum esse ex dolore colligimus, nihil aliud, quam quiescendum; imponendumque ceratum est, et leniter deligandum, donec sanitate ossis dolor finiatur.

## ORDO.

Si vulnus est supra, id est nutriendum suis medicamentis; quo sanescente, callus implet rimas ossis, aut si est quod foramen. Si cutis est integra, et colligimus ex dolore os læsum esse, nihil aliud, quam quiescendum; que ceratum est imponendum, et deligandum leniter, donec dolor finiatur sanitate ossis.

## TRANSLATION.

If there be an external wound, it must be dressed with the applications suitable for it; while during the healing process, the callus fills up the fissures of the bone, or any opening that may be in it. If the teguments be sound, and we conclude from the pain, that the bone has been wounded, there is nothing to be done for it but rest: a cerate must be applied, and bound on lightly till the pain be removed by the bone becoming sound.

## CAP. IX.

## ORDO.

## DE COSTIS FRACTIS.

## CAP. IX.

## DE FRACTIS COSTIS.

1. PROPRIE tamen quædam de costa dicenda sunt; quia juxta viscera est, gravioribusque periculis is locus expositus est. Hæc quoque igitur interdum sic finditur, ut ne summum quidem os, sed interior pars ejus, quæ rara est, lædatur: interdum sic, ut eam totam is casus perruperit. Si tota

1. TAMEN quædam sunt dicenda proprie de costa, quia est juxta viscera, que is locus est expositus gravioribus periculis. Igitur, hæc quoque interdum finditur, sic ut ne quidem summum os, sed interior pars ejus, quæ est rara, lædatur; interdum, sic ut is casus perruperit totam eam. Si tota fracta

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. IX.

## FRACTURES OF THE RIBS.

Now there is something peculiar to be said on fractures of the ribs; because they are very near the viscera, and that part is exposed to great danger. A rib may sometimes be split in such a manner that the outer portion of it is entire, while the inner part of it, which is spongy, is injured; and sometimes it is broke completely through. If the whole be not fractured, the accident is

fracta non est, nec sanguis exspuitur, nec febricula sequitur, nec quidquam suppurat, nisi admodum raro, nec dolor magnus est; tactu tamen is locus leviter indolescit. Sed abunde est eadem, quæ supra scripta sunt, facere; et a media fascia incipere deligare, ne in alterutram partem hæc cutem inclinet: ab uno vero et vicesimo die, quo utique os esse debet glutinatum, id agendum cibus uberioribus est, ut corpus quam plenissimum fiat, quo melius os vestiatur; quod illo loco tenerum adhuc injuriæ sub tenui cute expositum est. Per omne autem tempus curationis, vitandus clamor, sermo quoque, tumultus, ira, motus vehementior corporis, fumus, pulvis, et quidquid vel tussim vel sternutamentum movet: ne spiritum quidem magnopere continere expedit.

At si tota costa perfracta est, casus asperior est: nam et graves inflammationes, et febris, et suppuratio, et sæpe vitæ periculum sequitur, et sanguis spuitur. Ergo, si vires patiuntur, ab eo brachio, quod super eam costam est, sanguis mittendus est: si

## ORDO.

est non, nec sanguis exspuitur, nec febricula sequitur, nec quidquam suppurat, nisi admodum raro, nec dolor est magnus; tamen is locus indolescit leviter tactu. Sed est abunde facere eadem quæ scripta sunt supra, et incipere deligare a media fascia, ne hæc inclinet cutem in alterutram partem: vero ab uno et vicesimo die, quo, utique, os debet esse glutinatum, id est agendum, ut uberioribus cibus, corpus fiat quam plenissimum, quo vestiatur os melius; quod illo loco adhuc tenerum est expositum injuriæ sub tenui cute. Autem per omne tempus curationis, clamor vitandus, quoque sermo, tumultus, ira, vehementior motus corporis, fumus, pulvis, et quidquid movet vel tussim vel sternutamentum; expedit ne quidem continere spiritum magnopere.

At si costa perfracta est, casus est asperior: nam et graves inflammationes, et febris, et suppuratio, et sæpe periculum vitæ sequitur, et sanguis spuitur. Ergo, si vires patiuntur, sanguis est mittendus ab eo brachio quod est super eam costam: si patiuntur

## TRANSLATION.

not followed by hæmoptysis, nor by fever, nor by suppuration, except in some few instances, nor is the pain great; yet the part is slightly painful when touched. But it will be sufficient to follow the directions given above, and to begin rolling with the middle of the bandage, lest the integuments be drawn unequally to either side; however, after the twenty-first day, when the bone ought to be united, we should aim at making the body a little fuller, by a more abundant diet, that the ribs may be the better covered: which being very tender in that place is exposed to injuries under the thin skin. During the whole course of treatment, speaking aloud must be avoided; even talking, any agitation, every violent motion of the body, smoke, dust, and whatever excites either coughing or sneezing; neither is it proper to retain the breath much.

But if the rib be fractured completely through, the case is more serious: for then severe inflammations, fever, suppuration, hæmoptysis, and frequently life is endangered. Therefore if the strength permit, blood is to be taken from the arm which is over the rib; if this cannot be done, the bowels are to be



non patiuntur, alvus tamen sine ullo acri ducenda est; diutiusque inedia pugnandum. Panis vero ante septimum diem non assumendus; sed una sorbitione vivendum: imponendumque ei loco ceratum ex lino factum, cui cocta quoque resina adjecta sit; aut Polyarchi malagma; aut panni ex vino et rosa et oleo; superque imponenda lana succida mollis, et duæ fasciæ a mediis orsæ, minimeque adstrictæ: multo vero magis omnia vitanda, quæ supra posui; adeo ut ne spiritus quidem sæpius movendus sit. Quod si tussis infestabit, ad id potio sumenda erit, vel ex trixagine, vel ex ruta, vel ex herba stœchade, vel ex cumino et pipere.

Gravioribus vero doloribus urgentibus, cataplasma imponi quoque conveniet, vel ex lolio, vel ex hordeo, cui pinguis fici tertia pars sit adjecta. Et id quidem interdiu superjacebit: noctu vero idem aut ceratum, aut malagma, aut panni; quia potest cataplasma decidere. Ergo quotidie quoque resolvetur, donec jam cerato aut malagmate possimus esse contenti. Et decem quidem diebus extenuabitur

## ORDO.

non, tamen alvus est ducenda sine ullo acri; que pugnandum diutius inedia. Vero panis non assumendus ante septimum diem; sed vivendum sorbitione una; que ceratum factum ex lino, cui cocta resina quoque adjecta sit, imponendum ei loco; aut malagma Polyarchi; aut panni ex vino et rosa et oleo; que super mollis succida lana imponenda, et duæ fasciæ orsæ a mediis, que minime adstrictæ: vero omnia quæ posui supra multo magis vitanda; adeo ut ne quidem spiritus sit movendus sæpius. Quod si tussis infestabit, potio erit sumenda ad id, vel ex trixagine, vel ex ruta, vel ex herba stœchade, vel ex cumino et pipere.

Vero gravioribus doloribus urgentibus, conveniet cataplasma quoque imponi, vel ex lolio, vel ex hordeo, cui tertia pars pinguis fici adjecta sit. Et id, quidem, superjacebit interdiu; vero noctu, aut idem ceratum, aut malagma, aut panni; quia cataplasma potest decidere. Ergo resolvetur quoque quotidie, donec possimus jam esse contenti cerato aut malagmate. Et, quidem decem diebus corpus extenuabitur fame: vero

## TRANSLATION.

moved by some mild enema, and the case combated by persevering abstinence. But he must not take any bread before the seventh day; but live on gruel alone: and a cerate made of linseed oil, to which boiled resin may be added, is to be applied to the part; or the malagma of Polyarchus; or cloths dipped in rose and common oil; and over that soft rancid wool laid on, and two bandages, beginning from the middle, but by no means tight; the restrictions above given are the more necessary to be observed here; so much so, that even the breathing must not be too frequent. But if there be a troublesome cough, a potion must be taken for it made from trixago—(*Germander*,)—or of rue, or of the herb stœchus, or of cummin and pepper.

But when there are severe pains, it will be proper to apply a cataplasm, either of darnel or of barley, to which one third part of mellow figs may be added. Now this will remain on during the day; but at night, either the same cerate, or the malagma, or the cloths: because the cataplasm may fall off. Therefore it ought to be dressed daily, until we may be able to be content with the cerate or malagma. During the first ten days the patient must be reduced by

fame corpus: ab undecimo vero ali incipiet; ideoque etiam laxior, quam primo, fascia circumligabitur. Fereque ea curatio ad quadragesimum diem pervenient.

Sub qua si metus erit suppurationis, plus malagma, quam ceratum ad digerendum proficiet. Si suppuratio vicerit, neque per quæ supra scripta sunt, discuti poterit; omnis mora vitanda erit, ne os infra vitietur: sed, qua parte maxime tumebit, demittendum erit candens ferramentum, donec ad pus perveniat; idque effundendum. Si nusquam caput se ostendet, ubi maxime pus subsit, sic intelligemus: creta Cimolia totum locum illinemus, et siccari patiemur: quo loco maxime humor in ea perseverabit, ibi pus proximum erit; eaque uri debet.

Si latius aliquid abscedet, duobus aut tribus locis erit perforandum; demittendumque linamentum, aut aliquid ex penicillo, quod summum lino sit devinctum, ut facile educatur. Reliqua eadem, quæ in ceteris adustis, facienda sunt. Ubi purum erit ulcus,

## ORDO.

ab undecimo incipiet ali; que ideo fascia circumligabitur etiam laxior quam primo. Que fere ea curatio perveniet ad quadragesimum diem.

Sub qua, si erit metus suppurationis, malagma proficiet plus quam ceratum, ad digerendum. Si suppuratio vicerit, neque poterit discuti per quæ scripta sunt supra, omnis mora erit vitanda, ne os infra vitietur: sed, qua parte tumebit maxime, candens ferramentum erit demittendum, donec perveniat ad pus; que id effundendum. Si caput ostendet se nusquam, intelligemus sic, ubi pus maxime subsit: illinemus totum locum Cimolia creta, et patiemur siccari: quo loco humor perseverabit maxime in ea, ibi pus erit proximum; que ea debet uri.

Si aliquid abscedit latius, erit perforandum duobus aut tribus locis: que linamentum demittendum, aut aliquid ex penicillo, quod sit devinctum summum lino, ut educatur facile. Eadem reliqua sunt facienda, quæ in ceteris adustis. Ubi ulcus erit purum, corpus

## TRANSLATION.

abstinence; but on the eleventh day, he should begin to feed; and on this account the bandage should be applied a little looser than at first. This treatment should be continued generally for forty days.

During this time, if there be any fear of suppuration, the malagma will be more effectual in dispersing it than the cerate. If, however, the suppuration gain the ascendancy, and cannot be discussed by the means already mentioned, no time should be lost, lest the bone beneath be affected; but in the most prominent part, a hot iron must be passed until it reach the pus, which must be evacuated. If the tumour should not be sufficiently pointed, we may detect its presence in this manner: we must rub the part all over with Cimolian chalk, and let it dry: and wherever it remains longest moist, there the pus will be the most superficial, and that is the part which ought to be canterized.

If the abscess should be extensive, it should be opened in two or three places, and some lint introduced, or some kind of tent, secured externally by a thread, in order the more easily to withdraw it. The remainder of the treatment must be the same as in other burns. When the ulcer is clean, the

ali corpus debebit, ne tabes, pernicioſa futura, id malum ſubſequatur. Nonnumquam etiam, levius ipſo oſſe affecto, et inter initia neglecto, non pus, ſed humor quidam mucis ſimilis, intus coit; molleſcitque contra cutis: in qua ſimili uſtione utendum eſt.

2. In ſpina quoque eſt, quod proprie notemus. Nam ſi id, quod ex vertebra excedit, aliquo modo fractum eſt, locus quidem concavus fit; punctiones autem in eo ſentiuntur; quia necesse eſt ea fragmenta ſpinosa eſſe: quo fit, ut homo in interiorem partem ſubinde nitatur. Hæc noſcendæ rei cauſa ſunt. Medicamentis vero iisdem opus eſt, quæ prima parte huius capitis expoſita ſunt.

#### ORDO.

debebit ali, ne tabes, futura pernicioſa, ſubſequatur id malum. Nonnumquam, etiam, oſſe ipſo affecto levius, et neglecto inter initia, non pus, ſed quidam humor ſimilis mucis coit intus, que cutis contra molleſcit; in qua eſt utendum ſimili uſtione.

2. Eſt in ſpina quoque, quod notemus proprie. Nam ſi id quod excedit ex vertebra fractum eſt aliquo modo, locus, quidem, fit concavus; autem punctiones ſentiuntur in eo; quia eſt necesse ea fragmenta eſſe ſpinosa: que fit, ut homo ſubinde nitatur in interiorem partem. Hæc ſunt cauſa rei noſcendæ. Vero eſt opus iisdem medicamentis, quæ expoſita ſunt prima parte huius capitis.

#### TRANSLATION.

patient ought to be nourished, leſt conſumption ſupervene, which would be fatal. Sometimes alſo, when the bone is ſlightly affected, and neglected at the commencement, not pus, but a humour ſimilar to mucus is collected in it, and the ſkin over it becomes ſoft; in which caſe we muſt uſe the cautery in the ſame manner.

There is ſomething peculiar in the ſpine alſo, which we muſt take notice of. For if ſome of the ſpinous proceſſes of the vertebra be fractured in any manner, the part becomes depressed, and pricking pains are felt there; theſe fragments muſt neceſſarily be ſpinous; for this reaſon, the patient is every now and then endeavouring to incline his body forward. Theſe are the diagnostic marks by which the caſe is diſcovered. The treatment is ſimilar to that which has been deſcribed in the previous part of this chapter.



## CAP. X.

DE HUMERORUM, BRACHIORUM, FEMORUM, CRURUM, DIGITORUM FRACTURUM, VEL EVULSORUM, COMMUNIBUS CURATIONIBUS.

1. SIMILES rursus ex magna parte casus curationesque sunt humeri et femoris: communia etiam quædam humeris, brachiis, feminibus, cruribus, digitis. Siquidem ea minime periculose media franguntur: quo propior fractura capiti vel superiori vel inferiori est, eo peior est: nam et majores dolores adfert, et difficilius curatur.

Ea maxime tolerabilis est simplex, transversa: peior, ubi multa fragmenta, atque ubi obliqua: pessimum, ubi eadem acuta sunt. Nonnumquam autem fracta in his ossa in suis sedibus remanent: multo sæpius excidunt, aliudque super aliud effertur: idque

## ORDO.

## CAP. X.

DE COMMUNIBUS CURATIONIBUS FRACTURUM VEL EVULSORUM HUMERORUM, BRACHIORUM, FEMORUM, CRURUM, DIGITORUM.

1. RURSUS casus que curationes humeri et femoris sunt ex magna parte similes: etiam quædam communia humeris, brachiis, feminibus, cruribus, digitis. Siquidem ea franguntur media minime periculose; quo propior fractura est vel superiori vel inferiori capiti, eo peior est: nam et adfert majores dolores, et curatur difficilius.

Ea est maxime tolerabilis, simplex, transversa: peior, ubi multa fragmenta, atque ubi obliqua: pessimum, ubi eadem sunt acuta. Autem nonnumquam ossa fracta in his remanent in suis sedibus: multo sæpius excidunt, que aliud effertur super aliud; que id debet

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. X.

FRACTURES OF THE ARMS, FOREARMS, THIGHS, LEGS, FINGERS, AND TOES.

1. THE accidents, then, which occur in the arms and thighs, and their treatment, are in a great measure alike: some are common to the arm, fore arm, thighs, legs, and fingers. Thus a fracture in the middle of any of these is by no means dangerous, and in proportion as the fracture may be nearer to either the superior or inferior head of the bone, so much the worse it is: for it causes great pain, and is cured with greater difficulty.

That fracture is most tolerable, which is a simple transverse one: worse where there are many fragments, and where the same is oblique; and worst when those fragments are acute. Sometimes the fractured bones in these parts remain in their situations: but they are more frequently displaced, and one part lies over

ante omnia considerari debet ; et sunt notæ certæ. Si suis sedibus sunt mota, resima, punctionisque sensum repræsentant ; tactu inæqualia sunt. Si vero non adversa, sed obliqua junguntur ; quod fit, ubi loco suo non sunt ; membrum id altero latere brevius est, et musculi ejus tument. Ergo, si hoc deprehensum est, protinus id membrum oportet extendere : nam nervi musculique, intenti per ossa, contrahuntur ; neque in suum locum veniunt, nisi illos per vim aliquis intendit. Rursus, si primis diebus id omisum est, inflammatio oritur ; sub qua et difficile, et periculose, vis nervis adhibetur : nam distentio nervorum, vel cancer sequitur ; vel certe, ut mitissime agatur, pus.

Itaque, si ante reposita ossa non sunt, postea reponenda sunt. Intendere autem digitum vel aliud quoque membrum, si adhuc tenerum est, etiam unus homo potest ; cum alteram partem dextra, alteram sinistra prehendit. Valentius membrum duobus eget, qui in diversa contendunt. Si firmiores

## ORDO.

considerari ante omnia ; et notæ sunt certæ. Si sunt mota suis sedibus, resima, que repræsentant sensum punctionis ; sunt inæqualia tactu. Vero si non junguntur adversa, sed obliqua, quod fit ubi sunt non suo loco, id membrum est brevius (quam) altero latere, et musculi ejus tument. Ergo, si hoc deprehensum est, oportet protinus extendere id membrum : nam nervi que musculi intenti per ossa contrahuntur ; neque veniunt in suum locum, nisi aliquis intendit illos per vim. Rursus, si id omisum est primis diebus, inflammatio oritur ; sub qua vis adhibetur nervis et difficile et periculose ; nam distentio nervorum vel cancer sequitur ; vel certe ; ut agatur mitissime pus.

Itaque, si ossa non sunt reposita ante, sunt reponenda postea. Autem etiam unus homo potest intendere digitum, vel quoque aliud membrum, si est adhuc tenerum ; cum prehendit alteram partem dextra, alteram sinistra. Valentius membrum eget duobus, qui contendunt in diversa. Si

## TRANSLATION.

the other : and this ought to be the first consideration : and there are certain characteristics of this. If they be displaced, the limbs present a convexity at the seat of fracture, and there is the sensation of pricking : they are unequal to the touch. But if the fractured ends be not in coaptation, but lie obliquely, which happens when they are displaced, that limb is shorter than the other side, and the muscles become swollen. Therefore if this has been discovered, it behoves us to extend the limb immediately : for the muscles and tendons, which in the natural state are held on the stretch by the bones, are now contracted ; neither do they recover their proper position, unless they be extended by force. Again, if this be omitted on the first days, inflammation comes on, and while in that state, the application of force to the tendons is both difficult and dangerous ; the consequences may be convulsions, or gangrene ; or even if the case prove to be rather mild, at least suppuration will ensue for a certainty.

Therefore if the bones have not been replaced before the inflammation, this should not be done until it has subsided. Now one person may extend a finger, or even any other limb, provided it be as yet recent, by making extension with his right hand and counter-extension with his left. A more muscular limb will require two persons to make extension in opposite directions. When the tendons

nervi sunt, ut in viris robustis, maximeque eorum feminibus et cruribus evenit; habenis quoque, vel linteis fasciis utrimque capita articularum deliganda, et per plures in diversa ducenda sunt. Ubi paulo longius, quam naturaliter esse debet, membrum vis fecit; tum demum ossa manibus in suam sedem compellenda sunt: indiciumque ossis repositi est dolor sublatus, et membrum alteri æquatum.

Involvendum duplicibus triplicibusve pannis in vino et oleo tinctis; quos linteos esse, commodius est. Fere vero fasciis sex opus est. Prima brevissima adhibenda; quæ circa fracturam ter voluta sursum versum feratur, et quasi in cochleam serpat: satisque est, eam ter hoc quoque modo circuire. Altera dimidio longior: eaque, si qua parte os eminet, ab ea; si totum æquale est, undelibet super fracturam debet incipere, priori adversa, deorsumque tendere; atque iterum ad fracturam reversa, in superiore parte ultra priorem fasciam desinere. Super has injiciendum latiore linteo ceratum est, quod eas contineat.

## ORDO.

nervi sunt firmiores, ut evenit in robustis viris, que maxime feminibus et cruribus eorum; capita articularum utrimque sunt deliganda quoque habenis, vel linteis fasciis, et ducenda per plures in diversa. Ubi vis fecit membrum paulo longius quam debet esse naturaliter; tum, demum, ossa sunt compellenda manibus in suam sedem: que indicium ossis repositi est dolor sublatus, et membrum æquatum alteri.

Involvendum duplicibus vel triplicibus pannis tinctis in vino et oleo; quos esse linteos est commodius. Vero, fere, est opus sex fasciis. Prima adhibenda brevissima; quæ voluta ter circa fracturam, feratur versum sursum, et serpat quasi in cochleam: que est satis eam circuire ter hoc modo. Altera longior dimidio; que, si os eminet qua parte, ea ab ea; si totum est æquale, debet incipere undelibet super fracturam, adversa priori, que tendere deorsum; atque reversa iterum ad fracturam, desinere in superiore parte ultra priorem fasciam. Super has ceratum est injiciendum latiore linteo, quod contineat eas.

## TRANSLATION.

are very strong, as happens in robust men, and especially in their thighs and legs, the extremities of the joints must be tied with straps or linen bandages, and extended by several persons in opposite directions. When the force has elongated the limb a little more than it ought to be naturally, then, the fractured bones are to be pressed into their proper places; and the indication of the bone being replaced, is by the pain being removed, and the limb being made equal to the other.

The limb is then to be bandaged with cloths two or three times folded, dipped in wine and oil, if made of linen, the more preferable. Now six bandages are generally required. The first to be applied is very short; which being rolled thrice around the fracture, and carried upwards in a creeping spiral form: and it will be sufficient for it to go round thrice in this manner. The next should be longer by half; which should commence from any prominent part of the bone: if the whole length of the bone be free from inequalities, it may begin any where upon the fracture, and roll downwards in an opposite direction to the former, and having returned again to the fracture, it should terminate superiorly beyond the former bandage. Over these cerate should be applied upon a broad piece of linen, in order to hold them together.



Ac, si qua parte os eminet, triplex ea pannus objiciendus, eodem vino et oleo madens. Hæc tertia fascia comprehendenda sunt, quartaque, sic, ut semper insequens priori adversa sit, et tertia tantum in inferiore parte, tres in superiore finiant: quia satius est sæpius circuire, quam adstringi: siquidem id, quod adstrictum est, alienatur, et cancro opportunum est.

Articulum autem quam minime vincire opus est: sed, si juxta hunc os fractum est, necesse est. Deligatum vero membrum in diem tertium continendum est: eaque vinctura talis esse debet, ut primo die nihil offenderit, non tamen laxa visa sit; secundo laxior; tertio jam pene resoluta. Ergo tum rursum id membrum deligandum, adjiciendaque prioribus quinta fascia est: iterumque quinto die resolvendum est, et sex fasciis involvendum, sic, ut tertia et quinta infra, ceteræ supra finiantur.

Quotiescumque autem solvitur membrum, calida aqua fovendum est. Sed, si juxta articulum fractura est, diu instillandum vinum est, exigua parte

## ORDO.

Ac si os eminet qua parte, triplex pannus objiciendus ea madens eodem vino et oleo. Hæc sunt comprehendenda tertia fascia, que quarta, sic ut semper insequens sit adversa priori, et tertia tantum in inferiore parte, tres finiant in superiore: quia est satius circuire sæpius quam adstringi: siquidem id quod est adstrictum alienatur, et est opportunum cancro.

Autem est opus vincire articulum quam minime: sed si os est fractum juxta hunc, est necesse. Vero membrum est continendum deligatum in tertium diem: que vinctura debet esse talis ut primo die offenderit nihil, tamen visa sit non laxa; secundo laxior; tertio jam pene resoluta. Ergo, tum, id membrum est deligandum rursus, que quinta fascia adjicienda prioribus: que est resolvendum iterum quinto die, et involvendum sex fasciis, sic ut tertia et quinta finiantur infra, ceteræ supra.

Autem quotiescumque membrum solvitur, est fovendum calida aqua. Sed si fractura est juxta articulum, vinum est instil-

## TRANSLATION.

If the bone protrude in any part, a triple fold of cloth moistened in wine and oil is to be laid on. These are to be secured by a third and a fourth bandage, in such a manner, that the following one *be passed* in an opposite direction to the one preceding it, and the third only to terminate in the inferior part; the other three in the superior: because it is better to make several convolutions, than to apply them too tight; indeed an *over* tight bandage vitiates the part, *by obstructing the circulation*, and renders it liable to gangrene.

It will be necessary to bind rather lightly over an articulation; but if the fracture of the bone be near the joint, it will be requisite to employ a bandage. Now the limb must remain bound until the third day: and the bandage ought to be so applied, that it may not be painful, nor yet appear loose; on the second easier still; and on the third almost loose. Therefore the limb must be bound up again, and a fifth bandage added to the former: and it is to be loosened again on the fifth day, and again rolled up with six bandages, making the third and fifth to terminate inferiorly, the rest above.

Now every time the bandages are removed, the limb must be fomented with warm water. But if the fracture be near a joint, wine should be dropped on it

olei adjecta; eademque omnia facienda, donec adeo inflammatio solvatur, vel tenuius quoque, quam ex consuetudine, id membrum fiat: quod si septimus dies non dedit, certe nonus exhibet: tum facillime ossa tractantur. Rursus ergo, si parum commissa sunt, committi debent: si qua fragmenta eminent, in suas sedes reponenda sunt: deinde eodem modo membrum deligandum, ferulæque super accommodandæ sunt, quæ fissæ circumpositæque ossa in sua sede contineant: et in quam partem fractura inclinât, ab ea latior valentiorque ferula imponenda est.

Easque omnes circa articulum esse oportet resimas, ne hunc lædant; nec ultra adstringi, quam ut ossa contineant: et cum spatio laxentur, tertio quoque die paulum habenis suis coarctari: ac, si nulla prurigo, nullus dolor est, sic manere, donec duæ partes ejus temporis, quo quodque os conferret, compleantur: postea levius aqua calida fovere, quia primo digeri materiam opus est, tum evocari. Ergo cerato quoque liquido id leniter est

## ORDO.

landum diu, exigua parte olei adjecta; que omnia eadem facienda, donec inflammatio solvatur adeo, ut id membrum fiat quoque tenuius quam ex consuetudine: quod si septimus dies dedit non, certe nonus exhibet: tum ossa tractantur facillime. Ergo, si commissa sunt parum, debent committi rursus: si qua fragmenta eminent, sunt reponenda in suas sedes: deinde, membrum deligandum eodem modo; que ferulæ sunt accommodandæ super, quæ fissæ que circumpositæ, contineant ossa in sua sede: et in quam partem fractura inclinât, ab ea latior que valentior ferula est imponenda.

Que oportet omnes eas esse resimas circa articulum, ne lædant hunc; nec adstringi ultra quam ut contineant ossa: et cum laxentur spatio coarctari suis habenis paulum quoque tertio die; ac si est nulla prurigo, nullus dolor, manere sic, donec duæ partes ejus temporis, quo quodque os conferret, compleantur; postea, fovere levius calida aqua, quia est opus materiam digeri primo, tum evocari. Ergo, id est ungendum quoque leniter liquido cerato, que

## TRANSLATION.

for a considerable time, to which a small portion of oil may be added, and all the other requisites observed until the inflammation be removed, or the limb becomes smaller than usual: and if this be not obtained on the seventh day, it will certainly be effected on the ninth: then the bones may be felt very easily. Therefore if the bones be not yet properly adjusted, they must be united again: if any fragments protrude they must be replaced in their natural situations: afterwards the limb is to be bound in the same manner: and the ferula splints are to be applied to keep the bones in their proper places, and on that part to which the fracture inclines, a broader and stronger ferula splint is to be applied.

These splints should all incline outwards near the joint, lest they may injure it; neither should they be tightened beyond that which is sufficient to hold the bones together: and as they become relaxed in a short time, they ought to be tightened by their straps every third day: and if there be no itching, or no pain, to remain so, till two thirds of the time be completed, in which each of these bones unite, then to foment it gently with warm water, because it is necessary for the matter to be dispersed at first, and afterwards to bring it forwards. Therefore it must also be anointed gently with liquid cerate, and the surface of the skin to be

ungendum, perfricandaque summa cutis est; laxiusque id deligandum est: tertio quoque die solvendum, sic, ut remota calida aqua, cetera eadem fiant: tantummodo singulæ fasciæ, quoties resolutæ fuerint, subtrahantur.

2. Hæc communia sunt: illa propria. Siquidem humerus fractus, non sic, ut membrum aliud, intenditur: sed homo collocatur alto sedili, medicus autem humiliore adversus. Una fascia, brachium amplexa, ex cervice ipsius, qui læsus est, id sustinet: altera, ab altera parte super caput data, ibi accipit nodum: tertia, vincto imo humero deorsum demittitur, ibi quoque capitibus ejus vinctis inter se. Deinde minister ab occipitio ipsius, minister sub ea fascia, quam secundo loco posui, porrecto, si dexter humerus ducendus est, dextro, si sinister, sinistro brachio, demissum inter femina ejus, qui curatur, baculum tenet: medicus super eam fasciam, de qua tertio loco dixi, plantam injicit dextram, si sinister, sinistram, si dexter humerus curatur; simulque alteram fasciam minister attollit, alteram premit medicus: quo

## ORDO.

summa cutis est perfricanda; que id est deligandum laxius: solvendum quoque tertio die, sic ut calida aqua remota, cetera eadem fiant; tantummodo fasciæ singulæ subtrahantur quoties resolutæ fuerint.

2. Hæc sunt communia; illa propria. Siquidem humerus fractus intenditur non sic ut aliud membrum: sed homo collocatur alto sedili, autem medicus adversus humiliore. Una fascia, amplexa brachium, sustinet id ex cervice ipsius qui læsus est; altera data super caput ab altera parte, ibi accipit nodum; tertia, imo humero vincto demittitur deorsum, ibi quoque capitibus ejus vinctis inter se. Deinde minister ab occipitio ipsius, dextro brachio porrecto sub ea fascia quam posui secundo loco, si dexter humerus est ducendus, sinistro brachio, si sinister, tenet baculum demissum inter femina ejus qui curatur: medicus injicit dextram plantam super eam fasciam, de qua dixi tertio loco, si sinister humerus curatur; sinistram si dexter: que simul minister attollit alteram fasciam, medicus premit alteram; quo fit ut hume-

## TRANSLATION.

rubbed; and the fracture bound up more loosely: it must be opened every third day, and with the exception of the warm water all the other applications are to be repeated: only the bandages are to be withdrawn one each time, at every dressing.

2. Those directions above-mentioned are common to fractures in general: but those of which we are about to speak are peculiar to each bone. If the humerus be fractured, the extension must not be made as in any other limb: the patient must be placed in a high seat, and the physician in a lower one opposite to him. Then the patient's fore-arm is to be supported by a bandage passed round it and suspended from the neck. A second bandage is to be rolled round one end of the bone and fastened by a knot above its head: a third is to be fastened to the lower head of the humerus, and carried downwards, its two ends also being fastened in a knot. Then an assistant placed behind the patient, passes his arm through the loop of the second bandage, that is, his right arm, if the right humerus is to be extended, and his left, if the left humerus: this assistant holds a staff between the patient's thighs; the physician also sets the sole of his right foot, if he be to operate on the left humerus, on the third bandage which I have mentioned, and the sole of the left foot, if the right: at the same time the assistant raises one bandage, and the



fit, ut leniter humerus extendatur. Fasciis vero, si medium aut imum os fractum est, brevioribus opus est; si summum, longioribus: ut ab eo sub altera quoque ala per pectus et scapulas porrigantur.

## ORDO.

rus extendatur leniter. Vero est opus brevioribus fasciis, si medium aut imum os est fractum; si summum longioribus: ut porrigantur ab eo quoque sub altera ala per pectus et scapulas.

Protinus vero brachium, cum deligatur, sic inclinandum est: idque efficit, ut ante fascias quoque sic figurandum sit; ne postea suspensum aliter, atque cum deligabatur, humerum inclinet. Brachioque suspenso, ipse quoque humerus ad latus leniter deligandus est: per quæ fit, ut minime moveatur: ideoque ossa sic se habent, ut aliquis composuit. Cum ad ferulas ventum est, extrinsecus esse earum longissimæ debent; a lacerto breviores; sed sub ala brevissimæ: sæpiusque eæ resolvendæ sunt, ubi in vicinia cubiti humerus fractus est; ne ibi nervi rigescant, et inutile brachium efficiant. Quoties solutæ sunt, fractura manu continenda; cubitus aqua calida fovendus, et molli cerato perfricandus; ferulæque vel omnino non imponendæ contra eminentia cubiti, vel aliquanto breviores, sunt.

Vero brachium protinus cum deligatur, est inclinandum sic; quæ id efficit ut quoque ante fascias sit figurandum sic; ne postea suspensum inclinet humerum aliter atque cum deligabatur. Que brachio suspenso, quoque humerus ipse est deligandus leniter ad latus; per quæ fit ut moveatur minime: quæ ideo ossa habent se sic ut aliquis composuit. Cum ventum est ad ferulas, longissimæ earum debent esse extrinsecus; breviores a lacerto; sed brevissimæ sub ala: quæ eæ sunt resolvendæ sæpius, ubi humerus fractus est in vicinia cubiti; ne nervi ibi rigescant, et efficiant brachium inutile. Quoties solutæ sunt, fractura continenda manu; cubitus fovendus calida aqua, et perfricandus molli cerato; quæ ferulæ sunt vel non imponendæ omnino contra eminentia cubiti, vel aliquanto breviores.

## TRANSLATION.

physician depresses the other; by these means the humerus is gently extended. But if the fracture be in the middle or inferior part of the bone, the bandages are required to be shorter: if in the superior part, longer bandages *will be necessary*; that they may extend from thence over the breast under the axilla and shoulder.

Now as soon as the arm is bound up it must be inclined thus: that the suspended position of the fore-arm afterwards do not evert the humerus any other way, different from that in which it was bound up. The fore-arm being suspended, the humerus also must be secured gently to the side: by which means it will be prevented from moving very effectively: and therefore the bones remain as they were placed. When we come to apply the splints, the longest of these ought to be placed externally, shorter anteriorly, but the shortest of all under the arm pit: and these are to be loosened very often when the humerus has been broken near the elbow; lest the tendons there become rigid, and render the fore-arm useless. Whenever they are removed the fractured part must be supported by the hand: the cubitus to be fomented with warm water; and rubbed with soft cerate: and the splints are either not to be applied at all on the condyles of the cubitus, or at least a little shorter.

3. At si brachium fractum est, in primis considerandum est, alterum os, an utrumque comminutum sit: non quo alia in ejusmodi casu curatio sit admovenda; sed primum, ut valentius extendatur, si utrumque os fractum est; quia necesse est minus nervos contrahi altero osse integro, eosque intendente: deinde, ut curiosius omnia in continendis ossibus fiant, si neutrum alteri auxilio est.

Nam, ubi alterum integrum est, plus opis in eo, quam in fasciis ferulisque est. Deligari autem brachium debet, paulum pollice ad pectus inclinato; siquidem is maxime brachii naturalis habitus sit: idque involutum mitella commodissime excipitur; quæ latitudine ipsi brachio, perangustis capitibus collo injicitur: atque ita commode brachium ex cervice suspensum est. Idque paulum supra cubiti alterius regionem pendere oportet.

4. Quod si ex summo cubito fractum sit, glutinare id vinciendo alienum est: fit enim brachium immobile. At si nihil aliud quam dolori occursum est, idem, qui fuit, ejus usus est.

## ORDO.

3. At si brachium fractum est, in primis est considerandum, alterum os, an utrumque comminutum sit: non quo alia curatio sit admovenda in casu ejusmodi; sed primum, ut extendatur valentius, si utrumque os fractum est; quia est necesse nervos contrahi minus altero osse integro, que intendente eos; deinde, ut omnia fiant curiosius in ossibus continendis, si neutrum est auxilio alteri.

Nam, ubi alterum est integrum, est plus opis in eo, quam in fasciis que ferulis. Autem brachium debet deligari, pollice inclinato paulum ad pectus; siquidem is sit maxime naturalis habitus brachii: que id involutum, excipitur commodissime mitella, quæ injicitur brachio ipsi latitudine, perangustis capitibus collo: atque ita brachium est suspensum commode ex cervice. Que oportet id pendere paulum supra regionem alterius cubiti.

4. Quod si quid ex summo cubito fractum sit, est alienum glutinare id vinciendo; enim brachium fit immobile. At si nihil aliud quam occursum est dolori, usus ejus est idem qui fuit.

## TRANSLATION.

3. But if the fore-arm has been fractured, it should be considered first of all, whether the other bone be broken: not that there would be a different treatment required: but that the extension may be more forcible, if both bones be broken: and for this reason the tendons are necessarily less contracted, when one bone remains entire, and maintains the tension of them; afterwards every thing must be done the more carefully to maintain the bones in situ, if the one does not assist the other.

For when the one is entire, there is more assistance in it, than in the ferula splints, and bandages. Now the arm ought to be bound up, the thumb being inclined a little towards the chest; since that is the most natural position of the arm, which being bound up, is supported best by a scarf, the full breadth of which is placed under the fore-arm, with its ends, which are very narrow, placed behind the neck; and in this manner, the arm is very comfortably supported from the neck. It is necessary for it to be suspended a little above the region of the other elbow.

4. But if any part at the top of the cubitus be fractured, it is improper to secure it by bandages: for the fore-arm becomes immovable. And if nothing else has been done than to relieve the pain, it remains as useful as before.

5. In crure æque ad rem pertinet, alterum saltem os integrum manere. Commune vero ei femorique est, quod, ubi deligatum est, in canalem congiendum est. Is canalis et inferiore parte foramina habere debet, per quæ, si quis humor excesserit, descendat: et a planta moram, quæ simul et sustineat eam, et delabi non patiatur: et a lateribus cava, per quæ loris datis, moræ quædam crus femurque, ut collocatum est, detineant.

Esse etiam is debet, a planta, si crus fractum est, circa poplitem; si femur, usque ad coxam; si juxta superius caput femoris, sic, ut ipsa quoque ei coxa insit. Neque tamen ignorari oportet, si femur fractum est, fieri brevius; quia numquam in antiquum statum revertitur; summisque digitis postea cruris ejus insisti; sed multo tamen foedior debilitas est, ubi fortunæ negligentia quoque accessit.

6. Digitum satis est ad unum surculum post inflammationem deligari.

7. His proprie ad singula membra pertinentibus, rursus illa communia sunt: primis diebus fames: deinde

## ORDO.

5. In crure pertinet æque ad rem, alterum os saltem manere integrum. Vero est commune ei quæ femori, quod, ubi deligatum est, est congiendum in canalem. Is canalis debet habere et foramina inferiore parte, per quæ si quis humor excesserit, descendat; et a planta moram, quæ simul et sustineat eam, et patiatur non delabi; et a lateribus cava, per quæ loris datis, quædam moræ detineant crus quæ femur, ut est collocatum.

Etiam is debet esse a planta circa poplitem, si crus fractum est; si femur, usque ad coxam; si juxta superius caput femoris, sic ut coxa ipsa quoque insit ei. Neque tamen debet ignorari, si femur fractum est, fieri brevius, quia revertitur nunquam in antiquum statum, quæ insisti postea summis digitis ejus cruris: sed tamen debilitas est multo foedior ubi negligentia quoque accessit fortunæ.

6. Est satis digitum deligari ad unum surculum post inflammationem.

7. His pertinentibus proprie ad singula membra, rursus illa sunt communia: fames primis diebus:

## TRANSLATION.

5. It is of equal importance in a fracture of the leg that one of the bones remains entire. But it is usual both for this and the thigh, after being bandaged, to place it in a frame resembling a spout. This frame ought to have openings at the lower extremity, through which any humour that is discharged may escape: and at the foot a prop, which at the same time may both sustain and prevent it from slipping; and also perforations at the sides, through which straps are to be passed, to maintain the leg and thigh in the same position in which they have been placed.

If it be a fracture of the leg, this frame ought to extend from the sole of the foot to the ham: if of the thigh, as far as the hip: if near the head of the thigh bone, it should include the hip. We ought not to be ignorant, however, that a fractured thigh is shortened, because it never entirely returns to its former state: and that the patient ever after supports himself on his toes on that foot, which occasions great weakness; but it is much worse when the misfortune has been caused by neglect.

6. It will be sufficient to bind a finger in one small splint, after the inflammation has subsided.

7. The preceding observations are applicable to particular limbs: the following are intended to be general: abstinence for the first few days: then a more plentiful



tum, cum jam increscere callum oportet, liberalius alimentum: longa a vino abstinencia: fomentum aquæ calidæ, dum inflammatio est, liberale; cum ea desiit, modicum: tum etiam longior ulterioribus, e liquido cerato, membris, et mollis tamen unctio. Nec protinus exercendum id membrum, sed paulatim ad antiquos usus reducendum est.

Gravius aliquanto est, cum ossis fracturæ carnis quoque vulnus accessit; maximeque, si id musculi femoris aut humeri senserint: nam et inflammationes multo graviore, et promptiores caneros habent. Ac femur quidem, si ossa inter se cesserunt, fere præcidi necesse est. Humerus vero quoque in periculum venit; sed facilius conservatur. Quibus periculis etiam magis id expositum, quod juxta ipsos articulos ictum est. Curiosius igitur agendum est; et musculus quidem per mediam plagam transversus præcidendus: sanguis vero, si parum fluxit, mittendus: corpus inedia extenuandum.

Ac reliqua quidem membra lentius

#### ORDO.

tum deinde cum oportet callum jam increscere, liberalius alimentum; longa abstinencia a vino: liberale fomentum calidæ aquæ dum est inflammatio; modicum cum ea desiit: tum etiam longior et tamen mollis unctio e liquido cerato ulterioribus membris. Nec est id membrum exercendum protinus, sed paulatim reducendum ad antiquos usus.

Est aliquanto gravius, cum vulnus carnis quoque accessit fracturæ ossis: que maxime si musculi femoris aut humeri senserint id: nam habent et multo graviore inflammationes et caneros promptiores. Ac quidem est fere necesse femur præcidi, si ossa cesserunt inter se. Vero humerus quoque venit in periculum; sed conservatur facilius. Quibus periculis id expositum (est) etiam magis; quod ictum est juxta articulos ipsos. Igitur est agendum curiosius; et musculus quidem præcidendus transversus per mediam plagam: vero sanguis mittendus (est) si fluxit parum: corpus extenuandum inedia.

Ac reliqua membra quidem

#### TRANSLATION.

diet will be necessary when the callus is forming: long abstinence from wine: abundant fomentations of warm water while the inflammation continues: when this has ceased, they should be used more sparingly; lastly, a long but gentle application of liquid cerate to the parts beyond the fracture. Nor is that limb to be exercised immediately, but by degrees brought to its accustomed movements.

The case is somewhat more serious when the fracture is accompanied with a wound of the flesh; and particularly if that happen in the muscles of the thigh or humerus: for they are more liable, both to severe inflammation and gangrene. And indeed it is generally found necessary to amputate the thigh when the bones have slipped past each other. The arm also is liable to some danger; but it is preserved more easily. These dangers are still more to be apprehended, if the fracture take place near the joints. Therefore it should be managed the more carefully: and the muscle must be cut transversely over the middle of the wound; and if the hæmorrhage has been but small, the patient should lose blood, and the habit be reduced by abstinence.

Although the other limbs may be extended more slowly, and the bones reduced

intendenda, et lenius in iis ossa in suam sedem reponenda sunt: his vero neque intendi nervos, neque ossa tractari, satis expedit: ipsique homini permittendum est, ut sic ea collocata habeat, quemadmodum minime lædunt. Omnibus autem his vulneribus imponendum primo linamentum est, vino madens, cui rosæ paulum admodum adjectum sit: cetera eadem. Deligandaque fasciis sunt, aliquanto, quam vulnus, latioribus; laxius scilicet, quam si ea plaga non esset; quanto facilius et alienari et occupari cancro vulnus potest: numero potius fasciarum id agendum est, ut laxæ quoque æque contineant.

Quod in femore humeroque sic fiet, si ossa forte recte concurrerint: sin aliter se habebunt, eatenus circumdari fascia debebit, ut impositum medicamentum contineat. Cetera eadem, quæ supra scripsi, facienda sunt: præterquam quod neque ferulis, neque canalibus, inter quæ vulnus sanescere non potest; sed pluribus tantummodo et latioribus fasciis opus est: ingeren-

## ORDO.

sunt intendenda lentius, et ossa in iis reponenda lenius in suam sedem: vero his expedit satis neque nervos intendi, neque ossa tractari: que est permittendum homini ipsi, ut habeat ea sic collocata quemadmodum lædunt minime. Autem linamentum est imponendum primo omnibus his vulneribus, madens vino, cui admodum paulum rosæ adjectum sit: cetera eadem. Que sunt deliganda fasciis aliquanto latioribus quam vulnus: scilicet laxius quam si ea plaga esset non: quanto facilius vulnus potest et alienari et occupari cancro: id est agendum potius numero fasciarum, ut laxæ contineant quoque æque.

Quod fiet sic in femore, que humero, si forte ossa concurrerint recte: sin habebunt se aliter, fascia debebit circumdari eatenus, ut contineat medicamentum impositum. Eadem cetera sunt faciendum, quæ scripsi supra; præterquam quod est opus neque ferulis neque canalibus inter quæ vulnus potest non sanescere, sed (est) tantummodo (opus) pluribus et latioribus fasciis: que calidum oleum et

## TRANSLATION.

gently to their places; yet in these it is scarcely necessary either to extend the tendons or manipulate the bones. The patient must be allowed to keep them in that position which affords him most relief. Now the first application to all such wounds is lint moistened with wine to which a little rose-oil has been added: all the other dressings are to be the same as *I have already described*. They are to be bound up with rollers considerably broader than the wound itself: that is to say, a little looser than if there were no wound there: and in proportion as a wound may be more liable to become depraved and gangrenous, *the greater care will be required* to effect that by a number of rollers applied loosely, so as to afford as much support as one that is tight.

This plan may be employed in the thigh and humerus, provided the bones have been properly adjusted: but if they should be placed otherwise, they must only have such a bandage, as will retain the medicated dressings. The same directions which I have already laid down must be followed in the subsequent dressings: except that there will be no necessity for splints or frames, with which the wound cannot heal: but only more and broader bandages will be required; and both hot

dumque subinde in eas est calidum oleum, et vinum; magisque in primo fame utendum; vulnus calida aqua fovendum; frigusque omni ratione vitandum, et transeundum ad medicamenta, quæ puri movendo sunt: majorque vulneri, quam ossi cura adhibenda. Ergo quotidie solvendum nutriendumque est.

Inter quæ si quod parvulum fragmentum ossis eminet, id, si retusum est, in suam sedem dandum: si acutum, ante acumen ejus, si longius est, præcidendum; si brevius, limandum, et utrumque scalpro lævandum: tum ipsum recondendum est: ac, si id manus facere non potest, vulsella, quali fabri utuntur, injicienda est recte se habenti capiti, ab ea parte, qua sima est; ut ea parte, qua gibba est, eminens os in suam sedem compellat. Si id majus est, membranulisque cingitur, sinere oportet eas sub medicamentis resolvi, idque os, ubi jam nudatum est, abscindere; quod maturius scilicet faciendum est: potestque ea ratione et os coire, et vulnus sanescere: illud suo tempore; hoc, prout se habet.

#### ORDO.

vinum est subinde ingerendum in eas; que utendum magis fame in primo, vulnus (est) fovendum calida aqua; que frigus vitandum omni ratione, et transeundum ad medicamenta, quæ sunt puri movendo: que major cura adhibenda (est) vulneri, quam ossi. Ergo est solvendum que nutriendum quotidie.

Inter quæ si quod parvulum fragmentum ossis eminet, id (est) dandum in suam sedem si est retusum: si (est) acutum, acumen ejus præcidendum ante, si est longius; si brevius, limandum, et utrumque lævandum scalpro: tum ipsum est recondendum: ac si manus potest non facere id, vulsella, quali fabri utuntur, est injicienda capiti, habenti se recte ab ea parte qua est sima; ut ea parte qua est gibba, compellat eminens os in suam sedem. Si id est majus, que cingitur membranulis, oportet sinere eas resolvi sub medicamentis, que abscindere id os, ubi jam nudatum est; scilicet, quod est faciendum maturius: que ea ratione et os potest coire, et vulnus sanescere; illud suo tempore; hoc, prout habet se.

#### TRANSLATION.

oil and wine must be poured upon them occasionally; and strict abstinence enjoined at first: the wound is to be fomented with hot water, the cold must be avoided by every possible means, and such medicines employed as will promote pus, more care being taken of the wound than of the bone. Therefore it must be opened and dressed daily.

During this time, should any very small fragment of bone project, if obtuse, it must be reduced to its place: if long and pointed, this must first be cut off: when short, filed; and in either case, smoothed with a chisel: then replaced: if this cannot be done with the hand, a pincers, such as smiths use, must be applied to the fractured end of the bone now in a proper position for being replaced. If it be very large and covered by small membranes—*periosteum*—we should leave them to be dissolved by medicated dressings, and when the bone is denuded, cut it off: which is to be done very early: afterwards the bone may be allowed to unite, and the wound to heal: the former in its own time, and the latter according as the case may admit.



Nonnunquam etiam in magno vulnere evenit, ut fragmenta quædam velut emoriantur, neque cum ceteris coeant: quod hic quoque ex modo fluentis humoris colligitur. Quo magis necessarium est, sæpius ulcus resolvere, atque nutrire. Sequitur vero, ut id os per se post aliquot dies excidat. Cum tam misera antea conditio vulneris sit, tamen id interdum majus diutiusque facies. Sæpe enim integra cutis osse abrumpitur, protinusque prurigo et dolor oritur. Quæ solvere, si accidit, maturius oportet, et fovere aqua, per æstatem, frigida; per hiemem, egelida: deinde ceratum myrteum imponere.

Interdum fractura quibusdam velut aculeis carnem vexat. Quo a prurigine et punctionibus cognito, aperire id medicus, eosque aculeos præcidere necesse habet. Reliqua vero curatio in utroque hoc casu eadem est, quæ, ubi plagam ictus protinus intulit. Puro jam ulcere, cibus hic quoque utendum est carnem producentibus.

Si brevius adhuc membrum est, et ossa loco suo non sunt, paxillus tenuis

## ORDO.

Etiam evenit nonnunquam in magno vulnere, ut quædam fragmenta velut emoriantur, neque coeant cum ceteris: quod hic quoque colligitur ex modo fluentis humoris. Quo est magis necessarium resolvere ulcus sæpius, atque nutrire. Vero sequitur ut id os excidat per se post aliquot dies. Cum conditio vulneris sit tam misera antea, tamen interdum facies id majus, que diutius. Enim integra cutis abrumpitur sæpe osse, que protinus prurigo et dolor oritur. Quæ oportet solvere maturius, si accidit, et fovere frigida aqua per æstatem; egelida aqua per hiemem: deinde imponere myrteum ceratum.

Interdum fractura vexat carnem quibusdam velut aculeis. Quo cognito a prurigine et punctionibus, medicus habet necesse aperire id, que præcidere eos aculeos. Vero reliqua curatio in utroque hoc casu est eadem, quæ, ubi ictus protinus intulit plagam. Ulcere jam puro, hic quoque est utendum cibus producentibus carnem.

Si membrum est adhuc brevius, et ossa sunt non suo loco, tenuis

## TRANSLATION.

Sometimes it happens, even in large wounds, that some fragments appear to mortify as it were, and do not unite with the others: which may be ascertained in this case by the quantity of humour discharged. Hence it is the more necessary to unbind the ulcer very often, and to dress it. The result is, that generally the bone is thrown off spontaneously after some days. For although the wound may be in an untoward condition previously, yet that often enlarges it, and renders the cure more tedious. Indeed sound skin is more frequently lacerated by the end of the bone: then itching and pain are the immediate consequences. If this should happen, it behoves us to remove it very soon, and to bathe it with cold water during summer, and with tepid in winter: afterward to apply myrtle cerate.

Sometimes a fracture irritates the flesh as it were with prickles. Which may be discovered by the itching, and lancinating pains, and then the physician judges it necessary to open it, and remove those spiculæ. The remainder of the treatment is the same in both cases, as is necessary when a blow is given. When the ulcer is clean, here also nourishing food must be taken to promote the granulations.

If the limb be still too short, and the bones not in their proper places, a kind of

quam lævissimi generis inter ea demitti debet, sic, ut capite paulum supra ulcus emineat; isque quotidie plenior adigendus est, donec par id membrum alteri fiat. Tum paxillus removendus; vulnus sanandum est; cicatrix inducta fovenda frigida aqua est, in qua myrtus, hederæ, aliæve similes verbenæ decoctæ sint, illinendumque medicamentum est, quod siccet: et magis etiam hic quiescendum, donec id membrum confirmetur.

Si quando vero ossa non conferbuerunt, quæ sæpe soluta, sæpe mota sunt, in aperto deinde curatio est: possunt enim coire. Si vetustas occupavit, membrum extendendum est, ut aliquid lædatur: ossa inter se manu dividenda, ut concurrente exasperentur, et, si quid pingue est, eradatur, totumque id quasi recens fiat: magna tamen cura habita, ne nervi musculi lædantur.

Tum vino fovendum est, in quo malicorium decoctum sit; imponendumque id ipsum ovi albo mistum: tertio die resolvendum, fovendumque

## ORDO.

paxillus generis quam lævissimi debet demitti inter ea, sic ut emineat capite paulum supra ulcus; que is est adigendus plenior quotidie, donec id membrum fiat par alteri. Tum paxillus removendus; vulnus est sanandum; cicatrix inducta est fovenda frigida aqua in qua myrtus, hederæ, vel aliæsimiles verbenæ decoctæ sint, que medicamentum quod siccet est illinendum; et hic est quiescendum etiam magis, donec id membrum confirmetur.

Vero si quando ossa non conferbuerunt, quæ sæpe soluta sunt, sæpe mota, deinde curatio est in aperto; enim possunt coire. Si vetustas occupavit, membrum est extendendum, ut aliquid lædatur: ossa dividenda inter se manu, ut concurrente exasperentur, et si est quid pingue, eradatur; que totum id fiat quasi recens: tamen magna cura habita, ne nervi vel musculi lædantur.

Tum est fovendum vino in quo malicorium decoctum sit; que id ipsum mixtum albo ovi imponendum: tertio die resolvendum, que

## TRANSLATION.

thin wedge as smooth as possible must be introduced between them, with its head standing out a little, and this wedge is to be driven in further every day, until that limb be equal to the other: then the wedge is to be removed: the wound is to be healed: the cicatrix being formed, it must be bathed with a decoction of myrtle, ivy, or other herbs similar to vervains, and a desiccative application laid over it: and in this case there is a greater necessity for rest, until the limb be strengthened.

But if at any time the bones have not united, in consequence of the dressings being frequently removed, and the parts disturbed, the treatment to be adopted is obvious; for union may yet take place. If the fracture be of long standing, the limb is to be extended, in order to produce a fresh injury: the bones must be separated from each other by the hand, that their *broken* surfaces may be rendered uneven by the grating *against each other*; and if there be any fat substance, it may be abraded, and the whole reduced to a recent accident: yet great care must be employed, lest the ligaments or muscles be injured.

Then it must be fomented with a decoction of pomegranate rind in wine; and the same decoction mixed with the white of eggs must be applied over it: on the third day the dressings are to be removed, and fomented with a watery de-

aqua, in qua verbenæ, de quibus supra dixi, decoctæ sint: quinto die idem faciendum, ferulæque circumdandæ: cetera, et ante, et post, eadem facienda, quæ supra scripsi. Solent tamen interdum transversa inter se ossa confervere: eoque et brevius membrum, et indecorum fit; et, si capita acutiora sunt, assiduæ punctiones sentiuntur. Ob quam causam frangi rursus ossa et dirigi debent. Id hoc modo fit.

Calida aqua multa membrum id fovetur, et ex cerato liquido perfricatur, intenditurque: inter hæc, medicus pertractans ossa, ut adhuc tenero callo, manibus ea diducit, compellitque id, quod eminet, in suam sedem: et, si parum valuit, ab ea parte, in quam os se inclinât, involutam lana regulam objicit; atque ita deligando, assuescere iterum vetustæ sedi cogit.

Nonnunquam autem recte quidem ossa conferbuerunt, superincrevit vero nimius callus; ideoque locus intumuit. Quod ubi incidit, diu leniterque id membrum perfricandum est ex oleo, et sale, et nitro; multumque

## ORDO.

fovendum aqua in qua verbenæ, de quibus dixi supra, decocta sint: quinto die idem faciendum, quæ ferulæ circumdandæ: eadem cetera facienda et ante et post, quæ scripsi supra. Tamen interdum ossa solent confervere inter se transversa; quæ eo membrum fit et brevius et indecorum, et si capita sunt acutiora assiduæ punctiones sentiuntur. Ob quam causam ossa debent frangi rursus, et dirigi. Id fit hoc modo.

Id membrum fovetur multa calida aqua, et perfricatur ex liquido cerato, quæ intenditur; inter hæc medicus pertractans ossa, ut callo adhuc tenero, diducit ea manibus, quæ compellit id quod eminet in suam sedem: et si valuit parum, objicit regulam involutam lana ab ea parte in quam os inclinât se; atque ita deligando cogit assuescere iterum vetustæ sedi.

Autem nonnunquam ossa quidem conferbuerunt recte, vero nimius callus superincrevit; quæ ideo locus intumuit. Ubi quod incidit, id membrum est perfricandum diu quæ leniter ex oleo, et sale, et nitro, quæ fovendum

## TRANSLATION.

coction of vervains, of which I have made mention a little before: on the fifth day this must be repeated, and the splints applied on it: the subsequent treatment, both before and after, must be the same as I have already described. Sometimes, however, the bones are accustomed to unite in an oblique direction; and by this the limb becomes both shorter and deformed, and if the ends be very much pointed, continual prickings will be felt. For this reason, the bones ought to be fractured again, and again set. It is to be effected in this manner.

Let the limb be fomented with plenty of hot water, rubbed over with liquid cerate, and extended: during this time, the physician is directing the process with his hand, and the callus being as yet tender, the parts are separated, and that which protrudes is forced into its proper situation: but if that avail little, he opposes a ruler wrapped in wool to that part to which the bone inclines; and binding it up in this way, he forces the bone to accustom itself to its former position.

Sometimes indeed, the bones have united as they ought, but too much callus has grown over it, and on that account, the part is become swollen. When this happens, the limb should be rubbed for a long time very gently with oil, salt, nitre,



aqua calida salsa fovendum; et imponendum malagma, quod digerat; adstrictiusque alligandum; oleribusque, et præterea vomitu utendum: per quæ cum carne callus quoque extenuatur. Confertque aliquid de sinapi cum ficu in alterum par membrum impositum, donec id paulum erodat, eoque evocet materiam. Ubi his tumor extenuatus est, rursus ad ordinem vitæ revertendum est.

## ORDO.

multum calida salsa aqua; et malagma imponendum, quod digerat, quæ alligandum adstrictius; quæ utendum oleribus et præterea vomitu: per quæ callus cum carne quoque extenuatur. Quæ aliquid de sinapi cum ficu impositum in alterum par membrum, donec erodat id paulum, quæ evocet materiam eo, confert. Ubi tumor extenuatus est his, est revertendum rursus ad ordinem vitæ.

## TRANSLATION.

and be fomented copiously with hot salt water, a digestive poultice applied, and a tight bandage put on: the patient should live on pot-herbs—*vegetable diet*—and take an emetic *now and then*; by which means, the callus is reduced together with the flesh. Some benefit may be derived by the application of mustard and a fig upon the opposite corresponding limb, until a slight counter-irritation be produced, and promote a discharge of matter from thence. When the tumour has been attenuated by these means, the patient may return to his ordinary course of life.

## CAP. XI.

## DE OSSIBUS LUXATIS.

Ac de fractis quidem ossibus hæcenus dictum est. Moventur autem ea sedibus suis duobus modis. Nam modo, quæ juncta sunt inter se, dehiscunt; ut cum latum scapularum os ab humero recedit; et in brachio,

## ORDO.

## CAP. XI.

## DE LUXATIS OSSIBUS.

Ac hæcenus quidem dictum est de fractis ossibus. Autem ea moventur suis sedibus duobus modis. Nam modo quæ sunt juncta inter se, dehiscunt: ut cum latum os scapularum recedit ab humero;

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XI.

## OF LUXATIONS.

Thus far then, we have treated of the fractures of bones. Now these are displaced in two ways; for sometimes those which are joined together, separate from each other, as when the broad bone of the scapulæ recedes from the humerus;

radius a cubito; et in crure, tibia a sura; interdum a saltu, calcis os a talo; quod raro tamen fit: modo articuli suis sedibus excidunt. Ante de prioribus dicam.

Quorum ubi aliquid incidit, protinus is locus cavus est, depressusque digitus sinum invenit: deinde gravis inflammatio oritur; atque in talis præcipue: siquidem febres quoque, et caneros, et nervorum vel distentiones, vel rigores, qui caput scapulis annectunt, movere consuevit. Quorum vitandorum causa, facienda eadem sunt, quæ in ossibus mobilibus læsis aliquid ubi incidit, protinus iis locis proposita sunt; ut dolor tumorque per ea tollantur. Nam diducta ossa numquam rursus inter se junguntur; et, ut aliquid decoris eo loco, sic nihil usus amittitur.

Maxilla vero et vertebræ, omnesque articuli, cum validis nervis comprehendantur, excidunt aut vi expulsi, aut aliquo casu nervis vel ruptis, vel infirmatis; faciliusque in pueris et in adolescentulis, quam in robustioribus. Hiæ elabuntur in priorem

## ORDO.

et in brachio, radius a cubito; et in crure, tibia a sura, interdum a saltu, os calcis a talo; quod tamen raro fit: modo articuli excidunt suis sedibus. Dicam ante de prioribus.

Ubi aliquid quorum incidit protinus is locus est cavus, que digitus depressus invenit sinum: deinde gravis inflammatio oritur; atque præcipue in talis: siquidem consuevit movere quoque febres et caneros, et vel distentiones nervorum, vel rigores qui annectunt caput scapulis. Causa quorum vitandorum, eadem sunt faciendæ quæ proposita sunt in iis locis ubi aliquid incidit, mobilibus ossibus læsis: ut dolor que tumor tollantur per ea. Nam diducta ossa nunquam junguntur rursus inter se; et ut aliquid decoris amittitur eo loco, sic nihil usus.

Vero maxilla et vertebræ, que omnes articuli, cum comprehendantur validis nervis, excidunt aut expulsi vi, aut nervis vel ruptis, vel infirmatis aliquo casu; que facilius in pueris et in adolescentulis quam in robustioribus. Que hi elabuntur in priorem par-

## TRANSLATION.

and in the fore-arm, the radius from the cubitus; and in the leg, the tibia from the fibula: sometimes, from a leap, the os calcis is separated from the ankle; which, however, seldom happens: sometimes the articulations are displaced. I shall first speak of the former.

When any of these accidents happen, the part immediately becomes hollow, and by pressing on it with the finger, a cavity is detected: then severe inflammations arise; and especially in the ankles: indeed it usually causes fevers, gangrenes also, and either convulsions, or tetanus—*episthotonos*—contractions which draw the head back upon the scapulæ. In order to avoid which, the same treatment must be adopted here as in injuries of the movable bones, for the purpose of removing the pain and swelling; for bones once separated in this way never unite again; and although it may detract a little from the comeliness of that part, yet nothing of its use is lost.

Now the lower maxillary and the vertebræ, and all the joints, although they be embraced by powerful ligaments, are luxated either by the force of a blow, or the ligaments being either ruptured, or weakened by some accident; and more easily in children and young persons than in the more robust. These luxations may take

et in posteriorem, in anteriorem et in exteriorem partem; quidam omnibus modis, quidam certis: suntque quædam communia omnium signa, quædam propria cujusque. Siquidem semper ea parte tumor est, in quam os prorumpit; ea sinus, a qua recessit. Et hæc quidem in omnibus deprehenduntur: alia vero in singulis; quæ, simul atque de quoque dicam, proponenda erunt.

Sed ut excidere omnes articuli possunt, sic non omnes reponuntur. Caput enim numquam compellitur, neque in spina vertebra, neque ea maxilla, quæ, utraque parte prolapsa, antequam reponeretur, inflammationem movit. Rursum, qui nervorum vitio prolapsi sunt, compulsi quoque in suas sedes iterum excidunt. Ac quibus in pueritia exciderunt, neque repositi sunt, minus quam ceteri crescunt. Omniumque, quæ loco suo non sunt, caro emacrescit, magisque in proximo membro, quam in ulteriore: ut puta, si humerus loco suo non est, major in eo ipso fit, quam in brachio; major in hoc, quam in manu, macies. Tum pro sedibus,

## ORDO.

tem, et in posteriorem, in anteriorem, et in exteriorem; quidam omnibus modis, quidam certis: que sunt quædam signa communia omnium, quædam propria cujusque. Siquidem est semper tumor ea parte, in quam os prorumpit; sinus ea a qua recessit. Et hæc, quidem, deprehenduntur in omnibus, vero alia in singulis; quæ erunt proponenda, simulatque dicam de quoque.

Sed ut omnes articuli possunt excidere, sic non omnes reponuntur. Enim caput nunquam compellitur, neque vertebra in spina, neque ea maxilla quæ, utraque parte prolapsa, movit inflammationem, antequam reponeretur. Rursum, qui prolapsi sunt vitio nervorum, quoque compulsi in suas sedes, excidunt iterum. Ac quibus exciderunt in pueritia, neque repositi sunt, crescunt minus quam ceteri. Que caro omnium quæ sunt non suo loco emacrescit, que magis in proximo membro quam in ulteriore; ut puta, si humerus est non suo loco, macies fit major in eo ipso quam in brachio, major in hoc quam in manu. Tum aut

## TRANSLATION.

place forwards, backwards, inwards, and outwards: some of them in all these ways, others in certain ways only; and there are some general signs common to them all, some proper to each. Now there is always a tumour in that part to which the bone has been propelled, and a cavity in that part from whence it has receded. These marks then may be discovered in them all, but others in particular cases; which will be propounded as soon as I come to speak of each individual case.

But although all the articulations may be dislocated, they cannot be all replaced; for the head is never reduced, nor a vertebra in the spine, nor that of the lower maxillary, when luxated on each side, because it excites *much* inflammation before it can be replaced. Again, dislocations arising from diseased ligaments, although they be forcibly located, fall out again; and all those members that have had unreduced dislocations from an early age are more stunted in their growth than the others: the flesh, too, round them, becomes emaciated, and more so in the member nearest to it than in one more distant: for instance, if the humerus be not in its place, the emaciation of the arm is greater than in the forearm; and greater in this than in the hand. Then there is either more or less use left in that limb,



et pro casibus, qui inciderunt, aut major aut minor usus ejus membri relinquitur: quoque in eo plus usus superest, eo minus id extenuatur.

Quidquid autem loco suo motum est, ante inflammationem reponendum est. Si illa occupavit, dum conquiescat, lacessendum non est: ubi finita est, tentandum est in iis membris, quæ id patiuntur. Multum autem eo confert et corporis et nervorum habitus. Nam, si corpus tenue, si humidum est, si nervi infirmi, expeditius os reponitur: sed et primo facilius excidit, et postea minus fideliter continetur. Quæ contraria his sunt, melius continent: sed id, quod expulsum est, difficulter admittunt.

Oportet autem ipsam inflammationem levare, super succida lana ex aceto imposita: a cibo, si valentioris articuli casus est, triduo; interdum etiam quinque diebus abstinere: bibere aquam calidam, dum sitim finiat: curiosiusque hæc facere, iis ossibus motis, quæ validis plenisque musculis continentur: si vero etiam febris ac-

## ORDO.

major aut minor usus ejus membri relinquitur pro sedibus, et pro casibus qui inciderunt; que quo plus usus superest in eo, eo minus id extenuatur.

Autem quidquid motum est suo loco, est reponendum ante inflammationem. Si illa occupavit, non est lacessendum, dum conquiescat: ubi finita est, est tentandum in iis membris quæ patiuntur id. Autem habitus et corporis et nervorum confert multum eo. Nam si corpus est tenue, si humidum, si nervi infirmi, os reponitur expeditius; sed et excidit primo facilius, et postea continetur minus fideliter. Quæ sunt contraria his continent melius; sed admittunt id quod expulsum est difficulter.

Autem oportet levare inflammationem ipsam, succida lana ex aceto imposita super: abstinere a cibo triduo, si est casus valentioris articuli; interdum etiam quinque diebus; bibere calidam aquam dum finiat sitim; que facere hæc curiosius, iis ossibus motis quæ continentur validis que plenique musculis: vero si febris etiam ac-

## TRANSLATION.

depending on the situation, and the nature of the accident; and in proportion to the ability of exercising its functions, the less it will waste.

Now, whatever joint be dislocated, it ought to be reduced before inflammation commences. If this have taken place, the limb must not be irritated until it subside: when it has ceased, reduction should be tried on those limbs only which admit of it. But the habit, both of the body and the state of the ligaments, contribute much to this effect. For if the body be slender, if humid, if the ligaments be weak, the bone may be more readily reduced: but it is more liable to dislocation, and is retained in its position with less certainty (8). Bodies possessing the opposite qualities to these, hold better together, but they admit of reduction less easily, when luxated.

It will be necessary to alleviate the inflammation by applying rancid wool moistened with vinegar; and if the accident be in one of the larger articulations, the patient must abstain from food for three days; sometimes even for five days; to drink warm water to allay thirst. These rules must be the more carefully observed in the dislocation of those bones which are held together by strong and powerful muscles; particularly if fever accede: after the fifth day he must foment with

cessit, multo magis: deinde ex die quinto fovere aqua calida; remotaque lana, ceratum imponere ex cyprino factum, nitro quoque adjecto, donec omnis inflammatio finiatur. Tunc infrictionem ei membro adhibere; cibis uti bonis; uti vino modice: jamque ad usus quoque suos id membrum promovere; quia motus, ut in dolore pestifer, sic alias saluberrimus corpori est. Hæc communia sunt: nunc de singulis dicam.

## ORDO.

cessit, multo magis: deinde ex quinto die, fovere calida aqua; que lana remota, imponere ceratum factum ex cyprino, nitro quoque adjecto, donec omnis inflammatio finiatur. Tunc adhibere infrictionem ei membro; uti bonis cibis; uti vino modice, que jam promovere id membrum quoque ad suos usus; quia, ut motus in dolore est pestifer, sic, alias, est saluberrimus corpori. Hæc sunt communia: nunc dicam de singulis.

## TRANSLATION.

warm water, and the wool being removed, apply a cerate made of cyprine oil, with the addition of nitre, till the inflammation be entirely removed. Then employ friction on the limb, a nutritive diet, wine in moderate portions; and move the limb gradually in its accustomed actions: for although motion be injurious whilst there is pain, yet at another time it is most salutary to the body. These observations are of general application: I shall now proceed with particular cases.

## CAP. XII.

## DE MAXILLA LUXATA.

MAXILLA in priorem partem propellitur; sed modo altera parte, modo utraque. Si altera, in contrariam partem ipsa mentumque inclinatur: dentes paribus non respondent; sed sub iis, qui secant, canini sunt. At

## ORDO.

## CAP. XII.

## DE LUXATA MAXILLA.

MAXILLA propellitur in priorem partem; sed modo altera parte, modo utraque. Si altera ipsa que mentum inclinatur in contrariam partem, dentes non respondent paribus, sed canini sunt sub iis

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XII.

## OF LUXATED MAXILLA.

THE inferior maxillary is dislocated forwards: sometimes on one side, sometimes on both. If on one side, it inclines itself and the chin to the opposite side, and the teeth of the *inferior* maxillary do not correspond with those of the superior, for the canini of the inferior are under the incisores of the

si utraque, totum mentum in exteriorem partem promovetur; inferioresque dentes longius, quam superiores excedunt; intentique super musculi apparent. Primo quoque tempore homo in sedili collocandus est, sic, ut minister a posteriore parte caput ejus contineat, vel sic, ut juxta parietem is sedeat, subjecto inter parietem et caput ejus scorteo pulvino duro; eoque caput per ministrum urgeatur, quo sit immobilius: tum medici digiti pollices, linteolis vel fasciis, ne dilabantur, involuti in os ejus conjiciendi, ceteri extrinsecus admovendi sunt. Ubi vehementer maxilla apprehensa est, si una parte procidit, concutiendum mentum, et ad guttur adducendum est: tum simul et caput apprehendendum, et, excitato mento, maxilla in suam sedem compellenda, et os ejus comprimendum est, sic, ut omnia pene uno momento fiant.

Sin utraque parte prolapsa est, eadem omnia facienda; sed æqualiter retro maxilla agenda est. Reposito osse, si cum dolore oculorum et cervicis iste casus incidit, ex brachio

## ORDO.

qui secant. At si utraque totum mentum promovetur in exteriorem partem; que inferiores dentes excedunt longius quam superiores; que musculi super apparent intenti. Quoque primo tempore homo est collocandus in sedili, sic ut minister a posteriore parte contineat caput ejus, vel sic ut is sedeat juxta parietem, duro scorteo pulvino subjecto inter parietem et caput ejus; que caput urgeatur eo per ministrum, quo sit immobilius: tum pollices digiti medici, involuti linteolis vel fasciis, ne dilabantur, sunt conjiciendi in os ejus, ceteri admovendi extrinsecus. Ubi maxilla apprehensa est vehementer, si procidit una parte, mentum est concutiendum et adducendum ad guttur: tum simul et caput est apprehendendum, et mento excitato, maxilla compellenda in suam sedem, et os ejus est comprimendum sic ut omnia fiant pene uno momento.

Sin prolapsa est utraque parte, omnia eadem facienda; sed maxilla est agenda æqualiter retro. Osse reposito, si iste casus incidit cum dolore oculorum et cervicis, sanguis est mittendus ex brachio.

## TRANSLATION.

superior. But if luxated on each side, the entire chin is thrust forward: and the lower teeth project further than the upper: and the muscles attached above appear tense. The person should be seated immediately, and an assistant placed behind him to secure his head: or he may be placed against a wall, with a hard leather cushion between that and his head; and the head may be pressed against it by the assistant, in order that it may be held more steady: then the thumbs of the physician being wrapped in small pieces of linen or bandages, that they may not slip, are to be introduced into his mouth, and the fingers applied externally. When the maxilla is firmly grasped, if the luxation be on one side, the chin must be shaken, and brought towards the throat; then his head at the same time must be held fast, and the chin raised, the maxilla must be forced into its place, and the mouth closed: so that all of these may be done almost in the same instant.

But if the luxation be on both sides, the same method must be observed, but the jaw-bone must be moved equally backwards on both sides. The bone being replaced, if the accident be accompanied with pain of the eyes and neck, blood



sanguis mittendus est. Cum omnibus vero, quorum ossa mota sunt, primo liquidior cibus conveniat, tum his præcipue: adeo ut sermo quoque, frequenti motu oris per nervos, lædat.

## ORDO.

Vero cum liquidior cibus conveniat primo omnibus, ossa quorum mota sunt, tum præcipue his: adeo ut quoque sermo, frequenti motu oris per nervos, lædat.

## TRANSLATION.

must be taken from the arm. Now as more liquid food at first is proper for all persons whose bones have been dislocated, it is so much the more requisite in cases of this nature: they *should even refrain from speaking at first*, for by the frequent motion of the mouth the temporal muscles may be injured.

## CAP. XIII.

## DE CAPITE LUXATO.

CAPUT duobus processibus in duos sinus summæ vertebræ demissis super cervicem contineri, in prima parte proposui. Hi processus interdum in posteriorem partem excidunt: quo fit, ut nervi sub occipitio extendantur, mentum pectori adglutinetur, neque bibere is, neque loqui possit, interdum sine voluntate semen emittat: quibus celerrime mors supervenit. Ponendum autem hoc esse credidi, non quo curatio ejus rei ulla sit; sed

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIII.

## DE LUXATO CAPITE.

PROPOSUI in prima parte, caput contineri super cervicem duobus processibus demissis in duos sinus summæ vertebræ. Hi processus interdum excidunt in posteriorem partem; quo fit, ut nervi sub occipitio extendantur, mentum adglutinetur pectori, is possit neque bibere neque loqui, interdum emittat semen sine voluntate: quibus mors celerrime supervenit. Autem credidi hoc esse ponendum, non quo sit ulla curatio ejus rei;

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIII.

## LUXATION OF THE HEAD.

IN the first part of this book I have already observed, that the head is secured upon the neck by two processes received into two *corresponding* depressions of the upper vertebra. These processes are sometimes dislocated backwards; by which it happens that the ligaments under the occiput are put upon the stretch, the chin becomes fixed to the breast, the patient can neither drink nor speak, and sometimes there is an involuntary emission of semen: on these *symptoms* death rapidly supervenes. I considered it necessary to state this, not because it admits

ut res indicii cognosceretur, et non putarent sibi medicum defuisse, si qui sic aliquem perdidissent.

sed ut res cognosceretur indicii, et si qui perdidissent sic aliquem, putarent non medicum defuisse sibi.

ORDO.

#### TRANSLATION.

of any remedy; but that it might be known by its symptoms, and that if any one should lose a relative in this way, he should not imagine that it was for want of a physician.

### CAP. XIV

#### DE SPINA LUXATA.

IDEM casus manet eos, quorum in spina vertebræ exciderunt. Id enim non potest fieri, nisi et medulla, quæ per medium, et duabus membranulis, quæ per duos a lateribus processus feruntur, et nervis, qui continent, ruptis. Excidunt autem et in posteriorem partem, et in priorem; et supra septum transversum, et infra. In utramvis partem exciderint, a posteriore parte vel tumor, vel sinus erit. Si super septum id incidit, manus resolvuntur, vomitus, aut distentio ner-

ORDO.

### CAP. XIV.

#### DE LUXATA SPINA.

IDEM casus manet eos, in spina quorum vertebræ exciderunt. Enim id non potest fieri, nisi et medulla, quæ per medium, et duabus membranulis quæ feruntur per duos processus a lateribus, et nervis qui continent, ruptis. Autem excidunt et in posteriorem partem, et in priorem, et supra transversum septum, et infra. In utramvis partem exciderint, a posteriore parte erit vel tumor vel sinus. Si id incidit super septum, manus resolvuntur, vomitus, aut distentio nervorum, in-

#### TRANSLATION.

### CHAP. XIV.

#### LUXATION OF THE SPINE.

THE same fate awaits those who have a luxation of the spinal vertebræ. For this cannot take place, unless both the medulla spinalis, which passes through the middle, and the two small membranes,—*cords of spinal nerves*,—which pass laterally *through their transverse processes*, and also the ligaments which bind them together, be ruptured. Now these are dislocated both posteriorly and anteriorly, both above and below the diaphragm. In whatever part the dislocation may have happened, there will be either a protuberance or depression posteriorly. If this take place above the diaphragm, the hands become paralysed, vomiting or convulsions fol-

vorum insequitur, spiritus difficulter movetur, dolor urget, et aures obtusæ sunt. Si sub septo, femina resolvuntur, urina supprimitur, interdum etiam sine voluntate prorumpit.

Ex ejusmodi casibus, ut tardius, quam ex capitis, sic tamen intra triduum homo moritur. Nam, quod Hippocrates dixit, vertebra in exteriorem partem prolapsa, pronum hominem collocandum esse, et extendendum, tum calce aliquem super ipsum debere consistere, et id intus impellere: in iis accipiendum est, quæ paulum excesserunt; non in iis, quæ totæ loco motæ sunt. Nonnunquam enim nervorum imbecillitas efficit, ut, quamvis non exciderit vertebra, paulum tamen in priorem partem promineat. Id non jugulat: sed ab interiore parte ne contingit quidem posse: ab exteriore si propulsum est, plerumque iterum redit; nisi, quod admodum raram est, vis nervis restituta est.

#### ORDO.

sequitur, spiritus movetur difficulter, dolor urget, et aures sunt obtusæ. Si sub septo, femina resolvuntur, urina supprimitur, interdum etiam prorumpit sine voluntate.

Ex casibus ejusmodi, ut homo moritur tardius quam ex capitis, sic tamen intra triduum. Nam quod Hippocrates dixit, vertebra prolapsa in exteriorem partem, hominem esse collocandum pronum, et extendendum, tum aliquem debere consistere super ipsum calce, et impellere id intus, est accipiendum in iis quæ excesserunt paulum, non in iis quæ totæ motæ sunt loco. Enim nonnunquam imbecillitas nervorum efficit ut, quamvis vertebra non exciderit, tamen promineat paulum in priorem partem. Id non jugulat; sed contingit ne quidem posse ab interiore parte: si propulsum est ab exteriore plerumque redit iterum: nisi, quod est admodum raram, vis restituta est nervis.

#### TRANSLATION.

low, breathing is performed with difficulty, severe pains are felt, and the sense of hearing is rendered dull. If below the diaphragm, the thighs become paralysed, the urine is suppressed, sometimes it is evacuated involuntarily.

From accidents of this kind a man dies more slowly than from luxation of the head, yet this takes place within three days. For what Hippocrates has said, when a dislocation of a vertebra has taken place outwards, the man is to be laid on his abdomen, and extended flat; then a person ought to stand upon him, with his heel *resting on this protruding vertebra*, and force it into its place: this is only applicable to partial luxation of the vertebræ; not to those which are entirely displaced. For sometimes weakness of the ligaments causes a vertebra to protrude a little forwards, although it be not dislocated. This does not prove mortal: but it happens that it cannot be reduced from the internal part: and if it has been reduced externally, it generally returns again, unless the power of the ligaments have been restored, a circumstance of very rare occurrence.



## CAP. XV.

## DE HUMERO LUXATO.

HUMERUS autem modo in alam excidit, modo in partem priorem. Si in alam delapsus est, ei junctus cubitus recedit ab latere; rursum juxta ejusdem partis aurem cum humero porrigi non potest; longiusque altero id brachium est. Si in priorem partem, summum quidem brachium extenditur, minus tamen, quam naturaliter; difficilisque in priorem partem, quam in posteriorem cubitus porrigitur.

Igitur, si in alam humerus excidit, et vel puerile adhuc id corpus vel molle certe et imbecillis nervis intentum est, satis est collocare id in sedili; et ex duobus ministris alteri imperare, ut caput lati scapularum ossis lenitur reducat; alteri, ut brachium extendat: ipsum posteriore parte residentem, humerum sub ala

## ORDO.

## CAP. XV.

## DE LUXATO HUMERO.

AUTEM humerus modo excidit in alam, modo in priorem partem. Si est delapsus in alam, cubitus junctus ei recedit ab latere; non potest porrigi rursum cum humero juxta aurem ejusdem partis, que id brachium est longius altero. Si in priorem partem, summum brachium, quidem, extenditur, tamen minus, quam naturaliter; que cubitus porrigitur difficilior in priorem partem, quam in posteriorem.

Igitur, si humerus excidit in alam, et corpus est adhuc vel puerile vel molle, certe est intentum imbecillis nervis, est satis collocare id sedili, et imperare alteri ex duobus ministris, ut reducat leniter caput lati ossis scapularum; alteri, ut extendat brachium; ipsum residentem posteriore parte, cogere humerum sub ala ejus, que

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XV.

## LUXATION OF THE HUMERUS.

THE Humerus is sometimes luxated into the axilla, and sometimes forwards. If it has slipped into the arm-pit, the elbow recedes from the side: nor can the arm be raised towards the ear of the same side, and that arm is longer than the other. If the luxature be forward, the arm may be extended, but less so than when in its natural state, and the elbow is moved forwards with greater difficulty than backwards.

When the humerus has been luxated into the axilla, and this has happened to an infant, or a person of relaxed fibre, the weakness of whose ligaments has been the cause, it will be sufficient to place him in a seat; and to order one assistant to draw back the head of the scapula very gently, and another to extend the fore-arm: while the physician himself seated behind, with his knee under the

ejus cogere, simulque et latum os, et altera manu brachium ejus ad latus impellere.

At si vastius corpus, nervive robustiores sunt, necessaria est spathula lignea, quæ et crassitudinem duorum digitorum habet, et longitudine ab ala usque ad digitos pervenit: in qua summa capitulum est rotundum et leniter cavum, ut recipere particulam aliquam ex capite humeri possit. In ea bina foramina tribus locis sunt, inter se spatio distantibus; in quæ lora mollia conjiciuntur. Eaque spatha, fascia involuta, quo minus tactu lædat, ad alam a brachio dirigitur, sic, ut caput ejus summæ alæ subjiciatur; deinde loris suis ad brachium deligatur; uno loco, paulum infra humeri caput; altero, paulum supra cubitum; tertio, supra manum: cui rei protinus intervalla tunc quoque foraminum aptata sunt. Sic brachium deligatum super scalæ gallinariæ gradum trajicitur, ita alte, ut consistere homo ipse non possit; simulque in alteram partem corpus demittitur, in alteram brachium intenditur: eoque fit, ut

#### ORDO.

simul et latum os, et altera manu impellere brachium ejus ad latus.

At si corpus vastius, ve nervi sunt robustiores, lignea spathula est necessaria, quæ habet et crassitudinem duorum digitorum et longitudine pervenit ab ala usque ad digitos; in qua summa est rotundum et leniter cavum capitulum, ut possit recipere aliquam particulam ex capite humeri. In ea sunt bina foramina tribus locis, distantibus spatio inter se; in quæ mollia lora conjiciuntur. Quæ ea spatha involuta fascia, quo lædat minus tactu, dirigitur a brachio ad alam, sic ut caput ejus subjiciatur summæ alæ; deinde deligatur suis loris ad brachium: uno loco, paulum infra caput humeri; altero, paulum supra cubitum; tertio, supra manum; cui rei protinus, quoque tunc, intervalla foraminum sunt aptata. Brachium sic deligatum trajicitur super gradum scalæ gallinariæ, ita alte, ut homo ipse possit non consistere; quæ simul corpus demittitur in alteram partem, brachium intenditur in alteram; quæ eo fit,

#### TRANSLATION.

patient's arm-pit (9), forces the humerus upwards, and at the same time presses the scapula with one hand, while he impels the fore-arm to the side with the other.

But if the patient be of a very large stature, or the ligaments more robust, *it will be necessary to employ* a wooden spathula, of the thickness of two fingers, and long enough to reach from the arm-pit to the fingers: at the top of which there is a small rounded head slightly excavated, capable of receiving some part of the head of the humerus. In this *spathula* there should be two holes in three places equidistant from each other, for the admission of soft straps. This *spatha* being wrapped up in a bandage, in order that it may hurt less by the contact, is applied from the fore-arm to the axilla, so that the head of it may be placed immediately under the axilla: afterwards it is to be fastened by straps to the arm: in one place a little below the head of the humerus, in another a little above the elbow; in a third above the hand; for which purpose the holes ought then to correspond with the three spaces. The fore-arm being thus bound, is put across the steps of a poultry ladder, sufficiently high that the patient himself may not be able to place his feet on the ground; at the same time his body is let down on one side, and his arm extended on the other: and by this means it happens, that the

capite ligni caput humeri impulsum in suam sedem, modo cum sono, modo sine hoc compellatur. Multas alias esse rationes, scire facile est uno Hippocrate lecto; sed non alia magis usu comprobata est.

At si in partem priorem humerus excidit, supinus homo collocandus est; fasciæque, aut habena media ala circumdanda est, capitæque ejus post caput hominis ministro tradenda, brachium alteri; præcipiendumque, ut ille habenam, hic brachium extendat: deinde medicus, caput quidem hominis sinistra debet repellere; dextra vero cubitum cum humero attollere, et os in suam sedem compellere: faciliusque id in hoc casu, quam in priore revertitur.

Reposito humero, lana alæ subjiçienda est; si in interiore parte os fuit, ut ei opponatur; si in priore, ut tamen commodius deligetur. Tum fascia, primum sub ala obvoluta, caput ejus debet comprehendere, deinde per pectus ad alteram alam, ab eaque ad scapulas, rursusque ad ejusdem

## ORDO.

ut caput humeri impulsum capite ligni, compellatur in suam sedem, modo cum sono, modo sine hoc. Hippocrate uno lecto, est facile scire esse multas alias rationes, sed non alia comprobata est magis usu.

At si humerus excidit in priorem partem, homo est collocandus supinus, quæ media ala est circumdanda fascia aut habena, quæ capita ejus tradenda ministro post caput hominis, brachium alteri; quæ præcipiendum ut ille extendat habenam, hic brachium; deinde medicus debet repellere quidem caput hominis sinistra, vero dextra attollere cubitum cum humero et compellere os in suam sedem: quæ id revertitur facilius in hoc casu, quam in priore.

Humero reposito, lana est subjiçienda alæ, ut si os fuit in interiore parte, opponatur ei, si in priore tamen ut deligetur commodius. Tum fascia, primum obvoluta sub ala, debet comprehendere caput ejus, deinde tendere per pectus ad alteram alam, quæ ab ea ad scapulas, quæ rursus ad caput ejusdem humeri, quæ cir-

## TRANSLATION.

head of the humerus being impelled by the head of that piece of wood—the *spatha*,—is forced into its place, sometimes with a sound, sometimes without any. Many other methods of reduction we may learn from Hippocrates alone, but there is not one which has stood the test of experience better.

If the humerus be luxated forwards, the patient must be laid on his back, and a bandage or strap applied round the middle of the axilla, the ends of it being passed to the assistant behind the patient's head, and the fore-arm to another: then the first is directed to extend the strap, and the second the fore-arm: and the physician must force back the patient's head with his left hand, and with his right raise the cubitus, together with the humerus, and press the bone into its place; which in this case is more easily reduced than in the former.

The humerus being replaced, wool is to be placed under the arm-pit; so that if the bone has been *luxated* inferiorly, it will be opposed to it: if anteriorly, still it might be bound up more conveniently. Then the roller being first passed under the arm-pit, ought to surround the head of the bone, and passing over the breast to the other arm-pit, and from that to the scapula, and back again to the



humeri caput tendere, sæpiusque ad eandem rationem circumagi, donec bene id teneat. Vinctus hac ratione humerus commodius continetur, si adductus ad latus, ad id quoque fascia deligatur.

## ORDO.

cumagi sæpius ad eandem rationem, donec teneat id bene. Humerus vinctus hac ratione continetur commodius; si adductus ad latus, deligatur ad id quoque fascia.

## TRANSLATION.

head of the *dislocated* humerus, be wound round several times in this manner, until the head of the humerus be well secured. By this method it will be very comfortably fixed, and by being brought close to the side, it must be bound there also with a roller.

## CAP. XVI.

## DE CUBITO LUXATO.

IN cubito autem tria coire ossa, humeri et radii et cubiti ipsius, ex iis, quæ prima parte hujus voluminis posita sunt, intelligi potuit. Si cubitus, qui annexus humero est, ab hoc excidit, radius, qui adjunctus est, interdum trahitur, interdum subsistit. In omnes vero quatuor partes excidere cubitus potest: sed, si in priorem prolapsus est, extantum brachium est, neque recurvatur: si in posteriorem, brachium curvum est, neque extenditur, breviusque altero est; interdum febrem, vomitumque bilis movet: si in

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVI.

## DE LUXATO CUBITO.

AUTEM potuit intelligi, ex iis quæ sunt posita prima parte hujus voluminis, tria ossa coire in cubito, humeri et radii, et cubiti ipsius. Si cubitus, qui est annexus humero, excidit ab hoc, radius, qui est adjunctus, interdum trahitur, interdum subsistit. Vero cubitus potest excidere in omnes quatuor partes: sed si est prolapsus in priorem, brachium est extantum, neque recurvatur: si in posteriorem, brachium est curvum, neque extenditur, quæ est brevius altero; interdum movet febrem quæ vomitum bilis: si in anteriorem ve in-

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVI.

## LUXATION OF THE CUBITUS.

FROM what has been already stated in the first part of this volume—*book*—it may be understood, that three bones meet at the elbow, the humerus, the radius, and the ulna. If the ulna, which is annexed to the humerus, be separated from it, the radius, which is contiguous to it, is sometimes dislocated, and sometimes remains in its place. Now the cubitus may be dislocated in four different ways: if it be propelled forwards, the arm is extended, nor can it be flexed: if posteriorly, the arm is bent, but cannot be extended, and is shorter than the other, sometimes exciting fever

exteriorem, interioremve, brachium porrectum est, sed paulum in eam partem, a qua os recessit, recurvatum.

Quidquid incidit, reponendi ratio una est; neque in cubito tantum, sed in omnibus quoque membris longis, quæ per articulum longa testa junguntur: utrumque membrum in diversas partes extendere, donec spatium inter ossa liberum sit; tum id os, quod excidit, ab ea parte, in quam prolapsum est, in contrariam impellere. Extendendi tamen alia atque alia genera sunt, prout nervi valent, aut ossa huc illucve se dederunt. Ac modo manibus solis utendum est, modo quædam alia adhibenda.

Ergo, si in priorem partem cubitus prolapsus est, extendi per duos manibus, interdum etiam habenis adjectis, satis est: deinde rotundum aliquid a lacerti parte ponendum est, et super id repente cubitus ad humerum impellendus est. At in aliis casibus commodissimum est eadem ratione brachium extendere, quæ fracto humero supra posita est, et tum ossa reponere.

#### ORDO.

teriolem, brachium est porrectum, sed recurvatum paulum in eam partem, a qua os recessit.

Quidquid incidit, est una ratio reponendi; neque tantum in cubito, sed quoque in omnibus longis membris, quæ junguntur per articulum longa testa: extendere utrumque membrum in diversas partes, donec spatium inter ossa sit liberum; tum impellere id os quod excidit, ab ea parte in quam est prolapsum, in contrariam. Tamen sunt alia atque alia genera extendendi, prout nervi valent, aut ossa dederunt se huc ve illuc. Ac modo est utendum manibus solis, modo quædam alia adhibenda.

Ergo, si cubitus est prolapsus in priorem partem, est satis extendi manibus per duos, interdum etiam habenis adjectis; deinde aliquid rotundum est ponendum a parte lacerti, et super id cubitus est repente impellendus ad humerum. At in aliis casibus est commodissimum extendere brachium eadem ratione quæ est posita supra, humero fracto, et tum reponere ossa.

#### TRANSLATION.

and a vomiting of bile: if exteriorly, or interiorly, the fore-arm is extended, but inclined a little towards that bone, from which it receded.

Whatever the case may be, there is but one method of treatment, and that not only in the cubitus, but also in all the long bones, which are articulated by a long process—or socket,—to extend each limb in different directions, until the space between the bones be free; then the bone which has been luxated is to be forced from that part into which it has been propelled, to the opposite part. However, the methods of extension are various, according to the strength of the ligaments and the position of the luxated bones. Sometimes the hands alone are used, sometimes other means are employed.

Therefore, if the cubitus be displaced forwards, it will be sufficient for it to be extended by the hands of two assistants: sometimes straps are also applied: then some round substance is to be put into the bend of the elbow, and the cubitus is to be suddenly forced towards the humerus. But in the other accidents it will be most advantageous to extend the fore-arm by the same method which has been described above, when the humerus is fractured, and then to replace the bones.

Reliqua curatio eadem est, quæ in omnibus. Celerius tantum, et sæpius id resolvendum est; multa magis aqua calida fovendum; diutius ex oleo et nitro ac sale perfricandum. In cubito enim celerius, quam in ullo alio articulo, sive extra remansit, sive intus revertit, callus circumdatur; isque, si per quietem increvit, flexus illius postea prohibet.

## ORDO.

Reliqua curatio est eadem quæ in omnibus; tantum id est resolvendum celerius et sæpius; fovendum multo magis calida aqua; perfricandum diutius ex oleo et nitro ac sale. Enim callus circumdatur in cubito celerius, quam in ullo alio articulo, sive remansit extra, sive revertit intus; quæ si is increvit per quietem, prohibet flexus illius postea.

## TRANSLATION.

The remaining part of the treatment is the same as in other luxations; only that this must be loosened earlier, and dressed more frequently, fomented copiously with warm water, and rubbed much longer with oil, nitre, and salt; for a callus is formed round the cubitus much sooner than in any other joint, whether it remain displaced, or have been reduced; and if this callus be allowed to form during a state of rest, *complete* ankylosis of the joint will be the consequence.

## CAP. XVII.

## ORDO.

## DE MANU LUXATA.

## CAP. XVII.

## DE LUXATA MANU.

MANUS quoque in omnes quatuor partes prolabitur. Si in posteriorem partem excidit, porrigi digiti non possunt: si in priorem, non inclinantur: si in alterutrum latus, manus in contrarium, id est, aut ad pollicem, aut ad minimum digitum convertitur. Reponi non difficillime potest. Super durum locum, et renitentem ex altera

MANUS quoque prolabitur in omnes quatuor partes. Si excidit in posteriorem partem, digiti possunt non porrigi; si in priorem, inclinantur non: si in alterutrum latus, manus convertitur in contrarium; id est, aut ad pollicem, aut ad minimum digitum. Potest reponi non difficillime. Manus debet intendi ex altera parte super durum et renitentem locum,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XVII.

## LUXATION OF THE HAND.

THE hand also may be dislocated in four directions. If luxated posteriorly, the fingers cannot be extended; if anteriorly, they cannot be bent; if on either side, the hand is turned to the opposite direction, that is, either to the thumb or to the little finger. It may be replaced without difficulty. The hand ought to be placed



parte intendi manus, ex altera brachium debet, sic, ut prona sit, si in posteriorem partem os excidit; supina, si in priorem; si in interiorem exterioremve, in latus. Ubi satis nervi diducti sunt, si in alterutrum latus procidit, manibus in contrarium repellendum est. At iis, quæ in priorem posterioremve partem prolapsa sunt, superimponendum durum aliquid, idque supra prominens os manu urgendum est; per quod vis adjecta facilius id in suam sedem compellit.

## ORDO.

brachium ex altera, sic ut sit prona, si os excidit in posteriorem partem, supina si in priorem; in latus, si in interioremve exteriorem. Ubi nervi sunt diducti satis, si procidit in alterutrum latus, est repellendum manibus in contrarium. At iis quæ sunt prolapsa in prioremve posteriorem partem, aliquid durum superimponendum, quæ id est urgendum manu super prominens os: per quod, vis adjecta, compellit facilius id in suam sedem.

## TRANSLATION.

on a hard plane in a prone posture and extended, the fore-arm on another, if the displacement be posteriorly; but in a supine posture, if anteriorly; if internally or externally, it should be laid on one side. When the ligaments have been sufficiently extended, if the luxation be lateral, the head of the bone must be propelled by the hand in the opposite direction. But when the luxation has been either anteriorly, or posteriorly, some hard body is to be placed over it, and this is to be pressed with the hand over the projecting bone; by which means, the pressure being augmented *gradually* propels it more easily into its place.

## CAP. XVIII.

## DE PALMA LUXATA.

IN palma quoque ossa interdum suis sedibus promoventur, modo in priorem partem, modo in posteriorem: in latus enim moveri, paribus ossibus oppo-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XVIII.

## DE LUXATA PALMA.

Ossa in palma quoque interdum promoventur suis sedibus, modo in priorem partem, modo in posteriorem: enim non possunt mo-

## TRANSLATION,

## CHAP. XVIII.

## LUXATION OF THE PALM.

THE bones in the palm of the hand are occasionally displaced, sometimes anteriorly, at other times posteriorly: for they cannot be luxated laterally, being

sitis, non possunt. Signum id solum est, quod omnium commune est: tumor ab ea parte, in quam os venit; sinus ab ea, a qua recessit. Sed sine intentione, digito tantummodo bene pressum os in suam sedem revertitur.

## ORDO.

veri in latus, paribus ossibus oppositis. Id signum est solum, quod est commune omnium: tumor ab ea parte in quam os venit; sinus ab ea a qua recessit. Sed os revertitur in suam sedem, tantummodo pressum bene digito, sine intentione

## TRANSLATION.

opposed by parallel bones. There is but one indication of it, which is common to them all: a tumour in that part where the bone is lodged; a depression in that part from whence the bone has receded. The bone here may be returned to its place, by being pressed on by the finger only, without extension.

## CAP. XIX.

## DE DIGITIS LUXATIS.

AT in digitis totidem fere casus, eademque signa sunt, quæ in manibus. Sed in his extendendis non æque vi opus est; quod articuli breviores, et nervi minus validi sint. Super mensam tantummodo intendi debent, qui vel in priorem vel in posteriorem partem exciderunt; tum jam palma compelli. At id, quod in latus elapsum est, digitis restitui.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XIX.

## DE LUXATIS DIGITIS.

AT in digitis casus sunt fere totidem, quæ signa eadem, quæ in manibus. Sed in his extendendis est opus non æque vi; quod articuli sint breviores, et nervi minus validi. Debent intendi super mensam tantummodo, qui exciderunt vel in priorem vel in posteriorem partem, tum jam compelli palma; at (si) quod est elapsum in latus, id restitui digitis.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XIX.

## LUXATION OF THE FINGERS.

Now in the fingers, the accidents are almost as many and the symptoms the same as they are in the hands. But it is not necessary to employ so much force in extending these; because the articulations are shorter, and the ligaments are less powerful. They ought to be extended on a table only, whether they be luxated anteriorly or posteriorly, and then pressed in by the palm of the hand; if luxated laterally, the reduction must be effected with the fingers.

## CAP. XX.

## DE FEMORE LUXATO.

CUM de his dixerim, de iis quoque, quæ in cruribus sunt, videri possum dixisse: siquidem etiam in hoc casu quædam similitudo est femori et humero, tibiæ et cubito, pedi et manui. Quædam tamen separatim quoque de his dicenda sunt.

Femur in omnes quatuor partes movetur: sæpissime in interiorem; deinde in exteriorem; raro admodum in priorem, aut posteriorem. Si in interiorem partem prolapsus est, crus longius altero, et valgius est: extra enim pes ultimus spectat. Si in exteriorem, brevius, varumque fit, et pes intus inclinatur; calx ingressu terram non contingit, sed planta ima; meliusque id crus superius corpus, quam in priore casu, fert, minusque baculo eget. Si in priorem, crus extensum est, implicari non potest; alteri

## ORDO.

## CAP. XX.

## DE LUXATO FEMORE.

CUM dixerim de his, possum videri quoque dixisse de iis quæ sunt in cruribus; siquidem etiam in hoc casu est quædam similitudo femori et humero, tibiæ et cubito, pedi et manui. Tamen quædam sunt dicenda separatim quoque de his.

Femur promovetur in omnes quatuor partes; sæpissime in interiorem, deinde in exteriorem, admodum raro in priorem aut posteriorem. Si est prolapsus in interiorem partem, crus est longius et valgius altero; enim ultimus pes spectat extra; si in exteriorem, fit brevius que varum, et pes inclinatur intus; calx contingit non terram ingressu, sed ima planta, que id crus fert superius corpus melius quam in priore casu, que eget minus baculo. Si in priorem, crus est extensum, que non potest implicari, est par alteri cruri ad

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XX.

## LUXATION OF THE FEMUR.

HAVING treated of these—*i. e. the upper extremities*—it might appear that I included luxations of the lower extremities also: for there is some similitude in these cases between the femur and the humerus, the tibia and the ulna, the foot and the hand. However, something must be said of these separately.

The femur is dislocated in all the four different ways: most frequently inwards, next outwards, very rarely forwards or backwards. If it be luxated internally, the limb is longer and more bowed than the other, for the extremity of the foot points outwards: if luxated outwards, it becomes shorter and bowed inwards, and the foot also inclined the same way; the heel does not reach the ground in walking; but the patient rests upon the extremity of the sole: and in this case the limb supports the body better than in the former case, and has less need of a crutch. If the luxation be forwards, then the limb becomes extended, is as long as the other,



cruri ad calcem par est, sed ima planta minus in priorem partem inclinatur: dolorque in hoc casu præcipuus est, et maxime urina suppressitur.

Ubi cum dolore inflammatio quievit, commode ingrediuntur, rectusque eorum pes est. Si in posteriorem, extendi non potest crus, breviusque est; ubi consistit, calx quoque terram non contingit. Magnum autem femori periculum est, ne vel difficulter reponatur, vel repositum rursus excidat. Quidam semper iterum excidere contendunt: sed Hippocrates, et Diocles, et Philotimus, et Nileus, et Heraclides Tarentinus, clari admodum auctores, ex toto se restituisse memoriæ prodiderunt. Neque tot genera machinamentorum quoque, ad extendendum in hoc casu femur, Hippocrates, Andreas, Nileus, Nymphodorus, Protarchus, Heraclides, faber quoque quidam reperissent, si id frustra esset. Sed ut hæc falsa opinio est; sic illud verum est: cum ibi valentissimi nervi musculique sint, si suum robur habent, vix admittere; si non habent, postea non continere.

Tentandum igitur est, et, si tene-

#### ORDO.

calcem; sed ima planta inclinatur minus in priorem partem, que dolor est præcipuus in hoc casu, et maxime urina suppressitur.

Ubi inflammatio, cum dolore, quievit, ingrediuntur commode, que pes eorum est rectus. Si in posteriorem, crus non potest extendi, que est brevius; ubi consistit, calx quoque contingit non terram: autem est magnum periculum femori, ne vel reponatur difficulter, vel, repositum, excidat rursus. Quidam contendunt semper excidere iterum; sed Hippocrates et Diocles, et Philotimus, et Nileus, et Heraclides Tarentinus, admodum clari auctores, prodiderunt memoriæ se restituisse ex toto; neque Hippocrates, Andreas, Nileus, Nymphodorus, Protarchus, Heraclides, quoque quidam faber, reperissent tot genera machinamentorum ad femur extendendum in hoc casu, si id esset frustra. Sed ut hæc opinio est falsa, sic illud est verum; cum nervi que musculi ibi sint valentissimi, vix admittere, si habent suum robur: si non habent, non continere repositum postea.

Igitur est tentandum, et si mem-

#### TRANSLATION.

but cannot be crossed over it; the extremity is less inclined inwards, the pain is excessive in this case, and generally the urine is suppressed.

When the inflammation and the pain have ceased, the patients walk pretty well, and the foot is straight. If the luxation be posteriorly, the leg cannot be extended, and is shorter; and when the person stands up, the heel does not reach the ground. But the greatest danger is, in a *luxation* of the femur, lest there be a difficulty in replacing it, or, when reduced, it may slip out again. Some maintain that it always does so, but Hippocrates, Diocles, Philotinus, Nileus, and Heraclides the Tarentine, all very celebrated authors, have asserted that they have effected a perfect cure. Neither would Hippocrates, Andreas, Nileus, Nymphodorus, Protarchus, Heraclides, and also a certain mechanician, have invented so many kinds of machines for extending the femur in this case, if it had been to no purpose. But as this opinion is false, so is the other true; since the ligaments and muscles there being very powerful, scarcely admit of reduction, if they retain their natural strength: if they do not, the femur cannot be maintained in its place, *after it has been reduced*.

Therefore it must be tried, and if the limb be tender, it will be sufficient for

rius membrum est, satis est habenam alteram ab inguine, alteram a genu intendi: si validius, melius adducent, qui easdem habenas ad valida bacula deligarint; cumque eorum fustium imas partes oppositæ moræ objecerint, superiores ad se utraque manu traxerint. Etiamnum valentius intenditur membrum super scamnum, cui ab utraque parte axes sunt, ad quos habenæ illæ deligantur: qui, ut in torcularibus, conversi, rumpere quoque, si quis perseveraverit, non solum extendere, nervos et musculos possunt.

Collocandus autem homo super id scamnum est, aut pronus, aut supinus, aut in latus, sic, ut semper ea pars superior sit, in quam os prolapsum est; ea etiam inferior, a qua recessit. Nervis extensis, si in priorem partem os venit, rotundum aliquid super inguen ponendum; subitoque super id genu adducendum est eodem modo, eademque de causa, qua idem in brachio fit; protinusque, si complicari femur potest, intus est.

In ceteris vero casibus, ubi ossa per vim paulum inter se recesserunt, me-

## ORDO.

brum est tenerius, est satis alteram habenam intendi ab inguine, alteram a genu; si validius, adducent melius qui deligarint easdem habenas ad valida bacula: que cum objecerint imas partes eorum fustium moræ oppositæ, que traxerint superiores ad se utraque manu. Membrum etiamnum valentius intenditur super scamnum, cui axes sunt ab utraque parte, ad quos illæ habenæ deligantur, qui conversi ut in torcularibus, possunt, si quis perseveraverit, non solum extendere nervos et musculos, sed quoque rumpere.

Autem homo est collocandus super id scamnum aut pronus aut supinus, aut in latus, sic ut ea pars sit semper superior in quam os est prolapsum, etiam ea inferior a qua recessit. Nervis extensis, si os venit in priorem partem, aliquid rotundum est ponendum super inguen, que genu est adducendum subito super id eodem modo, que de eadem causa qua idem fit in brachio; que si femur potest complicari, est protinus intus.

Vero in ceteris casibus, ubi ossa recesserunt paulum inter se per

## TRANSLATION.

one strap to be extended from the groin, and another from the knee; if the person be muscular, the extension will be made better, by attaching these straps to strong sticks, placing the lower end of these sticks against a fulcrum, and pulling the upper ends with both hands. The extension of the limb may be still more powerfully effected by placing it on a bench, with pulleys at each end, to which these straps are made fast; these being turned in the manner of a wine-press, they will not only extend the limb, but even rupture the ligaments and muscles, should the operator persevere.

Now the patient is to be placed on this bench, either prone or supine, or upon his side, provided that the part to which the bone has been impelled be always uppermost, and that from which it has slipped, the lowermost. The ligaments being put upon the stretch, if the bone be dislocated anteriorly, some rounded body is to be placed upon the groin, and the knee is to be drawn suddenly towards the abdomen in the same way, and for the same reason, that is directed for a luxation of the arm; and if the femur can be flexed, it will be immediately reduced.

But in the other accidents, where the bones have receded a little from each other

dicus debet id, quod eminet, retro cogere; minister contra coxam propellere. Reposito osse, nihil novi aliud curatio requirit, quam ut diutius is in lecto detineatur; ne, si motum adhuc nervis laxioribus femur fuerit, rursus erumpat.

## ORDO.

vim, medicus debet cogere retro id quod eminet; contra, minister propellere coxam inde. Osse reposito, curatio requirit nihil aliud novi quam ut is detineatur diutius in lecto, ne, si femur fuerit motum, nervis adhuc laxioribus, erumpat rursus.

## TRANSLATION.

by violence, the physician ought to force that back which projects, and an assistant should impel *the pelvis* in a contrary direction. The bone being replaced, the subsequent treatment requires nothing additional, except that the patient be detained in bed for a longer period, lest the femur being moved whilst the ligaments are yet very relaxed, it may again slip out.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE GENU LUXATO.

GENU vero et in anteriorem, et in posteriorem partem excidere, notissimum est. In priorem non prolabi, plerique scripserunt: potestque id vero proximum esse, cum inde opposita patella, ipsa quoque caput tibiæ contineat. Meges tamen eum, cui in priorem partem excidisset, a se curatum esse, memoriæ prodidit.

In his casibus intendi nervi rationibus iisdem, quos in femore retuli, possunt. Et id quidem, quod in po-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXI.

## DE LUXATO GENU.

VERO est notissimum genu excidere, et in anteriorem et in posteriorem partem: plerique scripserunt non prolabi in priorem; que id potest esse proximum vero; cum patella, opposita inde, ipsa quoque contineat caput tibiæ. Tamen Meges prodidit memoriæ, eum cui id excidisset in priorem partem esse curatum a se.

In his casibus nervi possunt intendi iisdem rationibus quas retuli in femore. Et id, quidem,

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXI.

## LUXATION OF THE KNEE.

Now it is very well known that the knee is luxated outwards, inwards, and backwards. Most authors have stated, that it is not luxated forwards; and this may appear to be very true, since the patella is opposed to it in that direction, which also secures the head of the tibia. But Meges has recorded a case of luxation forwards, which came under his own care.

In these cases, the ligaments may be extended by the same means which I have related in the femur. When the luxation happens to take place backwards, it is



steriorem partem excidit, eodem modo rotundo aliquo super poplitem imposito, adductoque eo crure, reconditur. Cetera vero manibus simul dum ossa in diversas partes compelluntur.

## ORDO.

quod excidit in posteriorem partem reconditur eodem modo, aliquo rotundo imposito super poplitem, que eo crure adducto. Vero cetera manibus dum ossa compelluntur in diversas partes.

## TRANSLATION.

reduced in the same manner, by some rounded body being applied to the popliteal space, and flexing the leg. In the other cases, the reduction is to be effected with the hands alone, while the bones are to be drawn in opposite directions.

## CAP. XXII.

## DE TALO LUXATO.

TALUS in omnes partes prolabitur. Ubi in interiorem partem excidit, ima pars pedis in exteriorem partem convertitur. Ubi huic contrarius casus, contrarium etiam signum est. At si in priorem partem erumpit, a posteriore latus nervus durus et intentus est; simusque iis pes est. Si in posteriorem, calx pene conditur, planta major fit. Reponitur autem is quoque per manus; prius in diversa pede et crure diductis. Et in hoc quoque casu di-

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXII.

## DE LUXATO TALO.

TALUS prolabitur in omnes partes. Ubi excidit in interiorem partem, ima pars pedis convertitur in exteriorem partem; ubi casus contrarius huic, etiam contrarium signum exstat. At si erumpit in priorem partem, latus nervus a posteriore est durus et intentus, que iis pes est simus. Si in posteriorem calx pene conditur, planta fit major: autem is quoque reponitur per manus; pede et crure diductis prius in diversa. Et in hoc casu quoque est perseverandum

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXII.

## LUXATION OF THE ANKLE.

THE ankle is dislocated in all directions. When it has slipped inwards, the sole of the foot is turned outwards. When the accident happens in an opposite direction, the indication is also reversed. But if the luxation be forwards, the broad tendon behind, is hard and tense, and the foot is turned downwards. If backwards, the heel is almost hid, and the sole of the foot is enlarged. This luxation is also to be reduced by the hands; the foot and leg being previously extended in opposite directions. And in this case also the patient must be con-

utius in lectulo perseverandum est; ne is talus, qui totum corpus sustinet, parum confirmatis nervis, ferendo oneri cedat, rursusque prorumpat. Calceamentis quoque humilioribus primo tempore utendum; ne vinctura talum ipsum lædat.

## ORDO.

diutius in lectulo, ne is talus qui sustinet totum corpus, nervis confirmatis parum, cedat oneri ferendo, que prorumpat rursus. Quoque utendum humilioribus calceamentis primo tempore, ne vinctura lædat talum ipsum.

## TRANSLATION.

tinued longer in bed, lest the ankle, which sustains the whole of the body, yield beneath its load, and be forced out again, the ligaments being as yet weak. And at first low shoes must be worn, lest the bandage injure the ankle itself.

## CAP. XXIII.

## ORDO.

## DE PLANTA LUXATA.

## CAP. XXIII.

## DE LUXATA PLANTA.

PLANTÆ ossa iisdem modis, quibus in manibus, prodeunt; iisdemque conduntur. Fascia tantummodo calcem quoque debet comprehendere: ne, cum mediam plantam, imumque ejus vinciri necesse est, liber talus in medio relictus, materiam pleniorē recipiat, ideoque suppuret.

Ossa plantæ prodeunt iisdem modis quibus in manibus, que conduntur iisdem: tantummodo fascia debet quoque comprehendere calcem, ne cum est necesse mediam plantam, que imum ejus, vinciri, talus relictus liber in medio, recipiat pleniorē materiam, que ideo suppuret.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## LUXATIONS IN THE SOLES OF THE FEET.

THE bones in the soles of the feet are luxated in the same way as those of the hands, and are reduced in the same manner; only the bandage ought also to embrace the heel, lest, when the middle part and extremity of the sole require to be bound, the ankle, being left free in the middle, may permit a redundancy of fluid, and thus cause matter to form.

## CAP. XXIV.

## DE DIGITIS LUXATIS.

IN digitis nihil ultra fieri debet, quam quod in iis, qui sunt in manu, positum est. Potest tamen conditus articulus medius, aut summus canaliculo aliquo contineri.

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXIV.

## DE LUXATIS DIGITIS.

IN digitis nihil ultra debet fieri quam quod est positum in iis, qui sunt in manu; tamen medius aut summus articulus conditus, potest contineri aliquo canaliculo.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXIV.

## LUXATION OF THE TOES.

IN luxation of the toes, nothing further ought to be done than what has been *already* directed for the hand. However, when the middle or upper joint is reduced, it may be placed in splints.

## CAP. XXV.

DE HIS, QUÆ CUM VULNERE LOCO  
MOVENTUR.

HÆC facienda sunt in iis casibus, ubi sine vulnere ossa exciderunt. Hic quoque et ingens periculum est, et eo gravius, quo majus membrum est, quoque validioribus nervis aut musculis

## ORDO.

## CAP. XXV.

DE HIS, QUÆ CUM VULNERE  
MOVENTUR LOCO.

HÆC sunt facienda in iis casibus ubi ossa exciderunt sine vulnere. Hic quoque et periculum est ingens, et eo gravius, quo majus membrum est, ve quo continetur validioribus nervis aut musculis.

## TRANSLATION.

## CHAP. XXV.

## LUXATIONS ATTENDED WITH A WOUND.

THESE are the methods to be employed when the bones have been displaced without a wound: and here also the danger is great; and the more so in proportion to the size of the limb, and the strength of the ligaments and muscles which hold



continetur. Ideoque in humeris, femoribusque, metus mortis est: ac, si reposita ossa sunt, spes nulla est; non repositis tamen, nonnullum periculum est: eoque major in utroque timor est, quo propius vulnus articulo est.

Hippocrates nihil tuto reponi posse, præter digitos, et plantas, et manus, dixit: atque in his quoque diligenter esse agendum, ne præcipitent. Quidam brachia quoque et crura reposuerunt; et, ne cancri, distentionesque nervorum orirentur; sub quibus in ejusmodi casu fieri solet mors matura; sanguinem ex brachio miserunt.

Verum ne digitus quidem; in quo minimum, ut malum, sic etiam periculum est; reponi debet aut in inflammatione, aut postea, cum jam vetus res est. Si quoque reposito osse nervi distenduntur, rursus id protinus expellendum est.

Omne autem membrum, quod cum vulnere loco motum, neque repositum est, sic jacere convenit, ut maxime cubantem juvat; tantum ne moveatur, neve dependeat. In omnique tali

#### ORDO.

Que ideo, in humeris que femoribus, est metus mortis; ac si ossa sunt reposita, est nulla spes, tamen est nonnullum periculum non repositis; que est eo major timor in utroque quo propius vulnus est articulo.

Hippocrates dixit nihil posse reponi tuto, præter digitos, et plantas, et manus, atque quoque in his esse agendum diligenter, ne præcipitent. Quidam reposuerunt quoque brachia et crura, et miserunt sanguinem ex brachio, ne cancri, que distentiones nervorum orirentur; sub quibus, in casu ejusmodi, matura mors solet fieri.

Verum ne quidem digitus, in quo, ut malum est minimum, sic etiam periculum, debet reponi, aut in inflammatione aut postea, aut cum res est jam vetus. Si quoque, osse reposito, nervi distenduntur, id est protinus expellendum rursus.

Autem convenit omne membrum quod est motum loco cum vulnere, neque repositum, jacere sic ut juvat maxime cubantem; tantum ne moveatur, neve dependeat. Que in omni tali morbo

#### TRANSLATION.

it. On this account the case may prove fatal, when it occurs in the shoulder or thigh, for if the bones have been reduced, there is no hope; and yet when they are not reduced, still there is some danger: there is however much greater fear in each case, the nearer the wound is to the articulation.

Hippocrates has said that none could be reduced with safety, except the fingers and the soles, and the hands; and even in these, that it is to be done carefully, lest they should precipitate *the patient to an untimely end*. Some have even reduced the fore-arms and legs, and have taken blood from the arm, lest gangrene and convulsions come on, under which it happens, not unfrequently, that death soon follows on accidents of this kind.

But not even a finger ought to be reduced while there is inflammation, or afterwards, or when the case has become chronic; in which, as it is the least evil, so there is also the less danger. If convulsions supervene on the reduction of a bone, it must be immediately displaced again.

Now it will be advantageous that every limb which has been dislocated with a wound, and remains unreduced, should lie in that position most easy to the patient; only it should not be moved, nor hang down. And in every accident of

morbo magnum ex longa fame præsidium est: deinde ex curatione eadem, quæ proposita est ubi ossibus fractis vulnus accessit. Si nudum os eminet, impedimento semper futurum est: ideo, quod excedit, abscindendum est; imponendaque super arida linamenta sunt, et medicamenta non pingua; donec, quæ sola esse in ejusmodi re sanitas potest, veniat. Nam et debilitas sequitur, et tenuis cicatrix inducitur; quæ necesse est facile noxæ postea pateat.

## ORDO.

est magnum præsidium ex longa fame; deinde ex eadem curatione quæ est proposita ubi vulnus accessit fractis ossibus. Si nudum os eminet, est futurum semper impedimento: ideo, quod excedit est abscindendum, quæ arida linamenta sunt imponenda super, et non pingua medicamenta; donec sanitas, quæ sola potest esse in re ejusmodi, veniat; nam et debilitas sequitur, et tenuis cicatrix inducitur, quæ est necesse pateat facile postea noxæ.

## FINIS.

## TRANSLATION.

this kind a long abstinence *will prove* a great safeguard; afterwards, that treatment must be employed which has been proposed when fractures of the bones have been accompanied with wounds. If the denuded bone protrude, it will always be an impediment; therefore, the projecting portion must be removed, and dry lint laid over it, but no greasy applications, until the health be as complete as a case of this kind will admit; for it leaves a debility, and the part is covered by a thin cicatrix, which must of necessity be greatly exposed afterwards to injuries.

## THE END.





# NOTES.

## BOOK FIRST.

Note (1). CELSUS flourished in the Augustan age, some say in that of Tiberius; he also wrote Treatises on Agriculture, Rhetoric, the Art of War, &c., and has transmitted to us, in his preface, a brief history of medicine from HIPPOCRATES, not inaptly called the father of medicine, who was born in the island of Cos about 500 years before the Christian era: and the important use which our Author made of his Works warrants a brief notice of him.

Hippocrates was the eighteenth lineal descendant from ÆSCULAPIUS, and is frequently termed the Cousian; the profession of medicine having been hereditarily followed in that family, under whose direction the Coan school rose to the greatest eminence. Not content with the empirical practices of those who preceded him, he seems to have judged carefully for himself, and to have adopted those principles which appeared to be supported by sound reason, and he was therefore acknowledged as the leader of the rational or dogmatic sect. He acquired a high reputation among his countrymen, which has descended to modern times; and his opinions have been respected as oracles, not only in the schools of medicine, but even in the courts of law. He has shared with Plato the title of divine; statues and temples have been erected to his memory. Indeed, the qualifications and duties required of a physician were never more fully exemplified than in his conduct, and more eloquently described than by his pen. He is said to have admitted no one to his instructions without the solemnity of an oath, in which the chief obligations are, the most religious attention to the care of the sick, the strictest chastity, and inviolable secrecy concerning matters which ought not to be divulged\*. The books ascribed to him amount to seventy-two. The most esteemed are his Treatise on Air, Water, and Situation; his book on Epidemics and Prognostics; the Aphorisms; Diet; and Wounds of the Head. He wrote in the pure Ionic style.

(2). PODALIRIUS and MACHAON. The passage in Homer is

— Δσκληπιοῦ δύο παῖδες,  
Ἰητήρ' ἀγαθὸν, Ποδάλειρος ἤδη Μάχῃων.  
Æsculapii duo filii, medici boni, Podalirius et Machaon. Iliad. Lib. II. 731.  
“The two sons of Æsculapius, both good physicians.”

(3). THEMISON, lately. From this it may be inferred, with great probability, that Celsus wrote towards the latter end of the reign of Augustus, or at least in the beginning of that of Tiberius, and this is confirmed by Fabricius Bib. Lat. lib. ii. c. 4.

(4). *Constituents of bodies.* The ancient philosophers classed all matter, whether ponderable or imponderable, organic or inorganic, under four principles or elements, viz. air, earth, fire, and water.

(5). *VESSELS: alia, si sanguis in eas venas.* Celsus frequently makes use of the term Venas for the blood-vessels in general; here it evidently implies arteries. He often speaks of the motion of the veins, by which he means the pulsation of the arteries. *Arteria aspera* is a term employed by the ancients also for the trachea: *arteria* he uses to signify the sanguiferous system, as in chap. I. of book IV. *In dextra sinistraque circa guttur venæ grandes, quæ σφαγιτίδες nominantur; itemque arteriæ, quas καρωτίδες vocant.* It would appear by this and several other passages that the ancients had some imperfect notion of the circulation of the fluids of the body.

(6). *Concoction.* Galen assigned a fourfold office to concoction. 1st. *Concoction* of the aliments, after being prepared by cooking; they are then received into the stomach, and there undergo the process of chymification, chylication, &c. 2d. *Concoction* of the humours, under which is comprehended sanguification, the secre-

\* The Oath of Hippocrates, in Greek, Latin and English, with a portrait of the author, is now in course of publication.

tion of milk, semen, &c. 3d. *Concoction* of the excrements consists in the separation of the feculent from the nutritious matter, and the distribution of each of these to such parts of the intestines as nature had designed them. Under this is comprehended the secretion of urine, alvine evacuations, perspiration, &c. 4th. *Concoction* of diseases, or their proximate causes, which by some was termed *πέπσις*, *pepansis* or *maturation*. Under this they imagined that vitiated peccant matter became matured, and generated diseases. Comm. in Hipp.

(7). *Connexion*. The commentators and previous editors of Celsus have displayed a great deal of unnecessary zeal about the meaning of this word. Some would have it *contractum*, as it is to be found in one of the manuscripts, and suppose it to mean *asperity*, which sense it does not bear any where else: Constantine prefers *confractum*, which he thinks agreeable to his interpretation: but I have followed Morgagni, who says that ten of the most ancient editions have *contactum*, literally signifying *contact*, adherence, or relative position, in which sense it appears most consonant with reason.

(8). *Heavy breathing*: — *Tardumque spiritum*, or dyspnœa: difficult respiration, without sense of stricture, and accompanied with a cough through the whole course of the disease; a genus of disease in the class Neuroses and order Spasmi of Cullen. There are a variety of species.

(9). *Abdomen, Uterum*. Celsus frequently makes use of this word to signify the cavity of the abdomen.

(10). *Præcordia*:—*Præ*, before, and *cor*, the heart,—the anterior portion of the chest; but Celsus makes use of this word in a variety of senses: in this passage he evidently means the diaphragm: but it signifies the hypochondria in the following passage: “magis eo tendit is, qui in præcordiis, quam is, qui in ventre est,” &c. (book iv. c. 1.) by which it would appear that he employed the Greek term of Hippocrates, *ὑποχονδρίον*, the etymology of which demonstrates it to be below the ensiform cartilage.

(11). *Prolapsus uteri*. The commentators have given a variety of opinions

on this *arente carne*, which it would be superfluous to transcribe, since the learned Morgagni, in his Treatise “*De Sedibus Morborum*,” has explained it as an inverted uterus, which he says resembles a piece of flesh, and is quickly seized with gangrene, as Celsus himself confirms in the description of it: *siccum et aridam carnem*.

(12). *Nerves*: *νῆρα*: — “Cords or strings, dry and devoid of any cavity, growing to the bone, and having most of their nutriment from thence: they are nourished also from the flesh; and their colour and strength are in a middle degree between bone and flesh.” Hipp. Sec. 4. Whether Celsus or the ancients meant under this word, what we now properly term a nerve, is quite uncertain; but there can be no doubt they used the term for a tendon, and sometimes for a ligament; particularly Celsus, in the eighth book, when he describes the bones. Willis describes the nerves thus: “*stricte dicitur de canalibus, spiritum animale ad partes sensui et motui locali destinatas deferentibus, unde et instrumenta sensus et motus dicuntur.*”

(13). *Dogmatist*. I have translated *rationalem* as a “dogmatist,” in contradistinction to an empiric, or methodist. Galen, alluding to these primitive doctrines, says—*unde quedam dogmata sunt incerta; quedam probabilia; quedam absurda*.

(14). *Methodist*: From *μέθοδος*, a plan, system, or method. *Sed æquivocum est in medicina*. They considered it a principal part in their system of medicine, as the following extract from the *Dogmata Medicorum* Gen. P. iv. c. 1. “*Huc pertinet Methodus Medicinalis, quæ est pars medicinæ princeps, monstrans modum agendorum pro obtinenda sanitate; est species methodus medendi, quæ est brevis, certa et tuta via reducendi ægros ad sanitatem pristinam.*” Hippocrates describes them to be a sect entirely apart from all others.

(15). *Dinner*:—*Ἀγιστεον*, *prandium*. The Romans had but one set meal in the day; and the only conjectural reason for this seems to be, that they were compelled to employ so much of their time in going through the various processes of bathing and cleansing their persons, that they could scarcely devote time for one meal, which was, according

to Mercurialis; "*tertia hora ab ortu solis.*"

The Romans had also their *ariston magnum et parvum*, medicamenta composita contra phthisin, dolorem ventris, febres mixtas. Avic.

(16). *Iatroleipta*, from *ιαρός*, a physician, and *ἐλαίφα*, an oil, ointment, or liniment: a term frequently used by Hippocrates to signify the *unction-doctor*, or the *medicus unguentarius*, an inferior order of physicians who attended the baths at Rome, and, according to Cicero, practised in all diseases of the skin. Pliny the Naturalist states that this order was first instituted by Prodicus, the disciple of Æsculapius, at Selymbria.

(17). *Baths: Therma*, a *θερμαί*, "proprie vocantur aquæ actu calidæ minerales sponte natæ, hoc est, quas natura e liberali sinu terræ magna Dei benedictione affatim suppeditat ad sanitatem, qua tuendam, qua recuperandam, quarum usus non solum est externus ad lavandum, sed etiam quandoque internus ad potum," Gal. I. 6. de san. tu. From the frequent use of this word in Celsus we may imagine that bathing was a practice very generally adopted by the Romans, at first no doubt for the preservation of health; but as they advanced in civilization and luxury, their baths became proportionately more elegant. The best account of these baths is to be found in Vitruvius, from whom I have extracted the following abridgement.

1st. *TEPIDARIUM* was a large room rendered *tepid* by the dry vapours from a fire. This was a preparatory stage, that persons might not go unprepared into the rooms of higher temperature.

2d. *CALIDARIUM* and *LACONICUM*. These were similar to the *tepidarium*, but with a higher degree of temperature.

3d. *SOLIUM* was the warm bath, where persons sat sometimes without going into it, and had the water poured over them, as Celsus in several places prescribes.

4th. *PISCINA*: this was for the reception of cold water, for bathing or swimming in. Celsus makes mention of it in the vi<sup>th</sup> book, ch. 27, sec. 2d, as a remedy in hydrophobia—in *piscinam projicere*.

5th. *FRIGIDARIUM*: it is disputed whether this apartment contained water or not: some have imagined that it was contrived for those who came immedi-

ately from the *tepidarium* and *calidarium* desirous of enjoying a cool air. Pliny had a *frigidarium* in a bath at his villa for swimming in.

In addition to these apartments, there was an *aquarium*, or *reservoir*, built for holding water conveyed from the aqueducts. *Vasarium* was a place for holding the vessels where the water was heated: this was over the *hypocaustum*, or stove.

(18). *Catarrhematic*, from the Greek verb *καταρρέω*, *defluo*, to flow from, the gravedo of Celsus—*catarrh*, of which Hippocrates specially distinguishes three kinds, viz. *κόρυζα*, *coryza*, which is a defluxion from the nares; *βράγχος*, *branchus* vel *raucedo*, hoarseness, bronchitis; and *catarrhus*, which is an expectoration of matter from the lungs.

Si fluit ad pectus, dicatur rheuma catarrhus,

Ad fauces *branchus*, ad nares esto *coryza*.

(19). *Repose at noon. Longis diebus meridiari potius ante cibum*. This habit prevails with the Italians to this day, under the term *siesta*, or mid-day nap.

(20). *Salt meats: salsamenta*. There is a doubt whether *salsamenta* was fish or flesh preserved with salt. On the authority of Hippocrates—"omne id vocatur, quod sale conditum est, proprie quidem *piscium*, et præsertim *thunnorum* carnes sale conditæ et asservatæ;" but it would appear from Strabo that the same term was applied to flesh cured in the same manner; for he mentions a *παρχία*, or *salsamentum* of pork, brought to the Roman market by the Sequani.

(21). *Phlegm: φλέγμα*: the pituita of Celsus, ranked by the ancients one of the four natural humours which existed in the body, and was most abundant in winter. Of course this opinion has been long exploded.

(22). *Hydromel*, from *ὕδρῳ* and *μέλι*. Aqua mulsa, water mixed with honey. Dioscorides says—two parts of wine and one of honey; but Celsus asserts, in the 18th ch. of the 2d book, that "mulse is more nourishing, the more honey it contains."

(23). *Lotus*: from *ἄλω*, to desire: the fruit of a tree which was said to be so delicious as to make those who tasted it



forsake all other desires; hence the proverb, *λωτὸν ἔφαγον*, *lotum gustavi*, I have tasted lotus. The text should read thus:—*si aqua et lotus miscetur*, which the reader will please to correct.

(24). *Apples, Poma*. Celsus is not to be understood here literally: he means fruit in general.

(25). *Larynx, Arteria aspera*, is fre-

quently used by the older authors for *trachea*.

(26). *Salt wine, vinum salsum*. Wines prepared with sea-water in different ways, during the various processes it has to undergo. See Dioscorid. lib. v. c. 108.

(27). *Defrutum*. The juice of the grape boiled down to half the quantity.

## BOOK SECOND.

(1). *Sphaceli: nigritiem in ulceribus*. This is a true Celsian phrase, which I have rendered *sphacelus*. Linden and Constantine have *nigrorum*, but this is not consistent with Celsus, for in the 2d chap. of the 7th book he has *nigritiem ossium* for exfoliation.

(2). *Phrenitis: φρενίτις*, from *φρῆν*, the mind—*phrenesis*—*phrenetiasis*—*phrenismus*—*cephalitis*—*sphacelismus*—*cephalalgia inflammatoria*. Phrensy, or inflammation of the brain.

(3). *If the skin be full*. Many copies have "*cutis plana est*," but as this diagnostic sign is taken from Hippocrates, *Prognosticorum*, 2. 19, it is there more consistently described as *cutis plena est*.

(4). *Figured motions:—mollia, figurata*. This also accords with the 13th prognostic of the 2d B. of Hippocr., and in all probability the origin of a well-known anecdote of the late Mr. Abernethy hanging on the same subject.

(5). *Fourth hour*. The Romans began their day about sun-rise; consequently their *fourth hour* would correspond with our tenth A.M. When they mention hours as a general measure of time, they mean equinoctial hours.

(6). *Jaundice—morbum arquatam, ἰκτερός, icterus, morbus regius*, the royal or arched disease. Ex Hipp. Aphor. 4. 43.

(7). *It is desirable: votum est*. Linden and the *Codex Medici* have *natum*, but I have adopted the reading of Targa, Almeloveen, and Milligan.

(8). *Strigments: strigmenta, γλοιός*

*gloios, strigmentum*; "ita dicuntur sordes, quæ in balneis, aut palæstra ab hominum cute deradabuntur, multi quondam in Medicina usus." Diosc. The proper meaning of this word is not fixed by former editors; some taking it for the sordes absterged from the skin at the baths or palæstræ; others for abraded fibres from the intestines. But they all admit that Celsus translated *ζόσματα* from the 2d Book, 23d Prognos. of Hippocrates. The ward-nurse of our hospitals will often furnish us with more expressive terms than our lexicons;—she would call it *slimy*.

(9). *Catarhæcus, &c.*: from *καταρρίω*, to flow. A disease proceeding from a discharge of phlegm.

(10). *Picu*. A depraved appetite, with a strong desire for unnatural food. It is very common to pregnant women or chlorotic girls, and by some it is said to occur in men who labour under suppressed hæmorrhoids.

(11). *Dropsy, Aqua inter cutem*. This is from the Prognostics of Hipp. 2. 2.

(12). *Epistaxis ensued: sanguis ex naribus fluit*, from the Greek verb *ἐπιστάζω*. Sæpius sanguinem e naribus stillo. Hipp. Aphor. 2. 4.

(13). *Extenuated*. From *λεπτύνω*, to attenuate, to make thin. Hipp. Epid. 3. 6.

(14). *The disease easily, et morbum facile sustinet*. Many copies have *morbum* for *morbum*, which would be contrary to the original in Hipp. de affec.

(15). *One who is hysteric: quæ locis laborat*: the words *locus* and *loci* are spe-

cially used to signify "de partibus generationi inservientibus in sexu muliebri, uti patet ex Scrib." n. 156.

(16). *When a puriform discharge takes place in that part.* This passage would induce us to believe, when taken in conjunction with what Celsus describes when treating of the diseases of the genitals, that it was nothing more nor less than gonorrhœa.

(17). *Without any remission.* There is a considerable diversity in the various printed copies of this passage, but I have followed Targa, who is supported by the opinion of Morgagni.

(18). *It is not uncommon, &c.* Linden and Almelooven have *solet etiam in adolescentibus is morbus, &c.*, but this is a departure from the original *Prorrheticus* of Hipp. 2. 1.

(19). *Fat and wrinkled: si venter est quasi fermentatus, pinguis atque rugosus.* There is an evident discrepancy in this passage; for, if the abdomen be inflated and fat, it cannot be rugous or wrinkled. Fœsius, a very learned commentator on Hippocrates, observes on this passage, that ἀπόζυμος γαστήρ, fermentatus venter, is rather an unusual expression. Celsus evidently copied this from Hippocrates, and Fœsius is of opinion that he took λιπαρός, *fat*, for ῥυπαρός, *sordid*. But this is only conjecture, therefore it is much more natural to suppose that λιπαρός was the original reading, and that ῥυπαρός had crept in since the time of Celsus.

(20). *Hydromel.* Water and honey. See note (22), book 1st.

(21). *Ptisan*, from πτίσσω, to decorticate, bruise, or pound. Barley deprived of its husks. Sometimes it is to be taken for the decoction of barley prepared in the above manner; at other times it was made by macerating barley in water, then drying it in the sun, afterwards grinding it; the flour was then boiled in water, and again dried in the sun. When used, it was boiled up again in water. This was termed the *cremor* vel succus ptisanæ, *our barley water*.

(22). *A prop is to be put under one foot.* Linden and Almelooven have a different reading of this passage. *At certe uni pedi lecti fulcrum subiiciendum est;*

others have *Funiculus subiiciendus est.* A cord is to be put under, &c.

(23). *Epilepsy*: from ἐπιληψία, *Morbus comitialis*. The disease of the assembly: so called from its attacking persons in large assemblies. It is also called the falling-sickness. The ancients always broke up the assembly when a person was seized with this disease.

(24). *The quantity to their attendants: intemperantes homines, &c.* Gr. ἀκρασία, excessus in victu. Hæc morborum promus condus, sicuti contra, *temperantia sanitatis peno dicitur*. Propterea et illa mater, vel nutrix: quemadmodum hæc contra noverca medicorum habetur, *i. e.* The ancients considered *intemperance* the *promus condus*—*maitre d'hôtel*, the *cellar-man*, or *dispenser* of diseases; and *temperance* the source of health. The former they termed the mother or nurse, the latter the *cruel* step-mother of physicians.

(25). *Laconicum*, λακωνικόν. An adjunct of the bath: a room supplied with hot vapour from a stove, where patients underwent a preparatory process before they entered the calidarium. See Bath, note (17), book 1st.

(26). *Baiæ* was a city in Campania, near the sea-side, abounding in warm springs, and celebrated by Virgil and Horace. In these groves places were constructed to retain the warm vapour arising from the earth, which had the effect which Celsus mentions.

(27). *Severe diseases, Gravis morbis.* Several of the printed copies have *non gravibus, &c.*, which would be inconsistent with the context.

(28). *Cetus*, κῆτος. This is generally translated *whale*, which is not what Celsus would have us to understand: he means large fish in general.

(29). *Phœnicopter*, φοινικόπτερος, "nomen avis est, passim in antiquis scriptoribus occurrens, sed qualem proprie significat, nondum expeditum est," Pliny. He adds further, that it was a large bird with purple pinions: its tongue and cerebellum were held to be most delicious.

(30). *Periwinkles, Cochlea* is used to signify a snail and periwinkle, without distinction. The Romans took great

pains in cultivating this kind of shell-fish, and fed them to an enormous size.

(31). *Conchylia*. This is said to be a very delicate kind of shell-fish, found in the river Indus, partaking of the properties and delicacy of the purple-fish.

(32). *Siligo*, from *σελίγνις*. The purest wheat-flour, of the most delicious taste, and extremely white.

(33). *Autopyros*, from *αὐτόπυρος*, vocatur panis domesticus, secundarius, cibarius, confusaneus.

(34). *Leguminous class*. Ut sunt *lens*, *faba*, *lupinum*, *panicum*, *milium* *pisum*, *fænum græcum*, *avena*, &c.

(35). *Salsamenta*: — Dicitur piscis marinus grandior, non squamosus, ejus caro quidem dura, variat tamen ratione ætatis. Bruer. de re Cib. See note (20), book 1st.

(36). *Lacertus*, *Aurata*, *corvus*, *oculata*, &c. Pliny and others have affixed conjectural appellations to these fishes, but I would rather retain the original nomenclature, than adopt disputed names.

(37). *Alica*, *χόνδρος*. "Quod vocabulum in genere *granum* significat. Quid proprie sit, an res factitia, an nativa aliqua seminis species, non adeo planum est." Cast. Lex. Med.

(38). *Struck barley*. *Ptisana*. Grit-ruel or barley-water. See note (21).

(39). *Pottage*, *pulicula*, *pulmentum*, *puls*, *pultica*. Etnos, *ἔννος*: "significat edulium ex omnis generis leguminibus confractis et elixis." Hipp. l. 4. This was a very ancient dish among the Romans, made of meal, water, honey, or with cheese and eggs boiled, which, according to Pliny, the Romans used for many years before they knew the use of bread.

(40). *Defrutum*. New wine boiled down to half. See note (21), book 1st.

(41). *Starch*, *amylum*. Because it is prepared without a mill.

(42). *Tragum*. A decoction of wheat prepared like barley-water.

(43). *Panicum*: *panicum miliaceum*. The systematic name of the plant which affords the millet-seed. It is esteemed as a nutritious article of diet, and enters into the composition of some of our puddings. It is much esteemed by the Italians, and extensively used in their soups, besides being made into a variety of other forms for the table.

(44). *Garum*: *γάρον*. Pickle in which fish has been preserved. It was made from a fish named garos by the Greeks, but the best was made from mackerel. Sometimes *garum* signifies the fish itself prepared in this manner.

(45). *Crustumianian*. These fruits derived their names from their planters, the countries where they were indigenous, or the person whose palate they pleased best. Columella, lib. x. c. 10.

(46). *Resinated*. It was not uncommon in Gaul, where the grapes did not thoroughly ripen on account of the climate, for the wine to turn sharp, unless mixed with resin. The resin, together with the bark of the tree, was bruised and put into the wine, which in time rendered them mellow. Vide Plin. Nat. Hist. xiv. 20.

(47). *Pectines*, Striated shell-fish.

(48). *Purpuræ*. These afforded a purple dye, but they are as yet unknown to us.

(49). *Scarus*, or char. Calamary, or sleeve-fish, lobster, locustus, polypus, pourcontrel. Grieve.

(50). *Pelorides*. Supposed to be cockles by some. They were found in a promontory in Sicily, called Pylorus.

(51). *Vinegar and Water*: *Posca*. *ἰζύκραστον*, *oxycraton*. "Compositio est ex aqua et aceto." Rhod.

(52). *Torminalia*. A fourth species of the service fruit: given in dysentery. Pliny.

(53). *Sordid wool*, *lana succida*. This is still applied in the north of Scotland as a remedy in any inflammatory affection of the throat. The most efficacious is that from the neck of a ram.

(54). *Far*. Any kind of meal, but generally restricted to that of barley.



## BOOK THIRD.

(1). *A disease of the groin: ex inguine.* Some copies have *ingluvie*, others *sanguine*; but these would not accord with the context, since Celsus is here alluding to some external cause. Hippocrates, from whom this is copied, believes us here. See Aphor. 55. sec. 4.

(2). *Apply his hand to the body: corpori manum admovere.* Linden and Almeloveen have *carpo* for *corpori*, but this is suspicious, for the word *carpus* is nowhere mentioned by Celsus. Morgagni thinks *carpo* is only an explication.

(3). *Panada, intrita.* No formula has been handed down to us by the ancients for preparing this diet. Some say that it was only another name for ptisan. Sometimes it was made with wine, at other times with milk and water; but there is little doubt about its being bread beat up with some such fluid as wine, milk, &c.

(4). *Cardiac disease, Morbus cardiacus—Cardialgia.* The cardiac passion. Ancient writers mention a disease under this name, which consists of that oppression and distress which often accompany fainting; but *morbus cardiacus* is our *typhus fever*.

(5). *Ajax and Orestes.*—Celsus here alludes to the tragedies of Sophocles and Euripides. Ajax is made to act the part of a madman among the shepherds and cattle of his rival Ulysses. Orestes was affected with madness after the murder of his mother: he fancied him-

self haunted by furies, and her amongst them. Our own poet Shakspeare abounds with similar characters.

(6). *Polenta.* A preparation of barley, Alphiton, *ἄλφιτον*. *Polenta dicitur, et in genere significat quamlibet farinam*; Hippocrates tamen restrinxit ad *hordei tostii sive fricti farinam*. Lib. 2. de Diæt. viii. 24.

(7). *Three heminae.* The hemina contained a chopin, or about three quarters of our pint.

(8). *Catapotia*, from *κατάποσις*, *deglutitio*.—Swallowing; large pills or boluses capable of being swallowed.

(9). *This schœnus*, Gr. *σχῶνον*, andropogon *schœnanthus*. The systematic name of the camel-hay, or sweet-rush. *Juncus odoratus, fœnum camelorum*. The dried plant is imported into this country from Turkey and Arabia. The root of it entered into the Mithridate of the ancients.

(10). *Comitial.* The disease of the assembly, because it frequently happens in a crowded audience: epilepsy. See note (23), book 1st.

(11). *Arched disease, morbus arquatus.* The obscurity of this name gives rise to the conjectures of critics. Some tell us it was so termed because the colour in jaundice resembles the greenness of the rainbow; others, because it bends the bodies of those afflicted with it like a bow. *Grieve*.

## BOOK FOURTH.

(1). *In contact: juncta sunt.* The anatomical student must not depend upon the description here given by Celsus; for the spleen is connected with the stomach by a ligament and vessels; with the omentum by the left kidney; with the diaphragm by an intervening portion of the peritonæum; with the pancreas by vessels; and with the colon by a ligament.

(2). *Cervicalibus: cervicalia, signi-*

fies either a bolster, pillow, or a handkerchief.

(3). *To extract blood from the nostrils: sanguinem ex naribus detrahere.* Aretæus invented an instrument having at the end a blade of grass, or made like a blade of grass, which was thrust into the nostrils to excite an hæmorrhage, in some affections of the head. This instrument he named *κατυσάδιον*, from *κατὰ* and

*iā*, a blade of grass. Aret. De Morb. Diuturn. lib. i. cap. 2.

(4). *Austere Aminæan, vinum Aminæum austrium*. This wine had the preference over all others, on account of its strength, and improving by age. In support of this opinion, Virgil says,

*Sunt et Aminæa vites, fortissimu vina.*  
Geor. ii. line 97.

(5). *Hemina of water*. The hemina was equal to three-fourths of our pint.

(6). *Liquid cerate*. This cerate was prepared with two parts of oil and one of wax, and was applied to fractures. Æginet. lib. 7. c. 27.

(7). *With Syrian (oil)*. Pliny is of opinion that this oil was a spontaneous production in some maritime parts of Syria. It flows from the trees, and is thicker than honey, thinner than resin, of a sweet flavour, and is used medicinally. *This note applies to the word SYRIAN, in the 9th line of the translation, page 255, where the number of the note was omitted.*

(8). *Synanchè*, Gr. συνάγχη, from *ένν*, intens. and *άγχω*, to suffocate or strangle. Cynanche trachealis, &c.

(9). *The lower intestines. Liquanda alvus, interdum etiam ducenda*. The printed copies differ in the reading of this sentence, but I have adopted Targa's. In explication of this passage, I would say, that by *liquanda alvus* Celsus meant that the bowels should be kept open by diet, and when he uses *ducenda* injections are understood.

(10). *Lycium*, Gr. λύκιον, dicitur succus concretus, extractus ex arbore quadam, ejusdem nominis. This concrete juice, or extract, is sometimes adulterated with the lees of oil, &c., but if good, it will burn. Dioscor. book i. c. 133.

(11). *The breast, ex pectore*. By *ex pectore* we may reasonably understand that Celsus means the stomach, and according to our nosology the disease may be termed *hæmatemesis*.

(12). *Diabrosis, osculation of vessels, corrosion*.

*Rhexis, rupture of vessels.*

*Anastomosis, the inosculation or union of vessels.*

(13). *Frankincense*, Thus, from *θύω*, to sacrifice: so named from its great use in sacrifices. The concrete juice of the juniperus lycia and pinus abies. The olibanum of the ancients.

(14). *Powder of ———*. Celsus does not say what powder, and it is probable that the copiers have omitted the word.

(15). *Cutilia and Sumbruina*. The waters of Cutilia, in the country of the Sabines, was extremely cold, and had a particular action on the body. Pliny.

(16). *Rhetic or Allobrogic*. The wines, whose qualities are here described, had their names from the countries where they were produced: the Rhetic was from the country of the Grisson; the Allobrogic from Savoy.

(17). *Signine*. From *Signia*, in Latium. This wine, from its astringent qualities, was administered in relaxations of the bowels. Pliny, Nat. Hist.

(18). *Cytisus. Laburnum. Refrigerant and diuretic*.

(19). *Ferula*. Here Celsus is to be understood botanically. *i. e.*

*Ferula Africana, galbanifera.*

*Ferula folia breviora, bastard spignel.*

*Ferula minor*, all-heal of Æsculapius, detergent and diuretic.

*Ferula*, in his 6th book, signifies a clasp or buckle.

*Ferula*, in his 8th book, signifies splints made with the stalks of this plant.

(20). *Mint in the natural state, vel mentha secundum naturam*. The commentators and copyists have made sad work of this phrase, of which it would be superfluous to give any extracts. I have adopted Targa's text, and ventured on an explication different from preceding editors.

(21). *I have already, &c.* See book i. c. 7.

(22). *To bind the bowels: quæ adstringunt alvum*. Hippocr. Lib. de Affect. 7. 10.

(23). *Two draughts of this decoction: Duas potiones sumat*. The indefatigable research and great critical acumen of

Targa were inadequate to adjust the reading of this passage. See his note 54.

(24). *Tetrapharmacum*, Gr. τετραφάρμακον. In genere dicitur medicamentum compositum ex quatuor simplicibus. Tribuitur vero diversis compositionibus, ut *emplastro*, quod alias βασιλικόν, basilicum vocatur, &c. Gal.

(25). *Myrapian* pear; so termed on account of its near resemblance to myrrh in flavour. Pliny.

(26). *Peppered vinegar*. Etiam in *pipperatum*, id est, acetum pipere conditum. Columella.

(27). *Eaten with these*. Est quid ex his edendum est. I may truly say that "verba textus immutare, aut ullo modo a Targa abalienare, nobis sacerrima fuit religio." Yet it is very evident that the latter *est* is redundant.

(28). *If the hardness remain*. Si durities manet. It is rather singular that Celsus should mention a hardness remaining here, when no notice is taken of it in the previous part of this chapter. Targa is of opinion that this chapter is very much corrupted.

(29). *If the discharge be malignant*. Si maligna purgatio est, subjicienda sunt. Morgagni observes, that in the margin opposite to this chasm are written these words: *Desunt in vetustissimo exemplari duo folia*. In this also, where the contents of the chapters were prefixed, he found the following:

Vulva exulcerata est.

De vesica.

De calculi in vesica.

In omni dolore vesicæ.

Morg. Ep. 2. Ep. 3.

(30). *Shower bath*. Perfundi aqua egelida. I have ventured to render this by the *shower bath*, although the literal translation would be *to be poured over*.

(31). *Greeks termed sarcophagus*. Quem Græci σαρκόφαγον vocant. This stone is found at Assos, a city of Troas, and is said to possess the property of consuming a dead body in forty days, bones and every thing, the teeth excepted. Pliny, lib. 36. c. 17.

(32). *Acopum*, from ἄκονον. Omne id dicitur in genere, quod tollit lassitudinem: κόπον, dolor. In qua significatione usus est Hippoc. 2 Aphor. 48.

## BOOK FIFTH.

(1). *Chalcitis*, the residual oxide after procuring anhydrous sulphuric acid from the sulphate of iron.

(2). *Plumbum combustum* was of uncertain composition. Thin layers of lead burnt, either with sulphur or white lead, or even with barley, will produce either sulphuret, oxide, or subcarbonate of lead, or a mixture of all. Pliny, xxxiv. Diosc. v. 51.

(3). *Misy*. A metallic residue allied to chalcitis, generated at the same time, and possessing similar properties. The best comes from Cyprus, is of a gold colour, hard, and when broken shining and stellated. Pliny, xxxiv. 12. May it not be the sesqui-sulphuret of iron?

(4). *Acanthinum*. Acacia vera of Linn.

(5). *Psyllium*. Plantago psyllium of Linn. from ψύλλος, a flea; is so called because it was thought to destroy fleas.

(6). *Propolis* is a gluey matter of a yellow colour, possessed of smell, and nearly allied to wax, said to exist in honeycombs for the purpose of retaining heat. Dale calls it bee-bread, others call it bee-gluce.

(7). *Bdellium*, from Bedallah, Arab. A gum-resin resembling impure myrrh: its source is still wrapt in obscurity, but it is most probably derived from some member of the natural order of amyrideæ.

(8). *Enanthe*, from οἶνός, wine, and ἄνθος, a flower, because its flowers smell like the vine. The name of a genus of umbelliferous plants, possessed of powerfully poisonous qualities. Enanthe



crocata, the plant here alluded to, is the most poisonous umbelliferous plant known.

(9). *Coccum gnidum*. This is supposed to be the berry of the *Daphne mezereum*, or laureola; but like many other old terms, it is clothed with the veil of obscurity.

(10). *Lapis hæmatites* is a mineral of a reddish colour, consisting principally of peroxide of iron, now called red hæmatite, or fibrous red ironstone.

(11). *Minium*. According to Pliny, this term was applicable, among the ancients, to bisulphuret of mercury, as well as the deutoxide of lead: in the present case the bisulphuret of mercury is the substance implied, as is obvious from the fact, that while the preparations of lead have an astringent effect, those of mercury possess purgative properties.

(12). *Æs combustum*. Sulphuretum cupri. A sulphuret of copper—copper scales.

(13). *Cinis*. Oxydum zinci. Oxyde of zinc.

(14). *Hypocistis*. A plant growing from the root of the *Cistis*. The juice is inspissated like the acacia, and has the same properties. Diosc. lib. i. c. 123.

(15). *Diphryges*. Roasted Pyrites. Dioscorides describes three species of it. One of the metallic, found only in Cyprus, which is first dried in the sun, and then burnt by laying sticks all round it. Hence its name, from being twice toasted. A second is found at the bottom of the smelting copper furnaces. The third is the Pyrite Stone calcined for several days in a furnace, until it partakes of the colour of cinnabar. It is highly astringent and desiccative. But it was entirely thrown aside when Schröder wrote; on which Ruland made the following severe remark. "Proh dolor! nulla jam diphrygis est nota chirurgis, imo neque habetur in pharmacopolis, adeo res bonæ contemptæ jacent socordia. Utinam talia revocarent ad usum medicum nostri physici! sed surdis narro fabulam."

(16). *Salamander*, Gr. *σαλαμάνδρα*. The ancients comprehended under this word an animal of the lizard kind, and also a mineral; asbestos. There is little doubt but

it is the animal to which Celsus alludes, since Dioscorides ascribes escharotic properties to the incinerated remains of this animal. The salamander, like the phoenix, has been the subject of many a ridiculous story. Paracelsus says that—"Salamandri vocantur spiritus ignem inhabitantes, vel ignei homines." Synonymous with salamandri were the Saldini, "homines, quos influentia ignis sustentat, et ex elemento ignis nutritur, uti fuit illa gentilis mulier, nomine Ziser, quæ statim, atque infirmabatur, sese in ignem conjiciens, reficiebatur, et convalescebat; in eo sedens gaudensque, tanquam in aliquo balneo." Lex. Cast.

(17). *Spodium*, *σποδίον*. Spodium was the scrapings of furnaces; that which was generated in gold furnaces was reckoned the best for the eyes.

(18). *Phrygian stone*, *φρύγιος*. A stone used by the dyers of Phrygia, hence its name. Dioscorides thus describes it. "Quidam lapis in Phrygia et Cappadocia occurrunt, vel cleba pumicosa, pallida, modice gravis, non solida, intercedentibus albis segmentis. Vinum habet exsiccandi, astringendi, et cicatricem inducendi."

(19). *Scissile stones*, *σχιστὸν*, schistos. Dicitur affinis lapis hæmatitæ, pallidior tamen colore, et virtute infirmior. Dioscor.

(20). *Burned paper*, *charta combusta*. The incineration of the papyrus plant, or paper reed.

(21). *Burned lees*, *fax combusta*. Subcarbonas potassæ purissimus.

(22). *Asteracæ*. This word is variously written, ASTERACE, ASTERIACE, ASTERICA, and Targa says in a note on it, "Qui monstrabit quid sit *Astreace*, erit mihi magnus Apollo." Milligan very modestly says that the reward was too great; "Tanto præmio non opus erat;" and undertakes to prove, I think very satisfactorily, that it was nothing else than ochrey brown iron stone. "Ochra enim nihil est nisi oxydum ferri, cum valde incerta ratione aluminis et silicæ ratione conjunctum;" and then he quotes Pliny, who says, "sæpius pulvis est, quem veteres torrendo in rubricam, seu oxydum ferri rubrum, convertabant. Hinc modo lapis, modo terra dicta est ochra. Optima ochra Attica fuit, sed erat altera e Samo advecta." Pliny, xxxv. c. 6.

Again, in Dioscorides it is described as being found "inter saxa venas scrutantes, pictoribus inutilis, sed quæ in medicina eundem usum habet, quem Eretria creta. Verum hæc sunt ipsissima DIOSCORIDIS verba de terra SAMIA, *Astere* dicta: ubi terræ Eretriæ esse dicitur 'astringere, refrigerareque leviter, *concava explorare, cruenta glutinare.*' Nunc cum *Asterace* carnem alat, et ulcus impleat, quis dubitabit ochram asteracem CELSI, et Dioscoridis terram *astera*, idem significare quod *ochra Samia*, Plinii, utriusque manifestissimi excerptoris? Nihil enim in textu mutandum esse liquet, et Celsum tantum a nomine communiore hujus terræ *Samia*, *astere*, quo ipse vi, 6—12. utitur, hoc loco recessisse, ut eam distingueret ab ochra Attica, et infinitis pene aliis quas in usu esse noverit. Celsi enim tempore nulla vera ochra Attica obtineri potuit. Vitruv. vii. 7. at infinita varietas vice ejus vœnibat. Elegantius, ergo, accuratius multo et prudentius ASTERACE, Anglice, *healing star ochre*, hic nominavit.

(23). *Eretrian earth, Terra Eretria.* "Est species terræ, quæ nomen habet ab urbe Eubœæ, *Eretria*, sita prope Chalcidem. Sunt duæ ipsi colorum differentia, alba et cinerea. Modice pinguis. Vim habet extergendi validam; si lavetur, aut uratur et postea lavetur, magis adhuc siccatur." Vide Dioscor. l. v. c. 171.

(24). *Poppy tears, papaveris lacrima.* It may not be uninteresting to subjoin the method in which the *opos*, or juice of the poppy is collected. The poppy-heads are cut with the leaves, then pressed, and afterwards beat up in a mortar to form troches. This is called *meconium*, and is weaker than the *opos*. But whoever desires to gather the juice, must proceed thus. After the heads are moistened with the dew, let him cut round the asterisk with a knife, but not divide them, and from the sides make straight incisions in the surface, and draw off the juice that flows into a shell, which is to be repeated from time to time. This also is to be rubbed in a mortar and put by for use. Dioscorid. lib. iv. c. 647.

(25). *Scoria of lead, plumbi recrementum.* Gr. *σκαρία*. Sordes metalli, vel recrementum ejus. The dross of lead. It has the same properties as calcined lead.

(26). *Dry tears of* —, *lacrimæ aridæ.* Targa is of opinion, that a word has been omitted by the copier, and proposes to substitute *resinæ*, then it would read *lacrimæ aridæ resinæ*.

(27). *Struthium*, from *στρούθις*, a sparrow: a plant so named from the resemblance of its flowers to an unfledged sparrow. *Imperatoria ostruthium*, or *master-wort*. This word occurs in the concluding sentence of book v. c. 18. sec. 2, but the number was omitted.

(28). *Cachryos*, from *κάρυς*. A variety of significations are attached to this word. Dioscorides says it is the *semen rorismarini*, imo ipsum etiam *rorismarinum* sive *Libanotidem*. Gorreus says it is the germinatio arborum quarundam, videlicet quercus, abietis, picæ juglandis, &c. Theophrastus says it is *Hordeum* tostum in furno, ut facilius commoli, et in farinam redigi possit. But the most prevalent opinion is, that it is the fruit of the *libanotis fructifera*, by some called the *zea* or *campanema*. Its properties are aromatic and deobstruent, which would seem to accord with the intention of Celsus in ordering it. Dioscorid.

(29). *Viscum*, bird-lime, derived from the Greek *ἴκτε*, altered by the Æolians into *βίανος*. It signifies also the fruit of the miseltoe, or *viscum album* of Linn. This singular parasitical plant is found most commonly on apple-trees, also on the pear, hawthorn, oak, &c. It is supposed to be propagated by birds, particularly the fieldfare and thrush, which feed upon its berries, the seeds of which pass through the intestines unchanged; and along with the excrement adhere to the branches of trees, where they vegetate. The viscus album acquired much fame during the time of the Druids. It was said to possess many medicinal virtues by those knavish quacks, but it has deservedly fallen into disrepute, and the colleges of London and Edinburgh have expunged it from their list of the materia medica. The fruit of this plant yields a very tenacious, gluey substance, resembling boiled linseed oil, and was used by the ancients in medicine, as well as for the purpose of ensnaring birds.

(30). *Crocomagma*. Scilicet, croci et aromaticorum collavies, post oleum crocinum expressum, residua. It retained some of the virtues of the saffron, and

would be in some measure impregnated with the aromatics used in the composition of that ointment. Vide Dioscor. lib. i. c. 26.

(31). —'s dung, *stercoris*. The dungs of various animals were considered excellent remedies among the ancients; so that there is some uncertainty as to which our author meant. I suspect it to be bullock's dung; but that the reader may judge for himself, I have mentioned in the following table the various medicinal excrements employed by Celsus and Dioscorides.

<i>The Diachorema of the</i>	
Bullock	cures inflammations, disease of the hip, and struma.
Bull	— prolapsus uteri and petechiæ.
Goat	— jaundice and difficult parturition.
Sheep	— epinyctides, thymi, burns, hæmoptides, and partial luxation.
Ass	} — hæmorrhages and the scorpion's wound.
Horse	
Pigeon	— struma, carbuncle, and burns.
Domestic Fowl	} — envenomed fungi and colic.
Stork	
Vulture	— assists parturition.
Mouse	cures baldness, stone, and costiveness.
Dog	— diarrhœa.
Human	} drives away inflammations and itself agglutinates.
a. recent,	
b. dry,	cures angina.
Crocodile	favours feminine beauty.
Lizard	purges the bowels.
Swallow	burns.

(31 a). *Thapsia Asclepias*, from *Thapsus*, the island where it was found. The deadly carrot. The root operates violently both upwards and downwards, but is not used in the present practice.

(32). *Erysimum*. *Erysimi officinalis*, from *ἐρύω*, to draw, from its well-known property of producing vesication. The systematic name of the hedge mustard.

(33). *There is another for the same purpose.* Ad eosdem. Targa retained Ad eosdem "*digitos*," although he is of opinion that "*digitos irrepsit in contextum a malo interprete.*"

(34). *Peucedanum officinalis* L. from *πίονα*, the pine-tree, from the resemblance of its leaves to those of the pine.

The systematic name of the hog's fennel. The root is the officinal part; it has a strong fœtid smell, resembling that of sulphureous solutions, and an acrid, unctuous, bitterish taste. In spring, the fresh root yields a considerable proportion of a yellow juice, which dries into a solid gummy resin, which retains the taste and odour of the root.

(35). *Æsypum*, Gr. *οἰσύπη*, *æsype*, proprie est sordes et finus lanæ circa nates ovium adhærens, uti patet ex Hippocrat. lib. de morb. Sordes pinguedinosæ lanarum, per lotiones iteratas de lana succida extractæ: fere sudoris reliquiæ fuit æsypum. Plin. 29. 2. The æsypum was obtained by repeated washing of the sordid or greasy wool in warm water. This fat oil floated on the surface, and was precipitated afterwards by adding sea-water. It is said to have a warm and astringent property, and was employed by the ancients for aiding the granulation of ulcers. Dioscorid. lib. 2. c. 272.

(36). *A boiled solution of the sulphate of copper*—*atramenti sutorii cocti*. Dioscorides mentions a species prepared in Spain, which they called *χαλκανθον ἐφθον*—*atramentum sutorium coctum*.

(37). *Halicacabus*, from *ἄλς*, salt, and *κακῆς*, nightshade, so named because it grows on the sea-shore.

(38). *Hypericum*, from *ὑπὲρ*, over, and *εἶκων*, an image or spectre. It obtained this appellation because it was supposed to possess the power of expelling evil spirits. The common *St. John's wort*.

(39). *Cannian figs*, from Cannea, a city of Ætolia, mentioned by Cicero, in his book *De Divinatione*.

(40). *Lily ointment*, *unguento Susino*. In the Persian and Syrian languages, the lily was called *Susa*, and the unguentum susinum is the lily ointment. The best was made from the Syrian, Egyptian, and Pamphylian lilies, when this language prevailed. Hence the oriental name was adopted in the Latin. This ointment was made first by steeping them in the oil of myrrh, calamus, and cardamom. They were afterwards pressed out, and again put into the oil for twenty-four hours, and then expressed, and the oil which remained was lily ointment. Dioscorid. lib. 1. 53.



(41). *Ignis sacer, ignem sacrum*. Some believed that Celsus called an erysipelas an ignis sacer, but he has erysipelas under its proper term, cap. 28th of this book. Fabricius ab Aquapendente and Wiseman understand by his ignis sacer the milia herpeticæ, as our author describes it, cap. 28th, sec. 4. Grieve.

(42). *Malabathrum, Μαλαβάθρον*, from Malabar, and *betre*, a leaf. *Laurus Cassia*. An ointment was made of this aromatic leaf, into which myrrh, spike-nard, and other ingredients entered.

(43). *Sil. Ochra quædam, in metallis argenteis Atticæ optima nata*. *Brown iron ochre*. Jameson.

(44). *Hypocistis, hypocistidis succi*. *Asurum hypocistis*. A parasitical plant growing in warm climates on the roots of the *cistus*. The juice is a mild astringent, of no peculiar flavour. Pliny.

(45). *Stacte, στακτήν*, from *στάξω*, to distil. This term is applied to a particular kind of myrrh, which flows or falls in drops from the trees. Some writers use this term for a more liquid kind of amber, and in this sense it was employed by Scribonius Largus and Paulus Ægineta.

(46). *Thlaspi, thlaspi campestre*, the systematic name of the Mithridate mustard, or *bursæ pastoris* — shepherd's pulse.

(47). *Pontic root, Radicis Ponticæ*. *Rheum Rhaponticum*. The systematic name of the Rhapontic rhubarb; *rhabarbarum Dioscoridis*; *rhabarbarum antiquorum*. The Rhapontic root is of a dusky colour on its surface, and of a loose spongy texture; it is more astringent and less purgative than rhubarb. "Hanc non rhabarbi hodierni radicem esse, plane ostenderunt." Wood. Med. Bot.

(48). *Acopa, α* from, and *κόπος*, pain or weariness. An anodyne. The *Menyanthes trifoliata* of Linnæus, or buck-bean. Hooper's Dict.

(49). *Aspalathus Xylo aloes, lignum aloes*. The tree which bears this name is not yet scientifically known.

(50). *Catapotia*. Pills or boluses, see note (8), book third.

(51). *Take a handful. Manipulus, qui manu comprehendi potest*. I have expunged *manipulus* from the text, as evidently redundant, see Targa, note 22.

(52). *Arteriace*. Tracheal or pectoral remedies.

(53). *Sutures, &c. Imponendæ vero FIBULÆ sunt*. *Fibula*, literally translated, signifies a clasp or buckle in classic authors; but the antiquarian critics have yet to determine the nature and form of Celsus's fibula. *Qualis esset fibula antiqua vehementer disputarunt auctores*. FALLOPIUS nihil nisi communem suturam esse, hodie interrupted suture dictam, haud sine gravi veri specie, contendit. Contra, GUIDO, uncas ad literæ S formam incurvatos. Vide Fab. Aquapend. de Vulneribus.

(54). *Rhaptousa*. Celsus has not mentioned this plaster hitherto, neither is the composition known. Nisi forte significatur compositio illa quæ describitur sect. 6. cap. xix. et vel ibi *ῥάπτουσαν*, vel hic *παγνύουσαν* legendum est. Targa, note 93.

(55). *The Psyllians. Psylli*. Agatharchides describes a people called the *Psylli*, who possessed a peculiar humour in their bodies which was destructive to serpents. They also tried the chastity of their wives by exposing their children to the fiercest of these creatures. Of course, the legitimates were approached with impunity, while the base-born were stung to death. I suspect this may be termed one of the vulgar errors of Pliny, lib. 3. c. 2.

(56). *Cerastes. Coluber cerastes*, from *κεραστής*, *coluber cornutus*, a horned serpent, resembling those of a ram, with a very small head.

(57). *Dipsas. Coluber dipsas*, from *δίψω*, sitis, thirst, quod morsu suo magnam sitim inferat. Genus viperæ, a kind of serpent or adder, whose sting causeth death by thirst.

(58). *Hæmorrhoids. Aut hæmorrhoids percussit*, from *αἷμα*, blood, and *ῥόος*, a flux, The bloody serpent, whose bite produces death from hæmorrhage. *Coluber Redi? Lin.*

(59). *Chersydros. Coluber chersæa*, ab *χέρσος*, terra, et *ῥῦδω*, aqua. An amphi-

bious serpent. Duabus esse insigne linguæ animal producit.

(60). *Phalangium*, Gr. φαλάγγιον. *Ara-næi genus—Aranea tarantula*. A spider which has on each leg three knots or joints, whose sting is deadly. Its antidote is termed *phalangites*, or spiderwort, an herb that cures the bite of the tarantula.

(61). *Thymium*, Gr. θύμνος. A kind of wart about the size of a bean, resembling in form the leaf of the thyme plant.

(62). *Ignis sacer*. A species of herpes, or more correctly the nearest representation of erysipelas. Herpes zoster of Bateman.

(63). *Chironian ulcers*, from Χείρων, the Centaur, who is said to have discovered the first remedy for them. A malignant ulcer, most difficult to cure.

(64). *Or yeast, vel fermentum*. There is some doubt whether this meant yeast or fermented dough. Quid sit, obscurum. Communiter, sed strictius justo tribuitur in panificio massæ farinacæ,

quæ acorem contraxit. Ex Galeno, lib. 6. de S. F.

(65). *Propolis*, Gr. πρόπολις. Dicitur crassior materia apum, flava, odorata, styracem referens, ceræ finitima, gluten in alveorum foribus repertum. Sorte de résine d'un brun rougeâtre, dont les abeilles bouchent les fentes de leur ruches. The gummy wax of bees, with which they cover the interior crannies of their hive—bee-glue. Propolis also signifies the suburbs of a city.

(66). *Boiled in water, and mixed with* ——. There appears to be a hiatus in the text here, and a variety of plausible emendations have been offered, which I think unnecessary to quote.

(67). *Git, gith*. *Nigella Romana*, Gr. Μελάνθιον. Piper nigrum. Black pepper.

(68). *Leprosy*. *Vitiligo*, ἀλφιδες, μίλας, λεύκη. Albus, melas, et leuca. Three species of leprosy. *Alphi*, ex humorum vitiositate, quæ in cute sunt, quemadmodum etiam de *lepra* planum est oriuntur. *Melas*, vel nigra lepra. *Leuca*, lepra candida; vel magis albida est.

## BOOK SIXTH.

(1). *Burnt antimony, stibis cocti*. The antimony was rubbed over with suet and put into the fire, till the suet was consumed. When taken out it was to be extinguished in the milk of a woman who had a male child, or in old wine. Therefore this product was an imperfect oxide of antimony with sulphur. Dioscorid. v. 53.

(2). *Serrated probe, asperato specillo*. This instrument is delineated by Heister. Paulus Ægineta, treating of the same disorder, mentions it under the name of βλεφαροξύστον, blepharoxyston; that is, an instrument for scraping the eye-lids.

(3). *Strigil, per strigilem instillatur*. The word strigil is usually termed a flesh-brush, curry-comb, scraper, &c.; but in the sense which Celsus uses it, it means nothing more than a small ca-

nula, tube, or syringe; the same as his aurifusorium specillum, an ear-syringe.

(4). *Ear probe, oriculario specillo*. From the use intended to be made of this instrument here, as well as in other places, it is evident he meant an ear-picker, or perhaps a forceps.

(5). *Pine-wood: cum tæda vel tæda pingui*. A species of pine—*pini sylvestris*—abounding with resin. The tæda was taken from the heart of the tree, when it grew to be so fat and full of juice that it burned like a torch, in which sense it is most frequently used by the classic authors.

(6). *Sory, soreos, σωρό*. Sory est mineralis, vel medicamentum metallicum, lapidosum, odore tetro, colore nigro, cognitionem habens eum chalcitide melantheria et misy, utpote in iisdem metal-

lis proveniens. Found in Africa, Spain, and Cyprus. Dioscor. v. c. 119.

(7). *The foreskin more easily reflected. Et cutis facilius ducetur.* Who can read attentively the whole of this 13th chapter without observing the closest resemblance of these diseases described by Celsus to those now so familiar to us under the name of venereal? What was the disease "*qua Sylla obiit*"?

(8). *Sometimes these ulcers penetrate to the nerves.* It is difficult to comprehend what our author means here by *nerves*, for although he frequently uses the term *nerves* to signify *tendons* and *ligaments*, of which there are none in this organ, he never employs it in the sense we do, specifically for the nerves.

(9). *But if cancer or chancre. At si cancer ipsum colem occupavit.* Καρκίνος, *karkinos*. A variety of significations are attached to this word. First, it designated a crab; 2dly, a sign in the zodiac; 3dly, a shoe or sock; 4thly, a kind of retrograde verse; 5thly, cancer was termed a wolf, *lupus*, by the Romans, because it eats away the flesh like a wolf. The Greeks termed it *καρκίνωμα*, *carcinoma*. 6thly, a kind of many-tailed bandage ap-

plied to the head. But *cancer* or *chancre*, in the sense our author employs it,—a creeping, eating, phagedenic sore on the penis,—tends very much to support the opinion I ventured to express in note (7), just above; that it is a true venereal chancre: if not, what is it?

(10). *Æsypus*, from οἶς, a sheep, and ῥύπος, sordes: described more fully in note (35), book 6th.

(11). *Condyloma, -atis*, from κόνδυλος, a tubercle or knot. A warty excrescence which appears about the anus and vagina of both sexes. There are several species of condylomata, which have received names from their appearances, such as *figus*, *crystæ*, *thymus*, from their resemblance to a fig, &c. Hæmorrhoides quoque cæcæ vel protuberantia venæ hæmorrhoidalis vocatur κορυδαλῆς αἱματῆς. Hipp. de Hæm.

(12). *Pterygion, πτερύγιον*. Pterygion properly signifies a little wing. Unde *Alæ narium vocantur πτερύγια*; also a membrane growing from the corner of the eye,—the flesh receding from the nails of the fingers and toes. Sometimes it assumes the form of a fungous excrescence growing over the nail.

## BOOK SEVENTH.

(1). *Contusions, luxata.* It may appear rather singular that Celsus should have made use of the word *luxatio*, instead of *collisio* or *contusio*, as more applicable: and it is no less singular that in treating of luxations of the bones, in the 8th book, he employs *de loco, sedibus suis moveri, excidere, elabi, prolabi, loco suo non esse, expelli, propelli, procidere, delabi, incidere, recedere, promoveri, labi, prorumpere, prodire*, but never once uses *luxo*, or its derivatives.

(2). *The thread should be made of new lint or flax, linum crudum.* That is, such as has never been boiled in any lixivium. Fabricius ab Aquapendente.

(3). *The cyathiscus of Diocles.* Διοκλεῖον κυαθίσκον. Cyathiscos dicitur specilli chirurgici pars altera concava in parvi cyathi modum, qua aliquid vel extrahi, vel infundi potest. Ægin.

(4). *Become offensive, et offendunt.* De auribus loquens in oriente quidem et viris, aurum gestare eo loci decus existimetur. Mos iste a Romanis receptus non fuit: itaque aures in viro perforatæ offendeant, quod advenam, et libertinum ostenderent. Plin. Hist. Nat. Juvenal also reproves this effeminate custom in his first satire, ver. 104.

*Natus ad Euphratem, molles quod in aure fenestræ*

*Arguerint, licet ipse negem.*

Born near the Euphrates, which the soft holes in my ears will show, although I should deny it myself.

(5). *Two splints, duabus regulis*, Gr. κανόν, canon. Two pieces of wood resembling a parenthesis ( ), or what a farrier would term *branks*.

(6). *Neither has that fluid, &c.* *Ac ne quidem humori, &c.* Celsus is evi-



dently mistaken here, for Sir Astley Cooper maintains that "*hydrocele is an accumulation of water in the tunica vaginalis testis.*"

(7). *Lest the adhesion be incomplete. Ne parum glutinentur.* Are we not led to suppose that Celsus knew of union by the first intention or adhesion, as well as the surgeons of the present day? He is even more explicit in the first paragraph of the 6th chapter of book 8th, for there he says, *antequam pus oriatur, imponendum glutinans medicamentum est: sæpe enim suppurationem prohibet, et aurem confirmat.*

(8). *The ischia, cutis debet incidi super cervicem vesicæ, &c.* This operation has given rise to a great variety of opinions on the nature and form of the first and second incisions. Some will have the first or lunated incision to be concave towards the rectum, and with equal reasoning others maintain, from the word *coxæ* being used for the *ilîa* as well as the *ischia*, that it was concave towards the scrotum.

An equal diversity of opinion prevails about the second or transverse incision made through the neck of the bladder.

Some will have it to be transverse with respect to the first incision; others have supposed that it was made transverse to the course of the urethra, that across the neck of the bladder. It is rather singular, that subsequent authors, such as Galen, Oribasius, and Ægineta, have taken no notice of this operation as described by Celsus, although the latter (Ægineta) describes it almost in the same way as now performed.

(9). *Crotchet made, uncus factus.* Although our author makes use of the word *uncus*, to designate an instrument whose use is the same, yet it must not be confounded with his *uncus* for extracting a dead fœtus, which is of a different form.

(10). *The hips and thighs, coxæ ac femina.* Targa followed former editors, and has *cervices ac femina*, of which inaccuracy he must have been conscious, when he made the following remark:—"Cui bono cervicis inunctio?" Yet, with a fidelity to his author, which would have been more creditable "in the breach than in the observance," he retained *cervices*.

## BOOK EIGHTH.

(1). *The maxilla inferior is moveable. Maxilla vero est mobile os.* All the copies which I have examined have *molle os*. Even Targa, although he suspected the word to be corrupted from *mobile*, and went so far as to consult his friend Morgagni on it, yet he had the courage to depart from his original. I have rejected *molle* for *mobile*, and in this I am borne out by Celsus himself in the conclusion of the sentence, by his addition of—"Solaque ea movetur—and it is the only bone that is moveable."

(2). *Two prominences—tuberibus exasperetur.* Morgagni justly suspected these two words to have been marginal explications originally, but afterwards adopted in the text by transcribers. Duo verba, *tuberibus exasperetur*, redundare videntur, minimeque cum præcedentibus, sursum deorsum versum cohærere. Morg. Epist. 7.

(3). *Thence the six lower—Inde sex in-*

*feriores.* Here we have the clearest evidence of Targa's pertinacity in adhering to his original, *undecim inferiores usque ad imum pectus perveniunt*: although he adds in a note—"Lego, sex. Septem omnino costæ sunt, quas veras nominant, de quibus Celsus loquitur." Targa. Vide note 51, book 8.

(4). *At the top of the first rib, &c.* There is no sense to be made of this passage in any copy that I have seen; neither do the emendations of former Editors tend in the least to lessen the obscurity. I have followed Targa as the least faulty.

(5). *Modiolus, or trepan.* This instrument is well delineated by Scultetus in his "*Armamentarium Chirurgicum*," plate 2, fig. 3, 4, 5, and 6.

(6). *Perforator, terebris.* This instrument was principally used for raising depressed portions of bone. The patent

cork-screw will give the nearest approach to its form. It is also delineated by Scultetus, tab. III., fig. 1.

(7). *Meningo-phylax*, Μηνιγγόφυλακα. Meningophylaca, from Μηνιγξ, the duramater, or membrane of the brain, and φυλακή, a shield or safeguard; brain-guard.

(8). *Retained with less certainty. Minus fideliter continetur.* Hippocrates, from whom this is taken, adds, that in a luxation of the humerus in a lax habit of body, the actual cautery should be used. He therefore proposed to apply the remedy

to that part towards which the bone is liable to be protruded. Hippocrat. De Articul. p. 787.

(9). *Under the patient's arm-pit—humerum genu sub ala ejus cogere, &c.* Some copies have *genu*, and I have no doubt but Celsus also meant to follow Hippocrates in this, as he has done so much through the work. Targa takes notice of the various readings of this passage in a note, where he has this passage:—“*humerum genu sub ala ejus cogere.*” I have inadvertently admitted *genu*, with *his knee*, into my translation, and omitted it in the text.





# I N D E X.

Literæ I. II. tomos notant, Arabicæ figuræ paginas.

## A.

- ABDOMINIS** viscerum structura et positio, I. 241. abdomen, si de interiore parte ruptum sit, quâ ratione curandum, II. 292.
- Abortionis** periculum est si subito mam-  
mæ emacuerunt, I. 97.
- Abrotonum** urinam movet, I. 213.
- Abscessuum** curatio, II. 109. absces-  
sus: si altius malum est, considerari  
debet, an locus sit nervosus, an non,  
224.
- Absinthium** stomacho aptissimum est,  
I. 135. urinam movet, 141.
- Abstinentia** nimia sæpe inutilis, I. 29.  
ejus duo genera, 119. tempestiva la-  
borantem juvat, 119. abstinentia est  
maxima necessaria primo triduo  
quotidianæ, 188. est utendum, II. 81.
- Acacia** ex aceto liquata, I. 302. sangui-  
nem supprimit, II. 3. ejus succus  
exedit corpus, II. 7.
- Acanthinum** gummi glutinat vulnus, II. 3.
- Acerba** mali succi sunt, I. 132.
- Acetabulum** (*mensura*), I. 300, et aliis  
locis.
- Acetum** exceptum ore reficit æstuentes,  
I. 34. in media materia est, 128. ma-  
li succi est, 132. refrigerat, 137. ad-  
stringit alvum, 141. simul refrigerat  
et reprimit, 143.
- Acia:** utraque (sc. sutura et fibula) opti-  
ma est ex acia molli, non nimis torta,  
II. 67.
- Ἀχάριστον**, Theodoti collyrium, II. 145.
- Acida** mali succi sunt, I. 132. acria  
sunt, 133. pituitam extenuant, 134.  
stomacho aptissima, 134.
- Acopa** utilia nervis sunt, II. 47. ad ul-  
cera purganda et implenda, 47. ad  
sacrum ignem, 48.
- Acorum** urinam movet, I. 213.
- Acria** omnia mali succi sunt, I. 132. pi-  
tuitam extenuant, 134.
- Ἀεροχορδόνες**, I. 58.
- Ἀεροχορδών:** diversa genera, II. 120.
- Actiones** naturales, I. 6.
- Acutus** morbus, I. 145. sqq.
- Adeps** ex fele calefacit, I. 144. adeps  
pus concoquit et movet, II. 4, 8. mol-  
lit, 12. liquata ex inferioribus parti-  
bus infundenda, I. 296. adeps leoni-  
na, 126, II. 39. suilla, I. 308, 316.  
II. 35. anserina, II. 39, 46, 392.  
adeps omenti sensu caret, I. 243.
- Adhæsiō**, II. 75.
- Adolescentia** magis patet acutis morbis,  
I. 54. adolescentium morbi, 59.
- Adstringentia**, I. 39. 140.
- Adstrictum** febre corpus, quæ agenda,  
I. 173.
- Adurentia**, II. 8.
- Adusta**, quomodo curanda, II. 95.
- Adustum**, vel medicamento vel ferro,  
II. 9.
- Æger** alendus serius in acutis morbis,  
I. 148. alendus maturius in longis  
morbis, 148. a negotiis abstinendum  
phthise, 222.
- Ægilops**, (*vitium oculi*), II. 250.
- Ἀγκυλοβλήφαροι**, II. 249.
- Ær:** amplo conclavi tenendus æger, quo  
multum et purum aërem trahere pos-  
sit, I. 176. fenestris aliquantum aper-  
tis, parvum aërem recipere, 279.
- Æris** squamam pro alvi ductione antiqui  
dabant, I. 108.
- Ærugo**, reprimit, II. 4. purgat, 5. ro-  
dit, 6. exedit corpus, 7. adurit, 8.  
crustas ulceribus inducit, 9.
- Æsculapins**, I. 1.
- Æs** combustum rodit, II. 6. mollit, 12.  
elotum, 145.
- Æstas**, periculosa, I. 53. æstate, quis  
cibus aptissimus, I. 41.
- Ætas** media tutissima est, I. 54. ætatis  
quæ partes tutæ vel morbis opportunæ  
sint, 54. ætates morbos variæ varios  
habent, I. 58.
- Affectus** mutant corpora, I. 13.
- Agamemnon**, I. 1.
- Agitatio** corporis febre prodest, I. 173.
- Agni** quæ partes leviores sunt, I. 127.
- Ἀγκυτῆρ** fibula; imponendæ fibulæ sunt,  
ἄγκυτῆρας Græci nominarunt, II. 66.
- Ἀγκύλαι**, articuli contracti, II. 216.
- Αἰγίλωπα**, II. 250.
- Αἰμορροΐδες**, II. 59.
- Ajax** insanienus, I. 202.
- Alcyonium** rodit, II. 6. exedit, 7.

- Alexandrinum emplastrum, II. 32. 68. 86.  
 Alica boni succi est, I. 131. crassiorem pituitam facit, 134. elota stomacho aptissima est, 134. elota potest dari febricitantibus, 171.  
 Alimenti plus est in pane, I. 125.  
 Ἀλυσπαινῆ emplastra, II. 27.  
 Allium mali succi est, I. 132. acre est, I. 135. inflat, 136. calefacit, 137.  
 Allobrogicum vinum, I. 272.  
 Aloë, II. 3.  
 Ἀλωπεκία, II. 135.  
 Ἀλφος, II. 129.  
 Alumen lana circumdatum, I. 302. sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. vulnera aperit, 4. exedit corpus, 8. cum pice et cera mixtum, I. 316. rodit, II. 6. Ægyptium, 116. Melinum rotundum, 216. rotundum evocat et educit, 71. scissile adurit, 8. in foramen conjectum dentem citat, II. 185. valens ad crustas ulceribus inducendas, 192.  
 Alvus: alvum quænam solvant, I. 39. alvum quænam adstringant, 39. alvus juvenibus cita in senectute contrahitur, 40. alvum solutum, quid agendum, 45. alvo soluto, nunquam vinum salsum bibere expedit, 45. pestifera quæ, 72. nigra repentina periculosa, 98. alvi ductio hominem sæpe infirmat, 108. quando utilis, 109. alvi ductione quæ servanda sint, 110. alvi adstrictiores, 140. alvi ductio non recte utatur quando tempora febris incerta sunt, 185. tertiana alvum duci oportet, 188. si septimo die febris redierit quartana alvus ducenda est, 190. phreneticis, 198. alvus cita est utique vitanda phthiase, 224. alvum ducere necessarium est morbo comitiali, 226.  
 Amaracus, II. 10.  
 Amarae nuces urinam movent, I. 213.  
 Ambrosia, antidotum, II. 45.  
 Ambubeia, cum lenticula alvum adstringunt, I. 140.  
 Ambulatio, quibus convenit, quibus non, I. 72.  
 Amenorrhææ signa, I. 76.  
 Ammoniacum purgat, II. 6. discutit, 10. mollit, 12. miscetur galbano, 22. ammoniacum thymiam, (i. e. *thus Lybicum*.) I. 26.  
 Ammonius Alexandrinus, II. 219. 332.  
 Amomum phreneticis, I. 200. urinam movet, 213.  
 Amurca, II. 126. 180. cocta cum vino, 203. cocta cum vino digitorum vetera ulcera curant, 216.  
 Amylum boni succi est, I. 131. lene est, 133. crassiorem pituitam facit, 134.  
 Anasarca, I. 215, sq.  
 Ἀναστόμωσις, I. 265.  
 Anatomia conspectus, I. 239.  
 Andronium medicamentum, II. 196.  
 Anethum mali succi est, I. 132. lævat inflationem, 137. urinam movet, 141.  
 Anginae varietates, I. 257. angina, ejus curatio, I. 257, et sq.  
 Anguis, usus in struma, II. 107.  
 Animal irrationale non potest esse medicus, I. 12. ferum omne domestico lævius, 128.  
 Animalia domestica macra potius quam pingua stomacho aptissima sunt, I. 134.  
 Animi agitatio quibus inutilis, I. 44.  
 Anisum mali succi est, I. 132. urinam movet, 141.  
 Anni tempus considerandum, I. 40. quæ tempora tuta, vel morbis opportuna sint, I. 53.  
 Ἀνάδυνα, somno dolorem levant, II. 48. quibus uti, nisi nimia necessitas urget, alienum est, ib.  
 Anser, generis valentissimi est, I. 125.  
 Ἀνθηρά, compositiones, a colore sic dictæ, II. 193.  
 Anthrax, carbunculus, II. 96.  
 Antiades, a Græcis appellantur tonsilla, quæ post inflammationem induruerunt, II. 278.  
 Antidota, et quibus malis opitulentur, II. 44. antidotum Zopyri ad regem Ptolomæum, 45. antidotum Mithridatis, 45.  
 Anus multa tædiique plena mala recipit, II. 210. ani, si quid læsum est, 211. condyloma, 211. scissuræ, qua ratione curentur, 214. prolapsus, 215. ano, ora venarum turgentia, quæ sæpe sanguinem fundunt, 213. in, ulcus simile fungo quem admodum sit curandum, 215.  
 Aper, generis valentissimi est, I. 125.  
 Ἀφθαι, oris, I. 58. II. 190.  
 Apium urinam movet, I. 141. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143.  
 Apollonii duo, II. 219.  
 Apollonius, I. 3.  
 Apoplexiæ curatio, I. 232.  
 Ἀποπληξίαν, I. 233. ejus natura, ib.  
 Ἀποστήματα, I. 55.  
 Ἀπυρον: sulphuris ignem non experti, quod ἄπυρον vocatur, II. 20.  
 Aqua, omnibus fatigatis apta, I. 32. est bibenda modo si assidua fatigatio urget, I. 33. tepida pro vomitu, 37. quando post vomitum bibenda, ib. frigida, lippitudine, gravedine, destillatione, tonsillis que affectis, 44. imbecillissima est, 128. vel tepida vel perfrigida adstringit alvum, 141. aquæ quæ genera levissima sunt, 129. frigida pluvialis simul reprimat et re-

- frigerat, 143. calida reprimat, 144. frigida danda ad satietatem, utenda pro medicamento febre, 177. tepida subsalsa in horrore potui danda est, 185. calida perfundebatur per caput in febre, 188. post febrem quartana, 190. quomodo hydropicis emittatur, II. 287.
- Aquila quos morbos faciat, I. 56.
- Ἀραχνουίδης*, II. 258.
- Araneus, adversus ejus ictum medicamentum, II. 91.
- Arena, numeratur in fomentis calidis, I. 123. siccus calor est arenæ calidæ, 120. in arena calida evocandus est sudor, 213. piscis in arena editus, 127. urina quasi arenam trahit, 76.
- Arenosus calculus, II. 332. urina arenosa, I. 78.
- Arearum duo genera, II. 134. curatio, 135.
- Argemonia, *papaver argemone*, II. 93.
- Argenti spuma, I. 205.
- Aridæ mixturæ, II. 40. seu pulveres, ibid.
- Aristolochia cum melle, II. 83. cretica, 19.
- Armoracea, *raphanus rusticus*, edenda, I. 283.
- Arquatus morbus jecore duro perniciosissimus est, I. 95.
- Ἀρσενικόν*, auripigmentum, purgat, II. 5.
- Arteriæ asperæ positio, I. 240. incisa non coit, 104.
- Articula desinunt in cartilaginem, II. 369.
- Ascites, I. 211. curatio, 216.
- Asclepiades medendi rationem mutavit, I. 4. opinio, 5. opinio de concocione, 7. intellexit sepulchrum vivere, 72. quod medicamentum adversus omnes aurium casus composuerit, II. 173. non sine causa sustulit, 1. ad rationem victus omnem curam sustulit, 2.
- Asininum lac, I. 108. 314.
- Asius lapis, I. 316.
- Aspalathus, *genus ligni aromatici apud veteres*, II. 47.
- Asparagus mali succi est, I. 132. acris est, 133. urinam movet, 141.
- Asphodelus, II. 91.
- Asphyxia, I. 98.
- Aspidum morsus, II. 90.
- Aspis, II. 90.
- Aspritud, II. 159.
- Assa alunt plusquam elixa, I. 128.
- Ἀσση*, terra Samia, II. 152.
- Ἀσθμα*, asthma, I. 259.
- Atramentum sepiarium alvum movet, I. 139. sutorium sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. reprimat, 4. rodit, 6. exedit, 7. adurit, 8. crustas ulceribus inducat, 191, 192. candefactum, 180. coctum, 31. combustum, 116. sutorium, 385.
- Atheroma, II. 240. descriptio ejus, 241.
- Athletici sunt supervacui sano, I. 25.
- Atrophia, I. 219.
- Atrophix curatio, I. 220.
- Attalum emplastrum, II. 29.
- Attoniti, I. 232.
- Aucupius minime inflat, I. 139.
- Audacia quorundam phreneticorum coercenda est, I. 198.
- Anditorii meatus, v. Aurcs.
- Aurata, *piscis genus*, quamvis tenerior, tamen dura, I. 127. minime intus vitiat, 138.
- Aurem si aliquid inciderit, specillo oriculario protrahendum est, II. 178.
- Aures, II. 267. si perforatæ sunt, et offendent, quomodo curantur, 269. curata in auribus quomodo sarciri et curari possunt, ib. et sqq. si pus habent, 171. auribus si sordida ulcera sunt, 174. auris foramen si compressum est, 175. in aure si rumpitur cartilago, quid faciendum est, 397. sqq.
- Auripigmentum, reprimat, II. 4. purgat, 5. rodit, 7. exedit corpus, ib. adurit, 8. crustas ulceribus inducat, 9. cum quibus putrem carnem contineat, 41.
- Aurium morbi, II. 168. dolor cum inflammatione, ejus curatio, 169. vermes, 174. sonitus curatio, 175. tintus curatio, 176.
- Auster quos morbos faciat, I. 56.
- Austera acria sunt, I. 133. stomacho aptissima sunt, 134.
- Ἀυστρινόν*, triticum, I. 126.
- Autumno quis cibus aptissimus, I. 41.
- Autumnus periculosissimus est, I. 53.
- Auxilia omnia nihil proficiunt in gangræna, II. 82.
- Auxilium unicum membrum abscindere, II. 82.
- Aves omnes ex media materia sunt, I. 125. quæ valentiores, 126. quæ in aqua degunt valentiores, leviores cibum præstant, 126. quæ firmiores, 126. omnes boni succi sunt, 131. omnes stomacho aptissimæ sunt, 134. duriores difficillime corrumpuntur, 138. minutæ adstringunt alvum, 140. omnes aves quæ magis currunt quam volant adstringunt alvum, 140.
- Avium quæ partes infirmissimæ sunt, I. 127.

## B.

Baia, I. 20.

Balnei usus ante et post accessionem febris, I. 121.



- Balneum etiam interdum prodest, I. 25. fervens non est idoneum fatigatis, 32. est utendum raro, si assidua fatigatio urget, 33. usus, 121. quando conveniat, 121. in balneum iturus, quid imbecillus homo vitare debet, 122, sq. in balneum ducere febre utile est, 173. in horrore, non recte utatur quando tempora febris incerta sunt, 185. quotidiana, 188. die septimo quartana, 190. hydropicis alienum est, 213. cachexia, 221. in atrophia, ib. alienum phthisi, 223. infestissimum est, II. 74. rarum proficit, 75. quando alienum est, 82. post morsus canis, 86.
- Balsamum urinam movet, I. 213.
- Barbarum emplastrum, II. 27.
- Βασιλικόν emplastrum, II. 27.
- Bdellium vulnera aperit, II. 5. purgat, 6. evocat et educit, 11. mollit, 12.
- Belluæ omnes marinæ valentissimi generis sunt, I. 125.
- Beta quibus firmior, I. 126. mali succi est, 132. acris est, 133.
- Bitumen pus concoquet et movet, II. 4. discutit, 10. cum hordeacea farina mixtum, I. 236. ex eo color nigerri-mus fit emplastris, II. 27.
- Βουβανόκηλη, II. 300.
- Brachii ossa, eorum descriptio, II. 369.
- Brachium, si fractum est, quid faciendum est, II. 416.
- Brassica quibus firmior, I. 126. mali succi est, 132. acris est, 133. inflat, 136. bis decocta adstringit alvum, 140.
- Brassicæ folia simul reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 143.
- Βρογχονήλη, II. 281.
- Bubula inter domesticas quadrupedes gravissima, I. 126. stomacho aptissima est, 134. difficillime corrumpitur, 138.
- Bulbi omnes valentiores quam pastinaca, I. 126. mali succi sunt, 132. lenes sunt, 133. crassiorem pituitam facit, 134.
- Butyrum carnem alit et ulcus implet, II. 12. mollit, 12. cum rosa, I. 296. 203. cum rosa mellis, 203.
- C.
- Καχεξία, I. 59.
- Cachexiæ signa, I. 74. 219. curatio, 221.
- Κακόχυλα, I. 130.
- Κακόντες, ejus curatio, II. 99.
- Cadaverum secundorum utilitas, I. 8.
- Cadmia exedit corpus, II. 7. excepta illinire, 40. curata, 145. botrytis elota, 145. elota, 156. 158. 161. lotæ, 248. cadmiam infriare, 257.
- Cæsarianum medicamentum, II. 160.
- Calamus Alexandrinus, II. 47.
- Calceamentis humilioribus utendum, ne vinctura talum lædat, II. 446.
- Calcis os, II. 373.
- Calculorum signa, I. 78. calculi ex vesica sectio, II. 324, sq. calculo evulso, quid faciendum, 334. calculi spinosi et asperi, 330.
- Calefacientia quando utilia, I. 41.
- Calefactio, I. 38.
- Caligo ex senectuteve imbecillitate, II. 163.
- Calli malagma, II. 26. curatio, 423.
- Calor nimis inutilis est, I. 49. quando utilis, 49. quid efficiat, 56. corporis fallax est, 170.
- Calvaria fracta, qua ratione agendum est, II. 383.
- Calvariæ sub ictu, duo pericula, II. 389.
- Calx rodit, II. 7. exedit, 8. adurit, 8. cum cerato putrem carnem continet, 40.
- Cancer, II. 77. ejus signa, ib. canceri oris curatio, 197. canceri in cole curatio, 207. canceri vesica incisa, 339.
- Caninæ linguæ (*cynoglossæ*) foliis adusta loca curantur, II. 95.
- Canini dentes, II. 364.
- Canopite collyrium, II. 160.
- Cantabrica herba adversus quos ictus proficiat, II. 93.
- Capillorum fluentium curatio, II. 131.
- Capparidis imbecillissima est, I. 125. alvum movet, 139. urinam movet, 141.
- Caprea adstringit alvum, I. 140.
- Capreoli vitium reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 143.
- Caprifici lac exedit corpus, II. 8. adurit, 8.
- Caput:—capite infirmo laboranti quid agendum, I. 42. capiti prodest frigida aqua, 43. infirmo cibis modicus necessarius est, 43. infirmo, vinum dilutum bibendum, 43. infirmo vomitus est maxime alienus, 43. capitis si dolores sunt, quid agendum, 181. tubercula, II. 240. doloris curatio, I. 245. luxatum, ejus chirurgia, 430, sqq.
- Carbunculus ejus curatio, II. 97. in cole curatio, 209.
- Καρκίνωμα curationem non recipit, II. 98.
- Cardamomum urinam movet, I. 213.
- Cardiaci natura, I. 205. curatio, 205.
- Cardiacus, I. 204.
- Caries in osse, quomodo curetur, II. 374, sqq.
- Caro assa alvi solutione juvat, I. 45.
- Caro pinguis boni succi est, I. 131. domestica permacra mali succi est, 132. omnis salsa mali succi est, 132. pinguis lenis est, 133. omnis purulenta calefacit, 137. dura omnis difficillime corrumpitur, 138. crassa vel te-

- nera facile corrumpitur, 138. assa potius quam elixa utatur, 141. inter tunicas testiculorum eximenda sit, II. 317.
- Καρωτίδες* arteriæ, I. 240.
- Cartilagine læsâ quid faciendum est, II. 374.
- Caseus valentissimi generis est, I. 125. mollis boni succi est, 131. vetus mali succi est, 132. omnis stomacho alienus est, 136. omnis inflat, ib. recens et vetus facile corrumpitur, 138. vetus adstringit alvum, 140.
- Casia urinam movet, I. 213.
- Cassius ejus ratio cujusdam febricitantis post ebrietatem, I. 21.
- Castoreum odore fœdo movet, I. 208. sorbendum in aqua dilutum cum pipere, 93. dandum, si venter adstrictus est, mixtum cum scammonia, 110. recte datur cum pipere, vellasere, 254.
- Castratio, II. 316.
- Catamenis revenientibus, vomitus sanguinis tollitur, I. 89.
- Cataplasma ex lini vel fœni græci semine emollit, I. 144. farinæ calefacit, 144.
- Cataplasmata reprimentia leucophlegmatia, I. 216.
- Catapotia multaque varia sunt, II. 48. opiatâ, 49. anodyna, 49. catapotium ad somnum valentius, 49. ad vulvam dolentem, 50. ad sanandum jecur, 51. ad lateris dolores, 51. ad dolores thoracis, 51. Athenionis ad tussim, 51. Heraclicis ad tussim, 51. ad ulcera faucium, 52. Cassii ad colicam, ib. ad infantem mortuum aut secundas expellere, ib. ad partum, ib. quod adjuvat vocem, ib. adversus difficultatem urinæ, ib. ad tracheam, 53.
- Cataracta, *ὀφθαλμοί*, II. 164. ejus maturitas expectanda est, 260.
- Catarrhus, destillatio, I. 250.
- Κατασταγμός*, destillatio, I. 251.
- Catheteres, II. 322.
- Catheterismus, II. 322.
- Caunea, *ficus Etolia*, evocat, II. 38.
- Causæ abditæ, I. 5. evidentes, 6. obscuræ persequuntur, ib.
- Κανσάδης*, febris, I. 90.
- Cedrus discutit, II. 10.
- Celsi et Methodicorum sententia media inter Dogmaticos et Empiricos, I. 14. Celsi opinio, medicinam debere esse rationalem, 23.
- Centaurion adversus quos ictus proficiat, II. 93. succus centaurii, 171.
- Cepa acris est, I. 133. inflat, 136. calefacit, 137. urinam movet, 141. excitat, 142.
- Κεφαλαία*, I. 245.
- Cephalaiæ signa, I. 245. interdum acutus et pestifer morbus est, ib. curatio, 246.
- Cera discutit, II. 10. carnem alit et ulcus implet, 12. mollit, 12.
- Cerastes: adversus ejus ictum medicamenta, II. 91.
- Cerasum, stomacho aptissimum est, I. 135.
- Κερατοειδής*, II. 258.
- Ceratum ex irino aut cyprino, II. 169. ex acerbo oleo, &c., I. 205. ex rosa, 308. ex myrteo, II. 215. elotum, 16. liquidum, 200.
- Cerebrum, vel membrana ejus, vulneratum, II. 59.
- Κηρίον*, ulcer, II. 118. duæ ejus species curatio, 119.
- Κίρκης*, radius, II. 369.
- Cervicis morbi, I. 253. morborum curatio, 254.
- Cervix, ejus vitia et eorum curatio, II. 281. gravibus admodum morbis obnoxia est, I. 253.
- Cervus valentissimi generis est, I. 125.
- Cerussa, II. 26. ex sevo vitulino, &c., 33. cum contrito herbæ muralis succo, I. 316.
- Cetus valentissimi generis est, I. 125.
- Χαλαζία*, oculi vitium, II. 245.
- Χάλκανθον*, vid. Atramentum sutorium.
- Chalcitis sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. reprimat, 4. purgat, 6. rodit, ib. exedit corpus, 7. adurit, 8. evocat et educit, 11. ad crustas ulceribus inducendas valet, 9.
- Chamæleon, II. 25.
- Chamæpitys vulnera aperit, II. 5.
- Charta combusta adurit, II. 8.
- Χειράγγελον*, I. 76.
- Χειρουργική*, I. 3.
- Chelidonia, II. 196.
- Chersydri ad ictum medicamenta, II. 92.
- Chiragra, I. 313.
- Chironium ulcus, hujus curatio, II. 105.
- Chirurgus qualis esse debeat, II. 218. manu strenua, &c., 220. esse debet adolescens, 220.
- Χοιμικίς*, modiolî species, II. 377.
- Cholera, I. 286. ejus signa, ibid. ejus curatio, 287.
- Χολέρα*, I. 286.
- Χόρδαφος*, morbus tenuioris intestini, I. 291.
- Χορσιειδής*, II. 258.
- Chrysippus, I. 3.
- Chrysocolla rodit, II. 7. corpus exedit, ib. adurit, 8.
- Cibi que potiones varia genera, I. 124. frigidi vel ferventes stomacho aptissimi sunt, 135. varii ponendi ægro, ubi fastidio urgetur, 172. quæ gene-

- ra post balneum febre utilia sunt, 173. quid genus debet dari hydropicis, 213. boni quando utantur, II. 75.
- Cibum sumere, aptum est post unctionem, I. 32. quando debet dari semitertiana, 178. dare adhuc calidis tertiana, 189. modicum post febrem quartana, 190. validum et fortiter assumere quartana longa, 191.
- Cibus quando post vomitum capiendus, I. 37. acescens, quæ agenda, 47. subcrudus inflat, 136. humidus febricitantibus aptissimus est, 171. ex materia levissima aptissima febricitantibus est, ib. est maxime dandus horrore, qui mollem alvum præstet, 187. ex media materia dandus tristitia, 201. quando utilis ascite, 218.
- Cicatrix, II. 84.
- Cicutæ semen mollit, II. 12.
- Cicutam si quis bibit, quo modo curari debeat, II. 94.
- Cinis rodit, II. 7. Cyprius corpus exedit, ibid. cinis exedit corpus, ib. ex sarmentis, 222.
- Cinnamomum vulnera aperit, II. 5. rodit, 7. discutit, 10. per potionem assumitur, si cerastes, aut dipsas, aut hæmorrhoids percussit, 91.
- Cinnamum urinam movet, I. 213.
- Κίρσοκλήη, II. 299.
- Clamor vitandus, II. 405.
- Clavi, oculi tubercula, II. 257. quomodo exciduntur, ib.
- Clavus in pedibus nascitur, II. 121. curatio, ibid, 257.
- Cleophrantus, II. 188.
- Clysteres quando convenient et quibus, I. 109. alvi ductio, seu clyster, ib.
- Coacon emplastrum, II. 27.
- Coagulum mollit, II. 13. purgat (maxime leporinum) 60.
- Coccum Gnidium, II. 19. purgat, 6. adurit, 8.
- Cochleæ imbecillissimæ sunt, I. 125. boni succi sunt, 131. stomacho aptissimæ sunt, 135. difficillime corrumuntur, 138. alvum movent, II. 138. cum testis suis contusæ vulnus glutinant, 4. cum testis suis comburendæ, 39. cochlea cocta mollit, 13.
- Cœliaci morbi curatio, I. 289.
- Cœlum pessimum ægro, quod ægrum facit, I. 54.
- Cogitatio infirmo capite laboranti tuta non est, I. 43.
- Κοιλιακὸς morbus, I. 289. ejus curatio, ib.
- Coles sub cute exesus est, sic, ut glans excidat, II. 206. Colis tumentis ex inflammatione curatio, 202. ulcera, eorumque curatio, 203. tubercula circa glandem oriuntur, curatio, 206.
- cancer quemadmodum curetur, 207. Φαγγέδαινα quemadmodum curetur, 208. cole aliquid interdum occalescit, que debet excidi, 209. colis carunculus in eadem parte natus, 209. glans si nuda, quomodo tegenda est, 319. coli ad dolorem remedia, I. 46.
- Κολικὸν Cassii, I. 294. II. 58.
- Colicus, ejus signa, I. 294. curatio, ib.
- Collyrium ἀχάριστον, II. 145. ad fistulam, 115. Andreae, 154. Asclepios, 158. Βασιλικὸν, Cæsarianum, 160. Canopite, 160. Cleonis, 144. κύθιον, 146. διὰ κέρατος, 155. διὰ κρόκου, 163. διὰ λιβάνου, 152. Euelpidis, 155. Hermonis, 157. Hieracis, 160. μεμιγμένον, 155. Nilei, 149. Philalethes, 152. Philonis, 144. Phynon, 156. Pyxinum, 161. Rhinion, ib. σμίλιον, 156. Spherion, 156. τίφριον, 146. Theodoti, 145. τρυγῶδες, 146, in ani fistulis, 233.
- Κῶλον, laxius intestinum, II. 109. Κωλικὸς morbus, I. 291. colicus dolor quibus sedetur, 46. imbecillitas coli, 46.
- Colubra estur, tamen ictus ejus occidit, II. 88.
- Columbæ jecur recens et crudum utile hepaticis, I. 281. sanguis purgat, II. 5. commodius oculo, in quo sanguis post ictum suffusus est, 166. stercus adurit, 8. evocat et educit, 11. columbina ova, 210.
- Comitialis morbi bona signa, I. 87. morbus quando difficile curatur, 94. est inter notissimos morbos, 225. morbi signa, 225. curatio, 226.
- Communia attendi voluit Themison, eaque tria, I. 19. et propria observanda, 20.
- Concharum jure uti debent febricitantes, I. 173.
- Conchulæ fere omnes alvum movent, I. 139.
- Conchylija imbecillissima sunt, I. 125. minime inflant, 137.
- Conchylium potest adjici secundo mense cibo febricitantium, I. 172.
- Concoctio quæ fiat, non sciunt eruditi, sed conjectura persequuntur, I. 7. tarda quæ adjuvetur, 47. omnibus vitis occurrit, 48.
- Concoquentia, II. 4.
- Concubitus rarus corpus excitat, frequens solvit, I. 26. quis utilis, ibid. quando conveniat, ibid.
- Condita omnia de duabus causis inutilia sunt, I. 29.
- Conditio ægri et tempus anni, II. 57.
- Κονδυλίωματα, II. 352.
- Condylomatis ani curatio, II. 352.
- Consuetudini quod contrariatur noxium est, I. 33.



- Contemplatio naturæ rerum reddit medicum aptiorem medicinæ, I. 15.
- Contentio post cibum inutilis, I. 43.
- Convolvulus scammonia, II. 6.
- Cor musculosum est, I. 241. cordis positio, ib. cordis percussu signa, II. 58.
- Corallium adurit, II. 8.
- Coriandri folia simul reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 143. semen, II. 16.
- Coriandrum refrigerat, I. 137. urinam movet, 141. viridi coriandro epinyctis, post lenticulam curatur, II. 124.
- Cornu cervinum purgat, II. 6. incensum odore fædo movet, I. 208. combustum et elotum, 155. cornu cervini ramentum, II. 183. cornu bubulum combustum, 41, 48.
- Corpora viva incidere solent Herophilus et Erasistratus, I. 8. mortuorum incidere esse necessarium, 8, 23. vivorum hominum incidere est crudele, 12. qualia tuta vel morbis opportuna sunt, 54.
- Corpore inciso, colorem, lævorem, et cetera, non esse talia, qualia integro fuerunt, et quare, I. 13.
- Corporibus ægrorum viscera sæpe subjiciantur conspectui medici, I. 14.
- Corporis sui naturam quisque norit, I. 34. si habitus malus sit, 221. humani interioribus sedibus, 239.
- Corporum mortuorum lacerationem necessariam non esse, I. 14.
- Corpus quid implet, I. 34. quid extenuat, 35. quænam calefaciant, 38. quænam refrigerent, 38. quænam madefaciant, 38. quænam siccant, 39. quadratum habilissimum est, 54. gracile infirmum, ib. obesum hebes, ib. si profluat febre, quæ agenda, 174.
- Cortex capparis, I. 312. casia, II. 37. glandis, ibid. hyoscyami, II. 24. mori, I. 300. papaveris, I. 316. II. 183. piperis seminis, ib. radices ex populo alba, 183. radiculæ, 176. thuris, 495.
- Κορυάς, vesicæ fistula, II. 328.
- Corvus, piscis, tener quidem sed durus, I. 127.
- Corvus, ferramentum scroto incidendo, II. 305.
- Κορύζα, II. 250.
- Costa, summa, II. 366. sex inferiores costæ, ibid.; sed vide lib. VIII. cap. I. n. 3. quomodo committuntur cum osse pectoris, II. 367. fracta, ejus chirurgia, 404, sqq.
- Costum facultatem habet alvum molienti, II. 6. pus concoquit et movet, 4. purgat, 6. per potionem assumitur, 92. urinam movet, I. 213.
- Cotoneum malum stomacho idoneum, I. 134. reprimat, II. 43. ex eo medium utile hepaticis, I. 281. decoctum, 262, 306. contritum, II. 212. coctum, 143. cotonea mala alvum adstringunt, I. 141. simul reprimunt et refrigerant, ib. cocta sine frigore reprimunt, 144. in vino cocta atque contrita, II. 105.
- Coxarum os, I. 311. dolor, ib. prognosis, 97. curatio, 312.
- Cratonis compositio ad aures, II. 172.
- Κριμαστήρ, II. 295.
- Creta Cimolia, II. 407. simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. sanguinem suppressit, II. 3. ea delinendus homo, si sudor vincit, I. 205. cum thuris cortice contrita, II. 95. subcærulea, 137. creta figularis corpori illita alvum adstringit, I. 39.
- Crimen professoris non est artis, I. 73.
- Κρισίμους, criticos dies, I. 158.
- Crisis Hippocratica, I. 158.
- Κριθή, genus tuberculi, II. 244. ejus curatio, ibid.
- Crocomagnum, II. 19.
- Crocum facultatem habet alvum molienti, I. 213. urinam movet, ibid. purgat, II. 6. discutit, 10. articulis inducitur, I. 316. ad vulvam molienti valens, II. 38. cum lycio mixtum, 126. Cilicium, 45, 163. Siculum, 158.
- Crudritatem quænam indicent, I. 74.
- Crus est ex ossibus duobus, II. 372. brachio simile, ibid. crurum fractarum sanatio, 409, 417. crurum, 441.
- Κρυσταλλοειδής, II. 259.
- Crustumini pium fragile est et stomacho idoneum, I. 134.
- Κυαθισκός Διοκλείδης, I. 237.
- Cubile quotidianum est tutissimum fatigato, I. 33.
- Cubiti ossa, II. 369. cubiti fracti curatio, 416. luxati chirurgia, 436.
- Cucumis imbecillissimæ materiæ est, I. 125. boni succi, 131. mali succi est, 132. acris est, 133. refrigerat, 137. cucumeris radix, II. 110. semina, I. 285. cucumeris agrestis radix, II. 19, 20. succus, 177. cucumeris silvestris pars interior, 38. radix, I. 316. II. 19, 85.
- Cucurbita imbecillissimæ materiæ est, I. 125. quibus firmior, 126. boni succi est, 131. alvum movet, 139. elixa stomacho aptissima est, 135. elixa refrigerat, 137.
- Cucurbitulæ æneæ et corneæ, I. 106. cruentæ quomodo utendæ, 106. usus præcipuus, 107. sine ferro possunt adhiberi tympaniticis, 214.
- Cucurbitularum applicatio prodest phreneticis, I. 201.
- Cuminum mali succi est, I. 132. præcipue ad urinam movendam valet, 283. ad vitiliginem, II. 130. cumini contritum, 209. cumini semen, I. 301.

Cupressus simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. discutit, II. 10. farinæ adjec-  
ta, 155. decocta, 340. cupressi se-  
mina urinam movent, I. 213. cupressus  
viridis, 284.  
Curationis progressus, II. 72.  
Cursus commode exercet, I. 28. exte-  
nuat corpus, 35. inimicus hepaticis,  
281.  
Curtorum in auribus, labiis, ac naribus  
chirurgia, II. 269.  
Cute si vitium est, quæ agenda, I. 174.  
cutem purgantia, II. 13.  
Cyma brassicæ mali succi est, I. 132.  
Κυνάγχη, cynanche, I. 257.  
Κυνικός σπασμός, I. 249. ejus curatio,  
ibid.  
Cyprinum (oleum) calefacit, I. 144. ex  
cyprino ceratum, 307. II. 209, 428.  
cyprinum calidum, I. 255.  
Cyprus, II. 48. Idem quod cyprinum.  
Cytisus ad urinam movendam valet, I.  
283.

## D.

Δασπὼν, II. 295.  
Dauci Cretici semen, II. 46.  
Defrutum valentissimi generis est, I.  
128. quo magis incoctum, eo valen-  
tius, 129. boni succi est, 131. lene  
est, 133. stomacho alienum est, 136.  
facile intus corrumpitur, 138. adstringit  
alvum, 141.  
Dejectio quando conveniat, I. 30. quæ  
bona, 108. quando petenda, 38. quo-  
modo petenda, 38. quando periculo-  
sa, 38. in omnibus morbis molita, 108.  
quibus medicamentis, 108. extenuat  
corpus, 35. infirmat hominem, 108.  
lippienti prodest, 89. supprimitur vo-  
mitu, 89. dejectionem subitam quid  
indiciet, 75.  
Delirium saluti est, quando, I. 89. deli-  
rium raro ex metu, 204. Asclepiadis  
curandi ratio, 197. plagis, 199. mu-  
sica, ibid.  
Dementia cum distentione nervorum  
quando periculosa, I. 97.  
Democritus, I. 3.  
Denarii pondus, II. 14.  
Dentium ordo, II. 364. doloris varia  
remedia, 182. dentium vitiatorum  
chirurgia, 277. denti exeso remedi-  
um, 184. instrumentum ad dentis ra-  
dices, 277.  
Desidia et luxuria adversæ valetudinis  
causæ, I. 2.  
Desperatus non curandus, II. 55.  
Destillatio, I. 250. ejus curatio, ib. et  
sq. destillationes qui vitentur, 44.  
Detergentia quæ sunt, II. 5.  
Διάρρωσις, I. 265.  
Διὰ σαφνίδων, emplastrum, II. 30.  
Διατητική, I. 3.  
Διὰ κέρατος collyrium, II. 155.  
Διὰ κρόκου collyrium, II. 163.  
Διὰ λιβάνου, collyrium, II. 152.  
Diæta hiemalis, verna, æstiva, et autum-  
nalis, I. 40.  
Διάφραγμα sectum, homo moritur, I. 13.  
Διάφραγμα, I. 83.  
Diaphragmæ usus et natura, I. 241.  
Diaphragma percussum, II. 61.  
Diarrhœa vel febricula, I. 75.  
Dictamnus Creticus, II. 52.  
Dies critici, I. 59. optimi æstate, qui-  
bus Favonii perflant, 54. pluvii me-  
liores quam nebulosi, ibid. sereni  
saluberrimi, ibid. vento vacante, hy-  
eme, optimi sunt, ibid.  
Digerentia malagmata, II. 20.  
Digiti ex ossibus ternis constant, II. 370.  
curvati; quid curatione eorum ten-  
tandum est, 357. cohærentes, scal-  
pello diducuntur, ibid. manus luxati;  
eorum chirurgia, 440, sqq. pedis, eo-  
rum chirurgia, 447, sqq.  
Digitorum vetera ulcera quæ ratione cu-  
rentur, II. 216.  
Diluta omnia alvum movent, I. 139.  
Διακλίσιν κναβίσκον, II. 237. ejus descrip-  
tio, ibid.  
Diocles, I. 3. II. 237.  
Dionysii medicamentum ad αἰμορροΐδες  
vestustiores absumendas, II. 214.  
Diphryges corpus exedit, I. 7. adurit,  
II. 8. cum resina mixta, 41.  
Dipsas si percussit, quibus medicamen-  
tis utendum, II. 91.  
Discussientia, II. 10.  
Distentio nervorum; signa, I. 75. nervo-  
rum quando facilius depellitur, 88.  
Distentionis vel rigoris nervorum signa,  
I. 79. oris, 249.  
Diuretica conveniunt morsis a serpenti-  
bus, I. 213. II. 90.  
Dolor deorsum tendens sanabilior, I. 89.  
dolorem qui non sentiunt, iis mens la-  
bat, I. 81. dolores quinam mortem  
indiciet, 70. doloribus leniendis ca-  
tapotia, II. 51. dolor præcordiorum  
stomachum indicat, I. 47. capitis in  
jejuno stomachum infirmum indicat,  
ibid. ad dolores articulorum, II. 26.  
Dormiendum est jejuno, qui insuetus  
laboravit, I. 31.  
Dulce vinum valentissimi generis est,  
II. 128.  
Dulcia et pingua corpus implent, I. 35.  
dulcia omnia inflant, 136. alvum mo-  
vent, 139. omnia dulcia evitet colicis  
doloribus obnoxius, 46. nimia dulcia  
facile corrumpuntur, 138. omnia in-  
imica sunt lienosis, 283.  
Dura mater, II. 42.  
Dura omnia alvum adstringunt, I. 140.

Duri pisces mali succi sunt, I. 132. ex media materia stomacho idonei, 135.  
 Durities testiculorum, II. 209.  
 Δυσεντερία, dysenteria, I. 295. ejus signa, ibid. curatio, 296, et sq.  
 Δύσπνοια, dyspnœa, I. 259.

## E.

Eboris scobis purgat, II. 6.  
 Ebrus, qui obmutuit, qui intereat et servetur, I. 70.  
 Echini alvum movent, I. 139.  
 Ectropium, curatio ejus, II. 256.  
 Ἐκτρόπιον, II. 256.  
 Ἐγχεῖστα, II. 47.  
 Ἐγκανθίς curatio, II. 248.  
 Εἰλῆς, I. 55.  
 Εἰλικρινὲς, I. 63.  
 Ἐλαιῶδες, II. 62.  
 Elaterium evocat et educit, II. 11. syncosi imponitur, II. 134.  
 Ἐλεφαντίασις, I. 231.  
 Elephantia, ejus signa, I. 231. curatio, ibid.  
 Elephantinum emplastrum, II. 34.  
 Elixia omnia alvum movent, I. 139. minus alunt quam assa, I. 128.  
 Ἐλυτροειδὴ, II. 295.  
 Ἐμπτριταῖον, I. 152.  
 Emollientia, I. 143.  
 Emollientes pessi, II. 38.  
 Empedocles, I. 3.  
 Ἐμπειρικοί, I. 4.  
 Empiricorum origo, I. 4. causas evidentes amplectuntur, 9. dicta, ibid.  
 Emplastra, II. 15. emplastrorum differentia, ibid. formulæ, 26 et sq. emplastra ad vulnera recentia, ibid. ad extrahendum, 30. emplastrum cephalicum, 28. ad pus, 31. Alexandrinum, 32, 68. emplastra exedentia, 32. emplastrum Diogeni adversus morsus, 32, 85. emplastra alba ad vulnera, 33. emplastrum Liparæ, 34.  
 Enneapharmacum, 75. Tetrapharmacum, 82. Hecatæi, 83. Philocratis, ibid. ad cicatricem, 85. Rhypodes, 100. de extenuantibus Encanthis, 248. emplastra quæ calvariae causa componuntur, 387.  
 Ἐμπροσθότονος, I. 254.  
 Emprosthotonos, I. 254.  
 Ἐναιμα emplastra, II. 26.  
 Ἐννιὰ φάρμακον emplastrum, II. 29, 338. quando optime dandum, 75.  
 Ἐντροκήλη, II. 96.  
 Entropium, II. 251.  
 Ephelis, II. 136. ejus curatio, ibid.  
 Ephesium emplastrum, II. 33. cui veneno optimum est, 89.  
 Epicurus, I. 212.

Epilepsia, I. 88, 225.

Ἐπινυκτίς, II. 123.

Ἐπισποκήλη, II. 296.

Erasistratus, I. 3. opinio ejus, 5. ejus opinio de concoctione, 7. Erasistrati remedia sanguinis profluvione, 267. Erasistrati aut Cratonis compositio, recte purulenta naturalia imponitur, II. 204.

Eroderentia, II. 40.

Eruca mali succi est, I. 132. acris, 133. urinam movet, 141. lienem extenuat, 283. semen contrahere videtur, 310. adurit, II. 8. erucæ semina materiam evocant, 143.

Eruditi imbecilles, I. 26.

Ἐρυσίπιλας, II. 79. quomodo curatur, 80.

Ervum purgat, II. 6. cum melle cutem purgat, 13. cum melle impositum, 94. cataplasma ex farina ervi calefacit, 137. ervum in aqua coctum, 118.

Erysimum ex partu laborantibus jejunis dari debet, II. 52. aperiendi vim habet, 23.

Ἐσχάροι, ubi eæ exciderunt, II. 80.

Escharotica curatio, II. 9.

Euelpidis collyrium, II. 146. alterum, 155.

Euelpistus, II. 220.

Εὐχόλοις, I. 130.

Evocantes pessi, II. 38. materiam evocantes, I. 143.

Evocantia, II. 11.

Εὐώδες acopum, II. 47.

Ἐξανθήματα, exanthemata, II. 122.

Exedendum ad, emplastrum, II. 32.

Exedentia, II. 7.

Exercitatio cibum antecedere debet, I. 28. imbecillo prima curatio est, ibid. exercitationis sudor debet esse finis, ibid.

Experientia multum ad medelam confert, I. 15.

Experimenta sunt necessaria, I. 4. initia medicinæ, 10. experiri quomodo oporteat, 147.

Extenuantes, I. 35.

Extrahendum ad materiam malagma, II. 16.

Exulceratione quæ bona signa sunt, II. 227. quæ mala signa sunt, ibid. exulceratio faucium, I. 261. stomachi, 269. gingivarum, II. 193.

Exusto in sole quid agendum, I. 33.

## F.

Faba valentior quam pisum, I. 126. imposita livori faciei contusæ proficit, II. 23. contrita, 130, ex faba farina, 130, 209. cataplasma ex farina fabæ calefacit, I. 144. faba Ægyptia, 45, 53, 121. quod in ea amarum, II. 170.



- ex ea pars interior, 172. faba fressa, 22.
- Faciei** contusæ malagma, II. 23.
- Fæx** mixta cum cerato digerit et resolvit, II. 110. combusta adurit, 8. fæx arida, I. 312. acetii, II. 20. ex austero et bono vino arida fæx, I. 205.
- Famem** qui ferant facilius, qui difficulter, I. 23.
- Fames** ex nimia satietate non est idonea, I. 30. febre prodest, 173. non utilis est, febre inveterata, 185.
- Far** idem præstat in phthisi quod oryza, I. 223. ex ejus farina cataplasma calefacit, 144.
- Farina** ex aceto aut vino madens simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. ex qualibet farina cataplasma calefacit, 144. ex mulso quam ex aqua cocta valentior, ibid. cum sevo ovo caprinove mixta, 223. hordeacea cum bitumine, 236. farina lolii cocta ex vino diluto, 312. ex mulso cocta, II. 119. ex aqua pluviali subacta, 79. ex aqua frigida subacta, 314. cum ruta, 9, 95. cum acaciæ succo, 150. cumini, 17. hordeacea, 17, 92, 111, 137, 143, 169, 309, 354. calida, I. 255, 270. farina lenticulæ, II. 95. triticea, 151, 307. ex farina cataplasma, 154. farina candida quam tenuissima, 141. farina lolii evocat, 11. cum melle, 95. cum cucumere digerit et resolvat, 110. farina lupinorum, 125. lolii, 128.
- Fascia** quæ et qualis requiratur, II. 69. æstate, hieme, ibid. fasciæ sex ad ossa fracta, II. 411, sq. fascia cum pila, 309. aptissima ad deligandum vulnus, 69.
- Fatigatio** animi inutilis post cibum, II. 45.
- Fatigatis**, pene febre, quid sit idoneum, I. 32. ex ambulatione quid agendum, 33.
- Faucium** morbi, I. 257. exulceratio, 261.
- Favum** ad, malagma, II. 21.
- Febris** æger primis diebus, qua ratione sit continendus, I. 154. Asclepiades medicamenta sustulit, ibid. cibus oportune datus, optimum medicamentum est, ibid. cibus quando antiqui dabant, ibid. ægri vires medicus inspiceret subinde, 157. dies criticos, 158. dies criticos Asclepiades repudiavit, ibid. symptomatica, cibus quando sit dandus, 162. continua, cibus quando debet dari, 163. finita optimum tempus esse cibo, 166. cibus quando dandus, 160. pugna ingens de potione est, 167. medicum intueri debet totius corporis habitum, ibid. quando potio debet dari, I. 168. quando melior sit, difficile est scire, 169. quando deficiat, difficile est scire, ibid. quando febricitet difficile est scire, ibid. adstrictum an corpus sit, 173. corpus an profuat, ibid. quos ratio non restituit, temeritas adjuvat, 181. inveterata fames non utilis est, 185. Februm genera, 151. curationum diversa genera, 154. lentarum curatio, 179.
- Febres** lentæ tenent corpus sine remissione ulla, I. 179. lentæ mutari in alio debet esse cura medici, ibid. ne sint solæ, considerandum est, 181.
- Febribus** quæ quotidie urgent, cibus quando esset dandus, I. 163.
- Febribus** vagis, quando cibus debet dari, I. 164.
- Febricitantium** secundo mense quæ sint danda, I. 172.
- Febricula** si semper manet, quando cibus debet dari, I. 165.
- Febris** quando utilis, I. 89. quando periculosissima, 90. post parturitionem periculosissima, 95. accessione, quando cibus debet dari, 166. sitim accendit, 167. ubi quieverit, protinus sitim quieturam, 168. ubi fuit atque decrevit, quid agendum, 170. semi-tertianis porrigitur inter horas viginti quatuor, et triginta sex, 178. si quarto die revertitur debet vomere, 191. si quieverit, diu meminisse ejus diei convenit, 193.
- Fel** exedit corpus, II. 8. purgat, 6. evocat et educit, 11. taurinum, 36, 175. rodit, 7.
- Feminarum** naturalia clausa quæ aperiantur, II. 344. calculi feminarum, 323. feminarum curatio, ibid.
- Feminum** ossa, II. 371.
- Femora**, eorum descriptio, II. 371.
- Femur** humero simile, II. 372. luxatum ejus chirurgia, 441, sqq.
- Fera**. Ex feris quo majores eo robustiores, I. 126. ferum animal omne domesticum levius, 128.
- Feræ** grandæ omnes valentissimi generis sunt, I. 125.
- Fermentum**, II. 108.
- Ferula** modo cibo, modo potioni adjecta, urinam movet, I. 285. imponenda, II. 413. ex ferula factus canaliculus, 403. ferulæ super membrum accommodandæ, 413. omnino non imponendæ, 414. circumdandæ, 423.
- Fibulæ** quando imponendæ sunt, II. 66. latius vulnus esse patiuntur, 67. ratio applicandi, ibid.
- Ficedula** infirmior, quam grandiores aves, II. 126.

- Ficulneo folio quidam crassas durasque palpebras eradunt, II. 159.
- Ficus valentior quam pomum, I. 126. corpus erodit, 143. ex ea cataplasma, II. 277. fici cremor, 159. folia arida, 130. ficus arida calefacit, I. 137. purgat, II. 6. discutit, 10. mollit, 12. recte imponitur, 119. cum aqua mulsa decocta, 258. in aqua, 136. pinguis, 153, 183. pinguissima, 101. viridis et arida stomacho alienus est, I. 136. aridæ sed magis virides inflant, ibid. alvum movent, I. 139. arida decocta evocat et educit, 143. arida contusa degerit et resolvit, II. 110.
- Filicula pro alvi ductione antiqui dabant, I. 108.
- Filix est offensa, II. 83.
- Fistula fit callosa vetustate, II. 116. lacrymalis, 246.
- Fistulæ, quomodo dignoscantur, II. 112. exploratio, 113.
- Fistularum genera plura, II. 112. curatio simplicium, 113. qua ratione per medicamenta curentur, 116. earum curatio, 229. solent inter costas subter exire, 230. ubi perniciosæ, ib. ventre admodum perniciosæ, ib. Sostratus credidit eas esse insanabiles, ib. in ano, II. 232. earum curatio, ib. æneæ, II. 323.
- Flatus excitantia, I. 136.
- Flos æris, II. 35. corpus exedit, 7. crustas ulceribus inducit, 9.
- Fluxus ventris, I. 302. ejus signa, ibid. ejus curatio, I. 303.
- Fœniculi semen simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143.
- Fœniculum mali succi est, I. 132. urinam movet, 141. ejus semen simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143. levat inflationem, 137.
- Fœnum Græcum, II. 20. ad vulvam molliendam valet, 38. decoctum, 343. ejus farina decocta, 169. ex ea cataplasma calefacit, I. 144. semen molli duriora in abscessibus, II. 112. semen coctum, 209. ex semine cataplasma emollit, I. 144.
- Fœtus imbecillitas quæ cognoscatur, II. 79. fœtus sanitas, ibid. fœtus mortui eductio, II. 347. fœtus aqua tumidus, 348. fœtus in utero matris emortuus, 347.
- Fomenta calida quæ sint, II. 123. ex ferramentis, ibid. sicca et calida, I. 269. calidis et siccis fomentis uti licet in præcordiorum doloribus, 120, et sqq. 183.
- Forma vulneris, II. 56.
- Fortuna præstat arte in morbo, I. 146. in morbis multum confert, II. 219.
- Frietio, dictum est Hippocrate, durare, mollire, minuire, implere corpus, I. 113. quando utenda sit, 114. sq. quomodo applicetur, 116. ex oleo et sale videtur salutaris febribus lentis, 179. adhibeatur horrore, 187. utenda est phreneticis, 198. levis recte adhibetur, II. 74.
- Frictione multa Asclepiade scripta est, I. 113.
- Frictionis numerus præscribi non potest, I. 116.
- Frigore ante febrem, quid agendum, I. 183.
- Frigus quando inimicum, I. 48. quando utile, ibid. quid efficit, I. 56. solet esse ante febres, 183. ante febrem est molestissimum, ibid.
- Frontis fractura cicatricem difficulter recipit, II. 393.
- Fruentum collinum valentius est quam campestre, I. 127. ex eo potiones valentissimi generis sunt, 128. firmioresque, quo firmius ipsum, 125. ex eo opus pistorum valentissimi generis est, ibid. elota quædam genera imbecillissima adnumerari possunt, I. 128.
- Fuligo, II. 200, 215.
- Fungi in ano vel vulva curatio, II. 215.
- Fungos inutiles si quis assumerit, II. 94. fungi, qui et quomodo parati utiles sint, ibid.
- Furfures in salsa aqua vel aceto decocti simul reprimunt et molliunt, I. 143. cum aqua mulsa decocti, 258. ex aceto, II. 91. eorum cremor lavat, 43. furfurum cremori ad gargarizandum paulum mellis adjiciendum est, 188.
- Furoris signa, I. 81.
- Furunculus, medicamenta ad hunc, II. 107.

## G.

- Galbanum, II. 184. urinam movet, I. 213. facultatem habet alvum molliendi, ibid. pus concoquit et movet, II. 4. vulnera aperit, 5. rodit, 6. mollit, 12. proprium furunculi medicamentum est, 108. tollit lenticulam, 136. incensum odore fœdo movet, I. 208. si cantharidas aliquis ebibit, galbanum vino adjecto dari debet, II. 94. ejus usus in abscessibus, 110. in difficultate spirandi, I. 260. ad malagmata, II. 16, 18, 20, 22, 23, 24. ad emplastra, 27, 31, 33. ad antidota, 45, 46. ad catapotia, 49, 51, 52.
- Galla, II. 35, 36, 40, 41, 42, 43, et alibi. purgat, 5. rodit, 6. exedit corpus, 8. cum melle cutem purgat, 13. leniter

exest, 41. gallæ immaturæ, 42, 189.  
 gallæ et immaturæ et alterius, 16.  
 Galli venatoris quibusdam venenis præcipue utuntur, II. 88.  
 Gallinaceus pullus per medium divisum imponitur morsui serpentium, II. 89.  
 Γάγγλια, II. 240.  
 Ganglia, II. 240. descriptio ejus, 241.  
 Γάγγραινα, II. 77.  
 Gangræna in quibus partibus fiat, II. 77.  
 gangrænæ notæ, 77, sq. gangrænæ initio non difficillimum curare, 78, 80.  
 ubi penitus insedit, insanabile, 78.  
 ejus curatio, ibid, 81. malum corrupti corporis est, 81. gangrænæ sectio, 358.  
 Gargarismata, II. 43.  
 Garum mali succi est, I. 132. alvum movet, 139.  
 Gastroraphe, II. 290.  
 Gentiana radix, II. 45.  
 Genuum dolor, I. 313. ejus curatio, ibid.  
 Genua contracta mortem indicant, I. 69.  
 genu luxatum, II. 444. ejus chirurgia, ibid.  
 Gestatio quibus morbis conveniat, I. 117.  
 gestationis varia genera, ibid. gestatio maris, vehiculi, lecti, 118. in lethargo prodest, 209.  
 Gingivarum caries, II. 194. tubercula, 193. ulcera, ibid. arescentium curatio, 275.  
 Gith, calefacit, I. 144. potui dandum, 308.  
 Glandis, quam βάλανον μυρεψικὴν Græci vocant, cortex, II. 17. nudæ contactio, 319. contactæ apertio, 321. interitus, 206.  
 Glandearum plumbearum extractio, II. 238.  
 Glandulæ in cervicibus, I. 240. II. 388.  
 Glaucias, I. 4.  
 Gluten vulnus glutinat, II. 4. gluten taurinum purgat, 6. fabrilis, 394.  
 Glutinosa fere omnia crassiorem pituitam faciunt, I. 134. boni succi sunt, 131. lenes sunt, ibid. inter quæ caro, I. 175.  
 Gorgias, II. 219. quid dixit de vitis umbilici, 283.  
 Gracilem morbi, I. 59.  
 Græcum salsum quando poterit dari fere, I. 173.  
 Gravedo, I. 250. ejus curatio, 251, sq. gravedines quæ vitentur, 44.  
 Gravia reprimentia aliena sunt, II. 81.  
 Grossi (ficus immatura) in aqua cocti evocant et educant, II. 11.  
 Grus generis valentissimi est, I. 125. alvum adstringit, 140.  
 Gummi sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. glutinat vulnus, præcipue que acanthinum,

ibid. exasperata lævat, II. 11. gummi cum quasdam alias facultates habeat, in collyriis hoc maxime præstat, ut ubi diu facta inaruerunt, glutinata sint neque frientur, 144, et sq. cum trito semine apii liquatum, et cum cyatho passi datum, coercet malignam purgationem uterinam, I. 309.  
 Gypsum simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. eo delinendus homo, si sudor vincit, 205.

## H.

Hæmatites lapis, II. 159. purgat, 6. corpus exedit, 8. clotus, 156.  
 Hæmorrhagia ex dura mater, II. 42.  
 Hæmorrhois, ad ejus ictum medicamenta, II. 91.  
 Halicacabi cortex, II. 36.  
 Hami retusi, II. 265.  
 Hapsus (*pulvillus, glomus*) lanæ mollis, II. 335. lanæ sulphuratæ, I. 275.  
 Hebenus urinam movet, I. 213. facultatem habet alvum molendi, II. 213. exedit corpus, 7. evocat et educit, 11. exasperata lævat, ibid.  
 Hedera simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. ejus bacca dentem findit, II. 185. hedera cum rosa et aceto, I. 209. decocta, II. 422. nigra, 105.  
 Helenium discutit, II. 10.  
 Hepatis morbi, I. 280. curatio, ibid. hepatis vulnerati signa, II. 58.  
 Hepatitis modo longus, modo acutus est, I. 280. signa, ibid. curatio, 281.  
 Heraclides Tarentinus, I. 4. II. 249.  
 Herba muralis simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. muralis phreneticis, 198. ejus contritæ succus, 316. sanguinalis reprimat et refrigerat, 143. *πολύγονον*, 143. sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. hepaticis utilis, I. 281. ea epinyctis recte curatur, II. 125. ex aceto, I. 224. cum rosa, II. 173. herbæ solaris (*ἡλιοστέφανιον*) semen et folia, 91. ex herba stœchade potio, 406.  
 Herniæ curatio, II. 308. hernia puerorum, ibid. herniæ species enterocele, et epiplocele, II. 297. hernia umbilicalis, 200.  
 Heron, II. 219. quid dixit de vitis umbilici, 283.  
 Herophilus, I. 3. II. 258. Herophili opinio, I. 5. Herophilus nullum genus morbi curet sine medicina, II. 1.  
 Hibisci radix ex vino cocta, I. 315.  
 Hieme quibus cibis aptissimus, I. 40. salubris est, 53. sicca si septentrionales ventos habeat, per pluvias exhibeat, qui morbi subeant, II. 56. senibus



- inimica, I. 59. hieme quid et quomodo esse conveniat, 40.
- Hippocrates, I. 3. II. 384. Hippocratis opinio de concoctione, I. 7. *Ἐσιποῦ γινῆν* magis excoluit, quam priores medici, II. 219. a suturis se deceptum esse memoriæ prodidit, 384. jugnum in priorem partem inclinatum se vidisse memoriæ mandavit, 402.
- Hircini jocinoris sanies, II. 166.
- Hirundinis pullus anginae remedium, I. 257. sanguine inungendus, oculus, II. 166.
- Hædus neque lenis et glutinosus, neque acer cibus, sed inter utrumque est, II. 104. ex eo quæ minus alimenti præstent, I. 127. eorum petioli capitulaque lenia sunt, 133. hædi discissi calida caro super vulnus morsu venenato factum imposita, II. 89.
- Homine insueto nec frigus nec calor sunt tuta, I. 49.
- Homo sanus, quid debet agere, I. 25. quo modo, rectus insistit, II. 366.
- Hordeum quibus infirmius, I. 125. mali succi est, 132. contritum, II. 130. ex ejus farina cataplasma calefacit, I. 144. ex hordeo panis fermentatus stomacho alienus est, I. 137.
- Horrentia quid agendum, I. 185.
- Horror febre, I. 185. febre tutissima est, ibid. a biliosis, 187. horrores febrium certarum, I. 187.
- Humerus, ejus descriptio, II. 368. fractus, curatio, 414. luxatus ejus chirurgia, 433, sqq.
- Humor omnis hydropicis aliena est, I. 213.
- Hydrocele in anasarcam scroti, atque in hydropem tunicæ vaginalis divisa, II. 298.
- Hydrophobia, II. 87. ejus curatio, ibid.
- Hydropsis signa, I. 75, 79. bona signa, 87. curatio non difficillima inter initia est, 212. tres species, 200.
- Hydropici, II. 287.
- Hydrops quando incurabilis, I. 93. facilius tollitur servis quam liberis, 211.
- Hymen imperforatum, II. 345. impervius, ibid.
- Hyoscyamus simul reprimat, et refrigerat, I. 143. in aqua decoctum, II. 199. hyoscyami folia, 150. radix, 183. semen, 49. succus, 173. hyoscyami poti curatio, 94. decoctio phreneticis, I. 199.
- Hypericum, II. 37. 45.
- Hypocistis exedit corpus, II. 7. hypocistidis succus, 45.
- Hyposarca, I. 211.
- Hyssopum pro vomitu mane, I. 37. mali succi est, 132. stomacho alienum est, 136. urinam movet, 141. excitat, 142. hepaticis utile, 281. cum aqua mulsa decoctum, 25, 301. in tussi bibendum, 263. potio hyssopi, cum quo ficus arida incocta, 278. hyssopum contritum, 300. decoctum, 249, 276. utilis in jejuno potio hyssopi, 260.

## I. J.

- Iatralipta, I. 25.
- Icterus, I. 229.
- Jecur omne boni succi est, I. 131. ex his quæ sevm habent, adstringit alvum, 140. vulpinum, 261. caprinum, hircinum, II. 166.
- Jecoris positio, I. 241. inflammationis signa, 79. Jocinoris morbus, 280. suppuratio, ibid. vulnerati notæ, II. 58. ad jecur dolens malagma, 17. ad jecur sanandum catapotium, 51. vomica, I. 85.
- Jejunum, ejus origo, I. 242.
- Ignavia corpus hebetat, I. 25.
- Ignem sacrum compositio (ad), II. 42.
- Ignis sacer, ejus duæ species, II. 103. ratio curandi, 104. quando alienus est, 224.
- Ileus, ejus signa, I. 291. curatio, 292.
- Ilia, I. 244.
- Imbecillis quæ observanda, I. 26. partium, ut capitis, imbecillitas, 42, 44.
- Imbres quos morbos generent, I. 56.
- Impetiginis species quatuor, II. 126. curatio, 127.
- Impletio, II. 75. pericula quædam, 76.
- Incarnantia, II. 12.
- Incisio, II. 304.
- Indicia mortis, I. 68 et sqq.
- Inediam qui facile ferant, I. 39. juxta inediam non convenit protinus satietatem esse, 119. inediam qui ferant male, cibum debet assumere, 39.
- Infanti mortuo ejiciendo pessus, II. 39. catapotium, 52.
- Infausta, II. 56.
- Infibulatio adolescentulorum, II. 321. ratio ejus, ibid.
- Infirmis omnibus morbis obnoxia, I. 38.
- Inflammationis quatuor signa, I. 182. inflammatio stomachi, 269. testiculorum, II. 209. uvæ, 195. ad inflammationes vulvæ pessus, 39. inflammatio articularum, 410. inflammationis oculi sequela, 154. inflammatione finita, vulnus purgandum est, 75.
- Inflatio stomachi, I. 269.
- Inguen inciditur, II. 301. inguinum abscessus raro secandi, 224. inguinis ramex, si tumor modicus est, semel incidi, 318. si major, duabus lineis debet, ibid.
- Insania quando exspectanda, I. 80, sqq.

- insania, quomodo tollitur, 89. insanix tria genera, 195. insanix alterum genus constitit tristitia, 201. insanix tertium genus duas species habet, 202.
- Insanientium curatione, quædam communia, I. 204. insanientes debere exercei vehementer, ibid.
- Insanus quid ediscat, I. 203.
- Instrumentum ad dentis radices, II. 278.
- Imperantia quæ tutior, I. 27.
- Intestina aere facile alienantur, II. 289. intestinorum vulnera, ibid. intestina mali succi sunt, I. 132. intestinorum positio, 242, sqq. intestinum jejunum, ibid. cæcum, 243. tenuius, ibid. intestinorum morbi, 286 et sqq. intestini plenioris morbus, 294. intestini tenuioris morbus, 291. ejus mala signa, 292. intestinorum lævitas, 298. ejus signa, ibid. curatio, 299. quæ periculosa, 98. quæ facilius depellatur, 88. intestinorum vulneratorum notæ, II. 60. curationes, ibid. intestinorum e ventre vulnerato prolapsionem chirurgica, II. 289.
- Intrita ex aqua calida dari potest febricitantibus, I. 171. ex vino, 206. bene madida, 256.
- Intubus acris est, I. 133. stomacho apertissimus est, 135. lenticulæ adjectus alvum adstringit, 140. per se etiam, ibid. simul reprimat, et refrigerat, 143. ex aceto, 228. ejus crudi caules refrigerant, 136. intubi succus, 273. II. 124.
- Intus corrupti, II. 289.
- Inulæ radix contusa et ex vino anstero cocta inter valentissima auxilia est ischiadici mali, I. 312.
- Irinum oleum vel unguentum, I. 260. II. 18, 19, 31, 47, 163, 165, 169, 176, 392. calidum, II. 168. irinum calefacit, I. 144.
- Iris (quæ inter aromata affertur) habet facultatem alvum moliendi, I. 213. urinam movet, ibid. purgat, II. 5. discutit, 10. mollit, 14. cataplasmatibus adjicitur, I. 281. iris cum melle, II. 175. ejus usus in adustorum curatione, 96. iris arida, I. 182. II. 18. frieta, 197. Illyrica, 17, 23, 44, et sqq. Macedonica, 24.
- Ischiadici dolores, I. 311.
- Italia, frigidioresque regiones, minus terribiles angues edunt, II. 92.
- Jugale os, II. 364.
- Juglandes stomacho alienæ sunt, I. 136. jus juglandis ex vino contritæ adversus cerussam prodest, II. 94.
- Jugulum, si fractum transversum, per se recte coit, II. 401. raro in priorem partem inclinatur, 402. curatio ejus, ibid.
- Juncus quadratus, I. 308. II. 19, 47, 190. vulnera aperit, II. 5. discutit, 10. quadrati et rotundi semen urinam movent, I. 213. quadrati et rotundi semen facultatem habet alvum moliendi, ibid. rotundum, 295. II. 47, 25, 17, rotundi flos, 45, 46, 47.
- Jurulenta alunt plus quam assa, I. 128. caro omnis jurulenta calefacit, 137. jurulenta facile corrumpuntur, 138. jurulenta omnia stomacho aliena sunt, 135. inflant, 136. alvum movent, 139. cibis jurulentis uti minime debent solutam alvum habentes, 45.
- Jus assumendum, I. 256. jus, in quo porrus cum pullo gallinaceo coctus, 276. jure pulli gallinacei ventrem resolvere prodest, 193. jus anserinum, vel ovillum, vel vitulinum sorbere oportet, II. 89. jus conchularum alvum movet, I. 139. jus malvæ vel juglandis adversus cerussam prodest, II. 94.
- Juvenes hieme optime valent, I. 58.

## L.

- Labor firmat corpus, I. 25. alvum adstringit, 39. vitandus, si futura inedia est, 30. subitus ex nimio otio gravis noxa est, ibid.
- Laborem qui facile ferant, I. 31.
- Laboris mutatio lævat lassitudinem, I. 33.
- Labra sæpe finduntur, II. 280. quo modo curantur, ibid.
- Lac, valentissimi generis est, I. 128. boni succi est, 131. lene est, 133. crassiorrem pituitam facit, 134. stomacho alienum est, 136. inflat, ib. facile intus corrumpitur, 138. alvum movet, 139. discutit, II. 10. exasperata lævat, 11. neque nimium acre, neque asperum est, I. 262. convenit phthisicis, 223. veneno est in capitis doloribus et acutis febris, 222. ex inferioribus partibus infunditur, 296. lævat, II. 43. cum alio coctum, I. 264. per se dari debet adversus cantharidas, II. 94. lacte solvendus venter, 260. lac potui dandum, 151. quodlibet maxime asininum bibendum adversus hyoscyamum, 94. lac caprifici vel lactucæ marinæ corpus exedit, 8. utrumque adurit, 8. lac asininum, I. 314. bubulum, 108. caprinum, ibid. muliebri, II. 153, 176. ovillum, I. 316. pingue, II. 153. lac in mammis quibus menses deficiunt, I. 97. lac e mammis profluens foetum inbecillum notat, 99.

- Lacertus** gravissimi generis est, I. 127.  
**lacerti** stercus purgat, II. 5. adurit, 8.  
**Lactentia** facile intus corrumpuntur, I. 138. alvum movent, 139.  
**Lactuca** quibus infirmior, I. 126. verna boni succi est, 131. acris est, 133. stomacho idonea, 135. refrigerat, 137. alvum movet, 139. somno apta est maxime æstiva, 142. ex aceto, 223. in aceto tincta, 283. lactucæ marinæ lac pro alvi ductione antiqui dabant, 108. exedit corpus, II. 8. adurit, ibid. ejus semen, I. 216.  
**Ladanum**, II. 32. facultatem habet alvum moliendi, I. 213. evocat et educit, II. 11. cum myrteo et vino ex leviter reprimentibus est, 133. ex eo emplastrum, 79. urinam movet, I. 213. cum oleo, II. 131.  
**Læsiones** externæ, II. 166. læsiones articuli, 73.  
**Lævitas** intestinorum quando facilius depellitur, I. 88. quando periculosior, 94.  
**Laganum** iis, quibus maxilla perfracta est, comedendum, II. 401. lenis res est, I. 133.  
**Lagophthalmia**, II. 255.  
**Λαγωφθάλμοι**: quomodo curantur, II. 255.  
**Lana** mollis, II. 143, 169. succida ex aceto vel vino cui oleum adjectum est simul reprimat et mollit, I. 143. simul reprimat et refrigerat, ibid. odore fœdo movet, 208. vel ex aqua frigida vel ex vino vel ex aceto expressa vulnus glutinat, II. 4. ex aceto et oleo reprimat, II. 222. eam circumdare non alienum est, 69. imponenda, I. 267. II. 38, 351, 381. inflammationem repellit, 304. rosa et aceto tincta, I. 247. succida mollis, II. 391, 398. sulphurata, I. 270, 275.  
**Lapathum** mali succi est, I. 132. alienum stomacho, I. 136. alvum movet, 139. qualis cibus sit, 173.  
**Lapillus**, pulex, et simile quid, quomodo ex aure extrahantur, II. 178.  
**Lapis** lycius, II. 161. molaris discutit, 10. Phrygius, 161. exedit corpus, 8. pyrites, 10, 124. discutit, 10. sarcophagos, I. 316. scissilis, II. 161.  
**Lapsana** stomacho aliena, I. 136. urinam movet, 141.  
**Laser** succus silphii radices et caulium concretus, I. 250, 264, II. 196. adversus chersydri ictum proficit, 92. sorbere, I. 193. recte datur, II. 254. ex vino dandum adversus cicutam, 94. cum aceto bibendum, ibid. optimum devorare, I. 290.  
**Lassitudinem** levat laboris mutatio, I. 33.  
**Lateris** inflammationis signa, I. 79.  
**Lateralium** dolores suppuratione finiuntur, I. 85. dolor quando expectandus, 79. dolores, 274. causa, ibid. signa, 275. curatio, ibid.  
**Latinorum** a fœdioribus verbis abstinencia, II. 201.  
**Lavatio** calida quibus, I. 39. frigida, æstate aptissima, 40.  
**Laurus** ejusque folia simul reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 143. in posca decocta, 209. lauri bacca, II. 30, 47. evocant et educant, 11. hepaticis utilis, I. 281. lauræum oleum, II. 176, sqq.  
**Lectio** clara nocet capite laboranti, I. 43. promovet concoctionem, 47.  
**Legumina** vitare oportet in coli dolore, I. 46. omnia generis valentissimi sunt, 124. quæ valentiora ex iis, 126. mali succi sunt, 132. stomacho aliena sunt, 136. fere omnia inflant, ibid. iis minime uti debent solum alvum habentes, 45.  
**Λείνη**, I. 55.  
**Ληνία**, linamenti genus, II. 345.  
**Lenes** cibi, I. 133.  
**Lenia** quænam, ibid. lenia emplastra, II. 34.  
**Lenis** morbi signa, I. 79.  
**Lenticula** valentior quam pisum, I. 126. cum quibus alvum adstringat, 140. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143. neque nimium acris, neque aspera est, 262. purgat, II. 6. exedit corpus, 8. inter reprimentia et refrigerantia, 79. cum malicorio cocta, I. 306. in aqua cocta, II. 228. reprimat, 45. cum rubo decocta, 195. imponenda, 130, 199, 314. trita ex ea gargarizare, 159. ejus farina cataplasma calefacit, I. 144. lenticula ex melle, II. 112, 212. ex ea cataplasma, 306. lenticulæ cremore os eluendum, 193, 198, 204.  
**Lenticula** vasis genus, I. 123.  
**Lenticularum** species et curatio, II. 136.  
**Lentiscus** simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. rodit, II. 7. decocta, I. 309. 316. lentisci folia, II. 204.  
**Λεντίδα χαλκοῦ**, I. 108.  
**Λεντίς**, squama, II. 382.  
**Lepus** ex medica materia est, I. 125. adstringit alvum, 140. urinam movet, 141.  
**Leporum** coagulum purgat, II. 6.  
**Lethargici** quomodo excitantur, I. 208, 209.  
**Λήθαργος**, I. 208.  
**Lethargus** est acutus morbus, I. 208. quomodo curatur, ibid.  
**Levantia**, II. 11.  
**Levis** plaga non negligenda est, II. 82.  
**Λευκά** emplastra, II. 33.



*Λευκή vitiliginis species*, II. 129. vide "Άλφος et Μίλας.  
*Λευκοφλεγμονία*, I. 215. ejus curatio, ibid.  
 Lienis morbus quando periculosus, I. 95. positio, 241. morbus, 282. morbi signa, ibid. curatio, 283. ictus, II. 59.  
 Lienes mali succi sunt, I. 132.  
 Lienteria, I. 298.  
 Ligustrum ejusque folia simul reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 143. mandere oportet, II. 194.  
 Lilium discutit, II. 10. ejus foliis adusta loca optime curantur, 95. lili radix contrita, 209.  
 Linamentum ex rosa proficit ad implendum vulnus, II. 75. ex lucerna extinctum, I. 307. in modum collyrii compositum, II. 118. involutum et oblongum, 181. ex melle, 247. injiciendum, 392. vino madens, 419. siccum modice reprimat, 76. siccum impositum cicatricem inducit, ibid. aridum, 449. molle, 352. linamenta tincta in melle vulnus optime purgant, 75. superdanda, 102. supervacua, 111. siccis linamentis vulnus implendum, 64. sicca ubi optima, 230.  
 Linguae ulcera quibus medicamentis egeant, II. 192. resolutionis curatio, I. 249.  
 Lingua subjectâ parte juncta quomodo succiditur, II. 279.  
 Lini semen vulnus glutinat, II. 4. evocat et educit, 11. discutit, 10. contritum, I. 262. ex passo coctum, II. 135. in mulso coctum, 209. ad cataplasmata aptissimum, 151. in aqua decoctum, I. 296. frictum, contritum et in mulso coctum, II. 209. ex lini semine cataplasma præcipue emollit, I. 144. ex eo fit quod levat, 284. ex eo cataplasma, II. 309. lini farina, 169. ex ea cataplasma calefacit, I. 144. ex lino ceratum, II. 406.  
 Lintea fascia ad vulnus deligandum aptissima, II. 69. cur lata esse debeat, ibid.  
 Linteolum vel ex vino vel ex aceto madens simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. superdandum, II. 247. cum emplastro imponendum, 398. melle illitum, 352. linteolo contegendum linamentum, 392. duplex, 335. triplex, 335, 403.  
 Linteum calefactum fomentum calidum est, I. 123. linteo tepefacto detergenda sudanti membra, 171.  
*Λισσαρά*, lene medicamentum, II. 82, 95.  
 Lipara emplastra, II. 35.  
 Lippitudinis aridæ, *ξηροφθαλμίων* Græci appellant, II. 160. signa, I. 76. notæ, II. 138.

Lippitudinem prodest dejectio, I. 89.  
 Lippitudinum varia collyria, II. 144.  
 Litterarum cultus medicinam augeat, I. 3.  
*Λιθοτόμος* Ammonii, II. 333.  
 Livori faciei malagma, II. 23.  
 Locusta durus piscis est, et minime intus vitiatas, I. 138. earum jure uti debent febricitantes, 173.  
 Lolium, II. 41. lolii farina, 128. evocat et educit, 11. ex vino diluto cocta, I. 312. ex lolio cataplasma, II. 406. ex ejus farina cataplasma calefacit, I. 144. lolii radix, II. 92.  
 Lolligo durus piscis est, et minime intus vitiatas, I. 138.  
 Longus morbus quis, I. 145. acuto par, 146. qui cognoscatur, ibid. sqq.  
 Lucubratio quando conveniet, I. 28.  
 Lumbricis alvum occupantibus, I. 300. interdum latis, interdum teretes, ibid. si lati sunt, curatio, ibid. si teretes sunt, curatio, 301.  
 Lunata plaga, II. 270, 397.  
 Lupinum in aqua decoctum, I. 300. lupinorum farina, II. 125. ex ea cataplasma calefacit, I. 144.  
 Lupus, piscis, boni succi est, I. 131. levior, 127.  
 Luxata, II. 221.  
 Lycium, II. 126, 146, 157, 172, 204, 274. ex aqua, 397. sanguinem supprimit, 3. auribus purulentis infunditur, 171. cum lacte, 174, et sqq. ex passo aut lacte dilutum, 76. ex vino, 172, 182.

## M.

*Machaon* quam partem medicinæ excoluit, I. 2.  
 Macies stomachum infirmum indicat, I. 47. maciem facit super potionum modum profluens urina, I. 309.  
 Macor insuetus malum denotat, I. 74.  
 Mala quæ genera aptissima sunt, I. 135. contrita simul reprimunt et refrigerant, 143. non permatura, 143. silvestria, 304. punica adstringunt alvum, 141. cotonea adstringunt alvum, ibid. cocta cotonea reprimunt, 144. malum punicum reprimat et refrigerat, 143.  
 Mala cum febre complicata, I. 181.  
 Malæ immobiles, II. 363.  
 Malagma, II. 14, 16. in hydropem, 16. ad jecur, 17. ad lienem, ibid. in tumores, ibid. in pleuritida, 18. in suppurationes, ibid. ad resolvenda, 19. ad digerendum, ibid. ad strumam, 21. ad parotida, 21. ad panem, 22. ad phyma, ibid. ad abscessum, ibid. ad phymata, ibid. ad sugillationem, 23. ad aperiendum,

- ibid. ad articulos, 24. ad podagram, 25. ad callum, 26.
- Malicorium, II. 172, 214. sine frigore re-  
primit, I. 144. contritum, II. 42. cum  
aridis rosæ foliis, 213. in aqua coc-  
tum, 214, 106. ex vino coctum, 112,  
306. cum lenticula, I. 306, 340. ex  
aqua terendum, II. 39. malicorii pars  
interior, 212, 183. malicorio quidquid  
mistum est, I. 299.
- Malobathrum, II. 44.
- Malva boni succi est, I. 131. alvum mo-  
vet, 139. mollis cibus est, 264, 173.  
contrita, II. 112. decocta, 343. mal-  
væ jus, 94.
- Mammæ si subito emacuere, gravis mu-  
lier abortu periclitatur, I. 57.
- Mandragora, II. 49. mandragoræ mala  
phreneticis, I. 199. mala arida, II.  
49. radix, 183. succus, 143.
- Manus, ejus descriptio, II. 370. ossa  
ejus, ibid. luxata, ejus chirurgia, 438,  
sq.
- Manuum dolores que curatio, I. 313,  
et sq.
- Marcor in lethargo, I. 208.
- Marina aqua, I. 315. II. 35, 259. acris  
est, I. 110. acrior fit adjecto nitro, 111.  
calida, 235, 247, 249.
- Maritima loca utilia sunt tussi, I. 264.
- Marmor coctum, II. 42.
- Marrubium, II. 95. exedit corpus, 8.  
superdandum, 102. imponendum,  
202. decoquendum, 205. decoctum,  
202, 340. marrubii succus, I. 224, 237,  
262, 264. II. 180.
- Materiæ genus utendum est pro viribus,  
I. 129. genus pro natura hominis,  
ibid. modus pro genere sumendus,  
ibid. quo valentior minus facile con-  
coquat, ibid.
- Materiam evocantes, I. 142.
- Maxillæ partes, II. 363.
- Maxilla fracta, quid agendum est, II.  
401. luxata, ejus chirurgia, 428, sq.
- Maxillares dentes, II. 364.
- Medendi consilia adversus inflamma-  
tionem, II. 63.
- Medicamenta a diis petita, I. 2. lædunt  
stomachum, 108. arida, seu pulveres,  
II. 40.
- Medicamentis quæ pugnat adhibere ra-  
tionem victus debet, II. 2.
- Medicamentum non recte utatur quan-  
do tempora febris incerta sunt, I. 185.  
optimum est adurere, II. 97.
- Medicina sanitatem promittit, I. 1. nus-  
quam quidem non est, ibid. apud  
Græcos est magis exulta, ibid. mul-  
tiplex non olim necessaria, 2. in tres  
partes diducta, 3. ab studio sapien-  
tiæ Hippocrate separata est, ibid.  
quæ victu curat, in duas partes divi-
- sa est, 4. deducta non ab istis quæ-  
sitionibus, sed ab experimentis, 10.  
sic orta, 11. opus est ratione, 15.  
ars conjecturalis est, 15. debet esse  
rationalis, 23.
- Medicinæ scientiæ; sapientiæ pars ha-  
bebat, I. 2. pars quæ morbis me-  
detur, et difficillima et clarissima, 4.  
genera differre quoque pro natura lo-  
corum, 9.
- Medicinam esse observationem quorum,  
I. 18.
- Medici antiquiores, quæ faciunt, I. 6.  
officium dictum est Asclepiade, cu-  
rare tuto, celeriter et jucunde, 154.  
officium cubiculum veniente, 169.
- Medico uno multos non posse curari,  
I. 157.
- Medicus empiricus, I. 20. rationalis,  
20. amicis utilior extraneo, 23. de-  
bet residere in loco illustri adversus  
eum ut omnes notas ex vultu cu-  
bantis perspiciat, 170. officii: debet  
scire, quæ sanabilia sint, quæ insana-  
bilia, II. 55.
- Medulla calefacit, I. 144. omnis mollit,  
II. 12. cervula, I. 296, 308. vitu-  
lina vel bubula, II. 29. vitulina, 48,  
338. medulla sensu caret, I. 243.  
medulla spinalis percussa, II. 60.
- Meges Romæ χειρουργικῆς professor eru-  
ditissimus, II. 107, 220, 250. quid  
dixit de vitis umbilici, 283.
- Mel pro vomitu, I. 37. valentissimi  
generis est, 125. acre est, 133. quo  
melius, eo magis acre, ibid. stomacho  
alienum est, 136. facile corrumpitur,  
138. coctum adstringit alvum, 140.  
purgat, 183. II. 337. nec nimium  
acre, nec asperum est, I. 262. exedit  
corpus, II. 8. discutit, 10. cutem  
purgat, 13. cum quibus putrem car-  
nem contineat, 40. cum galbano et  
resina terebinthina coctum, I. 260. in-  
stillatur, II. 22. adjiciendum, 40, 83,  
87, 163, 171, 183, 197. miscetur, II.  
191. illinendum, 187, 197. glutinat vul-  
nus, 4. crudum, alvum movet, I. 139.  
purgat, II. 5. rodit, 7. acerrimum,  
168. amarissimum, 137. despumatum,  
I. 171. cum æragine incoctum, II.  
174. optimum, 47, 168.
- Μελανχολία, I. 55.
- Μέλας species vitiliginis, II. 129. cura-  
tio, ibid.
- Μελικηρία: notæ, II. 62.
- Μελικηρία tubercula, II. 21.
- Μελικηρίδες, II. 240.
- Meliceris, II. 240. descriptio ejus, 241.
- Melinum oleum simul reprimit et refri-  
gerat, I. 143. sudorem prohibet, 205.  
sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. eo corpus  
ungendum, I. 174.

- Membrana interior abdominis, II. 231.  
*διάφραγμα*, I. 13. ori vulvæ opposita, II. 345. sub cute calvariam cingens scalpro non laceranda, 387. membrana cerebrum succingentis inflammatio quomodo tractanda, 391.
- Membrum ictum certa ratione collocari debet, II. 74. membrum resolutum quando in pristinum habitum non revertatur, I. 97.
- Μεμυγμένον* collyrium, II. 135.
- Μηνιγγοφύλαξ*, II. 380. ejus descriptio, 380.
- Menstrua suppressa capitis dolores acerbos indicant, II. 76. in puellis menstruorum initium tollit comitalem morbum, I. 225. sæpe feminæ quibus sanguis per menstrua non respondet hunc exspuunt, 265. sanguinem vomentes profusis menstruis liberantur, 89. quæ menstruis non purgantur, si sanguinem ex naribus fundunt omni periculo vacant, ibid. feminas quibus menstrua suppressa sunt, quæ vitia tentent, 314.
- Mentastrum adversus quos ictus proficiat, II. 91. sqq. ejus usus in dentium dolore, 185.
- Mentha urinam movet, I. 141. hepaticis utilis, 281. in cholera admovenda naribus est, 287. adversus lumbricos teretes dari potest cum aqua, 301. mixta cum aliis ad perungendas aphthas, II. 191. ex ea potio, I. 263. menthæ succus, 273.
- Mentum maxillæ ima pars, II. 363.
- Merula alvum adstringit, I. 140. firmitus est quam hordeum, 125. mali succi, 132. fomentum calidum præbet calefactum, 123. ex eo pulcica et sorbitio alvum adstringit, 140. ex ejus farina cataplasma calefacit, 144. panis ex milio alienus stomacho est, 136.
- Μήδον*, I. 18.
- Ministro tradendus infans, II. 350
- Minium, II. 34. purgat, 6. miscetur, 184. ex eo color ruber emplastris, 27. sinopicum, 33, 182, 156, 205. rodit, 6. minii gleba, I. 298.
- Miscendi ratio, II. 13.
- Misy, II. 28, 31, 35, 160. sanguinem supprimit, 3. purgat, 6. rodit, ibid. exedit corpus, 8. adurit, ibid. crustas ulceribus inducit, 9. ad uvæ morbum aptum, 196. coctum, 34, 171, 203. combustum, 156. crudum, 28, 29.
- Mithridatis antidotum, II. 45.
- Moderationem desiderant morbi, I. 119.
- Modioli descriptio, II. 377. ad quod vitium potius aptatur, 377.
- Modus applicandi, II. 70.
- Morbi relati fuerunt ad iram deorum immortalium, I. 2. æstivi, 55. autumnales, ibid. hiemales, 56. vernaes, 55. dentientium, 58. quomodo noscantur, 147. an consistant observandum est, 148. longi signa, ibid. decedentis signa, ibid. increscentis signa, ibid. an minuantur, observandum est, ibid. an increscant observandum est, ibid. qui non possunt sanari, II. 55. quæ ad partes obscenas pertinent, 201. desiderant moderationem, I. 119.
- Morbo novo quæ agenda, I. 16.
- Morborum nova genera sæpe incidere, I. 6. quædam communia intueri satis esse, 17. compressorum et fluentium genera diversa sunt, 21. in usorum hominibus, aliæ atque aliæ proprietates sunt, 22. acutorum notæ fallaces sunt, 73. curationes, 98. genera, 145.
- Morbos non curari eloquentia, sed remediis, I. 12.
- Morbus ipse aliquando novus, I. 15. regius, 229.
- Μορόσυκος*, arbor, I. 200.
- Morsus fere omnis habet quoddam virus, II. 85. ad morsus emplastra, 33. canis rabidi curatio, 86. aspidis curetur aceto, 90. serpentium, 88.
- Mortis instantis signa, I. 68. certa signa esse negavit Democritus, 72.
- Mora refrigerant, I. 137. alvum movent, 139. medicamentum quod ex iis fit, 258.
- Morum stomacho aptissimum est, I. 135. ad somnum aptum est, 142.
- Morus (*arbor*), I. 200. mori cortex, 300.
- Motus in dolore pestifer, II. 430.
- Μυδρίασις*, morbus oculi, ejus curatio, II. 165.
- Mulier gravida abortu periclitatur, I. 57. abortit, si mammæ subito emacuerunt, 97. acuto morbo facile consumitur, 71. ex partu vehementibus doloribus pressa in periculo mortis est, 95.
- Mulli leviores pisces sunt, I. 127.
- Mullus boni succi est, I. 131.
- Mulsum pro vomitu mane, I. 37. valentissimi generis est, 128. ex decocto melle, 45. quo plus mellis habet, eo valentius, 129. stomacho alienum est, 136. facile corrumpitur, 138. quod inferbuit adstringit alvum, 141. alvum movet, 139.
- Murex combustus et bene contritus, II. 23.
- Muria dura, I. 296, 315. quam asperriima, 297. capparis cum aceto, 284.
- Murices stomacho aptissimæ sunt, I. 135. difficillime corrumpuntur, 138. adstringunt alvum, 141.
- Μυρμήκιον*, II. 121.
- Μυροβάλανος*, *Myrobalanus*, I. 284.
- Musculus læsus præcidendus, II. 65.



- Musculus piscis**, alvum movet, I. 139. musculorum jure uti debent febricitantes, 173.
- Muscus** simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143.
- Mustum**, I. 305. valentissimi generis est, 128. inflat, 136.
- Myrapia pira**, I. 305.
- Myrmecia**, I. 121.
- Myrrha** facultatem habet alvum molienti, I. 213. vulnus glutinat, II. 3. pus concoquit et movet, 4. rodit, 6. adurit, 8. mixta cum aliis, I. 193. II. 28, 171, 175, 213. nigra, 149. pinguis, 173. urinam movet, I. 213. quam *στακτήρ* nominant, II. 45.
- Myrta** adstringunt alvum, I. 141.
- Myrteum (oleum)**, II. 48. simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. sudorem prohibet, 205. eo corpus unguendum, 174. ceratum ex myrteo factum, II. 217. myrteum vinum, 48.
- Myrtus** ejusque folia simul reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 143. myrti bacca, 305. folia decocta, II. 150. ex myrti foliis pulvis sine frigore reprimat, I. 144. ex ejus succo arida medicamenta conteruntur, II. 154. myrtus arida contrita, 130.
- N.
- Nævianum** pirum stomacho aptum est, I. 135.
- Napi** valentiores quam pastinaca, I. 126. mali succi sunt, 132.
- Narcissus** discutit, II. 10. ejus radix rodit, 7. semen rodit, 7. radix et semen mollit, 12. semen discutit, 10.
- Nardinum** unguentum, II. 17.
- Nardum**, II. 51. facultatem habet alvum moliendi, I. 213. urinam movet, ibid. pus concoquit et movet, II. 4. discutit, 10. Gallicum, 44, 45, 51. Indicum, 45, 145, 149. Syrum, II. 44, sqq. nardi spica, I. 213.
- Narium** ossa et foramina, II. 362. nares acutæ mortem indicant, I. 68. narium hæmorrhagia quid indicet, 79. nares exulceratæ vapore calidæ aquæ fovendæ, II. 179. naribus caruncula, 181.
- Nares**, in naribus et os et cartilago frangi solent, II. 394. quid agendum est, 395.
- Nasturtium** mali succi est, I. 132. stomacho alienum est, 136. alvum movet, 139. urinam movet, 141. acre est, 133. lienem extenuat, 283. vulnus glutinat, II. 4. ejus semen contritum, I. 301. ejus semina corpus erodunt, 143. ex ejus semine fit quod leveat, 284. nasturtium album frictum, 260. nasturtii semina materiam evocant, 143.
- Natationes** tussi utiles sunt, I. 264.
- Natura** arti auxilium dat, I. 90. ægri noscenda, 16. naturæ contemplatio aptiorem medicinæ reddit medicum, 15. natura quæ sit cujusque rei, qua vescimur, 130.
- Nausea** stomachum infirmum indicat, I. 47. nauseanti ex navigatione quid agendum, 33.
- Navigatio** longa tussi utilis est, I. 264. navigantibus qui pressi sunt nausea, quid agendum, 33.
- Nepeta** mali succi est, I. 132. stomacho aliena est, 136. urinam movet, 141. sensus excitat, 142. cum aqua mulsa decocta, 258. II. 153. hepaticis utilis, I. 281. cum sale contrita, II. 92. cum teda pingui, 183. adversus parulidas utilis, 193.
- Nervi** *νεῦρα*, II. 295. *τίνοντες*, 366. nervi dolentes, quæ agenda, I. 48. nervorum distentio quibus indicetur, 76. in nervorum resolutione, ætas tenera prodest, 88. nervorum dolor, 235. ejus curatio, ibid. nervorum tremor, 236. ejus curatio, ibid. nervis malagmata maxime conveniunt, II. 24. nervis acopa utilia, 47. nervos præcisos debilitas partis sequitur, 73. nervus induratus, 317. nervos inter ultima maturitas expectanda est, 225.
- Nigritiei** ossium curatio, II. 376. ad nigritiem in auribus, naribus, obscænis partibus pastillus, 36.
- Nitrum** calefacit, I. 144. exedit corpus, II. 7. evocat et educit, 11. mollit, 12. nitrum et spuma ejus rodit, 7. cum aceto ex leviter reprobentibus est, 133. aceto et oleo admixtum unctioni aptissimum, I. 235. utiliter delingitur, 260. cum myrobalani cortice contunditur, II. 17. teritur, 25. in malagmate ad resolvendum, 26. ad vitiliginem, 130. lenticulam tollit, 136. irino adiciendum, 165. cum rosa et aceto in aurem dari debet, 177. nitro duranda cutis, I. 174. ex nitro membrum perfricandum, I. 290. II. 423, 438.
- Nidus**, costæ, II. 367.
- Nova** quam vetusta plus alimenti habent, I. 128.
- Noxarum** corporis genera, II. 54, sqq.
- Nuces** valentiores quam poma sunt, I. 126. qualem facultatem habeant, ibid. nuces quæ inflant, 136. omnes, exceptis nucleis pineis, inflant, ibid. nuces amaræ reprimunt, 144. nuces amaræ, II. 137. facultatem habent alvum moliendi, I. 213. rodunt, II. 7. discutunt, 10. molliunt, 12. cum alio putrem carnem continent, 41. melli

- adjectæ, 191. cum aqua mulsa potui dandæ, I. 230. ad pustulas, quæ infantes male habent, utiles, II. 125. ex iis medicamentum, I. 316. humor expressus, II. 169. nuces Avellanæ, I. 237. Græcæ, ibid. 262, 285. ex iis potio, 263.
- Nuclei pinei lenes sunt, I. 133. stomacho aptissimi sunt, 135. urinam movent, 141. non inflant, 137. cum melle edendi, 237. dandi, 278. nucleï ex pinu silvestri, 285. semen contrahere videntur, 310. ex nucleo mali Persici humor expressus, II. 169.
- Numeri Pythagorici fefellerunt, I. 160.
- O.
- Obesorum morbi, I. 60.
- Ὄβολος, II. 14.
- Obscœnarum partium vitia, II. 201.
- Ochra exedit corpus, II. 7. adurit, 8. ochra Attica carnem alit et ulcus implet, 12.
- Observationes quæ proximæ vero videri possint, I. 14.
- Ocimum acre est, I. 133. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143. urinam movet, 141.
- Oculata tener quidem piscis, sed durus, I. 127.
- Oculi variis casibus patent, II. 138. tumoris notæ, 139. inflammatio curetur, 140. morbus, quemadmodum curetur, 146, et sq. ingens inflammatio, πρόσπωσις Græci appellant, quomodo curetur, 149. oculis carbunculi solent nasci, 150. pustulæ ex inflammatione oriuntur, ibid. vel ambo, vel singuli, minores fiunt, 152. inflammatio cum dolore, 158. scabri, 161. curatio, ibid. caligo ex lippitudine, 162. suffusio curetur sanguine vel columbæ, vel palumbæ, vel hirudinis, 166.
- Oculorum ulcera, II. 156. curatio, ibid. ulcera interdum fiunt ex pustulis, 152. morbi lenibus medicamentis nutriuntur, 154. cicatrices, curatio, 158. aspritudinem fere sequitur, 159. curatio, 160. resolutio, 164. imbecillitas, qua quidam interdum satis, noctu nihil cernunt, 165. ejus curatio, 166. vitia quomodo curantur, 243.
- Oculum ictus lædit, II. 166.
- Oculus si induruit et emortuus est, II. 150. habet duas tunicas, superior κερατοειδής, interior χοριοειδής. Sub his ἀραχοειδής, υαλοειδής, et κρυσταλλοειδής, 258.
- Odontalgia, II. 183.
- Oenanthe purgat, II. 5. adurit, 8. facultatem habet alvum molienti, I. 213. urinam movet, ibid.
- Œsophagi positio, I. 240.
- Olea simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. ejus folia corpus exedunt, II. 8. folia ex vino decocta, 40, 102, 202, 340.
- Oleæ imbecillissimæ sunt, I. 125. boni succi sunt, 131. minime inflant, 137. quæ aptissimæ sunt, 135. adstringunt alvum, 141.
- Oleum, si aqua miscetur refrigerat, I. 38. mali succi, 132. in cibo inimicum, 268. stomacho alienum, 136. pus concoquit et movet, II. 4. purgat, 6. ex amaris nucibus rodit, 7. molit, 12. cum aqua calida mixtum, I. 173. ex inferioribus partibus infunditur, 296, 301. sali ammoniaco adjicitur, II. 167. oleum in quo lumbrici cocti sunt, 169. adjecto oleo acrior fit aqua marina, 111. ex eo frictio salubris videtur, 179. eo perfundendum corpus et caput, I. 33. corpus ungendum, 178. pulvis cum oleo imponendus, 269. allium cum ruta ex oleo contritum, II. 91, sq. oleo multo epoto vomere commodum ei qui venenum hausit, 93. ex oleo si inferbuerunt fungi inutiles omni noxa vacant, 95. adurentia ex oleo, 135. oleum vino mixtum, 124. oleum acerbum simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. sudorem prohibet, 205. calidum infundendum, II. 175. in fascias ingerendum, 420. in calidum oleum descendere, I. 256. hominem demittere, 293. utriculi calido oleo repleti, 123, 255. eo extremæ corporis partes ungendæ, si frigeat, 268. oleum vetus vulnera aperit, II. 5. unctioni aptissimum, I. 235. oleum cicinum, II. 34, 48. laureum, 26. myrteum, 34, 48. Syriacum, I. 255.
- Olus: quodcumque ex oleo garove estur stomacho alienum est, I. 136. omnis caulis oleris imbecillimæ materiæ est, 125. olera boni succi sunt, 131. facile intus corrumpuntur, 138. eorum maxima pars acris, 133. crudi caules refrigerant, 137. iis uti debent febricitantes, 172. ab iis cibis melius incipit, 29. ex iis quæ valentiora, 126. quæ inflant, 136. oleribus callus extenuatur, II. 424. eorum radices vel bulbi in media materia sunt, I. 125. olera minuta adstringunt alvum, 140.
- Omenti curatio, II. 311.
- Omento descendente, nunquam in scroto tumor tollitur, II. 296.
- Omentum, I. 243. ejus usus, 21. omenti a vulnere corrupti exciso, II. 290.
- Ὠμοπλάται, scapulæ, II. 367.
- Omphacium, II. 125, 172, 187. purgat, 6. rodit, 7. evocat et educit, 11. adhibendum, 180. imponendum, 204. eo uva illinenda, 187.

- Onager generis valentissimi est, I. 125.  
 Operatio ad pituitam, II. 262.  
 Ὀφίαισις, II. 135.  
 Ὀπισθοτόνος, *opisthotonos*, I. 254.  
 Opobalsamum, II. 46.  
 Opopanax, II. 18, 44, 46, 158, 170.  
 Orbiculatum malum stomacho idoneum, I. 135.  
 Ordo felicis curationis, II. 75.  
 Orestes, I. 202.  
 Oricularius clyster, II. 336, 342. oric-  
 larium specillum, 354.  
 Ὀρθοπνοία, *orthopnoea*, I. 259.  
 Oryza imbecillissimis adnumerari po-  
 test, I. 128. boni succi est, 131. cras-  
 siorem pituitam, 134. stomacho ap-  
 tissimum est, *ibid.* sorbitionem præ-  
 stat in phthisi, 223. ejus cremor, 177.  
 sorbitio, 278.  
 Os aqua frigida fovendum, I. 27. quibus,  
 44. oris resolutio alvo cita finitur, 88.  
 oris vitia, II. 275. quomodo curantur,  
*ibid.* oris cancer, 195. oris ulcerum  
 curatio, 189.  
 Os: ossium positio et figura, II. 360, et  
 sqq. os pectoris, 367. coxarum, 371.  
 tuetur vulvæ, vesicam, rectum, in-  
 testinum, *ibid.* pectinis, *ibid.* rectius  
 in viris, recurvatum magis in exteriora  
 in feminis, *ibid.* os calcis, 373. ejus  
 descriptio, *ibid.* frangitur duobus  
 modis: transversum et obliquum, 399.  
 Ὀσχέον, II. 295.  
 Ossa plerumque in cartilaginem desi-  
 nunt, II. 369. vitiata quibus signis cog-  
 noscantur, 373. qua ratione curentur,  
 374, 375. luxata, quid faciendum est,  
 424, sqq.  
 Ostræa stomacho aptissima sunt, I.  
 135. facile intus corrumpuntur, 138.  
 alvum movent, 139.  
 Otium subitum ex nimio labore gravis  
 noxa est, I. 30.  
 Ova semen contrahere videntur, I. 310.  
 sumenda, 252. aliis mixta, II. 200.  
 ex iis album, I. 308. album crudum,  
 296. iis condyloma fovetur, II. 211.  
 fovendum, 214. columbina, 210. cru-  
 da, I. 305. sorbilia crassiorem pitui-  
 tam faciunt, 134. II. 141. ex mollibus  
 vel sorbilibus minima inflatio, I. 137.  
 sorbilibus aut mollibus utendum, II.  
 256. ovi album glutinat, 4. exasperata  
 lævat, 11. imponendum, 261. croco  
 mixtum, 141, 150. malicorio, 422.  
 album et vitellus, 142. vitellus coctus,  
 150. ovum durum valentissimæ ma-  
 teriæ est, I. 128. molle vel sorbile  
 imbecillissime, *ibid.* molle stomacho  
 idoneum, 138. dari potest, II. 268.  
 sorbile boni succi est, I. 131. sorbile  
 sulphure adjecto, 264. ova dura ma-  
 gisque assa adstringunt alvum, 140.  
 Ὄζαινα vix curari potest, II. 180.  
 Ozæna et ejus curatio, II. 273.  
 Ὄζον, fœtorem oris, I. 184.  
 P.  
 Pallor stomachum infirmum indicat, I.  
 47.  
 Palma manus, ejus descriptio, II. 370.  
 luxata, ejus chirurgia, 439, sq.  
 Palmarum nuclei, II. 145.  
 Palmulæ assumentur primo cibo melius,  
 I. 29. valentiores quum poma, 126.  
 boni succi sunt, 131. stomacho aptis-  
 simæ sunt, 135. adstringunt alvum,  
 141. contritæ simul reprimunt et  
 molliunt, 143. decoctæ, 262, 306, II.  
 43.  
 Palpebræ inter se coalescunt, II. 249.  
 quomodo diducuntur, *ibid.*  
 Palumbus adstringit alvum, I. 140.  
 palumbi sanguis, II. 166.  
 Panaces urinam movet, I. 213. panax,  
 II. 27, 52, 184. alvum molitur, I. 213.  
 aperit vulnura, II. 5. mollit, 12. ad-  
 versus chersydri ictum proficit, 92.  
 cum lacte contusæ, 94. cum aceto,  
 92.  
 ad Panem malagma, II. 22.  
 Panicum mali succi est, I. 132. ex eo  
 pulicula et sorbitio alvum adstringit,  
 140. ex ejus farina cataplasma cale-  
 facit, 144.  
 Panificia ex frumentis valentissima, I.  
 124.  
 Panis generis valentissimi est, I. 124. in  
 eo plus alimenti, quam in ullo alio,  
 125. ex polline infirmior, cibarius in-  
 firmissimus, 126. aqua madens im-  
 becillissimis adnumerari potest, 128.  
 fermentatus stomacho alienus est,  
 135. bordeo stomacho alienus est,  
 136. ex milio stomacho alienus est,  
 136. fermentatus facile intus corrumpit-  
 ur, 138. magisque si cibarius vel  
 hordeaceus est, alvum movet, 139.  
 sine fermento stomacho aptissima est,  
 134. sine fermento difficillime intus  
 corrumpitur, 138. sine fermento ne-  
 que lenis, neque acris est, sed inter  
 utrumque, II. 104. ex siligine ad-  
 stringit alvum, I. 140. ex simila ad-  
 stringit alvum, *ibid.* vehementer  
 cutem extenuat, II. 225. ex vino vel  
 aceto madens, simul reprimat et refrige-  
 rat, I. 143. tostus, 174. ex aqua  
 frigida, 268. ex posca frigida, 273.  
 cum papavere, 182. ex vino, 45. ex  
 vino Aminæo vero, 304. hesternus,  
 37. calido pane fovenda crithe, II.  
 244. candidus, ex vino subactus, ocu-  
 lis superimponendus, 142.  
 Panni ex vino et rosa et oleo, II. 406.  
 pannis duplicibus triplicibusve invol-



- vendum membrum, 411. pannus triplex vino et oleo madens, 412.
- Papaver somno aptum, I. 142. ejus folia simul reprimunt et refrigerant, 143. lacryma mollit, II. 12. album, I. 285. nigrum, 309. papaveris cortices, 316. cortices aridi, II. 183. fricti atque contriti, 169. papaveris folia reprimunt et molliunt, I. 143. lacryma, 295. II. 170. sqq. lacryma combusta, 144. sqq. fricta, 144, 152. papaver sylvestre, 50. phreneticis, 199.
- Papularum duo genera, ἀργίαν Græci appellant, ad eas medicamenta, II. 128.
- Papyri intorti usus in fistulis callosis, II. 117.
- Παρακολλητική, II. 28.
- Παράλυσις, I. 57, 233. ejus natura, ibid. Paralysis, I. 97.
- Παρασυνάγκη, παραsynanche, I. 257.
- Παρουλίδης quemadmodum curentur, II. 193.
- Παρωτίδης curatio, II. 199.
- Περθίνιον vel περιδίκιον, I. 143.
- Partes corporis aliter homine mortuo apparent, aliter vivo, I. 13. parti laboranti primum succurrendum est, 34. partium extremarum frigus mortem indicat, 69, 116. ex parte laborantibus catapotium, II. 52.
- Parturitio difficilis sternutamento levatur, I. 89.
- Partus emortuus, quomodo ex utero excutiat, II. 346.
- Passum valentissimi generis est, I. 128. quo ex sicciore uva, eo valentius, 129. boni succi, 131. lene est, 133. stomacho alienum, 136. facile intus corrumpitur, 138. alvum adstringit, 141. discutit, II. 10. bibendum, si lac intus coit, 94. castoreo, etc., adjuccit, 170. instillatur, ibid. et sqq. dulcissimum, 188.
- Pastilli, II. 15. facultates diversas habent, 35. ad recentia vulnera, ibid. ad ulcera sordida, 36.
- Pastillis calculum expellere, II. 37.
- Pastillus, Polybii φραγλις nominatur, II. 36. Andronis ad uvam, naturalia sordida, cancro laborantia, ibid. ad fissa ani, 37.
- Pastinaca infirmior, quam rapa napique, I. 126. stomacho aptissima est, 135. minime inflat, 136. urinam movet, 141. magisque agrestis, ibid. edenda lie-nosis, 283. marina, II. 93.
- Pavo generis valentissimi est, I. 125.
- Pecten, os, II. 37 I.
- Pectines, pisces, stomacho aptissimæ sunt, I. 135.
- Pedes cum digitis et unguibus in gravi morbo nigrescunt, I. 84. ossium pedum cum ossibus manuum similitudo, II. 373. pedum vitia, curatio eorum, I. 313.
- Pediculi inter pilos palpebrarum nascuntur: φθειρίαισι Græci nominant, II. 153.
- Pelorides alvum movent, I. 139.
- Πεπλυνμένον ceratum, II. 16.
- Περδίκιον, I. 143.
- Peregrinatio tussi utilis est, I. 264.
- Pericula quædam in curatione incidunt, II. 76.
- Περιπνευμονιάς, I. 277.
- Peripneumonia inducit vomicas, I. 83. curatio, 278 et sqq. signa, ibid. natura, ibid.
- Περίτονας, peritonæum, I. 244. II. 231.
- Personina adversus anguis ictus, proficiat, II. 93.
- Πισσώ, compositio, II. 38.
- Pessi, evocantes, II. 38.
- Pessis ad vulvam molliendam, II. 38. Boëthii, ibid. Neumenii optima est, 39. fœtus mortui eductio, ibid. ad hysteriam, ibid. ad sterilitatem, ibid.
- Pestilentia, quid observandum, I. 50. desiderat propriam animadversionem, 175. quæ agenda viribus bonis, ibid. si puer est, quæ agenda, ibid. si ardens febris extorret, quæ agenda, 176.
- Petroselinum, I. 295. II. 46, 52.
- Peucedanum, II. 24.
- Φαλγίδαινον, ejus curatio, II. 101.
- Phalangium ubi nocuit, quibus medicamentis utendum, II. 92.
- Φαρμακευτική, I. 3.
- Philaletis collyrium, II. 152.
- Philoxenes, II. 219.
- Φίμωσις, II. 321.
- Φλεγμονή, I. 5.
- Φλύκταιναι, II. 122.
- Φλυζάκιον, II. 123.
- ad Phœnicopterum a minimis omnes aves in media materia sunt, I. 125.
- Φρίνησις, I. 57.
- Phrenesis, I. 195. plura genera sunt, 196.
- Phrenetici tristes, I. 196. habentes violentè, ibid. quomodo curantur, 197. alii sunt hilares, 196. desipientes intra verba, quomodo curantur, ibid.
- Phrenesis acuta et in febre est, I. 195.
- Φρενίτις, phrenitis, curatio, I. 195.
- Phrygius lapis, II. 161.
- Φθειρίασις, II. 153.
- Φθίσις, I. 55.
- Phthisis, I. 219. curatio, 221.
- Φύγεθλον, genus tumoris, vid. Panis.
- Φύμα, ad hoc tuberculum medicamenta, II. 108.
- Φύματα, I. 90.
- Phynon, Enelpidis collyrium, II. 156.
- Pili palpebrarum, II. 251. quomodo

- oculos irritant, *ibid.* harum curationes, 252.
- Pinguia** omnia quam macra plus alimentum habent, I. 128. omnia stomacho aliena sunt, 135. sorbitio stomacho aliena est, *ibid.* omnia inflant, 136.
- Piper** calefacit, I. 137. urinam movet, 141. odore fædo movet, 203. modo cibo, modo potione, adjiciendum, 285. semen contrahere videtur, 310. vulnera aperit, II. 5. adurit, 8. cum castoreo lasere, myrrha, mixtum, I. 193. recte datur in cervicis morbis, 254. rotundum cum ficu contusum, 255. utrumque sed rotundum magis rodit, II. 7. cum sale mixtum, I. 305. cum mero vino exsorbendum, II. 90. ex eo et cumino potio sumenda, 406. piper album, 157, 158, 160, 161. longum, 52, 161. I. 19, 20, 23, 46, 51, 52, 295. rotundum, I. 295. II. 19, 52, 157. piperis semen cortice liberatum dentem findit, 185.
- Pira** quæ genera stomacho aptissima sunt, I. 135.
- Pirus**, arbor, piri circulus, II. 95. *pirum fructus*, I. 135. *pirum* fragile quale Crustuminum vel Nævianum est, item pira quæ reponuntur Tarentina atque Signina stomacho idonea sunt, *ibid.* pira Tarentina viridia vel Signina, *ibid.* fragilia refrigerant, 137. immatura alvum adstringunt, 140. contrita simul reprimunt et refrigerant, 143. sylvestria, 304. non permatura, 195.
- Pisces** duri alvi solutione juvant, I. 45. omnes qui salem non patiuntur solide saliantur ex media materia sunt, 125. plani, qualis facultatis sint, 127. quinam valentiores quoad locum natalem, *ibid.* mediæ ætatis minus alimenti præstat, *ibid.* ex media materia gravissima, *ibid.* quæ genera mali succi sunt, 132. duri ex media materia stomacho aptissimi sunt, 135. teneri facile corrumpuntur, 138. duri difficillime corrumpuntur, *ibid.* minime inflant, 137.
- Pistorium** omne opus facile corrumpitur, I. 138. generis valentissimi est, 125.
- Pisum** infirmius, quam faba vel lenticula, I. 126.
- Pituita** oculorum, II. 262. ejus curatio, *ibid.* in infantibus tamen ejus curatio supervacua est, *ibid.* in Græcia modus operandi, 264. curatio Afrorum efficacior, 266.
- Pix** concoquit et movet pus, II. 4. mollit, 12. ex ea color niger fit emplastro, 27. arida, 20, 27, 30. cruda, 128. purgat, 6. liquida, 41, 125.
- Planta luxata** ejus chirurgia, II. 446, sqq.
- Plantago** simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. lenticulæ adjecta alvum adstringit, 140. utilis sed insuavis, 299. eam esse oportet, 224. contrita et illita, 232. contrita imponenda, II. 215. fricta, I. 140. ejus succus, 224, 267.
- Pleuritis**, signa et curatio, I. 274, sq. si acutus quomodo curatur, 276.
- Πλευριτικός**, I. 274.
- Plistonici** opinio concoctione, I. 7.
- Plumbea glans**, II. 238.
- Plumbum** combustum, II. 24. sanguinem supprimit, 3. elotum, 24, 84, 152, 155, 200. nigras cicatrices leniter purgat, 84. cum vino inungendum, 341. elotum combustum, 105, 145. plumbi recrementum, 34, et sq. 95. mollit, 12. eo illinenda ulcera, 179. plumbo bene accommodato replendum foramen dentis, 276. plumbum album, 84.
- Pluvialis aqua** alvum adstringit, I. 140. simul reprimat et refrigerat, II. 143.
- Ποδάγραν**, I. 76.
- Podagræ**, cheiragræque, bona signa, I. 87.
- Podagra**, I. 313.
- Podalirius**, I. 1.
- Polenta** vino adpersa, I. 287.
- Polium**, II. 46.
- Πολύγονον**, herba sanguinalis, I. 143.
- Polypus narium**, II. 181. strangulat hominem, *ibid.* ejus curatio, 272.
- Polypus piscis**, minime intus vitiat, I. 138.
- Poma** assumantur primo cibo melius, I. 29. omnia imbecillissima sunt, 125. quæ genera boni succi sunt, 131. quæ genera mali succi sunt, 132. minime inflant, 137. ex iis medicamentum aptissimum, 304. omnia mitia alvum movent, 139. pomum quando febricitanti dandum, 172.
- Pondera**: quibus Celsus in compositione utitur, II. 14.
- Pontica radix**, II. 46.
- Populus alba**: cortex ejus radicis, II. 183.
- Porrigo** quando utilis, I. 96. ejus curatio, II. 132.
- Porrum** quibus firmior, I. 126. mali succi est, 132. ad somnum aptum est, 142. neque nimium acre, neque asperum, 262. prioribus cibis adjiciendum, 279. sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. purgat, 6. cibus est acer, I. 223. omni cibo adjectum, 237. incoctum, 264. cum pullo gallinaceo coctum, 276. cum farina impositum, II. 95. porri succus, I. 237, 264, 267. cum melle, II. 171. adversus chersydri ictum prodest, 92.

- Portulaca boni succi est, I. 131. alvum movet, 139. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143. manducanda si ex gingivis sanguis exit, 266. vel cocta vel ex dura muria edenda, 296. ejus semen contritum, II. 166.
- Posca fovendum caput, I. 172. in posca decoctus palumbus, 140. ex posca danda alica elota, 171. radícula edenda, II. 94. ex ea penicillus expressus, 143. in ea hyoscyami radix cocta, 183. ea frigida perfundendum caput, I. 247. ex posca frigida panis dandus, 273.
- Potio frigida, inutilem Asclepiades judicavit recentibus balneo, I. 32. frigida, perniciosissima est sudanti labore, ibid. facta ex frumento valentissima est, 128. datur post balneo febre, 173.
- Potiones, post multas, nihil edendum est, I. 29. frigidae utendae sunt, si non turbant ventrem, alvo soluto, 45. quae, quoad facta firmiores, 128. frigidae vel ferventes stomacho aptissimae sunt, 135.
- Præcordiorum si dolor et inflammatio est, quid agendum, I. 182.
- Prædulia omnia stomacho aliena sunt, I. 135.
- Præfatio anatomica, II. 360.
- Præfrigida aqua alvum adstringit, I. 141.
- Praxagoras, I. 3.
- Procidentiæ ani vel vulvæ curatio, II. 215.
- Profluvia quorundam vulnera noscenda, II. 61. vasorum apprehendendae quae deligandae sunt, 64.
- Profluvione sanguinis, quæ inimica, I. 268.
- Profusionem sanguinis auxilium est adversus inflammationem, II. 65.
- Prognosis histrionis, II. 55. infausta, 56.
- Propolis (cera), II. 31. pus concoquit et movet, 4. vulnera aperit, 5. evocat et educit, 11. cum aliis mixta, 110.
- Proprietates rerum quare noscendae, I. 124, et sq.
- Proprium est aliquid loci temporis, I. 22. feminarum propria, II. 345.
- Πρόσπαισις, II. 149.
- Prudentis hominis officii, II. 55.
- Prurigo, I. 96.
- Psoriasis impetigo rubra, II. 126.
- Psoricum quid sit, II. 162.
- Psylli exemplum, II. 89. audaces potius quam periti, 88.
- Πτερύγιον, tuberculi genus, II. 245. ejus curatio, ibid. medicatio ejus, 216.
- Ptisana, et ex ea sorbitio vel pulticula, imbecillissimis adnumerari potest, I. 128. boni succi est, 131. lenis est, 133. crassiorem pituitam facit, 134. stomacho aptissima est, ibid. nec minium acris, nec asper cibus est, 262. ejus cremor lævat, II. 43. dandus, I. 177. ex inferioribus partibus infundendus, 296. eo alvus ducenda, 175. eo percolato alvus ducitur, 292. ptisanæ sorbitio, 223, 278.
- Ptolemæus rex, II. 45.
- Pueri vere optime valent, I. 58. eorum morbi, ibid, et sq. pueri non sic curari debent, ut viri, 175.
- Pulegium excitat, I. 142. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143. vulnera aperit, II. 5. ex aceto naribus admovendum, I. 287, sq. cum uva taminia imponendum, II. 25.
- Pullus cohortalis tenerior minus alimentum præstat, I. 127. gallinaceus, 276. ejus jus, 193. pullum hirundinis si quis ederit, angina toto anno non periclitatur, 259.
- Pulmonem vulpinum, recentissimum assum edendum esse, I. 261.
- Pulmonum positio, I. 240. morbi signa, 78. morbus, 247.
- Πυλωρὸν, pylorus, I. 242.
- Pulsus venarum res fallacissima, I. 169. quibus concitetur, ibid. non statim explorandus, ibid.
- Pultarius, vasis genus, I. 106.
- Pulticula lenis est, I. 133. ex alica vel ex panico vel ex milio adstringit alvum, 140. cum qua paulum ex favo vetere coctum sit, edenda, 306.
- Pulvis vitandus, II. 405. vel ex fæce vini, vel ex myrti foliis, sine frigore reprimat, I. 144. ex quibus sudorem cohibeat, 205. pulvis cum oleo imponendus, II. 269. ex contrita testa cerato adjiciendus, 100. contrita rosæ pulvis, I. 308. cum resina mixtus, II. 122. pulveres ad gangranam, 40.
- Pumex purgat, II. 5. evocat et educit, 11.
- Punicum malum (granatum) stomacho idoneum, I. 135. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143. excavandum, etc., 304. cum corticibus seminibusque contusum, 306. acidi Punici mali succus cum pari modo succi ex dulci, 273. dulcis succus, II. 171. Punica mala alvum adstringunt, I. 141. aliis adjicienda cum ipsis corticibus, 305. Punici mali capitula, II. 31, 36, 41. flos, 41. succus, 172. tenues radiculæ, I. 300.
- Purgatio sæpe repetita infirmat hominem, I. 108. quando utilis, 109.
- Paris character, II. 63.
- Πυρίτης, II. 21.
- Purpuræ difficillime corrumpuntur, I.



138. adstringunt alvum, 141. stomacho aptissimæ sunt, 135.  
 Pus ex jocinore mortiferum est, I. 91. concoquentia et moventia, II. 4. velamento suo includatur, 223.  
 Pustulæ fere oriuntur vernis temporibus, II. 122.  
 Pustularum curatio, II. 124.  
 Pyrethrum, II. 19, 31, 185. vulnera aperit, 5. adurit, 8.  
 Pyri Cydoniæ et Punicæ granati fructus, I. 135.  
 Pythagoras, I. 3.  
 Pythagorici numeri, I. 160.

## Q.

Quadrupes omne animal dominatum valentissimi generis est, I. 125. lactens minus alimenti præstat, 127.  
 Quæstio de certa præsagiorum fide, I. 72.  
 Quæstus ex populo major, I. 157.  
 Quartana æstiva fere brevis est, I. 89. autumnalis longa, 97. quartanæ curatio, 190, sq. ea neminem jugulat, 192. si mutatur in quotidianum æger est in malis, ibid. quartana simplicior est, 151. quartanæ duplicis curatio, 192. quartana vetus raro nisi vere solvitur, 193. quartana facile revertitur, 194. quartanæ curatio, si post decimum diem remanet, 191. quartanæ, 151.  
 Quies optimum medicamentum est, II. 74. frequentior implet corpus, I. 34. post cibum alvum adstringit, 39. quiescere post cibum debet, quem frequenter cito alvus exercet, 45. quies optima est, 149. adhibenda, si corpus profuit, 174.  
 Quinquefolium calefacit, I. 144. ejus radix, II. 183. radix contrita, I. 296.  
 Quotidianæ, I. 151. variæ sunt, ibid. quotidiana triduo primo abstinere oportet, 188. quotidianæ curatio, 187. quotidiana experire balneum, 188. experire vinum, ibid. quotidianæ factæ ex quartana curatio, I. 194.

## R.

Rabiosi canis morsus curatio, II. 86.  
 Radices qua inflant, I. 136. olerum stomacho alienæ sunt, ibid.  
 Radicula cujus facultatis sit, I. 126. mali succi est, 132. acris est, 133. esse pro vomitu mane, 37. alvum movet, 139. purgat, II. 6. urinam movet, I. 141. semina materiam evocant, 143.

e posca, aut cum sale et aceto edenda, II. 94. erodit corpus, I. 143. succus valens ad stomachi resolutionem, 273. in aurem, II. 177.  
 Radius, II. 369.  
 Radix dulcis, II. 37, 45, 186. panacis, 49. ex-popula alba cortex radicis, 183.  
 'Ραϱαδία, eorumque curatio, II. 210.  
 Ramex: ejus curatio, II. 314.  
 Rapa valentior quam pastinaca, I. 126. aqua in qua rapa decocta, II. 106. mali succi est, I. 132.  
 Rationales: origo, I. 4.  
 Rationalium dicta, I. 4.  
 Recentia quam salsa plus alimenti habent, I. 128.  
 Recidiva, I. 158.  
 Refectio convalescentium a morbo, I. 318. prospicienda, 191.  
 Refrigeratio, I. 38.  
 Regii morbi signa, I. 229. curatio, ibid. sq.  
 Regius morbus, I. 229.  
 Remedia quædam, adversus quædam venena, II. 93. explorata adhibenda, I. 10. remediis contrariis sæpe ægri curantur, 180.  
 Remedium agreste, II. 185.  
 Renes mali succi sunt, I. 132.  
 Renibus percussis, II. 59.  
 Renum structura et positio, I. 241. morbi, 284. diu male habent, ibid. curatio, ibid. et sq. renis exulceratis, 285. curatio, ibid. renum dolor quomodo curatur, ibid. ulceris signa, I. 77.  
 Reprimentia quæ sunt, II. 4.  
 Resina concoquit et movet pus, II. 4. rodit, 6. discutit, 10. mollit, 12. ea cutem vellere non alienum, I. 234. tempora pervellere, 248. vino condita, 273. imposita, 275. II. 136. ex ea color niger fit emplastris, 27. ad purgandum valet, ibid. cum chalcite mixta, 41. ea ulcus purgandum, 80. coacta, 84. cocta, 406. imponi debet in furunculo, 108. copiosa, 127. epheledem tollit, 137. quam glutinosissima, 178. denti circumdata, 185. ex ea lene medicamentum, 206. cum farina hordeacea injicienda, 309. arida, 23, 30. colophoniaca, 30, sq. humida, 126. liquida, 21, 25, 217. liquida ex lentisco, 23. pinea, 26, 32, 210. vulnera aperit, 5. carnem alit et ulcus implet, 12. evocat et educit, 11. ex ea et tritica farina cataplasma, 307. pinea liquida purgat, 5. terebinthina, I. 224, 260. II. 26, 31, 119, 135. vulnera aperit, 5. evocat et educit, 11. humida rodit, 6. liquida, 30, 128. purgat, 5. cum thapsia, 135.

- Resinatum vinum stomacho idoneum est, I. 135. minime intus vitatur, 138. alvum adstringit, 141.
- Resolutio nervorum, I. 233. ejus curatio, ibid. sq.
- Resolventia, II. 9.
- Respirationis difficultas, I. 259.
- Rheticum vinum quale sit, et quando adhibeatur, I. 272.
- Ῥήγες, I. 265.
- Rhinion, II. 161.
- Rhus, quem Syriacum vocant, II. 191.
- Rhypodes si vulnus est in articulis, digitis, etc., II. 73.
- Rigor nervorum quando timendus, I. 79.
- Ῥιζάγχα, forfex, II. 278.
- Rodentia, II. 6.
- Rosa (*planta*), simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. discutit, II. 10. decocta reprimat, 43. cum cera, 19. ejus folia facultatem habent alvum molendi, I. 213. levissima sunt, 214. molliunt, II. 12. rosæ flos contritus, 277. rosæ floris folia, 142, 190. cocta, I. 296. folia decocta, II. 150. cum myrta, nigra mixta, 149. ex passo subacta, 214. arida, 26, 44, 205, 214. contrita, 176. recentia, 149. rosæ succus, 145. contritæ pulvis, I. 308. folia urinam movent, 213.
- Rosa (*oleum*), simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. ea corpus ungendum, 174. reprimat, 183. sudorem cohibet, 205. naribus æstuantis admota, reficit, 207. cum aceto mixta, 181. si acetum offendit, ea pura utendum, 182. si ipsa lædit, oleo acerbo, ibid. ea ungenda lingua acrida, 183. caput naresque implendæ, 198. caput madefaciendum, ibid. ungendum, I. 247. fovendum stomachus, 270. cum butyro, ex inferioribus infundenda, 296. ad nutriendam anum idonea, 302. emplastrum ea liquatum, ibid. cum sevo taurino vel caprino mixta, 308. cum albo ex ovo, ibid. aliis adjecta, 124. tepida, II. 391. magis purgat, 29.
- Rostra edenda lienosus, I. 283. ex sue minus alimenti præstant, 127. boni succi sunt, 131. stomacho idonea, 134.
- Rubrum emplastrum, II. 33.
- Rubus simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. reprimat aqua, in qua rubus decoctus, II. 43. aqua gargarizandum, in qua simul rubus et lenticula decocta sit, 195. rubus cum vino decoctus, 340. rubi cacumina in aqua decocta, I. 306. folia contrita, II. 212. pulvis ex contritis rubi foliis, I. 205. rubi utiles, vel insuaves, 299.
- Ῥυάδα, humoris genus, II. 246.
- Rufum emplastrum, II. 213.
- Rupa valentior quam pastinaca, I. 126.
- Ῥυάδης emplastrum, II. 31.
- Ruta mali succi est, I. 132. acris est, 133. urinam movet, 141. excitat, 142. purgat, II. 6. mollit, 12. super vulnus imponenda, 92. ejus potio in jejuno utilis, I. 270. ejus semen vulnera aperit, II. 5. ruta cum cerato super ventrem imposita, I. 304. ex aceto, 311. cum allio recte miscetur ad scorpionis ictum, II. 91. cum vino mero calido ingerenda, 94. cum farina imposita, 95. ex ea potio sumenda, 406. ruta cum posca decocta, I. 209. in aqua mulsa, 276. ex aceto contrita, II. 92. naribus offerenda, I. 198. cum melle contrita, 307. cum chalcite et resina mixta, II. 41. ruta silvatica, 91. rutæ silvestris semen, 49.

S.

- Sacer ignis, II. 103. ejus duæ species, ibid. curatio, ibid. et sq.
- Sagittarum eductio, II. 236.
- Sagapenum, *gummi species*, II. 45, 158.
- Sal fomentum calidum est, I. 123. calefacit, 137. erodit corpus, 143. exedit, II. 7. adurit, 8. evocat et educit, 11. cum aceto, 41. eo duranda cutis, cum sudor exercet, I. 174. mixtus, 305. cum ruta vel nepeta contritus, II. 92. cum aceto bibendum, 94. cum radícula edendum, ibid. ex eo perfricandum, 423, 438. in emplastro, 115. sal ammoniacus, 167. calefactus, I. 123. bene contritus, 279. tostus, II. 91. calido et humido utendum, I. 312. contrito perfricandæ parulides, II. 193. fossilis, 137, 158. fossilis combustus, 193. frictus, 197. humido fovendum, I. 255. contacta sale modice stomacho idonea sunt, 134. salis calidus succus, 258. sal pro vomitu, 37. ad morsus canis, II. 86.
- Salamandra exedit corpus, II. 7. adurit, 8.
- Salicis folia in aceto cocta, II. 215.
- Salsa omnia calefaciunt, II. 38. minus alimenti habent, quam recentia, I. 128. salsum vinum alvum movet, 139. solutam alvum habentibus id bibere non expedit, 45. vinum salsum frigidum, 290. Græcum salsum, 173, 193. pituitam extenuant, 134. modice, stomacho aptissima sunt, ibid. omnia stomacho aliena sunt, I. 135. acria sunt, 133.
- Salsamentum omne mali succi est, I. 132. calefacit, 137. alvum movet, 139. salsamenta omnia minime intus vitantur, 138. edenda sunt quando alie-

- na sint, 283. ab iis cibis melius incipit, 29.
- Sampsucus Cyprius discutit, II. 10.
- Sandaracha (*arsenicum rubr. nativum*), II. 25, 41, 116, 154, 182, 190, 217. purgat, 5. rodit, 6. exedit corpus, 7. adurit, 8. myrmecis aptissima, 122. contrita, 174. inspergenda, 214.
- Sanguinem vomere in febre pestiferum est, I. 71. mittere vetus est, 99. mittere, usum requirit, 104. mittere febre prodest, 173. de his quæ supprimunt, II. 3. mittere, si vires patiuntur, 79. exspuere terreri potest, I. 264. mittere, II. 81.
- Sanguinis detractio per venas, I. 99. missione muliere gravida quod putant antiqui, ibid. quæ consideranda, 100, et sq. quando debet festinare, 102. non semper vitanda in cruditate, ibid. missio in impetu febris, hominem jugulare est, 103. e brachio quando utenda, ibid. profusio, quando utilis, 90. missio pestilentia, 175. quando utilis semitertiana, 178. natura observanda, 105. detractio per cucurbitulas, 106. quando debet mitti phreneticis, 198. detractio utilis est in tristitia, 201. debet mitti morbo comitiali, 226. missio cachexia, 221. sanguis ex gingivis, 264. ex ore, ibid. ex naribus, 265. sanguinis profluvionis causæ, ibid. profluvionis curatio, 266, et sq.
- Sanguis columbæ, palumbi et hirundinis purgat, II. 5. sanguis calidus jugulati gladiatoris epilepsiae medetur, I. 228.
- Sanguisuga si epota sit, quid agendum, II. 41.
- Sanies: saniei natura, II. 61. sanies mala, ibid.
- Sanitas quando suspecta, I. 60. de sanitate imbecillorum tuenda, 27 et sq.
- Sanus homo, quid debet agere, I. 25.
- Sapientiae studiosos maximos medicos esse si ratiocinatio hoc faceret, I. 9.
- Σαρκοκλήη, II. 300. ejus curatio, 317.
- Σαρκοφάγος, I. 316.
- ex Sarmentis cinis, II. 222.
- Satietas nimia est nunquam utilis, I. 29. ex multa fame non est idonea, 30.
- Satietaem post, nihil agendum, I. 29.
- Satureia mali succi est, I. 132. stomacho aliena est, 136. urinam movet, 141. excitat, 142.
- Scabies, quædam species ejus, quam ἰχθυίαν Græci vocant, II. 125. curatio, ibid.
- Scabri oculi, II. 161.
- Scala gallinaria, II. 434.
- Scalper excisoriis, II. 379.
- Scammonia rodit, II. 7. cum castoreo mixta, I. 210. potui danda, 229. adversus lumbricos latos utilis, 300.
- Scandianum malum stomacho idoneum, II. 135. Scandiana mala, I. 304.
- Scapularum ossa, II. 367. scapulis frigus inimicus, I. 48.
- Scarus, durus piscis, minime intus vitatur, I. 138.
- Scilla cocta utiliter delingitur, I. 215. contrita recte imponitur, 234. acetum scilla conditum, 283. II. 198. ex scilla pars interior, 24. interior scillæ pars contrita, 180.
- Scobis eboris purgat, II. 6.
- Σκωρία κοιλύβδου, II. 12, 34.
- Scorpio ipse sibi pulcherrimum medicamentum est, II. 91.
- Scriptores de materia medica, II. 1.
- Serotum, II. 295. si descendit omentum, nunquam in scroto tumor tollitur, II. 296.
- Scutula operta, II. 367.
- Sectio corporum necessaria, I. 8.
- Secunda mensa bono stomacho nihil nocet, in imbecillo coacescit, I. 29.
- Secundæ, velamentum infantis, II. 350.
- Securus est in his aliquis, quæ sæpe sine periculo evasit, I. 62.
- Sedantia, II. 50.
- Sedile (*actus sedendi*) alvum adstringit, I. 39. eum, qui ambulando fatigatur, reficit post iter sedile, 33.
- Seminis nimia profusio, ejus curatio, I. 310.
- Semion, lenticulæ species, II. 136.
- Semitertianarum curatio, I. 178.
- Semitertiana frequentiores accessiones que decessiones habet, I. 178.
- Senectus magis patet longis morbis, I. 54.
- Senes æstate optime valent, I. 58. senum morbi, 59. senes cancro, theriomate facile corripuntur, II. 101. item sacro igne, 103.
- Sepa mali succi est, I. 132.
- Sepiarium atramentum alvum movet, I. 139.
- Σηπτά, II. 312.
- Septum transversum, I. 13, 83, 241. ejus percussi notæ, II. 61. fistulæ, 230.
- Serapion, I. 3.
- Serpentis omnis ictum, et jejuni et jejuno magis nocere, II. 93.
- Serpentium morsus quomodo curentur, II. 88. Itolorum ictus curatio, 92.
- Serpyllum simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. ad urinam movendam valet, 283. discutit, II. 10. serpyllum olfacere non alienum est, I. 182.
- Sertula Campana discutit, II. 10. molit, 12. in mulso cocta, 40. ex vino,



- 149, 212. sertulæ Campanæ semen, 137.
- Sesamum mollit, II. 12. hepaticis utile, I. 281. frictum, II. 24.
- Sevum adstringit alvum, I. 140. concoquit et movet pus, II. 4. purgat, 6. mollit, 12. cum hyoscyami et urticæ contritis seminibus mixtum, I. 236. sevum a renibus, II. 25. bubulum, 20. caprinum, 25. caprinum a renibus, 18. hircinum, 31. hircinum a renibus, I. 284. taurinum, II. 21, 24, 29. vitulinum, II. 31. vitulinum a renibus, 8. vitulinum curatum, 34.
- Sextans, *pars ponderis*, II. 14.
- Siccantia, I. 39.
- Siccitas quas morbus generat, I. 56.
- Signa bona ægrotantium, I. 62, sq. mala ægrotantium, 64, sq. longa valetudinis, 67, sq. mortis, 68, sq. singulorum morborum, 74. singulorum generum morborum, *ibid.* morborum quæ spem vel pericula ostendant, 85.
- Sil, II. 46, 49.
- Silices candentes in pelvem demittendi, II. 186.
- Siligo boni succi est, I. 131. semen contrahere videtur, 310. ex tritico firmissima, 125.
- Simila, II. 22. semen contrahere videtur, 310. ex vino contrita, 209. superinjicienda, 400. cum thuris fuligine mixta, 395. ex tritico firmissima, I. 125.
- Similitudo non semper confert aliquid medicinæ novi morbi, I. 16.
- Sinapi, I. 193. II. 20, 184. mali succi est, I. 132. acre est, 133. urinam movet, 141. evocat, 143. capiti frontive imponendum, 209. per omnia membra, 290. pectori, 298. ventriculo, 215, 288. affectis oris partibus, 249. faucibus, 263. manducandum, 249. ex eo fit quod levat, 284. eo adurenda cutis, 256. exasperanda torpentis membri summa cutis, 234. ex sinapi gargarizandum, II. 161. ejus usus in capitis dolore, I. 248. ex sinapi betæ edendæ, 283. sinapi ex aceto, 275. cum ficu, II. 424. contritum, 20. sinapis semen præcipue facultatem habet corpus erodendi, I. 143.
- Singultus, sternutamento finitur, I. 89. frequens jecur inflammatum significat, 79.
- Siser mali succi est, I. 132. stomacho aptissimus est, 135. stomacho idoneum, *ibid.* non inflat, 136. urinam movet, 141. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143.
- Sitis febre prodest, I. 173.
- Smaragdinum emplastrum, II. 28.
- Σμάλιον collyrium, II. 156.
- Solanum simul reprimat et refrigerat, I. 143. utile est phreneticis, 198. in lac demissum commode mollire videtur duritiem, 308. ejus folia contrita, II. 79. succus, *ibid.* 200.
- Sole adusta, II. 95.
- Somnum conciliantes, I. 142. catapotia ad somnum arcessendum, II. 48. somnum capere, bonum signum in exulceratis, 227.
- Somnus qui malus, I. 61. meridianus quando convenit, 27.
- Sonus ventris inde ad inferiores partes evolutus quando bonum signum sit, I. 64.
- Sorba alvum adstringunt, I. 140. arida, 306. torminalia, 140, 305.
- Sorbitio lenis est, I. 133. aptissima est febricitantibus, 171. ex elotis quibusdam frumenti generibus facta imbecillissimis adnumerari potest, 128. stomacho aliena est, 135. sistomachum offendit, supervacua, 171. potui adjicienda, 293. ex alica vel ex punico vel ex milia, 306.
- Sorbum stomacho aptissimum est, I. 135.
- Sordes ex gymnasio discedunt, II. 10. molliunt, 12.
- Sory, *mineralis genus*, II. 184.
- Sostratus, II. 219, 230. quid dixit de vitiis umbilici, 283.
- Sparus tener quidem piscis, sed durus, I. 127.
- Σπασμὸς, I. 56.
- Spathula lignea humero reponenda, II. 434.
- Specilli in explorandis calvariae vitiis usus, II. 379, 384.
- Specillum oricularium, II. 354.
- Spes interdum frustratur, I. 73. spei vel desperationis notæ, II. 58.
- Sphæron collyrium, II. 156.
- Sphacelus, II. 80.
- Sphragidem Polybi, II. 68.
- Σφραγίς, pastillus, II. 36, 68, 173.
- Spina, II. 364. caput excipit, *ibid.* luxata, ejus chirurgia, 431, sqq.
- Spirandi difficultas, I. 259. ejus curatio, *ibid.*
- Spiritus ipse retineat horrore, I. 187.
- Spodium, II. 125, 144, 173. exedit corpus, 8. lævat exasperata, 11. infriandum, 257. spodium elotum, 152.
- Spongia frigida, levis plaga imponitur, II. 68. madens, I. 143. ex oleo et aceto, vel aqua frigida expressa, I. 316. II. 64. ex vino, 4. melle cocto, illita, 118. adhibenda, 304. in aquam calidam demissa, I. 316. ex aqua calida expressa, II. 169. in acetum demissa, 115. spongiæ vapor calidus admovendus, 179, 182, 193, 353.

- Spuma argenti*, I. 182, II. 27, 28, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 84, 211, 212. purgat, 6. exedit corpus, 7. discutit, 10. ulcera ex pustulis facta tollit, 124. eo ulcera illinenda, 179. cocta et elota, 154. elota, 146. *spumæ argenti* vetus oleum, 211. *spuma lycii*, 170. *spuma nitri*, 19, 21, 22, 26, 35, 154.
- Sputum* in morbo pulmonis quando periculosum, I. 90. biliosum et purulentum periculum ostendunt, 71. sanguinis, 263. curatio, *ibid.* \* *sputum flavum*, 91.
- Squama æris*, II. 17, 20, 27, 28, 29, 32, 33, 105, 155, 214. quod *στάγμαμα* appellant, 145. quam *λεπίδα χαλκοῦ* Græci vocant, dejectionem antiqui moliebantur, I. 108. ea sanguinem supprimit, II. 3. purgat, 5. rodit, sed magis æris rubri, 6. exedit corpus, 7. adurit, 8. vehementius repprimat, 76. lenissima ex adurentibus est, 100. ex ea color viridis emplastris fit, 27. inspergenda, 43. ex ea emplastrum, 115. ea, si quid increscit, coercendum est, 353. *squama æris rubri*, 30. *squama ferri sanguinem* supprimit, 3. rodit, 6.
- Στακτὴ*, v. *Myrrha*.
- Σταφίς*, v. *Uva*.
- Σταφύλωμα*: duplex curatio, II. 256.
- Stercus columbæ* evocat et educit, II. 11. lacerti purgat, 5. lacerti, columbæ, palumbi, hirundinis, ovillum adurit, 8. caprinum, ex aceto coctum, super vulnus imponendum, 92. ovillum frictum et contritum, 209.
- Sternutamenta*, II. 43. *sternutamento* levatur mulier, quæ locis laborat, aut difficulter partum edit, I. 89. bonum lethargicis, 208.
- Sternutamentum* inter bona indicia est, I. 63. quando periculosum, 91. singultum finit, 89.
- Stibi*, II. 37, 145, 154, 157, 160, 213. mollit, 12. coctum, 152. combustum et elotum, *ibid.* et sq.
- Stœchas*, v. *Herba*.
- Stomachi infirmi* indicationes, I. 47. positio, 240. morbi, 269. æstuantis remedia, 269. si inflatio est, quid agendum, *ibid.* inflammatio si est, quid agendum, 270. vulgatissimum que pessimum vitium est resolutio, 272. resolutionem adversus remedia, *ibid.*
- Stomacho laborantibus* quæ sunt agenda, I. 46.
- Stomachum* si exulceratio infestat, quid agendum, I. 271.
- Stomachus pituita* si impletur, I. 271. si bile vitiosus est, *ib.* percussus, II. 60.
- Στόμαμα*, II. 145.
- Στοματικά*, *malagmata*, II. 23.
- Στραγγουρία*, I. 55.
- Strigmenti crassitudo*, II. 42, 167.
- Στρέφος*, I. 75.
- Στρυχων*, I. 143.
- Struma* quid, II. 106. fatigat medicos, 107. curatio, I. 106. ad strumam *malagmata*, II. 17, 21.
- Struthium (radix)*, I. 17. album, II. 137.
- Styrax*, II. 22, 24, 46, 53. alvum moliri videtur, I. 213. concoquit et movet pus, II. 4. purgat, 5. rodit, 7. discutit, 10. mollit, 12. urinam movet, I. 213.
- Succi boni* quænam, I. 131. *succi mali* quænam, 132.
- Sudatio nervorum* vitia curat, I. 120. in febre vel cruditate cavendum est, 121. post febrem quid agendum, 171.
- Sudor* coercendus, si corpus profluat, I. 174. frigidus in acuta febre pestifer est, 71. evocandus est hydropicis, 213. duobus modis elicitur, 120.
- Suffusio oculi*, quam Græci *ὀφθαλμὸν* nominant: ejus curatio, II. 164.
- Suilla* inter domesticas quadrupedes levissima, I. 126.
- Suillæ*, quæ partes leviores sunt, I. 126. quæ partes boni succi sunt, 131. quæ partes stomacho aptissimæ sunt, 134.
- Σύνκωσις*, ejus duæ species, II. 133. ad utramque speciem medicamenta, 134.
- Sulphur*, II. 20, 21, 41, 79, 125, 127. concoquit et movet pus, 4. aperit vulnera, 5. purgat, 6. exedit corpus, 7. discutit, 10. mollit, 12. subjiciendum, I. 236. in aqua decoctum, *ibid.* aquæ adjectum, 249. pice liquida mixtum, II. 126. eo perfricandum, 275. dolens vulva suffumiganda, 308. cum lenticula mixtum, 130. sulphur ignem non expertum, 20, 128, 185, 217.
- Συνέγχη*, *synanche*, I. 257.
- Suppurationis* signa, I. 80. causæ, 82. periculosissimæ, 91.
- Suppurationum* bona signa, I. 85. internarum curatio, 237.
- Sura*, II. 372.
- Surculis* pessima, arundo est, II. 83.
- Surculum* ejicere, II. 83.
- Surculus* quomodo ejiciendus, II. 83.
- Surditas*, alvus biliosa prodest, I. 90.
- Sutura* oras jungit, II. 67. potest nos fallere, quomodo, 385.
- Suturæ*: Hippocrates memoriæ prodidit se deceptum esse a suturis, II. 384.
- Sycamini lacrymæ* phreneticis, I. 200.

## T.

- Tabes ejus species, I. 218. tabem quæ significant, 75. ea sequitur suppressionem hæmorrhoidum, 79. post nimias distillationes, 82. in tabe sputum, febris, alvus quomodo esse debeant, 86.
- Talorum ossa, II. 373, 400, 403.
- Talus luxatus, ejus chirurgia, II. 445, sqq.
- Tamarix simul reprimit et refrigerat, I. 143.
- Taurinum sebum, I. 308.
- Teda, II. 183.
- Τεινισμός, I. 301. ejus curatio, ibid.
- Temeritas fere adjuvat, quos ratio non restituit, I. 181. auxilia etiam cum quadam temeritate rapienda sunt, 175.
- Tempestates æquales optimæ sunt, I. 53. variæ pessimæ sunt, ibid.
- Tempestatum quæ genera tuta vel morbis opportuna sint, I. 53.
- Tempus matutinum ægris remissius est, I. 163. natura sua levissimum, 164. tempus meridianum ægris gravius, ibid. vespertinum pessimum, ibid. temporis in curationibus morborum habenda ratio, II. 247.
- Tenera omnia alvum movent, I. 139. teneri pisces facile intus corrumpuntur, 138. alvum movent, 139.
- Tenesmus, I. 301. ejus signa, ibid. ejus curatio, 302.
- Τένοντες, II. 366.
- Tenne nimis omne facile intus corrumpitur, I. 138. tenue vinum urinam movet, 141. id bibere non expedit, 45. eo utendum, 47.
- Τίφειον collyrium, II. 146.
- Tepida omnia stomacho aliena sunt, I. 135.
- Terebra: terebrarum duo genera, II. 377. earum descriptio, ibid. quomodo et quando utuntur, 378, 379, sqq.
- Terra Eretria, II. 28. mollit, 12. ex aceto liquata, 134. terra Samia, quæ ἄσσην vocatur, 152.
- Tertianæ curatio, I. 188.
- Tertianarum duo genera sunt, I. 151.
- Testa, II. 276. contrita, 100. testæ involutæ exstinctæ fomento calido sunt, I. 186.
- Testiculorum curationes communes, II. 301. tumentium ex ictu curatio, 210.
- Testiculi inflammatio quomodo curetur, II. 209.
- Τίτανος, tetanus, I. 56, 254.
- Tetrapharmacum, si grande vulnus est, II. 73.
- Thapsia, II. 23.
- Themison, I. 4.
- Θηρίωμα, ejus curatio, II. 100.
- Thlaspi, herbæ genus, II. 46.
- Thoracis viscera, I. 240, sq.
- Thorax: thoracis doloribus catapotium, II. 51.
- Θυμὸν, vide Αρροχορδάν.
- Thus, II. 17, 22, 28, 32, 41, 42, 43, 52, 106, 130, 152, 155, 157, 172, 173, 188, 206, 213. sanguinem supprimit, 3. glutinat vulnus, ibid. purgat, 5. rodit, 6. pituita impetum cohibet, 142. contritum, 106, 130. thus cum muliebri lacte, 170. combustum, 144. thuris fuligo, 18, 21, 24, 28, 32, 40, 42, 185, 395. concoquit et movet pus, 4. exedit corpus, 8. superinjicienda, 400. thus masculum, 19, 23, 28, 45, 173.
- Thymum mali succi est, I. 132. urinam movet, 141. excitat, 142. stomacho alienum est, 136.
- Tibiæ os, II. 372.
- Τιβόμαλλος, II. 8.
- Titiones exstincti et panniculis involuti fomentum calidum sunt, I. 123.
- Τομὸν, incisores, II. 364.
- Tonsillæ exulceratio, II. 188. amygdalæ vocatæ, earum tumentium curatio, 186.
- Torminum bona signa, I. 88. bona lienosis, 89. intestinorum, 295.
- Torminalia adstringunt alvum, I. 140.
- Torpor quando perniciosus, I. 96, 210.
- Tosta omnia alvum adstringunt, I. 141.
- Tracheæ positio, I. 240.
- Tragacantha (gummi genus), II. 146, 152. vulnus glutinat, 3. tragacanthum exasperata lævat, 11. cum nucibus Græcis contritum, I. 262.
- Tragoriganum urinam movet, I. 213. discutit, II. 10.
- Tragum boni succi est, I. 131. inter cibos neque nimium acres, neque asperos, 262.
- Transitus ex salubri loco in gravem, ex gravi in salubrem est nunquam tutus, I. 30.
- Trepidatio in hepatico morbo inimica, I. 281.
- Trifolium, II. 44. adversus quos ictus proficiat, 91. trifolii semen urinam movet, I. 283.
- Tristia quomodo curatur, I. 201.
- Triticum boni succi est, I. 131. firmius est quam milio, 125. in vino Aminæo decoctum, 306. ex ejus farina cataplasma calefacit, 144. ejus farina cocta, II. 151, 209.
- Trixago herba (al. chamædrys) epota, I. 276. adversus angues satis proficit, II. 93. ex ea potio, 406.
- Τροχίσκοι pastilli, II. 14.



- Trunculi suum boni succi sunt, I. 131. lenes, 133. summa trunculorum cibis adjicienda, 279.
- Τρυγῶδες* collyrium, II. 146.
- Τρυγών* (piscis genus), II. 185.
- Tryphon pater, II. 220.
- Tubercula calla articularum nunquam liberantur, I. 93. capitis, II. 240. gingivarum, 193.
- Tumores quæ ad suppurationem spectant, II. 222. tumoris testicularum curatio, 209, sq.
- Tunicæ oculorum, II. 258. tunica abscessus involvens, 223.
- Turdus ex minutis avibus est, et infirmior, quam grandiores, II. 126.
- Tussis et destillatio quando periculosa, I. 91. propter faucium exulceratione molesta est, 263. vetus vix eliditur, ibid. humidæ curatio, ibid. siccæ curatio, 264. ejus curatio, 214. ad tussim catapotium, II. 51.
- Tympanites, I. 211. ejus curatio, 214.
- U. V.
- V rimæ in cranio faciendæ modulus, II. 389.
- Vagina imperforata, quomodo curari conveniat, II. 344.
- Valentissimum quid, I. 124.
- Valetudinaria, I. 20. de valetudine sanorum tuenda, 25.
- Valetudine adversa, quæ bona signa sunt, I. 62, sq. adversa, quæ mala signa sunt, 64, sq.
- Valetudinem adversam futurum quæ denotant, I. 60.
- Valetudini adversæ boni mores inimici, I. 2. quod genus valetudinis possit, 55.
- Valetudo adversa futura, quæ sint agenda, I. 149.
- Ταλασίδης*, II. 258.
- Vari, lenticulæ et ephelides, quibus medicamentis tolluntur, II. 136.
- Varices ventris, II. 294. crurum, 355. eorum curatio, ibid. sq.
- Varicocele, II. 299. 314, sq.
- Varicula excidenda est, II. 78.
- Vasorum sanguinem fundentium deligatio, II. 65.
- Vehemens vinum valentissimi generis, I. 128.
- Ῥερωνή*, II. 298.
- Ῥερωνή* vel *ἰσος*, qui aquæ-similis est, II. 62.
- Venesectio quando et quibus conveniat, quomodo fieret, I. 105.
- Venarum pulsatio fallacissima est, I. 169. pulsationes quæ excitant, ibid. quæ resolvant, ibid.
- Venatio minime inflat, I. 137. omnis stomacho aptissima est, 134. alvi solutionem juvat, 45. omnis boni succi est, 131.
- Venenum si aliquis ebibit, II. 94. maxima frigore interimit, 90. qui sumpserunt, vel in cibo, vel in potione, non facile opitulari, 93. potum, ibid.
- Venter sani qualia reddat, I. 63. ventris fluxus, 307. curatio, ibid. ventris varices, II. 294. ventris vulnera tractandi ratio, 289, sq. ventris fistulæ, 230.
- Venti septentrionales salubriores quam subsolani vel austri, I. 54.
- Venti varii et tempestates varii conjuncti quos morbos faciunt, I. 57.
- Ventus a mediterraneis salubris, a mari gravis est, I. 54.
- Ventriculus, I. 242. ventriculi vulnerati, notæ, II. 60. usus, natura et positio, I. 242. cæliacus morbus, 289.
- Venus hieme non æque perniciosa, I. 40. vere tutissimum, ibid. tolerabilior autumnus, 41. abstinendum est æstate et autumnus, ibid. semper inimica est nervis dolentibus, 43.
- Ver saluberrimum est, I. 53. vere qui cibis conveniat, 40. qui morbi oriuntur, 54.
- Veratrum (helleborum) album et nigrum adurit, II. 8. recte datur, 107. cum aceto contritum ad aurium vermes proficit, 174. ad vomitum excitandum dari debet, I. 202, 249, 299. ad id confugiendum, 201. eo utendum, 112, 233. eo sternutamenta excitantur, II. 43. veratrum nigrum quibus detur, I. 108. eo antiqui dejectionem moliebantur, ibid. in tristitia dejectionis causa dari debet, 202. eo purgandum, 226. veratrum album morbo comitali, 227.
- Verbenæ coctæ, I. 144. ex iis alvi ductio, 110. decoctæ, 198, 296, 302, 316. II. 212, 422. ex iis decocta aqua, I. 296. II. 213. ex iis incocta aqua, 215. digiti fovendi aqua ex verbenis, 216. verbenæ ex reprimimentibus, 106. verbenarum contusa cum teneris caulibus folia simul reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 143.
- Vermes, I. 300. teretes, ibid. in auribus orti, II. 174.
- Vernum est opportunissimum curationi, II. 57.
- Verrucæ curatio, II. 122.
- Vertebræ spinæ, II. 364. earum descriptio, 365.
- Vesicæ morborum signa, I. 78. morborum curatio, 309. positio differt duobus sexibus, 244. calculorum curatio, II. 324. vulnerata, 61.

- Veterinarii communibus signis, tantummodo insistant, I. 20.
- Victus ratio, II. 70. victus genus mutare potest in vetere quartana, I. 193.
- Vigilia febre prodest, I. 173.
- Vincula iis quibus calculi evulsi e vesica, non necessaria, II. 336.
- Vini quæ genera in media materia sunt, I. 128. valentissima sunt, ibid. quadrantem post febrem quartana, 190.
- Vino uti quantum libebit quartana longa, I. 191.
- Vinum est bibendum modo si assidua fatigatio urget, I. 33. dilutius quibus, 39. salsum bibi non debet, alvo soluto, 45. dulce, bibi non debet, alvo soluto, ibid. tenue, bibi non debet, alvo soluto, ibid. quod genus boni succi est, 131. quid stomacho aptissimum est, 135. novum inflat, 136. vetus minime inflat, 137. meracius calefacit, ibid. austerum v. resinatum difficillime corrumpitur, 138. dulce facile corrumpitur, ibid. tenue urinam movet, 141. resinatum vel asperum adstringit alvum, ibid. simul reprimat et refrigerat, 143. pinguis aut dulcius poterit dari a balneo, 173. calidum et meracius dari pestilentia, 175. non recte utatur quando tempora febris incerta sunt, 185. quotidiana, 188. dare adhuc calidis tertiana, 189. lethargicis adjuvat, 210. utile est hydropicis, 214. quando debet dare, II. 71. omnibus, quando alienum est, 75.
- Viola alba discutit, II. 10. ejus flos vulnera aperit, 5. viola purpurea discutit, 10.
- Virginum calculi, II. 334.
- Viride emplastrum, I. 28, 32.
- Virus cani rabiosi extrahendum encurbitula, II. 86.
- Viscera: visceribus laborant, qui diu habeant faciem pallidam et tumidam, I. 75. in visceribus nihil movendum, II. 70.
- Viscum (*glutinum*), II. 18, 23, 31, 110. visci crassitudo, 204.
- Vita nimis otiosa non est utilis, I. 31.
- Vitelli, II. 34, 95. imponendi, 214. cocti, 35. cum aqua, in qua rosæ folia cocta, I. 296. vitellus combustus et contritus, II. 42. crudus purgat, 6. discutit, 10. mollit, 12.
- Vitia oculorum, II. 243. vitia oris, 275.
- Vitiliginis species ejus tres sunt, *ἄλφος*, *μίλας* et *λευκὰ*, II. 129. curatio, 130.
- Vitium capreoli simul reprimunt et refrigerant, I. 14.
- Vitis alba glutinat vulnus, II. 4. vitis folia, in aqua frigida tincta, super stomachum imponenda, I. 176. vitis folia contrita, II. 391.
- Vitolorum petioli capitulaque lenes res sunt, I. 133.
- Ulcus vetus quomodo curandum, II. 78. ulceris vetusti oræ livenit, 76. ulcus aridum et aut pallidum aut lividum factum mortis indicium est, I. 69. ulcus implentia, II. 12. ulceribus crustas inducentia, 9. easdem resolutentia, ibid. ulceribus purgandis et implendis *ἰγχρίστα*, 47. sordidis pastillus, 36. ad ulcera mala malagma, 21. ulcera aurium, 174. gingivarum, 194. ulcerum oris medicatio, 189. ulcus circa fauces quibus indicetur, I. 77. ulceribus faucium purgandis catapotium, II. 52. ulcera linguæ, 192. digitorum, 216. in glande, 205. ulcerum e frigore in pedibus et manibus ortorum curatio, 106. ulcera hydropicorum non facile sanescunt, I. 211. ulcus summæ glandis, II. 208. ulcus callosum, 105. cava ulcera, 157.
- Umbilicus: umbilici vitiati chirurgia, II. 282. umbilici et secundarum extractio, 350. circa umbilicum inflammationes, I. 58. umbilicorum prominentium curatio, II. 283.
- Unciæ pondus, II. 14.
- Unctio confert corpori, I. 33. calefacit, 38. unctio sine aqua siccatur, 39. unctioni aptissimum est vetus oleum, vel nitrum aceto et oleo admixtum, 235.
- Uncus infanti mortuo educendo, II. 348. polypo narium extrahendo, 273. calculo vesicæ extrahendo, 329.
- Unguentum crocinum prodest phreneticis, I. 199. irinum, ibid. II. 19, 31, 47. calidum, 168. nardinum, 17. susinum, 38. crocinum, I. 199.
- Unguis ubi scabri sunt, II. 220. in digitis recedere ab ungue caruncula cum magno dolore consuevit, 216. ungues pallidi mortem indicant, 70. unguis oculorum, 248.
- Ungulæ ex sue minus alimenti præstant, I. 127. lenes sunt, 133. stomacho idoneæ, 134. ungulæ edendæ lienosis, 283. prioribus cibis adjiciendæ, II. 279.
- Voci adjuvandæ catapotium, II. 52.
- Vomicæ signa, I. 83. quando utilis, 96. jecoris bona signa, 85. jecinore, 282.
- Vomere, bis in mense quid faciendum, I. 37.
- Vomitum valentiora medicamenta quando utenda, I. 112. mitiora medicamenta quando utenda, ibid. daturo, quæ sint servanda, ibid.
- Vomitum ejectum esse Asclepiade, I. 35. post, quid faciendum, 37.
- Vomitum quando utilis, I. 36. quibus utilis, ibid. nolentium stomachum

- infirmum indicat, 47. quomodo sup-  
primitur, 89. biliosis prodest, 111.  
accessione febris prodest, 112. cho-  
lera prodest, *ibid.* insanientibus  
quadam hilaritate prodest, *ibid.* mor-  
bo comitali prodest, *ibid.* frequens  
phthisæ perniciosus est, 224.
- Urina sani qualis, I. 27. mala, 66.  
in vesicæ morbo quænam bona, 83.  
quæ valetudinem longam indicet, 68.  
quæ mortem, 71. crassa et alba ar-  
ticulorum et viscerum dolores indi-  
cant, 77. viridis viscerum dolorem tu-  
moremque, *ibid.* purulenta et san-  
guineolenta ulcus renum vel vesicæ,  
*ibid.* crassa carunculas, pilos, bullas  
malum odorem, arenam habens renum  
vitia denotant, *ibid.* parum liquida  
suppurationem, 80. urinam moventia,  
221. adversus urinæ difficultatem  
catapotium, II. 52. urinæ nimia pro-  
fusio, I. 309. urina cruda coctaque,  
27. urinæ iter differt duobus sexibus,  
244.
- Urtica boni succi est, I. 131. alvum mo-  
vet, 139. qualis cibus sit, 173, 264.  
urticæ semen, II. 20. semen contri-  
tum, I. 301.
- Uteri vel os vulvæ, procidentia, II. 215.
- Utriculi, aqua calida repleti, recte im-  
ponuntur in dolore nervorum, I. 236.  
calido oleo replentur pro fomento,  
123. calido oleo repleti admoventur  
in tetano, 255.
- Uva, si cum inflammatione descendit,  
&c., præcidi sine periculo non potest,  
II. 278. si nulla inflammatio est, ea  
præcidi debet, *ibid.*
- Uva ex fructibus surculorum valentior  
quam pomum, I. 126. recens stomacho  
aliena est, 136. taminia urinam mo-  
vent, 213. immaturæ uvæ succus, II.  
176. uva taminia alvum molit, I. 213.  
vulnera aperit, II. 5. rodit, 7. adurit,  
8. discutit, 10. mollit, 12. cum pice  
liquida putrem carnem continet, 41.  
cum aliis mixta, 38, 92, 154, 184. uva  
taminia sine seminibus, 25, 184. ex  
olla stomacho aptissimæ sunt, I. 135.  
recentes inflant, 136.
- Uvæ inflammationis curatio, II. 195.
- Vulnera, quæ aperiunt, II. 5. vel pe-  
jora vel mitiora sunt ab loco sui sedi-  
bus, 56. vel externa vel interna sunt,  
57. cordis, signa, 58.
- Vulnerati, quid agendum, II. 63.
- Vulneris glutinatio, II. 65. indicia, 71.
- Vulnus, suturam, an fibulam postulet,  
II. 66. quæ glutinant, 3. pulmonis,  
58. grave, quid agendum, 69. aliqua  
medicamenta ad implendum, 75. cani  
adurendum est, 86.
- Vulpinum jecur ac pulmones asthmati  
sanando, I. 261.
- Vulsella, II. 278.
- Vulva virginibus exigua est, I. 244.  
percutta est, II. 59.
- Vulvæ ulceris signa, I. 77. morbus, 307.  
ejus natura, *ibid.* curatio, *ibid.* et  
sq.

## X.

X litera: plaga si manu facienda est  
(*in cute cranii*), ea fere commodissima  
est quæ duabus transversis lineis lite-  
ræ X figuram accipit, II. 387.

*Ξηροφθαλμία*, genus aridæ lippitudinis,  
II. 160.

Xylobalsamum, II. 19.

## Z.

Zingiber, II. 46.

*Ζυγώδες*, os jugale, II. 363.





# INDEX MEDICORUM ET ALIORUM QUORUM MENTIO FIT IN LIBRIS CELSI.

- Æsculapius, I. 1.  
 Ammonius Alexandrinus, II. 219, 333.  
 Andreas, II. 1, 18, 20, 154, 442.  
 Andron, II. 36, 205.  
 Antigonus, I. 211.  
 Apollonius, I. 3. II. 1, 219.  
 Apollophanes, II. 18.  
 Arabs medicus, II. 21.  
 Archagathus, II. 34.  
 Aristogenes, II. 24.  
 Ariston, II. 25.  
 Asclepiades, I. 4, 5, 7, 9, 109, 113, 117,  
 154, 156, 158, 160, 172, 188, 196, 200,  
 214, 230, 267. II. 1, 172.  
 Athenion, II. 51.  
 Boëthus, II. 38.  
 Cassius, I. 21, 294. II. 52.  
 Chrysippus, I. 3, 211. II. 25.  
 Cleon, II. 144, 149.  
 Cleophrantus, I. 188.  
 Crato, II. 172, 204.  
 Ctesiphon, II. 25.  
 Democritus, I. 3, 72.  
 Dexius, II. 26.  
 Diocles, I. 3, 229, 291. II. 442.  
 Diogenes, II. 32, 85.  
 Dionysius, II. 144, 214.  
 Empedocles, I. 3.  
 Empirici, I. 4, 9.  
 Epicurus, I. 212.  
 Erasistratus, I. 3, 5, 8, 17, 18, 19, 155,  
 156, 157, 180, 182, 217, 317. II. 204.  
 Euelpides, II. 146, 155, 156, 158, 161.  
 Euelpistus, II. 220.  
 Euthycleus, II. 24.  
 Glaucias, I. 4.  
 Gorgias, II. 219.  
 Hecateus, II. 31, 83.  
 Heraclides, I. 4, 168, 191. II. 51, 249,  
 442.  
 Heras, II. 41.  
 Hermon, II. 157.  
 Heron, II. 219.  
 Herophilus, I. 3, 5, 8, 9, 180, 258.  
 Hierax, II. 160.  
 Hippocrates, I. 3, 5, 9, 20, 52, 113, 158,  
 159, 180, 229, 250, 299. II. 140, 219,  
 402, 432, 442.  
 Homerus, I. 2.  
 Iollas, II. 42.  
 Irenæus, II. 130.  
 Judæus Medicus, II. 30, 42.  
 Lysias, II. 18.  
 Machaon, I. 1.  
 Medius, II. 20.  
 Meges, II. 107, 220, 223, 444.  
 Menemachus, II. 185.  
 Menophilus, II. 172.  
 Methodici, I. 18.  
 Metrodorus, I. 212.  
 Micon, II. 23.  
 Mithridates, II. 45.  
 Moschus, II. 20.  
 Myron, II. 128, 130.  
 Nileus, II. 19, 149, 151, 442.  
 Numenius, II. 26, 39.  
 Nymphodorus, II. 442.  
 Panthemus, II. 20.  
 Petro, I. 180.  
 Philippus, I. 211.  
 Philo, II. 144.  
 Philocrates, II. 31, 83.  
 Philotas, II. 28.  
 Philotimus, II. 442.  
 Philoxenus, II. 219.  
 Plistoniceus, I. 7.  
 Podalirius, I. 1.  
 Polyarchus, II. 19.  
 Polybus, II. 36, 68, 173.  
 Praxagoras, I. 3, 7.  
 Protarchus, II. 21, 125, 127, 128, 442.  
 Psylli, II. 88.  
 Ptolemæus, II. 172.  
 Pythagoras, I. 3.  
 Serapion, I. 3. II. 127.  
 Sosagoras, II. 24.  
 Sostratus, II. 219, 250.  
 Tharrias, I. 217.  
 Themison, I. 4, 17, 19, 156, 160. II. 170.  
 Theodotus, II. 145.  
 Theoxenus, II. 25.  
 Timæus, II. 42.  
 Tryphon, II. 137, 220.  
 Zeno, II. 1.  
 Zopyrus, II. 45.

## ERRATA.

- Vol. I. Page 4, Translation, for "Themesion," read Themison.  
87, Translation, line 10, for "extenuated," read attenuated.  
126, Translation, four lines from the bottom, for "who," read which.  
201, Text, line 18, for "alternum," read alterum.  
209, Translation, line 5 from the bottom, after the word "vinegar," add,  
or laurel-berries, or ivy with rose-oil and vinegar.  
288, Translation, line 10, for "action" of this organ, read disease.  
296, Text, line 23, for "se," read si.
- Vol. II. Page 20, Text, line 21, for "residæ," read resinæ.  
41, Translation, last line, for "Hera," read Heras.  
296, ORDO, for "Ευτιροχήλην," read 'Εντιροκήλην. And  
for "ἱπιπλοχήλην," read ἱπιπλοκήλην.  
345, for "λημνίσχον," read λημνίσκον.











